Contents

Viewpoints

Opportunities for Mobile App–Based Adherence Support for Children With Tuberculosis in South Africa (e19154)
Rachel Morse, Hanlie Myburgh, David Reubi, Ava Archev, Leletu Busakwe, Anthony Garcia-Prats, Anneke Hesseling, Stephanie Jacobs, Sharon Mbaba, Kyla Meyerson, James Seddon, Marieke van der Zalm, Dillon Wademan, Graeme Hoddinott. .................................................. 6

Evaluating Patient-Centered Mobile Health Technologies: Definitions, Methodologies, and Outcomes (e17577)
Courtenay Bruce, Patricia Harrison, Charlie Giammattei, Shetal-Nicholas Desai, Joshua Sol, Stephen Jones, Roberta Schwartz. ................. 15

COVID-19 Contact Tracing Apps: A Technologic Tower of Babel and the Gap for International Pandemic Control (e23194)
Li Du, Vera Raposo, Meng Wang. ................................................................. 651

Original Papers

Scientific Publication Patterns of Mobile Technologies and Apps for Posttraumatic Stress Disorder Treatment: Bibliometric Co-Word Analysis (e19391)
Atik Kulakli, Ivanna Shubina. ................................................................. 26

Understanding User Behavior Through the Use of Unsupervised Anomaly Detection: Proof of Concept Using Internet of Things Smart Home Thermostat Data for Improving Public Health Surveillance (e21209)
Niloofar Jalali, Kirti Sahu, Arlene Oetomo, Plinio Morita. ................................................................. 55

Enabling Remote Patient Monitoring Through the Use of Smart Thermostat Data in Canada: Exploratory Study (e21016)
Kirti Sahu, Arlene Oetomo, Plinio Morita. ................................................................. 68

Using a Mobile App-Based International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health Set to Assess the Functioning of Spinal Cord Injury Patients: Rasch Analysis (e20723)
Mengmeng Jia, Jie Tang, Sumei Xie, Xiaokuo He, Yingmin Wang, Ting Liu, Tiebin Yan, Kun Li. ................................................................. 78

Patients and Medical Staff Attitudes Toward the Future Inclusion of eHealth in Tuberculosis Management: Perspectives From Six Countries Evaluated using a Qualitative Framework (e18156)
Ioana Margineanu, Christina Louka, Maria Vincenti-Gonzalez, Antonia Saktiawati, Johannes Schierle, Kabiru Abass, Onno Akkerman, Jan-Willem Alltenaar, Adelita Ranchor, Ymkje Stienstra. ................................................................. 90
Mobile Health App for Prostate Cancer Patients on Androgen Deprivation Therapy: Qualitative Usability Study (e20224)
Junaid Nabi, Eugene Cone, Anjali Vasavada, Maxine Sun, Kerry Kilbridge, Adam Kibel, Donna Berry, Quoc-Dien Trinh. .......................................................... 101

A Smartphone-Based Technique to Detect Dynamic User Preferences for Tailoring Behavioral Interventions: Observational Utility Study of Ecological Daily Needs Assessment (e18609)
Ginger Nicol, Amanda Ricchio, Christopher Metts, Michael Yingling, Alex Ramsey, Julia Schweiger, J Miller, Eric Lenze. .................................................. 110

Evaluation of the MoMba Live Long Remote Smoking Detection System During and After Pregnancy: Development and Usability Study (e18809)
Stephanie Valencia, Laura Callinan, Frederick Shic, Megan Smith. .......................................................... 120

Development and Acceptability of a Tablet-Based App to Support Men to Link to HIV Care: Mixed Methods Approach (e17549)
Thulile Mathenjwa, Oluwafemi Adeagbo, Thembelihle Zuma, Keabetswe Dikgale, Anya Zeitlin, Philippa Matthews, Janet Seeley, Sally Wyke, Frank Tanser, Maryam Shahmanesh, Ann Blandford. .................................................. 132

Effect of the Pregnant+ Smartphone App on the Dietary Behavior of Women With Gestational Diabetes Mellitus: Secondary Analysis of a Randomized Controlled Trial (e18614)
Lisa Garnwiedner-Holme, Lena Henriksen, Liv Torheim, Mirjam Lukasse. .......................................................... 151

ReMindCare App for Early Psychosis: Pragmatic Real World Intervention and Usability Study (e22997)
Lucia Bonet, John Torous, David Arce, Ignacio Blanquer, Julio Sanjuan. .......................................................... 163

Myofunctional Therapy App for Severe Apnea–Hypopnea Sleep Obstructive Syndrome: Pilot Randomized Controlled Trial (e23123)
Carlos O'Connor-Reina, Jose Ignacio Garcia, Elisa Rodriguez Ruiz, Maria Morillo Dominguez, Victoria Ignacio Barrios, Peter Baptista Jardin, Juan Casado Morente, Maria Garcia Iriarte, Guillermo Plaza. .......................................................... 176

Technology-Enabled Health Care Collaboration in Pediatric Chronic Illness: Pre-Post Interventional Study for Feasibility, Acceptability, and Clinical Impact of an Electronic Health Record–Linked Platform for Patient-Clinician Partnership (e11968)
Lisa Oippari-Arrigan, Dana Dykes, Shehzad Saeed, Sunny Thakkar, Lisa Burns, Barbara Chini, Gary McPhail, Ian Eslick, Peter Margolis, Heather Kaplan. .......................................................... 190

Effectiveness of Internet-Based Multicomponent Interventions for Patients and Health Care Professionals to Improve Clinical Outcomes in Type 2 Diabetes Evaluated Through the INDICA Study: Multimodal Cluster Randomized Controlled Trial (e19222)
Yolanda Ramallo-Fariña, Miguel García-Bello, Lidia García-Pérez, Mauro Boronat, Ana Wängner, Leticia Rodríguez-Rodríguez, Pedro de Pablo-Velasco, Ignacio Llorente Gómez de Segura, Himar González-Pacheco, Montserrat Carmona Rodriguez, Pedro Serrano-Aguilar, INDICA Team. .......................................................... 203

Smart Data Collection for the Assessment of Treatment Effects in Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Observational Study (e19969)
Zsa Weerts, Koert Heinen, Ad Masclee, Amber Quanjel, Bjorn Winkens, Lisa Vork, Paula Rinkens, Daisy Jonkers, Daniel Kesztelyi. .......................................................... 218

Real-World Evidence of User Engagement With Mobile Health for Diabetes Management: Longitudinal Observational Study (e22212)
Anna-Katharina Böhm, Morten Jensen, Mads Sørensen, Tom Stargardt. .......................................................... 241

Use of the patientMpower App With Home-Based Spirometry to Monitor the Symptoms and Impact of Fibrotic Lung Conditions: Longitudinal Observational Study (e16158)
Colin Edwards, Eamonn Costello, Nicola Cassidy, Bill Vick, Anne-Marie Russell. .......................................................... 259
Using Mobile Health Technology to Deliver a Community-Based Closed-Loop Management System for Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Patients in Remote Areas of China: Development and Prospective Observational Study (e15978)
Ning Deng, Juan Chen, Yuyuan Liu, Shoushuo Wei, Lei Yi Sheng, Rong Lu, Zheyu Wang, Jiarong Zhu, Jiye An, Bei Wang, Hui Lin, Xiuyan Wang, Yumin Zhou, Huilong Duan, Pixin Ran. 268

Smartphone-Based Monitoring of Parkinson Disease: Quasi-Experimental Study to Quantify Hand Tremor Severity and Medication Effectiveness (e21543)
Elina Kuosmanen, Florian Wolling, Julio Vega, Valerii Kan, Yuuki Nishiyama, Simon Harper, Kristof Van Laerhoven, Simo Hosio, Denzil Ferreira. 281

A Mobile-Based Intervention for Dietary Behavior and Physical Activity Change in Individuals at High Risk for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Randomized Controlled Trial (e19869)
Zidu Xu, Ji Geng, Shuai Zhang, Kexin Zhang, Lin Yang, Jing Li, Jiao Li. 298

Patient Perception of Mobile Phone Apps for the Care and Prevention of Sexually Transmitted Diseases: Cross-Sectional Study (e16517)
Lena Jakob, Theresa Steeb, Zeno Fiocco, Teodora Punmea, Sophia Jakob, Anja Wessely, Christoph Rothenberger, Titus Brinker, Lars French, Carola Berking, Markus Heppt. 315

Engagement Features in Physical Activity Smartphone Apps: Focus Group Study With Sedentary People (e20460)
Marco D’Addario, Dario Barella, Francesco Zanatta, Andrea Greco, Patrizia Steca. 344

Impact of Pediatric Mobile Game Play on Healthy Eating Behavior: Randomized Controlled Trial (e15717)
Yi-Chin Kato-Lin, Uttar Kumar, Bhargav Sri Prakash, Bhairavi Prakash, Vasini Varadan, Sanjeeta Agnihotri, Pradeep Krishnatray, Rema Padman. 354

Behavior Change Techniques in Wrist-Worn Wearables to Promote Physical Activity: Content Analysis (e20820)
Peter Düking, Marie Tafler, Birgit Wallmann-Sperlich, Billy Sperlich, Sonja Kleih. 370

Pre-Conception Interventions for Subfertile Couples Undergoing Assisted Reproductive Technology Treatment: Modeling Analysis (e19570)
Régine Steegers-Theunissen, Annemieke Hoek, Henk Groen, Annelies Bos, Grada van den Dool, Marieke Schoonenberg, Jesper Smeenk, Eva Creutzberg, Loes Vecht, Luc Starmans, Joop Laven. 378

Effectiveness of an mHealth Intervention Combining a Smartphone App and Smart Band on Body Composition in an Overweight and Obese Population: Randomized Controlled Trial (EVIDENT 3 Study) (e21771)
Cristina Lugones-Sanchez, Maria Sanchez-Calavera, Irene Repiso-Gento, Esther Adalia, J Ramirez-Manent, Cristina Agudo-Conde, Emiliano Rodriguez-Sanchez, Manuel Gomez-Marcos, Jose Recio-Rodriguez, Luis Garcia-Ortiz, EVIDENT 3 Investigators. 390

A Smartphone-Based Approach to Screening for Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss: Cross-Sectional Validity Study (e23047)

Effect of a Text Messaging–Based Educational Intervention on Cesarean Section Rates Among Pregnant Women in China: Quasirandomized Controlled Trial (e19953)
Yanfang Su, Jesse Heitner, Changzheng Yuan, Yafei Si, Dan Wang, Zhiying Zhou, Zhongliang Zhou. 423

Network Support Using Social Networking Services to Increase Exercise Adherence Among Korean-Chinese Middle-Aged Migrant Women: Mixed Methods Study (e19159)
Hyeeyeon Lee, Hyeonkyeong Lee, Youlim Kim, Sookyung Kim, Young-Me Lee. 435
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gamified Text Messaging Contingent on Device-Measured Steps: Randomized Feasibility Study of a Physical Activity Intervention for Cancer Survivors (e18364)</td>
<td>Michael Robertson, Elizabeth Lyons, Yue Liao, Miranda Baum, Karen Basen-Engquist.</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Phone Apps in Australia for Improving Pregnancy Outcomes: Systematic Search on App Stores (e22340)</td>
<td>Loretta Musgrave, Nathalie Kizirian, Caroline Homer, Adrienne Gordon.</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of Mobile Health Technology Use for Self-Tracking Between Older Adults and the General Adult Population in Canada: Cross-Sectional Survey (e24718)</td>
<td>Mirou Jaana, Guy Paré.</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once Daily Versus Overnight and Symptom Versus Physiological Monitoring to Detect Exacerbations of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease: Pilot Randomized Controlled Trial (e17597)</td>
<td>Ahmed Al Rajeh, Yousef Aldabayan, Abdulelah Aldhahir, Elisha Pickett, Shumonta Quaderi, Jaber Alqahtani, Swapna Mandal, Marc Lipman, John Hurst.</td>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementing Mobile Health–Enabled Integrated Care for Complex Chronic Patients: Patients and Professionals’ Acceptability Study (e22136)</td>
<td>Jordi de Batlle, Mireia Massip, Eloisa Vargiu, Nuria Nadal, Araceli Fuentes, Marta Ortega Bravo, Jordi Colomina, Reis Drudis, Montserrat Torra, Francesc Pallisó, Felip Miralles, Ferran Barbé, Gerard Torres, CONNECARE-Lleida Group.</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet and Telerehabilitation-Delivered Management of Rotator Cuff–Related Shoulder Pain (INTEL Trial): Randomized Controlled Pilot and Feasibility Trial (e24311)</td>
<td>Peter Malliaras, Kate Cridland, Ruben Hopmans, Simon Ashton, Chris Littlewood, Richard Page, Ian Harris, Helen Skouteris, Terry Haines.</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exploitation of Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls in the Context of Circadian Rhythms of Social Activity Among Elderly People: Observational Descriptive Study (e13535)</td>
<td>Timothé Aubourg, Jacques Demongeot, Hervé Provost, Nicolas Vuillerme.</td>
<td>552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep Tracking of a Commercially Available Smart Ring and Smartwatch Against Medical-Grade Actigraphy in Everyday Settings: Instrument Validation Study (e20465)</td>
<td>Milad Asgari Mehrabadi, Iman Azimi, Fatemeh Sarhaddi, Anna Axelin, Hannakaisa Niela-Vilén, Saana Myllyntausta, Sari Stenholm, Nikil Dutt, Pasi Liljeberg, Amir Rahmani.</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embodiment of Wearable Technology: Qualitative Longitudinal Study (e16973)</td>
<td>Elizabeth Nelson, Anneke Sools, Miriam Vollenbroek-Hutten, Tibert Verhagen, Matthijs Noordzij.</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reviews**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nurses’ Use of Personal Smartphone Technology in the Workplace: Scoping Review (e18774)</td>
<td>Andrea de Jong, Lorie Donelle, Michael Kerr.</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asynchronous mHealth Interventions in Rheumatoid Arthritis: Systematic Scoping Review (e19260)</td>
<td>Bart Seppen, Pim den Boer, Jimmy Wiegel, Marieke ter Wee, Marike van der Leeden, Ralph de Vries, Martin van der Esch, Wouter Bos.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Standalone Smartphone Cognitive Behavioral Therapy–Based Ecological Momentary Interventions to Increase Mental Health: Narrative Review (e19836)
Marta Marciniak, Lilly Shanahan, Judith Rohde, Ava Schulz, Carolin Wackerhagen, Dorota Kobylska, Oliver Tuescher, Harald Binder, Henrik Walter, Raffael Kabisch, Birgit Kleim.

Implementation of Telerehabilitation Interventions for the Self-Management of Cardiovascular Disease: Systematic Review (e17957)

Wearable Health Devices in Health Care: Narrative Systematic Review (e18907)
Lin Lu, Jiayao Zhang, Yi Xie, Fei Gao, Song Xu, Xinghuo Wu, Zhewei Ye.

The Use of Wearables in Clinical Trials During Cancer Treatment: Systematic Review (e22006)
Ulrike Beauchamp, Helle Pappot, Cecilie Holländer-Mieritz.

Citizen-Centered Mobile Health Apps Collecting Individual-Level Spatial Data for Infectious Disease Management: Scoping Review (e22594)
Felix Wirth, Marco Johns, Thierry Meurers, Fabian Prasser.

Corrigenda and Addenda

Correction: Excessive Smartphone Use and Self-Esteem Among Adults With Internet Gaming Disorder: Quantitative Survey Study (e24869)
Hyunmin Kim, In Choi, Dai-Jin Kim.
Opportunities for Mobile App–Based Adherence Support for Children With Tuberculosis in South Africa

Rachel M Morse1, BSc; Hanlie Myburgh2,3, MA; David Reubi1, MA, MSc, PhD; Ava E Arche4; Leletu Busakwe2,5, BA; Anthony J Garcia-Prats2, MD, PhD; Anneke C Hesseling2, MBChB, PhD; Stephanie Jacobs2, BA; Sharon Mbaba3, NDip; Kyla Meyerson2, MA; James A Seddon2,6, MBBS, MA, PhD, FRCPCH; Marieke M van der Zalm2, MD, MSc, PhD; Dillon T Wademan2, MA; Graeme Hoddinott2, MScSc, PhD

1Department of Global Health and Social Medicine, King's College London, London, United Kingdom
2Desmond Tutu Tuberculosis Centre, Department of Paediatrics and Child Health, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Cape Town, South Africa
3Amsterdam Institute for Social Science Research, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, Netherlands
4College of Arts and Sciences, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, United States
5Social Aspects of Public Health, Human Sciences Research Council, Cape Town, South Africa
6Department of Infectious Diseases, Imperial College London, London, United Kingdom

Corresponding Author:
Hanlie Myburgh, MA
Desmond Tutu Tuberculosis Centre
Department of Paediatrics and Child Health
Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University
Lower Level Clinical Building
Francie van Zijl Drive
Cape Town, 7505
South Africa
Phone: 27 823416810
Email: hmyburgh@sun.ac.za

Abstract

Tuberculosis is the number one infectious cause of death globally. Young children, generally those younger than 5 years, are at the highest risk of progressing from tuberculosis infection to tuberculosis disease and of developing the most severe forms of tuberculosis. Most current tuberculosis drug formulations have poor acceptability among children and require consistent adherence for prolonged periods of time. These challenges complicate children’s adherence to treatment and caregivers’ daily administration of the drugs. Rapid developments in mobile technologies and apps present opportunities for using widely available technology to support national tuberculosis programs and patient treatment adherence. Pilot studies have demonstrated that mobile apps are a feasible and acceptable means of enhancing children’s treatment adherence for other chronic conditions. Despite this, no mobile apps that aim to promote adherence to tuberculosis treatment have been developed for children. In this paper, we draw on our experiences carrying out research in clinical pediatric tuberculosis studies in South Africa. We present hypothetical scenarios of children’s adherence to tuberculosis medication to suggest priorities for behavioral and educational strategies that a mobile app could incorporate to address some of the adherence support gaps faced by children diagnosed with tuberculosis. We argue that a mobile app has the potential to lessen some of the negative experiences that children associate with taking tuberculosis treatment and to facilitate a more positive treatment adherence experience for children and their caregivers.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19154) doi:10.2196/19154

KEYWORDS

eHealth; mHealth; tuberculosis; pediatric tuberculosis; adherence
Introduction

Tuberculosis (TB) is the number one infectious cause of death globally [1]. Implementation of effective TB control programs continues to place enormous pressure on the health systems of high TB-burden countries [1]. The World Health Organization’s (WHO) Global TB Program identifies digital health technologies as key to supporting its new End TB Strategy [2]. An essential component of this strategy includes using mobile technologies and apps in particular to improve adherence to TB treatment [2]. Reviews show that the development and implementation of mobile health technologies to support health outcomes are overwhelmingly concentrated in high-income countries and focused on diseases of concern in those settings [3-5]. The development and implementation of mobile health technologies in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), where the burden of communicable diseases, such as TB, is markedly high and treatment is strenuous, has received comparatively less attention. In the last decade, rapid developments in mobile technologies and apps, extended mobile network coverage, and increasing possibilities for integrating mobile health into existing eHealth platforms present opportunities for using widely available technology to support TB programs and adherence in resource-constrained and high-burden areas [2].

In South Africa, TB is the leading cause of death, mainly due to the overlapping HIV and TB epidemics [1,6]. South Africa also has the world’s second highest estimated TB incidence rate, at 520 per 100,000 people [1]. In endemic areas, such as South Africa, young children (especially younger than 5 years) are at the highest risk to progress from TB infection to TB disease and to develop the most severe forms of TB, such as TB meningitis [7,8]. In 2018, children accounted for 7% of newly recorded TB cases in South Africa [1]. Despite their heightened risk, children’s paucibacillary TB disease leads to them having much better treatment outcomes than their adult counterparts once treatment is started [7]. Children’s timely diagnosis and rapid initiation onto TB treatment are critical, as undiagnosed cases or undertreatment could have long-term health consequences or lead to death.

Drug-susceptible (DS) and drug-resistant (DR) TB treatment formulations have had very poor acceptability among children [9]. The drugs are multiple, unpalatable, and often cause significant side effects, such as nausea, liver toxicity, insomnia [1,7], neurosensory alterations, neuromuscular weakness, and psychological and behavioral disturbances such as anger, aggression, withdrawal, hyperactivity, and depressive symptoms [10,11]. TB treatment is also lengthy and requires consistent adherence for at least six months for DS-TB and, in the case of DR-TB, adherence to different drug regimens for a longer period of time [1,8]. Child-friendly TB preventive therapy and treatment formulations that simplify and improve TB treatment for children are either only recently available or are still being evaluated in clinical trials [8,9,12]. The challenges presented above complicate children’s adherence to treatment and caregivers’ daily administration of the drugs [8].

Various small-scale and pilot studies in high-income settings have demonstrated that mobile apps are a feasible and acceptable means of enhancing children’s and young people’s treatment adherence for chronic conditions, such as sickle cell disease (SCD), migraines, asthma, and HIV [13-18]. There is limited high-quality evidence on the impact of mobile apps on health outcomes when implemented at scale or on how different mobile app components affect health and treatment outcomes [3-5]. Despite this, many of the small-scale studies published thus far provide promising evidence supporting the potential of mobile apps to positively impact adherence and treatment outcomes among children and young people [3-5,13,15,16,19]. These studies also serve as a foundation for further research and implementation efforts in this field and demonstrate the potential for developing and implementing mobile apps in LMICs that support children’s and caregivers’ burdensome TB treatment journeys. To date, no mobile apps that aim to improve the experience of TB and TB treatment in high- or low-income countries have been developed for children; mobile health interventions for supporting TB programs have largely focused on adult patients, using SMS-based text message platforms to promote TB treatment adherence, clinic attendance, and monitoring [20-22].

In this paper, we reflect on our joint experience conducting research in ongoing pediatric TB studies at the Desmond Tutu TB Centre, Stellenbosch University, South Africa, to highlight the potential for developing mobile app–based technologies to support TB treatment adherence in children. First, we provide an overview of technologies that have been used to support children’s and young people’s treatment and adherence experiences in other disease contexts. Second, we present hypothetical scenarios informed by our experiences to illustrate the adherence support gaps for children with TB. Third, we imagine how a mobile app could address some of the adherence support gaps faced by children affected by TB.

Overview of Adherence Technologies for Children

Table 1 provides examples of studies that use mobile technology to improve children’s and young people’s treatment adherence, including for SCD, asthma, migraine, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, and HIV. These pilot studies provide preliminary evidence that shows the potential of mobile apps to support adherence in children and young people.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19154

JMIR MHEALTH AND UHEALTH

Morse et al
Table 1. Examples of studies that used mobile technology to improve children’s and young people’s treatment adherence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Study summary</th>
<th>Intervention features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creary et al (2019) [13]</td>
<td>- Single-arm intervention study with pediatric patients ≤19 years (median age 10 years)</td>
<td>- Self-recorded videos of taking the medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: SCD⁹</td>
<td>- Monetary incentives with successful adherence (US $30 gift card)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: United States</td>
<td>- Text message reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: effect of mobile phone–based intervention on adherence to SCD treatment</td>
<td>- Personalized feedback on adherence from research staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: increased adherence among participants engaged with the intervention over a 6-month</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>period compared with participants’ baseline adherence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramsey et al (2018) [14]</td>
<td>- AB design pilot study with patients aged 13 to 21 years</td>
<td>- Reminder notifications and phone calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: migraine</td>
<td>- Incorporation of the health belief model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: United States</td>
<td>- Medication adherence tracking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: evaluation of the use of a mobile app to increase adherence to migraine medication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: similarly high rates of adherence among participants using the intervention and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>participants using smart pill bottles over an 8-week period. Participants rated the intervention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as acceptable and easy to use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kosse et al (2019) [15]</td>
<td>- Randomized controlled trial with patients aged 12 to 18 years</td>
<td>- Symptom monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: asthma</td>
<td>- Education (short movie clips)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: Netherlands</td>
<td>- Medication reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: measuring the impact of a mobile app on participants’ adherence to asthma</td>
<td>- Chat feature with pharmacists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>treatment</td>
<td>- Chat feature with peers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: increased 6-month adherence rates among participants who used the app and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>measured low-adherence rates at baseline. Decreased 6-month adherence rates measured among</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>participants in the control group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weisman et al (2018) [17]</td>
<td>- Randomized controlled trial with children aged 6 to 16 years</td>
<td>- Symptom monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: ADHD⁵</td>
<td>- Reminder notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: Israel</td>
<td>- Education on ADHD and its treatment (video clips, articles, and links to additional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: assessing the use of a mobile app to increase ADHD medication adherence</td>
<td>reading materials)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: increased adherence rates among participants who were using the app over 8 weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>compared with adherence rates in the control group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtis et al (2019) [23]</td>
<td>- Study conducted with 12- to 18-year-olds</td>
<td>- Avatar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: SCD</td>
<td>- Rewards system (points earned through interaction with app’s features)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: multiple, including Lebanon and Nigeria</td>
<td>- Education on SCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: development of an evidence-based mobile app supporting SCD medication</td>
<td>- Quiz (focused on education about SCD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adherence</td>
<td>- Symptom tracking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: evaluation of the app is underway</td>
<td>- Medication and appointment reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Emergency information for health professionals unfamiliar with SCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Condition: HIV</td>
<td>- Reward system (points and monetary incentive earned through interaction with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Country: United States</td>
<td>app’s features)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Intervention: pilot of a mobile app supporting HIV medication adherence</td>
<td>- Social networking (social wall discussion questions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Outcomes: high acceptability and feasibility, as measured in participant ratings after 28</td>
<td>- Gamification through quests and story-based framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>days of app use. A clinical trial evaluating adherence with the app is underway</td>
<td>- Incorporation of social cognitive theory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⁹SCD: sickle cell disease.

⁵ADHD: attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.
However, few technologies and mobile apps target children’s treatment adherence specifically; for TB, no such technologies exist. Common app features shared across the studies included in Table 1 incorporated behavioral and educational strategies to improve adherence through features such as reminder notifications, adherence logging, cash or other adherence rewards, and educational features [13-15,17,18,23]. While evidence of the impact of these app components on adherence is limited to small sample sizes, the studies that have completed evaluations show increased or high rates of adherence in their study populations [13-16,19], and an even greater number of apps have shown high acceptability and feasibility among users from various age categories [13-18]. For example, one of the pilot studies, MyMate&Me, is a mobile app aiming to support SCD medication adherence among children and adolescents aged 12 to 18 years [23]. With MyMate&Me, users earn points by participating in app features, including (1) “Tip of the Day,” where users learn important information about coping with SCD, (2) “Daily Quiz,” where users learn about SCD by answering quiz questions and earning points for correct answers, (3) “Mood Tracker,” where users earn points by logging their daily mood, and (4) “Medication and Appointment Reminders,” where users are reminded to take their medication, attend appointments, and earn points for confirming their adherence and attendance. MyMate&Me also features an avatar to accompany the user throughout the app. The user can spend their earned points on clothes and accessories for their avatar, thereby providing incentive for using the app’s various functionalities and managing their condition. Another study, also on SCD, incorporated video directly observed therapy for adherence monitoring, daily reminders via SMS text messages, email, or telephone if adherence was not observed, and a US $30 gift card incentive if users maintained at least 90% adherence over 30 days [13].

The behavioral strategies used in these mobile apps aimed to facilitate a favorable adherence environment and thus change patient behavior, while the educational strategies aimed to provide patients with information so that they could make informed choices about adhering to treatment [24]. These strategies are informed by underlying theories of human behavior, such as the health belief model [25], the theory of reasoned action or planned behavior [26], and operant conditioning [27]. The basic logic of these theories is that people are more likely to repeat behaviors (in this instance adherence) that (1) are associated with reward, not punishment, (2) conform to their perceptions of descriptive and injunctive norms, and (3) are within their perceived self-control. Robust evidence supporting the use of mobile apps and mobile app features that use behavioral strategies is limited [3-5]; however, their foundational principles have been evaluated extensively in relation to a large variety of health behaviors in many settings across the world [27,28] and have been shown to be supportive of adherence [24]. In 2014, the WHO advocated for such behavioral and educational strategies to be incorporated into apps to improve TB treatment adherence [7].

**What Are the Current Adherence Support Gaps for Children With Tuberculosis?**

Many mobile apps that support children’s and young people’s adherence to treatment for other conditions serve as treatment reminders or sources of information for patients [13-15,17,18,23]. Drug palatability, tolerability, and acceptability, which pose serious threats to adherence, are typically not considered for intervention with mobile apps. In Textbox 1, we draw on our experiences carrying out research in pediatric TB studies at the Desmond Tutu TB Centre to consider children’s and caregivers’ experiences with TB treatment that illustrate specific adherence support gaps and needs. The scenarios reflect typical interactions with patients and caregivers that are observed daily in TB service delivery contexts. They show that caregivers and children are generally motivated and knowledgeable about TB treatment but that the unpalatability, number, and side effects of the drugs affect their acceptability and provide serious challenges for caregivers and children at each ingestion event. We argue that an important user need is making the drug ingestion and administration experience more acceptable. For children especially, the current TB treatment experience is negative, and they are “punished” by the negative associations and poor palatability at each ingestion event. Alongside advocating for improved, child-friendly, palatable formulations, a mobile app that can mitigate the punishment associated with treatment and provide tangible rewards closely associated with each adherence event is a priority and could serve as a supporting component for improving the TB treatment experience for children and their caregivers. The app could also, for example, provide users with tutorial videos for pairing TB treatment with foods to improve palatability without compromising dosing accuracy [29].

**Textbox 1.** Scenarios reflecting typical interactions with patients and caregivers that are observed daily in TB service delivery contexts. They show that caregivers and children are generally motivated and knowledgeable about TB treatment but that the unpalatability, number, and side effects of the drugs affect their acceptability and provide serious challenges for caregivers and children at each ingestion event. We argue that an important user need is making the drug ingestion and administration experience more acceptable. For children especially, the current TB treatment experience is negative, and they are “punished” by the negative associations and poor palatability at each ingestion event. Alongside advocating for improved, child-friendly, palatable formulations, a mobile app that can mitigate the punishment associated with treatment and provide tangible rewards closely associated with each adherence event is a priority and could serve as a supporting component for improving the TB treatment experience for children and their caregivers. The app could also, for example, provide users with tutorial videos for pairing TB treatment with foods to improve palatability without compromising dosing accuracy [29].

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19154
In order to gain diamonds—the currency of the app—that can be used to purchase clothes and accessories for the avatar in the app’s store. Completing missions also leads to levelling up each time the user acquires the required number of diamonds. Each mission might include linked goals, such as following the treatment plan for 3 consecutive days, reading about TB, and joining an online forum discussion. As a user completes missions, earns diamonds, and levels up, their avatar becomes stronger. “Adherence streaks” unlock bonus rewards and items in the app’s store: the longer the adherence streak, the greater the reward. Rewards can be scaled over time so that the user has increasingly higher targets to achieve. As a further incentive,
such an app could partner with businesses to offer small tangible rewards, such as mobile data or discounts at selected stores. The app, by encouraging the child’s active participation in their treatment adherence, assigns positive consequences to taking their medication (eg, diamonds, a visibly stronger avatar, and more accessories) and permits the child to gain control and autonomy over the treatment experience. It also ties rewards to adherence despite the unpalatability of the drugs and negative side effects. Interventions that use rewards to promote medication adherence have been shown to be significantly more efficacious than interventions that do not use rewards [30]. The aforementioned features of the app’s design also have the potential to lower the risk of user fatigue. In an app supporting TB treatment adherence, the risk of user fatigue is mitigated, as the need for using the app naturally ends upon treatment completion, at which point the user’s avatar could enter a hall of fame.

Building on a fundamental link between the avatar’s wellness and the child’s adherence behaviors, a mobile app could then incorporate a range of other features to support children and caregivers in adhering to treatment. For instance, the app could be an important source of information on TB. It could include medication reminders, alerts for upcoming clinic visits, and details of what to expect at the visit. Daily adherence logging would allow users to track their adherence over time, view weekly and monthly adherence, and progress toward completing their treatment course. An in-app community space would allow caregivers to interact with other caregivers. Caregiver participation in the community would earn their child diamonds, making knowledge seeking collaborative and providing caregivers with a new adherence resource and a free, positive reward to help mitigate the negative effects of forced administration on the child-caregiver relationship. In the online forum, caregivers and older children with appropriate supervision would be able to ask each other about their experiences with TB and treatment, creating an additional social support system.

Studies of TB knowledge in South Africa have suggested relatively good levels of understanding of prevention and cure among the population, but knowledge of TB cause and symptoms was suggested to be low [31,32]. A frequently asked questions (FAQs) section, designed by children and adolescents who have experienced TB disease and medical professionals who work with TB disease, could address knowledge gaps by including answers to common questions, such as “How can I protect my family and friends from getting TB?” “What kind of bodily changes can I expect while taking treatment?” “Can I go to school if I have TB?” and “What is the relationship between TB and HIV?” In the app’s community space, users can also play games (racing, sports, treasure hunts, etc), either with each other or solo, to earn additional diamonds. The stronger their avatar (eg, the better their adherence), the more competitively they will perform in the games. The effectiveness of such games for increasing medication adherence among children has been shown [33,34]. For example, in a randomized controlled trial, a video game intervention was found to improve medication adherence and behavioral outcomes for young people aged 13 to 29 years with acute leukemia, lymphoma, or soft-tissue sarcoma in the United States, Canada, and Australia [33].

In a high TB-burden, resource-limited setting like South Africa, such a mobile app that aims to facilitate children’s adherence to TB treatment could improve the patient experience and also potentially buffer some of the shortcomings of the care provided in an overburdened health service. In particular, a mobile app could offer avenues of support to caregivers and children that are not immediately available in service encounters. It could also be a source of information on a range of topics related to the disease and its treatment, as in the FAQ section proposed. The immediate availability of such support and information has the potential to be empowering for patients.

### Considerations for Implementation

There are a number of practical considerations for developing and using mobile apps to support children’s adherence in culturally diverse, developing health settings, such as South Africa. First, most households in low socioeconomic settings have limited access to phones and tablets that could support apps. Programs may consider providing patients with smartphones during treatment, with the possibility of taking ownership when treatment has been completed successfully. The resources required to deliver such an app (if effective in improving adherence) are limited to the supply of a suitable mobile device (about US $40 per user) and some training on how to use the app. Studies suggest that the cost of providing smartphones to patients and supporting app-based adherence is more cost-effective for patients and health services than current adherence support models, which are often highly labor-intensive, requiring many hours of health workers’ time [35,36]. The app would also require some tailoring to the age of the child to provide age-appropriate services and support, including features for older children and adolescents who may experience greater treatment autonomy. During the app’s initial setup, a prompt to input age can align the app’s functionality with the age of the child. To be acceptable amongst diverse users, the app must be attuned to the local context in which it will be implemented. As such, the app’s avatar must offer an array of characteristics that users can select to reflect their social, cultural, racial, and gender identities and their personalities. These could be informed by participatory research through focus group discussions and key informant interviews with end users, community advisory boards, patient advocacy groups, and other stakeholders. The project team can then partner with an expert in app design, development, and programming. Last, the app should take into account the diversity of languages spoken in the local context and thereby allow children and caregivers to use the app in the language most suitable to them.

Given the paucity of robust evidence for using mobile apps to support adherence in children and adults, we suggest that future evaluations of mobile adherence apps to support children’s adherence to TB treatment should include implementation science evaluations and randomized controlled trials. Further, such evaluations should measure both biomedical (eg, treatment success) and patient experience (eg, preferences and user satisfaction) outcomes.
Conclusion

Digital health technology is a burgeoning resource for supporting health systems and patients in the prevention, treatment, and care of a wide array of diseases. While such technologies hold promise for supporting the adherence of children diagnosed with TB disease in LMICs, where the burden is highest, no such technologies have been developed to date. In this paper, we presented some hypothetical scenarios of the daily struggles of caregivers and children who are tasked with adhering to TB treatment for prolonged periods of time. While we do not suggest that a mobile app will resolve all problems related to children’s adherence to treatment, such a technology could compensate for and lessen some of the negative experiences children associate with taking TB treatment and perhaps even act as a buffer for health system shortcomings. It remains the task of the research community to develop such technologies and bring them to scale in the health systems in which they will have the greatest impact.

Authors' Contributions

RMM prepared a first draft of the manuscript, and all authors contributed substantially to the manuscript’s conceptualization and subsequent revisions. We would like to thank authors for their interest, time, and support.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References


3. Hall CS, Fottrell E, Wilkinson S, Byass P. Assessing the impact of mHealth interventions in low- and middle-income countries--what has been shown to work? Glob Health Action 2014;7:25606 [FREE text] [doi: 10.3402/gha.v7i7.25606] [Medline: 25361730]


Evaluating Patient-Centered Mobile Health Technologies: Definitions, Methodologies, and Outcomes

Courtenay Bruce¹, JD, MA; Patricia Harrison¹, BSN, RN, MBA; Charlie Giammattei², BA; Shetal-Nicholas Desai³,4, DPM, MBA; Joshua R Sol³,4, BSc; Stephen Jones⁵,6, MD, MSHI; Roberta Schwartz³, PhD

¹System Quality & Patient Safety, Houston Methodist System, Houston, TX, United States
²CareSense, MedTrak, Inc, Conshohocken, PA, United States
³Center for Innovation, Houston Methodist Hospital, Houston, TX, United States
⁴Information Technology Division, Houston Methodist Hospital, Houston, TX, United States
⁵Center for Outcomes Research, Houston Methodist Research Institute, Houston, TX, United States
⁶Department of Surgery, Houston Methodist Hospital, Houston, TX, United States

Corresponding Author:
Courtenay Bruce, JD, MA
System Quality & Patient Safety
Houston Methodist System
6565 Fannin Street
Houston, TX, 77030
United States
Phone: 1 2816209040
Email: crbruce@houstonmethodist.org

Abstract

Several recently published studies and consensus statements have demonstrated that there is only modest (and in many cases, low-quality) evidence that mobile health (mHealth) can improve patient clinical outcomes such as the length of stay or reduction of readmissions. There is also uncertainty as to whether mHealth can improve patient-centered outcomes such as patient engagement or patient satisfaction. One principal challenge behind the “effectiveness” research in this field is a lack of common understanding about what it means to be effective in the digital space (ie, what should constitute a relevant outcome and how best to measure it). In this viewpoint, we call for interdisciplinary, conceptual clarity on the definitions, methodologies, and patient-centered outcomes frequently used in mHealth research. To formulate our recommendations, we used a snowballing approach to identify relevant definitions, outcomes, and methodologies related to mHealth. To begin, we drew heavily upon previously published detailed frameworks that enumerate definitions and measurements of engagement. We built upon these frameworks by extracting other relevant measures of patient-centered care, such as patient satisfaction, patient experience, and patient activation. We describe several definitional inconsistencies for key constructs in the mHealth literature. In an effort to achieve clarity, we tease apart several patient-centered care outcomes, and outline methodologies appropriate to measure each of these patient-care outcomes. By creating a common pathway linking definitions with outcomes and methodologies, we provide a possible interdisciplinary approach to evaluating mHealth technologies. With the broader goal of creating an interdisciplinary approach, we also provide several recommendations that we believe can advance mHealth research and implementation.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e17577) doi:10.2196/17577

KEYWORDS
innovation; health care; digital technology; digital interventions; patient-facing technologies; patient-centered care; patient centeredness; patient experience; patient engagement; patient activation; quality; effectiveness; quality improvement; information technologies; outcomes; readmissions; length of stay; patient adherence

Background

Mobile health (mHealth) is defined by the World Health Organization as “medical and public health practice supported by mobile devices, such as mobile phones, patient monitoring devices, personal digital assistance, and other wireless devices” [1,2]. mHealth is considered the future of health care [3,4], and many health care organizations have embraced mHealth as part of their patient-centered initiatives. Specifically, according to a US News & World report, 18 of the top 20 medical centers

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17577/
have adopted and widely celebrated mHealth technologies, at least in a review we conducted of their websites [5]. The National Institutes of Health funding for developing, testing, and implementing mHealth interventions grew from US $16.8 million in 2014 to US $39.4 million in 2018 [6]. Despite the growth and hype of mHealth technologies, there is a paucity of effectiveness evidence in the literature to support such widespread implementation [6]. Several recently published studies and consensus statements have demonstrated that there is only modest (and in many cases, low-quality) evidence that mHealth can improve patient clinical outcomes such as lengths of stay or reduction of readmissions [6-9]. There is also uncertainty as to whether mHealth can improve patient-centered outcomes such as patient engagement or patient satisfaction [6-10]. One principal challenge behind the “effectiveness” research is a lack of shared understanding about what it means to be effective in the digital space (ie, what should constitute a relevant outcome and how best to measure it) [2]. This lack of a shared understanding can likely be attributed to the multidisciplinary, multifaceted nature of mHealth, often involving disciplines such as engineering, data science, systems science, human-computer interaction, behavioral sciences, public health, and medicine [10-13]. Each discipline tends to frame its effectiveness research in terms of its own specialized knowledge [13], thereby limiting the generalizability of research results across domains.

In this viewpoint, we call for interdisciplinary, conceptual clarity on the definitions, methodologies, and patient-centered outcomes frequently used in mHealth research. There have been recent, important calls in the literature for conceptual clarity about engagement [6,10-13]; however, as we demonstrate below, engagement is only one facet of patient-centered care [14] and it is not always clear that sustained engagement is required to achieve mHealth outcomes [2]. Stated differently, a shared understanding about engagement is necessary but not sufficient for an interdisciplinary research approach. Conceptual clarity on engagement can only go so far to reduce the current fragmentation of research efforts [12]. Instead, what is needed is consideration beyond one measure of patient-centered care to include several measures of patient-centered care and the methods for evaluating them. By creating a common pathway linking definitions with outcomes and methodologies, we hope to draw a comprehensive (but not necessarily exhaustive) outline of a possible interdisciplinary approach to evaluating mHealth technologies.

To formulate our recommendations, we used a snowballing approach to identify relevant definitions, outcomes, and methodologies related to mHealth. To begin, we drew heavily upon the work of Perski et al [12], Yardley et al [6,13], and Short et al [10], among others [14,15], whose detailed frameworks enumerate the definitions and measurements of engagement [15]. We built upon their frameworks by extracting other relevant measures of patient-centered care, such as patient satisfaction, patient experience, and patient activation, drawing on the quality and patient safety literature—a literature base that has, thus far, to our knowledge, been largely untapped in the mHealth context.

Quality health care refers to care that is safe, effective, patient-centered, timely, efficient, and equitable [11,16]. In the mHealth context, most of the work comes from informaticians rather than health care quality practitioners. Theory-based informatics research must be informed by the frontline real-world, hospital environment where health care quality takes place, because patients are different than consumers or research participants [11,17]. Patients experience a constellation of complex, emotionally laden perspectives during their use of mHealth technology that may not be considered when conducting informatics research outside of the hospital setting [18]. The field of health care quality can help advance mHealth research in its evidence-based emphasis on the patient, his or her experiences, and how the continuum of care can influence outcomes that matter to the patient [19,20].

A data extraction table was used to sort, explore, and synthesize existing research (see Multimedia Appendix 1). We filtered and coded our findings based on whether a definition was proposed, whether outcome measures were discussed (and what the outcome measures were), and methodologies used to assess the outcomes. We reran the search queries that were performed in 5 recent, frequently cited systematic reviews [6,12,14,21,22] using the Medline, PsycINFO, PubMed, and Google Scholar databases. Although we did not intend to perform a systematic review for this Viewpoint, we believe that this research approach was comprehensive and could be used to formulate recommendations based on gaps and inconsistencies in the literature.

**Defining Patient-Centered mHealth Technologies**

A survey of the literature highlights the myriad terms used in mHealth and the various ways in which they are defined. The terms “mHealth,” “telehealth,” “eHealth,” and “digital technologies” are often treated synonymously [23], although, in reality, they could be different in that eHealth or digital technologies can encompass devices that are not supported by mobile means, such as hospital check-in or registration portals to more advanced technologies designed to enhance patient understanding through education and communication such as Smart Boards and Smart TVs located on hospital units [24].

Digital behavior change interventions (DBCIs) are a subset of eHealth, defined as “a product or service that uses computer technology to promote behavior change,” which can be delivered through computer programs, websites, mobile phones as text message, smartphone apps, or wearable devices [6].

Patient-centered care is a health care quality indicator proposed by the Institute of Medicine (IOM) [25]. Patient-centered care has generally been poorly defined, with authors often conflating several distinct concepts such as using the term “patient-centered care” when they are usually referring to a specific outcome measure of patient-centered care [26]. As the IOM explains, patient-centered care is care that is “respectful of and responsive to individual patient preferences, needs, and values, and ensuring that patient values guide all clinical decisions” [25]. Through this lens, patient-centered care can be conceptualized as an
overarching, broad concept that puts emphasis on respecting patients as a means of honoring their dignity and worth [26,27]. By extension, patient-centered mHealth technologies can be defined as technologies supported by mobile devices designed to promote patient-centered care. There are several outcome measures for patient-centered care.

**Patient-Centered Care Outcomes for Patient-Centered mHealth Technologies**

“Patient experience” is likely the strongest, most proximate outcome measure of patient-centered care. Patient experience refers to any process observable by patients, including subjective experiences (eg, pain control) and their objective experiences (eg, wait time) [28,29]. A primary feature of patient experience is that it reflects actual health care experiences [30]. Another important feature of patient experience is that it refers to a time sequence. Specifically, patient experience can refer to the first touchpoint within an episode of care (eg, being assessed for a left knee replacement) to the last touchpoint within that episode (eg, last follow-up appointment following surgery for a left knee replacement). Alternatively, patient experience can refer to the whole continuum of care—their first encounter with Hospital A to their last encounter with Hospital A.

“Patient engagement” and “patient activation” are two outcome measures of patient-centered care that are distinct from patient experience. In particular, “patient engagement” has been defined in various ways in the literature [14,30,31]. Recent proposals for integrative definitions of engagement have defined engagement as consisting of objective and subjective components [6,12,13]. The objective component is the extent (eg, amount, frequency, duration, and depth) of usage of the mHealth technology [12]. With respect to what constitutes sufficient objective engagement, the literature demonstrates a palpable lack of consensus [15,31]. Some researchers have proposed that a certain empirical threshold of engagement must be met to show sufficient engagement with the intervention to achieve intended outcomes [13], whereas others suggest that one critical point of engagement or fluid, ebbing, and flowing engagement may be sufficient [32,33]. The subjective element of engagement is often characterized by the user’s attention, interest, and affect—their overall experience in engaging with the specific mHealth technology [10,12].

“Patient activation” is a patient-centered care outcome measure that refers to patients’ “willingness and ability to take independent actions to manage their health,” such as avoiding health-damaging behaviors and adopting healthy lifestyle choices, including exercising regularly, eating well, or monitoring their glucose levels [34]. DBCIs usually attempt to evaluate patient activation [34-36], although they may indicate that they are designed to assess adherence or engagement. “Adherence” is often confused with “engagement” and has been defined in at least three separate ways: adherence could refer to whether the intervention is used as intended by the developers [10,32], the usage of mHealth [37] (which is more accurately called engagement), or the patient’s willingness and ability to adhere to the recommendations provided by their physician or health care provider (which is likely the most common use of the word “adherence” in medico-legal parlance) [35,38-40].

Taken together, patient engagement typically refers to patients’ engagement with an intervention itself, whereas patient activation refers to patients’ physical and mental health-related activities based on what they learned from an intervention [34,41]. Patients can be engaged by, for example, reading digital messages on the importance of exercising and still not be activated to start exercising [34].

Patient engagement and activation are distinct outcome measures from patient experience in that patient experience refers to patients’ perceptions of others’ actions, whereas patient engagement and activation refer to patients’ actions [27,42]. Patient experience, engagement, and activation are all measures of patient-centered care in that they put emphasis on the patient playing an integral role in their outcomes [43,44], with the ultimate decision-making authority resting with patients. Further, all three concepts can be evaluated empirically.

Finally, “patient satisfaction” is the most attenuated outcome measure of patient-centered care. Patient satisfaction is a term that is often used in health care quality parlance and yet is frequently misunderstood [27] owing to one key feature of satisfaction that is often ignored: satisfaction has little to do with quality [22,27,29]. Patient satisfaction only refers to whether patients’ expectations were met [22,27]. Patients can be satisfied with care that is low quality and yet be dissatisfied with high-quality care. For this reason, it is incorrect to say that the Hospital Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Provider and Systems survey, the first standardized, publicly reported survey of patient perspectives [45], measures patient satisfaction when, in actuality, the survey uses patient experience as its primary measure for patient-centered care [27,28,46].

As the above discussion illustrates, to date, we have not achieved a shared understanding of important mHealth constructs, or how to conceptualize and operationalize them [10]. Thus, if the mHealth community is to continue to promote the use of patient-centered mHealth technologies (ie, mHealth technologies that are designed with the goal of promoting patient-centered care, as measured by patient experience, patient engagement, patient activation, or patient satisfaction), then we need precision in our terminology to extrapolate generalizable, transferable results [6,31].

**Methodologies Used to Empirically Assess Patient-Centered Outcomes**

To validly measure a concept, there must be a tight linkage between the patient-centered care construct (ie, the outcome measure) and items developed for measurement [47]. Below, we describe several methodologies that can assess each patient-centered outcome.

**Patient Experience**

There are several qualitative methodologies that are ideal for assessing patient experience. Focus groups, semistructured interviews, observational studies, patient journey mapping, and walk-throughs are all appropriate to assess patient experience.
Semistructured interviews (where the interviewer uses a structured guide to aid conversation) are most helpful to elicit patients’ experiences, as well as to elicit particular informational and decisional needs. For example, consider an mHealth technology that provides educational messages (through text and email) to prepare and inform patients about their upcoming surgery. Asking patients to reflect on whether they had gaps in knowledge after completion of the module (eg, gaps in knowledge about surgery lifestyle impacts, surgical risks/benefits, and technical aspects of the surgery, or recovery trajectories and activities) would help elicit patients’ informational needs [29].

To assess patient experience, researchers should aim to elicit both definitional components of patient experience: (a) patients’ subjective and objective assessments of what occurred, and (b) patients’ observations across the full sequence of time [28,45]. Thus, if only one touchpoint of care within an episode is evaluated—such as patient experiences using a digital check-in registration system during a scheduled surgery—then it likely cannot be said that patient experience was fully assessed. A more precise methodology would be one in which teams systematically evaluate patient experiences through all touchpoints using walk-throughs or patient journey mapping, starting from appointment scheduling, to the registration check-in, to the digital navigation system that shows patients how to get to a particular department, to the Smart TVs or Smart Boards within the patients’ hospital rooms, and all the way to the patients’ beside tablet-based and electronic health record solutions [50-52]. The goal of walk-throughs and journey mapping is to ask patients what they are feeling, seeing, and experiencing as they move from, say, the registration portal to a patient room [50].

**Patient Engagement**

Short and colleagues [10] describe several methodologies that are appropriate to evaluate patient engagement. To assess patient engagement, researchers should aim to elicit both definitional components of patient engagement: the objective component, as the extent (eg, amount, frequency, duration, and depth) of usage of the mHealth technology, as well users’ subjective assessment in using the mHealth technology [13]. The objective component is likely best evaluated using quantitative measures such as the number of login attempts, the time spent on a technology, the time spent reading a particular message or conducting an e-module, or the amount of bidirectional communication between a patient and provider using an mHealth technology [11,13,53-58]. The subjective component of engagement can likely best be evaluated using qualitative methodologies such as semistructured interviews and focus groups, which tend to be most appropriate for teasing out themes, as well as users’ beliefs, narratives, and perceptions [23].

**Patient Activation**

There is a heavy behavioral dimension to patient activation—what the patient does in response to the intervention in terms of his or her health-related activities—which can be assessed quantitatively [58,59]. Several studies that claim to measure patient engagement are arguably instead measuring patient activation [60-62]. Whether a patient had higher medication adherence [63,64], higher levels of physical exercise [9,65,66], or improved diabetes management as a result of the mHealth intervention [67,68] can be considered patient activation if the patient took healthy actions based on what he/she learned through the mHealth technology. These medical, clinically based health outcomes can be empirically derived using electronic medical records. There are also validated, reliable quantitative measures available to evaluate patient activation [58,59].

**Patient Satisfaction**

Patient satisfaction is generally considered to be the most attenuated outcome measure for patient-centered mHealth technologies and thus can likely be assessed from a purely descriptive [69] quantitative point of view, devoid of any thematic nuancing that qualitative measures can afford. There are numerous quantitative measures available to evaluate patient satisfaction, although the validity and reliability of the instruments have been a point of debate [69-80].

Table 1 outlines a common pathway linking definitions with outcomes and methodologies. The table is not intended to be exhaustive but is instead designed to provide a robust set of patient-centered constructs, outcome measures, and methodologies. In this summary, we refrained from including strictly objective, physiological measures because the patient-centered constructs depend heavily on the subjective experience of patients, which physiological measures often cannot elicit.
### Table 1. Patient-centered mobile health (mHealth) technologies: outcome measures, methodologies, and definitions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome measures</th>
<th>Definitions</th>
<th>Methodologies</th>
<th>Quantitative</th>
<th>Example mHealth Technologies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patient experience</strong></td>
<td>Any process observable by patients, including subjective experiences (e.g., pain control) and their objective experiences (e.g., wait time). Must refer to the entire sequence in the care episode or full continuum of care—from the first to the last touchpoint.</td>
<td>Semistructured interviews, think aloud exercises, focus groups</td>
<td>Walk-throughs (eg, the Walk Through Tool [48]) Patient Journey Mapping Tool [49,50] Impact of Assistive Devices Scale (PIADS) [51]</td>
<td>Touchscreen kiosks for registration or check-in Digital navigation systems to help patients navigate the hospital Smart TVs in hospital rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patient engagement</strong></td>
<td>The extent (eg, amount, frequency, duration, and depth) of usage of the mHealth technology, coupled with the user’s subjective assessment in using the mHealth technology.</td>
<td>Semistructured interviews, think aloud exercises, focus groups</td>
<td>Self-report questionnaires (eg, the eHealth Engagement Scale and the Digital Behavior Change Intervention Engagement Scale [52]) Usability and acceptability scales (eg, The mHealth App Usability Questionnaire [MAUQ] [53]) Social Networking Time Use Scale (SONTUS) [54] Facebook Intensity Scale (FBI Scale) [55] Media and Technology Usage and Attitudes Scale (MTUAS) [56] Chinese Internet Gaming Disorder Scale [57] Number of logins; time spent on mHealth; time spent reading a message; number of monitoring questions for which there was a response</td>
<td>Two-way bidirectional communication on a communication or education mobile platform Secure SMS text message/email/push notifications, self-scheduling, medical record access, patient-provider messaging, and bill pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patient activation</strong></td>
<td>Willingness and ability to take independent actions to manage their health</td>
<td>Focus groups, semistructured interviews</td>
<td>Patient Activation Measure (PAM) [58,59]</td>
<td>Digital behavior change interventions Patient biosensor monitoring devices (eg, glucose monitoring kits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patient satisfaction</strong></td>
<td>Whether a patient’s expectations were met.</td>
<td>Semistructured interviews</td>
<td>Short Assessment of Patient Satisfaction (SAPS) [60] Risser Patient Satisfaction Scale [61] Patient Satisfaction Questionnaire (PSQ) (multiple iterations) [62] Quebec User Evaluation of Satisfaction with Assistive Technology (QUEST) [63]</td>
<td>Patient-reported outcomes collection via mHealth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommendations

Above, we have described several definitional inconsistencies for key constructs in the mHealth literature. In an effort to achieve clarity, we teased apart several patient-centered care outcomes, and we outline methodologies appropriate to measure each of the patient-care outcomes (Table 1). In what follows, we provide recommendations for evaluating mHealth patient-centered technologies. Our recommendations relate to the patient-centered constructs in that we advocate for patients taking center stage in mHealth research and collaboration efforts to enhance patient experience, patient engagement, patient activation, and patient satisfaction.

#### Recommendation 1: Use Patients When Assessing Patient-Centered Care mHealth Technologies

Patient participation is a central tenet of ethically driven research and product development [81-83]. Unfortunately, much of mHealth research only engages patients in the beginning phases during agenda-setting and protocol development [83]. Systematic reviews have found that little research involves patients throughout the development, implementation, and modification phases of mHealth patient-centered technologies [83,84]. Reviews have also found that patient participation is often treated as a tokenistic measure, one in which patients’ feedback is used primarily as a means of “rubberstamping” to secure funding or to approve a previously chosen decision made...
by the research or design team, rather than using patients as principal drivers of decision-making [83,84].

The main reason that patient participation is integral to conducting ethically driven mHealth research and product development is because patients are unique [42,85]; they should not be viewed as the same type of customers found in other sectors [6]. For instance, customers of any other good or service have luxuries that patients may not have. Patients become consumers, arguably not by choice but rather by need. Patients’ preferences are largely unknown when the good or service is used, and they have limited channels of communication and limited control [42]. Patients likely experience physical or emotional impairments such as fears, grief, and anxiety while using the service [86]. All of these factors likely suggest that a particular patient’s informational and decision-making needs are different from those that they would have outside of a health care context [86-89]. Patient participation and active engagement are the classic tenets of task, user, representation, and functional analysis used to inform system designers and leadership that are contemplating implementing solutions to patient-centered problems [87-89].

Recommendation 2: Create an International Collaboration to Enhance the Quality and Effectiveness of mHealth Technologies

mHealth technologies are the future for patient-centered care [3,74]. However, the extent to which mHealth technologies influence or impact patient-centered care is unclear [6], which is likely owing to the imprecision in definitions, methodological approaches, and disjointed interests of multiple stakeholders within health care organizations and industry [2].

We contend that some form of self-regulation or an internationally used assessment framework is needed to ensure that quality standards are met before wide-scale dissemination of any patient-centered mHealth technology [2]. The US Food and Drug Administration has taken a passive approach, explicitly applying its regulatory oversight to only those software functions that are medical devices and whose functionality could pose a risk to a patient safety if the device were to not function as intended [90]. The European Commission mHealth Green Paper does not give any recommendations [91]. The Health Technology Assessment Agency and its collaborative networks have discussed the importance of a collaborative approach, but, at the time of this writing, have failed to provide some form of a comprehensive evaluative framework [92,93].

When patient decision aids were being developed and implemented at a rapid pace without high-quality evidence, an international collaboration among researchers, practitioners, and stakeholders was instituted to enhance the quality and effectiveness of patient decision aids, called the International Patient Decision Aids (IPDAS) Collaboration [94]. The group established (and routinely revises) an evidence-informed framework, which outlines actions that patient decision-aid developers should take in terms of content-writing, development, implementation, and evaluation. The IPDAS Collaboration “grades” decision aids based on whether and to what degree the aids meet parameters, and the score can be used in marketing and evaluating the patient decision aid [94].

An international collaboration similar to that used for patient decision aids is, we believe, appropriate for the regulation and systematic evaluation of patient-centered mHealth technologies. Similar to patient decision aids, the successful implementation of patient-centered mHealth requires multidisciplinary teams from academia, industry, and health care management sectors, along with patients and consumers working collaboratively to maintain the requisite medical, statistical, information technology, patient-centered, and research expertise necessary to implement and evaluate mHealth technologies [95], which an international collaboration would afford. There are several actions a large collaboration could take to encourage high-quality development and dissemination of digital technologies.

First, because of its large scale, an international collaboration would be well-positioned to help address barriers to electronic interoperability issues that stem from disparate proprietary digital health record systems by, for example, creating digital health data exchange platforms to standardize data [95]. Second, a collaboration could disseminate practical advice on how organizations can use their foundational digital systems to leverage existing capabilities for achieving coordination through bolt-on, incremental development of digital technologies. Third, an international collaboration could build upon our work to develop exhaustive criteria and methodology standards for how to design, produce, implement, and evaluate digital technologies.

Conclusion

In this Viewpoint, we called for interdisciplinary, conceptual clarity on the definitions, methodologies, and patient-centered outcomes frequently used in mHealth research. In doing so, we advocate for consideration of several measures of patient-centered care, and we outline various methods for evaluating them. By creating a common pathway linking definitions with outcomes and methodologies, we provide a possible interdisciplinary approach to evaluating mHealth technologies.

To that end of creating an interdisciplinary approach, we also provide several recommendations that we believe can advance mHealth research and implementation. For instance, if an international collaboration were created to develop evaluative criteria, using the guidance provided here to ground criteria development, then low-quality digital technologies would likely be excluded. Transparency and precision would be promoted, large-scale published evidence would be encouraged [3], and mHealth technologies could finally flourish within a high-quality, patient-centered landscape.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.
References


This content is from the article: "MHealth and UHealth" by Bruce et al. on page 22 of the journal issue. The content is a compilation of references related to patient-centered care, patient-reported outcomes, and technology in healthcare. It includes studies on the effectiveness of interventions, the role of user engagement, and the use of digital health interventions. The references cover a range of topics from patient adherence to medical recommendations to the impact of technology on patient-centered care.


Abbreviations

DBCI: digital behavior change intervention
IOM: Institute of Medicine
IPDAS: International Patient Decision Aids
mHealth: mobile health

©Courtenay Bruce, Patricia Harrison, Charlie Giammattei, Shetal-Nicholas Desai, Joshua R Sol, Stephen Jones, Roberta Schwartz. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 11.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Scientific Publication Patterns of Mobile Technologies and Apps for Posttraumatic Stress Disorder Treatment: Bibliometric Co-Word Analysis

Atik Kulakli*, BA, MSc, MA, PhD; Ivanna Shubina*, BA, MA, PhD
1Department of Management Information Systems, College of Business Administration, American University of the Middle East, Egaila, Kuwait
2Psychology, General Education, Liberal Arts Department, American University of the Middle East, Egaila, Kuwait
*all authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Atik Kulakli, BA, MSc, MA, PhD
Department of Management Information Systems
College of Business Administration
American University of the Middle East
Block 6, Building 1
Egaila, 54200
Kuwait
Phone: 965 22251400
Fax: 965 26548484
Email: atik.kulakli@aum.edu.kw

Abstract

Background: Mobile apps are viewed as a promising opportunity to provide support for patients who have posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD). The development of mobile technologies and apps shows similar trends in PTSD treatment. Therefore, this emerging research field has received substantial attention. Consequently, various research settings are planned for current and further studies.

Objective: The aim of this study was to explore the scientific patterns of research domains related to mobile apps and other technologies for PTSD treatment in scholarly publications, and to suggest further studies for this emerging research field.

Methods: We conducted a bibliometric analysis to identify publication patterns, most important keywords, trends for topicality, and text analysis, along with construction of a word cloud for papers published in the last decade (2010 to 2019). Research questions were formulated based on the relevant literature. In particular, we concentrated on highly ranked sources. Based on the proven bibliometric approach, the data were ultimately retrieved from the Web of Science Core Collection (Clarivate Analytics).

Results: A total of 64 studies were found concerning the research domains. The vast majority of the papers were written in the English language (63/64, 98%) with the remaining article (1/64, 2%) written in French. The articles were written by 323 authors/coauthors from 11 different countries, with the United States predominating, followed by England, Canada, Italy, the Netherlands, Australia, France, Germany, Mexico, Sweden, and Vietnam. The most common publication type was peer-reviewed journal articles (48/64, 75%), followed by reviews (8/64, 13%), meeting abstracts (5/64, 8%), news items (2/64, 3%), and a proceeding (1/64, 2%). There was a mean of 6.4 papers published per year over the study period. There was a 100% increase in the number of publications published from 2016 to 2019 with a mean of 13.33 papers published per year during this latter period.

Conclusions: Although the number of papers on mobile technologies for PTSD was quite low in the early period, there has been an overall increase in this research domain in recent years (2016-2019). Overall, these findings indicate that mobile health tools in combination with traditional treatment for mental disorders among veterans increase the efficiency of health interventions, including reducing PTSD symptoms, improving quality of life, conducting intervention evaluation, and monitoring of improvements. Mobile apps and technologies can be used as supportive tools in managing pain, anger, stress, and sleep disturbance. These findings therefore provide a useful overview of the publication trends on research domains that can inform further studies and highlight potential gaps in this field.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19391) doi:10.2196/19391
KEYWORDS
posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD); mobile technologies; mobile apps; treatment; text analysis; co-word analysis; bibliometric; Web of Science

Introduction

Mobile technologies have emerged as useful tools to support patients who have posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) [1]. Recent studies in this field have mainly focused on the development and evaluation of mobile health (mHealth) tools [2], assessing their efficacy within a health care field [3], and developing a standard for creating PTSD-related mHealth apps [4].

New mobile technologies are accessible and cost-effective tools to assist in identifying PTSD symptoms [5,6] and suicidal behaviors [7]. Mobile technologies are supportive in prognosticating the impact that PTSD symptoms have on treatment efficiency [8], in the evaluation of the effectiveness of psychotherapy [9,10] and its precision [11], and in helping individuals manage their mental health [12,13]. The most common benefits of using mobile interventions are cost-effectiveness, reducing waiting lists, and high accessibility [5].

Thus, mHealth tools have potential for supporting traditional treatment for mental disorders among veterans with PTSD [14]. Mood Tracker [15] and other mHealth apps (eg, Parenting 2GO, PTSD Coach, and PTSD Family Coach) were established for the treatment of military staff diagnosed with PTSD and their families [16], which have been demonstrated to be feasible and relevant. In addition, the efficiency of a mobile app designed to screen trauma-related symptoms as a diagnostic tool for trauma survivors was proven [8].

New strategies for a self-managed and web-based wellness training program for PTSD veterans are recognized as being accessible, low-cost, and efficient to decrease PTSD symptoms [5]. A similar study showed no significant difference in effectiveness between a mindfulness training program delivered by a psychotherapist and the same program provided through a self-directed mobile app [6]. Fraynt et al [17] explored the ability of a mobile app to help support the transition to civilian life among PTSD veterans. Similarly, Pavliscak et al [18] demonstrated the importance of engagement with an mHealth app among service members with PTSD symptoms in transition to help improve communication skills.

In addition, several studies have examined the use of mobile apps in treatment for smokers with PTSD [19,20] and their use in integrated care [12,13], demonstrating their effectiveness and congruency. A pilot study on the mobile app PTSD Coach demonstrated a significant improvement in quality of life among patients with PTSD [21]. Another study showed the efficiency of the Moodivate app in managing limitations associated with evidence-based psychotherapy by decreasing the symptoms of PTSD and depression among adults [22,23]. Other studies on mobile apps for the treatment of anger symptoms [24,25] and in managing pain among individuals with PTSD [26,27] showed feasibility and therapeutic benefits. Overall, mHealth has been evaluated to be effective in reducing emotional dysregulation among veterans with PTSD [28]. Other comparative studies between in vivo exposure and virtual reality–based exposure therapies for patients with PTSD symptoms indicated that the virtual experience was considered to be a more flexible approach [29,30].

An influential group of studies has focused on how mobile technology can be useful in applying cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) for various mental health conditions. The special needs of patients with PTSD create a demand for modified approaches other than therapeutic sessions in vivo [31] and more creative tools used in treatment [32]. Recent systematic reviews [9,10,30] have explored the efficacy of the mHealth apps embodying CBT principles for the treatment of various mental disorders, including PTSD. For example, Martinez-Miranda et al [7] assessed the effectiveness of applying a mobile-based app in recognizing individuals diagnosed with PTSD and demonstrating suicidal behaviors. Wang et al [33] indicated the high potential and efficiency of mobile apps in the monitoring and management of mental disorders, including PTSD. Stirman et al [34] assessed an app designed for creating and assessing universal worksheets to help evaluate the accuracy of CBT therapy sessions for patients with PTSD. Evans et al [35] investigated the development of a cognitive assessment tool via mobile technology. A similar study by Price et al [36] suggested that PTSD checklists delivered through a mobile app or on paper were equally efficient.

Therefore, new technology as a psychological tool in treating PTSD has been explored by researchers in various modalities, including mobile apps, mHealth, web-based programs, virtual reality, checklists, and assessments [30]. However, the majority of mHealth apps that are currently available lack clinically validated evidence of their efficacy [3]. Accordingly, the primary aim of this study was to explore scientific publication patterns in the research domain of “mobile technologies and apps” concerning PTSD. We further aimed to reveal the contribution of scientific knowledge by highlighting the gaps and provide new directions of potential development areas for further studies.

Methods

Research Questions

Based on the research scope and objectives, the following four research questions formulated:

RQ1: What are the characteristics (descriptive) of the publications? How many papers on “mobile technologies and apps” concerning “posttraumatic stress disorder” have been published between 2010 and 2019?

RQ2: Who are the most productive authors/coauthors in this field, and what are their countries of origin? What are the citation metrics of these authors?
**RQ3:** What are the main topics and organizations that contribute to this research area?

**RQ4:** What are the co-words (keywords/text) associated with these publications?

---

### Bibliometric Study

A bibliometric study enables researchers to explore patterns, trends, associations, and scientific developments related to searched domains, along with interrelated fields over publication data. This analysis requires a structured bibliometric database to obtain appropriate data for answering research questions [37-39].

Bibliometrics is also defined as a statistical method to analyze bibliometric publications data over a wide spectrum such as peer-reviewed journal articles, books, conference proceedings, periodicals, reviews, reports, and related reports. There are various analysis methods for a literature review along with bibliometric tools [37,40-43]. This approach allows for further obtaining more in-depth understanding of a given topic and its publication trends.

In this study, we employed a bibliometric approach for obtaining descriptive publication results, author/coauthor productivity metrics, source impact analysis, along with keyword and most common co-word (text) analysis [38,44-47].

### Co-word (Text) Analysis and Word Cloud

A word cloud, also known as a “tag cloud,” is a visual representation of text data [39] from various keywords or any given text material [42]. According to the Web of Science dataset structure, a word cloud has four main categories to analyze: abstract, title of the paper, author keywords, and keyword plus (see Multimedia Appendix 1). Depending on the frequency of text data regarding the main categories, the significant terms and tags are highlighted, which are usually single words represented by a single font size and color based on their relative importance. Bold and larger-sized words indicate that the word has more importance and has attracted researchers’ increasing attention in the subject domain field [48]. Keywords or any other text datasets among these four categories were collected from the articles to conduct the co-word analysis and to construct a word cloud to illustrate the power of words based on their frequencies in the literature [49].

### Data Collection and Extraction

A bibliometric study requires a structured database to analyze publication data. The main two bibliometric databases available for this purpose are ISI Web of Science and Scopus. ISI Web of Science provides data on the highest ranked and impactful (prestigious) sources, whereas Scopus also ranks the same sources in addition to other sources with wider coverage, including conferences, symposia, and congress proceedings. In addition, PubMed is a commonly used database in the medical field. Journals focused on mHealth mostly rank in the highest quartile (Q1) in Web of Science as well. Therefore, we chose to focus on these highly ranked (Q1) and high-impact sources in Web of Science to maintain consistency of citations in a single database with SCI-Expanded and SSCI indexing. We only used PubMed for comparison purposes and as a secondary source of indexing. All databases have their citation count categories. The citation results are significant to keep all publications within the same quartile and for consistency of comparisons at the same level (Q1 ranking and indexing). Finally, publication data were retrieved from the Web of Science database using the search strategy shown in Textbox 1 [9,37,38,40,42].

---

**Textbox 1.** Search criteria and strategy.

| TITLE: ("*mobile*" OR "mobile*" OR "*Mobile*" OR "Mobile*") AND |
| TOPIC: ("PTSD" OR "post-traumatic stress disorder" OR "post traumatic stress disorder" OR "posttraumatic stress disorder") (Journal articles title; keywords, abstract) |
| Database: PubMed |
| Database: ISI Web of Science Core Collection (Clarivate Analytics) |
| Indexes: SCI-EXPANDED, SSCI |
| Timespan: all years of (2010-2019) |

*64 were papers found in the Web of Science list, including 40 matching papers in PubMed.*

The data were retrieved as plain .txt, .xls, .csv, and .bib file formats for further analysis. The Microsoft Excel and R Language (version R x64 3.6.1) R Studio software with the "bibliometrix" package [39] were used for descriptive and bibliometric data analysis, respectively [48].

### Results

#### Publication Profile and Descriptive Publication Results

A total of 64 publications for the research domain were retrieved from the ISI Web of Science database (Multimedia Appendix 2). In comparison to the PubMed results, 40 papers were found in the same dataset of the Web of Science–retrieved publications. The vast majority of the papers were written in the English language (63/64, 98%) with the remaining article written in French (1/64, 2%). Overall, there were 323 authors/coauthors from 11 different countries, with the United States being the most common, followed by England, Canada, Italy, the Netherlands, Australia, France, Germany, Mexico, Sweden, and Vietnam. The descriptive summary of these publications showed that the majority were peer-reviewed journal articles (48/64, 75%), followed by reviews (8/64, 13%), meeting abstracts (5/64, 8%), news items (2/64, 3), and proceedings (1/64, 2%). There was a mean number of 6.4 papers
published on the topic per year, with a 100% increase in the number of publications found for the period of 2016-2019, along with a corresponding increase in the mean number of papers published per year during this period to 13.33.

Web of Science-Core Collection subject category data were used to categorize the related research domains under the top 12 major subjects, which are summarized in Table 1, comprising topics with at least 3 publications. Other minor subject categories with 2 publications included Computer Science Information Systems and Neurosciences, and those with 1 paper each included Computer Science Interdisciplinary Applications, Education Educational Research, Environmental Sciences, Health Policy Services, Information Science Library Science, Medicine Research Experimental, Nursing, Oncology, Pediatrics, Psychology Experimental, Rehabilitation, and Respiratory System.

Table 1. Publications in the top Web of Science subject areas from 2010 to 2019 (N=64).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject category</th>
<th>Publications, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psychiatry</td>
<td>23 (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology Clinical</td>
<td>16 (26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Care Sciences Services</td>
<td>11 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical Informatics</td>
<td>11 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicine General Internal</td>
<td>8 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology Multidisciplinary</td>
<td>6 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology</td>
<td>4 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substance Abuse</td>
<td>4 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Neurology</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacology Pharmacy</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Environmental Occupational Health</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distribution of Publications Over Time

Figure 1 presents the publication records by year starting from 2010 through to the end of the decade in 2019. There was only one publication recorded for 2010 and 2011, followed by a slight increase from 2012 to 2013. From 2013 to 2014, the number of publications increased sharply from 2 to 5, with a steady increase until 2016 (n=5 to n=7). A sharp increase was observed from 2016 (n=7) to 2019 (n=14), representing a 100% increase in the publication count. The last 3 years reflect increasing research interest in the topic, as the period with the highest count in the dataset. The mean number of publications per year for the entire period was 6.4, increasing to 13.33 from 2016 to 2019. The publication distribution also supports this upward movement as shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1. Publication records by year.

Most Productive Authors/Coauthors

Table 2 provides the descriptive results for authors and coauthors of the retrieved publications. Only 6 papers were published as single-authored documents, whereas 317 papers were multiple-authored documents, and there were 323 different authors with 366 appearances.
Table 2. Author and coauthor descriptive results for all documents published between 2010 and 2019.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptive results</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authors</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author appearances</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authors of single-authored documents</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authors of multi-authored documents</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents per author</td>
<td>0.198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authors per document</td>
<td>2.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coauthors per document</td>
<td>5.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collaboration index</td>
<td>5.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average citations per document</td>
<td>7.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Among the top 20 most productive authors, Kuhn (n=7 records) was identified as a leading author; followed by Beckham (n=5 records); Calhoun (n=4 records); and Dennis, Marx, and Moore (n=3 records each) in the top category. Others at the same level with 2 papers each include Acierno, Carpenter MJ, Carpenter VL, Dahne, Dedert, Dennis, Diaz, Felton, Hertzberg, Hoffman, Jovanovic, Kirby, and Kizakevich.

Table 3 shows the top 10 most productive countries that contributed to the research domain fields. The top country was the United States, followed by Germany, Italy, the Netherlands, United Kingdom, Australia, Canada, France, Mexico, and Sweden.

Table 3. Most relevant countries by corresponding author.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Articles, N</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>SCP&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>MCP&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>MCP/article ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0.776</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.035</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.035</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.035</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.035</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>SCP: single-country publication.
<sup>b</sup>MCP: multiple-country publication.

Table 4 shows the contributed institutions from various countries around the world. Harvard University and Stanford University emerged as the leading institutions with 8 papers each, and 13 universities ranked at the top of the dataset among the total 156 contributing institutions.
Table 4. Institutions with the greatest contributions to the field (N=156).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Publications, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harvard University</td>
<td>8 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stanford University</td>
<td>8 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke University</td>
<td>7 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US Department of Veteran Affairs</td>
<td>7 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA Palo Alto Health Care System</td>
<td>7 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA Boston Healthcare System</td>
<td>6 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durham VA Medical Center</td>
<td>5 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boston University</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvard Medical School</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical University of South Carolina</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University of California System</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University of Washington</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University of Washington Seattle</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Citation Results

The citation report of the 64 publications derived from the Web of Science Core Collection statistics between 2010 and 2019 showed that the H-index was 12 and the average number of citations per item was 7.9. The sum of times an article was cited in total was 509, which was reduced to 471 after excluding self-citations. The number of cited articles was 421 in total and was 402 after excluding self-citations. Figure 2 shows the total citation distribution throughout the research timeframe. Although the citation statistics are available as of 2012, an increase was only observed as of 2015 (n=28), followed by a steady increase until 2019. From 2016 to 2017 and from 2017 to 2018, the citation counts nearly doubled, reaching 217 by 2019.

Figure 2. Total publication/citation counts per year (2010-2019).

Table 5 presents the top 10 journals by citation counts. Olff [2] was the leading paper with the highest number of citations (n=58) during the search period. The top 10 citations comprised 299 of the total 509 citations (58.7%) starting from 2012 to 2019. There was a mean of 29.9 per year. Therefore, 4 papers were above the mean: Olff [2], Hertzberg et al [19], Van Ameringen et al [50], and Repetto et al [29], published in 2015, 2013, 2017, and 2013, respectively. Although the papers only started to be cited as of 2012, the citation counts showed a substantial (3-times) increase from 2014 to 2015 (from 6 to 20 counts). The most citations were recorded in 2019 (n=108).

The leading journal publishing these studies was *Journal of Medical Internet Research (JMIR)* with 3 articles, and the remaining journals only included 1 article each published in the top 10 list. The majority of these papers were related to mobile technology and apps, PTSD-related topics, virtual reality related to mobile devices, treatment, and other psychological disorders.
### Table 5. Top 10 articles by citation results (2010-2019).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Citations (N)</th>
<th>Average citations/year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Olff [2]</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>0 0 0 8 6 17 10 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertzberg et al [19]</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>0 1 2 8 7 17 8 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van Ameringen et al [50]</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 2 18 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetto et al [29]</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>3 8 4 2 6 4 2 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place et al [51]</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 0 2 11 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpenter et al [20]</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0 0 0 2 4 6 5 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lui et al [3]</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 0 1 7 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kahn et al [5]</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 0 0 9 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rathbone et al [9]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 0 0 9 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker and Rickard [52]</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0 0 0 0 3 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>3 9 6 20 23 49 81 108</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Source Frequency and Productivity**

Table 6 shows the publication frequency for the most relevant sources. Although there were no notable differences in publication history, the top contributing journals of 8 sources \(n \geq 2\) records) are listed in Table 6.

The top publication sources distributed and sorted from the highest on the list with 4 (19.36%) records were *European Journal of Psychotraumatology, JMIR mHealth and uHealth*, and *Military Medicine*. The next most common sources with 3 (14.52%) records were *JMIR, Professional Psychology Research and Practice*, and *Psychological Services*, whereas *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback* and *Depression and Anxiety* included 2 records each (6.45%).


### Table 6. Most relevant top publication sources (N=64).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Records, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European Journal of Psychotraumatology</td>
<td>4 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMIR mHealth and uHealth</td>
<td>4 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Medicine</td>
<td>4 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal of Medical Internet Research (JMIR)</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional Psychology Research and Practice</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychological Services</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback</td>
<td>2 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression and Anxiety</td>
<td>2 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *JMIR* group of journals had the highest amount of publication records \(n=9\) for the research domains in the search period. In addition, the source impact metric \(H\)-index, \(n \geq 2\) of the journals ranked as follows: *JMIR mHealth and uHealth* \(H\)-index=4; *Military Medicine, JMIR, and Professional Psychology Research and Practice* \(H\)-index=3; and *European
Co-Word (Keyword) Analysis

Keyword analysis is used to reveal the frequency of keywords in publications. There are two types of keywords: author keywords and Keywords Plus. The author keywords are the words (terms) that authors prefer to use for their papers and Keyword Plus includes terms from the preset list of related science domains, which is created by the editorial experts of Web of Science.

Table 7 shows the most relevant keywords used in the publications associated with mobile technologies and apps for PTSD treatment. The most common author keywords included “m-health,” “PTSD,” “mobile health,” and “depression.” The most common Keyword Plus terms included “posttraumatic stress disorder,” “PTSD,” “randomized controlled trial,” and “depression.”

Table 7. Top 10 keywords.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Author keywords</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Keywords-Plus</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>m-health</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>posttraumatic stress disorder</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PTSD</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>PTSD</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>depression</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>randomized controlled trial</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>mobile health</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>depression</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>mobile apps</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>posttraumatic stress disorder</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>smartphone app</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>telemedicine</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>symptoms</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>trauma</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>veterans</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>mental health</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>meta-analysis</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>anxiety</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>prevalence</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Co-Word (Text) Analysis

The word dynamic-growth graph (Figure 3), prepared with the top keywords, was used to evaluate the keyword dynamics over the research period. The repetition trend of each word (ie, the frequency of appearances in the dataset over the search period) represents occurrences. The graph shows the trend direction to analyze either upward or downward movement over the linear line according to the annual distribution of keywords. The most popular terms and keywords can be tracked during the period to understand trends in subject domain interest and importance in the research field. Identifying topics of growing interest helps researchers to concentrate on new subject areas and can also provide valuable results to contribute to these fields.

Figure 3. Word dynamics-growth.

Figure 3 illustrates the word dynamics-growth for the research domains. Although the dataset shows that publications started in 2012, the interest and popularity became significantly more visible after 2015, followed by a sharp increase in the subject areas until the middle of 2017. In those years, “PTSD,” “posttraumatic stress disorder,” “smartphone,” and “randomized controlled trial” had peak levels, but the usage rates of these terms declined from the middle of 2017 to 2019. At this point, the terms “depression” and “prevalence” became highly popular with a sharp increase on the graph, followed by “symptoms” and “meta-analysis.”

Multimedia Appendix 1 illustrates four different world cloud–based data distributions. The top left word cloud is for
abstract text data, whereas the upper right word cloud is for author keywords text data. Similarly, the bottom left word cloud is from Keyword Plus text data and the bottom right word cloud shows a paper title text data representation. As can be seen in each word cloud, the highlighted words differ in terms of importance for each group. In particular, “health,” “mobile,” and “apps” were of the highest importance, followed by “mental,” “treatment,” and “PTSD” in the abstract word cloud. By contrast, in the author keyword cloud, “m-health” and “PTSD” were both dominant keywords, followed by “depression,” “mobile health,” and “posttraumatic stress disorder.” The word order changed for Keyword Plus to “depression” and “PTSD” at the top, followed by “care,” “smartphone app,” and “symptoms.” The title word cloud was comparable to the others with “mobile” being far more important than other key terms as a highly dominant term, followed by “health,” and the terms “stress,” “app,” “disorder,” “mental,” “posttraumatic,” and “application” appeared in another layer.

Discussion

Principal Results

Mobile apps are recognized as efficient tools in the assistance of both health care patients and staff [1,3]. A mobile platform allows for predicting the symptoms of depression and PTSD [51] to collect data and conduct research on health interventions using the technology [53]. Mobile technology in the treatment for military staff and veterans with PTSD and other mental disorders has been reported to be feasible [8,15]. Engagement with mHealth apps in the transition period improved communications [18] and mental well-being [52]. Several mobile apps have been considered to be useful supportive tools in the treatment of managing pain [26,27], stress reduction [54], anger [25], and mental disorders, including PTSD, depression, anxiety, and addictions [50,55], as well as in identifying suicidal behaviors [7].

The efficiency of mobile apps in the psychological treatment of mental disorders, including CBT [9], cognitive rehabilitation [28], exposure therapy [10,29,30], and visualization [56] has been verified. The use of mobile apps allows for evaluating CBT precision [34], to conduct a cognitive assessment [35], to deliver a PTSD checklist [36], and to monitor mental disorders [33].

By analyzing the results of the dataset regarding the publication pattern on research related to mobile technology and apps associated with PTSD treatment, we found a rapid increase and growth of subject interest in the last decade. The trend sharply increased in the most recent years, from 2016 to 2019.

This growth of productivity could reflect the improvements, functionality, and developments of mobile technology and apps in parallel with comparison to other areas of usage. Therefore, these technologies have become the center of human life to provide new opportunities, convenience, and address potential benefits. Despite the negative insights and perceptions of such technologies, this would be promising for patients to adapt their health behaviors as a supportive tool with their clinical treatments. Cooperation among clinical experts, app designers, and technology providers is necessary to reach the ultimate goal and objectives, which should concentrate on patients’ needs and treat them positively and objectively.

This analysis was conducted to highlight the most frequent subject categories, along with popular keywords and terms. These aspects were reflected in keywords, and the same terms were similarly represented in the text of the abstract and title of the paper. The text analysis showed the critical terms used in this field of research and also represents the popularity of subdomain searches. The aim of this study was to discover the publication trend and to identify the critical areas in the dataset to ultimately provide insights and research directions for academics, practitioners, and readers who wish to collaborate in these domains in the future.

According to the papers retrieved and analyzed (N=64), the majority were peer-reviewed journal articles (75%), with a mean of 6.4 publications per year from 2010 to 2016, which then sharply increased to 13.33 (doubled) between 2016 and 2019. The most productive countries were the United States, with far greater representation than any other country, followed by Germany, Italy, the Netherlands, and the United Kingdom. One of the main reasons for this difference is attributed to differences in military engagement in various regions. For example, in the Middle East and Asia, soldiers return to their countries with different intensities of PTSD symptoms and other comorbid disorders.

The results also revealed the distribution of the publications, demonstrating that the top category sources support previous arguments; namely European Journal of Psychotraumatology, JMIR mHealth and UHealth, and Military Medicine were among the highly popular sources for these publications. The JMIR group of journals emerged as the leading sources (n=9, 14% coverage) compared to other single-publication sources. However, the vast majority (60%) of sources were equally distributed among the 39 single-publication sources. Similar results were found in the authorship analysis, in which the top contributors in the field are Kuhn (n=7 records) as the leading author; followed by Beckham (n=5 records); Calhoun (n=4 records); and Dennis, Marx, and Moore (n=3 records each) in the top categories.

Co-word (text) analysis showed that the most common vital terms overall (for the four different word clouds created) were “mobile,” “PTSD,” “posttraumatic stress disorder,” “m-health,” “depression,” “health,” “treatment,” “smartphone apps,” and “mobile health.”

Strengths and Limitations

Despite growing interest for the research domains, no publication was identified that analyzed the state of the field with a bibliometric approach. Therefore, the main strength of this study could be considered as the uniqueness of the research design itself. This study is the first bibliometric-related research in the domain. The contribution of the study is revealing the scientific patterns and future research gaps to academics and practitioners. The text analysis also highlighted and supported popular subject areas to clarify the research scope and future directions.
One of the limitations of this study is that we used only the Web of Science Core Collection database in comparison to PubMed. A single database was selected to ensure a simple and accurate analysis, and to effectively eliminate duplications and avoid errors. In this regard, Web of Science covers the highest impact journals and has unique indexing and ranking with its citation categories. The research domain of health and mobile internet-related publications is ranked in the SCI-Exp index. Another limitation is that only documents published in the English language were selected. Although various bibliometric analysis methods are available, given the scope and size of this topic, we decided to concentrate on more specific analyses such as descriptive statistics regarding the dataset from 2010 to 2019.

**Future Research Suggestions**

According to the findings, the research domains are prevalent, and growing interest can be seen as an upward trend in the publication records since 2016. In particular, the majority of the subject category records were found in Psychiatry and Psychology, especially in the clinical and multidisciplinary domains, followed by Health Care Services, Medical Informatics, and Medicine General Internal. Further research is needed adopting various aspects of bibliometric analysis. More empirical and case studies should also be conducted in parallel with the improvement of technology and apps perspectives that would be tested and clinically validated.

However, the research analyzed indicates the importance of further explorations to develop appropriate and feasible mobile technology for PTSD treatment. The necessity to manage the challenges related to the development of mHealth tools were underlined [2]. Establishing the standards for creating PTSD-related mHealth apps and following them seem to be essential in transferring mobile apps to the clinical field [4]. Moreover, practitioners need to explore the factors facilitating and limiting the effective use of mHealth for PTSD treatment [57,58]. Cooperation between mobile app creators, researchers, and practitioners is essential in creating new technology that will match the needs and expectations of both health care staff and patients [50]. Finally, the majority of the available mobile apps require more clinically validated evidence of their efficacy before they can be adopted in the psychological treatment of PTSD [33].

**Conclusions**

This study explored and analyzed the scientific patterns and relations of scholarly publications related to the use of mobile technologies in PTSD treatment. We therefore provide a general overview of the field based on co-word (text and keyword) analysis of research domains, and various forms of bibliometric methods were employed along with a data visualization approach to establish a clear picture. The analysis included 64 papers published between 2010 and 2019.

The results identify the most frequent subject categories, popular keywords, critical terms, and the popularity of subdomain searches. With this study, we attempted to investigate the patterns of publications to provide insights and research directions for academics, practitioners, and readers who wish to collaborate in these domains in the future. The data highlight the significance of further explorations in this field to improve mobile technology for PTSD treatment. Conducting studies and analyzing the practical use of these tools will improve the technology and apps that would be tested and clinically validated.

**Authors' Contributions**

AK designed the methodology and performed data extraction. IS performed the literature review (background). Both authors conceived of the study, and drafted, reviewed, and edited the manuscript. Both authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Word clouds visualization.

[ PNG File , 230 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19391_app1.png ]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Repository dataset of publications.

[ PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 490 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19391_app2.pdf ]

**References**


Abbreviations

- CBT: cognitive behavioral therapy
- mHealth: mobile health
- PTSD: posttraumatic stress disorder

©Atik Kulakli, Ivanna Shubina. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 26.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium,
provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Review

Nurses’ Use of Personal Smartphone Technology in the Workplace: Scoping Review

Andrea de Jong†, BSCN, MSCN; Lorie Donelle†, BSCN, PhD; Michael Kerr†, PhD
Arthur Labatt Family School of Nursing, Faculty of Health Sciences, Western University, London, ON, Canada
†all authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Lorie Donelle, BSCN, PhD
Arthur Labatt Family School of Nursing
Faculty of Health Sciences
Western University
FNB Rm 2356 Faculty of Health Science Western Uni
1115 Richmond St
London, ON, N6A 5B9
Canada
Phone: 1 5196612111 ext 86565
Email: ldonelle@uwow.ca

Abstract

Background: There has been an increase in the technological infrastructures of many health care organizations to support the practice of health care providers. However, many nurses are using their personal digital devices, such as smartphones, while at work for personal and professional purposes. Despite the proliferation of smartphone use in the health care setting, there is limited research on the clinical use of these devices by nurses. It is unclear as to what extent and for what reasons nurses are using their personal smartphones to support their practice.

Objective: This review aimed to understand the current breadth of research on nurses’ personal smartphone use in the workplace and to identify implications for research, practice, and education.

Methods: A scoping review using Arksey and O’Malley’s methodological framework was conducted, and the following databases were used in the literature search: CINAHL, PubMed, ProQuest Dissertations and Theses, Embase, MEDLINE, Nursing and Allied Health Database, Scopus, Web of Science, and Cochrane Reviews. Search terms used were Nurs* AND (personal digital technology OR smartphone OR cellphone OR mobile phone OR cellular phone). Inclusion criteria included research focused on nurses’ use of their own digital technologies, reported in English, and published between January 2010 and January 2020. Exclusion criteria were if the device or app was implemented for research purposes, if it was provided by the organization, if it focused on infection control, and if it was focused on nursing students or nursing education.

Results: A total of 22 out of 2606 articles met the inclusion criteria. Two main themes from the thematic analyses included personal smartphone use for patient care and implications of personal smartphone use. Nurses used their smartphones to locate information about medications, procedures, diagnoses, and laboratory tests. Downloaded apps were used by nurses to locate patient care–related information. Nurses reported improved communication among health team members and used their personal devices to communicate patient information via text messaging, calling, and picture and video functions. Nurses expressed insight into personal smartphone use and challenges related to distraction, information privacy, organizational policies, and patient perception.

Conclusions: Nurses view personal smartphones as an efficient method to gather patient care information and to communicate with the health care team. This review highlights knowledge gaps regarding nurses’ personal device use and information safety, patient care outcomes, and communication practices. This scoping review facilitates critical reflection on patient care practices within the digital context. We infer that nurses’ use of their personal devices to communicate among the health care team may demonstrate a technological “work-around” meant to reconcile health system demands for cost-efficiency with efforts to provide quality patient care. The current breadth of research is focused on acute care, with little research focus in other practices settings. Research initiatives are needed to explore personal device use across the continuum of health care settings.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18774) doi:10.2196/18774
KEYWORDS
nurses; digital health; smartphone; evidence-informed practice

Introduction

Smartphone use is increasing globally, with an estimated 3.3 billion users in 2019 and an anticipated 3.8 billion users by 2021 [1]. Countries with the greatest number of smartphone users include China, India, and the United States [1]. A smartphone is a device that has both computing abilities and mobile communication technology [2]. Mobile communication technology has undergone rapid development [3], and smartphone production is one of the fastest growing technological industries [4]. Coupled with the proliferation of smartphones is the high demand for downloadable apps that a smartphone user can add to their device. In 2018, over 4 million Android and Apple apps were available either free or for a cost [5]. These apps provide the user with additional services and features on their smartphone device.

Within the health care context, there has been an increase in the use of smartphones by health care providers in the last several years [2], including an increase in the use of health professional apps [6]. Fölster [7] reported over 200,000 health-related apps available for purchase or free of charge. The increased use of smartphones and selected apps by health care professionals mirrors the increased use of information technology within health care. There has been a significant increase in the implementation and use of electronic documentation systems, with billions of dollars being utilized to support the provision and coordination of health care to patients using information technology [8]. However, despite the increased use of apps in health care, health care professionals have expressed concerns relating to the trustworthiness of apps and a knowledge gap on the effectiveness of apps [9].

Electronic documentation systems have been integrated within health care systems to provide a centralized repository and accessible source of clinical information for health care providers [10]. These same systems are intended to support clinical care practices among all health care providers while providing access to information, decision-support tools, and improved workflow [10,11]. Given their extended contact with patients and families, nurses tend to have the greatest interaction with electronic documentation systems relative to other health care providers [12].

Despite the increase in technological infrastructures of many health care organizations to support the practice of health care providers, many nurses are using their personal digital devices (eg, smartphones) while at work for both professional and personal purposes [13,14]. Yet, there is limited research available on the clinical use of personal smartphone devices by nurses. In addition, there is limited research available that focuses on nurses’ use of commercially available health-related apps in the workplace [15]. These gaps in research are especially important to understand given the most recent global pandemic caused by COVID-19 [16]. The COVID-19 pandemic lead to rapidly evolving public health measures with frequent changes in practice guidelines in all health care settings. Health care organizations had to respond and adapt quickly. With smartphones being a convenient and accessible way to locate information, the use of these devices in practice by nurses needs to be an area of focus, especially when facing a global pandemic. It is unclear as to what extent and for what reasons nurses are using their personal smartphones to support their practice. Similarly, there is a lack of clarity regarding the quality and credibility of the resources accessed by nurses via their personal devices. However, the expectation of evidence-informed patient care practices highlights the importance of access to health-related resources for nurses and other health care providers [17]. In essence, evidence-informed practice necessitates nurses to critically evaluate information collected regarding patients’ needs and to integrate it with the available clinical and research evidence to enable evidence-informed patient care [18]. A valued feature of mobile smartphones is the pro re nata, or PRN, access to vast amounts of online health-related information. In this scoping review, we are interested in how nurses are leveraging their personal smartphones for personal and patient care–related purposes across a variety of health care settings.

This research aims to explore and synthesize the current literature regarding nurses’ use of their personal digital devices in the workplace. The purpose of this review is to understand the current breadth of research to identify knowledge gaps, practice and policy implications, and future research opportunities. More specifically, this review seeks to gain an understanding of nurses’ use of their personal digital technology within the workplace.

Methods

Overview

A scoping review was the chosen method to review the literature as it is well suited for burgeoning areas of research. In addition, scoping reviews aim to identify gaps in research while mapping key concepts and types of evidence [19]. Arksey and O’Malley’s [20] methodological framework outlines five stages for conducting a scoping review, including identifying the research question; identifying relevant studies; study selection; charting the data; and collating, summarizing, and reporting the results. A critical step in this final stage involves identifying the research and evidence gaps that need to be addressed [20]. The PRISMA-ScR (Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses extension for Scoping Reviews) checklist was used to ensure that the scoping review is robust and includes all essential reporting items [21].

Step 1: Identify the Research Question

The research question we identified for this review is “How are nurses using their personal smartphones within the clinical workplace?”
Step 2: Identifying Relevant Studies

The following databases were used in the literature search process: CINAHL, PubMed, ProQuest Dissertations and Theses, Embase, MEDLINE, Nursing and Allied Health Database, Scopus, Web of Science, and Cochrane Reviews. Search terms used were: Nurs* AND (personal digital technology OR smartphone OR cellphone OR mobile phone OR cellular phone). Different search terms were trialed during the initial literature search process. The search terms selected were broad and were determined to capture all relevant studies that relate to the research question. See Multimedia Appendix 1 for the full syntax of search terms.

Articles included in the review had to meet the following inclusion criteria: a research focus on nurses’ use of their own digital technology, research reported in English, and research published between January 2010 and January 2020 in order to capture data that aligned with the proliferation of mobile phone ownership. Studies focusing on a specific device or online app use were included only if the motivation for use was nurse driven. Studies were excluded from this review if the workplace organization provided the technology or if the technology was implemented for research purposes. Studies that focused on infection control of personal digital technology were excluded. Studies were also excluded if they focused on personal digital technology use and nursing students or nursing education, as this review was aimed at understanding practicing nurses’ use of digital health technologies within clinical settings.

Step 3: Study Selection

A total of 2606 studies were identified using the search criteria above. Through consensus agreement between two reviewers, 22 studies met the inclusion and exclusion criteria and were included for the scoping review. See Figure 1 for a flow diagram of the article selection process.

Figure 1. Flow diagram for article selection process.

Step 4: Charting the Data

Two databases were set up in Step 4. One database, Mendeley, was used for sharing of articles between authors, including sharing to achieve consensus review. The other database was a matrix where all the data were collected. A spreadsheet was created to organize relevant information from the included articles. Data collected from each article included author names, year of publication, study design, data collection method, target population, study location, and research question.

Step 5: Collating, Summarizing, and Reporting the Results

During the final stage of collating, summarizing, and reporting the results, the framework approach described by Ritchie and Spencer [22] and used by Arksey and O’Malley [20] was used in this review. This technique involves synthesizing and interpreting the data by sifting, sorting, and charting the information based on the key themes and issues presented in the literature [22]. The data were charted and thematically analyzed. Data analysis was conducted by two researchers and analytical discrepancies were resolved through discussion until consensus was achieved.

Results

Overview

The 22 studies included in this research (see Tables 1-3 [23-44]) were conducted across a diverse range of countries and published between 2013 and 2019, with most (17/22, 77%) published in 2016 or later. Out of the 22 included studies, 16 (73%) used quantitative (ie, cross-sectional survey) research designs [23-38], 4 (18%) were qualitative [39-42], and 2 (9%) used a mixed methods design [43,44].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study design and author (year)</th>
<th>Data collection method</th>
<th>Target population</th>
<th>Study location</th>
<th>Research questions</th>
<th>Negative implications of personal digital technology use</th>
<th>Purpose for digital technology use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alameddine et al (2019) [23]</td>
<td>Survey, cross-sectional</td>
<td>97 emergency department (ED) providers, including ED faculty members, attending physicians, medical students, residents, and nurses (33% nurses)</td>
<td>Academic health center with the highest volume of patient visits in Lebanon</td>
<td>1. What are the frequency and patterns of smart device use among health care providers in the ED of a large academic health center in Lebanon?</td>
<td>• Distraction • Patient perception</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical use • Communication for clinical purposes • Personal communication purposes • Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bautista (2019) [24]</td>
<td>Pen and paper survey</td>
<td>517 staff nurses</td>
<td>19 tertiary-level general hospitals in Metro Manila, Philippines</td>
<td>1. Using a ranking system, how do Filipino nurses use their smartphones for work purposes? 2. What are the differences in nurses' smartphone use for work purposes based on demographic and organizational factors?</td>
<td>N/A&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes • Information seeking for clinical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Benedictis et al (2019) [25]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>125 nurses and 66 physicians</td>
<td>An Italian university hospital in Rome, Italy</td>
<td>1. In what way is WhatsApp used in hospital settings by physicians and nurses with patients and between colleagues? 2. Which are the main perceived benefits and threats concerning the use of WhatsApp in a hospital setting by physicians and nurses? 3. Which are the determinants (individual and/or organizational) of the use of WhatsApp in a hospital setting? 4. Is there an interplay between individual and organizational determinants?</td>
<td>• Perceived risks (privacy and confidentiality) • Lack of organization regulations • Distraction</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes • Personal communication purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di Muzio et al (2019) [26]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>193 nurses</td>
<td>Sapienza University Hospital, Rome, Italy</td>
<td>1. What is the validity and reliability of the Nurses' Use of PCDs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; Questionnaire in the Italian hospitals?</td>
<td>• Increase error • Negative impact on performance Distraction</td>
<td>• Personal communication purposes • Information seeking for clinical use • Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flynn et al (2018) [27]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>735 acute care nurses, point of care and not point of care</td>
<td>Six acute care medical-surgical facilities in an urban health care system in the Southern United States</td>
<td>1. What are the current rates of personal smartphone use by nurses in acute care settings? 2a. What are nurses' preferences regarding the use of smartphone functionality in acute care settings? 2b. Are there differences in use by age category or role? 3a. What are nurses' perceptions of the benefits and drawbacks of using smartphones in the acute care setting? 3b. Are there differences in perceptions by age category or role?</td>
<td>• May upset families • Distraction • Increase error</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical use • Communication for clinical purposes • Personal communication purposes • Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study design and author (year)</td>
<td>Data collection method</td>
<td>Target population</td>
<td>Study location</td>
<td>Research questions</td>
<td>Negative implications of personal digital technology</td>
<td>Purpose for digital technology use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Garner et al (2017) [28]     | Survey                 | 97 acute care nurses and physicians (82.5% were nurses) | 340+ bed tertiary facility in Bengaluru, India | 1. What are the smartphone access and use, including future opportunities for mHealth and potential ethical implications, among health care professionals practicing at a health care facility in Bengaluru, India? | • Confidentiality  
• Misuse of health information  
• Patient anxiety  
• Cybercrime  
• Limited Wi-Fi access | • Communication for clinical purposes  
• Personal communication purposes  
• Other personal uses |
| Grabowsky (2015) [29]         | Survey                 | 59 advanced practice nurses (APNs) | Alabama, United States; physician’s office, outpatient clinics, hospitals, academic health centers, employee health clinic, hospice, nurse practitioner–owned practice, Veterans Administration nursing home, urgent care, health department, and dialysis unit | 1. What types of clinical questions are answered using smartphones?  
2. Are there barriers to information seeking with smartphones?  
3. What phone apps and online resources do APNs find most useful in clinical situations?  
4. How do APNs view their current online searching skills?  
5. What is the level of interest in receiving training in online searching and what type of training is preferred?  
6. Is the use of smartphones to answer clinical questions related to gender, level of education, population of practice area, practice type, or years approved to practice as an APN? | • Lack of internet access | • Information seeking for clinical use |
2. What are the experiences of Michigan CRNAs with regard to the impact of using these devices on patient care? | • Distraction  
• Risk to patient  
• Performance decline  
• Policy | • Information seeking for clinical use  
• Communication for clinical purposes  
• Personal communication purposes  
• Other personal uses |
| Mayer et al (2019) [31]       | Survey                 | 1293 nurses across a range of settings, including hospital care, primary care, social health care, prehospital care, management, teaching and research, and private practice | Nursing Association of Barcelona | 1. Are nurses using health apps professionally and what types of apps are they using?  
2. Among nurses, is there a need for training in the use of health apps?  
3. What are nurses’ perceptions of health professional apps?  
4. Is there a need for a certification process for health apps and what type of institution or organization should review and validate these apps for professional use? | • Concern about information quality in health apps | • Information seeking for clinical use |
| McBride et al (2015) [32]    | Survey                 | 825 acute care hospital registered nurses (RNs) | Members of Academy of Medical Surgical Nurses, United States | 1. What is the frequency of non-work-related use of personal mobile phones and other personal communication devices among hospital RNs? | N/A | • Personal communication purposes  
• Other personal uses |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study design and author (year)</th>
<th>Data collection method</th>
<th>Target population</th>
<th>Study location</th>
<th>Research questions</th>
<th>Negative implications of personal digital technology</th>
<th>Purpose for digital technology use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>McBride and LeVasseur (2017) [33]</td>
<td></td>
<td>1268 nurses (staff, charge, advanced practice, managers, faculty, and executive)</td>
<td>Members of the Academy of Medical Surgical Nurses and the Society of Pediatric Nurses, United States</td>
<td>1. How do RNs working on inpatient units use their PCDs at work (excluding lunch and breaks) and what are their opinions about how PCD use impacted their work and the work of their colleagues?</td>
<td>• Distraction</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Negative impact on performance</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Personal communication purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobasheri et al (2015) [34]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>564 acute care nurses and 287 doctors</td>
<td>Five individual hospital sites in London, United Kingdom</td>
<td>1. What are the ways that frontline staff are using smartphones, tablet devices, and mHealth apps in the clinical environment?</td>
<td>• Privacy</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moore and Jayewadene (2014) [35]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>82 acute care nurses and 334 doctors</td>
<td>40+ acute trusts in England</td>
<td>1. How do nurses and doctors use their smartphones at work, what do they use them for, and do they assess the risks associated with the apps they use?</td>
<td>• Uncomfortable using phone in front of patients</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piscotty et al (2016) [36]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>140 nurses in Registered Nurse to Bachelor of Science in Nursing program (RNs already had worked as nurses)</td>
<td>Public school of nursing in Southeast Michigan, United States</td>
<td>1. What is the prevalence of social media use by nurses during work hours?</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>• Personal communication purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pucciarelli et al (2019) [37]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>256 acute care nurses who worked in hospitals, outpatient facilities, or day surgeries</td>
<td>Seven hospitals in Central and Southern Italy</td>
<td>1. What are the work- and non-work-related activities performed by nurses using smartphones in the workplace? 2. What are the differences between smartphone use and nurses’ age, gender, and working environment? 3. What are the positive or negative influences that smartphones have on nurses’ performance during their health care activities?</td>
<td>• Distraction</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Negative impact on performance</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inappropriate recording</td>
<td>• Personal communication purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inappropriate vital signs measuring</td>
<td>• Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Other personal uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stergiannis et al (2017) [38]</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>974 acute care medical and nursing staff (18.5% nursing assistants and 42.6% nurses, with the rest being doctors and junior doctors)</td>
<td>Six general hospitals in Athens, Greece</td>
<td>1. What is the clinical use of smartphones among medical and nursing staff in Greece?</td>
<td>• Unaware of apps that can be used to assist them in their daily clinical task</td>
<td>• Internet access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Did not think smartphones were useful</td>
<td>• Did not think smartphones were useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Unsure about appropriate sites and apps</td>
<td>• Unsure about appropriate sites and apps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Distrustful of information</td>
<td>• Distrustful of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lack of education on how to use phone</td>
<td>• Lack of education on how to use phone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aN/A: not applicable; this information was not reported in the study.
bPCD: personal communication device.
cmHealth: mobile health.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study design and author (year)</th>
<th>Data collection method</th>
<th>Target population</th>
<th>Study location</th>
<th>Research questions</th>
<th>Negative implications of personal digital technology</th>
<th>Purpose for digital technology use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bautista and Lin (2016) [40]</td>
<td>Semistructured interview</td>
<td>30 acute care staff, charge, and nurse managers</td>
<td>13 tertiary hospitals in the Philippines</td>
<td>1. How do the interactions of sociotechnical components (users, technology, and policy) affect staff nurses’ use of personal mobile phones at work?</td>
<td>• Personal cost, as hospital does not provide phone</td>
<td>• Information seeking for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distraction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Privacy gaps and punishments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Patient complaints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Infection control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bautista and Lin (2017) [39]</td>
<td>Semistructured interview</td>
<td>20 acute care staff nurses</td>
<td>Nine hospitals in the Philippines</td>
<td>1. How and why are mobile instant messaging apps used by Filipino nurses as part of their work? 2. What are the gratifications derived by nurses when using mobile instant messaging apps?</td>
<td>N/A²</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Personal communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Perceived risks (privacy and confidentiality)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lack of organization regulations and incentives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Disturbance to personal life, as messages received during nonworking hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiang and Wang (2016) [41]</td>
<td>Semistructured interview</td>
<td>17 community nurses working for home care facilities</td>
<td>Two regional hospital-affiliated home care facilities and four community home care facilities in Southern Taiwan</td>
<td>1. What are nurses’ experiences regarding the benefits and obstacles of using a smart mobile device app in home care?</td>
<td>• Perceived risks (privacy and confidentiality)</td>
<td>• Communication for clinical purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lack of organization regulations and incentives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Disturbance to personal life, as messages received during nonworking hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park and Lee (2019) [42]</td>
<td>Semistructured focus group interviews</td>
<td>4 orthopedic scrub nurses</td>
<td>Operating room of a veterans’ hospital, Korea</td>
<td>1. How are scrub nurses using a commercially available smartphone app to solve information needs in orthopedic surgery?</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>• Using an app to seek information for clinical use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

²N/A: not applicable; this information was not reported in the study.
In reviewing the included studies, most researchers focused on investigating personal smartphone use among hospital-based nurses (18/22, 82%) [23-28,30,32-35,37-40,42-44]. As well, 6 studies out of 22 (27%) included a multidisciplinary group that also included inquiry into physicians’ use of personal smartphones in the clinical setting [23,25,28,34,35,38]. There was a single study that investigated registered nurses’ personal technology use during work hours, whose sample population were enrolled in a Registered Nurse to Bachelor of Science in Nursing program, with 93% of the nurse participants currently working in acute care [36].

Out of 22 studies, 2 (9%) targeted nurses working in community-based health care settings [29,41]. Grabowsky [29] focused on advanced practice nurses who worked in an array of settings, including a variety of outpatient clinics. Chiang and Wang [41] investigated personal digital technology use among community nurses who worked for home care organizations. Out of 22 studies, 1 (5%) included nurses from a range of settings, both acute and nonacute, including hospital, primary care, social health care, prehospital care, management, education, and private practice settings [31].

Two main themes with associated subthemes were generated from the analyses. The first theme was personal smartphone use for patient care. This theme was divided into three subthemes: information seeking, communication, and mobile device functions. The second theme was implications of personal smartphone use, which was refined into five subthemes: smartphone use for personal reasons, distraction, patient perception, privacy and confidentiality, and organizational support and policy confusion. The details of the themes and subthemes are described narratively in the following sections.

### Personal Smartphone Use for Patient Care

#### Information Seeking

Nurses used their smartphones to access information directed at patient care. The most common information sought was related to medications, including drug guides and drug references, in 14 of the 22 (64%) studies reviewed [23,26-31,33-35,37,38,40,43]. Nurses reported efficiency of access to medication information; it was easier to search medications by either the generic name or brand name using their smartphones, despite having access to a drug reference book [40]. By using a mobile device, nurses were able to quickly look up new medications in drug guides [43]. Out of 22 studies, 8 (36%) identified that nurses used apps downloaded to their devices to find information on medications; 4 (18%) did not report the name of the apps used [23,27,34,35]. Whether nurses located medication information though a general search engine or by a specific app was not disclosed. The other 4 (18%) studies identified the specific apps used by nurses.
as Epocrates, Micromedex, Drug Index and Dosage, and Vademecum International [28,29,31,43].

Nurses also used their smartphones to access the internet for disease-related information [27,29,30,34,40,43]. Smartphones were used to collect procedural information, including various surgical procedures and anesthetic procedures [27,30,34,40,42]. Other than Park and Lee [42], researchers did not specify if nurses located this information specifically through online search engines or by specific apps they downloaded to their smartphone devices.

Nurses identified the need for information access regarding procedures and use of instruments within surgical settings [42]. The greatest barrier to information access included the inconvenience created by a lack of dedicated computers within surgical suites, thereby limiting nurses’ ability to access information [42]. Surgical nurses used the app, BAND, on their personal devices in order to consult with each other and to share information, including pictures, videos of themselves describing instruments and procedures, YouTube videos, and other pertinent information [42]. Using the app, information was easy to access and readily available and was positively reviewed by the operating room nurses [42].

Nurses used their smartphones for information seeking for both patient education purposes and for their own educational needs. Out of 22 studies, 4 (18%) reported that nurses used their smartphones for patient education [27,29,33,40]. Flynn et al [27] found that more than 75% of the nurses preferred the use of their smartphones to access information for patient education, and this was more commonly noted among nurses between the ages of 18 and 30 years compared to nurses older than 50 years of age. Furthermore, Flynn et al [27] discussed how nurses used their own smartphones to respond to patients’ and families’ requests for information on a variety of topics, such as medical procedures, medications, contact information for providers, and directions to local venues.

Personal smartphone use provided nurses with ease of access to information. For example, when asked by a patient about lab values, the nurse used their phone to search Google for the answer in the moment [40]. McBride and Levasseur [33] reported that nurses also used their personal smartphones to access patient handouts and teaching materials. Nurses accessed continuing education and professional development opportunities through their smartphones [30,33], and Mobasher et al [34] reported that nurses used medical apps to enhance their clinical knowledge and skills.

Other uses of smartphones by nurses included the use of online evidenced-based guidelines to support patient care [26,30], to access information related to patients’ prognoses [29], to support nurses’ understanding of disease pathophysiology and physiology [30], and to access clinical decision support tools [35]. Multiple smartphone apps that were reported being used by nurses for information seeking included WebMD [28,40], Medscape [23,28,40], Google [28,40,43], UpToDate [23], Infermera virtual [31], and 061 CatSalut Respon [31]. Garner et al [28] reported nurses’ use of PubMed, YouTube, Medical in Nursing and Oncology App, Google Scholar, Q Calc, Doc Plus, Praco, Radiopedia, and Wikipedia as apps and programs on their smartphones. Giles-Smith et al [43] identified Lexicomp, Medscape, and iTriage as additional health-related apps on nurses’ smartphones for information seeking and patient care purposes. Nurses, particularly those with less than 5 years of clinical experience, used e-books on their personal smartphones for information seeking [24].

**Communication**

Nurses used their personal smartphones to communicate with members of the health care team. Out of 22 studies, 11 (50%) found that nurses used their smartphones while at work to connect with health care team members by calling and/or text messaging for patient care purposes [24-28,30,33,34,37,39,40]. Nurses reported improved communication between team members, including physicians, and other allied health care providers and claimed that their personal device use improved efficiency in communication and facilitated immediate contact with colleagues [27,39,40]. Voice calling and text messaging with nurses and physicians was the most commonly cited reason for personal smartphone use at work [24].

Bautista and Lin [40] reported that nurses were able to contact doctors immediately using the Viber app and also received patient care orders via their smartphones. Nurses reported an enhanced efficiency in their workflow because they did not need to “track down” the attending physician; instead, they used their smartphones to contact them immediately [39]. Another efficiency-related technique was the development of a directory of personal contacts, whereby nurses saved the contact information (eg, phone numbers) of physicians, supervisors, and colleagues across diverse organizational departments to their smartphones so they were readily available when required [27]. Specific apps used for communication among the health care team included Viber, Facebook Messenger, iMessage, WhatsApp, and Line [25,28,37,39]. Group chats were also mentioned, but a particular app was not reported for group chat purposes [39].

Nurses also used their smartphones to communicate with patients [41]. Chiang and Wang [41] assessed nurses’ experiences using the Line app to communicate with home care patients and families. Home care patients or their family members would contact the nurse regarding their health care via the text option on the Line app [41]. Chiang and Wang [41] found that the picture and video function on the app was used as an assessment tool; home care patients would take pictures and videos of signs and symptoms related to their health condition and send them to the nurse using the app. Nurses found the Line app beneficial because of the asynchronous nature of communication patterns, which afforded them time to problem solve patient care issues, and the unlimited texting function increased opportunities for patient-provider communication [41]. However, nurses also reported a situation of being chronically “on call,” where patient text messages were perceived as intrusive outside of their working hours [41]. In another study, which investigated the use of WhatsApp, researchers found that nurses rarely communicated with patients, whereas in the same study, physicians were more likely to communicate with patients using WhatsApp [25].
Three smartphone functions were identified as useful: the photo and video function [24,27,34,39,40], the calculator [26,27,31,33-35,37,38], and the flashlight function [27,44]. Nurses used the photo and video function on their smartphones to support communication with their colleagues. For example, nurses took pictures of radiology images, patient wound sites, electrocardiograms, procedural equipment, skin test results, and biological samples, such as sputum [27,40], to facilitate communication with other care providers who requested greater details of the patient condition beyond verbal reports [27].

Flynn et al [27] reported that over 75% of the nurses in their study valued the calculator function on their smartphones. The calculator was used to compute medical and surgical formulas and to calculate dose and scale [26,31,37]. Other than reported use, no further details were provided regarding the flashlight function.

### Implications of Personal Smartphone Use

#### Smartphone Use for Personal Reasons

In 12 out of 22 (55%) studies, nurses used their smartphones within the workplace setting for nonwork-related reasons [23,25-28,30,32,33,36,37,39,44]. Nurses’ most commonly reported smartphone use included texting and messaging family and friends [25,27,28,30,32,33,36,37,39,44]. The second-most common personal smartphone use was to check or post information on their personal social media sites [23,26,28,30,32,33,36,37,39,44]. Other common uses were for telephone calling or checking for missed calls [27,28,30,36,44] and for entertainment such as playing games or shopping [26,32,33,44]. Personal use was reported outside of scheduled breaks [32,33]. Uses that were only mentioned once throughout the literature included internet access and surfing [30], catharsis and conveying grievances about their work with other nurses [39], the use of the global positioning system to verify their children’s location [27], and for personal safety (ie, walking to vehicles at night) [27].

#### Distraction

Distraction from patient care was identified by nurses as a concern regarding smartphone use within the workplace [23,25-27,30,33,37,40,43]. Nurses self-reported instances of their own distraction from patient care activities resulting from the use of their smartphones but also reported observed instances of inattentiveness among their nursing colleagues [23,26,30,33,37]. Pucciarelli et al [37] reported that 42% of nurses felt that smartphones were a distraction. For example, a nurse was distracted from inserting an intravenous line by the ringing sound of an incoming call on their smartphones [40], and 12.5% of nurses had witnessed a coworker make a medical error that they attributed to perceived distraction related to their smartphone use [33]. Alameddine et al [23] similarly found that 55% of nurses had witnessed distraction they attributed to smartphone use. Di Muzio et al [26] found that almost 62% of nurses thought that the use of personal devices could increase the risk of errors.

### Privacy and Confidentiality

Nurses identified privacy and confidentiality of patient health information as a concern associated with the use of their personal devices within the workplace [25,28,34,40,41]. Mobasher et al [34] found that 3.6% of nurses believed there was patient-related clinical information retained on their personal smartphones. Similarly, home care nurses discussed their concerns regarding their use of the Line app, reporting that “others could easily see patients’ recent whereabouts or sensitive personal information on the software platform” [41].

### Lack of Organizational Support and Policy Confusion

Lack of organizational support and policy confusion was expressed by nurses [30,40,41,43]. Despite organizational policy that prohibited personal smartphone use within their clinical setting, most nurses considered their smartphones as helpful technology in their workplace. Some nurses were aware of policies restricting personal smartphone use, while others stated they did not know what the existing policies for personal smartphone use entailed. Hranchook et al [30] reported that 47.2% of the nurse participants in their study knew that their organization had a personal device use policy, 22.6% said their institution did not, while 30.2% were unsure. When asked if medical administrators should develop a code of conduct for smartphone use to minimize unnecessary distraction, 44% of participants agreed, while 51% disagreed [23]. Nurses also reported barriers to Wi-Fi and internet access issues within their organizations that impeded their access to online resources [28,29,38,43].

### Discussion

#### Principal Findings

A scoping review of 22 studies was conducted to examine the current breadth and range of research on nurses’ use of personal smartphones in the workplace; to our knowledge, this is the first review of its kind. Based on the studies included in this review, nurses have reportedly been using their personal smartphones within their workplace for personal and patient care purposes since 2013.

From the existing evidence, we know that nurses used their personal smartphone devices to gather patient care information and to communicate within the health care team. In support of evidence-informed patient care, nurses used online apps and programs to locate information relating to patient-prescribed medications, clinical procedures, diagnoses, laboratory tests, and more. The information-seeking and consultation behaviors align with evidence-informed nursing practice [18,45]. Nurses require access to specialized knowledge and comprehensive clinical information to inform their clinical decision making. However, the significant demands on nurses’ time impedes their
ability to engage with research and health care resources required for evidence-informed practice [46]. The use of their personal smartphone devices provided nurses with rapid and easy access to online health information. It is possible that nurses are using their personal smartphones as a way to efficiently access needed resources and support their patient care information needs.

Despite the high level of smartphone and app use, there was minimal reporting on nurses’ attention to the quality and accuracy of the information garnered from the apps used. The commercial profitability of health-related apps tend to take priority over ensuring that apps are critically appraised for information accuracy [47]. However, when asked, nurses expressed that they want health apps to be certified by a health or professional institution, exemplifying their concern about information quality [31]. Nurses who conducted a risk assessment on the apps that they used assessed the trustworthiness of the source, sought guidance from professional bodies on technology and app use, and were vigilant about patient information privacy [35].

Similarly, nurses may be resorting to their own personal digital devices to compensate for the lack of support provided by their organizations [42]. As reported elsewhere, nurses who have access to resources from a medical library, have internet access at work, and have the opportunity to work with computer technologies are more likely to engage in evidence-informed nursing practice [48]. Organizations that strive to provide the highest-quality patient care are also accountable to providing the resources that make this achievable. The presupposition of health information technology within the clinical setting highlights the need for organizations to provide continuing education to all health care providers regarding risk assessments of health information technologies (eg, devices and apps) for responsible use and to support evidence-informed practices.

Effective communication among the health care team is essential for quality patient care and effective teamwork [49]. In fact, the most common reason for errors resulting in patient harm result from communication failures [50]. In our review, nurses used text messaging, telephone, and picture and video functions on their smartphones to communicate with other members of the health care team. Furthermore, nurses preferred the use of their own smartphones for efficient and immediate communication among health care team members. Medical students have also reported using personal smartphones as an efficient means of communication and for coordination of the clinical team [51]. It may be that organizationally based communication systems do not provide satisfactory options to meet the precipitous communication needs of health care teams working within a digital health context [52]. Similarly, nurses’ use of their personal devices to communicate among members of the health care team may demonstrate a technological “work-around” meant to reconcile health system demands for cost-efficiency with efforts to provide quality patient care [53].

Despite nurses’ desires to use their personal smartphones in the workplace, they were also mindful of concerns that included personal and/or colleague distraction, and they acknowledged challenges to information privacy and information security related to possible retention of patient data on their smartphones. Nurses’ use of their personal devices to share practice-related information among health care teams may characterize their “work-around” of organizational health information systems that have not effectively considered nurses’ workflows, their need for accessible and up-to-date health care information, nor communication practices among multidisciplinary health care teams [52,54]. Nurses are not the only health professionals experiencing these tensions. Physicians report that barriers to using their smartphones in practice include organizational policies against smartphone use and concerns about using them during patient consultations [9]. The tension between quality health practices and pressure to find system efficiencies may have also contributed to nurses’ use of their personal smartphones within the workplace [54]. The reported lack of awareness of organizational policies related to personal smartphone use and nurses’ lack of knowledge regarding patient perception of their smartphone use for patient care constitute two important areas for future research and health professional education [55].

**Implications**

**Implications for Research**

This scoping review highlights significant gaps in research regarding nurses’ use of personal smartphones in the workplace. To date, research has focused on acute care nurses, with little investigation of nurses’ device use within other practice settings. Research is needed to understand personal smartphone use across a more diverse range of health care settings, such as home care, long-term care, and public health. A greater understanding of other health care settings, such as long-term care, will provide invaluable information, especially due to the aging population in Canada and the growing demand on care providers for the elderly. COVID-19 exposed profound gaps in long-term care in Canada, including access to practice standards and education. The importance of public health care workers was also emphasized during the COVID-19 pandemic. Research can help to inform how smartphones can be leveraged to support nurses, especially during resource and staffing shortages. This will also help to generate a greater understanding of the online resources (eg, online information sites and apps) that support nurses’ practices. Research is also needed to inform smartphone practice strategies and policies that support efficient team communication and that are accountable to information, privacy, and security concerns.

**Implications for Practice**

Nurses are using their personal devices to access clinical information and to contribute to clinical decision making. If apps are being used and patient information is entered, it is important to know where the information is being stored, who has access to it, and who owns the data. Nurses’ use of their personal digital devices for sharing patient-related information within the health care team carries a potential risk for inappropriate disclosure of personal health information. While unapologetic about using their personal devices, nurses instead advocated for information-secure messaging apps that would ensure the safety and security of people’s personal health information [34].
Implications for Policy

Evidence that over 75% of nurses and physicians within acute care settings use their personal smartphones to support their patient care practices is indicative of a clear gap between policy and practice [27,38]. If nurses, as well as other health care professionals, use their smartphones as an efficient way to retrieve and share information, it would be incumbent on organizations to reassess their policies regarding personal phone use and to work with technology developers and care providers to nurture their innovative thinking and insight into effective, responsive, and responsible technology-enabled solutions.

Limitations

There were several limitations when completing this scoping review. As 16 of the 22 studies were quantitative and used cross-sectional surveys to gather data, there were limited descriptions and examples available to provide an in-depth understanding of smartphone and mobile phone use. In addition, due to the lack of diversity in the target population, there is limited evidence across the nursing continuum. Lastly, studies included were only in English; studies in other languages were not included in these findings.

Conclusions

This scoping review provides insight into nurses’ use of their personal smartphones within the workplace setting. The review highlights knowledge gaps regarding nurses’ personal device use and the safety and privacy of personal health information, patient care outcomes, communication practices among health care teams, and insight into app and information accuracy and reliability, thus creating significant opportunities for future research regarding nurses’ use of personal digital technology in the workplace. Organizational policies that limit or prohibit smartphone use may be shortsighted; insightful leadership would leverage the knowledge of nurses with other health care providers to collaboratively develop strategies that enable efficient, respectful, and ethical use of communication technology for effective patient care practices [56].

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Full syntax for search terms for the literature search process.

References


51. Shenouda JEA, Davies BS, Haq I. The role of the smartphone in the transition from medical student to foundation trainee: A qualitative interview and focus group study. BMC Med Educ 2018 Jul 31;18(1):175 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 30390711]

52. Evans RS. Electronic health records: Then, now, and in the future. Yearb Med Inform 2018 Mar 06;25(S 01):S48-S61 [FREE Full text] [Medline: 27472971]


Abbreviations

PRISMA-ScR: Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses extension for Scoping Reviews
PRN: pro re nata
Please cite as:
de Jong A, Donelle L, Kerr M
Nurses’ Use of Personal Smartphone Technology in the Workplace: Scoping Review
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18774
URL: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e18774
doi:10.2196/18774
PMID:33242012
Understanding User Behavior Through the Use of Unsupervised Anomaly Detection: Proof of Concept Using Internet of Things Smart Home Thermostat Data for Improving Public Health Surveillance

Nilooj Jalali¹, MSc, PhD; Kirti Sundar Sahu¹, MPH, MPT; Arlene Oetomo¹, BSc; Plinio Pelegrini Morita¹,²,³,⁴, MSc, PEng, PhD

¹School of Public Health and Health Systems, Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada
²Institute of Health Policy, Management, and Evaluation, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada
³Department of Systems Design Engineering, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada
⁴eHealth Innovation, Techna Institute, University Health Network, Toronto, ON, Canada

Corresponding Author:
Plinio Pelegrini Morita, MSc, PEng, PhD
School of Public Health and Health Systems
Faculty of Applied Health Sciences
University of Waterloo
200 University Avenue West
Waterloo, ON, N2L 3G1
Canada
Phone: 1 5198884567 ext 31372
Fax: 1 519 746 6776
Email: plinio.morita@uwaterloo.ca

Abstract

Background: One of the main concerns of public health surveillance is to preserve the physical and mental health of older adults while supporting their independence and privacy. On the other hand, to better assist those individuals with essential health care services in the event of an emergency, their regular activities should be monitored. Internet of Things (IoT) sensors may be employed to track the sequence of activities of individuals via ambient sensors, providing real-time insights on daily activity patterns and easy access to the data through the connected ecosystem. Previous surveys to identify the regular activity patterns of older adults were deficient in the limited number of participants, short period of activity tracking, and high reliance on predefined normal activity.

Objective: The objective of this study was to overcome the aforementioned challenges by performing a pilot study to evaluate the utilization of large-scale data from smart home thermostats that collect the motion status of individuals for every 5-minute interval over a long period of time.

Methods: From a large-scale dataset, we selected a group of 30 households who met the inclusion criteria (having at least 8 sensors, being connected to the system for at least 355 days in 2018, and having up to 4 occupants). The indoor activity patterns were captured through motion sensors. We used the unsupervised, time-based, deep neural-network architecture long short-term memory-variational autoencoder to identify the regular activity pattern for each household on 2 time scales: annual and weekday. The results were validated using 2019 records. The area under the curve as well as loss in 2018 were compatible with the 2019 schedule. Daily abnormal behaviors were identified based on deviation from the regular activity model.

Results: The utilization of this approach not only enabled us to identify the regular activity pattern for each household but also provided other insights by assessing sleep behavior using the sleep time and wake-up time. We could also compare the average time individuals spent at home for the different days of the week. From our study sample, there was a significant difference in the time individuals spent indoors during the weekend versus on weekdays.

Conclusions: This approach could enhance individual health monitoring as well as public health surveillance. It provides a potentially nonobtrusive tool to assist public health officials and governments in policy development and emergency personnel
in the event of an emergency by measuring indoor behavior while preserving privacy and using existing commercially available thermostat equipment.

**KEYWORDS**

public health; IoT; anomaly detection; behavioral monitoring; deep learning; variational autoencoder; LSTM

**Introduction**

The Internet of Things (IoT) is a network of sensors that is integrated with physical devices and other elements to allow objects to become intelligent and interact with humans [1]. The utilization of IoT in health care is growing dramatically, especially in the areas of behavioral monitoring, welfare interventions, and incident notifications [2]. The IoT involves different types of information such as action, movements, and location, as well as physiological monitoring such as gait, heart rate, blood pressure, and stress [3]. The idea of implementing sensors to monitor one’s health status and recognize activity patterns of individuals was initiated by mounting a variety of sensors on the human body [4] as well as smartphones [5] to capture different movements and other health information. In addition to wearable sensors, ambient sensors have also been utilized to build smart homes. The core feature of a smart home is activity recognition (such as watching TV, cooking meals, and sitting on the sofa) that classifies the collected data into well-defined movements [6,7]. This can be a good indicator for predicting normal and abnormal behaviors [6], as well as recognizing diseases and injuries [8,9]. As elderly people are likely to face difficulties with chronic diseases and other issues that accompany aging, a smart home could provide support and enable elderly individuals to live independently, as well as to provide immediate health care services in the event of an injury and other physical or mental health complications [2,6,10-12].

Using smart home technology would also diminish the significant burden and cost of providing long-term care services for supporting older adults that often falls on our health care systems [13-18].

In the context of smart homes, diverse approaches have been implemented to collect data from sensors and recognize different types of activities. In some studies, the activity patterns of individuals are identified by integrating wearable and ambient sensors [19,20]. In others, the interaction of humans and objects is detected through sensory-based devices [10,21,22], and the activity pattern is recognized through the sequence of those interactions [10,23].

Different supervised machine learning and deep learning models have been utilized to detect anomalies. In some approaches, participants self-labeled their activities, and normal and abnormal behaviors were identified by a supervised classification model [6]. In other studies, regular activity patterns are identified through the sequence of time-stamped events. Deviation from those patterns identified abnormal activities [22,24-27], using methods such as clustering of time-stamped events with the deep belief network feature-extraction method [21], Hidden Markov Models [22], and graph-based networks [26].

Although previous approaches towards behavioral monitoring using smart home technology were focused on collecting detailed information about health status and specific activity patterns of individuals, they ultimately proved to be obstructive, as they were limited to a small number of devices, dependent on participants to report the predefined tasks, time-consuming, and not generalizable for other smart homes [25].

Therefore, to tackle these challenges, we implemented a novel, unobstructive strategy to identify abnormal activity patterns of individuals using an ecobee smart-home thermostat. We hypothesized that, through the use of ecobee’s remote sensor data, it would be possible to create models that represent typical user behaviors (eg, sleep time, wake-up time, and average time spent at home), providing the public health community with a novel tool that could identify when abnormal patterns are identified in daily user behavior. The key advantages of this approach are that we can leverage population-level data over a long period while preserving the privacy of individuals. We also implemented an unsupervised neural network for detecting anomalous activity.

**Methods**

**Data**

In this study, we used Donate Your Data datasets from ecobee, a smart-home thermostat manufacturer from Canada. The data are donated by households that consented to share their anonymized data to conduct research while their privacy is preserved [28]. Around 98% of the users are located in North America [29]. We selected a subset of 30 households that had at least 8 passive infrared embedded sensors and had been online for at least 355 days of 2018. The data collected by the sensors are transmitted to the thermostat base. The thermostat base can support up to 32 sensors. The data are reported in 5-minute intervals. To reduce the noise in the signal, the time window was extended from 5-minute to 30-minute intervals. A similar approach has been utilized by Huchuk et al [29] and Kleiminger et al [30]. For every 30-minute interval, motion status was determined on the basis of the sum of activation from all the sensors (if motion was captured, the sensor value changed from 0 to 1). We identified a positive motion state if the activation of at least 1 sensor lasted for 20 minutes or a minimum of 4 sensors captured a movement for a 5-minute interval each (the sum of activations during a 30-minute interval was ≥4).

Therefore, each day is represented by a binary time series that captures different movements and other health information. In this study, we used Donate Your Data datasets from ecobee, a smart-home thermostat manufacturer from Canada. The data are donated by households that consented to share their anonymized data to conduct research while their privacy is preserved [28]. Around 98% of the users are located in North America [29]. We selected a subset of 30 households that had at least 8 passive infrared embedded sensors and had been online for at least 355 days of 2018. The data collected by the sensors are transmitted to the thermostat base. The thermostat base can support up to 32 sensors. The data are reported in 5-minute intervals. To reduce the noise in the signal, the time window was extended from 5-minute to 30-minute intervals. A similar approach has been utilized by Huchuk et al [29] and Kleiminger et al [30]. For every 30-minute interval, motion status was determined on the basis of the sum of activation from all the sensors (if motion was captured, the sensor value changed from 0 to 1). We identified a positive motion state if the activation of at least 1 sensor lasted for 20 minutes or a minimum of 4 sensors captured a movement for a 5-minute interval each (the sum of activations during a 30-minute interval was ≥4). Therefore, each day is represented by a binary time series that identifies the motion state for the 48 time intervals during a 24-hour period.

**Model**

The annual record of each household was defined by a set of independent equal-sized time sequences $X = \{X_1, \ldots, X_{355}\}$,
where each sequence is composed of 48 time units. Anomaly detection was used to decide whether the status of $X_t$ was abnormal, given that all other days were known. Knowing that individuals are creatures of habit and usually have regular activity patterns, these sequences are static and periodic on a daily or weekly basis. Anomalies are the rare incidents that appear among daily patterns; therefore, identifying them through a supervised approach is challenging, as there are no labeled data available for regular and irregular activity. To answer this challenge, an unsupervised anomaly detection model should be implemented [31]. Utilizing the variational autoencoder (VAE) as a generative model can identify abnormalities by mapping the time-series data into a latent variable and reconstructing them through the latent variable [32]. In a VAE model, the encoder and decoder are defined by the probabilistic function of $q(z|x)$ and $p(z)$, respectively. The posterior distribution $q$ is adapted through training and is able to map the input to a latent variable $z$. The variable $z$ is assigned to a Gaussian distribution with defined parameters of mean and variance $N(\mu, \sigma^2)$. After the encoding process, the underlying characteristic of the input is generated by sampling from the Gaussian distribution ($z^*$) that is reconstructed during the decoding process as described in Figure 1 [32].

**Figure 1.** Variational auto-encoder.

Due to the temporal relationship between time-series windows, the long short-term memory (LSTM)-VAE architecture was utilized to capture the latent correlation between time windows in each sequence [31]. In that way, not only are the temporal dependencies of data retained but also the information from previous time steps can be transferred to the next cell in a controlled manner. This can be done through a memory cell and 3 gates [33]. For each sequence of a time step, the hidden state ($h_t$) is updated by the memory cell ($c_t$). The memory cell is storing the information about the sequence that is controlled by the gate. The gates update the ($c_t$), as the proportion of current cell input ($i_t$), the proportion of forgetting the previous memory cell ($f_t$), and the proportion of current cell output ($o_t$) [33].

For a sample dataset $X$ that is composed of a set of 365 independent sequences (days), each sequence was composed of 48 time intervals. The overall motion status was recorded as a unique variable in each interval. Therefore, the X dataset had the dimension of (365,48,1). Given the input $X$ to the encoder model, the posterior distribution $q(z|x)$ was approximated by feeding the LSTM’s output into 2 linear models to identify the mean and covariance of the latent variables. Then, the input of the LSTM’s hidden layers from the decoder was defined by randomly sampling from the posterior distribution $q(z|x)$. The final output was defined by reconstructing the input through the random samples from the posterior distribution [34].

Based on the generative characteristics of VAE, latent variables have a key role in identifying the reconstructed data. Therefore, our objective was to model the data in such a way that the reconstructed input was similar to the original input. This relation is represented as:

$$(X|z)$$

where $(X|z)$ is the distribution of generating data from the latent variable and $p(z)$ is the probability distribution of the latent variable.

On the other hand, the idea of VAE is to identify $p(z)$ using $q(z|x)$. However, identifying the distribution of $q(z|x)$ is challenging. To this end, the variational inference model is used to approximate the $q(z|x)$ distribution with simpler replacements, like standard normal or Gaussian distribution. Subsequently, the difference between the true distribution and its approximation is measured using Kullback–Leibler divergence [35].
After solving this problem, the approximation error for replacing the posterior distribution with a simpler model would be defined by:

\[ \text{Approximation Error} = \text{Loss Function} \]

Therefore, the overall loss function is defined as 2 parts: reconstruction error between the input and output and approximation error for replacing the posterior distribution with a simpler model.

To identify the anomaly of instances, the label and score approaches are usually used. In supervised anomaly detection, the label approach is used to identify the anomalous and normal samples using the labels 1 and 0, respectively. In contrast, for unsupervised anomaly detection, the score approach is used to identify the confidence value between 0 and 1, which reflects the likelihood of an instance being anomalous [32].

Using the VAE loss function would define the anomalous sequence on the basis of the high-loss score. In that way, the distribution of scores for all the test data points would identify the median and percentile. If the score is greater or equal than “median + IQR,” it is defined as an anomalous sequence, where IQR = 75th percentile – 25th percentile.

In the training of VAE, the Keras [36] Python deep learning library was implemented. Optimization was performed using the Adam optimizer with a predefined learning rate and decay rate. The training was initialized by a mini-batch size of 7 during 200 epochs. The number of nodes for all 4 LSTM hidden layers (2 each in the encoder and decoder) was set to 100, with the \( \tanh \) activation function for hidden layers and latent variables. We set the latent space dimensionality equal to 7 and applied an \( L1 \) regularizer in the hidden layer of the encoder LSTM, with a weight of 0.001.

After preprocessing the data for each household, the unsupervised VAE model was implemented to identify the different regular activity patterns. From the 2018 records, the training and testing sets were randomly selected at a ratio of 80:20. The model was further validated using the records for the year 2019.

**Results**

**Annual Pattern**

The regular activity patterns for different households were identified. Figure 2 illustrates the results for the sample of 10 households. The distinct regular patterns of each household can demonstrate the diversity of the schedules.
For household A, the wake-up time was 5:30 am. The occupants left the house at 9:30 am and returned at 4:30 pm. From 4:30 pm to 10:00 pm, indoor activity was observed, while after 10:30 pm, the absence of motion could indicate sleeping time. Similar patterns were observed for households F and G. However, for household D, the wake-up time was 6:30 am, and continuous motion was observed until 10:30 pm. Households I and C also had similar patterns. The regular activity pattern for household E demonstrated that the residents spent most of their time outside of the house.

Anomaly Detection
Anomalous activities are the rare daily patterns that differ from the regular schedule that can be defined by significant variation (median + IQR) from the regular pattern. For each household, the validation result identified the area under the curve, number of abnormal days, and average reconstruction error (loss), which are shown in Table 1.
Table 1. Validation result for each household based on the trained model.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Household ID</th>
<th>Abnormal days&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Total observed days</th>
<th>Loss&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>AUC&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Abnormal weekend&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HH0</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH3</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH4</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH5</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>352</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH6</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH7</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>362</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH8</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH9</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH10</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH11</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH12</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH13</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH14</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH15</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH16</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH17</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH18</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH19</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH20</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH21</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH22</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH23</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH24</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH25</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH26</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH27</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH28</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Anomalous activity of users in 2019: activity that deviated from regular activity patterns defined from the 2018 data.

<sup>b</sup>Average error associated with reconstructing the validation records using the regular activity pattern.

<sup>c</sup>AUC: area under the curve. Overall compatibility of the regular activity pattern with validation records, in terms of recognizing the activation and deactivation of motion sensors at the right time slots.

<sup>d</sup>Total number of abnormal days that are weekend days.

The variation in anomalous activity and normal activity with respect to the regular schedule for a sample household is illustrated in Figure 3. In the regular activity pattern of the sample household, the wake-up time was 7:00 am, and the residents spent most of the day at home. From 4:00 pm to 5:00 pm, a lack of activity is observed in the regular pattern, which could be interpreted as either the residents are usually not inside the house or they are resting or performing other sedentary activities (watching TV). A lack of activity is also observed from 9:00 pm, which can indicate sleeping time. A similar activity pattern, with a small deviation, is observed for a normal day. For a sample anomalous day, a significant deviation from the regular pattern is observed, indicating a lack of sleep during the night and a lack of activity from 2:00 pm to 6:00 pm.
Figure 3. Demonstrates the regular activity pattern for a sample household (A), reconstructed normal activity (B) and anomalous activity (C).

In addition to anomalous behavior, other indicators such as wake-up time and sleeping time may be assessed from regular activity patterns. Figure 4 demonstrates the sleep duration of households: Their wake-up time and sleep time were recognized from the regular activity pattern (Multimedia Appendix 1).

Figure 4. Sleep duration (dashed lines) for different households that had complete wake-up and sleeping time records. HH_Id: household ID.

Weekday Patterns
To compare the variations in regular patterns based on weekdays, the annual data were divided into subsets of weekdays, and different models were defined separately. For a sample household, the most frequent weekday pattern is defined and shown in Figure 5. Individuals had similar activity patterns from Thursday to Monday and seemed to stay home all day. However, on Tuesdays and Wednesdays, the activity pattern suggests outdoor activity during the day. The wake-up time was between 6:00 am and 7:00 am on weekdays, except Tuesdays, when the wake-up time was 5:30 am. The sleeping time was between 11:00 pm and 11:30 pm except for Sunday.
Figure 5. Weekday-specific activity pattern of a sample household.

The average number of minutes that each household spent at home was compared and is shown as box plots in Figure 6, Multimedia Appendix 2, and Multimedia Appendix 3. There was a significant increase in the time spent at home throughout the weekend versus on weekdays ($P<.05$).
Discussion

Principal Findings

In this study, data from the ecobee smart home thermostat was used to identify the anomalous activity patterns of individuals. The large scope of these data provides mobility recognition for every 5-minute interval. The total number of sensors in each household was different, and the locations of sensors were not identified. To enhance the accuracy of motion status, we extended the time interval from 5 minutes to 30 minutes. Since there was no specified normal activity pattern available for each household, an unsupervised LSTM-VAE method was used to generate the regular activity pattern on the basis of probabilistic distribution. From Table 1, the different AUC outcomes represent the goodness of fit of the daily record to the regular activity pattern. A low AUC value represents a lack of recognition of daily activity through the model. This could be the result of a change in the schedule (HH5). In contrast, for HH0, HH4, and HH22, the high AUC value and low loss value represent a higher chance of distinguishing the daily activity pattern through the model. The number of abnormal days was defined based on the reconstruction loss threshold (Median + IQR), which would explain the households with higher average loss and lower number of abnormal days and vice versa (eg, HH2 versus HH0).

As the demographic information of users was not specified in this study, the diverse regular activity patterns observed for each household could represent the lifestyle of working professionals. However, in the case of the older population, we are expecting a more stable schedule, and any change in behavior could be considered as a sign of unexpected incidents.

In addition to recognizing abnormal daily behavior using a regular activity pattern, other insights can be determined from the model, such as assessing sleep duration and average time spent at home. As sleep duration is one of the confounding factors of individual wellbeing, it is a major concern of public health officials and health care systems to control this risk [37]. Moreover, excessive time spent inside the house can represent the severity of detachment from the natural world and sunlight, which could have detrimental impacts such as respiratory problems or seasonal affective disorder [38]. This approach has the potential, after further validation through larger studies, to provide a nonobtrusive surveillance tool to assist public health officials and governments in policy development by reducing the public health care cost and improving the quality of services in the event of an emergency by measuring indoor behavior [13-17,39,40].

However, to enhance the interpretation of the obtained results, as well as to ascertain other outcomes such as types of incidents and identify behavioral patterns in a time-based sequence of activities, more information is required. This would include demographic information about occupants, total number of residents in each household, and location of sensors (ie, labeled by type of room in the house). In addition to monitoring the activity pattern of older adults [22,24-26], this approach could also provide insights into the impact of the COVID-19 lockdown and isolation measures on daily activity patterns of households, such as sleeping time, sleeping quality, and other indoor activities.

The outputs of the models described, when trained for each household in the dataset, has potential for supporting public health surveillance [41,42]. Using the 110,000 households available in the Donate Your Data dataset [43,44], these models could generate population-level insights on sleep patterns and indoor physical activity. Data access is one of the greatest challenges in public health research [43,44], and leveraging
available datasets such as the one used in this manuscript [14,15,18] allows an improved understanding of behavioral patterns without the added human resources necessary to collect subjective data from 110,000 households [45].

The same algorithms could be used to support independent living, by providing seniors and their families with an analytics layer that can be implemented on top of their ecobee smart thermostat technology, enabling family members to better understand the health of their loved ones; this has been previously undertaken by identifying activity recognition through postural transition using smartphones [5] as well as sensory-based devices [46] and fall detection using ambient sensors [16-18,40,47]. Ultimately, the utilization of IoT datasets such as the one provided by ecobee can provide measures of indoor activity, sleep duration, and sleep quality, as well as feedback to users in near real-time. It can also alert emergency response teams to adverse events such as elevated indoor temperatures during heatwave events [15]. The use of objective data as presented in this paper drives public health research away from subjective biases that challenge the domain [15].

Conclusion
Utilizing this approach would tackle the major challenges of public health surveillance in a more applicable and efficient way. To the best of our knowledge, this is the first study that has implemented this dataset for individual health monitoring in an unsupervised manner. The results presented in this article further the development of the UbiLab Public Health Surveillance Platform, expanding on the development of algorithms for anomaly detection.

Acknowledgments
The authors would like to thank the collaborators from ecobee for providing the Donate Your Data dataset to conduct this research. This project was funded by an NSERC Engage grant (EGP 516352-17) and an OCE VIP Grant (OCE-VIP-33080).

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Average time spent home, sleeping, and awake for 30 households.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 68 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21209_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Average minutes spent at home for different days of the week, based on the regular activity model (minutes).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 137 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21209_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Comparing the average time spent home during the week versus weekend for 30 households.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 73 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21209_app3.pdf]

References


47. Yazar A, Erden F, Cetin AE. Multi-sensor ambient assisted living system for fall detection. 2014. URL: https://www.semanticscholar.org/paper/45fa7d1b208af47177ba21a349f16c658232690 [accessed 2020-11-02]

Abbreviations

AUC: area under the curve
IoT: internet of things
LSTM: long short-term memory
VAE: variational autoencoder
Understanding User Behavior Through the Use of Unsupervised Anomaly Detection: Proof of Concept Using Internet of Things Smart Home Thermostat Data for Improving Public Health Surveillance

Jalali N, Sahu KS, Oetomo A, Morita PP

URL: http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e21209/
doi: 10.2196/21209
PMID: 33185562

©Niloofar Jalali, Kirti Sundar Sahu, Arlene Oetomo, Plinio Pelegrini Morita. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 13.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Enabling Remote Patient Monitoring Through the Use of Smart Thermostat Data in Canada: Exploratory Study

Kirti Sundar Sahu¹, MPH, MPT; Arlene Oetomo¹, BSc; Plinio Pelegrini Morita¹,²,³,⁴,⁵, PhD, PEng

¹School of Public Health and Health Systems, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada
²Institute of Health Policy, Management, and Evaluation, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada
³Department of Systems Design Engineering, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada
⁴eHealth Innovation, Techna Institute, University Health Network, Toronto, ON, Canada
⁵Research Institute for Aging, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Corresponding Author:
Plinio Pelegrini Morita, PhD, PEng
School of Public Health and Health Systems
University of Waterloo
200 University Avenue West
Waterloo, ON, N2L 3G1
Canada
Phone: 1 519 888 4567 ext 31372
Fax: 1 519 746 6776
Email: plinio.morita@uwaterloo.ca

Abstract

Background: Advances in technology have made the development of remote patient monitoring possible in recent years. However, there is still room for innovation in the types of technologies that are developed, used, and implemented. The smart thermostat solutions provided in this study can expand beyond typically defined features and be used for improved holistic health monitoring purposes.

Objective: The aim of this study is to validate the hypothesis that remote motion sensors could be used to quantify and track an individual’s movements around the house. On the basis of our results, the next step would be to determine if using remote motion sensors could be a novel data collection method compared with the national census-level surveys administered by governmental bodies. The results will be used to inform a more extensive implementation study of similar smart home technologies to gather data for machine learning algorithms and to build upon pattern recognition and comprehensive health monitoring.

Methods: We conducted a pilot study with a sample size of 8 to validate the use of remote motion sensors to quantify movement in the house. A large database containing data from smart home thermostats was analyzed to compare the following indicators; sleep, physical activity, and sedentary behavior. These indicators were developed by the Public Health Agency of Canada and are collected through traditional survey methods.

Results: The results showed a significant Spearman rank correlation coefficient of 0.8 (P<.001), which indicates a positive linear association between the total number of sensors activated and the total number of indoor steps traveled by study participants. In addition, the indicators of sleep, physical activity, and sedentary behavior were all found to be highly comparable with those attained by the Public Health Agency of Canada.

Conclusions: The findings demonstrate that remote motion sensors data from a smart thermostat solution are a viable option when compared with traditional survey data collection methods for health data collection and are also a form of zero-effort technology that can be used to monitor the activity levels and nature of activity of occupants within the home.

 doi:10.2196/21016

KEYWORDS
disruptive technology; health information systems; public health surveillance; health behavior; Internet of Things; cell phone; mobile phone
Introduction

Background
Remote patient monitoring (RPM) involves digital technologies used to collect and transmit medical and health data from individuals to health care providers for assessments and recommendations [1,2]. As a component of public health surveillance, novel RPM technology infrastructures can modernize traditional, time-consuming, and expensive data collection methods [1]. The Internet of Things (IoT) enables health care providers to remotely monitor patient health and analyze the data with minimal delay to develop a personalized treatment plan or follow the patient’s progress over time [3]. Aspects that can be monitored include physical activity levels, drug adherence, and physiological indicators such as blood pressure and heart rate [1,4]. The ultimate goal of RPM is to enable individuals to lead healthier lives and improve their well-being at home by leveraging technology.

Although a variety of RPM platforms exist today [5], consumers continue to be limited by interoperability issues because the systems lack compatibility, often creating silos of technologies where data cannot be integrated or exchanged. This study uses existing off-the-shelf technologies, such as IoT-based smart thermostats equipped with wireless motion sensors and consumer-level wearable fitness trackers. Smart Wi-Fi thermostats regulate indoor air temperature via motion sensors that detect occupancy. Their benefits include cost and energy savings owing to increased heating and cooling efficiency and their ability to eliminate the need for an additional dedicated home monitoring platform. In the United States, customers using these smart thermostats save approximately 23% on heating and cooling costs [6]. For this study, the Ubiquitous Health Technology Lab (UbiLab) [7] at the University of Waterloo has partnered with ecobee, a Toronto-based Canadian smart Wi-Fi thermostat company [8]. Using data from ecobee thermostats and a variety of sensors, the UbiLab Public Health Surveillance Platform (UPHSP) was developed to augment current public health surveillance efforts through the use of IoT data. Public health surveillance is labor intensive, requires significant human resources, often relies on outdated data, and has numerous types of biases (eg, recall, performance, nonresponse, voluntary response, social desirability) [9]. The UPHSP improves that scenario by providing access to near real time, objective sensor-based data.

Public health surveillance is the systematic collection, analysis, and interpretation of health data that are required to determine funding for programs, strategies, and initiatives [10]. It is also an important component of public health that focuses on early identification, mitigation of disease, prevention, planning, and overall evaluation of population health behaviors. At present, the Canadian public health surveillance system relies on self-reporting and short-term activity monitoring to collect data on health indicators included in the Physical Activity, Sedentary Behavior and Sleep (PASS) Indicator framework [11]. This method has implications for research methodology, the validity of research results, and the soundness of public policy developed from evidence using questionnaire-based research [12]. Traditional methods have several limitations. First, they are prone to recall and social desirability bias. Second, data collection does not occur in real time and requires extensive administrative resources adding to the total costs [13]. Third, conducting surveys can be a lengthy process and thus are done periodically and intermittently. Finally, methods such as physical activity monitoring require participants to be completely involved in data collection, which may be inconvenient and cause deviations from their regular routines, leading to data collection challenges that result in smaller study sizes [14].

Objectives
The goal of this study is to develop and facilitate the use of UPHSP across Canada for population- and individual-level surveillance of health behaviors. The platform enables RPM via smart Wi-Fi thermostats and motion sensors to seamlessly collect and transmit health behavior data. These data are provided to public health officials, care providers (with minimum disturbance of daily activities and delivery of personalized health insights), and users. UPHSP has advantages over conventional data collection methods because it addresses current challenges with traditional data collection techniques. UPHSP allows researchers to access granular and longitudinal data generated directly from within the participant’s house. The anonymized data will be collected 24 hours a day and 7 days a week and then consolidated so that they are available to health care officials in near real time. The core strength of this surveillance method is that it utilizes zero-effort technology (ZET) [14] that requires no effort from users. This effectively reduces the burden on study participants, ensures minimal disturbance to their daily routines, and can also be applied in the real-world environment [15].

In collaboration with the Public Health Agency of Canada, UbiLab is developing UPHSP to improve and develop individual- and population-level health behavior indicators. In the initial stages of the project, the team focused on the existing set of health indicators from the PASS Indicators framework. PASS Indicators measured from within the house were selected for this study. This study was then submitted to the Healthy Behaviour Data Challenge organized by the Public Health Agency of Canada (PHAC), the Canadian Institutes for Health Research, and the MaRS Discovery District in August 2017 [16,17]. The aim was to demonstrate that collecting reliable data for the 3 indicators is possible with smart home technology. The goal is to enable public health officials, such as the PHAC, to access real time population-level data of Canadian behaviors and develop policies and programs with relevant data to improve the health and well-being of Canadians.

Methods
UPHSP is based on thermostat sensor technology that collects raw motion data generated by activity in the house. A two-step approach was carried out to achieve the objectives of this study. The first step involved deploying a small pilot study to validate the accuracy of the motion sensors, and the second step investigated the larger data set acquired via the ecobee’s Donate Your Data (DYD) program [18,19] to demonstrate the scalability of this study, as described in Figure 1.
Pilot Study

The first important task for this study was to determine if the ecobee sensors were a valid data source. The association between remote motion sensors and a person’s movement in the house needed to be definite and accurate. A pilot study was conducted to validate the relationship between ecobee remote sensor activation and movement within the house and to test the accuracy of these sensors. The team hypothesized that there would be a significant association between the number of sensors activated and the number of steps taken by the participants in the house. The study included a total of 8 participants (4 women and 4 men) aged between 25 and 41 years and were residents of the Kitchener-Waterloo Region in Ontario, Canada. Each participant wore a Fitbit Zip and was the sole occupant in their house during the data collection period. Furthermore, each house was equipped with an ecobee thermostat unit, and remote sensors were placed around the house to ensure maximum coverage by the sensors as seen in the Figure 2. Approximately 5 to 30 remote motion sensors were deployed in each home, depending on the size of the house. The floorplan layout for each house was obtained to determine optimum sensor placement. Motion and step data were collected in all 5 houses via the thermostat sensors and the Fitbit between 9:00 AM and 5:00 PM. Participants were also instructed to record their activities at all times and identify interruptions, such as using the washroom or getting a snack, in an activity log.

Figure 2. Sample home layout of a participant with ecobee thermostat and remote sensors.

Once the data were collected, cleaned, and ready for analysis, the team was able to identify the activity status of the participants (active vs sedentary) using step data and remote sensor activations (Figure 1). As the data were not normally distributed, the Spearman correlation test was the tool of choice to test for association [20]. The Spearman correlation coefficient was found to be 0.8, with \( P<0.001 \) indicating that there was a strong positive linear association between the total number of
sensors activated and the total number of steps traveled by the participant within the house and that this correlation was statistically significant. The strength of this correlation increased with the increasing number of sensors within a larger house. With our first hypothesis successfully proven, the second phase of the project, as identified in Figure 1, could begin.

**DYD**

Ecobee created the *Donate Your Data* (DYD) [21,22] program to provide researchers access to anonymized data collected from their technology for further energy and sustainability research. UbiLab, since its launch in 2016, is the first research team to use these data for health purposes and has gained access to a large data repository through this research partnership. The first data set received from ecobee contained over 10,000 records (or households) and has since increased to more than 110,000 records after 3 years.

The metadata information accompanying the thermostat motion data is provided by the ecobee user upon initial setup of their ecobee thermostat, where they may choose to opt into the program to contribute their data to the DYD program. The information that is collected includes the style of house (e.g., apartment, townhouse, etc), floor square footage, number of floors, and number of occupants. Incomplete fields were eliminated from the analysis pool. For ecobee to maintain this program’s opt-in process and encourage participation, leaving the fields optional increased the enrollment but did not contribute to completeness or quality of the data set. The DYD data set is completely anonymized to maintain user privacy, and all user customizations of sensor names or locations are not shared with researchers. This is a limitation but a sensible move from ecobee to protect user privacy and encourage program participation. Unfortunately, the metadata quality is restricted by the amount and quality of the information entered during setup by the user.

From January 2015 to March 2017, data from 556 single occupant houses in the United States and 70 in Canada were included in the analysis. According to ecobee, over 1 million smart thermostats are installed in houses across the United States and Canada and that number continues to grow. Furthermore, federal and provincial rebate programs encourage user adoption of smart thermostat technologies [23]. These efforts are beneficial for this study and have future potential in UPHSP.

**A Comparison**

The team focused on the ability to collect data from sensors and demonstrate how the same indicators could be measured with sensor technology. Existing health indicators from the PASS Indicator framework were matched on the basis of the measure description determined by the PHAC [11]. At present, the sleep indicator is a self-reported value determined by the Canadian Health Measures Survey (CHMS) from Statistics Canada and is the sum of the average number of hours spent sleeping in a 24-hour period by adults aged 18 to 79 years [24]. This is potentially problematic because the value is subject to recall bias and sleep times are rounded to the nearest half hour. In addition, the platform provides insight into the sleep timing, patterns, and number of disturbances captured owing to excessive movement or additional triggering of sensors in areas of the house other than the bedroom. Indicators of sleep interruptions would provide insights into sleep-related conditions and disorders such as sleep apnea and sleepwalking, but they have not yet been developed by the PHAC. However, the PHAC is currently developing several new sleep indicators for sleep quality, sleep hygiene, and more.

Adherence to the PASS Indicators of physical activity guidelines and the total amount of moderate-to-vigorous physical activity is derived from CHMS and uses accelerometer data [25]. As the platform functions within the house, the lack of movement during the day very likely indicates that the individual was out of the house. Canada has distinct seasons; therefore, this information could be used to investigate seasonal patterns that contribute to social isolation or increased healthy behavior during the warmer months.

**Physical Activity**

Ecobee data are streamed in 5-min intervals, which means that every 5 min the remote sensors send the motion data to the thermostat and the thermostat sends these data to the server. Hence, all the analyses performed in the project were performed in 5-min intervals. The total activity within the house was measured for the purposes of our study. Physical activity was defined as true if ≥2 sensors were activated at 5-min intervals within the house during the waking period between 8:00 AM and 10:00 PM. This method of measuring physical activity provides real time data, removes the involvement of the user from data collection, effectively eliminates recall bias, and minimizes the social desirability effect.

**Sedentary Behavior**

Sedentary behavior was defined as less than 2 sensors being activated within any 5-min interval during the day (between 8:00 AM and 10:00 PM) while the individual was in the house. As this was a pilot study, we tried to classify unknown data into 3 categories: sleep, sedentary behavior, and physical activity. Our assumptions were as follows: (1) zero sensor activation was labeled as sleep; (2) 3 or more activated sensors indicated physical activity; and (3) the remaining values indicated sedentary behavior. The logic behind this type of sampling was that if an individual moved from one place to another within 5 min, at least two sensors would be activated and the energy equivalent used would be less than when undertaking physical activity. When more than 2 sensors were activated, the step values were more appropriately deemed to be a higher level of physical activity.

This is different from the PHAC accelerometer-generated indicator obtained from CHMS [26] because the focus was on sedentary time within the house as our technology did not measure sedentary time spent commuting or while at work. The algorithms developed for the project treated movement between rooms as physical activity and only stagnant behavior was considered sedentary.
Results

Pilot Study
Initially, a pilot study was conducted to confirm the accuracy of the responses of the ecobee sensors to movement in the house. It involved using Fitbit to track the steps of 8 participants for approximately one week, which was equivalent to 386 person-hours of data.

A total of 8 participants used Fitbit for 1 week; however, after processing and cleaning the data, not all of the data were exactly of same length across the 7 days. There was no significant difference between the duration of participants’ data used. A simple visual inspection of the number of steps captured by the Fitbits and sensor activations was done to determine alignment (as seen in Figures 3 and 4). There is a clear increase in motion sensor activation in alignment with increased steps taken. To confirm that the sensors were working precisely, a statistical test was performed to measure the association between the sensor activation and Fitbit data. The Spearman correlation coefficient was \( r=0.8 \) (range 0.78-0.90; \( n=3292; P<.001 \)). These results indicate a strong association between sensor activation and the number of steps recorded via Fitbit. Figures 3 and 4 illustrate the sensors that were activated when an individual walked around their house and their association with steps taken by that individual captured via Fitbit. The scatterplot in Figure 5 demonstrates the data points and individual-level correlation between steps and activated ecobee sensors. In addition, traveling between rooms, which is indicated by more steps, showed higher levels of activity on the sensors. During periods of inactivity, when no steps were recorded by Fitbit, the sensors also displayed no or minimal activation. A few random or unexplained activations may be caused by internal movements of items in the house, such as a moving curtain or a bird flying by a window that faced a sensor. These movements were considered noise and removed for the purposes of our analysis. Only one sensor was activated during this time, which can be attributed to disturbed sleep or other kinds of sedentary behavior.

Figure 3. Association between Fitbit and ecobee database–separated.

Figure 4. Association between Fitbit and ecobee database–superimposed.
Sleep
Following the pilot study, the second phase of the project involved analyzing the larger DYD data set from ecobee. Sleep in households was measured using UPHSP. In Table 1, the individual and household columns are defined as follows: a house with a single occupant was labeled as *individual* and households with more than one occupant was labeled as *household*. They were mutually exclusive. The findings were that, on average, single occupant households from the ecobee data set had a sleep duration of 7.8 hours per day. Compared with the conclusions from previous surveys and PHAC’s current method of measuring average Canadian sleep duration [24], the platform’s result was 0.7 hours higher on average. UPHSP can calculate the number of sleep interruptions during the night using automated algorithms. Data recorded by ecobee revealed approximately two hours of interrupted sleep during regular sleep by ecobee single occupancy residents. An interruption was defined as any movement within the sleeping hours. Interrupted sleep is a new indicator as it is not currently possible to self-report this measure and has not been collected or reported by the PHAC.

Table 1. Key findings and a comparison of UbiLab findings with PHAC reported physical activity, sedentary behavior, and sleep indicators (n=958).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of indicators</th>
<th>UbiLab&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Household (n=888)</th>
<th>PASS&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nighttime sleep, hours</td>
<td>7.89</td>
<td>7.71</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbed sleep, hours</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>N/A&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical activity in the house, minutes per day</td>
<td>85.2</td>
<td>146.4</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedentary time, hours</td>
<td>4.44</td>
<td>5.75</td>
<td>9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Away period, hours</td>
<td>8.12</td>
<td>5.80</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>UbiLab: Ubiquitous Health Technology Lab.

<sup>b</sup>PASS: physical activity, sedentary behavior, and sleep.

<sup>c</sup>N/A: not applicable.

Physical Activity
The second indicator measured by UPHSP was the amount of physical activity in each household, which averaged 85 min per day. Physical activity was defined as movement within the house during waking hours. A comparison of our indicator with physical activity (moderate to vigorous) measurements reported by the PHAC revealed that UPHSP results surpassed that of...
PHAC by almost an hour (85 min vs 24 min). However, our measurements do not consider the intensity of the physical activity (ie, moderate or vigorous). Further studies are required to develop intelligent algorithms that can differentiate between the intensities of physical activity.

Analyzing the data over a long period can inform public health officials about seasonal physical activity variations. During the winter months, the number of indoor activities and the time spent inside will likely increase owing to cold weather and shorter days. Measuring household physical activity in Canada is therefore essential and necessary from a public health perspective.

**Sedentary Behavior**

The study participants recorded their activity log during the pilot study to track the type and duration of their activities. The platform measures general activities in the house, time patterns of doing certain types of housework, the number of interruptions, and the area of the house where the users spend most of their time. The log depicts the total time spent on a certain activity that is recorded by a participant. In the first row, the time the user spent cleaning their house would be considered physical activity as the user was active and moved around the house. In this case, multiple sensors would have been active throughout the house during a 5-min interval. The second row indicates that the user was sitting and watching television. This would be considered a sedentary behavior if less than 2 sensors were activated in a 5-min interval. The number of interruptions is a new indicator that could help the PHAC understand healthy behaviors and seasonal patterns.

UPHSP calculates the true nature and timing of all the behaviors being carried out in the house. In addition, the data set was filtered for any exceptional behavior to ensure that there was an accurate analysis of the ecobee users’ average activities. For this purpose, 100 steps (156 m) were selected as the threshold for a 5-min interval. If participants took more than 100 steps in a 5-min interval (eg, while working out on a treadmill), these occurrences were considered outliers. To select this set point of 100 steps, the Spearman correlation statistical test was performed on several thresholds beginning with 100 steps, which was increased by 50 steps at a time to a maximum of 400 steps. As seen in the Multimedia Appendix 1, there was only a small amount of variation in the correlation coefficients, r≥0.798 and P<.001, at 100 steps, which indicates a strong correlation between the distance traveled and the activation of sensors. Therefore, the project was successfully able to use ecobee remote sensors to understand indoor physical activity levels.

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings**

Technological advancements have rapidly become cross-disciplinary as they merge health care and medicine. However, unlike the retail and commercial sectors, the health care field lags behind [25]. Mobile health is the application of digital technology for the use of medical care and has the goal of empowering individuals to be in control of their own health. Technology has revolutionized the field of medicine and continues to impact all areas of health care. Medical technology has evolved rapidly, enabling doctors to use new equipment inside hospitals and allowing them to connect with patients and other physicians thousands of kilometers away through smart devices [27]. Hundreds of health and wellness mobile apps have been developed since the introduction of smartphones (also known as the field of mobile health [mHealth]) [28]. These apps enable users to track their own health (ie, fitness levels, water consumption, diet, etc) and compare their data with standardized guidelines or challenge their peers to step competitions. The dependence on medical technology cannot be ignored within the health care industry because health care professionals can continue to find ways to improve their practice with the development of these brilliant innovations [27].

Manipulating the temperature of a house using a smartphone was not possible 10 years ago. At present, monitoring health and diagnosing conditions are possible via smart home technologies. With this technology, UbiLab is turning valuable sources of data into useful insights. Raw data are difficult to interpret and would be insufficient to encourage behavioral change. They are made interpretable with artificial intelligence (AI) algorithms using data from the pilot study. Interpreted health data will be shared with users using mobile or web-based platforms and will be presented through a dashboard. These data could help individuals learn about their daily activity patterns, general health behaviors, and compare their behaviors with those of their peers or the national average. For this to become a reality, it is necessary to ensure that all the users can view and interpret the data anywhere with clarity. A simple dashboard interface will be carefully designed to display meaningful and actionable health information for Canadians. The team created a simple dashboard for the purpose of the Healthy Behaviour Data Challenge. Ideally, such a dashboard would display the user’s health data in a textual, auditory, and visual manner. It would support multiple languages and also be interactive and visually appealing to gain more attention from individuals. Furthermore, the dashboard would recommend changes to the user’s physical activity, sleep, and sedentary behaviors to improve their overall health. Smart home technologies are currently expanding into the realm of virtual assistants that are based on AI such as Amazon Echo [29], Apple’s Siri [30], and Google Home [31]. Incorporation of these technologies could bring additional personalization to the platform and user interaction and further motivate health behavior change and enhance user experience.

UPHSP has shown potential by providing a possible improvement and by increasing the efficiency of the current labor-intensive methods of data collection. In comparison with traditional data collection methods that require labor, funding, and ample time, this platform is more cost-effective because it leverages existing technology (smart thermostats). The platform is very convenient for most users because it uses ZET and only requires direct involvement for the initial setup and orientation of the system. In addition, the data collected via UPHSP is more granular and accurate, collected 24/7 in real time, which eliminates potential social desirability and recall bias. On average, the current delay in research and policy development is 17 years [27,32,33], which can be changed with the help of...
technology and multisite studies. Implementing UPHSP could significantly reduce the time spent on data entry and collection because the technology requires little active involvement from study participants and can reduce the overall study time.

The implementation of this study is possible because of a growing interest in smart home technology. An estimated 100,000 Canadian households have an ecobee thermostat installed, with even more users in the United States of America, and this number is only expected to increase. Incentives from the provincial government, such as the Ontario Green Fund, has also helped drive interest and adoption. Similar initiatives would diversify the sample population, which is valuable as it would open up this technology to a wider sociodemographic of population. The issue of a biased sample population can be addressed by investing in the adoption of smart thermostat across the country. By including individuals from different cultures, ages, and various socioeconomic statuses, UPHSP can help the PHAC gain insight into contrasting health behaviors among different segments of the country. This could help identify populations with the greatest need and inform policies that target these groups.

There are many potential applications of this type of technology and ways of leveraging of nontraditional data sources, as has been done here with data from IoT for public health surveillance [34]. For example, public health officials can monitor risky behavior for chronic diseases, and this could have a significant impact on routine monitoring systems at the national and provincial levels. Real time monitoring of population health behaviors without interfering with daily activity is the biggest strength of this study. As technology rapidly evolves to become more affordable, smaller, and wireless, passive and seamless data collection for health monitoring becomes more feasible.

**Limitations**

The team has identified some limitations with the technology that constrain the capabilities of the data collected and the possible health behavior insights. The ecobee remote sensors collect data at 5-min intervals, which from the perspective of collecting data for temperature control is sufficient. However, a higher level of granularity is required for RPM, and the system is not yet able to differentiate between multiple, different occupants in a house. There is no means to tag an individual to identify them as they move through the house; therefore, observing a pattern is difficult, and it is not yet possible to attach it to a specific person. Identifying or differentiating occupants in the house is currently challenging without adding an additional on-body device. The larger DYD data set is a biased sample because the typical buyer of the smart thermostat is a middle-to-upper class individual who is interested in cost and energy savings, reducing environmental impact, and technologically savvy. Initiatives from governments and smart technology manufacturers to encourage the adoption of smart thermostat technologies, such as rebates or the installation of this technology in affordable housing units, can help to make this more accessible to a wider income range and reduce the sample bias. The distribution will also need to adequately reflect the Canadian population, and considerations should be taken to include smaller or remote communities outside of the provinces of Ontario and British Columbia.

Moving forward, the UbiLab will collect demographic information from a subset of existing ecobee users to understand the association between age, sex, and other relevant demographic indicators. Our plan is to explore other sensor technologies to train machine learning algorithms and generate data. In addition, solutions to correctly identify true positive presence in the house will be explored to address this shortcoming.

**Conclusions**

There is a lot of potential for RPM to expand and leverage commercial technologies. This study is just one example where technology can be used to bring innovative solutions for real use in the realm of health care, especially as it allows the use of technologies that are zero effort and have more than one added benefit. Technologies such as these will be able to advance the fields of RPM and public health surveillance.

**Acknowledgments**

UbiLab would like to thank all study participants for their time and the volunteers of UbiLab and ecobee for their support in the completion of this study. The authors would like to thank Dr. Shannon Majowicz and Dr. Joel Dubin from the University of Waterloo for their guidance for this paper.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

**Multimedia Appendix 1**

Spearman correlation coefficients for each of the data cleaning stages.

[DOCX File, 14 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21016_app1.docx ]

**References**


Abbreviations

- **AI**: artificial intelligence
- **CHMS**: Canadian Health Measures Survey
- **DYD**: Donate Your Data
- **IoT**: Internet of Things
- **PASS**: Physical Activity, Sedentary Behavior and Sleep
- **PHAC**: Public Health Agency of Canada
- **RPM**: remote patient monitoring
- **UbiLab**: Ubiquitous Health Technology Lab
- **UPHSP**: UbiLab Public Health Surveillance Platform
- **ZET**: zero-effort technology

©Kirti Sundar Sahu, Arlene Oetomo, Plinio Pelegrini Morita. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 20.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Using a Mobile App-Based International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health Set to Assess the Functioning of Spinal Cord Injury Patients: Rasch Analysis

Mengmeng Jia, BSN; Jie Tang, BSN; Sumei Xie, BSN; Xiaokuo He, PhD; Yingmin Wang, MSN; Ting Liu, MSN; Tiebin Yan, PhD; Kun Li, PhD

1School of Nursing, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou, China
2Department of Spinal Cord Injury Rehabilitation, Sichuan Provincial Rehabilitation Hospital, Chengdu, China
3Department of Spinal Cord Injury Rehabilitation, Guangdong Provincial Work Injury Rehabilitation Hospital, Guangzhou, China
4Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, The Fifth Hospital of Xiamen, Xiamen, China
5Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hospital, Guangzhou, China

these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Kun Li, PhD
School of Nursing
Sun Yat-sen University
No. 74 Zhong Shan Second Road
Guangzhou, China
Phone: 86 138 22206519
Fax: 86 020 87333043
Email: likun22@mail.sysu.edu.cn

Background: The International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) is a unified system of functioning terminology that has been used to develop electronic health records and assessment instruments. Its application has been limited, however, by its complex terminology, numerous categories, uncertain operationalization, and the training required to use it well. Together is a mobile health app designed to extend medical support to the families of spinal cord injury (SCI) patients in China. The app’s core framework is a set of only 31 ICF categories. The app also provides rating guidelines and automatically transforms routine assessment results to the terms of the ICF qualifiers.

Objective: The goal of the research is to examine the suitability of the ICF set used in the app Together for use as an instrument for assessing the functioning of SCI patients.

Methods: A cross-sectional study was conducted including 112 SCI patients recruited before discharge from four rehabilitation centers in China between May 2018 and October 2019. Nurses used the app to assess patient functioning in face-to-face interviews. The resulting data were then subjected to Rasch analysis.

Results: After deleting two categories (family relationships and socializing) and one personal factor (knowledge about spinal cord injury) that did not fit the Rasch model, the body functions and body structures, activities and participation, and contextual factors components of the ICF exhibited adequate fit to the Rasch model. All three demonstrated acceptable person separation indices. The 28 categories retained in the set were free of differential item functioning by gender, age, education level, or etiology.

Conclusions: Together overcomes some of the obstacles to practical application of the ICF. The app is a reliable assessment tool for assessing functioning after spinal cord injury.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e20723) doi:10.2196/20723

KEYWORDS
International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health; spinal cord injuries; mobile health app; Rasch analysis
Introduction

The International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) is a unified system of terminology for multidisciplinary use issued in 2001 by the World Health Organization (WHO). It provides a consensus framework for defining functioning and disability and their interrelationships with health conditions and contextual factors [1]. As a standard language, the ICF is designed to be easily understood and used among multidisciplinary teams [2]. The comprehensive perspective on functioning and interdisciplinary focus have motivated the development of data collection tools, electronic health records, and assessment instruments [3-5], and it is now sometimes viewed as a third health indicator for monitoring a health system’s performance after mortality and morbidity [6]. Many studies have provided evidence of the ICF’s value in reflecting patient levels of functioning, helping decision making, enhancing collaboration, and planning treatment.

However, challenges have limited practical application of the ICF, including its relatively complex terminology and category numbering. Each ICF category has its own distinct definition, which doesn’t always accord with the prevailing medical terminology. Professionals need to be trained before using the system [5]. Although many ICF core sets with fewer categories have been specifically developed for certain conditions, some studies still report that the application of the ICF is time-consuming [7]. Reducing the number of categories by selecting only the most relevant remains challenging. Additionally, rating using the ICF qualifiers is not easy. There are 5 grades: 0 = no problem, 1 = mild, 2 = moderate, 3 = severe, and 4 = complete problem. But there can be large differences among user assessments because of a lack of clear assessment guidelines, giving the approach poor interrater reliability [8-11]. Some researchers have suggested establishing assessment guidelines, but these would necessarily be complex and require additional user training, further hindering the system’s acceptance [12,13].

A mobile health app is a health-related software program installed on smart mobile devices that provides health information and tracks a user’s health behavior. It might also allow remote consultation [14]. With the popularity of personal mobile devices such as cellphones and tablets, mobile apps have been used in many fields in health care [15,16]. Studies have shown that app-based transitional care enhances patients’ self-perceptions of efficacy [17], helps prevent complications [18,19], improves quality of life [18], and reduces readmissions to hospital [18].

The study team previously developed an ICF-based app called Together for the transitional care of spinal cord injury (SCI) patients in China [20]. SCI is a serious and life-changing disease that can cause paraplegia or quadriplegia. Most SCI patients in China live at home after their acute treatment and rehabilitation [21]. They almost always need professional medical support for further rehabilitation and preventing complications [22,23]. However, community medical resources in China are at present limited and cannot meet SCI patients’ complex long-term health needs [24]. Together was designed to bring professional health care support from medical institutions to SCI patients living with their families in China. The language of the app is Chinese, and the copyright is held by China’s Sun Yat-sen University [25].

Together’s core framework is a set of ICF categories that reflect the levels of functioning typical of SCI patients and help organize online assessment, standardize health guidance, and coordinate interdisciplinary collaboration. The app uses fewer and more specific categories than the normal ICF core set, focusing on the transitional care of SCI patients. Preliminary studies identified 31 ICF categories as the most useful outcome indicators in the transitional care of SCI patients, covering the major physiological, psychological, and social participation problems of SCI patients at home [20,26]. The app provides consistent assessment prompts for the raters. Guidelines are provided for rating each ICF category, which helps to guarantee the consistency of the assessments, minimize the training required, and ease the load on the clinical staff doing the assessments.

This study was part of a research program designed to document the effects of an app-based transitional care model for SCI patients at home. Rasch analysis was applied to examine the suitability of the app’s set of categories. The overall aim was to determine to what extent Together can solve problems related to using the ICF in clinical practice.

The assumption of the Rasch model is that a person with greater ability is more likely than a person with less ability to pass in relation to an item, and that an easy item is more likely to be passed than a difficult one [27]. A Rasch analysis is used to examine whether an instrument makes those distinctions satisfactorily. A person’s performance on an item should be related only to the person’s ability and the difficulty of the item, regardless of gender, age, education, etc. [27]. If an instrument fits the Rasch model well, it can be used to reflect the performance of people with different abilities. This study was designed to test Together’s performance in that regard. A good result could present a new approach in the use of the ICF.

Methods

Study Design

A cross-sectional design was employed involving four research centers in Guangzhou, Chengdu, and Shiyin in China. The study was approved by Sun Yat-sen University’s ethics committee (file 2017ZSLYEC-0620).

Participants

The participants were recruited between May 2018 and October 2019 prior to discharge from the four research centers. The inclusion criteria were age 18 years or older, SCI according to the International Standards for Neurological Classification of Spinal Cord Injury [28] and imaging examination, less than 2 years since injury, conscious and able to communicate, and in possession of an internet-connected mobile device and familiarity with using it. The exclusion criteria were severe heart, brain, lung, liver, or kidney disease; acute-stage spinal cord injury or in the critical period; or spinal cord lesions with a degenerative, genetic, or congenital cause.
App
The Together app was designed to help medical staff provide remote follow-up for home-dwelling SCI patients. Hospital-based nurses, physicians, and therapists responsible for the transitional care for SCI patients at home are the target users. The core functions of the app comprise online assessment, providing standard health guidance, interdisciplinary referral within the team, interaction among health staff and patients, and management of online follow-up. With the help of the app, health care personnel can assess patient performance in terms of ICF categories and remotely provide health education to patients according to the assessment results. The app can be used to refer patients to different professionals on the health care team. Weekly reminders make managing follow-up by medical staff easier.

The app’s development has been reported previously [20,26]. From 51 ICF categories identified as outcome indicators useful in the transitional care of SCI patients by experts in the field via a 3-round Delphi survey, 31 were selected by a panel of 5 experts to form the app’s framework based on the feasibility of use in clinical practice. These categories best reflected the dysfunctions and complications most common and most in need of monitoring for SCI patients at home. Categories reflecting actual performance of SCI patients in daily life were preferred.

The 31 ICF categories address physiological functioning, psychological functioning, complications, daily living activities, social participation, adaptation to environmental factors, and personal factors. For each category, guidelines were established for converting routine clinical assessment results to the ICF qualifiers, and a standardized guidance program was formulated by the expert panel based on the knowledge-attitude-practice theory. Together is an Android app developed using the Java language. Most of the app’s functions—online assessment, providing standard health guidance, interdisciplinary referral—apply to all of the categories.

The app’s utility depends heavily on to what extent its assessment results reflect functioning differences among patients with different capabilities. This study used Rasch analysis to test the app’s suitability as an assessment instrument. Figure 1 shows the development and examination process.

Figure 1. Development process of the Together app.

Assessment Guidelines
Medical staff communicate with the patients face to face or by telephone, assess them on each ICF category, and record the results in the app, which offers standard verbal prompts to the clinician to unify different clinicians’ assessments with respect to each ICF category. For example, the verbal prompt of the sensation of pain (b280) category was “If 0 is not painful and 10 is the most painful, how serious is your pain?” Four transformation guidelines were developed to transform the initial clinical assessment results: 0 = no problem, 1 = mild, 2 = moderate, 3 = severe, or 4 = complete problem (Table 1) [29].

Guideline 1 transforms patient information in the form of percentages to the ICF qualifiers. Using muscle power functions (b730) as an example, the 0 qualifier would indicate that all of the key muscles below the injured neurological level had power grade >3, and the 4 qualifier would indicate that 95% to 100% of key muscles had power grade <3. Guideline 2 transforms the wording of patient reports to the qualifiers. Using mobility of joint functions (b710) as an example, no limitation of joint mobility, slight limitation, moderate limitation, severe limitation, and total immobility would be rated as 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively. Guideline 3 transforms the frequency with which a problem was observed to the qualifiers. Using increased blood pressure (b4200) as an example, stable blood pressure over the past month would be rated as 0, whereas high blood pressure almost every day would receive a 4. Guideline 4 transforms assessment results generated using routine clinical instruments or standards, such as the 0-10 numerical rating scale (NRS) for pain, to the qualifiers. NRS scores of 0, 1-2, 3-4, 5-9, and 10 would be rated as 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively (Multimedia Appendix 1).
The 31 categories came from the three components body functions and body structures (15 categories), activities and participation (10 categories), and contextual factors (6 categories). Although the ICF does not classify personal factors in the contextual factors component, four personal factor items related to the psychology of SCI patients were included based on preliminary testing (acceptance of life in a wheelchair/in bed, knowledge about spinal cord injury, coping with everyday life, and adjustment to new body image) [20,26]. The app was then used to rate the SCI patients’ functioning on a 1-4 scale. In addition, an option 9 (not applicable) was also used. For the activities and participation component, each patient’s performance on tasks in actual life situations (not in a standard environment) was assessed. For the contextual factors component, barriers (but not facilitators) encountered in each patient’s life were assessed. In previous research, the eating (d550) and drinking (d560) categories were found to be strongly interrelated and difficult to assess separately [13]; therefore, those categories were combined into a testlet to be assessed.

### Data Collection

All nurses who participated in the study first received half a day of training involving a lecture and workshop, including an introduction to the study and how to use the app. Eligible patients were invited to participate in the study before discharge. After signing the informed consent form, demographic and disease-related data were collected by nurses in face-to-face interviews with the patients and by reviewing their medical records.

### App-Based International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health Set

The 31 categories came from the three components body functions and body structures (15 categories), activities and participation (10 categories), and contextual factors (6 categories). Although the ICF does not classify personal factors in the contextual factors component, four personal factor items related to the psychology of SCI patients were included based on preliminary testing (acceptance of life in a wheelchair/in bed, knowledge about spinal cord injury, coping with everyday life, and adjustment to new body image) [20,26]. The app was then used to rate the SCI patients’ functioning on a 1-4 scale. In addition, an option 9 (not applicable) was also used. For the activities and participation component, each patient’s performance on tasks in actual life situations (not in a standard environment) was assessed. For the contextual factors component, barriers (but not facilitators) encountered in each patient’s life were assessed. In previous research, the eating (d550) and drinking (d560) categories were found to be strongly interrelated and difficult to assess separately [13]; therefore, those categories were combined into a testlet to be assessed.

### Data Collection

All nurses who participated in the study first received half a day of training involving a lecture and workshop, including an introduction to the study and how to use the app. Eligible patients were invited to participate in the study before discharge. After signing the informed consent form, demographic and disease-related data were collected by nurses in face-to-face interviews and by reviewing the patients’ medical records. The nurses then assessed the patients’ performance with respect to each ICF category using the app. They did this face to face referring to the standard verbal prompts for each category in the app. The app system allows submission only after all categories have been evaluated; otherwise, the system indicates to the user that the evaluation is incomplete.

### Analysis

#### Data Processing

SPSS Statistics software version 21.0 (IBM Corporation) was used to analyze the demographic and disease data. RUMM2030 software (RUMM Laboratory Pty) was used to perform the Rasch analysis. For each component of the ICF set, the overall fit to a Rasch model was examined. If the overall fit was not good, poorly fitting categories were identified and deleted.
Another round of Rasch analysis was then run until adequate overall fit was attained. The following properties of the ICF set were examined.

**Overall Fit to the Rasch Model**

A nonsignificant value in a $\chi^2$ test for item-trait interaction, a mean within $\pm 2.5$ (SD <1.5) for the fit residuals of the items and persons indicate good overall fit to the Rasch model [30]. Fit residuals represent the extent to which the observations do not fit a Rasch model. The significance level was adjusted using the Bonferroni correction [31].

**Single-Item Fit to the Rasch Model**

The good fit of a single category was represented by a nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test and a mean of the fit residual values within $\pm 2.5$ [32].

**Person Separation Index**

An acceptable person separation index indicates good internal consistency for the instrument and reflects the ability of the instrument to discriminate between people with different abilities. It has a range of 0 to 1, with higher values indicating a better ability (>0.7 indicates good) [33].

**Differential Item Functioning**

For an ideal Rasch model, no factors should influence a person’s performance regarding an item except the Rasch factors [30]. The differential item functioning shows the influences of the other factors. In this study, a nonsignificant analysis of variance result was taken as indicating no differential item functioning for a specific category based on gender, age, education level, or etiology.

**Results**

**Patient Characteristics**

The demographic and disease characteristics of all 112 spinal cord injury patients are shown in Table 2. Their ages ranged from 18 to 65 years (mean 41.7 [SD 12.3]); 82.1% (92/112) of the patients were younger than 60 years, with patients in the 40- to 49-year age group the most numerous; 83.0% (93/112) of the patients were male. A total of 60.8% (68/112) claimed to have had a middle school education and 25.9% (29/112) only primary education or less. The duration of their disability ranged from 1 to 22 months (mean 7.1 [SD 4.2]); 88.4% (99/112) had been injured for less than a year. Most of the injuries (100/112, 89.3%) were caused by trauma. Most of the patients were injured at the thoracic and cervical levels, accounting for 50.0% (56/112) and 27.7% (31/112), respectively. About half (57/112, 50.9%) of the patients had complete injury.
Table 2. Characteristics of the study sample (n=112).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Value, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>93 (83.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>19 (17.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age in years</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18-29</td>
<td>27 (24.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>19 (17.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>36 (32.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>20 (17.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-65</td>
<td>20 (17.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school and below</td>
<td>29 (25.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior high school</td>
<td>47 (42.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senior high school</td>
<td>21 (18.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College and above</td>
<td>15 (13.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Etiology</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>100 (89.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nontrauma</td>
<td>12 (10.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duration of disease in months</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-6</td>
<td>59 (52.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-12</td>
<td>40 (35.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-18</td>
<td>12 (10.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19-22</td>
<td>1 (0.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>American Spinal Injury Association Impairment scale</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete injury</td>
<td>57 (50.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete injury</td>
<td>55 (49.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spinal cord injury level</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>31 (27.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic</td>
<td>56 (50.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar sacral</td>
<td>25 (22.3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rasch Analysis Results**

The 31 ICF categories belonged to body functions and body structures (15), activities and participation (10), and contextual factors (6). To attain adequate fit to the Rasch model for each component, categories that did not fit were deleted as multiple rounds of Rasch analysis were conducted. Table 3 shows the process and results of the Rasch analysis for each component.
In the first-round Rasch analysis, the body functions and body structures component consisting of 15 categories exhibited a nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test result for the item-trait interaction ($\chi^2_{10}=41.5$, $P=.08$, Bonferroni-adjusted $P=.05/15=.003$). Additionally, the means for the item and person fit residuals were within ±2.5 (SD <1.5). These results suggested a good fit to the Rasch model. All of the 15 categories exhibited nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test results and the means of their fit residual values were also within acceptable limits (Table 4). The person separation index of this component was 0.5. There was no differential item functioning for any of the categories by gender, age, education level, or etiology.

Regarding the initial activities and participation component with 10 categories, in the first-round Rasch analysis, the $\chi^2$ test for the item-trait interaction yielded a significant result ($\chi^2_{10}=75.7$, $P<.001$, Bonferroni-adjusted $P=.05/10=.005$). The single-item fit analysis found that four categories, changing basic body position (d410), washing oneself (d510), family relationships (d760), and socializing (d9205), did not fit the Rasch model. Although the standard deviation of the overall item fit residuals (SD 1.59) was a little larger than the upper limit, the $\chi^2$ test result for the item-trait interaction was no longer significant ($\chi^2_{16}=32.8$, $P=.08$, Bonferroni-adjusted $P=.05/8=.0063$), suggesting good fit to the Rasch model. The single-item fit tests for the remaining 8 categories also yielded good model fit results, with nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test results (Table 4). The person separation index of the component was excellent (0.89) and no differential item functioning was detected for any of the categories by gender, age, education level, or etiology.

For the contextual factors component, the first-round Rasch analysis starting with 6 categories indicated poor model fit according to the $\chi^2$ test result for the item-trait interaction ($\chi^2_{12}=19.1$, $P<.001$, Bonferroni-adjusted $P=.05/6=.0083$). The following single-item fit analysis showed that the personal factor knowledge about spinal cord injury did not fit well ($\chi^2_{d760}=19.1$, $P<.001$). After deleting that item, the component displayed satisfactory overall model fit, with a nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test result for the item-trait interaction ($\chi^2_{10}=13.6$, $P=.19$, Bonferroni-adjusted $P=.05/5=.01$). The means and standard deviations of the fit residuals for items and persons were both within the acceptable limits. The single-item fit analyses for the remaining 5 categories were also satisfactory, with nonsignificant $\chi^2$ test results (Table 4). The person separation index of this component was 0.68, and no differential item functioning was detected for any of the categories by gender, age, education level, or etiology.

### Table 3. Summary of results of the Rasch analyses (n=112).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analysis and action</th>
<th>Item fit residual, mean (SD)</th>
<th>Person fit residual, mean (SD)</th>
<th>Overall model fit $\chi^2$</th>
<th>Person separation index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body functions and body structures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Original categories</td>
<td>−0.41 (0.86)</td>
<td>−0.32 (0.62)</td>
<td>41.5</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Original categories</td>
<td>−0.48 (2.27)</td>
<td>−0.38 (0.80)</td>
<td>75.7</td>
<td>&lt;.001b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Deleted family relationships (d760)</td>
<td>−0.18 (2.37)</td>
<td>−0.30 (0.79)</td>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>&lt;.001b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Deleted family relationships (d760) and socializing (d9205)</td>
<td>−0.06 (1.59)</td>
<td>−0.23 (0.73)</td>
<td>24.7</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activities and participation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Original categories</td>
<td>0.25 (1.63)</td>
<td>−0.45 (1.30)</td>
<td>32.8</td>
<td>.001b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Deleted knowledge about spinal cord injury</td>
<td>−0.33 (1.32)</td>
<td>−0.43 (1.22)</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aOverall model fit was tested using a $\chi^2$ test with a Bonferroni-adjusted $P$ value. The values were all $P<.01$.  
bSignificant according to the Bonferroni-adjusted $P$ value.*
Table 4. International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health categories retained after multiple rounds of Rasch analysis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ICFa category</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Fit residual</th>
<th>χ²b</th>
<th>P value</th>
<th>Transformation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body functions and body structures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sleep functions (b134)</td>
<td>-1.450</td>
<td>-0.762</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Emotional functions (b152)</td>
<td>-1.281</td>
<td>-1.414</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sensation of pain (b280)</td>
<td>0.308</td>
<td>1.047</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Blood vessel functions (b415)</td>
<td>2.034</td>
<td>0.395</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Increased blood pressure (b4200)</td>
<td>1.932</td>
<td>0.789</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Decreased blood pressure (b4201)</td>
<td>0.757</td>
<td>-1.106</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Immunological system functions (b435)</td>
<td>1.625</td>
<td>-0.922</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Respiration functions (b440)</td>
<td>1.767</td>
<td>-0.156</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Weight maintenance functions (b530)</td>
<td>0.729</td>
<td>0.523</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Sexual functions (b640)</td>
<td>-2.588</td>
<td>-2.086</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Procreation functions (b660)</td>
<td>-1.640</td>
<td>-0.862</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Mobility of joint functions (b710)</td>
<td>-0.895</td>
<td>-0.791</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Muscle power functions (b730)</td>
<td>-2.610</td>
<td>-0.216</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Muscle tone functions (b735)</td>
<td>-1.026</td>
<td>-0.586</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Structure of areas of skin (s810)</td>
<td>2.339</td>
<td>0.046</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activities and participationc</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Changing basic body position (d410)</td>
<td>0.252</td>
<td>-1.543</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Moving around using equipment (d465)</td>
<td>-0.614</td>
<td>-0.274</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Washing oneself (d510)</td>
<td>-1.697</td>
<td>-1.594</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Caring for body parts (d520)</td>
<td>1.147</td>
<td>-0.637</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Regulating urination (d5300)</td>
<td>-0.866</td>
<td>3.353</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Regulating defecation (d5301)</td>
<td>-1.841</td>
<td>0.713</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Dressing (d540)</td>
<td>0.127</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Eating (d550) and drinking (d560)</td>
<td>3.493</td>
<td>-0.741</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contextual factorsd</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Assistive products and technology for personal indoor and outdoor mobility and transportation (e1201)</td>
<td>1.805</td>
<td>0.585</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Design, construction, and building products and technology of buildings for private use (e155)</td>
<td>-0.177</td>
<td>1.793</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Acceptance of life in a wheelchair/in bed</td>
<td>-0.237</td>
<td>-1.264</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Coping with everyday life</td>
<td>-1.127</td>
<td>1.305</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Adjustment to new body image</td>
<td>-0.263</td>
<td>-0.787</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aICF: International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health.
bGoodness of fit of each category was tested using a χ² test with a Bonferroni-adjusted P value. All were <.01.
cFamily relationships (d760) and socializing (d9205) were deleted because of poor fit.
dKnowledge about spinal cord injury was deleted because of poor fit.

Discussion

Principal Findings

The results of the Rasch analysis showed good fit to the Rasch model for the different components of the ICF set as implemented in the app after modification. Both overall and single-item fit were satisfactory. There was no differential item functioning for any of the ICF categories by gender, age, education level, or etiology. These results indicate the suitability of the app-based ICF set as an assessment tool for assessing the functioning of SCI patients.
The app-based ICF set is one of many forms of ICF-based electronic health records. Several previous studies have confirmed the role of ICF-based electronic health records in reflecting patient functioning and facilitating rehabilitation [6,34]. As a unified and standard language originally developed for multidisciplinary use, the original ICF was relatively easily understood by different disciplines and suitable for multidisciplinary teamwork [2]. However, some obstacles still existed, including the complexity of the terminology, lack of operationalization of the ICF qualifiers, and training overload for ICF users. The satisfactory internal construct validity of the set developed in the study is mainly due to the selection of suitable ICF categories and standardized assessment enabled by the app. In this study, the app applied many fewer ICF categories (31) than the comprehensive ICF core set (168 categories) and the brief core set (33 categories) for SCI patients issued by the WHO’s ICF research branch [35]. Additionally, the categories were more specific because they were originally identified as good outcome indicators for SCI patients in China [20,26]. Each ICF category focuses on a specific area and is independent from the others, which helped to ensure the overall fit to the Rasch model based on the assessments’ content.

Together’s verbal prompts standardize assessment and give more consistent assessment results. The transformation guidelines operationalize the 5 ICF qualifiers simply and effectively. With the help of the app, the ICF qualifiers can automatically be matched to the initial clinical assessment results. No additional training on ICF terminology or qualifiers is needed. The process reduces the differences among assessors and makes presentation of the ICF data more convenient and intelligent.

Family relationships (d760), socializing (d9205), and knowledge about spinal cord injury were deleted. In a previous study, d760 and d9205 also exhibited poor model fit [13]. Family relationships are the basis for good functioning in the family, and socializing reflects a patient’s social participation. Both of them are influenced by many factors such as age, severity of the injury, and financial considerations [36,37]. For an item to have perfect fit to the Rasch model, no other factors should influence a person’s performance regarding the item except for the person’s ability and the item’s difficulty, which may explain why the two factors did not fit the Rasch model. The ICF does not classify personal factors because of the large social and cultural variance associated with them [1]. The personal factors assessed in this ICF set were identified by multiround expert surveys [26]. Knowledge about SCI is a broad concept covering many aspects such as injury outcomes, functional rehabilitation, and preventing complications, and it is influenced by multiple factors such as the patient’s level of education, efficacy self-perceptions, and any health education they have received [38]. This may be why the item did not fit the Rasch model well. However, family relationships or support, social participation and the knowledge about SCI are important indicators for the outcomes of rehabilitation. To ensure the completeness of a patient’s health records, it is suggested that they be retained as part of the basic health data collection but not as part of the assessment instrument. Further research should use professional measurements that reflect family relationships, socializing, and the knowledge level for SCI patients.

It is worth noting that, in contrast to the person separation index of the activities and participation component, the person separation index of the other two components was not ideal (0.5 and 0.68), which reflects the poor internal consistency of the two components. This may be related to the different measuring guidelines used. Four guidelines were used in the study to transform the input of the medical staff, based on patient information in the form of percentages, wording from patient reports, frequency with which a problem was observed, and scores on routine clinical instruments or standards. A previous study [29] found that the categories involving guideline 4 (which transforms scores of a routine clinical instrument or standards into the ICF qualifiers) had the best interrater reliability, and the categories involving guideline 2 (which transforms the wording from patient reports into the ICF qualifiers) had the lowest interrater reliability. In this study, all the activity and participation categories used the guideline with the highest reliability (guideline 4), while all the contextual factor categories used the guideline with the lowest reliability (guideline 2). Although the app automatically transforms the initial data into the ICF qualifiers, subjectivity and uncertainty still existed in the patients’ initial reports and recall, which may explain the unsatisfactory person separation index of the two components.

Limitations

In interpreting these results, it is important to keep in mind that the relatively small sample may have influenced the representativeness of the results. Also, although the app was designed to assess SCI patients at home during transitional care via its remote follow-up function, the study data were collected in face-to-face interviews before the participants were discharged. Further validation with larger samples and remote assessment via the app’s communication function are needed.

Conclusions

This study has confirmed the suitability of the Together app as an assessment tool. With relatively fewer but more specific ICF categories, it overcomes some of the limitations related to applying the ICF and makes assessment results more reliable and consistent. The app opens up a new way to use the ICF with SCI and electronic health records. In the future, the app could be used to capture information about the functioning of SCI patients at home remotely. Such assessment results would help to monitor patients’ functional changes and differences, learn their needs, identify their problems, and provide evidences for further interventions if necessary.

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to express special thanks to Bing Xie and Haishan Pan, the engineers who provided technical support for the development of the app. This study was supported by China’s National Natural Science Foundation (grant number 71603293).
and the Fundamental Research Funds for the Central Universities (grant number 20ykpy88). The sponsors had no role in the study’s design; in the collection, analysis or interpretation of data; in writing of the report; or in the decision to submit the article for publication.

Authors' Contributions
MJ drafted the manuscript and assisted with managing the app. JT was responsible for conducting the study and revising the manuscript. SX, XH, and YW helped collect the data. TL was responsible for the management of the app. TY participated in the study’s design. KL was responsible for the project design, implementation, quality control, app management, and manuscript revision. All the authors reviewed the submitted manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Together tutorial.

[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 14058 KB - mhealth_v8i11e20723_app1.mp4 ]

References


Abbreviations

ICF: International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health
NRS: numerical rating scale
SCI: spinal cord injury
WHO: World Health Organization
Patients and Medical Staff Attitudes Toward the Future Inclusion of eHealth in Tuberculosis Management: Perspectives From Six Countries Evaluated using a Qualitative Framework

Ioana Margineanu1,2, MD; Christina Louka3, MD; Maria Vincenti-Gonzalez4, PhD; Antonia Morita Iswari Saktiawati3,5, PhD; Johannes Schierle6, BA; Kabiru Mohammed Abass3,7, MD; Onno Akkerman8, MD, PhD; Jan-Willem Alffenaa1,9,10,11, Prof Dr, PharmD; Adelita V Ranchor12, Prof Dr; Ymkje Stienstra3, MD, Prof Dr

1Department of Clinical Pharmacy and Pharmacology, University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
2Pneumology Hospital Iasi, Iasi, Romania
3Department of Internal Medicine, University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
4Department of Medical Microbiology and Infection Prevention, University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
5Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Public Health and Nursing, Universitas Gadjah Mada, Yogyakarta, Indonesia
6University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
7Agogo Presbyterian Hospital, Agogo, Ghana
8Department of Pulmonary Diseases and Tuberculosis, Tuberculosis Centrum Beatrixoord, University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Haren, Netherlands
9University of Sydney, Camperdown, Australia
10Westmead Hospital, Sydney, Australia
11Marie Bashir Institute of Infectious Diseases, University of Sydney, Sydney, Australia
12Health Psychology Section, University Medical Centrum Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands

Corresponding Author:
Ioana Margineanu, MD
Department of Clinical Pharmacy and Pharmacology
University Medical Centrum Groningen
University of Groningen
Hanzeplein 1
Groningen
Netherlands
Phone: 1 61 496 3518
Email: ismargineanu@gmail.com

Abstract

Background: Digitally delivering healthcare services is very attractive for tuberculosis (TB) management as this disease has a complex diagnosis and lengthy management and involves multiple medical and nonmedical specialists. Especially in low- and middle-income countries, eHealth could potentially offer cost-effective solutions to bridge financial, social, time, and distance challenges.

Objective: The goal of the research is to understand what would make eHealth globally applicable and gain insight into different TB situations, opportunities, and challenges.

Methods: We performed focus group interviews with TB experts and patients from 6 different countries on 4 different continents. The focus group interviews followed the theory of planned behavior framework to offer structured recommendations for a versatile eHealth solution. The focus group interviews were preceded by a general demographic and technology use questionnaire. Questionnaire results were analyzed using basic statistics in Excel (Microsoft Corporation). Focus group interview data were analyzed using ATLAS.ti 8 (ATLAS.ti Scientific Software Development GmbH) by assigning codes to quotations and grouping codes into the 5 domains within the framework.

Results: A total of 29 patients and 32 medical staff members were included in our study. All medical staff had used the internet, whereas 31% (9/61) of patients had never been online. The codes with the most quotations were information in relation to eHealth...
(144 quotations) and communication (67 quotations). The consensus among all participants from all countries is that there are important communication and information gaps that could be bridged by an eHealth app. Participants from different countries also highlighted different challenges, such as a majority of asylum-seeker patients or lack of infrastructure that could be addressed with an eHealth app.

Conclusions: Within the 6 countries interviewed, there is high enthusiasm toward eHealth in TB. A potential app could first target information and communication gaps in TB, with additional modules aimed at setting-specific challenges.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18156) doi:10.2196/18156

KEYWORDS

eHealth; tuberculosis; policy; clinical; patient; perspective

Introduction

The continuous growth of the internet and availability of smart technologies have modified many aspects of life, including health care delivery. With more than half the world’s population online [1], delivering health-related services digitally has never been more appealing or accessible, with the eHealth market expected growth estimated at 22% by 2024 [2].

Tuberculosis (TB) is one of the deadliest infectious diseases worldwide, with an estimated 1.5 million deaths yearly [3]. The more resistant forms, like multidrug-resistant TB and extensively drug-resistant TB, pose a new threat, with treatment success rates between 50% to 60% globally. TB diagnosis is complex, its treatment is lengthy, and it requires close collaboration of different medical and nonmedical experts and patients to ensure TB management is adequately performed, especially in challenging settings such as patients living in remote locations or constrained by socioeconomic factors.

Studies piloting various types of eHealth technologies conducted around the world have evaluated multiple areas where eHealth could aid in TB management. From improving communication among medical staff [4] and patients [5] to reducing costs [6] and improving treatment indicators, especially in situations where patients were traveling [7] or in hard to reach regions [8]. eHealth seems to be a promising field of research and a useful, cost-efficient, and acceptable improvement for TB management.

On the other hand, multiple studies and reports, including a consumer report from the European Union [9], have observed that there are certain difficulties when implementing eHealth, such as lack of acceptance, unfavorable regulations, and insufficient funding [10]. The progress of eHealth in lower income countries is limited by lack of know-how, funding, technology, and communications ability [11].

Taking into consideration the particular nature of TB and population differences together with the potential benefits and challenges of eHealth, tailored research would aid in creating useful, tailor-made eHealth apps. This idea is recommended in multiple studies, including a recent review of smartphone apps [12]. Market research, defined as an “organized effort to gather information about target markets” [13], is an important component of any business strategy aiming to create a new product. In order to make sure a product is useful, acceptable, and qualitative, market research is performed to understand the needs and preferences of the market. One of the frameworks used to conduct market research is the theory of planned behavior [14], which links psychological intent to three determinants: attitude toward behavior, subjective norm, and perceived behavioral control. This theory attempts to explain behavioral intentions and has been previously used in numerous studies to investigate and explain intention and possible adoption rates of new interventions [15,16].

This study aims to identify potential user perceptions about eHealth use in TB management. We used the theory of planned behavior framework to interview TB experts and patients in 6 diverse countries on 4 different continents to form recommendations for a well-received, usable, comprehensive, and efficient TB eHealth app.

Methods

Participants

Adult (over aged 18 years) participants from Romania, Greece, Netherlands, Indonesia, Ghana, and Venezuela were approached in the collaborating clinics and invited to participate. Two participant groups per country were interviewed, one comprising actual or former TB patients and one of the TB medical staff experts. Experts had to have worked in a TB clinic on a daily basis for at least 3 years. Participants were recruited through purposive sampling by investigators visiting different medical facilities specializing in TB care. The target size was 2 to 6 participants per focus group as all participants were highly involved with the topic of TB and discussion in larger groups was not recommended [17].

Study Design

The study was performed in two parts. The first phase consisted of a short questionnaire to collect demographic data and basic internet and mobile use statistics by asking the experience, in years and number of hours per day, spent using the internet and smartphones and a numbered scale on which participants ordered activities performed in order of frequency (with 5 being most frequent and 1 least frequent). Activities were defined as communication (eg, WhatsApp, Facebook Messenger), social media (eg, Facebook, Instagram), utilities (eg, banking, weather), work, games, and health/medical.

The second part consisted of semistructured focus group interviews with questions as conversation starters. The researchers allowed the interviewees to have a conversation around a specific question and asked follow-up questions for clarification. Questions were designed to repeatedly ask the
same subject in different ways and at different time points during the interview to achieve data saturation irrespective of time needed. In order to adhere to qualitative reporting standards, the consolidated criteria for reporting qualitative research (COREQ) checklist was used [18].

In order to minimize the risk of bias, the researcher conducting the interviews had no previous history with the patients or medical staff involved and conducted the interviews in a private room, patients separated from medical staff. Interviews were conducted in the participants’ native tongues or in a language they felt comfortable in, transcribed verbatim, and translated by a native speaker with proficiency in English.

Framework

In order to develop a globally acceptable app that can be used in different settings, interviews targeted diverse countries with different cultures, socioeconomic statuses, and TB populations. Thus, 6 countries, Romania, Ghana, Indonesia, Greece, the Netherlands, and Venezuela, were chosen to have a mix of geography, socioeconomic statuses, health care systems, and TB profiles (Multimedia Appendix 1).

The focus groups followed a semistructured framework based on the theory of planned behavior (Textbox 1). This psychological theory proposes that intention—in our case, use of eHealth—has a number of determinants. The original work describes three main determinants, and these were used in order not only to stay true to the framework, but also to guide interviews in a simple, efficient manner. The first is the attitude toward the behavior, defined by the strength of the attitude and the evaluation of the outcome, favorable or unfavorable. The second is the subjective norm, or beliefs about the normative expectations of others: perceived social pressure to perform or preclude from the behavior. The last is the perceived ease or difficulty of performing the behavior and is based on past experience as well as anticipated factors that might facilitate or impede a specific behavior [14]. The last domain, preferred features, was added to further stratify user preferences.

Textbox 1. Interview structure based on the theory of planned behavior.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attitude toward behavior:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Q1: Which problems and challenges in tuberculosis management could be solvable by an eHealth solution?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q1 follow-up: If you had to identify priorities, which would be the biggest challenge?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective norm:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q2: How do you think the medical staff and patients here would react to the implementation of an eHealth solution?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q2 follow-up: What do you think will be the biggest problem or motivator to accept and use eHealth?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived ease or difficulty of adopting behavior:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3: Do you use technology regularly to assist with your work or patient life (for admitted patients)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3 follow-up A: Do you think the implementation of various software solutions has made your life (work/patient) easier or harder?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3 follow-up B: Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3 follow-up C: What could be done to a new eHealth app to make it really useful?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q4: Do you think implementing eHealth in your daily lives will be easy or difficult?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q4 follow-up A: Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q4 follow-up B: What would make it easier or harder to implement?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred features:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q5: Name 5 features or things you would likely use most in an eHealth app.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q5 follow-up: Which one do you feel you need most? Which process of tuberculosis management would be most suitable to be streamlined through eHealth?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ethics

The study was approved by the ethics committee of the initiating institute, the University Medical Centrum Groningen (METc 2017/448), and the medical facilities of each country participating in the study. All focus group participants signed informed consent expressing their volition to participate in the study.

Data Collection and Analysis

A thematic approach using ATLAS.ti 8 (ATLAS.ti Scientific Software Development GmbH) was used to analyze the transcripts by one investigator (IM); this was reviewed by the supervisory authors. After major themes were identified in response to the questions asked and the theory of planned behavior framework, the transcriptions were indexed using topic coding (Textbox 2). Codes were assigned to phrases addressing an issue in the positive or negative (eg, “Maybe if we use an app, [the process] would be made simpler” versus “[eHealth] would give us double the job”) and were assigned whenever a
quote was repeated by other participants in the focus group but not by the same participant. For clarification purposes, see definitions in Multimedia Appendix 2. All of the coding was performed by two independent authors (IM, CL). Conflicts were resolved by discussions between the coders with the aid of one of the supervisors (YS).

Textbox 2. Coding.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attitude toward behavior:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• communication – eHealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• eHealth – speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• eHealth – would/wouldn’t help in tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• information/education – eHealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• my own experience with tech</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjective norm:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• communication – status quo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• how will others react to eHealth in tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• information – status quo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• local environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• others’ experiences with tech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• stigma/isolation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perceived ease/difficulty of adopting behavior:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Community building/testimonials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• I can/I can’t implement eHealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Localization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Money/devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Privacy/confidentiality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Repeatability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• User interface/simplicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Videos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preferred features:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Screening/prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gamification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Media preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anything else</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Results

General Questionnaire Results
A total of 29 patients and 32 medical staff members responded to the questionnaire and participated in the focus group. Four patients were former TB patients and had finished their treatment within 6 months of the interview, with the majority being current patients. Ages ranged between 23 and 63 years for patients and 30 and 60 years for medical staff. Gender distribution was mostly male (20/29, 68%) among patients and mostly female (26/32, 81%) among medical staff; 65% (19/29) of patients and 68% (22/32) of medical staff lived in urban environments.
Education levels were lower in patients groups than in the medical staff group: among patients, the highest level of education was a bachelor’s degree, and among medical staff, the highest level was doctorate (PhD).

General internet and mobile internet use was almost half within the patient group compared with the medical staff (Figure 1): average years of experience using the internet was 6.1 (range 1-16) person-years versus 13.9 (range 5-35) person-years. All medical staff had used the internet, whereas 31% (9/29) of patients had never been online. Concerning mobile phone use, staff median experience was 7.4 (range 0.3-15) person-years versus 3.4 (range 0-10) person-years for patients; 44% (13/29) of patients had never used mobile data and 34% (10/29) had never used a smartphone. Of all patient groups, the least tech savvy were the Romanians and the most were from Venezuela. From the medical staff groups, participants from Ghana had the least experience with the internet and mobile, and participants from the Netherlands had the most. Internet and mobile use in hours per day were lower for people from the low- and middle-income countries than the high-income countries, but this correlation was observed only in the patient groups and not in the expert groups.

The 20 patients who used the internet mostly used it for communication (median 4/6), followed by social media (median 4/6), utilities (median 3/6), medical/health (median 2/6), work (median 1/6), and games (median 1/6). For smartphones, the 18 patients ordered the categories the same, but with more patients using Messenger (median 4.5/6) and fewer using for social media and utilities (median 3/6). The 32 staff members used the internet mostly for communication and work (median 5/6); games were the least used (median 1/5). Medical staff use smartphones also mostly for communication (median 5/6), followed by social media (median 4/6), and work (4/6).

**Figure 1.** Internet and mobile experience for the two participant groups.

### Focus Group Interviews

The final yield was 13 focus group interviews, two per country, with 2 focus groups conducted with Dutch medical staff as the TB clinic and at the Municipal Health Center Groningen (a type of outpatient clinic) are geographically separated. The duration of interviews ranged between 25 and 45 minutes.

By domain, attitude toward behavior contained the most quotes (339), with preferred features containing the least (161). By far the most discussed topic was the potential of eHealth to improve information and/or education concerning TB among patients, the public, and even medical staff (144 quotes). The countries that mentioned this aspect the most were Venezuela (55 quotes) and the Netherlands (31 quotes).

A summary of the most frequent themes/codes and example quotations can be found in Multimedia Appendix 2.

### Thematic and Code Analysis

The attitude toward behavior domain contained 5 codes, with a total yield of 339 quotations out of the total 911 quotations (37.2%), the most of all domains. Even though experience varied between patients and medical staff, both groups explained that their outlook concerning implementing eHealth in TB was overwhelmingly positive (292/339, 86.1%), with the most expected impact in the information and communication fields.

> Education [would be the first priority when implementing eHealth]. [Medical staff, Romania]
Actually there is already a program for TB managing. It has been running actually, but not everyone used it [referring to an electronic database for medical staff]. [Medical staff, Indonesia]

Maybe if using an app, would make it simpler. [Medical staff, Indonesia]

Participants also offered examples of specific ways in which eHealth could improve TB management.

It’s really important that the disease is treatable and to know more about this disease and to say that people can survive. [Patient, Venezuela]

Participants felt that speed, convenience, flexibility, and the ability to communicate and obtain information over long distances were very important factors contributing to a positive outcome.

And also the plain fact that they wouldn’t have to come to the hospital could be a motive [to adopt an eHealth app]. [Medical staff, Greece]

Although the expected outcome is mostly positive, some challenges have been identified, such as a need for personal contact. Interestingly, within the same focus group, one person believed an app would enhance contact and others did not.

The fault is the lack of contact in DOT and an app could do that. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Yes, but nothing can replace the live contact. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Furthermore, patients mentioned a need for trustworthy sources of information, and some medical staff were concerned about patients intruding on their personal time if the app were to be on their personal phones or of doubling the workload (traditional system and eHealth).

The subjective norm domain contained 6 codes with 22.8% (208/911) of the total quotations. All groups felt there was a certain degree of pressure to perform the behavior as they felt the status quo should be improved, and they thought eHealth could be a useful tool for such improvement. Participants described gaps especially in communication and information access that would encourage them to use a trusted eHealth app.

There needs to be more explanations about what you can do, more explanations about the multiple versions of TB. We don’t know about that you can have it in your bones, people don’t know about adverse reactions, we don’t know about these things. [Patient, the Netherlands]

Sometimes it [the internet search] will not give you a straight answer. Sometimes it will lead you to further look. [Patient, Ghana]

Concerning the particular use of eHealth in TB and the perceived subjective norm concerning the general public, patients spoke about stigma and how eHealth, through education, could solve such problems.

For example, I feel a lot of rejection every time; people changed a lot when they found I am TB positive, they don’t even say hello directly to me, but from afar and this rejection is due to the lack of knowledge, education. [Patient, Venezuela]

Participants believed either that eHealth would be easy to implement or that it is possible but that ease of implementation will depend on certain factors, most frequently technology savviness.

If I could use technology, I would use it. But now I am afraid I would make mistakes whilst using it because I would get confused. [Patient, Greece]

Our TB patients are not there yet. We don’t really have university professors with TB. [Medical staff, Romania]

Participants also mentioned lack of resources as possible impediments to eHealth implementation. Lower income countries tended to mention more often a lack of physical resources, such as electricity, network coverage, or hardware (computers, phones), whereas higher income countries were worried about the lack of human resources needed to manage a potential extra burden of eHealth.

They [the patients] get their phones stolen, or all sorts of cables can be robbed. [Medical staff, Venezuela]

The [clinic] does not have the manpower to see everyone, they [clinic staff] go [to see patients] maybe once every two months. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Perceived ease or difficulty toward behavior contained 9 codes and 22.2% (203/911) of the total quotations. A minority of participants expressed they didn’t think they could use a new app, quoting reasons such as illiteracy or lack of time. Most either said they would have no problems integrating a new app within their digital routines or that they would require certain facilitators that would promote adoption (eg, have a simple interface, contain a training module).

We are always open to new technology which could help us improve even more. [Medical staff, Greece]

[Asked how they would respond to new app] Easy, easy [raised voice, altogether]. [Patients, Venezuela]

And if you have too many apps, like we already do, to have another one, it could be time consuming. We wouldn’t want to be overloaded. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Participants identified steps that are mandatory to perform in order to have an easy-to-use app, such as privacy or localizing the app.

Privacy, that’s what I would consider first. There shouldn’t be any breaches because otherwise it wouldn’t succeed so no one should have access to data. [Patient, Greece]

Facilitators concerning implementation, such as financial incentives in the form of extra staff or equipment or offering the app for free were also identified, especially since some participants expressly mentioned the financial difficulties some patients are in.
I believe if the app could be in every language and the devices would be provided people would be very grateful, so it won’t also be useful, but they would be more compliant. [Medical staff, Greece]

Then the cost. It should be free. [Patient, Ghana]

Some participants expressed a desire to be trained in how to use the app or for a demo module to be presented as they believe this would facilitate quick adoption.

Some of us will need someone to teach us. [Patient, Romania]

Concerning the app itself, participants believed ease of use would be furthered by a simple and friendly user interface, by adding a community-building module (either for the patients or for medical staff), adding a training module, and using videos to transmit information.

It should be simple, with not many things, because it would demotivate me. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

It can also even have people who are also being successfully treated, people like that communicating, all that being put into the app so that when the person goes, person knows from the beginning how the treatment goes, and after treatment what to expect. [Medical staff, Ghana]

Preferred features contained 7 codes with 17.6% (161/911) of the total quotations. Concerning information media, most participants expressed a preference for video, followed by images, text, and a gamification component, such as quizzes, to enhance the user experience.

I think film would be nice. When you read you can put it away. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Or maybe a countdown, how far you are and how much you have left and then patients know what to eat. For them to see how easy it is and to stimulate them to continue. [Medical staff, the Netherlands]

Participants would rather use the app for treatment (38/61) than for diagnosis (17/61) or prevention (19/61), and they would want a notification or reminding system implemented to encourage treatment adherence and follow-up.

Patients can use an application to schedule visits to health facilities, start treatment, when should do sputum test, do monthly check up. Things that they usually do here, but it will be paperless/electronically. Then all these [digital] notes can be brought everywhere, I mean paper note can be lost, can be damaged. [Medical staff, Indonesia]

Through this media/app patients can be educated and we can reinforce prevention. [Medical staff, Venezuela]

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings**

Using a health behavior framework for market research [19], this study explored attitudes toward eHealth implementation in TB. Semistructured focus group interviews were performed worldwide with medical staff and patients to better understand key motivators, challenges, facilitators, and user preferences for implementing new eHealth solutions. A number of important insights have been gathered, as has a prioritization of features to be implemented, which can be used when planning new eHealth apps for TB. Overall, both patients and TB experts have expressed enthusiasm at the potential of eHealth, with an overwhelming consensus that the first domains where it could be useful are information and communication.

The attitude toward eHealth domain contained the most codes. We interpreted this result in the context of participants having already formed an opinion on this subject and welcomed the opportunity to discuss it in depth. The domain presents encouraging results, with 67% (229/339) of codes expressing a positive expectation about eHealth capabilities. Participants overwhelmingly felt there is a lack of knowledge about TB among patients, the general public, and even among medical practitioners. These findings are mirrored by a systematic review that concluded there is a lack of knowledge among medical practitioners concerning national or internal TB guidelines within 14 non-European countries [20] and by multiple studies identifying knowledge gaps among patients [21-23]. Furthermore, a recent review highlighted that many apps offer inaccurate information [24]. Participants expect that an eHealth solution would be used to educate and provide accurate, secure, and friendly information.

The subjective norm describes the most important pressure to adopt eHealth as the lack of information and communication, felt across the board. Participants described a lack of clear, open communication channels both between patients and medical staff and between different specialties involved in TB management. Multiple studies have linked lack of patient-medical staff relationships to poorer outcomes in TB [25-27], concluded that communication methods should be tailored [28], or called for improving collaborations between medical staff involved in TB care [29]. Participants in our study would not only welcome online TB-related communities but also believe that communication could be improved through an app and that, in itself, would improve TB management and the stigma felt at the moment. On the other hand, a challenge identified was the need for human, personal contact, identified especially by a minority of Dutch participants (2).

Concerning perceived ease or difficulty of use, most participants felt they could implement a new app easily, although some participants mentioned a fear that a new app would be time consuming.

One important factor that could influence adoption was identified as technology savviness, linked to age and experience with use; however, some participants felt that training could bridge this gap. Indeed, one study using video directly observed therapy noted that “Older participants in particular enjoyed learning to use a smartphone” [30]. A facilitator mentioned by some participants is localization, translating the app in the local language. A minority of participants quoted illiteracy as a barrier to regular app use.

On a local level, interviewees from countries with a resource paucity, such as Venezuela or Greece, expressed a need for...
extra human or physical resources. Most participants agreed that an app should be free. Interestingly, concerning technology accessibility, opinions varied widely, from “even if they are illiterate they use the internet, google, even if they can’t write their own signature, they can go online” to “they probably have 1 smartphone per family and they don’t use the internet all the time.”

From a development perspective, the only truly mandatory feature to be implemented would be privacy/security, as this was a concern expressed in multiple interviews, both by experts and patients. A recent systematic review performed by the authors (unpublished) highlighted that within 7 studies that quantified this aspect, there were zero privacy breaches for a pooled 71 patients.

Participants mentioned other features, such as a treatment module with asynchronous video therapy, reminders, and a diagnosis module with an emphasis on self-diagnosing education in order to hasten hospital visits. Participants also expressed a desire to have a gamification component and believed video would best facilitate app adoption.

Textbox 3 summarizes recommendations for developing a new eHealth app for tuberculosis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Target the app for education, followed by communication, treatment, prevention, and diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Identify a multidisciplinary team that can create a universally usable app, but recruit local members to advise, tailor-make, and translate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Create a concept revolving around modules or build separate apps (eg, for medical staff and for patients)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App-related:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Make sure the app is private and secure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Focus on a simple and friendly user interface with a preference for images/icons over text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Create training and educational videos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Offer the app for free</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Make sure the app is private and secure:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Use an institutional server if your institution already has taken security measures for its existing patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Use an external secure server for additional privacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Respect local and regional privacy laws (eg, General Data Protection Regulation in the European Union)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Implementation:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Find local tech leaders who can learn the app quickly and facilitate dissemination and further education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Preferably, offer devices for at least the most disadvantaged members of the target populace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If designing a medical staff app, discuss with administrators so that the app decreases the workload and doesn’t add to it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Have an active tech support</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modules:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Education module, preferably with a gamification component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Communication components:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• medical staff (results, expert forum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• patients (testimonials, community)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• medical staff and patients (side effects, questions, and appointments)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Treatment module: calendar, video/directly observed therapy, reminders</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparison With Prior Work

There are few studies exploring user attitudes for eHealth in TB. A study from Mozambique exploring text messaging found, as our study did, that messaging should be used for reminders and motivational texts in order to increase retention and that the main obstacle would be privacy assurance [31]. Another study involving focus group interviews with medical staff for a chronic obstructive pulmonary disease telerehabilitation app found that education and skill training are highly essential to support successful implementation [32]. A study from Saudi Arabia showed that perceived usefulness and perceived ease are significant factors to performing the behavior, results corroborated by our study [33]. Furthermore, a recent systematic review (unpublished) performed by the main authors revealed that already implemented eHealth apps focused rarely on
education, despite it being one of the two major needs felt by the participants within the focus groups.

This study offers a more diverse perspective on eHealth use in TB by conducting interviews in 6 countries on 4 different continents to gain a more global perspective for a potential app that could be universally applicable.

Limitations
Purposive sampling was used, which might have selected participants already more open to new technology. Furthermore, individual interviews might have elicited different results as they have less risk of bias and are more in-depth. The theory of planned behavior is a useful tool to gauge decision making with the caveat that it does not take in account socioeconomic, religious, and gender-based factors.

Strengths
This study was conducted in 6 different settings, offering a better understanding of what populations across the globe might decide concerning adopting eHealth in TB management. TB patients and TB experts were approached, thus covering the potential user base for future eHealth solutions. The theory of planned behavior is a simple, elegant way to conduct focus group interviews and understand decision-making processes. Two independent authors coded the interviews, thus limiting bias.

Conclusion
This study used focus group interviews performed in 6 countries in order to gauge perceptions about eHealth use in TB management and draw recommendations for further implementation. Participants in all 6 countries are enthusiastic about eHealth, and most users expect a potential app to be helpful. There is a global need to improve information access and communication, and participants feel that eHealth could help bridge this gap. Most themes resounded in all countries interviewed, but certain particularities, such as a large proportion of asylum seekers or lack of infrastructure or training, should be addressed when trying to implement eHealth in specific settings. Despite individual preferences, the global sentiment is that eHealth is a promising field of research that will be well received with the potential to enhance multiple aspects of TB care, with an emphasis on the need to communicate and educate.

Acknowledgments
The study team would like to thank the medical facilities where the studies took place: Iasi Pulmonology Hospital, Beatrixoord Tuberculosis Centrum, Gemeentelijke Gezondheidsdienst Groningen, Presbyterian Hospital Agogo, Thoracic Diseases General Hospital Sotiria, and Sardjito Hospital. This study was made within a doctoral project funded by the European Union Horizon 2020 Research and Innovation Program under the Marie-Skłodowska Curie grant agreement 713660. The funding source had no impact on any decision making regarding this paper.

Authors’ Contributions
IM and YS initiated and designed the study. IM coordinated the interviews, translated the Romanian interview, translated (with the help of a translator) the Netherlands interview, participated in interview transcription, coded the interviews (independently), wrote the initial draft of the manuscript, and created the figures. CL conducted and translated the interview in Greece, participated in interview transcription, coded the interviews (independently), and reviewed the manuscript and figures. MVG conducted and translated the interview in Venezuela, participated in interview transcription, and reviewed the manuscript and figures. MS conducted and translated the interview in Indonesia, participated in interview transcription, and reviewed the manuscript and figures. JS and KMA conducted and translated the interview in Ghana, participated in interview transcription, and reviewed the manuscript and figures. OA, JWA, AVR, and YS supervised all stages of the study process and reviewed the manuscript and figures.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Country profiles.
[DOCX File, 13 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18156_app1.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Definitions.
[DOCX File, 13 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18156_app2.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Themes and codes ordered by frequency.
[DOCX File, 22 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18156_app3.docx]
References


2. Global eHealth market size, share, trends and growth analysis report – segmented by type (telemedicine, consumer, information system, HER, ePrescribing, health information, mHealth, health management and clinical decision support), services, end user and region - industry forecast [2020 to 2025. 2020 Feb. URL: https://www.marketresearch.com/ market-reports/e-Health-market [accessed 2020-10-20]


Abbreviations

COREQ: consolidated criteria for reporting qualitative research
TB: tuberculosis
Mobile Health App for Prostate Cancer Patients on Androgen Deprivation Therapy: Qualitative Usability Study

Junaid Nabi¹², MD, MPH; Eugene B Cone¹², MD; Anjali Vasavada¹, BSc; Maxine Sun¹, MPH, PhD; Kerry L Kilbridge³, MD, MSc; Adam S Kibel¹, MD; Donna L Berry⁴, PhD, RN; Quoc-Dien Trinh¹², MD

¹Division of Urological Surgery, Department of Surgery, Brigham and Women’s Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, United States
²Center for Surgery and Public Health, Department of Surgery, Brigham and Women’s Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, United States
³Lank Center for Genitourinary Oncology, Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, Boston, MA, United States
⁴Phyllis F. Cantor Center, Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, Boston, MA, United States

Corresponding Author:
Quoc-Dien Trinh, MD
Center for Surgery and Public Health
Department of Surgery
Brigham and Women’s Hospital, Harvard Medical School
45 Francis St
ASB II-3
Boston, MA, 02115
United States
Phone: 1 617 525 7350
Email: trinh.qd@gmail.com

Abstract

Background: Androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) increases the risk of metabolic adverse effects among patients with prostate cancer. The transformative impact of mobile health (mHealth) apps may benefit men managing activity and nutrition at home.

Objective: This study aimed to evaluate the usability and patient experience of a newly developed mHealth app among prostate cancer patients on ADT and physicians’ beliefs about the potential benefits of using this app.

Methods: This study took place over 2 months, beginning in March 2019. A sample of 5 patients (age 45-75 years) initiating ADT participated in a semistructured focus group discussion with a facilitator. The study participants also included 5 specialist physicians who provided in-depth interviews. An institutional review board–approved script was used to guide both the focus group and physician interviews. Usability was tested through specific scenarios presented to the patients, including downloading the mHealth app, entering information on physical activity and meals, and navigating the app. The focus group and interviews were audio recorded and transcribed. Content analysis was used to analyze the transcripts iteratively and exhaustively. Thematic discrepancies between reviewers were resolved through consensus.

Results: The mean age of the patients was 62 years. This group included 4 White and 1 Latin American patients. The physician specialists included 2 urologists, 2 medical oncologists, and 1 radiation oncologist. Analyses revealed that the patients appreciated the holistic care enabled by the app. Difficulties were observed with registration of the app among 60% (3/5) of the patients; however, all the patients were able to input information about their physical activity and navigate the options within the app. Most patients (4/5, 80%) were able to input data on their recent meal. Among the health care physicians, the dominant themes reflected in the interviews included undermining of patients ability to use technology, patients’ fear of technology, and concern for the ability of older patients to access technology.

Conclusions: The patients reported an overall positive experience of using an mHealth app to record and track diet and exercise. Usability was observed to be an important factor for adoption and was determined by ease of registration and use, intuitive appearance of the app, and focus on holistic cancer care. The physicians believed that the app was easy to use but raised concerns about usability among older men who may not typically use smartphone apps.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e20224) doi:10.2196/20224

KEYWORDS
mobile health application; prostate cancer; androgen deprivation therapy; thematic analysis; qualitative methods
Introduction

Health care is more efficient and effective when patients are actively engaged in their treatment [1]. Physicians and institutions perceive mobile health (mHealth) technologies—defined as the use of portable devices such as smartphones or tablets for health purposes—as an ideal tool to engage their patients [2]. This technology has already had a transformative impact on the delivery of care [3]. For example, home monitoring has been shown to be effective in reducing cancer symptom distress and improving blood pressure control [4,5]. Additionally, measurements obtained at home can be transmitted wirelessly to electronic medical records or directly to the clinician, allowing for rapid feedback and timely office visits triggered by abnormal values [6].

mHealth technologies are currently being used for a variety of medical conditions, including diabetes, asthma, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. With features such as frequent monitoring of patients, active collection of data, and seamless transmission of clinical information into electronic medical records, mHealth apps can enable real-time feedback and lead to improved communication with health care providers [6]. These aspects present a unique opportunity to use mHealth technology as a tool to prevent or alleviate adverse effects of disease and treatment, especially among prostate cancer patients.

While androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) is a standard treatment regimen for intermediate- or high-risk localized disease and metastatic or recurrent prostate cancer, the ensuing hypogonadal state results in significant metabolic and cardiovascular adverse events. Previous studies have documented that men exposed to gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists—a common form of ADT—manifested a weight gain of 2.4%, an increase in body fat percentage of 9.4%, and a loss in lean body mass of 2%-4% (also known as sarcopenia) by the end of the first year [7,8]. We developed an mHealth app that provides dietary and exercise interventions to monitor and mitigate these metabolic disturbances. The objective of this study was to heuristically evaluate the usability and patient experience of this newly developed mHealth app among prostate cancer patients on ADT and physicians’ beliefs about the potential benefits of using this app.

Methods

Study Design

This usability study employed qualitative data collection and thematic content analysis methods. Focus group discussions and in-depth interviews were used for collecting data. An institutional review board (IRB)—approved script was used to guide these discussions. Thematic content analysis involves systematically coding and classifying textual information to explicate trends, patterns, frequency, of words, and their embedded relationships and discursive structures [9,10]. This technique enables researchers to understand the attributes of the content by lowering the level of interpretative complexity [11]. The Dana-Farber/Brigham and Women’s Cancer Center (DF/BWHCC) IRB approved this study.

The mHealth App

myPROHealth is a health and fitness tracking app developed by the Division of Urological Surgery at Brigham and Women’s Hospital. The app seeks to track, record, and promote exercise and good eating habits in men diagnosed with prostate cancer, who are about to initiate ADT. Figure 1 shows sample mHealth app interfaces. The features of the app enable patients to enter information on their recent physical activity and meals as well as monitor their progress.
Study Setting and Focus Group Participants

Men diagnosed with prostate cancer, presenting to DF/BWHCC and initiating ADT, were invited to participate. Eligibility criteria included age between 45 and 75 years, the ability to walk 400 m, medical clearance from their primary physician, ability to speak English, cognitive alertness (current Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group performance status available in the medical notes), sufficiently literate (education level available in the medical records), and ownership of a smartphone for >1 year. Men participating in rigorous structured exercise regimes (ie, seeing a professional trainer or training >5 days per week) in the last 6 months were excluded, as their inclusion could conflict with the app’s usability for documenting physical activity. Men with planned systemic chemotherapy, planned treatment with abiraterone or enzalutamide, bone metastases, acute illness, any musculoskeletal, cardiovascular, or neurologic disorders that would prevent them from exercising or put them at risk from exercising were excluded, as were men with hearing or visual impairment that would prevent them from participating in the focus group.

Recruitment

Recognizing that the choice of an app-based intervention may skew the sample toward younger and well-educated patients, we provided access to the program for all patients at a cancer clinic as the point of service to reduce potential selection bias. This study took place over 2 months, beginning in March 2019. A convenience sample of 5 patients aged 45-75 years was recruited from the cancer clinic for a focus group discussion. Patients who were initiating ADT were recruited from 3 academic medical clinics affiliated with DF/BWHCC. Permission was sought from the patient’s primary care physician or oncologist before contacting them via phone. A research coordinator explained the rationale of the study, and the coordinator obtained verbal consent. The focus group interview was held at a mutually convenient time for all the participants in a hospital conference room. An additional sample of 5 physicians was recruited based on their specialties. Physicians who treat patients undergoing ADT were specifically contacted for individual in-depth interviews. The physicians were selected to gain insights on their beliefs about potential benefits of the mHealth app and whether they would routinely recommend it to their patients if it were readily available.

Patient Focus Group

For the focus group, we used a pilot version of the app, which was available online on Google Play for Android phones and Apple Store for iPhones. Using the feedback from the usability testing, the developers later launched an updated version of the
The coordinator followed a pre-established IRB–approved script to guide the focus group. Before initiating the discussion, the group introduced themselves, and then the study coordinator described the goals and expectations of the research project while asking clarifying questions (see Multimedia Appendix 1 for interview script). The focus group discussion was audio recorded and subsequently transcribed with the assistance of a transcription software, and the transcriptions were analyzed manually.

**Testing Usability and Definitions of Success**

App usability was assessed through the participants’ responses while the focus group addressed specific scenarios. These scenarios included participants’ ability to register an online account and download the mHealth app, navigate options within the app, appreciate user-interface and engagement with the graphics of the mHealth app (worksheet available in Multimedia Appendix 1), and input information on their (1) typical physical activity in a given week, (2) recent exercise activity, and (3) recent meals (including the ability to take photos of their meals). All the participants used their own smartphones. Success was defined as the ability of the participants to complete the instructions in a given scenario. When instructions were executed completely, the response was considered “successful”; else the response was considered “unsuccessful.”

**Physician Interviews**

Five physicians who treat patients with prostate cancer were identified and contacted. A multi-disciplinary physician cohort well versed in urology, medical oncology, and radiation oncology was recruited. In-depth interviews were scheduled and conducted in locations convenient for both the coordinator and the participant. The same IRB–approved script was used for each physician interview. The interviews were audio recorded and transcribed.

**Qualitative Analysis**

The developed initial coding scheme was based on usability metrics from previous studies [12,13]. The transcripts were correlated with audio recordings of the patient focus group and physician interviews, and minor edits were made to the transcript (small talk or unrelated dialogue was removed). Once all the data were assembled, a master database of transcripts was compiled and read multiple times by JN and AV. A thematic content analysis was conducted. Significant and recurring themes (defined as themes appearing more than 3 times) were identified and coded in each transcript. Thematic discrepancies were resolved through consensus between the two coders. Each interview and focus group were summarized using these codes. These summaries produced recurring themes across all the data, which allowed us to iteratively refine the codebook and concept map. This cycle continued until all the significant themes were categorized and the transcripts and codebook were consistent with those themes.

**Results**

**Baseline Characteristics**

Table 1 shows the baseline characteristics of the patients and physicians recruited for this study.
Table 1. Participants’ characteristics (N=5).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patients (N=5)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender – male, n (%)</td>
<td>5 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-55</td>
<td>1 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56-65</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66-75</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical conditions, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate cancer</td>
<td>5 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race/ethnicity, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>4 (80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanic/Latino</td>
<td>1 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education status, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate/professional degree</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some college</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GED* / high school diploma</td>
<td>1 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physicians (N=5)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialty, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urologist</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical oncologist</td>
<td>2 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation oncologist</td>
<td>1 (20)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*GED: General education development.

Patient Focus Group Results

The focus group discussion with the participants covered the following dominant patient themes surrounding mHealth app usability: limited knowledge, participants’ appreciation for holistic care, and struggles with app registration and download. The focus group discussion also revealed that participants’ familiarity with mHealth apps was limited. This aspect was highlighted by statements such as, “There are so many options, wow.” Participants highly appreciated that health care organizations and physicians were proactively building digital solutions that would improve patient well-being and convenience, as evidenced by statements such as, “This sort of lets the patient know that there is more to us than just the cancer, there’s also our general well-being.” Last, participants were candid about the struggles they experienced while handling mHealth apps in general as patients with cancer, as revealed by statements such as, “It might just be me but it’s tough for me to understand.” Table 2 presents detailed statements on these themes.

Table 2. Participants’ reflections on the usage of the mHealth app.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Quotations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participant knowledge</strong></td>
<td>“There are so many options, wow – I didn’t realize that things that I do on a daily basis would be considered exercise. My wife would be so happy to hear that! What else did you ask? If it was intuitive? Yes, it is clear and intuitive to me.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Participants' responses to specific scenarios revealed that they were generally comfortable using the mHealth app for documenting exercise and diet. For Scenario 1, which tested the participants' ability to register an online account and download the mHealth app, we found that 60% (3/5) were “successful” and 40% (2/5) were “unsuccessful.” For Scenario 2, which tested the participants’ ability to input information on their typical physical activity in a given week, we found that 100% (5/5) were “successful.” For Scenario 3, which tested the participants’ ability to navigate options within the app, we found that 100% (5/5) were “successful.” For Scenario 4, which tested the participants’ ability to input information on their recent exercise activity, we found that 60% (3/5) were “successful” and 40% (2/5) were “unsuccessful.” For Scenario 5, which tested the participants’ ability to input information on their recent meals as well as take photos of their meals, we found that 80% (4/5) were “successful” and 20% (1/5) were “unsuccessful.” Last, for Scenario 6, which tested the participants’ ability to appreciate the user-interface and engage with the graphics of the mHealth app, we found that 100% (5/5) were “successful.”

**Physician Interview Results**

Among the health care physicians, the dominant themes reflected their concern regarding the undermining of patients, patients’ fear of technology, and the ability of older patients to access a smartphone app (Table 3). When queried about patients’ ability to employ technology for recording exercise and dietary activities, the physicians believed that most patients would not be able to do so, as expressed by their statements:

*I mean, I bet some patients are tech savvy, but the majority of patients I see are not.*

The interviews also revealed that the physicians were apprehensive that integrating technology as part of their health care would lead to increased stress among their patients:

*I think patients will struggle with this. I think that we need to be careful with technological…interventions like this because it may make them more stressed.*

We also found that the physicians believed that age would prevent older patients from benefitting from the advantages of using the mHealth app:

*But I worry that the patients won’t actually use it. It might be hard for older patients, and most prostate cancer patients are above the age of 45.*

In addition to these impressions, the physicians also emphasized the intuitiveness and ease of navigating the app, as indicated by statements such as, “…it’s easy to go back and forth between tabs” and “It’s a great app. The design is simple, intuitive, and professional.”

**Table 3.** Physicians’ reflections on the usage of the mHealth app.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Quotations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Undermining patients</td>
<td>“I think my con is that, I don’t think older patients, or any patients with prostate cancer will understand how to use this app.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“I mean, I bet some patients are tech savvy, but the majority of patients I see are not.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients’ fear of technology</td>
<td>“I think patients will struggle with this. I think that we need to be careful with technological…interventions like this because it may make them more stressed.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concerns for older patients</td>
<td>“The app is really well designed and is…generally pretty intuitive. But I worry that the patients won’t actually use it. It might be hard for older patients, and most prostate cancer patients are above the age of 45.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Discussion**

**Findings**

Mobile health apps present a unique opportunity to enhance patient engagement and self-management of chronic diseases. In this study, we found that the overall usability of an mHealth app in patients with prostate cancer participants on ADT was acceptable. Moreover, we found that participants generally appreciated their care teams’ efforts in devising technological solutions that would enhance their ability to record and monitor their diet and exercise. We also observed that physicians were generally skeptical of the benefits of integrating technology with conventional health care to augment prostate cancer care. A disconnect was found between the experiences of the participants and the physicians on the potential of health technology solutions for improving prostate cancer care.

The findings of our study have several implications. First, we found that the participants were generally successful in using the mHealth app and were able to input data about their meals and exercise. Most participants were able to navigate through various features of the app (ie, move between the tabs and the home screen) and take photos of their meals. Our findings contrast those of Sarkar et al [14], who found that the usability and applicability of mHealth apps for self-management of chronic conditions was limited [14]. Sarkar et al [14] examined the acceptability and usability of mHealth apps in a set of racially diverse and economically disadvantaged patients—communities that often have higher prevalence of chronic diseases (diabetes and depression) and require caregiving. They also examined usability by asking participants to perform specific tasks on 11 apps. While our study also examined usability by asking participants to perform a variety of tasks, we had a more specific focus, namely, the participants’ ability to record exercise and diet, interventions that can impact treatment, and disease outcomes. In addition, Sarkar et al [14] attempted to understand usability among existing apps, while our goal was to document how a newly developed app can be improved for greater acceptance among patients. We found that the participants appreciated that they could use the mHealth app for tracking their typical physical activity—an important consideration for patients who may develop sarcopenia. This
finding correlates with those of previous studies reporting that prostate cancer patients are often receptive to using mHealth apps to promote physical activity, especially if the technology is easy to use [15]. ADT is associated with decreased bone mineral density and higher risk of fracture, and current evidence indicates that improvements in dietary intake (calcium and vitamin D supplementation) could alleviate these risks [16]. Our analysis underscores the benefit of using mHealth apps to record and track dietary intake. Additionally, patients on ADT are at risk of developing several metabolic adverse events, including weight gain and diabetes [7,16]. Moreover, given that mHealth apps can record the level of physical activity, these online tools can potentially mitigate the impact of metabolic adverse events.

Second, we found that our sample of physicians was not convinced that using mHealth technology for prostate cancer patients would be beneficial, although they remarked positively on its general usability, appearance, and navigation. These perceptions were based on their beliefs that patients lacked technological understanding, would be unable to use mHealth apps, and their advanced age would preclude them from benefitting from technological interventions. This finding is in conflict with those of a previous work as well as the results of patients’ usability evaluations from this study. Nguyen et al [17] reported that physicians viewed patient-focused apps positively and believed that these interventions would augment their ability to provide patient care. The same study also observed that physicians believed that using mHealth apps would supplement their role by providing additional medical information to their patients electronically and therefore enhance self-management of chronic conditions.

Third, our findings point to the role of physician specialization as a determinant of mHealth app adoption. As per Bodur et al [18], medical and nursing students believed that health technology could play an increasingly important role in the delivery of care in the future [18]. It is possible that these differences are driven by variations in clinical focus; we interviewed prostate cancer specialists, and previous studies have mostly evaluated general practitioners. Although there is evidence that cancer specialists are highly satisfied with using mHealth technology for improving cancer care delivery, it seems that specialists perceive a greater benefit of adopting mHealth apps at the population, rather than the patient, level [19].

Last, our analyses also reveal the various factors that can influence the adoption of mHealth apps. Our qualitative analyses underscore how ease of use and registration/download, intuitive appearance of the app, ability to navigate various tabs within the app, and focus on holistic cancer care are important adoption considerations for patients as well as physicians. These findings concur with previous analyses. In a comprehensive review, Alam et al [20] reported that factors such as performance expectancy (the belief that technology will achieve expected outcomes), effort expectancy (ease of use), and facilitating conditions (the belief that technology/organization infrastructure supports usage) were positively associated with greater adoption of mHealth technology [20]. Our study provides additional evidence to support incorporation of these usability features in mHealth apps for patients.

Given the methodological approach we pursued, our study has several limitations. We studied a small sample of physicians and patients from a single cancer center. The results may vary with larger-scale implementation. We evaluated the participants in our study on a specific mHealth app and provided the service free of charge, which may lead to selection bias and limit the generalizability of this work, respectively. While some mHealth apps provide information on prostate cancer, a recent systematic review revealed that most commercially available apps do not provide culturally sensitive information and have major usability concerns [21]. Other studies have reported that patients would be willing to pay for these services—especially if they are affordable [22,23]. In our study, the patient participants were aware that their responses were being recorded and evaluated, which could have led to changes in observed behavior [24] and overestimated the usability of the app due to social desirability bias. Although the participants were aware that their own care teams were involved in this study, results may vary when implementing such mHealth apps in a different context. Moreover, we did not evaluate the efficacy of the app to improve prostate cancer outcomes; we chose to first evaluate the usability and feasibility of the app, as we viewed these aspects as necessary requirements for future studies on efficacy evaluation.

**Conclusion**

Usability was observed to be an important factor for adoption of the proposed mHealth technology, as determined by ease of registration and use, intuitive appearance of the app, and focus on holistic cancer care. Men receiving ADT for prostate cancer treatment had an overall positive experience using the mHealth app to record and track their diet and exercise. The physicians believed that the app was easy to use but raised concerns about usability among older men who do not commonly use smartphone apps. This work provides foundational evidence for studies that examine the feasibility, efficacy, and interoperability of using mHealth apps for prostate cancer patients.

**Acknowledgments**

This project was funded by the 2016 Clay Hamlin Young Investigator Award (16YOUN20), Prostate Cancer Foundation. QDT received research funding from the Health Services Research pilot test grant, Defense Health Agency (HU0001-18-2-0018), and an unrestricted educational grant from the Vattikuti Urology Institute.

**Conflicts of Interest**

QDT reports personal fees from Astellas, Bayer, Janssen, and Insightec.
Multimedia Appendix 1
Usability test.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 18 KB - mhealth_v8i11e20224_app1.pdf ]

References


Abbreviations

**ADT:** Androgen Deprivation Therapy  
**DF/BWHCC:** Dana-Farber/Brigham and Women’s Cancer Center  
**GED:** General Education Development  
**IRB:** Institutional Review Board  
**mHealth:** mobile health

---

©Junaid Nabi, Eugene B Cone, Anjali Vasavada, Maxine Sun, Kerry L Kilbridge, Adam S Kibel, Donna L Berry, Quoc-Dien Trinh. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 03.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
A Smartphone-Based Technique to Detect Dynamic User Preferences for Tailoring Behavioral Interventions: Observational Utility Study of Ecological Daily Needs Assessment

Ginger E Nicol\textsuperscript{1}, MD; Amanda R Ricchio\textsuperscript{1}, BA; Christopher L Metts\textsuperscript{2}, MD; Michael D Yingling\textsuperscript{1}, MS; Alex T Ramsey\textsuperscript{3}, PhD; Julia A Schweiger\textsuperscript{4}, CCRC; J Philip Miller\textsuperscript{1}, BA; Eric J Lenze\textsuperscript{1}, MD

\textsuperscript{1}Healthy Mind Lab, Department of Psychiatry, Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, MO, United States
\textsuperscript{2}Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, College of Medicine, Medical University of South Carolina, Charleston, SC, United States
\textsuperscript{3}Department of Psychiatry, Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, MO, United States
\textsuperscript{4}Division of Biostatistics, Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, MO, United States

Corresponding Author:
Ginger E Nicol, MD
Healthy Mind Lab
Department of Psychiatry
Washington University School of Medicine
600 South Taylor Avenue
Suite 121
St. Louis, MO, 63110
United States
Phone: 1 314 362 5939
Fax: 1 314 747 1160
Email: nicolg@wustl.edu

Abstract

Background: Mobile health apps are promising vehicles for delivering scalable health behavior change interventions to populations that are otherwise difficult to reach and engage, such as young adults with psychiatric conditions. To improve uptake and sustain consumer engagement, mobile health interventions need to be responsive to individuals’ needs and preferences, which may change over time. We previously created an ecological daily needs assessment to capture microprocesses influencing user needs and preferences for mobile health treatment adaptation.

Objective: The objective of our study was to test the utility of a needs assessment anchored within a mobile app to capture individualized, contextually relevant user needs and preferences within the framework of a weight management mobile health app.

Methods: Participants with an iOS device could download the study app via the study website or links from social media. In this fully remote study, we screened, obtained informed consent from, and enrolled participants through the mobile app. The mobile health framework included daily health goal setting and self-monitoring, with up to 6 daily prompts to determine in-the-moment needs and preferences for mobile health–assisted health behavior change.

Results: A total of 24 participants downloaded the app and provided e-consent (22 female; 2 male), with 23 participants responding to at least one prompt over 2 weeks. The mean length of engagement was 5.6 (SD 4.7) days, with a mean of 2.8 (1.1) responses per day. We observed individually dynamic needs and preferences, illustrating daily variability within and between individuals. Qualitative feedback indicated preferences for self-adapting features, simplified self-monitoring, and the ability to personalize app-generated message timing and content.

Conclusions: The technique provided an individually dynamic and contextually relevant alternative and complement to traditional needs assessment for assessing individually dynamic user needs and preferences during treatment development or adaptation. The results of this utility study suggest the importance of personalization and learning algorithms for sustaining app engagement in young adults with psychiatric conditions. Further study in broader user populations is needed.

(\textit{JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18609}) doi:10.2196/18609)
KEYWORDS
mobile health; telemedicine; needs assessment; healthy lifestyle; ecological momentary assessment; mobile applications; behavior intervention; behavior therapy

Introduction

Background

Digital health interventions are being developed at a rapid rate, particularly for behavioral management of chronic diseases like diabetes, heart disease, and stroke, which account for greater than 90% of health care expenditures and more than 75% of deaths in the United States [1,2]. Such interventions promise increased access and scalability across health care systems. Mobile health (mHealth) interventions in particular offer immediate engagement, often titratable to user preferences, with the ability to deploy assessments that incorporate both self-report and sensor data. However, approximately half of users disable health apps within 2 weeks of download, with loss of interest a commonly cited reason for app disablement [3]. Barriers to and facilitators of engagement, adherence, and motivation all likely vary over time, impacted by unique, context-dependent needs and preferences both intrinsic and extrinsic to the individual—variables that cannot be adequately assessed by traditional needs assessment methods. Person-centered strategies to optimize patient engagement are critically needed for mHealth apps to impart intended benefits, and for mHealth interventions to become a mainstream way of delivering health care [4].

Obesity treatment is a case where eliciting patient preferences in treatment development is particularly important, as (1) patient engagement is a critical indicator of treatment success, (2) there is a range of treatment options, and (3) there are limited data to guide personalization of a treatment approach [5]. Only 20% to 30% of individuals seeking first-line behavioral weight loss treatment achieve clinically meaningful or sustained weight loss [6,7]. Consistent predictors of treatment response across weight loss studies include treatment engagement (eg, session attendance, homework completion) [8], adherence to self-monitoring activities (eg, food and activity logging, tracking weight) [9], and intrinsic motivation for health behavior change [10]. However, individuals with psychiatric conditions may experience unique and persistent barriers to engagement in healthy eating and exercise [11,12]. For example, parents of adolescents with psychiatric illness who participated in a family-based weight loss intervention reported that major barriers to participation were pragmatic (transportation to and from in-person visits), or were directly related to the psychiatric condition (shame and avoidance). These individuals expressed preferences for digital self-monitoring and support delivered via a mobile device over in-person treatment. Moreover, participants indicated that needs and barriers varied from day to day, and that an intervention adaptive to their dynamically changing needs was important [13]. As the availability of mobile devices among mentally ill youth increases [14], this mode of treatment becomes a feasible way to increase access and engagement [15]. However, to our knowledge, no mHealth approaches to health promotion, including weight management, have been adapted to engage patients with early-onset psychiatric conditions, where prevention is a primary public health concern [16,17].

Traditional behavioral treatment adaptation approaches use a range of methods (eg, semistructured interviews, checklists, self-report questionnaires, focus groups) to elicit needs and preferences from potential recipients to inform treatment development and adaptation [18-20]. However, these methods are often employed at static assessment times, missing the dynamic effects of time and context on user needs and preferences, which are critical for treatment engagement. Digital data collection methods, such as ecological momentary assessment [21] and passively collected sensor data, can inform adaptation efforts. For example, just-in-time adaptive interventions track the dynamic effects of time and context on individual characteristics or behaviors and adapt, ideally in real time, based on a concrete measurable construct such as self-reported mood [22] or sedentary behavior [23]. With enough measurement time points, such ideographic assessment methods can be used to model and predict dynamic changes in symptom presentation or treatment response in a single individual, without the need for reference to a larger group [24,25]. However, few just-in-time adaptive interventions have collected or incorporated dynamic user preferences and perspectives into adaptation algorithms [26,27], and little is known about what types of data inputs are most relevant in building adaptive treatments for lifestyle change [28].

Objective

To begin the process of adapting an existing interactive obesity treatment approach [29,30] for use in young people with psychiatric conditions, we created an ecological daily needs assessment. The intention was to capture dynamic user needs and preferences data as part of the adaptation process for developing a self-adapting treatment algorithm. However, the amount of lived-experience feedback needed to inform relevant treatment adaptation and, more importantly, the threshold for assessment fatigue, is not well understood [31]. The primary aim of this study was to evaluate the utility of the tool over a period of 2 weeks as part of an overall mHealth treatment adaptation effort, specifically to determine whether it could detect dynamic user needs and preferences. Secondarily, we aimed to determine the threshold for response fatigue in young adults with psychiatric conditions.

Methods

Participant Recruitment and Study Orientation

In this fully remote observational utility study, we recruited participants nationally via social media (Twitter, Facebook, and Instagram), as well as traditional methods, using an online research registry (ResearchMatch, Vanderbilt University); US national email listservs for college students, medical students, and residents; and word-of-mouth or flyers. These recruitment methods directed potential participants to the study website in
order to download the free app. Once participants had
downloaded the app, they were asked to complete a brief
screening questionnaire, which included questions about comfort
with and ability to use their device for answering preferences
questions. Inclusion criteria were age between 18 and 45 years;
access to a web-enabled device with the iPhone operating system
(iOS; Apple Inc); ability to keep their device with them for most
of the day over the following 2 weeks for the purpose of
answering needs assessment prompts; and a history of a
diagnosis of a psychiatric or psychological disorder. Since the
app involved setting health goals for weight loss, a history of
an eating disorder was exclusionary.

After reading about the study and passing the eligibility screen,
participants signed consent on their device touch screen and
received an email with the full signed consent document, which
included email addresses and phone numbers for the study
coordinator and principal investigator. Participants were asked
about their preferred times for the following questions: (1) a
time every morning to set a health intention for the day, (2)
times the user typically ate breakfast, lunch, and dinner, or
would be most likely to engage in physical activity, and (3) a
time in the evening to answer questions about app usability and
acceptability. Participants were then prompted 6 times daily
each for eating and exercise needs assessments during their
preferred times.

Study Approval
This study was reviewed and approved by the Washington
University Institutional Review Board and the Washington
Following completion of development in August 2017, study
enrollment was open from September 2017 to March 2018.

Mobile App Development
As the first step in a larger, ongoing research program to adapt
and test the effectiveness of an existing weight management
intervention [29,30] for use in young adults with severe mental
illness, we created a needs assessment tool for the purpose of
conducting a digital needs assessment within the mHealth
case. The theoretical behavior change framework underlying the
overall program is based on increasing self-efficacy [32]
for mental and physical health, by using mobile technology to
reduce extraneous cognitive load associated with making health
behavior changes [33] and to increase uptake of information
and intervention engagement. The ecological needs assessment
was embedded within a basic mHealth goal-setting framework.

Needs Assessment Description
We developed the needs assessment using Status/Post, a digital
platform (developed by CLM) that integrates the Apple
ResearchKit (Apple Inc) framework with the REDcap (REDCap
Consortium) web app through an application programming
interface [34]. The app framework included a daily prompt for
health intention setting and scaling, 6 prompts for needs
assessment during the day designated by users as times they
would be most likely to eat (3 prompts) or exercise (3 prompts),
and reflection on goal progress at the end of the day (screen
shots in Multimedia Appendix 1). The final survey each day
consisted of feasibility, acceptability, and appropriateness
questions adapted from Lyon and colleague’s contextualized
technology adaptation process [35]. Feasibility questions focused
on eliciting feedback from the user about the frequency and
timing of question prompts, as well as messaging content. We
conducted semistructured interviews with participants who had
high (eg, responses on >80% of study days) and low (eg,
responses on <25% of study days) engagement following
completion of the 2-week utility study.

Statistical Analysis
The recommended number of users needed for maximal
detection of usability problems is 5 [36], and up to 25 users for
comparative studies [37]. Anticipating a 50% attrition rate [3]
over the 2-week study period, we enrolled 35 participants with
the goal of at least 10 completers. We generated descriptive
statistics (mean, frequencies, and proportions) for survey
responses. We converted Likert-scale items from severity to a
numeric rating (eg, 1 = not at all; 3 = very much). Over the
course of the study, there were 235 potential eating prompt
responses, comprised of 9 possible response options (ie, “Are
you planning to eat? yes/no,” “Are you eating out? yes/no;
needs assessment question with 6 response options; and a
free-text option for additional feedback), and 234 possible
exercise prompt responses, comprising 8 possible response
options (“Are you planning to exercise? yes/no,” needs
assessment question with 6 response options; and free-text
option for additional feedback). All participants with at least
one postbaseline response were included in the analysis. We
report responses to each survey question as number (n) and
percentage of participants with a response in each category for
a given question. We cleaned and analyzed data using the R
software package version 3.1.1 2014-07-11, R.app 1.65 (R
Foundation for Statistical Computing). We used all available
data from all participants.

Results
Participant Characteristics
A total of 35 individuals downloaded the app, 24 consented to
participate, and 23 proceeded past the orientation questions to
answer at least one needs assessment question; 2 of them were
male. Participants accessed the app via the study website (n=4),
the online study registry (n=6), social media (n=6), an email
listserv (n=6), or a flyer or by word-of-mouth (n=9). Participants
were queried 6 times daily: 3 times daily during prespecified
1-hour periods when they were most likely to eat meals, and 3
times daily when they were most likely to exercise. Of the 23
participants who provided responses, 18 responded “Yes” to at
least one eating query during the study, prompting the healthy
eating needs assessment questions to be deployed 122 times
over the study period. A total of 11 participants responded “Yes”
to at least one exercise query during the study, prompting
healthy activity needs assessment questions to be deployed 28
times during the study period.

App Use and Engagement
The mean length of participation in the study was 5.6 (SD 4.7)
days, with mean of 2.8 (1.1) responses per day. The mean
number of responses per participant was 6.7 (3.0) over the
2-week study period. The earliest time to termination was 1 day; 2 individuals completed the entire 2 weeks. As Figure 1 shows, app use, defined as the number of participants responding to prompts, decreased by 46% (18/39) during the first day, with a varied but continual decrease in the number of respondents over the course of the study. However, the pooled daily response rate decreased to 80% (31/39) on day 1 and then remained stable at 67% (8/12) on day 7 through day 14 (6/9). Response rates remained relatively stable during the second week of the study, although individual responses varied across study day and assessment time point (Figure 2).

**Figure 1.** Overall study engagement shown by the number of total responses per day (green line), and “yes” responses per day for eating (orange bars) and exercise (purple bars). The table presents raw numbers of responses per day based on mealtime.

![Number of participants responding per prompt](chart1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breakfast/Exercise</th>
<th>Lunch/Exercise</th>
<th>Dinner/Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 2.** Responses on dynamic needs and preferences for healthy eating from 2 study participants over the 2-week study period.
**User Needs and Preferences**

As Table 1 shows, the top preferences for app functionality were receiving a reminder of the daily health goal, simplified self-monitoring for food intake, healthy eating and activity options nearby, and being able to see or track progress on goals throughout the day. More nuanced qualitative responses (e.g., participants chose “something else” and entered a text response) suggested that participants wanted pragmatic assistance with making healthy eating selections (“Access to healthy preferred options or premade healthy options;” “An inventory of food in my house so I can figure out healthy options;” “Let me list at the beginning of the week what I have on hand and use those as suggestions”). Participants also indicated their preference for the app to learn their patterns and behaviors to anticipate their needs, as well as respond with personalized support (“Motivational messaging and a dashboard of my progress;” “Suggestions on healthy options in my area;” “Give me a list of 3-5 quick and healthy meal options;” “Someone to go with me and hold me accountable;” “Support me by checking in with me like a friend would”).

Responses to preference questions also revealed dynamic responses within and between individuals throughout each day over the course of the study (Figure 2).

| Table 1. Pooled user needs and preferences for healthy eating and activity. |
|---|---|
| **Preferences** | **Total responses selected, n (%)** |
| **Eating preferences (n=122 questions deployed)** | |
| Remind me of my daily health intention | 51 (41.8) |
| Quick and easy option to log my food | 50 (41.0) |
| Provide healthy eating options nearby | 39 (32.0) |
| Show me my calorie intake for the day | 37 (30.3) |
| Something else* | 17 (13.9) |
| Video or text chat with a support person | 6 (4.9) |
| **Activity preferences (n=28 questions deployed)** | |
| Show me my activity progress for the day | 11 (39) |
| Remind me of my daily health intention | 9 (32) |
| Provide easy exercise options nearby | 9 (32) |
| Video demonstration of easy exercise | 8 (29) |
| Something elseb | 5 (18) |
| Easy way to log my activity | 4 (14) |

*a*Access to healthy preferred options or premade healthy options; a list of 3-5 quick and healthy meal options to prepare in advance; someone else to prepare healthy meals; inventory of food in my house or assistance figuring out healthy options without getting up; reduced focus on calories; suggest healthy options based on what I have in my house; motivational messaging and a dashboard of my progress; recipe suggestions; suggestions on healthy options in my area or just general food suggestions.

*b*Someone to go with me and hold me accountable; support me by checking in with me like a friend would.

**Usability, Acceptability, Feasibility, and Appropriateness**

At the end of each study day, contextualized technology adaptation process questions regarding feasibility, acceptability, and appropriateness were deployed. The majority of respondents indicated that the number of daily prompts was “just right” (37/72, 51%), followed by “too low” (23/72, 32%), with “too high” (12/72, 17%) being the least frequently selected response. The majority of respondents viewed timing of prompts as “moderately helpful” (36/72, 50%), followed by “not at all helpful” (26/72, 36%), with the fewest responses indicating timing was “extremely helpful” (10/72, 14%). Responses to the final question, “What would have made this application more helpful,” shown in Table 2, indicated that users preferred personalized messaging and simplified self-monitoring options. Participants also had the option of adding free-text comments, as Table 3 shows.
Table 2. Pooled data for all participants (n=19, total possible responses n=69) responding to acceptability, feasibility, and appropriateness questions deployed at the end of each day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What would have made this application more helpful?</th>
<th>Total responses, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Personalized text messages about how to reach my health goals</td>
<td>29 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide an easy way to log my food and activity</td>
<td>28 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incentive for healthy choices (eg, collecting “points” to be used toward a reward)</td>
<td>28 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticipate sedentary behavior and send me activity suggestions</td>
<td>27 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticipate unhealthy eating and send me healthier options nearby</td>
<td>25 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide interactive video of exercise examples</td>
<td>23 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide healthy meal options and recipes</td>
<td>23 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track and show me my activity throughout the day</td>
<td>21 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to video chat with a professional</td>
<td>21 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link to social media to share my progress with others</td>
<td>1 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See a friend or loved one’s progress</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Postparticipation interview responses vs app-collected responses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Representative interview quote</th>
<th>Representative app quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What did you like about the app?</td>
<td>I liked setting a health goal and then checking in at the end of the day.</td>
<td>I know how I should be feeling and behaviors I should be changing, but it is really hard when I am all alone to take the right steps...[the app] kept me busy so I wouldn’t get so sad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you dislike about the app?</td>
<td>Too many prompts.</td>
<td>Hounding people to eat healthy and exercise is the #1 way to drive an emotionally fragile person away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would have made the app more useful?</td>
<td>Make logging easier.</td>
<td>Maybe a mood tracker would be helpful, and a visual of my progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would make you more likely to continue using an app like this?</td>
<td>I want to be able to change the notification settings.</td>
<td>I’d like to be able to ask for help making eating choices when I’m ready to eat. Due to my disability, I don’t have a regular sleep schedule so I don’t eat meals at regular times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to contrast results from traditional acceptability, feasibility, and appropriateness assessment methods with data collected via the app, we conducted semistructured interviews with 4 users representing high and low user engagement, contrasted with responses provided via free text through the app (Table 3). Follow-up interviewees in general gave positive feedback about the context, particularly about the intention setting at the beginning of the day, and anticipated or actual difficulty rating features. In contrast, feedback obtained through the app on a daily basis included more detail about the usability of the needs assessment tool, particularly with respect to what participants didn’t like. Respondents noted that their day-to-day schedules varied, in particular related to sleep and mood, so prescheduled “in-the-moment” needs assessment prompts weren’t always relevant and were perceived as annoying if they came at a time that was busy or stressful. Respondents also expressed a desire for the app to provide more emotional support, learn their patterns and behaviors, and personalize goals or substitute behaviors that consider a specific condition or disability.

Discussion

Principal Findings

We tested the utility of a novel mobile technology–based technique to capture both group-based and individually dynamic user needs and preferences. We conducted this assessment, which we term ecological daily needs assessment, alongside a basic mHealth intervention designed to support health behaviors linked to healthy weight management. There were 3 key findings. First, the technique demonstrated the ability to detect dynamic needs and preferences, which changed over time differentially within an individual, as well as between individuals. The technique collected group-level usability data suggesting specific adaptations for improving the app, as well as being informative for intervention adaptation. Second, the number of daily prompts was acceptable, but timing was rarely appropriate despite being during prespecified times indicated by the participant. Response rates declined significantly after 3 days, suggesting a possible threshold for collecting useful needs assessment data. Third, this approach to usability assessment yielded specific critical feedback, contrasted with less specific and generally positive or neutral feedback obtained from the more traditional method of semistructured interviews. These results highlight the importance of context in usability testing of mobile assessments, which can yield data relevant to
dynamic needs and preferences at the group and individual levels.

Digital tools are commonly leveraged to temporally link active, passive, and metadata to improve user engagement. Despite this, mHealth apps are still disabled within weeks of download [38], suggesting that extensive digital phenotyping efforts are insufficient for optimizing user engagement [39,40]. Assessment of user preferences increases mHealth treatment engagement [41], but populations perceived as difficult to engage, such as individuals with psychiatric illnesses, are often excluded from treatment adaptation research, primarily due to concerns about the reliability of self-report measures due to cognitive limitations [42]. However, it is exactly these cognitive limitations that necessitate the need for usability and preference testing [41,43]. The extant research evaluating mHealth or digital weight loss treatments in young adults with mental illness is limited, but suggests that the unique needs and preferences of this population may have important implications for mHealth treatment development [44]. These results underscore the importance of ecologically valid data in developing interventions that effectively engage this population [45].

The needs assessment in this study was anchored within a behavior change framework based on existing treatments [29,46] to provide the user exposure to an intervention upon which they could consider their needs and preferences. In contrast, more traditional usability assessments conducted at the end of an intervention, even when paired with utilization data, are subject to recall bias and do not capture how end users experience the app in real time [47]. The complexity of programming needed to build a learning system from inception contributes to cost, and there are as yet few cost-benefit data to inform investment in artificial intelligence features like machine learning for health apps [48]. Developers of mHealth treatments in resource-constrained settings might more expeditiously begin app development with an anchored needs assessment in place to better understand end user needs, which could provide useful information regarding which data inputs are most relevant to employ in learning algorithms.

Limitations

It is important to note limitations of this study. First, the number of participants was small, but within the recommended range for usability testing. Second, participation was limited to individuals owning iOS devices. Apps on non-iOS smart devices using the Android operating system, which are more commonly used in psychiatric populations [49], are needed. Third, although the needs assessment technique in this study prioritized participant-scheduled prompts, participants were not able to change the schedule or initiate a response when they encountered a need outside of the schedule, resulting in potential missed opportunities to capture more nuanced aspects of individual variability in needs and preferences. Fourth, important questions remain regarding the validity and relevance of our observations for mHealth treatment development. If individually dynamic needs and preferences are relevant, what is the best way to accurately capture this information? And how can this information be meaningfully incorporated into behavioral mHealth intervention development and adaptation? Empirical testing is needed to determine whether capturing individually dynamic data leads to superior mHealth interventions and outcomes.

Conclusions

The results of this study provide insights that may inform the development of self-adapting treatments, which this study and others have identified as particularly germane to engagement of individuals with chronic health concerns, including mental health conditions [27,50]. In populations where app engagement is linked to treatment outcome, or in settings where funding for development is limited, early usability testing of digital features, using the digital context, is a low-cost option for determining which aspects of development to prioritize with limited funding. The resulting contextually relevant information might be particularly useful in guiding real-time treatment adaptation while limiting in-person contact, which will likely be important for the future of clinical research in vulnerable populations during public health events like the coronavirus pandemic [51]. Additional study is needed to determine whether a mobile needs assessment can usefully inform behavioral treatment development for diverse patient populations and operating systems.

Acknowledgments

This research was made possible by funding from the Center for Brain Research in Mood Disorders and the Healthy Mind Lab in the Department of Psychiatry at Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, MO, USA, and the US National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK; R01DK103760). In addition, AT received grant support from the National Institute on Drug Abuse. This publication was made possible by grant no. 1P30DK092950 from the NIDDK, and its contents are solely the responsibility of the authors and do not necessarily represent the official views of the NIDDK. The funders of the study had no role in study design, data collection, data analysis, data interpretation, or writing of the report. The corresponding and senior author had full access to all the data in the study and had final responsibility for the decision to submit for publication.

Conflicts of Interest

GEN reports grant support from the US National Institute of Mental Health, the Barnes Jewish Hospital Foundation, the Center for Diabetes Translational Research, and the McDonnell Center for Systems Neuroscience at Washington University, and has consulted for Alkermes and Sunovion. CLM is the developer of the Status/Post software used to create the mobile app reported
on in this paper. EJL reports grant support from Janssen, Aptinyx, Acadia, Lundeck, Takeda, PCORI, the Barnes Jewish Hospital Foundation, and the McKnight Brain Research Foundation, and has consulted for Janssen and Jazz Pharmaceuticals.
CLM is the developer of the Status/Post software used to create the mobile app reported on in this paper. EJL reports grant support from Janssen, Aptinyx, Acadia, Lundeck, Takeda, PCORI, the Barnes Jewish Hospital Foundation, and the McKnight Brain Research Foundation, and has consulted for Janssen and Jazz Pharmaceuticals.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Supplementary materials.

References


Abbreviations

mHealth: mobile health

Stephanie Valencia1,2, BSc; Laura Callinan3, MPH; Frederick Shic1,4, PhD; Megan Smith1, MPH, DrPH

1Child Study Center, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, United States
2Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, United States
3Department of Psychiatry, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT, United States
4Seattle’s Children’s Research Institute, University of Washington School of Medicine, Seattle, WA, United States

Corresponding Author:
Megan Smith, MPH, DrPH
Department of Psychiatry
Yale University School of Medicine
230 South Frontage Road
New Haven, CT, 06519
United States
Phone: 1 203 764 8655
Email: megan.smith@yale.edu

Abstract

Background: The smoking relapse rate during the first 12 months after pregnancy is around 80% in the United States. Delivering remote smoking cessation interventions to women in the postpartum period can reduce the burden associated with frequent office visits and can enable remote communication and support. Developing reliable, remote, smoking measuring instruments is a crucial step in achieving this vision.

Objective: The study presents the evaluation of the MoMba Live Long system, a smartphone-based breath carbon monoxide (CO) meter and a custom iOS smartphone app. We report on how our smoking detection system worked in a controlled office environment and in an out-of-office environment to examine its potential to deliver a remote contingency management intervention.

Methods: In-office breath tests were completed using both the MoMba Live Long system and a commercial monitor, the piCO+ Smokerlyzer. In addition, each participant provided a urine test for smoking status validation through cotinine. We used in-office test data to verify the validity of the MoMba Live Long smoking detection system. We also collected out-of-office tests to assess how the system worked remotely and enabled user verification. Pregnant adult women in their second or third trimester participated in the study for a period of 12 weeks. This study was carried out in the United States.

Results: Analyses of in-office tests included 143 breath tests contributed from 10 participants. CO readings between the MoMba Live Long system and the piCO+ were highly correlated ($r=.94$). In addition, the MoMba Live Long system accurately distinguished smokers from nonsmokers with a sensitivity of 0.91 and a specificity of 0.94 when the piCO+ was used as a gold standard, and a sensitivity of 0.81 and specificity of 1.0 when cotinine in urine was used to confirm smoking status. All participants indicated that the system was easy to use.

Conclusions: Relatively inexpensive portable and internet-connected CO monitors can enable remote smoking status detection in a wide variety of nonclinical settings with reliable and valid measures comparable to a commercially available CO monitor.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02237898; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02237898

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18809) doi:10.2196/18809

KEYWORDS
breath carbon monoxide; contingency management; smoking cessation; pregnancy; mobile-based sensor; mobile phone
Introduction

Background

Tobacco is the most common substance of abuse used during pregnancy, with a substantially higher rate of use among socioeconomically disadvantaged women [1]. While approximately 50% of women who previously smoked regularly abstain from smoking in pregnancy, relapse to smoking postnatally remains a challenge, with over 70% of women who remitted relapsing within 12 months postpartum in the United States [2,3].

Contingency management (CM), rewarding financial incentives contingent upon biochemically verified abstinence from recent smoking, has consistently been shown to decrease the use of tobacco [2-4] and to be an efficacious intervention for promoting smoking cessation in pregnant and postpartum women [5]. Delivering CM interventions typically involves frequent monitoring of smoking status with daily or weekly office visits. In this work, we develop a remote smoking assessment system to more widely disseminate smoking cessation interventions into community settings and to reach overburdened and underserved populations of smokers, such as expectant mothers of lower socioeconomic status.

Technologies for Remote Smoking Assessments

Mobile technologies, especially web-enabled or smartphone technology, can be used to access real-world community settings, as the access to smartphones has increased: 81% of Americans owned a smartphone in 2019 [6]. Mobile health solutions are emerging, creating an opportunity for the expansion of evidence-based practices [7-9]. In combination with sensors that enable remote biochemical assessment of smoking status, such as breath carbon monoxide (CO) measurements [10-12], mobile technologies could allow remote delivery of smoking cessation interventions.

A randomized, controlled, parallel-group design study carried out a 6-week intervention evaluating the effectiveness of an internet-based smoking cessation program in the United States using a system called Motiv8 [13]. Participants used Motiv8 to submit videos and values of breath CO tests taken with a commercial CO breath analyzer, the piCO+ Smokerlyzer (Bedfont Scientific), and to confirm identity and veracity of tests through a secured website. Even with some limitations (eg, the need for a desktop computer), the study demonstrated that participants receiving rewards based on abstinence were more likely to post negative CO samples on the website than the participants who received monetary rewards independent of smoking status (odds ratio 4.56, 95% CI 2.10-9.52). More recently, breath CO manufacturers have developed commercial CO monitors that leverage the advantages of internet-based systems with new, smaller CO monitors such as the iCO Smokerlyzer (Bedfont Scientific). The iCO Smokerlyzer connects to a smartphone for personal smoking behavior monitoring and enables users to measure their CO levels but does not include a way to verify that the intended user completed the breath test appropriately. This verification is important for remote CM interventions, where additional evidence is needed to verify test validity as there are no present observers. Recent work has investigated unsupervised breath test validity by verifying exhalation through the use of pressure sensors and the use of facial recognition for user authentication in the context of smoking and alcohol use [14-16].

The MoMba Live Long System

Overview

The MoMba Live Long system consisted of a custom and portable breath CO meter that wirelessly interfaced via Bluetooth with an iOS-only app (see Figure 1). The MoMba Live Long iOS app provided an interface for the breath CO meter that allowed the participant to receive notifications regarding the availability of the breath test, taking the breath test, seeing results of smoking status, and keeping track of rewards and progress. In addition, the app verified that the participant was correctly taking the breath test by recording pictures using the front-facing camera as well as recording audio to verify that the participant was exhaling while taking the test. When a breath test indicated smoking abstinence, the participant was rewarded with tokens that could be exchanged for gift cards. The MoMba Live Long app also enabled the delivery of questionnaires through the app. The MoMba Live Long system was based on a successful app design developed to support maternal mental health in the postpartum period [17].
Figure 1. The custom and portable breath carbon monoxide (CO) meter is comprised of an environmental CO gas sensor and a custom 3D-printed chassis. A smartphone was loaded with a custom app (MoMba Live Long) that enables participants to complete scheduled breath tests and collect rewards. The Sensordrone and chassis sizes are shown at scale with respect to the phone in the image.

MoMba Breath CO Meter
The custom breath CO meter used an electrochemical CO gas sensor—the Sensordrone, part No. SDRONEG1 (Sensorcon Inc)—designed to measure environmental CO. The Sensordrone was accurate to within 10% with a resolution of 1 parts per million (ppm), making it comparable to existing commercial medical-grade CO breath analyzers [18]. We designed a 3D-printed chassis to encase the Sensordrone and allow proper air flow. 3D printing was selected as a fabrication method that allowed us to prototype in a timely manner and test different designs. The 3D-printed chassis held an inline activated-carbon filter and cotton that removed non-CO gases and excess moisture.

Breath Sample Collection
To determine smoking status, a user completed a breath test by blowing into our custom breath CO meter composed of a disposable mouthpiece connected to the custom 3D-printed chassis encasing the Sensordrone. The breath CO meter measured CO concentration in the breath after collecting exhaled air samples for 20 seconds at a 5-Hz sampling rate. Collected data were securely sent and stored in a back-end server monitored by staff.

The MoMba CO Estimate
A previous study we conducted established that the most accurate prediction of smoking status from breath was by sampling the portion of breath at the end of exhalation, which represented the middle portion of an exhalation of 20 seconds, on average [19]. During this initial testing, we detected baseline reading offsets attributed to increased temperature in the Sensordrone from recent charging and environmental pollution. This led to the addition of a baseline correction to our algorithm. Our previous findings presented an exhaustive exploration of different smoking detection approaches using different classification models and features, while this report presents an evaluation of our system’s performance with our implemented algorithm that used the best-performing features from our previous study [19]. In order to obtain one single value from a 20-second sample of breath tests, we performed the following steps: (1) calculated the baseline reading for the Sensordrone, (2) located the general maximum and captured values above 50% of the maximum value, and (3) calculated the median value and removed any offsets detected in the baseline value. This final value represented the MoMba CO estimate.

Aim of the Study
We present the design of the MoMba Live Long, mobile, breath CO meter and a pilot evaluation of the feasibility of the system as a smoking assessment tool during and after pregnancy.

Methods
Participants
The MoMba Live Long pilot study was approved by the ethical review board of the Yale School of Medicine. Participants were recruited at local clinics; through community outreach, flyers, and advertisements; and from referrals. Participants were women who met the following inclusion criteria: were 18 years of age or older, were daily tobacco cigarette smokers not using nicotine replacement therapy, were pregnant with a singleton in their second or third trimester, and had a desire to stop smoking. Women were not eligible if English was not their primary language, if they did not live in the city in which the study was conducted, if they did not plan to deliver their baby at the local...
hospital, or if they met medical exclusions, as determined by medical record review, including respiratory medical conditions such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, HELLP (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelet count) syndrome, or pregnancy complications. If a participant lost her child, she was no longer eligible to participate. Eligible participants completed an intake visit where informed written consent was provided and smoking status was confirmed with a urine sample.

In-Office and Remote Data Collection Procedures

During the MoMba Live Long pilot study, breath tests were collected for 12 weeks and followed the CM schedule described by Higgins et al [20]. For each consecutive smoke-free breath test, a participant received a higher number of tokens per test. Breath samples were obtained via a mixture of in-office and remote tests. Each participant was asked to attend up to 18 in-office visits: five visits in week 1, two visits in weeks 2 and 3, and one visit per week for weeks 4-12. In-office visits did not always coincide with a CM-related breath test. Before completing breath tests, participants were asked to report the number of cigarettes smoked within the previous 24 hours and the date and time of the last cigarette smoked through the MoMba Live Long app. In-office visits consisted of first completing one breath test using the MoMba Live Long system and then one breath test with piCO\(^*\). Participants also provided a urine sample to validate smoking.

During in-office testing, participants were asked to sit in a chair in an upright and straight position to accurately complete a breath test. Participants were instructed to inhale deeply and hold their breath for 15 seconds and then exhale all the air completely (up to 20 seconds). Holding the breath allowed the sensor to obtain a CO value close to alveolar CO concentration [21]. Both the MoMba Live Long system and the piCO\(^*\) monitor displayed a countdown on their respective screens as participants were holding their breath. Once the countdown was finished, the participant blew into the sensor. Both systems displayed a second countdown to indicate that the sensor was collecting the sample.

All remote tests followed the same procedures as in-office breath tests. The participants received a kit to take home that included an iPhone, which participants were encouraged to use as their primary phone; a chassis; a Sensordrone; a charger for the Sensordrone; disposable mouthpieces; and replacement filters. After participants completed their tests, research staff verified the validity of the test using the back-end server and approved the corresponding financial rewards. Participants received a notification to complete their test between the hours of 8:30 AM and 3 PM EST. The notification for the breath test expired after 5 hours.

Measures

**Participant Characteristics at Intake**

A baseline questionnaire asked questions regarding demographics and smoking habits. The Fagerstrom Test for Cigarette Dependence was used to assess dependence on nicotine; a higher score indicates greater dependence [22].

**MoMba Performance Against Gold-Standard Measures**

The primary outcome measure for this study was the validity of the MoMba CO outcome; this measure was compared with the gold standard of piCO\(^*\) and urine cotinine collected at the same visit. A measure of smoking abstinence was defined as CO-negative breath samples determined by the MoMba breath CO meter and the piCO\(^*\) (\(\leq 6\) ppm). The selected CO cutoff levels were recommended by previous work [10,23]. All urine tests were tested for adulteration using a specimen validity test and then sent to a lab for a quantitative cotinine urine assay with quality control. A cotinine concentration value less than 50 ng/mL indicated smoking abstinence [24]. Due to limits in lab detection, cotinine concentrations reported as less than 10 ng/mL were estimated as 5 ng/mL.

**Variation of CO Values Since Last Cigarette Smoked**

To examine how breath CO values varied since last cigarette smoked, the half-life of breath CO, 3-6 hours [12], was used to create a dichotomous variable indicating if the participant smoked within 5 hours of a breath test or more than 5 hours before a breath test.

**Variation of CO Values According to Pregnancy Status**

Pregnancy and postpregnancy CO values were compared to explore any potential differences; postpregnancy status was determined by a participant’s delivery date. We used the number of cigarettes and time since last cigarette smoked to investigate if these variables impacted the observed pattern of results.

**Out-of-Office Performance and User Experience**

A follow-up questionnaire was asked 3 months after intake, at the completion of CM: this questionnaire included two Likert scale questions regarding how easy it was to use (1) the sensor and (2) the MoMba Live Long app; response options were 1 (Extremely Difficult), 2 (Difficult), 3 (Neutral), 4 (Easy), and 5 (Extremely Easy). In addition, we evaluated the completion and delivery of the remote breath test as well as the performance of the front-facing camera authentication method and the microphone to detect exhalation during remote breath tests.

**Statistical Analysis**

Categorical variables were described with count and proportions. Normally distributed data were presented with mean and SD; nonnormally distributed data were presented with median and IQR. Sensitivity was defined as the proportion of tests for which a true-positive breath CO test was detected. Specificity was defined as the proportion of tests for which there was a true-negative breath CO test. Receiver operating characteristic curves were generated for the MoMba CO estimate and the piCO\(^*\) by plotting the percentage of true positives against the percentage of false positives. Area under the curve (AUC) was calculated for each plot using the pROC package for R (The R Foundation) [25]. Since each participant contributed multiple observations, methods to calculate sensitivity and specificity accounted for clustering due to participant [26]. To assess the relationship across smoking measures, a correlation coefficient was calculated accounting for repeated observations of participants [27]. Generalized linear models were used to compare smoking status indicators between groups, accounting...
for potentially correlated data among participants. An autoregressive correlation structure was specified for the models. Time since last cigarette smoked and/or number of cigarettes smoked in the past 24 hours were used as covariates in the model. Statistical significance was determined as \( P < .05 \) (2-tailed).

**Results**

**Participant Characteristics at Intake**

A total of 10 pregnant adult women participated in the MoMba Live Long pilot. The majority of women were single and never married (7/10, 70%); 50% (5/10) of the women were Black or African American, non-Hispanic (see Table 1). The average age of participants was 31.7 years (SD 4.6).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Value (N=10)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marital status, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single and never married</td>
<td>7 (70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married or partnered</td>
<td>3 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Race and ethnicity, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>4 (40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black or African American, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>5 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, Hispanic</td>
<td>1 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Highest year of education completed, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grades 9-12 or General Educational Diploma</td>
<td>5 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 1 year of college or vocational school</td>
<td>5 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How many cigarettes per day do you smoke? n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-5 cigarettes</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-10 cigarettes</td>
<td>9 (90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-20 cigarettes</td>
<td>1 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age in years, mean (SD)</td>
<td>31.7 (4.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous pregnancies not including current pregnancy, mean (SD)</td>
<td>3.7 (2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of weeks pregnant, mean (SD)</td>
<td>25.9 (9.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fagerstrom score(a), mean (SD)</td>
<td>4.5 (1.6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( a \) Fagerstrom Test of Cigarette Dependence conducted at intake; scores range from 1 to 10.

**MoMba Performance Against Gold-Standard Measures**

A total of 143 breath tests were collected; participants contributed, on average, 14.3 (SD 3.5) tests (range 8-17). Significant CO reading correlations \( r = .94 \) were observed between the MoMba CO estimate and the piCO\(^+\) (see Table 2). When using the piCO\(^+\) as the gold standard, the MoMba CO estimate presented a sensitivity of 0.91 and specificity of 0.94. Of the 139 tests with urine data, a moderate linear relationship was seen between both CO breath measures and the urine cotinine tests (see Table 2): MoMba CO estimate \( r = .52 \) and piCO\(^+\) \( r = .57 \). When using cotinine in urine as the gold-standard smoking indicator, the sensitivity with the MoMba CO estimate was 0.81 and the piCO\(^+\) measure showed a sensitivity of 0.87. Both MoMba CO and piCO\(^+\) estimates had a specificity of 1.0. The AUC for the MoMba CO estimate was 0.95 (95% CI 0.91-0.99) when the piCO\(^+\) measure was used as a gold standard (see Figure 2). With urine cotinine as the gold standard, the AUC for the MoMba CO estimate was 0.95 (95% CI 0.92-0.99) and for the piCO\(^+\) measure was 0.99 (95% CI 0.99-1.0) (see Figure 3).
Table 2. Sensitivity and specificity of the MoMba Live Long system carbon monoxide (CO) measure with the piCO\textsuperscript{+} measure as gold standard, and MoMba Live Long system CO and piCO\textsuperscript{+} measures with cotinine in urine as gold standard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Smoking status test</th>
<th>Sensitivity (95% CI)</th>
<th>Specificity (95% CI)</th>
<th>r</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>piCO\textsuperscript{+} as gold standard</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MoMba CO estimate (n=143)</td>
<td>0.91 (0.80-1.0)</td>
<td>0.94 (0.83-1.0)</td>
<td>.94</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cotinine in urine as gold standard</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MoMba CO estimate (n=139)</td>
<td>0.81 (0.65-0.97)</td>
<td>1.0 (1.0-1.0)</td>
<td>.52</td>
<td>.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piCO\textsuperscript{+} (n=139)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.73-1.0)</td>
<td>1.0 (1.0-1.0)</td>
<td>.57</td>
<td>.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2. Receiver operating characteristic curves for the MoMba Live Long system carbon monoxide (CO) measure with the piCO\textsuperscript{+} measure as gold standard.

Figure 3. Receiver operating characteristic curves for the MoMba Live Long system carbon monoxide (CO) and piCO\textsuperscript{+} measures with cotinine in urine as gold standard.
**Variation of CO Values Since Last Cigarette Smoked**

*Figure 4* shows the difference in CO measures based on the dichotomized variable *time of last cigarette smoked*. Of the 143 completed in-office breath tests, 8 (5.6%) tests did not have data regarding time of last cigarette smoked, 102 (71.3%) breath tests were taken within 5 hours of smoking, and 33 (23.1%) tests were taken after 5 hours of smoking. All breath CO values were higher when a participant smoked within 5 hours of the breath test (MoMba CO estimate, \( P = .048 \); \( \text{piCO}^+ \), \( P = .03 \)). After controlling for the number of cigarettes smoked in the past 24 hours, values remained higher for participants who smoked within 5 hours of the test compared with participants who smoked more than 5 hours before the test (MoMba CO estimate, \( P = .045 \); \( \text{piCO}^+ \), \( P = .02 \)).

*Figure 4*. Breath carbon monoxide (CO) values according to time since last cigarette smoked. ppm: parts per million.

**Variation of CO Values According to Pregnancy Status**

Among the 4 participants who delivered a baby during the study (65 breath tests), the median MoMba CO estimate was 4.7 ppm (IQR 3.3-12.5) during pregnancy and 11.1 ppm (IQR 8.4-21.0) after pregnancy (see *Figure 5*). The median CO estimate from \( \text{piCO}^+ \) was 12 ppm (IQR 3-14) during pregnancy and 11 ppm (IQR 9-25) after pregnancy. There were no differences between values during pregnancy compared with values after pregnancy for all three smoking indicators; this remained after controlling for number of cigarettes smoked in the past 24 hours and time of last cigarette smoked.
Out-of-Office Performance and User Experience

Of the 102 remote breath tests successfully sent to participants, 51 (50.0%) tests were completed. Participants received, on average, 10 remote breath test notifications (SD 3.6) and completed 5 breath tests on average (SD 3.5). Almost all remote breath tests (47/51, 92%) indicated smoking. Remote breath tests that were not completed were preceded by a breath test indicating smoking 88% (45/51) of the time; average time from a missed remote test to the preceding completed breath test was 9.8 days (SD 7.2). Notifications were not successfully delivered for 7 out of 51 (14%) remote tests; in 2 of these instances (29%), the participant received a replacement breath test in the office, and in 2 instances (29%) a replacement breath test was sent remotely to the participant. Out of 51 remote breath tests, 4 (8%) results were challenged by a participant; research staff examined the data to determine if there was an inconsistency in breath sample values and pictures. If results were indicative of a false positive, the participant was sent a new breath test.

All 51 completed remote breath tests had pictures where staff could verify the identity of the participant completing the test; only one set of pictures for 1 remote breath test out of 51 (2%) did not show the participant’s mouth. All participants used the front-facing camera feature correctly. Audio was available for all remote breath tests except for 1 out of 51 (2%), in which the file was corrupted. About 50% of audio recordings also included background noise, making it difficult to detect the sounds of breath; these background sounds included TV, radio, fans, babies, and other people talking.

At the 3-month follow-up, 63% (5/8) of participants indicated that the MoMba Live Long app and the Sensordrone were “extremely easy to use,” and 38% (3/8) indicated that it was “easy to use.”

Discussion

Principal Findings

In this study, we tested and validated the MoMba Live Long system’s breath CO meter as a smartphone-based system that can determine smoking status during and after pregnancy. Collected breath CO values with the MoMba Live Long system compared well to the commercial piCO+ monitor. Women in our study found the system easy to use. Regarding the novelty of our system, in comparison with other remote smoking measurement instruments, including the piCO+ and the new iCO+ Smokerlyzer (Bedfont Scientific), the MoMba Live Long CO meter has several advantages: (1) it interfaces wirelessly with a smartphone app, (2) it enables user verification, through picture and audio capturing for smoke test validity on the go, and (3) it can detect smoking status during and after pregnancy. Further investigation is required to determine what additional system features are needed to make home CM interventions feasible beyond ensuring the accuracy of the measurement system.

System Performance Metrics in the CM Context

When delivering financial incentives through remote verification of smoking status, specificity—the proportion of tests for which there is a true-negative breath CO test—is the measurement that should be prioritized to positively reinforce participants who have abstained from smoking. The MoMba Live Long system achieved high levels of specificity; false positives in the context of a CM intervention can decrease motivation to quit and increase frustration for participants.

Breath CO as a Time-Dependent Marker for Smoking

While CO concentration and cotinine can both measure the presence or absence of smoking, the difference in the half-lives of these analytes do not make them directly comparable. CO
has a shorter half-life (3-6 hours) in comparison to cotinine (17 hours in nonpregnant women and 9 hours in pregnant women [28]). This difference helps explain the finding of an observed, moderate, linear relationship between both the MoMba CO estimate and the piCO⁺ measure with urine cotinine tests. CO concentration in the breath can be a better measure of cigarette consumption within a shorter period of time than cotinine, as shown in previous work [29], making it suitable for recent and immediate smoking assessments [12]. Furthermore, our analysis found differences in breath CO levels within the 5 hours of the last cigarette smoked and after the 5-hour mark, suggesting that future remote CM interventions should consider sampling more than one time a day.

The Need for Context-Aware CO Cutoffs

Prior work has suggested a variety of optimal cutoff breath CO levels to determine smoking status [12,24,30-32]. While we did not observe differences in CO values during pregnancy and the postpartum period, possibly due to a small sample size, the literature suggests that using different cutoff values during pregnancy and the postpartum period may be the best alternative, although there is no consensus on a set cutoff value. While one study suggests a CO cutoff of 2-3 ppm, other studies recommend a 4-ppm breath CO cutoff to identify pregnant smokers [24]. Studies reporting these cutoff values were based on self-report of smoking, which is not always a reliable measure [33-35]. The reported variability in cutoff values is endogenous to exhaled CO as a biomarker since it depends on the given environment in which the measurement is taken [36], an individual’s physiology [11], the breath sampling procedure, and the breath CO measurement instrument [37]. Further validation on optimal breath CO cutoff levels is needed as well as systems that are flexible to adapt to cutoff changes through the perinatal period.

Limitations and Future Work

This study does not report on the success of financial incentives to prevent smoking relapse but rather on the validity of our measuring instrument and the participant’s experience in using the MoMba Live Long system in person and remotely after a period of 3 months. Future publications will report on a randomized controlled trial on the prevention of smoking relapse using remotely delivered financial incentives. While participants reported that the system was easy to use, there are many unknowns regarding why participants missed remote breath tests. Additional research should investigate reasons for noncompletion, such as difficulty accessing their phone or the required sensor, recent smoking, the timing in which notifications were received, and the social context in which participants are asked to take a test. Prior work has reported some of these factors as negatively impacting adherence to remote dietary interventions [38].

Another limitation of the CO meter is that many other environmental factors can affect the readings of a remote CO monitor, such as air pollution, secondhand smoke, or the use of tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) or cannabis. Expired CO air from THC users has shown to double CO concentration levels [39]. Our sensor is susceptible to increased CO readings based on these external factors. Studies looking into enabling remote smoking detection should consider other substance use screening, as well as assessing a participant’s environment to be aware of possible confounding factors.

Conclusions

The MoMba Live Long system is one of the first portable breath CO monitoring systems delivering remote CM smoking cessation interventions for pregnant women. The results from this study suggest that CO estimates derived from a smartphone-based breath CO meter are reliable and valid, but further testing in remote and diverse settings is needed to fully understand what environmental and usability barriers may impact the process of taking remote breath tests. Overall, the MoMba Live Long system is a feasible and acceptable approach to help practitioners and researchers increase access and delivery of CM smoking cessation interventions remotely to diverse populations.

Acknowledgments

This work was supported by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) through a grant from the National Cancer Institute (R01CA195654) with MS as principal investigator. FS is funded by an NIH award (K01 MH104739). The iOS app used for this study was developed by PreviewLabs. The authors gratefully acknowledge Mark Wagner, founder of Sensorcon and inventor of the Sensordrone; Michael Perlmutter and Brandon Hudik for the custom 3D-chassis design; and the members of the New Haven Moms Partnership for their help with participant recruitment and data collection.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References


Abbreviations

AUC: area under the curve
CM: contingency management
CO: carbon monoxide
HELLP: hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelet count
NIH: National Institutes of Health
ppm: parts per million
THC: tetrahydrocannabinol
Development and Acceptability of a Tablet-Based App to Support Men to Link to HIV Care: Mixed Methods Approach

Thulile Mathenjwa¹, MA; Oluwafemi Adeagbo¹,²,³, PhD; Thembelihle Zuma¹, PhD; Keabetswe Dikgale¹, BSc; Anya Zeitlin⁴, MSc; Philippa Matthews¹, BMBS; Janet Seeley¹,³, PhD; Sally Wyke⁶, PhD; Frank Tanser¹,⁷, PhD; Maryam Shahmanesh¹,⁸*, PhD; Ann Blandford⁴*, PhD

¹Africa Health Research Institute, KwaZulu Natal, Mtubatuba, South Africa
²Department of Sociology, University of Johannesburg, Johannesburg, South Africa
³Department of Health Promotion, Education and Behavior, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, United States
⁴UCL Interaction Centre, University College London, London, United Kingdom
⁵London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom
⁶University of Glasgow, Glasgow, United Kingdom
⁷Lincoln International Institute for Rural Health, University of Lincoln, Lincoln, United Kingdom
⁸Institute for Global Health, University College London, London, United Kingdom

*these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Thulile Mathenjwa, MA
Africa Health Research Institute
KwaZulu Natal
Somkhele, Africa Centre Building, Via R618 to Hlabisa
Mtubatuba, 4001
South Africa
Phone: 27 355507500
Email: thulile.mathenjwa@ahri.org

Abstract

Background: The poor engagement of men with HIV care is attributed to a number of factors: fear of stigma, masculine representations, concerns related to confidentiality, and the time commitment needed to visit public health clinics. Digital technologies are emerging as an approach to support the engagement of men with care.

Objective: This study aims to deliver a usable and engaging tablet-based app, called EPIC-HIV 2 (Empowering People through Informed Choices for HIV 2), to support men in making informed decisions about engaging with HIV care in rural KwaZulu Natal, South Africa.

Methods: We employed a mixed methods, iterative, and three-phased design that was guided by self-determination theory (SDT), a person-based approach, and human-computer interaction techniques. We reviewed related literature and conducted secondary analyses of existing data to identify barriers and facilitators to linkage to care and inform content development and design principles and used focus group discussions with members of the community advisory board and general community to evaluate a PowerPoint prototype of the app; used observations and guided questions with a convenience sample of potential users from the intervention community to iteratively test and refine a functioning interactive app; and conducted qualitative interviews and satisfaction surveys with actual users to evaluate acceptability.

Results: Phase 1 identified supply- and demand-side barriers to linkage to care. Specifically, clinics were feminized spaces unattractive to men with high social costs of attendance. Men did not feel vulnerable to HIV, preferred traditional medicine, and were afraid of the consequences of being HIV positive. Thus, the app needed to allow men to identify the long-term health benefits to themselves and their families of starting antiretroviral therapy early and remaining on it, and these benefits typically outweigh the social costs of attending and being seen at a clinic. SDT led to content design that emphasized long-term benefits but at the same time supported the need for autonomy, competence, and relatedness and informed decision making. Phase 2 indicated that we needed to use simpler text and more images to help users understand and navigate the app. Phase 3 indicated that the app was acceptable and likely to encourage men to link to care.
Conclusions: We found that iteratively developing the app with potential users using local narratives ensured that EPIC-HIV 2 is usable, engaging, and acceptable. Although the app encouraged men to link to HIV care, it was insufficient as a stand-alone intervention for men in our sample to exercise their full autonomy to link to HIV care without other factors such as it being convenient to initiate treatment, individual experiences of HIV, and support. Combining tailored digital interventions with other interventions to address a range of barriers to HIV care, especially supply-side barriers, should be considered in the future to close the present linkage gap in the HIV treatment cascade.

KEYWORDS
HIV; linkage to HIV care; digital technologies; men; mobile phone

Introduction

Poor Engagement of Men With HIV Care

Poor engagement of men with HIV care is well described [1-5]. This results in the persistence of unacceptably high HIV-related mortality among men and new HIV cases in young women [6]. In rural KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa, despite freely available antiretrovirals (ARVs) in the public sector, men are 25% more likely than women to die of HIV-related illnesses, and 70% of them had never sought care [7]. Fear of stigma, cultural constructions of masculinity that do not involve caring for health, concerns related to confidentiality, and time commitment needed to attend public health clinics have been cited as key reasons for men’s reluctance to get tested and start HIV treatment [1,8]. Novel, scalable interventions that improve the uptake of HIV testing and care among men are needed to improve individual health and reduce HIV transmission risk [9,10].

The Potential of Digital Technologies in Closing Gaps in HIV Care

Digital technologies such as mobile phones are emerging as one of the approaches to close the gaps across the HIV care cascade [11,12], especially in light of the expanding access to smartphones in areas most affected by HIV/AIDS. A recent Pew internet survey found that 33% of respondents from sub-Saharan Africa owned a smartphone, and the number is expected to double by 2025 [13]. Digital technologies are particularly suitable as interventions to help prevent and manage HIV and AIDS, as they have the potential to access and impact hard-to-reach populations, including those who typically feel stigmatized within health care settings [14]. Daher et al [15] conducted a systematic review of digital innovations for HIV or sexually transmitted infections and found them to be effective in improving clinic attendance, adherence to antiretroviral therapy (ART), and turnaround time from testing to treatment. This suggests that digital interventions have considerable potential to support engagement in the HIV care continuum.

Challenges to the Development of Digital Interventions

There are many challenges to the development of digital interventions: most importantly, ensuring that the digital platform is usable and engaging for end users [16] and delivering the intended messages. Designing digital interventions for resource-constrained settings such as rural South Africa has added challenges, as there are varying levels of education, health, and digital literacy [17]. Furthermore, ensuring that the intervention supports individual decision making can be challenging. There are limited data on how to develop digital interventions for HIV care in resource-constrained settings that are usable and engaging and support informed individual decision making.

As part of a larger, cluster randomized controlled clinical trial to increase home-based HIV testing and linkage to care in men [18], we developed 2 interactive tablet-based apps (to integrate with the trial) called EPIC-HIV 1 and 2 (Empowering People through Informed choices for HIV 1 and 2). Both are guided by self-determination theory (SDT) to support informed decision making and make explicit and usually implicit processes of decision making. EPIC-HIV 1 is offered at the point of HIV test to help men make an informed choice about testing and if necessary linkage to care. EPIC-HIV 2 is offered to men who have tested HIV positive but have not linked to care within a specified time frame. It aims to encourage men to link to care and stay in care by supporting autonomy, feelings of relatedness, and competence in linking to care by using positive examples from other men living with HIV.

Theoretical Framework

The primary aim of EPIC-HIV 2 is to support informed decision making by making explicit decisions that are usually implicit and thus, encourage men to link to care, to initiate ART early, and to introduce the potential benefits of staying on ART. Therefore, it is aimed at shifting the motivation of link to care from unmotivated or a motivated to internally motivated because of the benefits of ART. SDT addresses factors that either facilitate or undermine motivation. According to SDT, human motivation is based on the satisfaction of 3 inherent psychological needs: (1) autonomy, (2) competence, and (3) relatedness. Autonomy requires an individual to make personal decisions and act in a way that corresponds to their identity, belief systems, and values [19,20]; competence refers to an individual’s perceived ability to perform an act [21]; and relatedness refers to the ability of an individual to connect to others and feel cared for [22]. SDT proposes that events or conditions that enhance a person’s sense of autonomy, competence, and relatedness support internal motivation, which, in turn, can facilitate the adoption of new behaviors to be internally motivated and sustained [20,21].

In the case of HIV, SDT has been used to understand ART adherence, treatment motivation [23], and overall health behavior among individuals living with HIV [22,24]. Applying evidence-based theories to the development process of...
interventions helps to direct attention to design characteristics that may otherwise be ignored and indicate conditions under which interventions are more likely to be effective [25]. EPIC-HIV 2 development was guided by SDT to increase men’s internal motivation to engage with HIV care. In this paper, we provide an overview of the approach we adopted for designing and developing EPIC-HIV 2. Using one component of the app as a detailed case study, we describe the design rationale and components of the app and report on its acceptability to users.

**Methods**

**Study Context**

As mentioned earlier, EPIC-HIV is being evaluated in a home-based intervention to test and start (HITS), a cluster randomized controlled trial designed to evaluate the effect of 2 interventions—EPIC-HIV (male-targeted HIV-specific decision support app) and microincentives on increasing home-based HIV testing and linkage to care among men, with the ultimate aim of reducing HIV-related mortality in men and hence HIV incidence in young women in rural South Africa [18]. The details of the study are described elsewhere [18] and is registered on the National Institute of Health trials (identifier NCT03757104). In summary, the trial uses the Africa Health Research Institute (AHRI) HIV surveillance platform, which visits households annually to conduct surveys using Android-based tablets and offer home-based HIV testing. EPIC-HIV 1 was administered at the point of HIV test offer during the fieldworker surveillance activity to encourage men to test for HIV. If a participant was diagnosed with HIV but did not present in the local Department of Health clinic within a month of the positive HIV test, a study fieldworker revisited the participant at home to offer EPIC-HIV 2. Both apps were installed on the field worker’s tablet. During the home visit, the field worker handed over the tablet to the participant together with earphones to allow the participant to independently explore the app. EPIC-HIV 2 uses a mixture of audio, text, video, still photos, and graphics and has different pathways through 3 interactive modules. This paper focuses on the design and development of EPIC-HIV 2.

**Study Design**

This was a mixed methods study using a person-centered approach and human-computer interaction (HCI) techniques. The study was conducted in 3 phases. Phase 1 focused on user requirements and early prototyping. It included identifying barriers and facilitators to HIV linkage to care through literature review and secondary analysis of existing qualitative data from AHRI. We then developed a PowerPoint prototype of the app based on SDT and drawing on established behavior change techniques [26], which was discussed with members of the Community Advisory Board (CAB; special body representing members of the intervention community that act as a bridge between AHRI and the community, safeguarding the rights of the study participants) and general members of the community in focus group discussions (FGDs). Together, these methods were used to inform app content requirements and conceptual design. In phase 2, based on the findings from phase 1, we developed a functioning, interactive app. We iteratively tested and refined the app with potential users from the intervention community using observations and guided surveys. Finally, in phase 3, we evaluated the acceptability of the app with actual users (participants who received the EPIC-HIV intervention in the HITS trial). This process is illustrated in Figure 1.

**Figure 1.** Mixed methods approach showing the 3 phases of the study. EPIC-HIV: Empowering people through informed choices for HIV; HITS: home-based intervention to test and start.
**Study Setting**

This study was conducted in uMkhanyakude district in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. The area is predominantly rural and poor, with high levels of unemployment [27] and HIV prevalence [28]. Previous research has shown poor linkage and low ART uptake among men in this area [29,30] mainly because of fear of stigma [1,5].

**Recruitment and Sample**

All participants were recruited from the AHRI HIV surveillance community. Each phase employed different recruitment and sampling methods; these are described in detail under each phase.

**Ethical Approval**

Ethical approval for the study was granted by the Biomedical Research Ethics Committee of the University of KwaZulu-Natal (BREC 398/16).

Below, we provide an overview of each phase, outlining its main aim, study procedures, and participants.

**Phase 1: Requirements and Conceptual Design (App Development, September 2016 to December 2017)**

**Aim**

The aim is to (1) gather the app content requirements and formulate design principles and features that the app should include by identifying modifiable barriers to linkage to care, (2) develop an initial prototype, and (3) evaluate it with potential users for overall impressions, appropriateness, and relevance to our setting.

**Study Procedures**

First, we drew on systematic reviews conducted on barriers and facilitators to testing and linkage to care and searched for additional studies in South Africa or elsewhere in sub-Saharan Africa (Multimedia Appendix 1 [1,31-43]). Second, we conducted a thematic secondary analysis from an AHRI study that explored community experiences and perceptions of tuberculosis and HIV transmission, treatment, and prevention [44] (Multimedia Appendix 1). The thematic coding frame also identified supply- and demand-side barriers to linkage to care, focusing on men’s perspectives. The findings from the literature review and secondary analysis were summarized as barriers to linkage, and those that were potentially modifiable were identified (Multimedia Appendix 1). Third, we identified specific behavior change techniques from the Behavior Change Taxonomy [26] that could support feelings of autonomy, relatedness, and competence and thus were likely to shift motivations for linkage to care, support informed decision making, and make explicit processes that are usually implicit (such as avoiding the clinic). Finally, we developed a PowerPoint prototype of the app and evaluated it with focus groups using an FGD guide (semistructured questions, assessing the content and design and overall app impressions). Informed consent was obtained from all participants before beginning each focus group. FGDs were conducted in the AHRI offices in isiZulu (native language), audio recorded, transcribed, translated, summarized by TZ, and discussed with the development team (MS, PM, SW, TM, and TZ). They were analyzed using thematic analysis [45] to draw out key themes for design.

**Participants**

To obtain diverse views, we invited a purposive sample of men aged 18 years and above from the CAB and general community. We sought members representing periurban and rural communities in the surveillance area. In general, we aimed for men of different ages and occupying various positions in the community. For example, we recruited men from the taxi industry, church, liquor business, and formal and informal occupations, those who were unemployed, and those in the traditional health sector. The AHRI public engagement (PE) department assisted with the recruitment of participants. Through PE, the research team explained the study to the CAB, and the members who were willing to participate and provide informed consent were phoned for further engagement and to arrange a suitable time for the FGD. Of the 10 CAB members, 7 were included in the study. To recruit community members, a research assistant in the study approached men meeting the study inclusion criteria and explained the study, and those who were willing to participate provided their telephone numbers to be contacted to arrange a time for the FGD. Of 11 men who were approached, 4 participated in the study. We conducted 2 FGDs, one for the CAB and one for the community members.

**Phase 2: Iterative Design and Usability Evaluations (App Refinement, January to June 2018)**

**Aim**

The main aim of this phase is to iteratively design and test the app to refine it to be usable and engaging in our setting.

**Study Procedures**

We conducted 3 cycles of usability evaluations to assess participants’ ability to successfully navigate the app, comprehend the educational content, and determine whether they found the app to be engaging and relevant. The first cycle was to establish usability requirements, the second cycle was used to evaluate the design changes made as a result of the first evaluation, and the last cycle was used to refine the understanding of the user requirements. User-centered evaluations were conducted with potential users using observations and guided surveys that consisted of a mix of open and closed questions to assess comprehension of the content and record usability issues. The questions were adjusted to suit the objectives of each cycle of evaluation with 2 questions that remained consistent to benchmark the design changes (Multimedia Appendix 2). Evaluations were conducted in isiZulu, and we recorded the audio and tablet screen during the session. Data files were translated and transcribed, summarized, and discussed with the HCI expert and technological partner after each evaluation cycle. On the basis of the findings, the app was tailored to ensure that participants understood the messages correctly and to improve the user experience.

**Participants**

We used pop-up user testing [46] to recruit a convenience sample of men aged 18 years and above from the intervention
community. We sought participants who represented a broad spectrum of technological and educational literacy, involving at least six participants in each cycle to get quick feedback on the app. The team drove (in an AHRI-marked vehicle) to different locations in the area and asked men (novice users) to participate in this study. Participants gave verbal consent and were asked to confirm if they were aged 18 years and above; they were not required to disclose their HIV status or any personal information.

**Phase 3: Acceptability Testing (October 2018 to March 2019)**

**Aim**

The aim of this phase is to evaluate the acceptability and perceived value of the resulting app with actual users (participants who received the EPIC-HIV intervention in the HITS trial).

**Study Procedures**

We conducted satisfaction surveys and individual in-depth interviews. An adapted Client Satisfaction Questionnaire (CSQ-8) [47] was used to assess satisfaction with the app (see Table 1 for the adapted questionnaire). The CSQ-8 has 8 items: quality of app, app met needs, kind of service received from the app, recommend app to a friend, amount of help received from the app, effectiveness of the app for dealing with the health problem, overall satisfaction, and willingness to use the app again. These items are assessed on a 4-point Likert scale of 1 to 4 with individually specified anchors, and 4 is consistently the positive assessment. For this study, we added 2 questions to assess the relevance of the app for this setting and user friendliness. The CSQ-8 has been used to evaluate technology-based intervention and has demonstrated high consistency [48]. The 10 items were administered on a REDCap [49] project by a fieldworker. Proportions were used to describe the acceptability. Statistical analyses were conducted using STATA software (version 15.1; StataCorp LLC). We complemented the satisfaction surveys with in-depth interviews with a purposive sample of participants who received EPIC-HIV 2. The interview questions explored why participants had not been linked to care after the HIV diagnosis and their views of EPIC-HIV 2 and the impact it had on them. Interviews were conducted at participants’ homes in isiZulu and lasted approximately an hour. The audio files were transcribed, translated, and analyzed thematically with themes guided by SDT. NVivo was used to code and manage the transcripts. Separate informed consent was obtained for participating in the satisfaction surveys and in-depth interviews.
Table 1. Empowering People through Informed Choices for HIV 2 satisfaction surveys.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Survey item</th>
<th>Response, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>How would you rate the quality of the EPIC-HIV\textsuperscript{a} app you just listened to?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>13 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fair</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To what extent has the app helped in meeting your needs with regards to information about HIV treatment?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>12 (86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only a few</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Did you get the kind of HIV management information you wanted or expected?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, definitely</td>
<td>14 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, generally</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, not really</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, definitely</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Did the information you just listened to appeal to your conscience to go for HIV treatment and take ARVs\textsuperscript{b} if you have not done so?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, definitely</td>
<td>13 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, generally</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, not really</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, definitely</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do you feel empowered to make informed choices regarding your health with the information from the app?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, definitely</td>
<td>12 (86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I think so</td>
<td>2 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I don't think so</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, definitely not</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>If a friend were in need of HIV treatment and management information, would you recommend the app to him or her?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, definitely</td>
<td>14 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I think so</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I don't think so</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, definitely not</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How satisfied are you with the amount of HIV management information you received from the app?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very satisfied</td>
<td>12 (86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mostly satisfied</td>
<td>2 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mostly dissatisfied</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quite dissatisfied</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How would you rate the simplicity and user-friendliness of the app?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>11 (79)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>2 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fair</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In general, how satisfied are you with the app?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Response, n (%) 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Survey item</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very satisfied</td>
<td>14 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mostly satisfied</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mostly dissatisfied</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quite dissatisfied</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you were to seek information about HIV management again, would you consider EPIC-HIV app? 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Response</th>
<th>n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes, definitely</td>
<td>14 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I think so</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I don't think so</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, definitely not</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*EPIC-HIV: Empowering People through Informed Choices for HIV 2.

ARV: antiretroviral.

**Participants**

All men aged 15 years and above who received EPIC-HIV 2 between October 2018 and January 2019, as part of the intervention in the HITS trial, were asked to consent and complete the satisfaction surveys. For the individual in-depth interviews, we purposively selected 14 men from the 28 who had received EPIC-HIV 2 between April 2018 and January 2019 (which meant that they had tested positive for HIV but did not link to care within a month).

**Results**

Each phase is presented separately with a particular focus on the iterative development. **Textbox 1** shows the key takeaway findings from the 3 phases.

**Textbox 1.** Key takeaway findings for the different phases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase 1</th>
<th>Phase 2</th>
<th>Phase 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Identified key learning points to incorporate in the content to persuade men to attend clinic and start antiretroviral therapy</td>
<td>• Men in our setting did not understand the seesaw metaphor</td>
<td>• App was usable and acceptable in our setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Long-term health benefits of starting antiretroviral therapy early and remaining on it</td>
<td>• The click worked better than swipe</td>
<td>• It encouraged men to link to HIV care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Two options were better than 3 options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phase 1: App Development**

In the literature review and analyses of the earlier study, we identified barriers and facilitators to HIV testing and linkage to care among men, particularly relevant to our setting (Figure 2). Through this process, we identified 4 key learning points (shown in Figure 2) to be incorporated into the content of EPIC-HIV 2 with the aim of supporting informed decision making by making explicit decisions that are usually implicit and demonstrate that attending a clinic to start ART can be managed and that the long-term benefits of starting ART early and remaining on ART outweigh the costs. Drawing on SDT, we developed the app content and design to map to the psychological requirements for autonomy, relatedness, and competence (shown in Multimedia Appendix 3). To increase the likely personal identification with the messages and potential feelings of relatedness, the content was provided in the form of personal testimonies or experiences from local men. This was informed by evidence that suggests experiential information helps users make sense of what various outcomes might be like (in imagined futures) and increases their awareness of personal health risk and the likelihood of a response to the intervention [50].
A total of 11 men aged 34 to 66 years participated in 2 focus groups to evaluate the first (paper) prototype. They provided feedback on content and design (organization of the app, appropriateness and appeal of language and images, acceptability and relevance, and overall app impressions). On the basis of the feedback from the FGDs, the team modified the initial conceptual design of the app and created a revised plan for the app features and content.

The final realized product (EPIC-HIV 2) has 3 main modules (sections), and to further support the psychological requirements for autonomy, the user has the option to engage with 1 or all 3 modules (Figures 3 and 4; Multimedia Appendix 3). All 3 modules cover the 4 key learning points (Figure 2) but present the information in different ways to support different learning styles, social identities, and barriers to engaging with care: (1) Jabu’s man-to-man advice—a taxi driver talking about how he views HIV as an uninvited guest and gives his personal testimony on how he controls HIV; (2) healthy and strong with HIV—4 male characters who give their experiential information on how they managed going to the clinic, how they disclosed their HIV status, and how they started ART, and stayed on ART; and (3) the facts are your shield—gives a broader picture of ART and how it fights HIV in the body by explaining the commonly used medical terminology in HIV care. There is a start button, and a male voice over that introduces EPIC-HIV 2 and gives instructions for navigating the app. As mentioned earlier, the app uses a mixture of audio, text, video, still photos, and graphics, and there is a continue button that the user needs to click to move to the next page (Multimedia Appendix 4 provides an example of the navigation in the Jabu module).

The final conceptual design (realized in the product) starts with an introduction and instructions on how to use the app, and users are then able to choose between “Jabu’s man to man advice” or “healthy and strong with HIV” modules. The “shield” module was not offered initially because it has more focused material and is expected to appeal to fewer men (and to make the number of choices manageable). After users complete the initial module, they are returned to the menu and are able to choose one of the remaining modules or to end. Figure 4 shows all the possible pathways through the app. Each module was developed and tested individually, as described in phase 2, and once finalized, all the different modules were integrated into a single app that was evaluated for functionality and comprehension.
Phase 2: Iterative Design and Usability Testing (January to June 2018)

Decision Support Tool

The main outcome of phase 1 was an in-depth understanding of user needs relevant to EPIC-HIV 2. We subsequently refined the prototypes using a standard app development toolkit to deliver testable interactive demonstrator prototypes on an Android tablet computer. In this paper, we illustrate the approach to iterative design and usability testing by focusing on the development of the decision support tool (a component within Jabu).

The decision support tool aimed to help men weigh up and reflect on the costs and benefits of attending a clinic. The user was presented with different statements that either support or delay going to the clinic. To facilitate engagement, we wanted to make this section interactive. Initially, we applied a seesaw metaphor for users to attempt to render usually implicit decisions as explicit and interpret whether they were ready to attend a clinic within 2 weeks. This was done by adding the arguments to one side or the other of the seesaw to illustrate how the arguments stacked up in decision making. For example, if the user agrees that they want to see their children and grandchildren grow up, that would be an argument that weighs in favor of engaging with HIV care, whereas if they agree that they do not wish to be seen at a clinic by one of their neighbors, that would be an argument that weighs against engaging with care. In making design decisions about the clinic decision support tool, we prototyped and tested 2 versions: drag-and-drop with illustrations and a Likert scale without illustrations, both employing the seesaw metaphor.

These are illustrated in Figure 5 (loose translation: “ngifuna ukubona abazukulu bami”—I want to see my grandchildren; “qiniso”—true; “amanga”—false; “ngiyavumelana”—I agree; “ngiphakathi nendawo”—neutral; “angivumelani”—I disagree) and Figure 6.
**Figure 5.** Example screenshots of drag-and-drop (statement with an image and illustration on how to drag) versus Likert scale (statement only).

**Figure 6.** Example of the seesaw screenshots with statements only (from Likert scale version) versus statements with images (from drag-and-drop version).

**Evaluation 1**

The main objective of the first evaluation was to refine the user requirements. The key objectives and results of this evaluation are shown in Textbox 2.

In total, 12 men participated in this evaluation, which was conducted as outlined earlier. In addition to the questions related to the key objectives outlined in Textbox 2, we also asked participants what the main messages were and whether there were any statements that should be added (ie, other considerations in deciding whether to engage in HIV care) and whether there were other ways the design could be improved. Overall, participants found it difficult to use the drag-and-drop option and did not understand the seesaw metaphor. Clicking was intuitive, and most participants preferred the images and text and the 2 options (agree or disagree). There was a consensus that the key message of this section was going to the clinic to start ART.
To test which interaction style participants preferred and found easier to use between a drag-and-drop version (dragging each statement into a bucket labeled agree or disagree) or a Likert scale version (where people clicked in a box labeled agree, neutral or disagree)

- Participants found it difficult to use the drag-and-drop version, particularly more aged participants and participants with lower digital literacy levels
- A majority of participants needed to be shown how to drag-and-drop, despite the illustration at the beginning of the statements
- In contrast, clicking was intuitive; almost all the participants started clicking when they took the tablet

To determine whether the neutral option was valued by participants

- Some participants preferred drag-and-drop because it had 2 options (agree or disagree): “drag—I found it easy with the scale I was not completely sure of what was happening. With the drag option there was only two options which made it easy to select” [P6]
- Another participant reported that he found the neutral option confusing

To test whether participants preferred each option presented as text only or as text with an illustrative picture

- Most participants preferred text with an illustrative image to help them select the statements over the text only with many participants stating that images made it easier to understand the statements: “the image makes it clear what the statement says” [P7]
- Some found the images to facilitate engagement: “the images capture your attention” [P6]

To test whether participants were able to correctly interpret a seesaw metaphor, in which each response was stacked up on the end of a seesaw depending on whether it weighed toward or against attending a clinic (correct interpretation of the metaphor was that the end that was more heavily weighted and hence down was the preferred outcome)

- Participants did not understand the seesaw metaphor
- Many expressed confusion on how to interpret the results: “not sure how it should look like on the seesaw. When is it good, when it is up or down?” [P1]

To assess whether it was clear how to agree or disagree with a statement and whether it was clear how their selections related to the outcome of the seesaw

- It was not clear for some participants on how to agree or disagree with the statements; 2 participants (2/8) in the Likert scale option selected agree for all the statements

On the basis of the findings, the following design changes and decisions were made (as illustrated in Figures 7 and 8):

1. As the app was intended for one-off use, after seeing that clicking was intuitive and users struggled with the drag-and-drop, we decided to use clicking to select statements.
2. We limited the options to agree and disagree, as some participants did not find value in the neutral option.
3. To support users to make informed choices regarding attending a clinic for care, we used text and image as users expressed that images made it easier to understand the statements.
4. It was judged that the seesaw metaphor was not applicable for this exercise, as many participants struggled to understand what it meant if one side was more heavily weighted than the other. We removed the seesaw, summarized the statements, and explained what it means if they were skewed on one side. Furthermore, we labeled the right side as supporting going to the clinic in 2 weeks and left as delaying going to the clinic.
5. No further changes were judged necessary to address this question.
Evaluation 2

The main objective of the second evaluation is to validate the design changes made, particularly the summary screen shown in Figure 7. A total of 7 men participated in this evaluation cycle. We stopped them at the end of each section to ask guided questions: (1) Does the text only make the choices you selected clearer or do you think text and image would make it clearer? (2) What do you think is the key message of this section? (3) Would you prefer the agree and disagree buttons to be color coded?

Results of Evaluation 2

The design of the selection tool was received positively by all participants. All participants were selective on the statements they agreed or disagreed with as per their individual experiences, and they were able to interpret what it means if statements were weighted on one side (Figure 8). However, 2 participants mentioned that the statements were not clear or applicable to them. This could have been because the user was not affected by or living with HIV (the researcher did not ask the participant’s HIV status).

Of 7 participants, 4 preferred the text only in the summary page, validating the first evaluation findings that images were only important at the selection point. In addition, 6 participants reiterated that the key message of this section was about the importance of going to the clinic to start ART, with 1 participant adding that one should go to the clinic early and not wait until they are sick. Moreover, 5 participants said they would prefer the agree or disagree buttons to be color coded, with 4 participants suggesting that agree should be green and disagree, red:

> colours help, maybe green and red so that they can see that they have made the right or wrong choice. [Participant 2]

One participant stated that different colors would be particularly useful for people who cannot read.

On the basis of the preference for color coding and the association of green with right and red with wrong, we decided...
to use neutral colors that are not associated with right or wrong to help users make an individual choice as opposed to fearing being right or wrong (Figure 9).

Figure 9. Design changes showing the neutral colors for agree and disagree.

Evaluation 3

This evaluation was conducted as part of the full Jabu section testing, mainly to assess understanding of the content as well as to check whether users find the presentation of content interesting and to validate the changes made as a result of evaluation 2. A total of 8 men participated in this cycle.

This evaluation did not reveal any usability issues, indicating that the changes made to the designs were effective. Participants were paying more attention before deciding whether they agreed or disagreed, and they listened to the audio while looking at the screen. Overall, participants reported finding the decision support tool engaging and useful. For example, when asked which part of the app they thought would be most relevant to their friends or other men, 3 participants referred to the clinic decision support tool. In addition, 1 participant, when asked if he learned anything new as a result of using the app, mentioned that he learned how to use a tablet, suggesting that there was incidental value (not directly related to the primary aim) in introducing such an app to people.

Phase 3: Acceptability Testing (October 2018 to March 2019)

User Satisfaction Surveys

A total of 15 participants received EPIC-HIV 2 between October 2018 and January 2019, and 14 completed the user satisfaction surveys. Their mean age was 35.6 years (SD 13.38299), and a majority (8/14, 57%) had high school education, and half of them were unemployed. User satisfaction ratings were high (Table 1). Participants reported that they were generally satisfied with the app and found it to meet their needs for information on HIV treatment. All participants said that they received the kind of HIV management information that they wanted or expected and that they would definitely consider the app when seeking information about HIV management as well as recommending the app to friends in need of similar help. In addition, 86% (12/14) of participants were very satisfied with the amount of information that they received from the app. Overall, 79% (11/14) of the participants were very satisfied with the app by rating the simplicity and user friendliness of the app as excellent. The app has proven to empower the participants in managing their health; 86% (12/14) of participants definitely agreed.

In-Depth Interviews

A total of 14 men (aged 35-53 years) who had tested positive for HIV and had not linked to care within a month of receiving their test results received EPIC-HIV 2 between April 2018 and January 2019 agreed to be interviewed; 11 of them had linked to HIV care at the time of the interview. A majority of participants reported that the app offered relevant information about HIV management, boosted their confidence, and encouraged them to start and stay on treatment. However, this was not enough for all participants to link to HIV care. We report the experiences of men who used EPIC-HIV 2 using the SDT framework: autonomy, competence, and relatedness.

Complexities of the HIV Care Pathway: Examining Men’s Autonomy to Link to HIV Treatment

Participants described the app as motivating them to start ART by providing them with information on how to manage HIV to live a healthy life:

Mmm... I can say I have listened to the App from the beginning up to the end. Yes, I have really seen a need...I have seen it as a very important thing, I think that has encouraged me because I have never been to the clinic previously, but I went to clinic after that.

[Participant 2, linked to care]
For some, this was a catalyst to link to care (even if they did not act on it immediately):

I was supposed to visit the clinic a long time ago, but I didn’t because of work...I was thinking about that when I listened to EPIC [app]...you must be open as the EPIC was saying that you mustn’t fear that people will laugh at you. I took a decision because...this is life and we are living within a community...I realised that in order to be assisted, I must go to AHRI nurses at the clinic. [Participant 5, not linked to care]

However, for some participants, the app alone was insufficient to motivate them to go to the clinic for HIV treatment. Other factors reduced the logistic barriers to linkage that nudged them to link. For some participants, it was the availability of our research nurses at local clinics, with the:

referral letter... that was going to make things easy for me... [Participant 4 linked to care]

For others, such as participant 1, it was experiences such as the death of his best friend that motivated him to link to care after using the app:

Er...I can just say that there is nothing new I have learnt (from EPIC)...I started treatment because I’ve lived with people who had been using it (ARVs) before I knew my health status. One of my best friends passed away after he defaulted from taking treatment. After I found out that I am HIV positive I was motivated, and I said I will try by all means to take treatment accordingly. So, I can say I have learnt a lot from him about the risk of delaying... [Participant 1, linked to care]

This suggests that for men to exercise autonomy to link to care, in addition to the app, external factors such as clinic operation hours, support, and individual experiences of HIV need to be considered.

“I Am Not Giving Up on Life”: Men’s Competency and Decision to Manage HIV

Several of the participants reflected on how the positive narratives in the app encouraged them to take charge of their lives and manage HIV to improve their health outcomes and “avoid infecting other people with diseases” by describing “how to take the pills on time” and “comply with treatment.”

Some participants also reported that app messaging lessened their fears (particularly fear of disclosure) and motivated them to adopt positive attitudes to advance their health. The quotation below illustrates how some participants felt about their fears:

...I had that feeling of fear to say, oh my Lord how could I do this thing since I am afraid as it will be revealed? Eh, I also gained advices because they start with allowing you to listen from the messages that say once you know your status, you can get help so it’s up to you whether you do it or not. But I chose to be assisted because I am not giving up on life. [Participant 4, linked to care]

Others also drew attention to the message of EPIC-HIV 2 that it gave them tips on how to discuss disclosure with their sexual partners:

Er...like disclosing your health status to your partner so that she can check for HIV as well for both of you to take treatment, yes, I think it’s good not to hide from your partner: [Participant 2, linked to care]

Overall, for many participants, the app supported their competence to link to care through the positive messaging that gave hope, alleviated their fears, and reinforced the need for them to manage their health effectively to live a healthy life while minimizing the risk of transmitting HIV.

Relatedness to Characters in the App: Men’s Perceptions of HIV Treatment and Management

Participants reflected how the narratives of different characters in the app reverberated with their present realities and how the app stories shaped their understanding of the importance of HIV treatment and management for them to live a healthy life:

...They [app characters] have mentioned the fact that once you have defaulted from taking treatment you will be very sick...the characters I have seen on the app were fit. They were sharing their experiences as to how they are taking their ARVs... [ Participant 6, linked to care]

They [app characters] were sharing simple information, something that is said even on TV by Ministers that you need not to be bedridden until you go to the clinic. [Participant 3, linked to care]

Furthermore, a participant who had previously defaulted treatment had this to say:

The part I have seen as most essential one for me it’s where the characters were talking about the risk of defaulting from taking treatment...It motivated me to decide to be re-initiated on treatment...It is really necessary...because characters on the Epic were talking about things they had experienced. [Participant 2, linked to care]

In sum, the empathetic nature of the personal testimonies of various characters in the app resonated with participants, and they felt cared for. Some of them described the relevance of the information shared through the app and were able to initiate treatment and took the decision to manage HIV to improve their health outcomes.

Discussion

Principal Findings

We found that it was possible to successfully apply a multiphased iterative development process to create a theoretically informed, interactive, tablet-based app to support men in making informed decisions about engaging with HIV care in a low-income, rural South African setting. Men in our setting who had been missing from the HIV care cascade found the app to be acceptable and reported that the stories in the app resonated with their realities and encouraged them to link to
care. Previous work has established that digital interventions are acceptable and effective in improving clinic attendance, ART adherence, and turnaround time from testing to treatment [11,14,15]. Our results underscore the value of using a person-based approach to integrate evidence-based content and design to ensure that the app is relatable and addresses the local perception of HIV care. Using HCI techniques ensured that the app was simple, usable, and engaging for end users with varying levels of education, health, and digital literacy. For example, user testing established that the seesaw metaphor was difficult for participants to understand, so it was removed between the first and the second iterations of app testing. In addition, supporting different learning styles and motivations through tailoring of content provided a greater level of engagement for participants. Previous studies have shown that interactive digital interventions that deliver tailored content that address the specific challenges for individual users can be highly engaging and likely to be understood [51]. Furthermore, using digital technologies could help people learn new skills (using a tablet) and facilitate a sense of accomplishment that can improve their competence and possibly improve engagement.

Drawing on behavior change theory, such as SDT, ensured that EPIC-HIV 2 supported individual decision making. There is an increasing need to apply evidence-based theories to enhance the development of digital interventions and improve their efficacy [15,25,52]. Our findings corroborate previous studies that have used the SDT framework (autonomy, competence, and relatedness) to understand ART adherence and treatment motivation and overall health behavior among men living with HIV [23,24]. However, the app was insufficient as a stand-alone intervention for men in our sample to exercise their full autonomy to link to HIV care without other factors such as it being convenient to initiate treatment, individual experiences of HIV, and support. Combining tailored digital interventions with other interventions to address a range of barriers to HIV care, especially supply-side barriers, should be considered in the future to close the present linkage gap in the HIV treatment cascade.

**Study Strengths and Limitations**

Using a mixed methods approach to understand usability and acceptability and the potential of the app to encourage men to link to care are strengths of the study. However, the generalizability of study findings outside our area may be limited because of the locally tailored design of the EPIC-HIV 2 app, the sampling method, sample size, and specific study sites. In addition, the possibility of social desirability bias cannot be excluded as some participants might have found it easier to say positive things about the app and not necessarily translate to the actual initiation of ART. Furthermore, we cannot establish what the outcome would have been if we had made different design decisions or applied a different theory of behavior change. The decision to develop a tablet-based app was fitting for the specific context of use, but more widespread use of such an app would probably be achieved by implementing it on mobile phones for independent use; this remains an area for future work.

**Conclusions**

Using a multidisciplinary approach and drawing on evidence-based theories to develop digital interventions can ensure that the resultant products are acceptable and engage in a wide range of users. Our work aims to pave the way for a greater focus on mixed methods and person-centered approaches to the development of digital interventions for HIV care.

**Acknowledgments**

The authors would like to acknowledge the study participants for their time. They wish to appreciate Velaphi Gumede, Sithembiso Luthuli, Siyabonga Nxumalo, and Jaco Dreyer for participant recruitment, data collection, and data management support. This study was supported by a Partnership Research Fund from the Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council Interdisciplinary Research Collaboration Early-warning Sensing Systems for Infectious Diseases (i-sense) EP/K031953/1. The HITS trial is funded by the National Institutes for Health R01AI124389. The AHRI’s Demographic Surveillance Information System and Population Intervention Program is funded by the Wellcome Trust (201433/Z/16/Z) and the South Africa Population Research Infrastructure Network (funded by the South African Department of Science and Technology and hosted by the South African Medical Research Council). The content is solely the responsibility of the authors and does not necessarily represent the official views of the funding bodies.

**Authors’ Contributions**

FT, MS, SW, and JS are the investigators of the HITS trial and developed the EPIC-HIV intervention design and protocol in collaboration with AB and PM. PM, AB, AZ, TM, TZ, SW, MS, OA, and FT were involved in the development of EPIC-HIV. SW, TZ, MS, OA, and JS designed the process evaluation. KD provided statistical support. TM wrote the first draft of the manuscript with support from AB and OA and coordinated the study. All authors contributed to the manuscript. All authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Literature review and secondary analysis.
Multimedia Appendix 2
User evaluation questions and guides.

Multimedia Appendix 3
Self-determination theory app content and design.

Multimedia Appendix 4
Example of navigation pathway in the Jabu module.

References


34. Fitzgerald M, Collumbien M, Hosegoud V. 'No one can ask me 'Why do you take that stuff?'': men's experiences of antiretroviral treatment in South Africa. AIDS Care 2010 Mar;22(3):355-360. [doi: 10.1080/09540120903111536] [Medline: 20390516]


http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17549/


Abbreviations

AHRI: Africa Health Research Institute
ART: antiretroviral therapy
ARV: antiretroviral
cAB: community advisory board
cSQ: Client Satisfaction Questionnaire
EPIC-HIV: Empowering people through informed choices for HIV
gFGD: focus group discussion
Effect of the Pregnant+ Smartphone App on the Dietary Behavior of Women With Gestational Diabetes Mellitus: Secondary Analysis of a Randomized Controlled Trial

Lisa Garnweidner-Holme\textsuperscript{1}, PhD; Lena Henriksen\textsuperscript{1}, PhD; Liv Elin Torheim\textsuperscript{1}, PhD Prof; Mirjam Lukasse\textsuperscript{1,2}, PhD Prof

\textsuperscript{1}OsloMet - Oslo Metropolitan University of Applied Sciences, Oslo, Norway
\textsuperscript{2}Faculty of Health and Social Sciences, University of South-Eastern Norway, Campus Vestfold, Norway

*all authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Lisa Garnweidner-Holme, PhD
OsloMet - Oslo Metropolitan University of Applied Sciences
St Olavs Plass; PO Box 4
Oslo, 0310
Norway
Phone: 47 48091956
Email: lgarnwei@oslomet.no

Abstract

Background: The prevalence of gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) is increasing worldwide. A healthy diet and stable blood glucose levels during pregnancy can prevent adverse health outcomes for the mother and the newborn child. Mobile health may be a useful supplement to prenatal care, providing women with targeted dietary information concerning GDM.

Objective: We analyzed secondary data from a two-arm, multicentered, nonblinded randomized controlled trial to determine if a smartphone app with targeted dietary information and blood glucose monitoring had an effect on the dietary behavior of women with GDM.

Methods: Women with a 2-hour oral glucose tolerance test level of \( \geq 9 \) mmol/L were individually randomized to either the intervention group receiving the Pregnant+ app and usual care or the control group receiving usual care only. Eligible women were enrolled from 5 diabetes outpatient clinics in the Oslo region, Norway, between October 2015 and April 2017. The Pregnant+ app promoted 10 GDM-specific dietary recommendations. A healthy dietary score for Pregnant+ (HDS-P+) was constructed from a 41-item food frequency questionnaire and used to assess the intervention effect on the dietary behavior completed at trial entry and at around gestation week 36. Dietary changes from baseline to week 36 were examined by a paired sample two-tailed \( t \) test. Between-group dietary differences after the intervention were estimated with analysis of covariance, with adjustment for baseline diet.

Results: A total of 238 women participated: 115 were allocated to the intervention group and 123 to the control group. Of the 238 women, 193 (81.1\%) completed the food frequency questionnaire both at baseline and around gestational week 36. All the participants showed improvements in their HDS-P+ from baseline. However, the Pregnant+ app did not have a significant effect on their HDS-P+. The control group reported a higher weekly frequency of choosing fish meals (\( P = .05 \)). No other significant differences were found between the intervention and control groups. There were no significant demographic baseline differences between the groups, except that more women in the intervention group had a non-Norwegian language as their first language (61 vs 46; \( P = .02 \)).

Conclusions: Our findings do not support the supplementation of face-to-face follow-up of women with GDM with a smartphone app in the presence of high-standard usual care, as the Pregnant+ app did not have a beneficial effect on pregnant women’s diet.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02588729; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02588729

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18614) doi:10.2196/18614

KEYWORDS

gestational diabetes mellitus; diet; mHealth; mobile phone; randomized controlled trial
Introduction

Gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) is defined as hyperglycemia detected at any time during pregnancy [1]. The prevalence of GDM is increasing worldwide and ranges from 1% to 20% globally depending on the screening procedure and population characteristics [2]. The prevalence of GDM in Norway was 5% in 2018, according to the Norwegian Medical Birth Registry [3]. However, a cohort study in a district in Oslo identified GDM in 13% of all women, 11% of ethnic Norwegians, and 12%-17% of women in groups of non-European origin [4]. Women of South Asian and African origins tend to develop GDM at a lower body mass index and age compared to White Europeans [5]. The other risk factors for developing GDM include overweight and obesity, advanced maternal age, a family history of diabetes, and GDM in a previous pregnancy [6]. Even though GDM resolves in most women after delivery, its development may affect the health of both mothers and children in the short and long terms [7,8].

A healthy diet and stable blood glucose levels throughout pregnancy can prevent adverse health outcomes for the mother and the newborn child [9]. About 85% of the women diagnosed with GDM can manage the disease with lifestyle changes such as healthy eating and physical activity, without the need for oral metformin or insulin therapy [10]. However, lifestyle changes presuppose knowledge, motivation, and follow-up by health care professionals [11]. Pregnant women are often in contact with health care professionals; however, perinatal care involves dealing with many health-related issues, and there are some indications that women are not provided sufficient information about the management of GDM by their health care professionals [12,13].

Mobile health (mHealth)—defined as medical and public health practice supported by mobile devices such as smartphones, patient monitoring devices, personal digital assistants, and other wireless devices [14]—may be a useful supplement to perinatal care by providing women with GDM with dietary information and the opportunity to register blood glucose levels [15]. A scoping review has found several ongoing randomized controlled trials (RCTs) that evaluate the effectiveness of smartphone apps in the management of GDM [16]. Some results of these RCTs have been published recently [17,18]. Even though these studies did not find any effect on the glycemic, maternal, and neonatal outcomes [17,18], there is a lack of studies investigating the possible effects of an app on the diet of women with GDM. A systematic review has studied the usability of apps in the health care of pregnant women without GDM. That review indicated that apps may support women in reducing gestational weight gain and in increasing their intake of vegetables and fruits; however, the evidence of their effectiveness is still limited [19]. Dodd et al [20] evaluated the impact of a smartphone app as an adjunct to face-to-face consultation in facilitating dietary changes among pregnant women in South Australia. They found no significant benefit of the smartphone app in the intervention group. All women improved their dietary quality during pregnancy [20].

We have developed the Pregnant+ app for women with GDM [21]. This app provides tailored information on diet, physical activity, breastfeeding, and GDM, and the possibility to automatically transfer or manually record blood glucose levels from a glucometer to the smartphone (Multimedia Appendix 1 and Multimedia Appendix 2). The Pregnant+ app was developed in collaboration with experts in midwifery, obstetrics, physical activity, nutrition, and data security. Pregnant women with GDM of different ethnic origins were involved in several steps of its development [21]. A narrative review on studies with pregnancy-related apps found only 2 multilingual apps for use in prenatal care [22]. The Pregnant+ app is available in Norwegian, Urdu, and Somali languages. Information and pictures related to diet and physical activity are culturally adjusted according to the chosen language. This app was found to be the only app adapted to specific target groups (women born in Pakistan and Somalia) in a scoping review by Chen and Carbone [16]. The effect of this app on the main outcome (2-hour glucose level of the routine postpartum oral glucose tolerance test [OGTT]) was tested in a two-arm RCT at 5 diabetes outpatient clinics in the Oslo region, Norway [18,23]. The study showed that the Pregnant+ app did not have any significant effect on the main outcome [18].

The aim of this study was to examine if the Pregnant+ app had an effect on the dietary behavior of women. No specific dietary recommendation for women with GDM existed when the study was started in 2014. Women with GDM were recommended to follow the national dietary guidelines for healthy eating [24]. Some hospitals developed adjusted dietary advice for pregnant women with GDM. The Pregnant+ app promoted 10 GDM-specific dietary recommendations that were developed in cooperation with clinical nutritionists [21].

Methods

Study Design

We analyzed secondary data from a two-arm, multicentered, nonblinded RCT for women with GDM, which was conducted at 5 diabetes outpatient clinics in the Oslo region. This RCT is in accordance with the CONSORT-EHEALTH checklist (Multimedia Appendix 3).

Recruitment

Women with GDM were recruited from October 2015 to April 2017 by health care professionals at the diabetes outpatient clinics. At the time of recruitment, pregnant women with higher risk for GDM based on their prepregnancy weight, family history of diabetes, age, and ethnicity were sent for an OGTT [25]. Eligible women for this study were diagnosed with GDM by a 2-hour OGTT blood glucose level of ≥9 mmol/L, according to the definition of GDM in the Norwegian guidelines [25]. In addition, participants were older than 18 years, were less than 33-weeks pregnant, owned smartphones, and understood Norwegian, Urdu, or Somali. Women with type 1 or type 2 diabetes (OGTT blood glucose levels≥11 mmol/L), twin pregnancy, celiac disease, or lactose intolerance were excluded from the study. In total, 774 women were assessed for eligibility and 238 participated (Figure 1). Those who agreed to participate signed a consent form. All the participants in both groups
received a glucometer and lancets from the study administrators. The Norwegian Social Science Data Services (identifier: 2014/38942) approved the study.

Figure 1. Flow chart describing the process leading up to the final number included in the analysis of dietary behavior in the Pregnant+ study.

Randomization and Blinding
The participants were randomly allocated to 2 groups: intervention (access to the Pregnant+ app and usual care) and control (usual care). Randomization was performed on a 1:1 basis with allocated blocks of 4. Women who agreed to participate filled out a baseline questionnaire (Q1) on an electronic tablet (average time 30-45 minutes). After completing Q1, a computer-based program randomized and allocated the women to either the intervention or the control group. The participating women, project workers, and health care professionals at the diabetes outpatient clinics were not blinded to the allocation.

Intervention and Control

Usual Care (Control) Group
The participants in the control group received usual care for GDM according to the national guidelines [26]. This included regular consultations (every 1-2 weeks) with midwives or nurses, both specialized in diabetes, at the diabetes outpatient clinics. According to the guidelines [26], women should be provided with information about a healthy diet, with emphasis on regular meals with limited intake of sugar-rich foods and increased intake of whole grains and vegetables. The women in the control group were instructed how to measure their blood glucose levels and were asked to record these levels in a paper diary. They received written and verbal dietary advice on the basis of their blood glucose levels. In the absence of specific dietary guidelines for women with GDM, the different diabetes outpatient clinics included in the study developed some specific dietary guidelines for these women that emphasized regular meals, increased intake of vegetables and whole grains, and limited intake of sugar. If women in the usual care group downloaded the Pregnant+ app, their access was restricted to a single page with a link to the website of the Norwegian Directorate of Health with generic health information for women with GDM and a link to the Norwegian Federation of Diabetes.

Pregnant+ App and Usual Care (Intervention) Group
The participants in the intervention group had access to the Pregnant+ app in addition to usual care, as described above. The women allocated to the app group could download the app from the Apple Store or Google Play at the hospital or home. The app contained 4 main icons: “Blood glucose,” “Physical
activity,” “Food and beverages,” and “Diabetes information.” The 10 GDM-specific dietary recommendations that were developed for this study [21] were presented in the “Food and beverages” icon for women (Textbox 1). The women could select if the dietary recommendations should be presented with food items and pictures representing the Norwegian, Urdu, or Somali food culture. They were also referred to recipes on the home page from the Norwegian Diabetes Foundation. They could automatically transfer or manually register their blood glucose levels in the icon “Blood glucose.” After registering, they received feedback on their values. Those with too high values were directly referred to the dietary recommendations. A graphical representation of the blood glucose levels visually aided the monitoring.

Textbox 1. The dietary recommendations in the Pregnant+ app.

- Eat healthy meals regularly.
- Eat and drink little sugar.
- Eat more vegetables.
- Choose whole-grain products.
- Limit your intake of salt.
- Eat enough fish.
- Choose lean dairy milk produce.
- Choose healthy and less oil.
- Read nutrition labels on foods before buying.
- Choose water when thirsty.

Measurements

The participants answered the questionnaires on an electronic tablet during their first consultation at a diabetes outpatient clinic and at their consultation around gestational week 36. The questionnaire included a 41-item food frequency questionnaire (FFQ). At baseline, they were asked to report their dietary habits prior to being diagnosed with GDM. In the second questionnaire, they were asked to report their current diet. The FFQ included the following food groups: beverages, milk and dairy products, bread and grain, fruit and vegetables, snacks, meat, and ready-to-eat meals. Answers to the questions on the frequency of intake ranged from 0 (never) to 9 (several times daily). The FFQ was based on the Fit for Delivery study and has been shown to have an adequate level of test-retest reliability [26]. The FFQs in Somali and Urdu were tested for comprehension and appropriateness by conducting qualitative interviews with Somali and Pakistani Norwegian women.

The healthy diet score for Pregnant+ (HDS-P+) was constructed using 9 subscales, with a possible range of 0 to 90. The subscales were constructed on the basis of the dietary recommendations (second point to tenth point) provided in Textbox 1 and consisted of different questions in the FFQ related to the dietary recommendations. The women were asked how often they choose different food groups, with the following answer options: 0=never, 1=less than once a week, 2=once a week, 3=twice, 4=three times, 5=five times, 6=six times, 7=every day, and 9=several times a day.

Information on background characteristics was obtained from the baseline questionnaire and consisted of different socioeconomic variables: age, education, income, country of birth, marital status, economic hardship, and language. Other variables related to pregnancy and health were parity, gestational age at baseline, prior GDM, and perceived health score [23].

Statistical Analysis

Maternal baseline characteristics were compared according to randomization status. The characteristics were presented as mean (SD) for continuous variables (independent sample two-tailed t test) and proportions (%) for categorical variables (χ² test). Dietary changes from baseline to around gestational week 36 were examined by a paired sample two-tailed t test. A one-way between-group analysis (analysis of covariance) was conducted to measure the effect of the Pregnancy+ app. The dietary behavior after the intervention was examined with adjustment to the baseline values. The HDS-P+ and subscales related to the recommended dietary advice were the dependent variables, and the randomization status (use of the Pregnant+ app or not) was the independent variable. Sensitivity analysis was performed to evaluate the effect of the differences in nonnative and native Norwegian-speaking women between the intervention and control groups at baseline. This did not alter the results and the final model did not adjust for this. Levene test and normality checks were carried out and the assumptions were met. All statistical analyses were performed with SPSS for IBM statistical software package (version 25, IBM Corporation). A two-sided P value of ≤0.05 was considered significant.

Power

The power calculation was for the primary outcome for the RCT [23].

Data Exclusion

Figure 1 presents the flowchart for this study. Two women were excluded because of missing dietary data at gestational week 36. No other participant had more than 2 values missing in the 41-item FFQ. The missing data in this study were not imputed.
Results

Participant Characteristics

A total of 238 women were recruited at 5 diabetes outpatient clinics in the southeast region of Norway and randomized to use the Pregnant+ app (intervention group, n=115) or no app (control group, n=123). Figure 1 shows an overview of the final numbers in the dietary analysis. Of the 238 women, 193 (81.1%) women completed the FFQ both at baseline and at gestational week 36. Background characteristics are described according to the randomization status (Table 1). There were no significant baseline differences between the groups, except for more women with a non-Norwegian language as their first language in the intervention group (61 vs 46, \( P=.02 \)).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Background characteristics</th>
<th>Total, N=193</th>
<th>Control group, n=98</th>
<th>Intervention group, n=95</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤29</td>
<td>47 (24.4)</td>
<td>22 (22)</td>
<td>25 (26)</td>
<td>.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-37</td>
<td>110 (57.0)</td>
<td>52 (53)</td>
<td>58 (61)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥38</td>
<td>36 (18.7)</td>
<td>24 (25)</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gestational age at baseline, mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td>27.1 (4.6)</td>
<td>27.3 (4.6)</td>
<td>26.9 (4.5)</td>
<td>.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parity, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primiparous</td>
<td>86 (44.6)</td>
<td>48 (49)</td>
<td>38 (40)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiparous</td>
<td>107 (55.4)</td>
<td>50 (51)</td>
<td>57 (60)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Previous GDMa (N=107b), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>75 (70.1)</td>
<td>34 (68)</td>
<td>41 (72)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>32 (29.9)</td>
<td>16 (32)</td>
<td>16 (28)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI (N=190c), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;24.9</td>
<td>83 (43.7)</td>
<td>44 (45)</td>
<td>39 (42)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.0-29.9</td>
<td>57 (30.0)</td>
<td>26 (27)</td>
<td>31 (33)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.0-34.9</td>
<td>31 (16.3)</td>
<td>18 (19)</td>
<td>13 (14)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.0-45.0</td>
<td>19 (10.0)</td>
<td>9 (9)</td>
<td>10 (11)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Country of birth, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>90 (46.6)</td>
<td>52 (53)</td>
<td>38 (40)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Europe + United States of America</td>
<td>13 (6.7)</td>
<td>9 (9)</td>
<td>4 (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Europe</td>
<td>18 (9.3)</td>
<td>9 (9)</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>45 (23.3)</td>
<td>16 (16)</td>
<td>29 (31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>22 (11.4)</td>
<td>10 (10)</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>5 (2.6)</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marital status, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married/cohabiting</td>
<td>179 (92.7)</td>
<td>90 (92)</td>
<td>89 (94)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single/other</td>
<td>14 (7.3)</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>6 (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school/no education</td>
<td>19 (9.8)</td>
<td>12 (12)</td>
<td>7 (7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High school</td>
<td>40 (20.7)</td>
<td>23 (24)</td>
<td>17 (18)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College/university&lt;4 years</td>
<td>47 (24.4)</td>
<td>23 (24)</td>
<td>24 (25)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College/university≥4 years</td>
<td>87 (45.1)</td>
<td>40 (41)</td>
<td>47 (50)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Smoking or wet tobacco , n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>189 (97.9)</td>
<td>96 (98)</td>
<td>93 (98)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4 (2.1)</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main activity, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employed or self-employed</td>
<td>147 (76.2)</td>
<td>71 (72)</td>
<td>76 (80)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not employed or not self-employed</td>
<td>46 (23.8)</td>
<td>27 (28)</td>
<td>19 (20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Joined income, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤59,900 USD</td>
<td>57 (29.9)</td>
<td>26 (27)</td>
<td>31 (33)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60,000-79,900 USD</td>
<td>28 (14.2)</td>
<td>14 (14)</td>
<td>14 (15)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80,000-99,900 USD</td>
<td>39 (19.8)</td>
<td>20 (20)</td>
<td>19 (20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Outcomes

Dietary Outcomes Around Gestational Week 36
Overall, the total HDS-P+ and most of the subscales, except the intake of healthy oils, improved from baseline to gestational week 36 (Table 2).

Table 2. Dietary changes from baseline to gestational week 36.a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subscales</th>
<th>Baseline values, mean (SD)</th>
<th>Week 36 values, mean (SD)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. HDS-P+b</td>
<td>40.36 (14.11)</td>
<td>55.56 (13.70)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sugar (times/week)</td>
<td>10.10 (7.88)</td>
<td>1.89 (3.21)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Vegetables (times/week)</td>
<td>8.87 (3.52)</td>
<td>10.35 (3.5)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Whole grains (times/week)</td>
<td>6.71 (2.96)</td>
<td>8.87 (2.78)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Salt (times/week)</td>
<td>3.71 (3.10)</td>
<td>2.39 (2.49)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Fish (times/week)</td>
<td>1.84 (1.17)</td>
<td>2.21 (1.32)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Low-fat milk (times/week)</td>
<td>4.84 (4.08)</td>
<td>4.22 (3.34)</td>
<td>.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Healthy oil (% of total dietary fat)c</td>
<td>62.41 (25.32)</td>
<td>65.09 (25.36)</td>
<td>.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Read nutrition labels</td>
<td>5.78 (3.44)</td>
<td>8.45 (2.64)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Water (% of total fluid intake)c</td>
<td>40.15 (14.67)</td>
<td>51.21 (17.35)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aPaired sample two-tailed t test.
bHDS-P+: healthy dietary score for Pregnant+.
cPercentage of weekly consumption.

Between-Group Differences After Intervention
A one-way between-group analysis of covariance was conducted to compare the effectiveness of the app on the participants’ dietary habits after being diagnosed with GDM. The women’s HDS-P+ preintervention was used as the covariate in the analysis. Table 3 presents the between-group differences for the overall HDS-P+ and the 9 different subscales at gestational week 36. No significant differences favored the intervention group. The analysis showed that the control group reported to eat more fish meals per week (P=.05). No other significant differences were found between the intervention and control groups.
**Discussion**

**Principal Results**

The Pregnant+ app combined with usual care did not have any significant effect on the dietary behavior of the participants during pregnancy compared to the dietary behavior of the participants receiving usual care only. All the participants improved their diet from the time they were diagnosed with GDM to gestational week 36.

**Comparison With Prior Work**

This study adds to the literature on the development and effect of pregnancy-related apps for the management of GDM and for following a healthy diet [22,27,28]. Pregnant women consider these apps to be useful and convenient for nutrition information and management of their diets [27]; however, little is known about their effects on the dietary behavior [19]. mHealth apps may provide several functions targeting behavior change or monitoring. The most successful smartphone-based interventions for dietary change and health outcomes include elements of self-monitoring and personalized feedback [29]. Similar to other apps for women with GDM [21,30], the Pregnant+ app includes a function for self-monitoring of blood glucose levels. According to our qualitative study on women’s experience with the Pregnant+ app, the self-management of blood glucose levels was the most important aspect of the app for increasing self-awareness and motivation [31]. Ten of the 17 participants from the intervention group reported to use the Pregnant+ app daily for their blood glucose management. However, the monitoring of food intake was not possible in the app. A qualitative study about the acceptability of a smartphone app for patients with type 2 diabetes indicated that the use of a digital diabetes diary to monitor food intake supported them in eating a healthy diet [32]. Dodd et al [20] assessed the effect of a smartphone app on the dietary behavior of pregnant women. Their app included a combination of information provision, goal setting, feedback, and self-monitoring. The use of the app was poor, and it provided no additional benefit over face-to-face consultation and printed materials in improving dietary behaviors [20]. It should also be considered that adherence to self-monitoring has been shown to decrease over time and that self-monitoring is successful only when people are regularly reminded to use the app [33]. The women in our intervention group were not reminded to use the app.

Compared to studies demonstrating the positive impact of apps on healthy eating and blood glucose levels [29,34,35], the Pregnant+ app did not have any personal interaction with the women. For instance, a review on the use of telemedicine technology for managing diabetes in pregnancy (not just GDM) showed a modest but statistically significant improvement in HbA1c levels [35]. To avoid bias, the health care professionals were not asked to use the app actively during their consultations. However, the women automatically received specific dietary information when registering too high blood glucose levels in the app [17]. In this study, the midwives checked the women’s registered blood glucose levels in the app 3 times a week and sent feedback via SMS text messaging [17].

**Table 3.** Between-group differences in 10 dietary domains reported after the intervention (gestational week 36) in the Pregnant+ app.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dietary domain</th>
<th>Subscale(s)</th>
<th>Control group, n=98, mean (SE)</th>
<th>Intervention group, n=95, mean (SE)</th>
<th>Estimated difference after intervention, mean (SE)</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eat healthy</td>
<td>HDS-P&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>56.11 (1.11)</td>
<td>55.34 (1.13)</td>
<td>0.77 (1.72)</td>
<td>−2.62, 4.16</td>
<td>.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat and drink little sugar</td>
<td>Sugar (times/week)</td>
<td>1.97 (0.31)</td>
<td>1.79 (0.32)</td>
<td>0.18 (0.45)</td>
<td>−0.70, 1.06</td>
<td>.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat more vegetables</td>
<td>Vegetables (times/week)</td>
<td>10.40 (0.32)</td>
<td>10.30 (0.32)</td>
<td>0.09 (0.45)</td>
<td>−0.83, 0.95</td>
<td>.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose whole grains</td>
<td>Whole grains (times/week)</td>
<td>8.23 (0.27)</td>
<td>8.01 (0.28)</td>
<td>0.14 (0.40)</td>
<td>−0.79, 0.99</td>
<td>.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit your intake of salt</td>
<td>Salt (times/week)</td>
<td>2.53 (0.12)</td>
<td>2.25 (0.21)</td>
<td>0.28 (0.31)</td>
<td>−0.31, 0.88</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat enough fish</td>
<td>Fish (times/week)</td>
<td>2.34 (0.09)</td>
<td>2.09 (0.09)</td>
<td>0.26 (0.13)</td>
<td>−0.01, 0.51</td>
<td>.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose lean dairy milk</td>
<td>Low-fat milk (times/week)</td>
<td>4.40 (0.28)</td>
<td>4.04 (2.85)</td>
<td>0.35 (0.40)</td>
<td>−0.42, 1.14</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat less saturated fat</td>
<td>Healthy oil (% of total dietary fat)&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>66.30 (2.05)</td>
<td>63.80 (2.10)</td>
<td>2.50 (2.50)</td>
<td>−3.31, 8.33</td>
<td>.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read nutrition labels</td>
<td>Read labels</td>
<td>8.76 (0.25)</td>
<td>8.13 (0.25)</td>
<td>0.63 (0.36)</td>
<td>−0.07, 1.33</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose water</td>
<td>Water (% of total fluid intake)&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>51.93 (1.57)</td>
<td>50.47 (1.59)</td>
<td>1.46 (2.24)</td>
<td>−2.69, 5.89</td>
<td>.57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Analysis of covariance adjusted for baseline HDS-P+.

<sup>b</sup>HDS-P+: healthy dietary score for Pregnant+.

<sup>c</sup>Percentage of weekly consumption.
Similar to that reported in other mHealth studies [36], technical problems with the app could be a reason for us to not find any effect of the app on the participants’ diets. Some of them experienced problems with the automatic transfer of the blood glucose levels [31]. A cross-sectional survey on the use of mHealth among Latino patients with diabetes found that the lack of operability between the smartphone app and other devices could serve as a barrier to using the app [37].

All the participants in this study improved their diet after being diagnosed with GDM. This is in accordance with previous research, indicating that the diagnosis of GDM motivates women to change their diets [38-40]. Our previous study about women’s dietary habits prior to being diagnosed with GDM showed low adherence to national dietary recommendations [41]. A significantly higher proportion of nonnative Norwegian-speaking women had a high healthy diet score compared with native Norwegian-speaking women. In this study, significantly more women with a non-Norwegian language as their first language were in the intervention group ($P$=.02). Previous research has shown that a combination of technological, health literacy, and language issues may result in a lower uptake of pregnancy apps among immigrant women [16]. These barriers may also have led to a lower usage of the Pregnant+ app.

**Limitations**

One of the main limitations of this study was that we did not have access to usage logs because of technical problems. To secure the participants’ privacy, we did not collect any additional data from the app. We do not know if those in the intervention group actually used the Pregnant+ app or about their frequency of usage or the pages in the app accessed by them. Our qualitative study on 17 participants from the intervention group showed that some women used the app regularly and some did not use it at all because of technical problems [31]. Patients participating in a study will often experience an effect even when not receiving the intervention—the Hawthorne effect. In our study, this could account for the lack of effects as women not using the app may have focused more on a healthy diet as a result of participating in a study. The data for this study were derived from self-completed questionnaires, which include the possibility for recall bias. Social desirability might have biased the self-report of dietary intake. The FFQ covered only selected aspects of the overall diet. Thus, the difference in the HDS-P+ should not be interpreted as an absolute measure of dietary change [42].

**Conclusions**

To our knowledge, this is one of the first studies to evaluate the effect of a smartphone app on the dietary behavior of women with GDM [17]. Our findings do not support the supplementation of face-to-face follow-up of women with GDM with a smartphone app in the presence of high-standard usual care. However, the app might be a useful tool for women who do not receive sufficient dietary counselling in person. Future research should explore the effects of various technological features provided in a smartphone app to improve the care of women with GDM.

**Acknowledgments**

This study was funded by the Norwegian Research Council (identifier: 228517). We also acknowledge the participating women as well as the health care professionals and project members involved in the recruitment process.

**Authors’ Contributions**

LGH wrote the manuscript. LH and LET conducted all statistical analysis. All authors planned the study and reviewed the final manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

**Multimedia Appendix 1**

Screenshot of the app.

[PNG File, 309 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18614_app1.png ]

**Multimedia Appendix 2**

Screenshot of the dietary recommendation in the app.

[PNG File, 212 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18614_app2.png ]

**Multimedia Appendix 3**

CONSORT-EHEALTH Checklist (V 1.6.1).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 359 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18614_app3.pdf ]

**References**


groups from Turkey, Vietnam, Sri Lanka and Pakistan compared with Norwegians - the association with adiposity is

5. Makgoba M, Savvidou MD, Steer PJ. An analysis of the interrelationship between maternal age, body mass index and racial


7. Aziz S, Munim TF, Fatima SS. Post-partum follow-up of women with gestational diabetes mellitus: effectiveness,


9. Landon MB, Spong CY, Thom E, Carpenter MW, Ramín SM, Casey B, Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child
HealthHuman Development Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network. A multicenter, randomized trial of treatment for mild


12. Carolan M, Gillen KD, Reynolds CM. The Relationship Between Maternal Age, Body Mass Index and Racial Origin in

diabetes mellitus at first consultation in a multi-ethnic pregnant population in the Oslo region, Norway - a cross-sectional

14. Frequently asked questions on global task force on digital health for TB and its work. World Health Organization. URL:

15. Chan KL, Chen M. Effects of Social Media and Mobile Health Apps on Pregnancy Care: Meta-Analysis. J MIR Mhealth

16. Chen Q, Carbone ET. Functionality, Implementation, Impact, and the Role of Health Literacy in Mobile Phone Apps for

Blood Glucose Management System With Standard Clinic Care in Women With Gestational Diabetes: Randomized


19. Overdijkink SB, Velu AV, Rosman AN, van Beukering MD, Kok M, Steegers-Theunissen RP. The Usability and Effectiveness
of Mobile Health Technology-Based Lifestyle and Medical Intervention Apps Supporting Health Care During Pregnancy:

activity application to provide lifestyle advice to pregnant women: The SNAPP randomised trial. Matern Child Nutr 2018
Jan;14(1) [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1111/mcn.12502] [Medline: 28836373]

Application for Women with Gestational Diabetes Mellitus Followed-Up at Diabetes Outpatient Clinics in Norway.

[doi: 10.2196/mhealth.9119] [Medline: 30446483]


ReMindCare App for Early Psychosis: Pragmatic Real World Intervention and Usability Study

Lucia Bonet¹,², MSci, PhD; John Torous³, MD; David Arce⁴, MSci; Ignacio Blanquer⁴, Prof Dr; Julio Sanjuan¹,²,⁵, MD

¹Department of Mental Health, Sanitary Research Institute of Valencia, University Clinic Hospital of Valencia, Valencia, Spain
²Faculty of Medicine and Odontology, University of Valencia, Valencia, Spain
³Division of Digital Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry, Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, United States
⁴Institute of Instrumentation for Molecular Imaging, Joint Centre of the Spanish National Research Council and Universitat Politécnica de València, Valencia, Spain
⁵Centre of Biomedical Investigation in Mental Health, Spanish Government Carlos III Health Institute, Madrid, Spain

Corresponding Author:
Julio Sanjuan, MD
Department of Mental Health
Sanitary Research Institute of Valencia
University Clinic Hospital of Valencia
Menéndez y Pelayo St, 4,
Valencia
Spain
Phone: 34 961 97 35 17
Email: julio.sanjuan@uv.es

Abstract

Background: eHealth interventions are widely used in clinical trials and increasingly in care settings as well; however, their efficacy in real-world contexts remains unknown. ReMindCare is a smartphone app that has been systematically implemented in a first episode of psychosis program (FEPP) for patients with early psychosis since 2018.

Objective: The objective of this study was to assess the efficacy of ReMindCare after 19 months of use in the clinic and varying use by individual patients.

Methods: The integration of the ReMindCare app into the FEPP started in October 2018. Patients with early psychosis self-selected to the app (ReMindCare group) or treatment as usual (TAU group). The outcome variables considered were adherence to the intervention and number of relapses, hospital admissions, and visits to urgent care units. Data from 90 patients with early psychosis were analyzed: 59 in the ReMindCare group and 31 in the TAU group. The mean age of the sample was 32.8 (SD 9.4) years, 73% (66/90) were males, 91% (83/90) were White, and 81% (74/90) were single.

Results: Significant differences between the ReMindCare and TAU groups were found in the number of relapses, hospitalizations, and visits to urgent care units, with each showing benefits for the app. Only 20% (12/59) of patients from the ReMindCare group had a relapse, while 58% (18/31) of the TAU patients had one or more relapses ($\chi^2=13.7, P=.001$). Moreover, ReMindCare patients had fewer visits to urgent care units ($\chi^2=7.4, P=.006$) and fewer hospitalizations than TAU patients ($\chi^2=4.6, P=.03$). The mean of days using the app was 352.2 (SD 191.2; min/max: 18-594), and the mean of engagement was 84.5 (SD 16.04).

Conclusions: To our knowledge, this is the first eHealth intervention that has preliminarily proven its benefits in the real-world treatment of patients with early psychosis.

International Registered Report Identifier (IRRID): RR2-10.1111/eip.12960

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22997) doi:10.2196/22997

KEYWORDS
app; clinical practice; mental health; psychosis; real-world intervention; telemedicine
Introduction

High interest in eHealth services and now digital and mobile health has been noted in many recent studies among patients with psychotic disorder diagnoses [1, 2]. With COVID-19, this interest in digital health has surged, and the need to expand access to care through smartphones has become patent. Smartphone apps have been proposed as tools to mitigate social isolation, lack of access to care, and other triggers caused by the pandemic [3-5]. Researchers have already demonstrated that access to and use of technology among people with psychosis is nearly equivalent to that in the general population [6-8], but less is known about the actual efficacy of apps in care.

Apps have already seen growth in care for patients with early course psychosis. Many studies are using real-time ecological momentary assessment (EMA) surveys to monitor symptoms and experiences and identify early indicators of relapse [9]. Beyond relapse prediction, these EMA data can offer novel information on the longitudinal health status of patients, which could improve treatment and shared decision making between patient and physician [10]. Finally, eHealth services may be a major resource to enhance the benefits of the first episode of psychosis programs (FEPPs) for early psychosis, which can foster recovery [11] and reduce the risk of hospitalization and relapse [12,13].

Specific apps targeting schizophrenia have already been created and offer promising results. Examples of these innovative interventions are the Actissist [14] and the ExPRESS [15] interventions, which demonstrated potential in improving the quality of treatment of patients with early psychosis. Another example is the CrossCheck app [16], which demonstrated potential for identifying and dismantling dysfunctional beliefs that contribute to maintenance and distress associated with psychotic symptoms. Despite the widespread use of these eHealth interventions and high rates of efficacy reported in clinical trials, the efficiency and actual efficacy of these interventions in real-world clinical practice remains unknown [17].

One reason for the lack of initial success of health apps in clinical settings is lack of engagement. Often engagement in academic studies does not translate into real-world use [18,19]. Indeed, some studies found a negative correlation between the time spent using eHealth apps and the engagement of patients [20,21]. In addition, many clinicians expressed their concern that if these systems integrate seamlessly with clinical workflow, they will result in an increase in the clinicians’ workload [22,23], which might affect their engagement with the app.

Other concerns have also limited efforts to integrate these apps into care settings. In our previous study [8], we found that 20% to 23% of patients felt anxious, suspicious, or paranoid concerning the internet, and almost 25% of patients perceived that use of the internet was directly related to one of their relapses. In addition, some studies indicated that excessive eHealth communications could be regarded as intrusive or irritating [24,25] or could increase worries about illness [25]. These potential harms of eHealth interventions must also be taken into consideration.

Considering these factors, it is clear that eHealth interventions shown to be feasible must now be assessed for effectiveness, efficacy, and efficiency [26] in real-world settings. With this objective in mind and to improve the daily treatment of patients with psychosis, we designed the ReMindCare app. The protocol followed for the design process and implementation of the app is published elsewhere [27]. In this protocol, we introduced ReMindCare as a smartphone app plus a clinician dashboard, developed to be implemented in a FEPP for patients with early psychosis.

To the best of our knowledge, ReMindCare is the first eHealth intervention for patients with early psychosis that has been systematically integrated into daily clinical practice, finally filling the gap between research and clinical practice [2,17].

The aim of this study was to assess the efficacy and clinical outcomes of the use of the app after 19 months in terms of adherence to ReMindCare, relapse prevention, hospital admissions, and visits to urgent care units compared with treatment as usual (TAU) without the app.

Methods

Study Setting

The app was systematically integrated into the daily clinical workflow in a FEPP at the University Clinic Hospital of Valencia, Spain. This FEPP started in 2010 with the objective of improving early detection, evaluation, and personalization of treatment. It covers a total of 330,000 inhabitants included in Area 5 of Valencia city. The incidence of novel psychotic disorders in this area has gradually increased during the 10 years since the program started. Currently, the FEPP in the clinic hospital has a mean of 30 to 35 new patients with psychosis per year.

The implementation of the ReMindCare app into the FEPP and into clinical practice started in October 2018 and is still in use today. In this study, we present the results from the first 19 months of use of the app.

Neither patients nor physicians received any remuneration or compensation for participating in the program or using the app. The use of the app was offered as an extra free service to the patients in the program.

Participants

Recruitment and Enrollment

The patient’s psychiatrist of reference offered the use of the ReMindCare app to every outpatient from the FEPP who met the criteria for inclusion. Once patients enrolled in the study, they were encouraged to use the app as long as they remained in the program (maximum period of 5 years). To use the app, all patients signed an informed consent form and completed baseline assessments.

Eligibility Criteria

To be considered for this intervention, patients met the following criteria: (1) diagnosis of psychotic disorder following DSM-5 (Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th Edition) criteria, interview conducted by a licensed clinician,
aged between 17 and 65 years, smartphone ownership with an internet connection that allows for the proper installation and functioning of the app, and less than 5 years of illness duration. However, it must be stated that some patients remained in the program for more than 5 years. These patients remained in the FEPP to prevent potential relapses, as they experienced severe fluctuations in their symptoms.

Criteria for exclusion were (1) lack of ability to use and master a mobile device and the internet, (2) refusal to sign an informed consent form, and (3) level of Spanish or English not fluent enough to maintain a conversation or understand the app questionnaires.

Intervention

ReMindCare App

ReMindCare is a free and user-friendly app that conducts daily evaluations of the health status of patients with early psychosis by offering quick questionnaires (Figure 1).

Two types of questionnaires were included:

- Daily questionnaires: 3 daily questions assessing levels of anxiety, sadness, and irritability (Figure 2)
- Weekly questionnaires: 18 weekly questions aimed at assessing adherence to medication (1), the presence of side effects from antipsychotic medication intake (5), the attitude toward medication intake (3), and the presence of prodromal psychosis symptoms (9)

Figure 1. Screenshot of the ReMindCare app home screen.
In addition, the app offered preset alerts in case of low engagement or abrupt changes in survey responses. Low engagement alerts were set off if patients did not respond to the surveys for 7 days or more, while abrupt changes were considered when there was a difference of 2 points (Likert scale 1 to 5) or more between each question in the last 2 surveys answered. These alerts notified physicians by email and were also displayed in the profile of the patient on the app’s website portal.

All data captured by the app were accessible for physicians on a password-protected dashboard. Moreover, physicians could download a summary pdf of these data from the dashboard and attach it to the electronic clinical record of the patient in the hospital database.

The app is available in 3 languages (Spanish, English, and Catalán), although we are open to developing new language versions of the app. Our aim is to extend the use of the app to other countries, and adaptation of the app to different languages would be necessary to ensure patient engagement. Further information about the design process of the app and its characteristics can be found in the ReMindCare app study protocol [27].

Patients who used the app (ReMindCare group) did not experience any changes in their usual clinical appointments.

**Treatment as Usual**

The TAU group comprised patients who met the criteria but rejected using the app. In this group of patients, 42% (13/31) were patients with low adherence to treatment, 26% (8/31) did not perceive any benefit from using the app, and 26% (8/31) were suspicious about technology and their privacy. Additionally, 6% (2/31) were included in this group because they only used the app for 2 days. These patients continued with their usual psychiatric treatment at the FEPP and were not adversely affected by their rejection of participation.

**Procedure**

Once patients enrolled in the FEPP, after an interview with their psychiatrist of reference, they were asked to complete some baseline assessments. Subsequently, they were offered the use of the ReMindCare app. The ReMindCare app was described as an extra tool developed by the FEPP that could help them manage their symptoms and help clinicians better understand their illness evolution. The main characteristics of the app were listed. After receiving this information, patients decided whether they were willing to use the app. If they were not interested, they were placed in the TAU group. If patients were interested, they were informed in more detail by an expert clinician about the installation process, characteristics of the app, and ethics and data privacy information.
Patients could use the ReMindCare app to contact their psychiatrist of reference directly in case of symptoms worsening by using the urgent consultation request tab on the home screen of the app. If they clicked the urgent consultation request, their clinician would contact them by phone within 48 hours (patients who did not use the app could call the department of psychiatry at the hospital and be referred to their psychiatrist or attend an urgent care unit). In addition, clinicians contacted patients by phone in response to preset alarms. As a result of these phone calls and the information that patients provided to the clinician, urgent care visits could be scheduled if necessary. With these services, we aimed to improve the detection of early psychotic symptoms and reduce the visits to urgent care units at the hospital, as these prodromal symptoms will be primarily treated by a phone call or in the outpatient services. If patients did not make an urgent consultation request and no preset alarms were set off, they continued with their scheduled clinical appointments.

Furthermore, the use of the ReMindCare app changed the dynamics of the clinical appointment at the outpatient services. Once patients arrived at the clinical appointment, physicians accessed their profile on the ReMindCare’s physician dashboard and used the information provided for patients to guide them through the interview. Clinicians used shared decision making with patients and discussed their responses.

Data Collection and Measures

**Baseline**

After patients were enrolled in the FEPP, the following data were collected:

- Sociodemographic information: age, gender, country, ethnicity, marital status, education level, employment status, and cohabitation
- Clinical information: antipsychotic medication, injectable medication, length of illness, associated illnesses, suicidal attempts, Clinical Global Impression Severity of Illness scale (CGI-SI) [28], Global Assessment of Functioning (GAF) [29], Positive and Negative Syndrome Scale (PANSS) [30], Premorbid Adjustment Scale (PAS) [31], date discharged from FEPP

**Outcome Measures**

- Efficacy: number of relapses, number of visits to the hospital urgent care units, and number of hospital admissions in the ReMindCare group compared with the TAU group
- Feasibility: number of patients who agreed to use the app compared with the patients who did not use it (TAU)
- Compliance and engagement: number of times patients answered the questionnaires when presented and number of months using the app, patients dropouts, plus number of urgent consultation requests

**Data Analysis**

Data were analyzed with the statistical program SPSS Statistics version 22 (IBM Corp). The cohort was divided into two groups: ReMindCare group patients agreed to use the app and used it for at least 1 month; the TAU group patients did not use the app or used it for less than 1 month. To consider that patients in the ReMindCare group had a relapse while using the app, patients had to be actively using the app. Relapses of patients who did not use the app for more than 2 months were not considered as relapses while using the app. Descriptive statistics (mean, standard deviation, frequency, and percentage) were determined, and chi-square test analysis was performed to compare the differences between the ReMindCare group and the TAU group.

**Ethics, Data Privacy, and Participant Safety**

The ReMindCare app project received approval from the research ethics committee of the faculty of medicine at the University of Valencia and from the research ethics committee of the Sanitary Research Institute of the University Clinic Hospital of Valencia, Spain.

To protect the data sent by patients, communications to the platform were encrypted with a transport layer security certificate from the Generalitat Valenciana and were sent through the https protocol. The hospital infrastructure is protected through a reverse proxy, which enhances security by establishing a single access point to it and hiding all inner infrastructures. Moreover, the integration of the app into the hospital systems was subjected to Organic Law 3/2018: protection of personal data and digital rights guarantee, December 5th, the Spanish organic law adaptation of the General Data Protection Regulation.

**Results**

Data from 90 patients were analyzed: 59 used or are using the app (ReMindCare group) and 31 did not agree to use the app (TAU group). Characteristics of both groups are displayed in Tables 1 and 2.
Table 1. Sociodemographic data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>RC&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; group</th>
<th>TAU&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>$\chi^2 (P$ value)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age in years, mean (SD)</td>
<td>32.8 (9.4)</td>
<td>32.1 (1.2)</td>
<td>34.3 (1.7)</td>
<td>1.5 (.57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 and younger, n (%)</td>
<td>19 (21)</td>
<td>12 (20)</td>
<td>7 (23)</td>
<td>_&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-44, n (%)</td>
<td>58 (64)</td>
<td>40 (68)</td>
<td>18 (58)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 and older, n (%)</td>
<td>13 (14)</td>
<td>7 (12)</td>
<td>6 (19)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (male), n (%)</td>
<td>66 (73)</td>
<td>40 (68)</td>
<td>25 (81)</td>
<td>1.7 (.19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native country (Spain), n (%)</td>
<td>79 (87)</td>
<td>48 (81)</td>
<td>30 (97)</td>
<td>4.2 (.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race (White), n (%)</td>
<td>83 (91)</td>
<td>51 (86)</td>
<td>31 (100)</td>
<td>4.6 (.33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marital status, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5.2 (.16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td>74 (81)</td>
<td>50 (85)</td>
<td>23 (74)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married</td>
<td>11 (12)</td>
<td>5 (9)</td>
<td>6 (19)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>85 (7)</td>
<td>4 (7)</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational level, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5.9 (.05)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>45 (50)</td>
<td>27 (46)</td>
<td>18 (58)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College or higher</td>
<td>43 (48)</td>
<td>32 (54)</td>
<td>11 (36)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment status, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5.6 (.24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employed</td>
<td>29 (32)</td>
<td>16 (27)</td>
<td>13 (42)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>21 (23)</td>
<td>16 (27)</td>
<td>4 (13)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not employed</td>
<td>38 (42)</td>
<td>25 (42)</td>
<td>13 (42)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to work</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
<td>2 (3)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cohabitation, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.3 (.51)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alone</td>
<td>6 (7)</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
<td>3 (10)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family_birth</td>
<td>60 (66)</td>
<td>39 (66)</td>
<td>20 (65)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family_own</td>
<td>11 (12)</td>
<td>6 (10)</td>
<td>5 (16)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>14 (15)</td>
<td>11 (19)</td>
<td>3 (10)</td>
<td>_</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>RC: ReMindCare.  
<sup>b</sup>TAU: treatment as usual.  
<sup>c</sup>not applicable.
### Table 2. Baseline clinical information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>RC&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; group</th>
<th>TAU&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; group</th>
<th>$\chi^2$ (P value)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Injectable medication, n (%)</td>
<td>18 (20)</td>
<td>8 (14)</td>
<td>10 (32)</td>
<td>4.4 (.03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of illness in years, mean (SD)</td>
<td>10.5 (2.8)</td>
<td>3.9 (0.4)</td>
<td>5.7 (0.5)</td>
<td>12.3 (.002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-1, n (%)</td>
<td>13 (14)</td>
<td>13 (22)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-5, n (%)</td>
<td>43 (48)</td>
<td>30 (51)</td>
<td>13 (42)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 6, n (%)</td>
<td>34 (38)</td>
<td>16 (27)</td>
<td>18 (58)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated illnesses, n (%)</td>
<td>29 (32)</td>
<td>18 (31)</td>
<td>11 (36)</td>
<td>0.2 (.63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suicidal attempts, n (%)</td>
<td>16 (18)</td>
<td>12 (22)</td>
<td>3 (10)</td>
<td>2.1 (.15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGI-SI&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;, mean (SD)</td>
<td>4.2 (0.9)</td>
<td>4.1 (0.1)</td>
<td>4.4 (0.1)</td>
<td>2.7 (.26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild (1-3), n (%)</td>
<td>13 (16)</td>
<td>10 (19)</td>
<td>3 (11)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (4-5), n (%)</td>
<td>66 (83)</td>
<td>42 (81)</td>
<td>24 (86)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (&gt;5), n (%)</td>
<td>1 (1)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (4)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAF&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;, mean (SD)</td>
<td>60.7 (10.9)</td>
<td>61.3 (1.7)</td>
<td>59.8 (1.7)</td>
<td>1.3 (.52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild (71-100), n (%)</td>
<td>8 (10)</td>
<td>4 (8)</td>
<td>4 (14)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (51-70), n (%)</td>
<td>51 (65)</td>
<td>35 (69)</td>
<td>16 (57)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe (&lt;50), n (%)</td>
<td>20 (25)</td>
<td>12 (24)</td>
<td>8 (29)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PANSS&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;, mean (SD)</td>
<td>65.9 (18.8)</td>
<td>64.5 (2.2)</td>
<td>68.7 (4.6)</td>
<td>52.1 (.28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>18.4 (6.5)</td>
<td>18.7 (5.8)</td>
<td>18.7 (6.8)</td>
<td>23.9 (.58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>18.9 (6.9)</td>
<td>15.4 (5.1)</td>
<td>17.9 (9.3)</td>
<td>28.2 (.17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N5. Difficulty in abstract thinking</td>
<td>2.3 (1.3)</td>
<td>2.0 (0.2)</td>
<td>2.8 (1.5)</td>
<td>12.8 (.03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N6. Lack of spontaneity and flow</td>
<td>1.7 (1.3)</td>
<td>1.6 (1.1)</td>
<td>1.9 (1.7)</td>
<td>12.9 (.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conversation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>32.3 (8.2)</td>
<td>66.1 (14.7)</td>
<td>70.5 (22.2)</td>
<td>32.2 (.41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G5. Mannerism and posturing</td>
<td>1.1 (0.7)</td>
<td>1.1 (0.4)</td>
<td>1.3 (0.7)</td>
<td>9.9 (.01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAS&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;, mean (SD)</td>
<td>10.5 (2.8)</td>
<td>10.7 (0.5)</td>
<td>10.14 (0.6)</td>
<td>9.1 (.70)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relapses_Baseline, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>4.3 (.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>53 (59)</td>
<td>38 (64)</td>
<td>15 (48)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>21 (23)</td>
<td>14 (24)</td>
<td>7 (23)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥2</td>
<td>16 (18)</td>
<td>7 (12)</td>
<td>9 (29)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCT&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt; visits_Baseline, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.9 (.61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>26 (29)</td>
<td>19 (32)</td>
<td>7 (23)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>36 (40)</td>
<td>23 (39)</td>
<td>13 (42)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥2</td>
<td>28 (31)</td>
<td>17 (29)</td>
<td>11 (36)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalizations_Baseline, n (%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>4.6 (.10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>19 (21)</td>
<td>16 (27)</td>
<td>3 (10)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50 (56)</td>
<td>32 (54)</td>
<td>18 (58)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥2</td>
<td>21 (23)</td>
<td>11 (19)</td>
<td>10 (32)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>RC: ReMindCare.  
<sup>b</sup>TAU: treatment as usual.  
<sup>c</sup>not applicable.  
<sup>d</sup>CGI-SI: Clinical Global Impression Severity of Illness scale  
<sup>e</sup>GAF: Global Assessment of Functioning.  
<sup>f</sup>PANSS: Positive and Negative Syndrome Scale.  
<sup>g</sup>PAS: Premorbid Adjustment Scale.
Sociodemographic Analysis
The mean age of the sample was 32.8 (SD 9.4) years, 73% (66/90) were males, 91% (83/90) were White, and 81% (74/90) were single. No significant differences were found between the ReMindCare and TAU groups in any of the sociodemographic information analyzed except for the native country. We found that nearly every immigrant considered for inclusion agreed to use the app (ReMindCare group 19% [10/11], TAU group 3% [1/11]; $\chi^2=4.2$, $P=.04$). Further information regarding sociodemographic analysis of the data is displayed in Table 1.

Baseline Clinical Analysis
Significant differences were found between the ReMindCare group and TAU group in some clinical factors. With regard to injectable medication, 32% (10/31) of TAU patients were taking injectable medication, while only 14% (8/59) of the ReMindCare took it ($\chi^2=4.4$, $P=.04$). Every new patient in the FEPP (length of illness: 0-1 year) agreed to use the app (13/90, 22%), and 58% (18/31) of the TAU group had their illness for 6 or more years ($\chi^2=12.3$, $P=.002$). Moreover, the TAU patients showed higher scores on the PANSS N5 and N6 negative subscales and G5 in the general subscales ($\chi^2=12.8$, $P=.03$; $\chi^2=12.9$, $P=.02$; $\chi^2=9.9$, $P=.01$, respectively).

Considering medication, 20% (18/90) of patients were taking injectable medications, 32% (29/90) of the patients suffered from another illness, and 18% (17/90) had a prior suicidal attempt. The mean of the CGI-SI was 4.2 (SD 0.9), the GAF mean=60.7 (SD 10.9), PANSS mean 65.9 (SD 18.8), and PAS mean 10.5 (SD 2.8). Finally, 12% (11/90) of patients were discharged from the FEPP. No significant differences were found between the groups in any of these factors. Moreover, no significant differences were found between the ReMindCare group and TAU group in terms of the number of relapses ($\chi^2=4.3$, $P=.12$), visits to urgent care units ($\chi^2=0.9$, $P=.61$), or the number of hospitalizations ($\chi^2=4.6$, $P=.10$) at baseline. Further clinical information is available in Table 2.

ReMindCare Outcomes
The mean of days using the app was 352.2 (SD 191.2), which corresponds to 11.6 months. The mean of compliance was 84.5 (16.04), and 61.1% of the ReMindCare group had a compliance rate between 85% and 100%.

Of the 59 ReMindCare patients, 31% (18/59) requested an urgent consultation, 20% (12/59) had a relapse while using the app, and 8% (2/59) developed a delusion involving the app and the research group.

After 19 months of intervention, 63% (37/59) of patients continued using the app, while 12% (7/59) stopped using the app because they were discharged from the FEPP and 25% (15/59) opted to stop using ReMindCare. Reasons for discontinuation: 33% (5/15) of patients felt suspicious about technology (among these patients, 4 had a relapse while using the app); 40% (6/15) perceived the app as boring and did not perceive any benefit; and 27% (4/15) of patients left treatment and did not continue in the program. This information is shown in Table 3.

Table 3. Use of ReMindCare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>RC group (n=59)</th>
<th>Min-max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Days using app, mean (SD)</td>
<td>352.2 (191.2)</td>
<td>18-594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Months using app, mean (SD)</td>
<td>11.6 (6.5)</td>
<td>0-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engagement, mean (SD)</td>
<td>84.5 (16.0)</td>
<td>42-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85%-100%, n (%)</td>
<td>36 (61)</td>
<td>_b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCU*, n (%)</td>
<td>18 (31)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relapses using app, n (%)</td>
<td>12 (20)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relapses related to app, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (8)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status of use after 19 months, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients using app</td>
<td>37 (63)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients not using app</td>
<td>22 (37)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharged from FEPP**</td>
<td>7 (32)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dropouts</td>
<td>15 (68)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aRC: ReMindCare.

bnot applicable.

cUCU: urgent care units.

dFEPP: first episode of psychosis program.

With regard to the clinical outcomes, after 19 months of ReMindCare’s integration into the clinical workflow, only 20% (12/59) of patients from the ReMindCare group had a relapse, while 58% (18/31) of TAU patients had one or more relapses.
(\chi^2=13.7, P=.001). Moreover, ReMindCare patients had fewer visits to urgent care units (\chi^2=7.4, P=.006) and fewer hospitalizations than TAU patients (\chi^2=4.6, P=.03). Information regarding these clinical outcomes is displayed in Table 4.

Table 4. Clinical outcomes after 19 months of the ReMindCare intervention.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Total, n (%)</th>
<th>RC group, n (%)</th>
<th>TAU(^b), n (%)</th>
<th>\chi^2 (P value)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relapses</td>
<td>---c</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>13.7 (.001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>60 (67)</td>
<td>47 (80)</td>
<td>13 (42)</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>29 (32)</td>
<td>12 (20)</td>
<td>17 (55)</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥2</td>
<td>1 (1)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCUs(^d) visits</td>
<td>20 (22)</td>
<td>8 (14)</td>
<td>12 (39)</td>
<td>7.4 (.006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalizations</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
<td>6 (19)</td>
<td>4.6 (.03)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)RC: ReMindCare.  
\(^b\)TAU: treatment as usual.  
\(^c\)not applicable.  
\(^d\)UCU: urgent care units.

Discussion

Principal Findings

The results obtained from these analyses of the first 19 months of ReMindCare use highlight the potential benefits of this eHealth intervention for patients with early psychosis. Patients who used the app not only had fewer relapses than the TAU group, but they also had fewer visits to the urgent care unit and fewer hospitalizations.

Results related to the efficacy of the app are in line with previous results obtained in clinical trials [14-16]. However, as far as we know, this is the first study to identify the benefits of the use of an app as a tool systematically integrated into daily clinical practice in a FEPP.

With regard to the feasibility of the app, no significant differences were found between the ReMindCare group and the TAU group in terms of sociodemographic characteristics except for native country. The feasibility of this intervention aligns with the results obtained in our previous study [8], where we found no differences in terms of sociodemographic characteristics and interest in using eHealth interventions.

With regard to the clinical characteristics of the samples and their impact on the effect of ReMindCare, there were some differences between groups. We found that patients who did not use the app were more likely to be taking injectable medication, have a longer history of illness, and have higher scores on the PANSS N5 and N6 negative subscales and G5 in the general subscales. These results might suggest that the use of ReMindCare was not indicated for chronic patients. However, we did not find differences in other clinical scales such as the CGI-SI, GAF, and PAS scales or even on the PANSS total scale. More importantly, we did not find any differences between groups in terms of baseline relapses, hospitalizations, or visits to urgent care units.

These results are in line with the ones we obtained in our previous study [8], where we found that interest in using eHealth apps was equivalent between chronic and early psychosis patients. In this regard, we suggest that differences obtained in terms of the clinical characteristics of the patients could be more related to the history of treatment than to clinical characteristics. As we found, every new patient who joined the FEPP (length of illness less than 1 year) was interested in using the app (22% of users), while patients who had a longer history of treatment (length of illness more than 6 years) were more likely to reject its use (58% of TAU group). This could highlight the relevance of introducing these new technologies at the very beginning of treatment so early psychosis patients consider these apps to be just another tool included in their daily clinical treatment and not an extra service, especially since our results suggested that use of the app had a significant impact in improving the course of the illness.

Finally, with regard to compliance and engagement with the app, we found that 61% of patients had compliance rates between 85% to 100%. Rates of engagement were also high, as 63% of patients still use the app after almost 1 year. These results of compliance and long-term engagement are contrary to previous studies [20,21] and suggest that the use of an app in a long-term approach is feasible and beneficial.

However, we would like to highlight that 20% of patients had a relapse while using the app and 8% developed a delusion during its use (58% of TAU group). This could highlight the relevance of introducing these new technologies at the very beginning of treatment so early psychosis patients consider these apps to be just another tool included in their daily clinical treatment and not an extra service, especially since our results suggested that use of the app had a significant impact in improving the course of the illness.

Technological solutions can be a major resource to improve the quality of treatments, but as we found in a previous study [8], it can also play an important role as a trigger for psychotic symptoms. In this regard, in a 3-case study in 2011 conducted by Nitzan et al [32], they stated that the use of the internet and computers might contribute to a gradual break with reality and development of psychotic symptoms. They suggested that given that patients with psychotic diagnoses have greater difficulties in filtering and understanding signals and symbols, they are also more likely to misinterpret digital messages. However, no specific studies regarding the potential harms of the use of new technologies have been undertaken until the present.
In our study, we found that the ReMindCare app was related to beneficial clinical effects for the vast majority of patients who used it. However, despite the general positive effects found in this study, there are still some barriers and negative effects that must be taken into consideration. The main barrier found in our study relates to the 34% of the approached patients who did not want to use the app and who also tended to be the more chronic patients. Moreover, the main negative effect we found related to the 8% of patients who developed a delusion involving the app. As a result, we would like to point out that this app is not a panacea to prevent relapses. However, it is clear that the app positively affected the course of the illness, as only 5% of those who relapsed required hospitalization compared with 19% of patients who relapsed in the TAU group.

Limitations and Strengths
There were some limitations that must be taken into consideration. First, not every outpatient from the FEPP was eligible for inclusion, as some patients did not have their own smartphone with an internet connection or did not have the ability to use the app or understand it due to language barriers. Developing strategies to prevent digital exclusion should be a priority to ensure that every patient could benefit from these technologies [33]. Second, as a real-world study, this study was not randomized. Despite the groups not differing in the vast majority of clinical or demographic characteristics, there were some factors such as personality that could influence our results.

The main strength of our study was the fact that ReMindCare is the first app that has been systematically integrated into the clinical FEPP workflow. To our knowledge, there are no previous studies that used an app as a tool to improve the daily treatment of patients with early psychosis. All the studies we found were conducted in academic research settings that did not emulate real-world environments [17,34].

Another strength is in regard to the development of the ReMindCare app. First, it was based on two previous studies [2,8] and co-designed with patients [27]. Second, we conducted a pilot study and focus groups to ensure the involvement of both patients and care providers [27] in the design and improvement process of the app.

Finally, we would like to highlight the long-term approach of this intervention. As stated before, ReMindCare is now integrated into clinical practice and it was used for 19 months. These results align with previous studies [16] that found that people with psychosis have the abilities and interest required to engage in long-term eHealth interventions.

Implications for the Future
As a result of these analyses, we highlighted the benefits that the use of ReMindCare app produced on early psychosis patients in a FEPP. Our aim is to continue improving the app in response to the needs and suggestions provided by patients and clinicians. As Ross et al [22] claimed in their meta-review, in order to ensure the use of these eHealth technologies over time, there are three challenges that should be overcome. First, the apps must be able to adapt to the characteristics of the environment and patients. Second, the apps should be easy to use. Third, the apps should be integrated into clinical practice, adjusting the characteristics of the app in order to ensure it is user-friendly and efficient for patients and clinicians. It is our aim to address these issues to maintain the positive results obtained in this study.

However, we would like to point out a major issue that must guide future eHealth interventions. As stated before, 8% of patients developed a delusion related to the use of the app, 25% of patients deliberately stopped using the app, and 34% of patients approached did not want to use the app in the first place. These results suggest that there are still significant numbers of patients not willing to use eHealth interventions, and there are some patients who could be adversely affected by the use of these technologies. Studying the characteristics of these patients should guide future research in order to ensure that the use of digital technologies only provides benefits to the patients [8].

Finally, we would like to underline that given the exceptional situation that the world is facing at the moment with COVID-19 and in order to address the requirements of interventions that could improve the telematic treatment of patients and prevention of hospital collapses [4,35], ReMindCare could be used as an effective and efficient tool. Since quarantining in Spain began March 13, 2020, patients have not been permitted to come in person to their clinical appointments and have received their clinical evaluations by phone. Since that moment, the use of ReMindCare has been extremely useful to improve the evaluation and adherence of early psychosis patients. However, future analysis will be conducted in regard to this aspect.

As the conclusion of this study, we would like to point out that, to the best of our knowledge, ReMindCare is not only the first app to be integrated into the clinical practice, it is the first eHealth intervention with evidence that it improves the outcomes of early psychosis patients in a real-world care setting.

Acknowledgments
This study was supported by the Sanitary Research Institute of the University Clinic Hospital and the Mental Health Networking Biomedical Centre. It was also supported by the Generalitat Valenciana and the Program for Scientific Research, Technological Development, and Innovation in the Generalitat Valenciana of the European Union (2017/9830). It was also supported by grants from the Generalitat Valenciana (PROMETEO/2016/082, PROMETEO/2020/024), Carlos III Health Institute (PI13/00447; PI17/00402), and European Union through the European Regional Development Fund.
**Authors' Contributions**

LB and JS recruited and evaluated the patients. JS treated the patients, and LB supervised the app performance and the patients' responses and alarms. DA and IB developed the app and supervised its functioning, and they also drafted and discussed the paper. LB wrote the paper and analyzed the data. JS designed and supervised the project. JS and JT reviewed the data and supervised the final version of the manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

**References**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Abbreviations**

- **CGI-SI**: Clinical Global Impression Scale-Severity Illness
- **DSM-5**: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th Edition
- **EMA**: ecological momentary assessment
- **FEPP**: first episode of psychosis program
- **GAF**: Global Assessment of Functioning
- **PANSS**: Positive and Negative Syndrome Scale
- **PAS**: Premorbid Adjustment Scale
- **TAU**: treatment as usual

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22997 JMRI MHealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e22997 | p.174 (page number not for citation purposes)
Myofunctional Therapy App for Severe Apnea–Hypopnea Sleep Obstructive Syndrome: Pilot Randomized Controlled Trial

Carlos O'Connor-Reina1,2*, MD, PhD; Jose Maria Ignacio Garcia3,4*, MD, PhD; Elisa Rodriguez Ruiz3*, BS, MS; Maria Del Carmen Morillo Dominguez3*, MD; Victoria Ignacio Barrios3,4*, MD; Peter Baptista Jardin5*, MD, PhD; Juan Carlos Casado Morente1,2*, MD, PhD; Maria Teresa Garcia Iriarte6*, MD, PhD; Guillermo Plaza7,8*, MD, PhD

1Otorhinolaryngology Department, Hospital Quironsalud Marbella, Marbella, Spain
2Otorhinolaryngology Department, Hospital Quironsalud Campo de Gibraltar, Palmones (Cadiz), Spain
3Pulmonology Department, Hospital Quironsalud Marbella, Marbella, Spain
4Pulmonology Department, Hospital Quironsalud Campo de Gibraltar, Palmones (Cadiz), Spain
5Otorhinolaryngology Department, Clinica Universitaria de Navarra, Pamplona, Spain
6Otorhinolaryngology Department, Hospital Universitario Virgen de Valme, Sevilla, Spain
7Otorhinolaryngology Department, Hospital Universitario de Fuenlabrada, Universidad Rey Juan Carlos, Madrid, Spain
8Otorhinolaryngology Department, Hospital Sanitas la Zarzuela, Madrid, Spain
*all authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Carlos O'Connor-Reina, MD, PhD
Otorhinolaryngology Department
Hospital Quironsalud Marbella
Avda Severo Ochoa 22
Marbella
Spain
Phone: 34 952774200
Email: carlos.oconnor@quironsalud.es

Abstract

Background: Myofunctional therapy has demonstrated efficacy in treating sleep-disordered breathing. We assessed the clinical use of a new mobile health (mHealth) app that uses a smartphone to teach patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea–hypopnea syndrome (OSAHS) to perform oropharyngeal exercises.

Objective: We conducted a pilot randomized trial to evaluate the effects of the app in patients with severe OSAHS.

Methods: Forty patients with severe OSAHS (apnea–hypoxia index [AHI]>30) were enrolled prospectively and randomized into an intervention group that used the app for 90 sessions or a control group. Anthropometric measures, Epworth Sleepiness Scale (0-24), Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index (0-21), Iowa Oral Performance Instrument (IOPI) scores, and oxygen desaturation index were measured before and after the intervention.

Results: After the intervention, 28 patients remained. No significant changes were observed in the control group; however, the intervention group showed significant improvements in most metrics. AHI decreased by 53.4% from 44.7 (range 33.8-55.6) to 20.88 (14.02-27.7) events/hour (P<.001). The oxygen desaturation index decreased by 46.5% from 36.31 (27.19-43.43) to 19.4 (12.9-25.98) events/hour (P=.003). The IOPI maximum tongue score increased from 39.83 (35.32-45.2) to 59.06 (54.74-64.00) kPa (P<.001), and the IOPI maximum lip score increased from 27.89 (24.16-32.47) to 44.11 (39.5-48.8) kPa (P<.001). The AHI correlated significantly with IOPI tongue and lip improvements (Pearson correlation coefficient −0.56 and −0.46, respectively; both P<.001). The Epworth Sleepiness Scale score decreased from 10.33 (8.71-12.24) to 5.37 (3.45-7.28) in the app group (P<.001), but the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index did not change significantly.

Conclusions: Orofacial exercises performed using an mHealth app reduced OSAHS severity and symptoms, and represent a promising treatment for OSAHS.

myofunctional therapy; oropharyngeal exercises; mHealth; sleep apnea; smartphone app; app; sleep; therapy; apnea; randomized trial; efficacy

Introduction

Background

Obstructive sleep apnea–hypopnea syndrome (OSAHS) is a serious health problem worldwide [1], and is associated with morbidities such as hypertension, arrhythmia, and cerebrovascular diseases. The classic treatment of this syndrome is based on dietary measures, weight loss, and exercise, and the use of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP). Other treatment options include upper airway surgery, mandibular advancement devices, and upper airway stimulation devices (UASDs) that bring the tongue forward to prevent it from falling backward and collapsing the airway. The success rates of treating the airway obstacle or correcting the muscles vary. Indications and the success rate for all treatments depend on patient compliance with the treatment and the severity of the disease [2].

Patients with OSAHS present with impaired sensorimotor deficits located in the upper airway muscles [3]. These deficits are associated with apraxia [4], hypotonia [5], and changes in the type of muscle fibers from type I to types IIa and IIb, which lead to early fatigue and can interfere with the ability to perform prolonged exercise [6]. These deficits can lead to impairment of proprioceptive acuity in the upper airway muscles [4]. The best rehabilitation for improving this pathology is proprioceptive training in association with visual or acoustic feedback [7].

Myofunctional therapy is one of the newest treatments for sleep-disordered breathing [8], which is based on daily exercises using the oropharyngeal muscles in an attempt to strengthen them and to facilitate opening of the airway. OSAHS originates from suboptimal function of the dilator muscles of the airway. Therefore, myofunctional therapy is designed, theoretically, to deal with the underlying mechanism of this disease [9]. The patient is instructed to perform these exercises regularly for 20-40 minutes daily for at least 3 months [10]. In some cases, patients perform the exercises independently at home without substantial feedback and without giving precise information to the therapist about their performance of the exercises, and this type of therapy is associated with low adherence [11].

Most existing mobile health (mHealth) apps for OSAHS focus on the diagnosis of snoring or OSAHS [12], and a few are designed to promote adherence to treatment with CPAP [13]. None of these apps is used alone to treat OSAHS. Mobile technology may be valuable for treating people with OSAHS because it may promote patient empowerment and self-management [12].

Therefore, we conducted this pilot randomized trial to evaluate a new mHealth app based on proprioceptive training, which was designed to promote oropharyngeal exercises through interactions with a smartphone. In this prospective, randomized, multicenter clinical study, we evaluated adherence to the app and its effectiveness in a group of patients with severe OSAHS, as identified by an apnea–hypoxia index (AHI)>30 compared with a control group of similar patients who did not participate in the intervention.

Objectives

Primary Objectives

The main objectives were to study the effects of the AirwayGym app on adherence to myofunctional therapy and on the AHI in patients recently diagnosed with severe OSAHS (AHI>30).

Secondary Objectives

The secondary objectives were to evaluate the change in the oxygen desaturation index (ODI), use of the Iowa Oral Performance Instrument (IOPI) score to evaluate the effects of the app on the tone of the genioglossus and buccinator muscles, and use of the Epworth Sleepiness Scale and Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index questionnaires to evaluate subjective morning somnolence and sleep quality.

Methods

Study Overview

This was a nonsponsored study coordinated by the Pulmonology and Otolaryngology Departments of Quirónsalud Marbella Hospital and Campo de Gibraltar Hospital, Andalucía, Spain. The protocol was designed and written by the authors and is available in Multimedia Appendix 1. The protocol was approved by the governmental review board (AWGAPN-2019-01). All patients provided informed consent. An independent data and safety monitoring board regularly reviewed data on serious or nonserious adverse events and study quality. The authors vouch for the accuracy and completeness of the data reported and for the fidelity of the study to the protocol. All investigators were GCP-certified.

The CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) checklist [14] is shown in Multimedia Appendix 2.

Design

This was a prospective controlled quasiexperimental clinical study in patients with severe OSAHS (AHI>30).

Participants and Recruitment

Patients newly diagnosed with severe OSAHS based on the results of polysomnography or respiratory polygraphy with measures of AHI and oxygen saturation were recruited offline in a clinical setting. All sleep studies were interpreted manually by a sleep technician according to the standard criteria of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine Manual for the Scoring of Sleep and Associated Events [15], and the interpretations were reviewed by certified physicians.
Information about the inclusion and exclusion criteria, evaluation of the type of smartphone used, previous experience with the app, and the study protocol are provided in Multimedia Appendix 1.

All patients agreed to participate and provided offline informed consent. At the initial visit, participants were evaluated by an otolaryngologist who performed rhinofibrolaryngoscopy, Friedman staging, the Marchesani protocol [16], and examination of temporomandibular joint dysfunction. Patients with grade IV tonsils, complete nasal obstruction, ankyloglossia, or problems with temporomandibular joint dysfunction were excluded from the study. In a second visit, anthropometric variables, including weight, height, and neck and waist circumferences, were measured, and the BMI was calculated. The Friedman staging, Epworth Sleepiness Scale, and Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index questionnaires were completed, and IOPI lingual and buccinator scores were obtained.

Randomization
Randomization was based on the consecutive order of patient enrollment. A pulmonologist specialist allocated odd-numbered patients to the AirwayGym app group and even-numbered patients to the control group.

Intervention
Participants in the AirwayGym group were instructed about the use of the app and the exercises to perform for 20 minutes daily. Follow-up visits for both the AirwayGym and control groups occurred after 1 month (visit 3) and 3 months (visit 4). At these visits, all variables were measured again and the questionnaires were completed, and the patients were asked whether they were using any other therapies. In the final visit at 3 months, polysomnography or polygraphy was performed for both groups. The total study duration for each participant was 3 months.

Participants were excluded from the study if they were lost to follow up because they did not attend hospital visits or if they lost ≥5% of body weight during the study. Patients in the AirwayGym group were also excluded if they did not perform ≤85% of the scheduled exercise sessions, as monitored by the app.

Myofunctional Therapy App
Participants in the AirwayGym group committed to using the AirwayGym app. This app was created as a collaboration between the sleep units of Quironosalud Marbella Hospital and Campo de Gibraltar Hospital. The app can be thought of as a portable fitness app except that the user is intended for patients rather than athletes, and therapists rather than trainers provide the instructions. The novelty of this app is that it is the first app in the health care market that allows the patient to interact directly with the smartphone without needing any other device. The app focuses on sleep apnea disease and improving proprioceptive deficits. When used with the app, the phone provides acoustic feedback about the efficacy of the exercises performed.

The app includes 9 exercises based on myofunctional therapy (Figure 1) that are aimed at improving the tonicity of the various muscles involved in the pathogenesis of OSAHS. Before every exercise, an animated demonstration and a video show the patient how to perform the exercise. After each exercise, the patient receives visual, acoustic, and tactile feedback about the success of their performance as a point score. When the patient finishes the exercises, the results are saved on a networked online storage (in the cloud), and a therapist can evaluate the patient’s performance of the exercises. Users of the app can follow the progress of their daily activity over time (Figure 2). A chat function is available through which the patient can contact the therapist directly. Additional information can be found on the AirwayGym webpage [17]. This app complies with regulations 2002/58/CE and (UE) 2016/679 concerning data protection. The app was provided free to each participant.

The main objective of the exercises in the app is to increase the tone of the extrinsic muscles of the tongue (genioglossus, hyoglossus, styloglossus, and palatoglossus). The exercises are based on those described elsewhere [10] and have been adapted to allow feedback using a smartphone (see Multimedia Appendices 3-12).
Figure 1. Screenshot of a gif showing an exercise.

Figure 2. Screenshot of a patient’s progress in following the exercises for 1 year.
Sleep Laboratory Procedures

Standard laboratory polysomnography (Somté PSG, Compumedics Ltd 2006, Abbotsford, Australia) was performed according to the technical specifications of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine [15]. The recorded variables were obtained using electroencephalography (C3-A2, C4-A1, O1-A2, O2-A1), electrooculography (2 channels), chin and leg electromyography, and electrocardiography. Frontal electrodes were not used. Respiratory variables were measured using linearized nasal pressure prongs and the flow waveform of the oronasal thermal signals. Respiratory effort signals were measured through inductive bands that recorded ribcage and abdominal movements. Oxygen saturation, body position, and snoring were also registered.

Respiratory polygraphy was performed using an Embletta portable diagnostic system (ResMed, Sydney, Australia) according to the technical specifications of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine [15]. Measurements were obtained using a snoring sensor, nasal thermistor, and nasal pressure cannula to register airflow; thoracic and abdominal belts to assess ribcage and abdominal movements; electrocardiography; actigraphy to detect body position; oxygen saturation; and heart rate.

All patients were evaluated using the same testing procedure (polysomnography or respiratory polygraphy) before and after the intervention. The results for each participant were analyzed manually by a technician who was blinded to the participant’s assigned group.

The pulmonologist’s medical evaluation was used to determine which test was chosen for each patient. Apnea and hypopnea were analyzed and scored according to the following criteria. Hypopnea was defined as a ≥30% decrease in airflow signal amplitude lasting ≥10 seconds and accompanied by ≥3% oxygen desaturation. Apnea was defined as a ≥90% decrease in airflow signal amplitude lasting ≥10 seconds. The ODI was used to quantify oxygen desaturation ≥3% Both tests were used to define moderate OSAHS as an AHI of 15-29.9 events/hour of sleep and severe OSA as ≥30 events/hour of sleep.

IOPI Measurements

detailed information about this device and measurements is provided in Multimedia Appendix 1.

Sample Size Derivation

The effectiveness of the use of the app for performing myofunctional therapy in patients with severe OSAHS was evaluated using the percentage changes in the AHI observed during follow up as the primary outcome measure. This percentage was calculated from results reported in previous studies of myofunctional therapy [10,18,19]. Based on an α level of .05 and power of 0.80, we estimated that 30 participants were required. To account for potential loss during the inclusion process (including patients with selection bias, early withdrawal, or loss to follow up, we doubled the sample size to 60. The sample size was calculated using XLSTAT (v16 Addinsoft France).

Data Analysis

Data were collected in a database. Nominal variables are described by their frequency distribution. Quantitative variables were assessed by calculating the median and IQR. Baseline characteristics of the 2 groups of patients with OSAHS were compared using two-tailed paired t-tests for continuous variables and the chi-squared or Fisher exact test for nominal variables. For variables with a skewed distribution, the Mann-Whitney U test was used. Pearson correlational analysis was used to assess the associations between the changes in the AHI and changes in possible explanatory variables, including BMI and neck and waist circumferences. A P value <.05 was considered to be significant.

Results

Patients

Of the 60 patients initially recruited, 40 patients were enrolled and randomized from February 2019 to July 2020. Twenty of the 60 patients were excluded, 10 (17%) because of the exclusion criteria and 10 (17%) because of findings in the otorhinolaryngologist’s examination. Six of the 40 patients were excluded because of a change in body weight, 4 voluntarily abandoned the study in the control group, and 2 patients were lost because of poor adherence to therapy in the AirwayGym group. Finally, the data for 28 patients (22 men) were included in the study (Figure 3). Half of the participants in the control group were lost to follow up.

The baseline demographic and sleep characteristics are presented for the two groups in Table 1. There were no significant differences in any characteristics, including age, weight, and BMI, between the two groups. In addition, at the baseline, the AHI did not differ within or between the groups (Table 1).
Figure 3. CONSORT flowchart for pilot randomized trials for recruitment of participants in this study. AGG: AirwayGym group; CG: control group.
## Table 1. Baseline characteristics of the study participants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Control (n=10)</th>
<th>AirwayGym (n=18)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anthropometric data</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), median (IQR)</td>
<td>63.9 (56.4-71.38)</td>
<td>59.17 (53.7-64.6)</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (20)</td>
<td>4 (22)</td>
<td>.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body weight (kg), median (IQR)</td>
<td>87.7 (77.9-97.4)</td>
<td>86.11 (77.4-94.8)</td>
<td>.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (cm), median (IQR)</td>
<td>170.2 (166.2-174.1)</td>
<td>177.1 (166.3-177.9)</td>
<td>.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waist circumference (cm), median (IQR)</td>
<td>109.1 (97.5-120.6)</td>
<td>109.2 (102.9-115.4)</td>
<td>.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck circumference (cm), median (IQR)</td>
<td>43.7 (40.3-47)</td>
<td>43.74 (41.03-46.4)</td>
<td>.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²), median (IQR)</td>
<td>29.6 (27.1-32.08)</td>
<td>28.9 (26.8-31.02)</td>
<td>.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedman stage, n (stage)</td>
<td>2 (I), 3 (II), 2 (III), 3 (IV)</td>
<td>4 (I), 4 (II), 3 (III), 7 (IV)</td>
<td>.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Polysomnography data</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHI a/hour, median (IQR)</td>
<td>47.36 (38.59-56.13)</td>
<td>44.77 (33.841-55.69)</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODI b, median (IQR)</td>
<td>40.6 (29.46-51.81)</td>
<td>36.31 (27.1-43.43)</td>
<td>.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tone measures (kPa)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPI max tongue c, median (IQR)</td>
<td>42 (32.67-51.33)</td>
<td>40.26 (35.32-45.2)</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPI max lips d, median (IQR)</td>
<td>28.10 (23.7-32.5)</td>
<td>28.3 (24.16-32.47)</td>
<td>.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Questionnaires</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index, median (IQR)</td>
<td>8.80 (7.12-10.48)</td>
<td>10.1 (8.22-11.99)</td>
<td>.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epworth Sleepiness Scale, median (IQR)</td>
<td>9.3 (6.6-12)</td>
<td>10.47 (8.71-12.24)</td>
<td>.42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a AHI: apnea–hypopnea index.
b ODI: oxygen desaturation index.
d maximum tongue elevation strength.
e maximum lip strength.

### Intervention

After the intervention period, none of the variables changed significantly in the control group (Table 2). Conversely, significant changes from before to after the intervention were observed in the AirwayGym group. The adherence to the therapy in the AirwayGym group was 90%. No adverse reactions were registered.
Table 2. Changes in variables from the baseline to 3-month follow up in the control and AirwayGym groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Control group (n=10)</th>
<th>AirwayGym group (n=18)</th>
<th>P value</th>
<th>Control group (n=10)</th>
<th>AirwayGym group (n=18)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baseline, median (IQR)</td>
<td>After 3 months, median (IQR)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Baseline, median (IQR)</td>
<td>After 3 months, median (IQR)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthropometric data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body weight (kg)</td>
<td>87.7 (77.9-97.4)</td>
<td>87.3 (78.03-95.66)</td>
<td>.95</td>
<td>86.1 (77.4-94.8)</td>
<td>86.00 (77.93-94.06)</td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (cm)</td>
<td>170.2 (166.2-174.1)</td>
<td>169.80 (166.27-174.12)</td>
<td>.98</td>
<td>177.1 (166.3-177.9)</td>
<td>172.6 (167.3-177.9)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waist circumference (cm)</td>
<td>109.1 (97.5-120.6)</td>
<td>108.5 (96.9-120.10)</td>
<td>.94</td>
<td>109.2 (102.9-115.4)</td>
<td>108.84 (102.7-114.9)</td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck circumference (cm)</td>
<td>43.7 (40.3-47)</td>
<td>43.5 (40.33-46.67)</td>
<td>.92</td>
<td>43.74 (41.03-46.4)</td>
<td>44.6 (42.12-47.2)</td>
<td>.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m^2)</td>
<td>29.63 (27.1-32.08)</td>
<td>29.6 (27.35-31.84)</td>
<td>.94</td>
<td>28.9 (26.8-31.02)</td>
<td>28.81 (26.79-30.83)</td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysomnography data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHI^a (events/hour)</td>
<td>47.36 (38.59-56.13)</td>
<td>35.00 (31.2-38.7)</td>
<td>.07</td>
<td>44.77 (33.84-55.69)</td>
<td>20.88 (14.02-27.74)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODI^b</td>
<td>40.64 (29.46-51.81)</td>
<td>32.03 (24.14-39.91)</td>
<td>.17</td>
<td>36.31 (27.19-43.43)</td>
<td>19.4 (12.9-25.98)</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone measures (kPa)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPI^c max tongue^d</td>
<td>42 (32.67-51.33)</td>
<td>44.2 (34.1-54.2)</td>
<td>.72</td>
<td>39.83 (35.32-45.2)</td>
<td>59.06 (54.74-64.00)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPI max lips^e</td>
<td>28.10 (23.7-32.5)</td>
<td>31.3 (26.6-35.9)</td>
<td>.27</td>
<td>27.89 (24.16-32.47)</td>
<td>44.11 (39.5-48.8)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questionnaires</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index</td>
<td>8.80 (7.12-10.48)</td>
<td>9.78 (7.2-12.11)</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>10.2 (8.22-11.99)</td>
<td>8.28 (5.97-10.35)</td>
<td>.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epworth Sleepiness Scale</td>
<td>9.3 (6.6-12.0)</td>
<td>9.6 (6.8-12.3)</td>
<td>.86</td>
<td>10.33 (8.71-12.24)</td>
<td>5.37 (3.45-7.28)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^aAHI: apnea–hypopnea index.  
^bODI: oxygen desaturation index. 
^dmaximum tongue elevation strength. 
^emaximum lip strength.

Anthropometric Data

The anthropometric measures did not change significantly in the intervention group (Table 2).

Laboratory and IOPI Measurements

The AHI decreased by 53.36% from 44.7 (IQR 33.8-55.6) to 20.88 (IQR 14.02-27.7) events/hour (P<.001) (Figure 4). The ODI score decreased by 46.5% from 36.31 (IQR 27.19-43.43) to 19.4 (IQR 12.9-25.98) events/hour (P=.003). The IOPI maximum tongue elevation strength score increased from 39.83 (IQR 35.32-45.20) to 59.06 (IQR 54.74-64.00) kPa (P<.001) (Figure 5). The IOPI maximum lip score increased from 27.89 (IQR 24.16-32.47) to 44.11 (IQR 39.5-48.80) kPa (P<.001) (Figure 6). The AHI correlated significantly with improvements in the IOPI tongue and lip scores (Pearson coefficients −0.56, P<.001 and −0.46, P<.001, respectively).
Figure 4. Apnea–hypopnea index (AHI) before (baseline) and after 3 months in patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea. Intragroup comparison from before to after the study was performed using the Wilcoxon test owing to the skewed data distribution. CG: control group; AGG: AirwayGym group.

Figure 5. Iowa Oral Performance Instrument (IOPI) tongue strength (kPa) at baseline and after 3 months in patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea. The intragroup comparison is shown from before to after the study. AGG: AirwayGym group; CG: control group.
Questionnaires
The Epworth Sleepiness Scale score decreased from 10.33 (IQR 8.71-12.24) to 5.37 (IQR 3.45-7.28) (P<.001). However, the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index did not change significantly in the AirwayGym group.

Discussion
Principal Findings
This prospective study showed that an mHealth app that includes education about myofunctional therapy exercises for patients with severe OSAHS helped to improve the AHI and upper airway muscle tone. This is the first report in the literature to show significant correlations between the increase in tone, as measured by the IOPI, and improvements in the AHI in patients with severe OSAHS.

The main criticisms of previous reports on the use of myofunctional therapy to treat OSAHS patients are that the myofunctional therapy included different kinds of exercises and the authors did not explain the reason for improvement [8]. The clinical trial by Guimaraes et al [10] reported a significant reduction in neck circumference, which may explain the effectiveness of the exercises. Our app provides one unique set of exercises with acoustic, visual, and tactile feedback. We found no significant change in neck circumference, which suggests that increasing muscle tone, as measured by the IOPI, helped to improve the AHI.

Eckert [20] reported the use of myofunctional therapy and UASDs as an elective treatment for patients with a hypotonic phenotype associated with OSAHS. Our results may be similar to those obtained with a stimulator [21], but the app costs less and does not appear to be associated with adverse effects. Another difference after myofunctional therapy is that the IOPI scores increased after use of the app, whereas UASDs have not been found to increase IOPI scores [22]. Active voluntary movement is required to increase the muscle tone, but UASDs do not elicit such movement. However, the app must be evaluated for a longer time, 1 year or more, as performed with UASDs, to make definitive conclusions [21].

We believe that the reason for the success of this app in patients with severe OSAHS is that myofunctional therapy must be based on proprioceptive training because of the sensorimotor deficit in the upper airway muscles in these patients [4]. All clinical studies reported to date are based on isometric and isotonic exercises in patients with moderate or severe sleep apnea, and used videos and diagrams [10,13,19]. Our app is based on proprioceptive training using isometric and isotonic exercises, which led to satisfactory results in these patients with severe OSAHS.

The main disadvantages of myofunctional therapy are the poor adherence to therapy [23] and the absence of objective feedback [10,11]. Adherence to myofunctional therapy was high in our study, possibly because of the ease of contact with a practitioner and the acoustic and visual feedback about the patient’s performance given by the app for every exercise [24]. Monthly visits for measurement of IOPI scores can also provide an objective way to evaluate patient progress and to promote adherence.

Instead of using placebo exercises, as employed in other studies [25], we chose to withhold therapy for the control group because

Figure 6. Iowa Oral Performance Instrument (IOPI) lip strength (kPa) at baseline and after 3 months in patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea. The intragroup comparison is shown from before to after the study. AGG: AirwayGym group; CG: control group.
there is no separate app that could be used as a control. This study also describes a new method for delivering upper airway exercise training for which there is no comparable study available to date.

The selection of patients suitable for myofunctional therapy is important [18]. The efficacy of this therapy may be limited in patients with restricted tongue movement, permanently blocked nose, or temporomandibular joint disorder. Therefore, patients with OSAHS should be examined by a therapist with knowledge of the use of myofunctional therapy before beginning such therapy [26]. In our study, 10 patients (16.6%) were rejected because of one of these conditions. This app is suitable only for improving upper airway muscle tone and does not correct other myofunctional therapy disorders [27]. Future studies are needed to identify the hypotonic phenotype(s) suitable for this therapy. As we have suggested previously [28], patients with a low IOPI score are good candidates for myofunctional therapy.

Although further evidence of the efficacy of this app is needed, we consider that this therapy will help to improve adherence to other treatments, as has been suggested previously [28-30]. In addition, conventional treatments such as CPAP or sleep surgery have been restricted during the COVID-19 pandemic [31], and this app may be a reasonable therapeutic option, as we have reported recently [24].

Despite the strengths of this pilot study mentioned above, we note several limitations. First, the number of participants was small. Second, we found a significant loss of participants in the control group (50%), who were instructed not to perform any therapy once they had been diagnosed with severe OSAHS. Despite this loss, our sample size was similar to that included in other clinical studies of this therapy [10,18,19]. The number of patients in the control group was low because we found significant differences in the therapy group early during the study. We therefore decided not to enroll more patients in the control group because of the difficulties experienced by patients with severe OSAHS not given appropriate therapy and the restrictions on sleep studies during the COVID-19 pandemic. Third, as this was a nonsponsored pilot trial, we initially attempted to perform polysomnography studies in all patients, but this test slowed our trial. We decided to use laboratory polygraphy because we found no significant differences in the accuracy of the outcomes AHI and ODI between polysomnography and polygraphy provided that the pre- and postintervention measures were obtained by the same team and equipment. Finally, this pilot trial was registered at clinicaltrials.gov during the performance of the study.

Conclusions

In patients with OSAHS who performed myofunctional therapy exercises using this app, the severity of symptoms decreased and the tone of the upper airway muscles increased after 3 months. This app may represent a promising treatment for OSAHS given its convenience and availability of the mobile phone market.

Conflicts of Interest

CR is the creator of, and has financial interest in, the AirwayGym app. All other authors declare no conflict of interest.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Study protocol.
[DOCX File, 580 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app1.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 2
CONSORT checklist.
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 2414 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Screenshots from the app.
[PPTX File, 850 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app3.pptx]

Multimedia Appendix 4
Video of exercise 1: chromatic snake.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 11722 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app4.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 5
Video of exercise 2: Snake.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 5819 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app5.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 6
Video of exercise 3: Chameleon up.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 8015 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app6.mp4]
Multimedia Appendix 7
Video of exercise 4: Chameleon down.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 15004 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app7.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 8
Video of exercise 5: Tongue left cheek.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 7315 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app8.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 9
Video of exercise 6: Tongue right cheek.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 6410 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app9.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 10
Video of exercise 7: Pressure under the chin.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 7033 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app10.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 11
Video of exercise 8: Left mandibular pressure.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 7782 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app11.mp4]

Multimedia Appendix 12
Video of exercise 9: Right mandibular pressure.
[MP4 File (MP4 Video), 7814 KB - mhealth_v8i11e23123_app12.mp4]

References


Technology-Enabled Health Care Collaboration in Pediatric Chronic Illness: Pre-Post Interventional Study for Feasibility, Acceptability, and Clinical Impact of an Electronic Health Record–Linked Platform for Patient-Clinician Partnership

Lisa Opipari-Arrigan¹,²,³*, PhD; Dana M H Dykes⁴, MD; Shehzad A Saeed⁵,⁶, MD; Sunny Thakkar¹, BA; Lisa Burns³,⁷, MD; Barbara A Chin³,⁷, MD; Gary L McPhail¹,⁷, MD; Ian Eslick⁸, PhD; Peter A Margolis¹,³, MD PhD; Heather C Kaplan¹,³,⁹*, MD, MSCE

¹Anderson Center for Health Systems Excellence, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, United States
²Behavioral Medicine and Clinical Psychology, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, United States
³Department of Pediatrics, University of Cincinnati College of Medicine, Cincinnati, OH, United States
⁴GI Care for Kids, Atlanta, GA, United States
⁵Gastroenterology and Nutrition, Dayton Children’s Hospital, Dayton, OH, United States
⁶Gastroenterology and Nutrition, Wright State University, Dayton, OH, United States
⁷Pulmonary Medicine, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, United States
⁸Vital Labs, Inc, San Francisco, CA, United States
⁹Perinatal Institute, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinatti, OH, United States

*these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Lisa Opipari-Arrigan, PhD
Anderson Center for Health Systems Excellence
Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center
3333 Burnet Ave
Cincinnati, OH, 45229
United States
Phone: 1 5136364200
Email: lisa.opipari@cchmc.org

Abstract

Background: Mobile health (mHealth) technology has the potential to support the Chronic Care Model’s vision of closed feedback loops and patient-clinician partnerships.

Objective: This study aims to evaluate the feasibility, acceptability, and short-term impact of an electronic health record–linked mHealth platform (Orchestra) supporting patient and clinician collaboration through real-time, bidirectional data sharing.

Methods: We conducted a 6-month prospective, pre-post, proof-of-concept study of Orchestra among patients and parents in the Cincinnati Children’s Hospital inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) and cystic fibrosis (CF) clinics. Participants and clinicians used Orchestra during and between visits to complete and view patient-reported outcome (PRO) measures and previsit plans. Surveys completed at baseline and at 3- and 6-month follow-up visits plus data from the platform were used to assess outcomes including PRO completion rates, weekly platform use, disease self-efficacy, and impact on care. Analyses included descriptive statistics; pre-post comparisons; Pearson correlations; and, if applicable, effect sizes.

Results: We enrolled 92 participants (CF: n=52 and IBD: n=40), and 73% (67/92) completed the study. Average PRO completion was 61%, and average weekly platform use was 80%. Participants reported improvement in self-efficacy from baseline to 6 months (7.90 to 8.44; P=.006). At 6 months, most participants reported that the platform was useful (36/40, 90%) and had a positive impact on their care, including improved visit quality (33/40, 83%), visit collaboration (35/40, 88%), and visit preparation (31/40, 78%). PRO completion was positively associated with multiple indicators of care impact at 3 and 6 months.
Conclusions: Use of an mHealth tool to support closed feedback loops through real-time data sharing and patient-clinician collaboration is feasible and shows indications of acceptability and promise as a strategy for improving pediatric chronic illness management.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e11968) doi:10.2196/11968

KEYWORDS
health services research; mHealth; eHealth; patient engagement; chronic illness; mobile phone

Introduction

Background

Optimal management of pediatric chronic illness requires a different type of health care system [1,2]. Current models of care organized around treating acute, episodic conditions no longer meet the needs of the growing number of children with chronic health problems [3,4]. Although, organizationally, care is focused around the clinic visit, more than 99% of patients’ lives are spent outside of this context. The Chronic Care Model positions informed, activated patients and prepared, proactive clinicians as foundational to improved health outcomes. However, it is difficult for most clinicians to be informed about what happens outside of the clinic. In turn, most patients have neither easy, understandable access to their own clinical data nor systematic ways to reliably measure and communicate changes in daily functioning. This is a missed opportunity for optimizing health care. Failing to connect what happens day-to-day with clinical decision-making leads to reactive instead of proactive care based on hazy memories, missing information, and subjective impressions of how things have been going.

Mobile health (mHealth) technology offers the opportunity to address these gaps by expanding care beyond the boundaries of time-limited, infrequent clinical encounters to support data sharing, communication, and collaborative decision-making between patients and clinicians [5-9]. This potential has encouraged considerable attention from the health care and technology industries; however, we have yet to see mHealth have a transformative effect on chronic care delivery systems or outcomes. Although the number of digital health apps, portals, and dashboards is rapidly increasing, evidence of their impact has been mixed and modest [10]. Some studies have demonstrated that mHealth supports improved engagement and adherence. For example, text messaging interventions have demonstrated that mHealth supports improved engagement and adherence [10,26,28]. Both technological design elements and clinical care integration likely contribute to an mHealth tool’s success or failure [24]. Tools that only enable tracking and display of user data may build awareness but are likely insufficient to engage individuals in health behavior change [24-26] and surmount the burden of data entry [22]. Rather, mHealth tools that support the Chronic Care Model’s vision of closed feedback loops and patient-clinician partnership, through making data relevant, understandable, and actionable and by facilitating collaboration, are more likely to be adopted and retained [26,27]. Beyond the technology itself, purposeful integration with clinical care, so that both patients and clinicians understand the why and how of incorporating mHealth tools, is paramount to achieving impact [10,26,28].

Objectives

The purpose of this study is to test the feasibility, acceptability, and short-term impact of using an mHealth tool to facilitate the Chronic Care Model’s vision of closed feedback loops and patient-clinician partnerships. As there was no available commercial platform that reliably enabled the functionality needed to support the Chronic Care Model’s approach to continuous care, we developed an mHealth tool with patient and clinician end users to support pediatric chronic care during and between clinical encounters. The Orchestra platform [29] was designed to enable proactive and collaborative chronic care through (a) real-time sharing and visualization of clinical and patient-generated (ie, patient-reported outcome, PRO) data, (b) automated symptom surveillance with actionable alerts to signal changes in patient status based on patient-generated data, and (c) collaborative previsit planning. As a first step, this prospective, preliminary pre-post study tested Orchestra in 2 pediatric chronic diseases (cystic fibrosis [CF] and inflammatory bowel disease [IBD]). We hypothesized that parents, patients, and clinicians would find Orchestra feasible and acceptable and that we would see signals of clinically meaningful impact.

Methods

Setting and Patient Population

This study was conducted within the IBD and CF clinics at Cincinnati Children’s Hospital (CCH; Ohio, United States) and was approved by the CCH Institutional Review Board (#2014-0975). We conducted the work at CCH because of our existing relationships with clinics that had an interest and ability to partner with us in this proof-of-concept study. We used a convenience sample of patients and parents from the CCH CF and IBD clinics. The CF and IBD clinics were chosen to ensure that our study included conditions that varied in disease course, management, and time demands associated with daily care.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e11968
Eligible participants were patients with IBD or CF aged between 14 and 21 years and/or a parent or legal guardian of patients aged between 0 and 21 years. If a patient was less than 14 years old, only their parent was enrolled in the study and used the Orchestra app. If a patient was older than 14 years, the family decided if only the patient, only the parent, or both would enroll and use the Orchestra app. Participants were English speaking or reading and had a smartphone (iOS or Android) with a mobile data plan and/or internet connectivity.

Study Design and Protocol

This was a preliminary, prospective pre-post, proof-of-concept study. Recruitment began in May 2015 and continued for 1 year. Follow-up data collection was completed in fall 2016. Eligible participants were identified via clinic rosters and were contacted by research staff, who were not part of the clinical team, before or at a clinic visit. Interested participants watched a 3-min video describing Orchestra while waiting for their visit and then discussed with their clinicians how they might use Orchestra as part of their care. Following the visit, participants met with staff to sign the informed consent form, download the Orchestra mobile app, and customize settings. Participants were enrolled for 6 months.

Orchestra Technology Platform

The Orchestra technology platform [29] was developed with clinicians, patients, and parents via a user-centered, agile design process. The platform included a patient- or parent-facing mobile app and a linked clinician-facing web-based dashboard. Patient or parent functionality included the following (Figure 1):

- Library of PRO measures [31,32] that could be selected for symptom and general health tracking based on patient goals and customized for daily or weekly completion. There were 35 predetermined measures available for IBD (eg, abdominal pain frequency, stool consistency, and fatigue) and 28 available for CF (eg, energy level, cough severity, and appetite). Participants could also create custom symptoms with their clinician if needed (Multimedia Appendix 1).
- Real-time visualization of PRO data.
- PRO data point annotation and journal entry features for recording observations.
- Previsit health report showing disease-specific laboratory data (ie, C-reactive protein and hematocrit) and health metrics (ie, weight and pulmonary function tests) with simple visualizations and text descriptions of results and trends as well as personalized suggestions for topics to discuss with clinicians.
- Previsit plan (PVP) completion to inform clinical teams about patient symptoms, goals, and questions before a clinic visit.

**Figure 1.** “Orchestra” participant mobile app example screens. PRO: patient-reported outcome; PVP: previsit plan.

The clinician-facing web-based dashboard was accessed via Epic (Epic Systems Corporation), the electronic medical record, using a customized configuration that enabled one-click, single sign-on authentication. Clinical users included physicians and nurses in IBD and physicians, nurses, dietitians, a social worker, a respiratory therapist, and a psychologist in CF. The clinician dashboard enabled the following (Figure 2):

- Real-time visualization of PRO data and review of PVPs.
- Addition of notes to a patient’s account visible by the patient or parent and other clinical staff.
- Notification if a patient’s symptoms met prespecified criteria based on PRO data. Alert triggers were customizable and based on meeting a threshold value and/or meeting standard statistical process control criteria of 8 data points above or below the median after a 20-data point baseline was established [33]. If alerts were triggered, clinicians were notified via the Orchestra dashboard and email.
Orchestra Intervention

Use of the Orchestra technology platform was accompanied by a delivery system intervention to integrate the technology into clinical workflows and patients’ lives, personalize goals for use, and establish accountability for system use between participants and clinicians. All clinicians who cared for patients, including physicians, nurses, dietitians, a respiratory therapist, a social worker, and a psychologist, received training on the use of Orchestra [29]. Participants and clinicians used shared decision-making during the baseline clinic visit to discuss their preferences and goals for Orchestra use, select which PROs to complete and at what frequency, and decide who (patient and/or parent) would use the tool. Clinicians discussed health concerns and goals with patients (eg, reducing symptoms, reducing medications, and preventing exacerbations) and identified whether using Orchestra would help achieve these goals. The clinician and family then reviewed the PRO and symptom measures available in Orchestra and determined which measures were most relevant to addressing the identified goals. They also established a social contract to set expectations regarding between-visit data completion (by participant), review (by clinician), and communication (participant-clinician). Clinicians chose whether to set data alerts and customized trigger points based on the PROs selected and patient needs.

To reinforce the use of Orchestra by demonstrating that data collected between visits were reviewed, a designated clinical team member was asked to review the data entered into the Orchestra platform each week and within 1 day of receiving a data alert. In addition, clinicians were asked to review PVP and PRO data before all clinic visits. At visits, clinicians were encouraged, at least, to verbally acknowledge reviewing the data and ideally to use the data for discussion and decision making.

Data Collection

Participants completed study assessments at baseline and 3- and 6-month follow-up visits during regularly scheduled clinic appointments. As this tool was designed to be used as part of clinical care, if a patient did not have a clinic appointment within ±1 month of a follow-up time point, the assessment was not completed. Participants were still included in the study if they did not have an appropriately timed follow-up visit, but that specific assessment was considered missing.

Health status indicators, including the Physician Global Assessment (PGA) Score (IBD) and forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV1) percent predicted (CF), were collected from the electronic health record to understand the baseline health of participants. The PGA score is an indicator of disease severity that is rated at each clinic visit by the physician and is based on symptoms, clinical exam, and laboratory measures [34]. PGA is used to classify disease as in remission, mild, moderate, or severe. FEV1 is calculated as part of pulmonary function testing and is an established marker of disease progression in CF [35]. The lower the FEV1 percent predicted, the more severe the lung disease.

Clinicians and research staff reported on baseline technology discussion and set-up time via a paper and pencil measure completed immediately following the patient visit. In addition, the patient’s physician and, if applicable, a second clinical team member involved in using Orchestra completed surveys after each visit regarding their assessment of the patient and parent’s engagement in the visit and their experience using Orchestra. However, due to an inability to obtain responses in a timely manner from clinicians, the data were not analyzed.

Outcomes

The feasibility of implementing and supporting Orchestra in care was assessed by measuring the percentage of eligible patients with access to a smartphone with data plan or internet connectivity, minutes spent discussing Orchestra (self-reported by the clinician at baseline), minutes spent enrolling and setting up the Orchestra app (self-reported by research staff), and participants’ report of whether Orchestra was used during follow-up visits. One facet of acceptability was assessed by measuring usage of the app including PRO completion (ie, percentage of PROs a participant answered), weekly engagement with the mobile app (ie, percentage of weeks a participant input data at least once), and PVP completion (percentage of PVPs
that were submitted in the app). We examined the short-term impact of Orchestra on disease self-efficacy, visit engagement, and care impact, including perceived care quality, patient-clinician collaboration, visit preparation, disease insight, treatment plan quality, and perceived usefulness. As we did not expect health outcomes to change over the 6-month study period, we focused on measures of short-term meaningful clinical impact that reflected participants’ perceptions of their ability to manage their illness (efficacy) as well as their perceptions of their clinic visit and interaction with their clinicians. Disease self-efficacy was measured using the validated Self-Efficacy for Managing Chronic Disease 6-Item Questionnaire [36,37]. Each item uses a 1 (not at all confident) to 10 (totally confident) scale, and a mean of all items is calculated. Visit engagement was measured using an 8-item survey examining visit preparation, knowledge, and involvement given at baseline and at the 3- and 6-month follow-up (Multimedia Appendix 2). As one item assessed the use of tracked data at clinic visits, it was assessed only at 3 and 6 months and was not included in the analysis. At 3 and 6 months only, participants completed a 20-item care impact survey that measured the impact of Orchestra on care quality (4 items), patient-clinician collaboration (2 items), visit preparation (6 items), disease insight (3 items), treatment plan quality (3 items), and perceived usefulness (2 items; Multimedia Appendix 2). Both the visit engagement and care impact surveys were developed theoretically by a team of experts for this study, used a 6-point scale ranging from 1 (strongly disagree) to 6 (strongly agree), and were tested in a convenience sample for understandability. The 3- and 6-month surveys also included a single question measuring overall satisfaction: “How likely are you to recommend Orchestra to other parents/patients like you?”, which respondents answered on a 10-point scale from 10 (very likely) to 1 (not at all likely). Impact on the treatment plan was measured by chart review examining the percentage of data alerts that led to documented clinical action including phone calls, emails, or messages to check status; expedited clinic appointments or laboratory tests; referrals; or treatment changes.

Statistical Analyses

Descriptive statistics, including means and ranges for continuous variables and percentages for categorical variables, were used to describe the study population, feasibility, acceptability, satisfaction, and perceived impact. A mean score of 4 or higher on the visit engagement survey and care impact survey subscales was defined as an indicator of engagement in the visit and improvement in care experience, respectively. t tests were used to assess the impact of condition (CF or IBD), person using Orchestra (parent or patient), and baseline health status in CF (FEV1: ≥70% predicted or <70% predicted) on PRO completion. Cohen d measured the effect size. Univariate analysis of variance tests was used to evaluate differences in acceptability measures across study clinicians and across IBD baseline health status (PGA: continuous remission, remission, mild, and moderate). Paired t tests examined the impact on disease self-efficacy and visit engagement from baseline to 6-month follow-up. Pearson correlation coefficients examined the relationships between PRO completion and perceived impact on care. Analyses were conducted using the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences v23 (SPSS, IBM Corp).

We aimed to enroll 100 participants. Our target was based on knowledge of the eligible population in each clinic, frequency of clinic visits, available research resources, and a desire to complete the study while the technology remained current. As efficacy was not the primary endpoint, we did not perform an a priori power calculation.

Results

Overview

Of the 127 families approached, 88 (69.2%) agreed to participate. A total of 92 participants (CF: n=52 and IBD: n=40) from 88 families enrolled in the study (Figure 3). In 38 families (38/88, 43%), an adolescent patient participated; in 46 families (46/88, 52%), a parent participated; and in 4 families (4/88; 5%), both participated. At 3 months, 71 of the original 92 participants (77%) remained in the study; at 6 months, 67 of the original 92 participants (73%) remained (Figure 3). The 6-month retention rate was higher among IBD clinic participants (32/40, 80%) than among CF clinic participants (35/52, 67%). Eight different attending physicians had participants enrolled on the platform, 2 from IBD and 6 from CF. This included all attending physicians in the CF clinic and the physicians who most frequently saw patients with IBD in the gastroenterology clinic. Table 1 describes the demographic and health status characteristics of the participants. Characteristics of the participants mirrored the general demographics of the clinic populations. Participants selected an average of 4.96 PROs (range: 1-13) to track in the app.
Figure 3. Participant flow diagram. Of the 127 eligible families, 88 were enrolled (92 participants). At 3 months, 77% (71/92) of participants remained in the study and 66% (47/71) completed the 3-month follow-up within the specified study time window. At 6 months, 74% (67/92) of the participants remained in the study and 63% (42/67) completed the 6-month follow-up within the specified study time window.
Table 1. Baseline demographic and health status characteristics of the patients for each enrolled family.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient characteristics</th>
<th>Cystic fibrosis (n=51)</th>
<th>Inflammatory bowel disease (n=37)</th>
<th>Full sample (N=88)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patient age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>10.55 (6.01)</td>
<td>15.70 (4.02)</td>
<td>12.72 (5.82)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-2, n (%)</td>
<td>7 (14)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>8 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-12, n (%)</td>
<td>24 (47)</td>
<td>9 (24)</td>
<td>33 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-21, n (%)</td>
<td>20 (39)</td>
<td>27 (73)</td>
<td>47 (53)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient gender, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>24 (47)</td>
<td>22 (60)</td>
<td>46 (52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>27 (53)</td>
<td>15 (40)</td>
<td>42 (48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient race, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>49 (96)</td>
<td>35 (95)</td>
<td>84 (96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black or African American</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>2 (4)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease indicators, mean (SD)</td>
<td>96.89 (19.69)</td>
<td>_c</td>
<td>_c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease type (inflammatory bowel disease only)</td>
<td>_d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Crohn: 29 (78%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ulcerative Colitis: 8 (22%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicians global assessment score (inflammatory bowel disease only)</td>
<td>_d</td>
<td>• Continuous Remission: 10 (27%)</td>
<td>_d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Remission: 14 (38%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mild: 11 (30%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Moderate: 2 (5%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family income (US $), n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;25,000</td>
<td>4 (8)</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
<td>7 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25,000 to 49,999</td>
<td>12 (24)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td>13 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50,000 to 74,999</td>
<td>8 (15)</td>
<td>5 (14)</td>
<td>13 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75,000 to 99,999</td>
<td>9 (18)</td>
<td>7 (19)</td>
<td>16 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥100,000</td>
<td>15 (29)</td>
<td>14 (38)</td>
<td>29 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>3 (6)</td>
<td>7 (19)</td>
<td>10 (11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aScores ranged between 48 and 127.
bNot all participants were old enough to reliably complete pulmonary function testing.
cMeasure not applicable for patients with inflammatory bowel disease.
dMeasure not applicable for patients with cystic fibrosis.

Feasibility

Access to technology was not a significant barrier to participation. Of the families approached, 119 of 127 (94%) had regular access to an eligible device and internet connectivity. Most participant-clinician conversations about Orchestra (40/83, 48%) required 5-10 min, with 34% (28/83) taking <5 min and 18% (15/83) requiring >10 min. Orchestra enrollment and app installation took 14 min on average (SD 7; 95% CI 13-16), ranging between 2 and 43 min (data available for n=84 families). Longer set-up times were related to technical issues or need for more thorough instruction. It was feasible to incorporate Orchestra into follow-up clinic visits—participants reported discussing Orchestra in 83% (34/41) of visits at 3 months and in 71% (29/41) of visits at 6 months.

Acceptability

Among those who used the PRO feature (n=80), 19,954 PROs were completed. The average PRO completion rate by participants was 61% (range: 6%-100%; 95% CI 55-68). There was no difference in mean PRO completion rates between CF (n=47, 58%; 95% CI 50-67) and IBD (n=33, 66%; 95% CI 58-75; P=.19). Parents (n=41) had significantly higher rates of PRO completion (67%; 95% CI 59-76) than patients (n=39; 55%; 95% CI 46-64; P=.04; Cohen d=0.46). Participant PRO completion rates varied significantly across different physicians (n=8), ranging between 38% and 77% (P=.02; partial eta squared=0.20). PRO completion was not related to baseline health status in CF (FEV1 percent predicted) or IBD (PGA score), data not shown.
Average weekly engagement, a measure of app stickiness that indicates the participants’ willingness to return to the app, was 80% (n=80; range: 21%-100%; 95% CI 75-85). No significant differences in weekly engagement were observed between CF (n=47; 80%; 95% CI 73-87) and IBD (n=33; 80%; 95% CI 72-88; P=.99) or based on participants’ physicians (n=8; P=.06). Parents (n=41) had a higher rate of weekly engagement (87%; 95% CI 81-92) compared with patients in current remission for <1 year (n=13; 84%; 95% CI 71-96) or those rated as having mild (n=12; 86%; 95% CI 75-98) or moderate (n=2; 93%; 95% CI 2-184) disease activity (P=.02; partial eta squared=0.28). No differences were found in the average weekly engagement based on FEV1 status in CF (n=35).

Participants received three PVPs on average (range: 0-6) and completed 49.4% (94/190). Most families who received a PVP (56/76, 74%) completed the information at least once.

### Short-Term Impact

Participants reported significant improvement in disease self-efficacy from baseline (7.90, SD 1.63; 95% CI 7.70-8.34) to the 6-month follow-up (n=40; 8.44, SD 1.34; 95% CI 8.01-8.87; P=.006; Cohen d=0.36). The majority of participants reported feeling engaged in their clinic visit at baseline (87/92, 95%) and 6-month follow-up (38/40, 95%), and there was no change in self-reported visit engagement scores from baseline (5.13, SD 0.74; 95% CI 4.84-5.22) to 6-month follow-up (n=40; 5.29, SD 0.66; 95% CI 5.06-5.50; P=.12). Most participants reported that incorporating Orchestra into care was useful and had a positive impact on care quality, visit collaboration, participant visit preparation, participant disease insight, and treatment plan quality. Table 2 shows the percentage of participants who responded that Orchestra improved their care experience. Participants who used Orchestra more were more likely to report greater perceived impact on care. As shown in Table 3, the higher a participant’s PRO completion, the more useful they found Orchestra and the more impact it had on reports of care quality, visit collaboration, participant visit preparation, and treatment plan quality at 3- and 6-month follow-up visits.

### Table 2. Percentage of Orchestra users reporting that the tool improved their care experience.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact on care experience</th>
<th>3-Month follow-up (n=44)a, n (%)</th>
<th>6-Month follow-up (n=40)b, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improved care quality</td>
<td>40 (91)</td>
<td>33 (83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved collaboration</td>
<td>37 (84)</td>
<td>35 (88)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved participant preparation for visit</td>
<td>35 (80)</td>
<td>31 (78)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved participant disease insight</td>
<td>33 (75)</td>
<td>29 (73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved treatment plan</td>
<td>38 (86)</td>
<td>32 (80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived useful for visit</td>
<td>40 (91)</td>
<td>36 (90)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a44 out of 47 participants completed the care impact survey at the 3-month follow-up.
b40 out of 42 participants completed the care impact survey at the 6-month follow-up.

### Table 3. Pearson correlation coefficients between patient-reported outcome completion rate and impact of Orchestra on care experience.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact on care experience</th>
<th>3-Month follow-up (n=43)a</th>
<th>P value</th>
<th>6-Month follow-up (n=39)b</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improved care quality</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved collaboration</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>.009</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved participant preparation for visit</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>.002</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved participant disease insight</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>.03</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved treatment plan</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived useful for visit</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>.18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a44 out of 47 participants completed the care impact survey at the 3-month follow-up, and 43 out 47 participants received regular patient-reported outcomes (n=1, used tool for previsit plan only).
b40 out of 42 participants completed the care impact survey at the 6-month follow-up, and 39 out of 42 participants received regular patient-reported outcomes (n=1, used tool for previsit plan only).

Participants reported moderately high satisfaction (ie, likelihood of recommending to others) with using Orchestra at the 3-month (mean 8.16, SD 1.76; n=45) and 6-month follow-ups (mean 8.55, SD 2.05; n=40). Clinicians set optional alerts for 49 of 92 (53%) participants. A total of 192 alerts were triggered among 35 of the 49 (71%) patients. On the basis of the clinician report and medical record review, 39% (74/192) of alerts led to documented, actionable clinician behavior. For example, in one case, the CF team was signaled about a change in mucous production and cough based...
on Orchestra alerts. This prompted a phone call to the family who had noted the symptoms but had not acted on them. The clinical team was able to initiate early treatment (antibiotics and increased airway clearance) and potentially avoid an inpatient admission for pulmonary exacerbation. More than half (65/111, 59%) of alerts in IBD led to action as compared with only 11% (9/81) in CF.

Discussion

Principal Findings

We tested a technology platform and care delivery system intervention designed to support the Chronic Care Model’s vision of informed patients and prepared clinicians working in partnership with closed feedback loops. This proof-of-concept study suggests that the mHealth platform is feasible, acceptable, and shows promise for clinically meaningful impact. The average PRO completion rate by participants across the 6 months of the study was 61%, and the average weekly platform use was 80%, suggesting reasonable acceptability. Participants reported significant improvement in self-efficacy from baseline to 6 months. At 6 months, most participants reported that the platform was useful and had a positive impact on their care, including improved visit quality, visit collaboration, and visit preparation. PRO completion rate was moderately associated with participant-reported visit preparation, care quality, treatment plan quality, collaboration, disease insight, and usefulness at 3 months. All relationships, except disease insight and usefulness, remained significant, although weaker, at 6 months.

The addition of shared mHealth technology into the process of managing chronic disease enabled frequent, timely, and problem-focused information and communication. We posit that these types of real-time, bidirectional shared data potentiate a fundamental shift in the interaction between clinician and patient—a shift from clinician as the expert delivering care to a relatively passive patient, to clinician and patient contributing to shared work in which the expertise of both is needed. Our findings are consistent with the small number of mHealth studies specifically designed to facilitate patient–clinician collaboration that also show early evidence of effectiveness [16,38] and, as hypothesized, demonstrate that collaboration is associated with sustained use [26]. For example, a pilot study compared pediatric patients with asthma receiving standard care versus access to a relatively passive patient, to clinician and patient contributing to shared work in which the expertise of both is needed. Our findings are consistent with the small number of mHealth studies specifically designed to facilitate patient–clinician collaboration that also show early evidence of effectiveness [26].

Our data suggested that participants who used Orchestra more reported greater perceived impact on care. We found that the higher a participant’s PRO completion rate, the more they reported that Orchestra had a positive impact on care quality, visit collaboration, participant visit preparation, and treatment plan quality. We hypothesize that PROs, PVP data, real-time visualizations, and alerts better enabled patients and clinicians to work together between and during visits, leading to improvements in short-term outcomes. Specifically, we posit that by responding to daily or weekly PROs, participants had a systematic way to learn, remember, and communicate with clinicians between visits. In turn, the data potentiated clinicians being more informed during clinical contacts and better able to proactively address problems between visits. Another reason participants who completed more PROs may have reported
greater benefits relates to the potential for closed feedback loops that reinforce platform use. Use of shared decision-making at
the onset may have increased the likelihood that the data collected had relevance to both the clinician’s and participant’s
goals, creating greater potential for relevant, actionable data. In
turn, the potential for relevant, actionable data could have increased the probability that participants entered it and that clinicians reviewed it and talked about it at visits (reported in
83% of visits at 3 months and in 71% of visits at 6 months). As
clinicians used tracked data, we believe that participants’ efforts
were reinforced, leading to sustained data collection and more
actionable results. A stronger relationship between tool use and
care impact was found at 3 months as compared with 6 months.
We hypothesize that this may be related to the length of the
intervening time between the goal for tool use being discussed and PROs selected and the subsequent clinic visit. Patients and
clinicians determined how and why the tool would be used at
baseline only. It may be that 6 months later, the data are less
valuable due to essential learning already occurring (perhaps at
a prior visit) and/or areas of concern changing. More frequent
recalibration between patients and clinicians (ie, every visit)
may be needed to sustain the relevance of mHealth tool use in
chronic care.

Our findings reveal several factors that may contribute to
improved engagement with mHealth technology. Involvement of
the clinical team in supporting participants’ platform use is
critical [26]. Differences in PRO completion rates across
physicians and a tendency for participants’ weekly engagement
to vary by physician is consistent with observations that
clinicians varied in skill at helping patients identify goals for
tool use and integrating Orchestra data into follow-up visits.
Understanding how to help clinicians maximize patients’
engagement and use of mHealth technology will be important
for future interventions. Not surprisingly, parents showed higher
levels of overall PRO completion and weekly app engagement
as compared with teens. However, teens completed over half
of the PROs they were sent. With realistic expectations for app
use, this type of mHealth technology could support adolescent
care transition. The finding that health status predicted weekly
engagement in IBD but not CF suggests that disease course may
lead to different patterns of app use. In IBD, participants in
continuous remission used the app less than those who were not.
Frequent PRO completion during periods of sustained
wellness is likely a low-value behavior. In CF, a condition with
periods of exacerbation but no remission, app use was not related
to health status, suggesting that PRO completion behavior may
be influenced by the interplay of disease course and current
functioning. Although these two conditions differ significantly
in required time for daily self-management, with CF typically
being more intensive, average app use across the diseases did
not differ, suggesting feasibility even in the context of high
disease self-management demands.

Limitations
This study had some limitations. Our evaluation of app use and
impact is based on participants’ perspectives only. We attempted
to collect clinician data on tool use and impact following clinical
encounters but were unsuccessful in getting clinicians to
complete surveys in a timely manner. Rather than asking
physicians to complete the surveys immediately after the visit, we
allowed them to answer them later by email. In future work, we
will gather the data as soon as the physician leaves the clinic
room or consider obtaining clinicians’ perspectives via
qualitative interviews. As this study focused on proof of concept, we
did not include a contemporaneous control group, so it is
unclear how those receiving standard care felt about their visits
and ability to communicate with their providers in between
visits or whether self-efficacy would have gradually improved
over time even without the use of Orchestra. It is not possible
to rule out that either natural history led to the clinical impact
observed or that selection bias led to those who were most
interested in technology and collaboration choosing to participate, stay in the study, and show benefit. By using limited
exclusion criteria, a pragmatic approach that utilized existing
clinical visits (rather than research study visits), and studying
more than one chronic disease, we attempted to lessen the impact
on these potential threats to validity. Although our participants
spanned the economic spectrum, one-third of the families
included in this study had incomes above US $100,000.
Although convenience sampling made sense in this early work,
in future studies, using sampling techniques to ensure
appropriate representation across the economic spectrum is
critical. It will also be important to ensure that this type of
technology and intervention does not increase health disparities.
Some measures were developed for this study because of the
lack of validated instruments to evaluate visit engagement and
the impact of the mHealth tool on care. These measures had
face validity and were tested for understandability, but we did
not conduct psychometric testing to examine factor structure,
reliability, or validity. As this was designed as a pragmatic
study, we only attempted to collect follow-up data from
participants if they had a clinical visit during the follow-up
window. As a result, we do not have the follow-up questionnaire
data on the full sample at either time point. For example, at 6
months, approximately two-third of the participants (42 of 67)
who remained in the study had a clinic visit. There could have
been systematic differences between participants who returned
to the clinic more and less often. However, given that the intent
of the study was as a proof of concept, identifying a tool that
may have had a meaningful impact for even a fraction of the
patients who used it is beneficial learning.

Lessons Learned
The lessons learned in this process are important for future work
on mHealth tools for chronic illness. First, the value of working
iteratively and in concert with patient and clinician end users
cannot be overstated. Through collaborative development, they
showed us their pain points and thus the necessary functionality
to sustain engagement. Second, the one-click, single sign-on
with the electronic medical record was critical for our clinicians
to sustain use. Although for a short time they were excited by
the novelty of a new platform, its use was not sustainable in
their workflow if it was not reachable from the electronic
medical record. Third, the automated data signals were critical
in facilitating clinician comfort with between-visit data
collection and thus having multiple patients on the platform.
Fourth, both clinicians and patients needed time to learn the
value of between-visit data. Structuring workflow to encourage
using the data facilitated the learning and was key. Finally, reliable and low-friction technology is necessary, but not sufficient, to support engagement over time. Rather, understanding patients’ and clinicians’ needs and goals and then using technology to support achieving them is essential for impacting health care and outcomes.

Conclusions
We have shown that the use of an mHealth technology designed to facilitate the Chronic Care Model’s vision of closed feedback loops and patient-clinician partnerships is feasible, acceptable, and shows promise as a strategy for improving pediatric chronic illness management. These encouraging early results reinforce the potential of mHealth technology to support collaboration and real-time data sharing. Although the start-up company that developed Orchestra is no longer supporting the platform, this proof-of-concept study identifies key components necessary in any mHealth platform designed to support continuous data and patient-clinician collaboration, important processes necessary to include in clinician and patient workflows to facilitate technology use, and lessons for future studies.

Acknowledgments
The authors acknowledge the contributions of all patient and family participants as well as the parent partner, nurses, respiratory therapists, dietitians, social workers, psychologists, and physicians in the CCH IBD and CF clinics. The authors would also like to thank Pamela Schoettker, MS, for her editorial assistance in preparing this manuscript. This study was funded in part by the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation (72313) Enabling Uptake of a Registry-Supported Learning System in the United States. The funder had no role in the design, methods, participant recruitment, data collection, analyses, or preparation of this manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest
Orchestra was developed via a joint effort between Vital Labs, Inc and CCH. IE, HK, PM, and LO were coinventors of Orchestra and are entitled to proceeds from the successful commercialization of the technology; however, Vital Labs, Inc is no longer pursuing the development of this intellectual property. Following study completion, HK, PM, and LO ended their research relationship with Vital Labs, Inc. IE maintains an interest in Vital Labs. The other authors have not reported any financial disclosures.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Library of patient-reported outcome measures for cystic fibrosis and inflammatory bowel disease.

[DOCX File, 29 KB - mhealth_v8i11e11968_app1.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Parent visit engagement and parent care impact surveys.

[DOCX File, 44 KB - mhealth_v8i11e11968_app2.docx]

References


18. Collins F. How to fulfill the true promise of "mHealth": mobile devices have the potential to become powerful medical tools. Sci Am 2012 Jul;307(1):16. [doi: 10.1038/scientificamerican0712-16] [Medline: 22779248]


26. Miyamoto SW, Henderson S, Young HM, Pande A, Han JJ. Tracking health data is not enough: a qualitative exploration of the role of healthcare partnerships and mHealth technology to promote physical activity and to sustain behavior change. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2016 Jan 20;4(1):e5 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.4814] [Medline: 26792225]


Abbreviations

- CCH: Cincinnati Children’s Hospital
- CF: cystic fibrosis
- FEV1: forced expiratory volume in 1 second
- IBD: inflammatory bowel disease
- mHealth: mobile health
- PGA: Physician Global Assessment
- PRO: patient-reported outcome
- PVP: previsit plan

©Lisa Opipari-Arrigan, Dana M H Dykes, Shehzad A Saeed, Sunny Thakkar, Lisa Burns, Barbara A Chini, Gary L McPhail, Ian Eslick, Peter A Margolis, Heather C Kaplan. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 26.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Effectiveness of Internet-Based Multicomponent Interventions for Patients and Health Care Professionals to Improve Clinical Outcomes in Type 2 Diabetes Evaluated Through the INDICA Study: Multiarm Cluster Randomized Controlled Trial

Yolanda Ramallo-Fariña1,2,3,4, MSc; Miguel Angel García-Bello1, MSc; Lidia García-Pérez1,2,3,4, MSc; Mauro Boronat5,6, MD, PhD; Ana M Wägener5,6, MSc, PhD; Leticia Rodríguez-Rodríguez1,3, BSc; Pedro de Pablo-Velasco6,7, MD, PhD; Ignacio Llorente Gómez de Segura8, MD, PhD; Himar González- Pacheco1,3, MSc; Montserrat Carmona Rodríguez2,9, PhD; Pedro Serrano-Aguilar2,3,4, MD, PhD; INDICA Team10

Background: Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) is a chronic disease in which health outcomes are related to decision making by patients and health care professionals.

Objective: This study aims to assess the effectiveness of internet-based multicomponent interventions to support decision making of all actors involved in the care of patients with T2DM in primary care.

Methods: The INDICA study is an open, community-based, multicenter trial with random allocation to usual care or the intervention for patients, the intervention for health care professionals in primary care, or the combined intervention for both. In the intervention for patients, participants received an educational group program and were monitored and supported by logs, a web-based platform, and automated SMS. Those in the intervention for professionals also received an educational program, a decision support tool embedded in the electronic clinical record, and periodic feedback about patients’ results. A total of 2334 people with T2DM, regardless of glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) levels and without diabetes-related complications, were included.

Results: For the overall sample, the intervention for patients attained a significant mean reduction in HbA1c levels of 0.27 (95% CI 0.45 to 0.10) at month 3 and 0.26 (95% CI 0.44 to 0.08) at month 6 compared with usual care, which remained marginally significant at month 12. A clinically relevant reduction in HbA1c level was observed in 35.6% (191/537) of patients in the intervention for patients and 26.0% (152/586) of those in usual care at month 12 (P=.006). In the combined intervention, HbA1c...
reduction was significant until month 18 (181/557, 32.6% vs 140/586, 23.9%; \(P=.009\)). Considering the subgroup of patients uncontrolled at baseline, all interventions produced significant reductions in HbA\(_1c\) levels across the entire study period: 0.49 (95% CI 0.70 to 0.27) for the intervention for patients, 0.35 (95% CI 0.59 to 0.14) for the intervention for professionals, and 0.35 (95% CI 0.57 to 0.13) for the combined intervention. Differences in HbA\(_1c\) for the area under the curve considering the entire period were significant for the intervention for patients and the combined intervention compared with usual care (\(P=.03\) for both). Compared with usual care, the intervention for professionals and the combined intervention had significant longer-term reductions in systolic and diastolic blood pressure.

**Conclusions:** In uncontrolled patients, the intervention for patients at baseline provided clinically relevant and significant longer-term reductions of HbA\(_1c\) levels. The intervention for professionals and combined intervention also improved the cardiovascular risk profile of patients.

**Trial Registration:** ClinicalTrials.gov NCT01657227; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01657227

**KEYWORDS**
behavior modification; primary care; type 2 diabetes mellitus; patients adherence; eHealth

**Introduction**

**Background**
Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) is a chronic condition in which long-term health outcomes are related to patients’ adherence to lifestyle modifications and pharmacologic treatments. Other stakeholders, such as relatives and primary health care professionals, are also involved in guiding patients’ decisions. Although the prevalence of T2DM in the Canary Islands is slightly higher than the average in Spain [1], the incidence of chronic diabetes-related complications [2,3] and mortality [4] is much greater. This occurs despite a continuous increase in diabetes-related public expenditure [5].

Regardless of the widespread availability of evidence-based clinical practice guidelines (CPGs) to care for T2DM, patients’ access to effective educational interventions [6] and adherence to self-management activities remains limited internationally [7].

To address these unmet needs, many publications have reported on the effectiveness of using information and communications technology (ICT) applications to support decision making by patients and professionals [8-12], reporting favorable short-term effects on blood glucose control [11,12]. The effectiveness of other biological, cognitive, behavioral, or emotional outcome measures remains controversial [11]. Few large randomized controlled trials (RCTs) have assessed the long-term effectiveness of multicomponent ICT-based interventions, not only for patients but also for all stakeholders involved in diabetes management.

**Objectives**
The INDICA study is a cluster RCT conducted in the Canary Islands that assesses the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of multicomponent interventions to support decision making for the main actors involved in the management of T2DM (patients, relatives, and primary health care professionals) in a large number of primary health care practices (PHCPs) [13]. We hypothesized that combining conventional educational activities with different ICT-based decision support tools would efficiently improve health outcomes in patients with T2DM. The main purpose of this study is to evaluate the long-term clinical effectiveness (24 months) of these multicomponent interventions compared with usual care on glycated hemoglobin (HbA\(_1c\)).

**Methods**

**Study Design**
The INDICA study is an open, community-based pragmatic, multicenter, clinical controlled trial with random allocation by clusters to usual care or to one of the following 3 interventions of knowledge transfer and behavior modification:

- **Group 1** included interventions for patients and a family member (intervention for patients)
- **Group 2** included interventions for health care professionals (physicians and nurses) at primary care (intervention for professionals)
- **Group 3** combined the interventions for patients and professionals (combined intervention)

In the usual care or control group, neither patients or families nor physicians or nurses received any additional educational or supporting activities beyond the usual activities provided by the PHCP. The full study protocol has been reported elsewhere [13].

**Study Participants**
The INDICA study included patients with T2DM aged between 18 and 65 years, diagnosed at least 1 year before study enrollment, without diabetes-related complications, and who regularly used a mobile phone (Textbox 1 provides more details).
Textbox 1. Patients’ inclusion and exclusion criteria.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inclusion Criteria</th>
<th>Exclusion Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus diagnosed at least 1 year before study enrollment</td>
<td>Chronic kidney disease ≥ stage 3b, as defined by the National Kidney Foundation’s Kidney Disease Outcomes and Quality Improvement Initiative, urinary albumin to creatinine ratio ≥ 300 mg/g, or urinary protein excretion ≥ 300 mg/24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aged between 18 and 65 years</td>
<td>Acute coronary syndrome (documented angina or myocardial infarction) or stroke in the last 6 months or class III or IV heart failure, according to the New York Heart Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal consent to participate in the study</td>
<td>Proliferative diabetic retinopathy or clinically significant diabetic macular edema requiring previous treatment with retinal photocoagulation, vitrectomy, or intravitreal injections of antivascular endothelial growth factor or triamcinolone acetonide 6 months before study inclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular usage of mobile phone</td>
<td>Uncorrected severe hearing or visual impairment or corrected visual acuity ≤ 20/40 by any cause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The family care unit (FCU) in each PHCP, comprising a family physician and a nurse responsible for the same set of patients, was the unit of recruitment. FCUs either planning or awaiting placement changes among PHCP in the first 6 months after project initiation were excluded.

All PHCPs included had to have at least eight FCUs and the availability of appropriate places to provide educational group sessions.

Setting and Recruitment

PHCPs were recruited in 4 Canary Islands (Tenerife, Gran Canaria, Lanzarote, and La Palma). FCUs were randomly selected from all consenting FCUs at each PHCP. The electronic clinical records (ECRs) of all potentially eligible patients in all selected FCUs were screened to verify inclusion and exclusion criteria. Finally, eligible patients were randomly selected per FCU.

Random Assignment

Randomization was performed at different levels. First, 3 different strata were created according to the geographical areas in the more populated islands (Tenerife and Gran Canaria). Second, 4 PHCP (clusters) were randomly allocated to every geographical stratum, and block permutation was used to assign PHCPs to the study arms (in total 12 PHCPs for each island), with PHCP as the sampling unit. La Palma and Lanzarote (less populated islands) were geographically divided into 4 zones with only 1 eligible PHCP available in each zone, which was randomly assigned to one of the study arms. On every island, all arms were equally distributed. A total of 6 FCUs were randomly selected from all those consenting to participate in each PHCP. Furthermore, 15 patients were randomly selected from all patients fulfilling the inclusion criteria and consenting to participate in each FCU. Exceptionally, more than 6 FCUs or more than 15 patients per FCU were selected to recruit 90 patients at every PHCP.

FCU and patient randomizations were performed by simple generation from a list of random numbers. Cluster allocation avoids contamination bias among participants, also facilitating logistics in group interventions.

Interventions

Patient Interventions

Patients recruited to the intervention for patients and combined intervention groups received a complex intervention of knowledge transfer and behavior modification, informed by conceptual frameworks of behavioral change [14]. Key determinants of behavior change suggested by Michie et al [14] were considered for intervention design and implementation, including social and professional role and identity, knowledge, skills, beliefs about capabilities, beliefs about consequences,
motivation and goals, memory, attention and decision processes, environmental context and resources, social influences, emotion, and action planning. Linked to these construct domains, interventions included all techniques judged as effective by the same authors [14], combining (1) a conventional group educational program with a set of 8 quarterly 3-hour group sessions; (2) monitoring of physical activity, diet, drug adherence, mood, blood pressure, and blood glucose readings by daily usage of paper workbooks, complemented by weekly access to a website to download paper workbook data (Multimedia Appendix 1); and (3) continuous personalized feedback by semiautomated mobile phone messages based on the results from the website.

**Interventions for Primary Care Professionals**

Primary care professionals recruited to the intervention for professionals and combined intervention groups received a complex intervention of knowledge transfer and decision support, partially addressing the determinants of behavior change suggested by Michie et al [14] for its design and implementation, including only techniques to improve skills, environmental changes, prompts and cues by means of electronic clinical guidelines linked to the ECR, processes for encouraging and supporting doctors and nurses, persuasive communication, and periodic feedback on outcomes compared with other colleagues. The interventions combined (1) an educational and interactive group program of 2 sessions to update clinical management and promote patient-centered care; (2) an automated decision aid tool based on a CPG for T2DM, embedded into the ECR (Multimedia Appendix 2); and (3) monthly computerized graphic feedback, displaying a set of processes and outcome indicators for all patients with T2DM of the corresponding FCU.

To maintain the fidelity of interventions, a manual was developed for each intervention. Furthermore, all group sessions were recorded and reviewed.

Both interventions were applied during the 2 years of follow-up (Figure 1).

**Duration of Fieldwork**

Fieldwork took place between February 2013 and October 2016. The first year was devoted to the recruitment of patients and health care providers and the following 2 years to the intervention and follow-up. As interventions were maintained over time, the intervention and follow-up periods overlapped.

**Outcomes**

**Primary End Point**

The primary outcome was the mean change in HbA1c levels from baseline to 24 months of follow-up. HbA1c was also measured at 3, 6, 12, and 18 months. We considered a change in HbA1c of 0.4% as clinically significant [15], just between the thresholds of 0.3% reported by National Institute for Health and Care Excellence [16] and 0.5% by the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study [17].
Secondary End Points
BMI, weight, waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio, systolic blood pressure (SBP), and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) were also assessed at baseline and after 3, 6, 12, 18, and 24 months. Total, high-density lipoprotein (HDL), and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol, triglycerides, and fasting serum glucose were assessed at baseline and after 6, 12, and 24 months. Serum creatinine and glomerular filtration rate were measured at baseline and at 12 and 24 months. Demographic data and disease history were recorded at baseline. Health status and current medications were also recorded at each follow-up.

Statistical Analysis
The main analysis for primary and secondary end points were multilevel mixed models including the baseline value of the dependent variable and the time elapsed since diagnosis (in years) as covariates. The null hypothesis for each end point is that the mean change with regard to the usual care arm and the interactions between each arm and time (follow-up) are the same across arms and equal to zero. The alternative hypothesis is that the changes are not equal to zero. First-level variables are those corresponding to each measurement along follow-up (repeated time measurements), the second level includes patients’ variables, and third-level variables correspond to PHCPs. The mean change was estimated at the observation level. The effect that identifies the intervention arm was considered fixed for the PHCPs, whereas the intercept was considered random. The model also included an interaction term between arm and month, allowing for differences in the intervention effect between follow-up assessments [18]. In addition, to summarize the global treatment effect throughout the whole study period, differences were also calculated for the area under the curve (AUC) of HbA\textsubscript{1c} and other continuous variables between the different interventions and the usual care group. Furthermore, we examined whether the most intensive intervention, the combined intervention group (intervention for patients plus intervention for professionals), was better than the intervention for patients and intervention for professionals groups on their own.

The adjusted estimated mean was calculated for each moment of follow-up compared with baseline, and its significance was calculated using the model already set out.

A post hoc analysis was performed for the primary end point, HbA\textsubscript{1c}, considering the patient subsample with baseline HbA\textsubscript{1c} higher than 7%.

To accommodate missing values in the effect analyses, the multiple imputation procedure in Stata 15.0 software (Stata Corporation) was used [19], with results based on 100 imputed data sets. This procedure saves cases for the analysis and can be considered an intention-to-treat analysis. Analysis under multiple imputation is valid for randomly missed data [20]. The model of imputation used and further details on data analysis are outlined in Multimedia Appendix 3. A threshold of .05 was used to define the statistical significance of those tests.

Sample Size Calculation
We estimated the sample size requirement of 448 patients per study arm to detect an absolute difference in HbA\textsubscript{1c} of 0.4%, assuming a common standard deviation of 1.4% [15], a two-tailed power of 90%, an alpha of .05, and an adjustment for clustering of patients within the FCU by the design effect [21]. 15 patients per FCU, and an intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC) of 0.01 (interquartile range 0-0.032) [22]. The intraclass correlation within PHCPs was insignificant as they are formed of several FCUs sharing administrative management and some additional services whose potential effects were already controlled by means of the stratification. Despite this consideration, the sample size was increased by an additional 30% to accommodate for expected losses to follow-up and to warrant the presence of each study arm in all islands. Hence, we aimed to obtain a total sample size of 2330.

Ethics Approval and Consent to Participate
All participants provided written informed consent. The scientific and ethics committees of both the University Hospital of Canarias and the University Hospital Nuestra Señora de la Candelaria approved the study protocol. The study was performed in accordance with Good Clinical Practice standards, applicable local regulatory requirements, and the recommendations of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Results
Study Participants
A total of 32 PHCPs with a mean of 6.6 (SD 0.9) FCUs were included (211 professionals), with 8 PHCPs allocated to each of the 4 study arms. Every PHCP enrolled a mean of 72.9 (SD 14.1) patients (12 patients per FCU), totaling 2334 patients. Figure 2 shows the flowchart for the patients taking part.
Figure 2. CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) flow diagram.

Table 1 shows the patients’ baseline characteristics according to the intervention assignment. The mean age of the whole population was 55.7 (SD 7.1) years, with 51.9% (1212/2334) being women. The mean basal HbA1c value was 7.3% (SD 1.5).

Overall, 53.4% (1246/2334) of patients had HbA1c levels within the accepted therapeutic goal (≤7%). There were no statistically significant differences among the groups in terms of their baseline characteristics.
Table 1. Baseline characteristics of patients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>PTI(^{a}) (n=537)</th>
<th>PFI(^{b}) (n=654)</th>
<th>CBI(^{c}) (n=557)</th>
<th>UC(^{d}) (n=586)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>55.9 (7.0)</td>
<td>56.2 (7.0)</td>
<td>55.5 (7.1)</td>
<td>55.2 (7.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (male), n (%)</td>
<td>284 (52.9)</td>
<td>288 (44.0)</td>
<td>264 (47.4)</td>
<td>286 (48.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking status, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current smokers</td>
<td>114 (21.2)</td>
<td>156 (23.9)</td>
<td>109 (19.6)</td>
<td>145 (24.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former smokers</td>
<td>223 (41.5)</td>
<td>280 (42.8)</td>
<td>225 (40.4)</td>
<td>240 (41.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonsmoker</td>
<td>200 (37.2)</td>
<td>218 (33.3)</td>
<td>223 (40.0)</td>
<td>201 (34.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary or less</td>
<td>323 (60.2)</td>
<td>409 (62.5)</td>
<td>347 (62.3)</td>
<td>379 (64.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High school</td>
<td>159 (29.6)</td>
<td>176 (26.9)</td>
<td>147 (26.4)</td>
<td>157 (26.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bachelor's degree or higher</td>
<td>55 (10.2)</td>
<td>69 (10.6)</td>
<td>63 (11.3)</td>
<td>50 (8.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income per person in the household per month, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;€250 (US $325)</td>
<td>118 (21.9)</td>
<td>139 (21.2)</td>
<td>121 (21.7)</td>
<td>146 (24.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>€250-€499 (US $325-€649)</td>
<td>229 (42.7)</td>
<td>323 (49.4)</td>
<td>272 (48.8)</td>
<td>264 (45.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>€500-€649 (US $650-€844)</td>
<td>86 (16.0)</td>
<td>99 (15.2)</td>
<td>122 (14.2)</td>
<td>96 (16.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;€750 (US $975)</td>
<td>104 (19.4)</td>
<td>93 (14.2)</td>
<td>64 (15.3)</td>
<td>80 (13.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI categories, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal or underweight (&lt;25)</td>
<td>52 (9.7)</td>
<td>58 (8.9)</td>
<td>45 (8.1)</td>
<td>44 (7.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preobese (&lt;30)</td>
<td>164 (30.5)</td>
<td>183 (28.0)</td>
<td>181 (32.5)</td>
<td>197 (33.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class 1 (&lt;35)</td>
<td>200 (37.2)</td>
<td>227 (34.7)</td>
<td>175 (31.4)</td>
<td>195 (33.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class 2 (&lt;40)</td>
<td>77 (14.3)</td>
<td>122 (18.7)</td>
<td>101 (18.5)</td>
<td>99 (16.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class 3 or 4 (≥40)</td>
<td>44 (8.2)</td>
<td>64 (9.8)</td>
<td>53 (9.5)</td>
<td>51 (8.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m(^2)), mean (SD)</td>
<td>31.6 (5.7)</td>
<td>32.4 (6.0)</td>
<td>32.1 (5.8)</td>
<td>32.1 (6.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of diabetes (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>8.4 (6.8)</td>
<td>8.2 (6.1)</td>
<td>8.9 (6.3)</td>
<td>8.6 (6.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes treatment, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only lifestyle</td>
<td>40 (7.5)</td>
<td>60 (9.2)</td>
<td>26 (4.7)</td>
<td>53 (9.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>394 (73.4)</td>
<td>445 (68.0)</td>
<td>413 (74.1)</td>
<td>395 (67.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injectable (insulin or GLP-1(^{e}))</td>
<td>12 (2.2)</td>
<td>17 (2.6)</td>
<td>17 (3.1)</td>
<td>25 (4.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral+injectable</td>
<td>85 (15.8)</td>
<td>114 (17.4)</td>
<td>98 (17.6)</td>
<td>98 (16.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not know/not answered</td>
<td>6 (1.1)</td>
<td>18 (2.8)</td>
<td>3 (0.5)</td>
<td>15 (2.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HbA(_1c)(^{f}) categories, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;7%</td>
<td>258 (48.0)</td>
<td>351 (53.7)</td>
<td>241 (43.3)</td>
<td>304 (51.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0%-8.0%</td>
<td>146 (27.2)</td>
<td>165 (25.2)</td>
<td>165 (29.6)</td>
<td>141 (24.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1%-9.0%</td>
<td>66 (12.3)</td>
<td>75 (11.5)</td>
<td>82 (14.7)</td>
<td>67 (11.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;9.0%</td>
<td>67 (12.5)</td>
<td>63 (9.6)</td>
<td>69 (12.4)</td>
<td>74 (12.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HbA(_1c) (%), mean (SD)</td>
<td>7.3 (1.5)</td>
<td>7.2 (1.4)</td>
<td>7.4 (1.5)</td>
<td>7.3 (1.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbidities, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>323 (60.3)</td>
<td>434 (66.4)</td>
<td>363 (65.2)</td>
<td>382 (67.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypercholesterolemia</td>
<td>353 (65.7)</td>
<td>448 (68.0)</td>
<td>349 (62.7)</td>
<td>367 (64.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>32 (6.0)</td>
<td>39 (6.0)</td>
<td>26 (4.6)</td>
<td>27 (3.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ictus</td>
<td>12 (2.2)</td>
<td>5 (0.8)</td>
<td>13 (2.3)</td>
<td>14 (2.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid gland disorders</td>
<td>68 (12.7)</td>
<td>76 (11.6)</td>
<td>57 (9.7)</td>
<td>57 (11.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The rate of attendance at educational sessions is also shown in Figure 2. The mean number of sessions attended by patients in the intervention for patients and combined intervention groups was 4.3 (SD 2.7) and 4.2 (SD 2.8), respectively. Overall, 87.5% (470/537) of the patients assigned to the intervention for patients group attended the first of the 8 educational sessions, which decreased to 59.2% (318/537) in the second session and to 45.8% (246/537) in the last session. In the combined intervention group, attendance rates were 73.4% (409/557), 57.8% (322/557), and 47.2% (263/557), respectively. All patients in the intervention groups received SMS during the 2 years of follow-up and had access to the web platform that contained the video recordings of all group sessions in addition to other educational materials. The average number of web-based questionnaires filled in by each patient was 16.3 (SD 29.4) in the intervention for patients group and 9.9 (SD 23.1) in the combined intervention group. These differences were statistically significant (P<0.001) at the 2-year follow-up.

Primary End Point: HbA1c

Multimedia Appendix 4 shows the adjusted differences in the mean HbA1c levels at each follow-up evaluation and the adjusted differences in AUCs of HbA1c throughout the whole study for each intervention group, in comparison with the usual care group. Compared with usual care, intervention for patients achieved a significant mean HbA1c reduction of 0.27 (95% CI 0.45 to 0.10) at month 3 and 0.26 (95% CI 0.44 to 0.08) at month 6. Differences between intervention for patients and usual care groups were marginally significant at 12 months (P=0.07). There were no statistically significant differences in mean HbA1c levels in the intervention for professionals and combined intervention groups, when compared with the usual care group. With regard to the AUC of HbA1c, the effect of intervention for patients was marginally significant compared with usual care (P=0.06), considering all the follow-up sessions.

The mean levels of HbA1c across the study and their adjusted differences with regard to baseline values are shown in Multimedia Appendix 5 by the study arm. Mean HbA1c levels of the intervention for patients group significantly improved during the first 12 months of follow-up, showing a maximal reduction at month 3 (0.35; 95% CI 0.48 to 0.22). The differences gradually diminished over time until they disappeared at months 18 and 24.

At month 3, a clinically relevant reduction in HbA1c (at least 0.4%) was observed in 38.6% (207/537) of participants in the intervention for patients group and only in 20.3% (119/586) of patients with usual care (P<0.001; Multimedia Appendix 6). Differences between both groups in the proportion of subjects with a clinically significant decrease in HbA1c remained statistically significant until month 12 (191/537, 35.6% vs 152/586, 26.0%; P=.006) and marginally significant until month 18. The percentage of patients with clinically relevant decrease in HbA1c was also significantly greater in the combined intervention group than in the usual care group at months 3, 6, and 18.

The results of the interventions were also analyzed in the relevant subgroup of uncontrolled patients with baseline HbA1c >7%. As shown in Multimedia Appendix 7, for this subgroup, the differences in the HbA1c reduction between the intervention for patients and usual care groups were statistically significant, favoring the intervention for patients group from months 3 to 12. The differences in HbA1c AUC between the intervention groups and the usual care group considering the entire period were statistically significant for the intervention for patients and combined intervention: 0.26 (95% CI 0.48 to 0.04) and 0.25 (95% CI 0.47 to 0.03), respectively. For the intervention for professionals group, the differences were marginally statistically significant (P=.09).

All interventions led to a significant reduction in HbA1c among subjects with baseline HbA1c levels >7% across the entire study period (Multimedia Appendix 8). The differences at 24 months were 0.49 (95% CI 0.70 to 0.27) for intervention for patients, 0.35 (95% CI 0.59 to 0.14) for intervention for professionals, and 0.35 (95% CI 0.57 to 0.13) for combined intervention (Multimedia Appendix 8). Patients with usual care showed significant decreases in HbA1c at months 12, 18, and 24.

Finally, in the subgroup with baseline HbA1c levels >7%, the proportion of subjects with clinically significant reductions in HbA1c (≥0.4%) was greater in the intervention for patients group than in the usual care group until month 12 (140/263, 53.1% vs 116/269, 43.2%; P=.049). The differences between the combined intervention and the usual care groups were significant at month 3 (Multimedia Appendix 6).

Secondary End Points

Compared with usual care, the intervention for professionals group had significantly lower SBP at months 3 and 18 and the combined intervention group had significantly lower SBP at month 24 (Multimedia Appendix 4). Compared with their respective baseline values, mean SBP fell significantly in all study groups, but the difference was greatest for the combined intervention group at 24 months (7.5 mm Hg; 95% CI 9.8 to 5.2; Multimedia Appendix 5). For DBP, compared with usual care, we found significant reductions at months 3 and 24 for intervention for professionals and at months 12 and 24 for combined intervention (Multimedia Appendix 4). When compared with baseline, all groups improved; the maximum reduction was at 24 months for the combined intervention group, with a fall of 6.7 mm Hg (95% CI 8.2 to 5.3; Multimedia Appendix 5).
Appendix 5). The intervention for patients did not lead to a significant decrease in blood pressure compared with usual care (Multimedia Appendix 4).

Comparisons in BMI between the intervention for patients and usual care groups only attained statistically significant differences at month 3. None of the other interventions achieved greater BMI reductions than those observed for usual care (Multimedia Appendix 4). Compared with the baseline values, the mean values of BMI decreased in the intervention for professionals group throughout the follow-up and in the usual care group at months 3 and 24. The intervention for patients group experienced the greatest improvement and showed a statistically significant reduction at month 24: 0.78 kg/m² (95% CI 1.0 to 0.6; Multimedia Appendix 5).

Multimedia Appendices 4 and 5 contain detailed biochemical, clinical, and anthropometric data for the whole sample. Multimedia Appendices 7 and 8 contain these data for the subgroup with basal HbA₁c >7%.

All 4 groups showed statistically significant improvements in total and LDL cholesterol levels at the end of follow-up. The differences between the intervention and usual care groups were not statistically significant. HDL cholesterol and triglyceride levels did not reveal clinically relevant changes.

We did not detect statistically significant differences in the comparison of intervention for patients and intervention for professionals groups in relation to the most intensive intervention in the combined intervention group regarding the primary or secondary outcomes in the AUC over the follow-up period, except for BMI, which had a difference in area of −0.29 (95% CI −0.57 to 0.01) kg/m² in favor of the intervention for patients group.

For most clinical results, ICC values were low in every PHCP. Variance homogeneity was verified and thus reflected a very small effect associated with PHCP for intervention and control groups (similar clinical results among PHCP in every study arm). The ICC at the patient level was broad, accounting for considerable variations among individuals. Considering both ICC values, the results from the INDICA study appear to have good external validity.

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings**

The INDICA study assessed the effectiveness of multicomponent interventions to support decision making for the main actors involved in the management of T2DM (patients, relatives, and primary health care professionals) in many PHCPs [13]. We hypothesized that combining conventional educational activities with different ICT-based decision support tools would improve HbA₁c at long term (24 months) compared with usual care.

This study revealed that the intervention for patients group achieved a significant but temporary reduction of HbA₁c, compared with the usual care group, which lasted for 6 months, with a gradual dilution effect from then onward. Interventions focused on health care professionals and on both patients and health care professionals did not translate into a significant lowering of HbA₁c, in comparison with usual care, when evaluated in the whole study population. Even so, more than 30% of the participants belonging to the intervention for patients and combined intervention groups attained statistically and clinically relevant reductions in HbA₁c (>0.4%). These percentages were significantly greater than those observed in the control group at 12 months (for the intervention for patients group) and 18 months (for the combined intervention group).

It must be noted that, with the intention of assessing the effectiveness of the intervention for all patients with T2DM, the INDICA study did not limit inclusion of participants by their HbA₁c level. Therefore, the study’s power to find clinically relevant differences for the main outcome measures could have been insufficient, according to Jackson et al [23], as only 50.6% (1180/2334) of all participants had baseline HbA₁c concentrations >7% (mean 7.3%, SD 1.5). Nonetheless, the study’s sample size provided statistical power to examine the results of patients with worse metabolic control, allowing the comparison with other studies that limited recruitment to patients with poor metabolic control.

As expected, the magnitude and duration of the intervention effect was greater among patients with baseline HbA₁c >7%, mainly for the intervention for patients group, which showed a statistically significant reduction in HbA₁c, in comparison with usual care, although the difference disappeared at 18 months. Moreover, considering the differences in the AUC values of HbA₁c, our results provide evidence of effectiveness for both the intervention for patients and the combined intervention throughout the study period. These results support previous findings reporting greater effects for interventions on patients with higher baseline HbA₁c levels [24,25]. Similarly, the effectiveness of quality improvement strategies exclusively focused on health care providers seems to be beneficial only among patients with HbA₁c levels >8% [26].

The Mobile Diabetes Intervention Study (MDIS) published by Quinn et al [27] also reported a higher reduction in HbA₁c over 1 year among patients with T2DM (with baseline HbA₁c=9.1%) by means of a multicomponent behavioral intervention exclusively for patients, without detecting effects on other relevant outcomes such as blood pressure or lipid levels.

Although MDIS provided evidence of sustained 12-month treatment difference in HbA₁c, rather than regression to the mean, the INDICA results, for the whole sample, show a progressive effect reduction close to the baseline HbA₁c values. Similar to MDIS, the observed reduction in HbA₁c in the INDICA subgroup with baseline HbA₁c>7% remained stable over the long term. However, evidence of long-term effectiveness of these complex interventions is not well stated yet because of the reduced number of studies providing results at 12 months of follow-up and beyond [28,29].

Several systematic reviews found that interventions based on ICTs led to significant improvements of 4% to 5% in HbA₁c...
compared with usual care [12,28,30,31], with effect differences according to the type of ICT used (internet, automated SMS, and apps) [11,12,32]. In contrast, smaller effects than those reported in our study for the intervention for patients and combined intervention groups were published for individual and group education among patients with HbA1c levels >8% [33,34].

Beyond the reported effects on HbA1c, we also found an improvement in blood pressure monitoring for patients included in the 2 groups and intervening health professionals. Long-term reductions compared with the baseline were observed in SBP and DBP, with statistically significant differences in relation to usual care. These combined effects on HbA1c, SBP, and DBP, together with the improvement observed for BMI, might contribute to enhanced cardiovascular risk [35,36], suggesting the overall value of these comprehensive approach strategies addressing multiple components and actors involved in T2DM management [37]. Although some outcomes, such as the improvement of blood pressure, might require the involvement of health care providers, others, such as the reduction in HbA1c, will depend largely on the patients’ intervention. Thus, our findings provide long-term evidence on the effectiveness of multicomponent interventions to empower patients and support clinical decision making to improve T2DM outcomes beyond that published by Taylor et al [29] in their systematic review for self-management interventions for patients with chronic conditions. The potential expected clinical benefits, associated with the overall metabolic and cardiovascular risk improvement provided by INDICA over 2 years, could be estimated in the longer-term follow-up on both microvascular and macrovascular complications and mortality [38].

Conceptual Frameworks

The assessed interventions were informed by conceptual frameworks of behavioral change [14] and applied to a large and heterogeneous sample of patients, caregivers, and professionals. The INDICA intervention characteristics were planned to increase the validity of the obtained data and the transferability of the interventions assessed. The key determinants of behavior change suggested by Michie et al [14] were considered for the INDICA interventions, with a higher degree of adherence in their design and implementation in the case of interventions for patients than for professionals, which could help explain the magnitude of the effect observed for HbA1c among intervention groups. Furthermore, time constraints, staff turnover, and self-perception of work overload among health professionals limited the possibility of going deeper into the following dimensions: professional role, motivation and goals, social and professional influences, emotions, and action planning. A detailed description of the complex behavior change interventions applied was reported elsewhere [13] to promote replication at other sites. Other potential explanations for the unexpected differences between the intervention for patients and combined intervention groups were the higher attendance rate of patient and family members in the educational group sessions and a significantly higher rate of web questionnaire completion observed in the intervention for patients group. This higher rate of questionnaire completion was key to adjusting the individualized components of SMS messages, providing an extended exposure to web-based educational material. The high turnover among health care professionals in most PHCPs included in the study, as occurs in the real world, could also account for the lesser effect of the intervention for professionals and the combined intervention.

To maximize effectiveness, the INDICA interventions incorporated all the components of a technology-enabled self-management feedback cycle, connecting patients and the research team by using bidirectional communication, analyzing patient-provided behavior and health data, tailoring education, and personalizing feedback according to the eHealth Enhanced Chronic Care Model [24,39,40].

Strengths and Limitations

This study has some limitations. First, it was difficult to obtain a full data set because of the high number of control visits and the duration of follow-up for many patients. Robust imputation techniques [19] were used to minimize the impact of missing data. Second, as previously mentioned, the high turnover among primary care professionals included in the study could explain the smaller than expected impact of the intervention for professionals and the combined intervention. Third, the fact that around 49.4% (1154/2334) of the whole patient sample had baseline HbA1c <7% and only around 23.0% (536/2334) had basal HbA1c levels ≥8% clearly limits the ability of interventions to reduce HbA1c. Fortunately, the available sample size was sufficient to find valid evidence. Fourth, similar to other reported findings [23,26,41], our usual care group was not a proper control group; it was subject to repetitive and intensive follow-up activities, including 6 different follow-up visits over the study to apply all prespecified questionnaires, in addition to clinical and laboratory tests. This intense follow-up activity could act as an intervention in itself, as patients might focus on important topics on which they had to pay attention. Fifth, INDICA interventions were not fully theory-based, making it more difficult to understand as to what works across contexts, populations, and behaviors. Finally, the INDICA study was not designed to test the efficacy of every component of the complex interventions assessed.

The strengths of the INDICA study include the pragmatic character of the trial and its wide sample size; the random assignment by clusters; the engagement, as research subjects, of all actors involved in management decisions; and the follow-up duration. Moreover, all educational group sessions and coaching activities by SMS were recorded to monitor and assess homogeneity, educator fidelity to interventions, and quality delivery. Educational workshops and periodic feedback to health care professionals were equally delivered to all participants in the intervention for professionals and the combined intervention.

The INDICA findings highlight the importance of conducting trials with long follow-up periods and sufficient statistical power to assess interventions of limited expected effect sizes but of high potential efficiency. ICT-supported interventions enable its extended and continuous usage by thousands of people in need to complement and spread interventions beyond the limited...
capacity of the health care systems to deliver usual care. We should be careful, however, to generalize the findings of INDICA. Interventions took place through PHCPs and were largely implemented through electronic communications. Health and digital literacy levels of the assessed population might vary with regard to other settings. Moreover, health care professionals were subject to differences in workload, interest and training in ICT used to support patients, access to CPG, and specialist support.

The potential effects of all these factors on the different study arms were minimized by randomization.

**Future Research**

Future research on the effectiveness of these complex interventions should be complemented by the analysis of patients’ self-reported outcomes and intervention cost-effectiveness to fully inform clinical and health policy decision making. The effectiveness of these interventions should also be assessed after longer follow-up periods to allow the measurement of relevant clinical (micro and macrovascular) outcomes, together with the assessment of potential longer-term reinforcement of the most cost-effective interventions in the short term. The use of real-world data will efficiently help to provide this valuable information. Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness assessment according to patients’ clinical risk and health literacy levels are also highly relevant. Additional evidence on cost-effectiveness and budget impact analysis is needed to support health policy decision making in cases of limited funding to support all assessed interventions.

Theory-based research on complex interventions to promote behavior change is also needed, rather than theory-inspired research, if we are to achieve a sound scientific basis for the development and reporting of such interventions. Comparative effectiveness assessment among components of complex interventions is also of interest, although it will require additional funding.

Finally, qualitative research is also needed to better understand the relationships between patient and professional characteristics, their engagement, and the observed results.

**Conclusions**

We found that INDICA interventions improved long-term metabolic control in patients with T2DM with uncontrolled basal HbA1c values compared with the usual care group. We also found moderate but clinically and statistically significant effects on blood pressure reduction, contributing to reduced overall cardiovascular risk. The increasing access to computers, internet, and mobile phones, together with improvements in digital literacy, regardless of social status, sex, and age, make these complex interventions appropriate instruments to improve patient empowerment in the continuous management of their chronic diseases by tailoring interventions to individual needs and extending patient support beyond the limited capacities of conventional office-based care.

**Acknowledgments**

The authors thank Jason Willis-Lee for copyediting services during the preparation of the final manuscript and Thayli León Plasencia for her help in recruiting patients.

This study received financial support from the Spanish Ministry of Economy, Industry, and Competitiveness (Instituto de Salud Carlos III), grant numbers ADE10/00032 and PI16/00769, cofounded by Fondo Europeo de Desarrollo Regional *Una manera de hacer Europa*. The funders did not participate in the study design; collection, management, analysis, and interpretation of data; writing of the report; and the decision to submit the report for publication.

**Authors’ Contributions**

The INDICA team included the following members: Abraham Pérez de la Rosa (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Alicia Pareja Ríos (University Hospital of Canary Island), Andrés Sífre Perello (Molina Orosa Hospital), Ángela Trinidad Gutiérrez Pérez (Primary Care of Gran Canaria), Antonio Cabrera de León (Ntra Sra de la Candelaria University Hospital), Antonio García Quintana (Dr. Negrín University Hospital), Armando Carrillo Domínguez (Insular University Hospital), Bernardo Eusebio Herrera Domínguez (General de La Palma Hospital), Carlos Sedeño Pérez (Primary Care of Tenerife), Carlos Ramírez Álamo (Primary Care of Gran Canaria), Carmen Daranas Aguilar (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Carolina Guerra Marrero (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Cecilia Lobos Soto (Insular University Hospital), Cristina Padrón Pérez (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Dácil Alvarado Martel (Dr. Negrín University Hospital), Daniel Hernández Obregón (Dr. Negrín University Hospital), Dulce N. Hernández Correa (Primary Care of Gran Canaria), Elsa Espinosa Pozuelo (Diabetes Patient’ association of Tenerife), Elsa Floridio Mayor (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Engracia Pinilla Domínguez (Ntra Sra de la Candelaria University Hospital), Fátima Herrera García (University Hospital of Canary Island), Félix Bonilla Aguiar (Dr. José Molina Hospital), Fernando Montón Álvarez (Ntra Sra de la Candelaria University Hospital), Francisco Cabrera López (Insular University Hospital), Gloria Guerra de la Torre (Primary Care of Gran Canaria), Gregorio Muelas Martín (Dr. Negrín University Hospital), Guillermo Monzón Monzón (Primary Care of Gran Canaria), Héctor de la Rosa Merino (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Ignacio García Puente (Dr. Negrín University Hospital), Isabel García Calcerrada (Ntra Sra de la Candelaria University Hospital), Iván Castilla Rodríguez (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Jacqueline Álvarez Pérez (Canary Islands Health Research Institute Foundation, FIISC), Jorge Federico Aldunate Page (Insular University Hospital), José Antonio García...
Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Screenshots of patients’ website.
[DOC File, 779 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app1.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Representative screenshots of automated decision aid tool embedded into the electronic clinical record.
[DOC File, 491 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app2.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Multiple imputation model.
[DOC File, 525 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app3.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 4
Adjusted difference in means and area under the curve of each group compared with the usual care group for the whole sample.
[DOC File, 176 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app4.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 5
Adjusted means for each group and intragroup differences compared with the baseline measurement for the whole sample.
[DOC File, 201 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app5.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 6
Patients with clinically relevant changes in glycated hemoglobin and comparison with the usual care group.
[DOC File, 57 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app6.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 7
Adjusted difference in means and area under the curve of each group compared with the usual care group for patients with a baseline glycated hemoglobin level >7%.
[DOC File, 143 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app7.doc]

Multimedia Appendix 8
Adjusted means for each group and intragroup differences compared with the baseline measurement for patients with a baseline glycated hemoglobin level >7 %.
[DOCX File, 61 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app8.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 9
CONSORT-EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 1620 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18922_app9.pdf]
References


Effectiveness of Internet-Based Multicomponent Interventions for Patients and Health Care Professionals to Improve Clinical Outcomes in Type 2 Diabetes Evaluated Through the INDICA Study: Multiarm Cluster Randomized Controlled Trial


URL: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e18922
doi:10.2196/18922
PMID: 33136059
Smart Data Collection for the Assessment of Treatment Effects in Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Observational Study

Zsa Zsa R M Weerts¹, MD, MSc; Koert G E Heinen², MSc; Ad A M Masclee¹, MD, MSc, PhD; Amber B A Quanjel¹, MD, MSc; Bjorn Winkens³, MSc, PhD; Lisa Vork¹, MD, MSc; Paula E L M Rinkens², BSc; Daisy M A E Jonkers¹, MSc, PhD; Daniel Keszthelyi¹, MD, MSc, PhD

¹Division gastroenterology-hepatology, department of internal medicine, NUTRIM school for nutrition and translational research in metabolism, Maastricht university medical center+, Maastricht, netherlands
²MEMIC center for data and information management, Maastricht University, Maastricht, netherlands
³Department of methodology and statistics, Maastricht university medical center+, Maastricht, netherlands
⁴Care and public health research institute, Maastricht university medical center+, Maastricht, netherlands

Corresponding Author:
Zsa Zsa R M Weerts, MD, MSc
Division gastroenterology-hepatology, department of internal medicine
NUTRIM school for nutrition and translational research in metabolism
Maastricht university medical center+
Universiteitssingel 50
Maastricht, 6202 AZ
Netherlands
Email: z.weerts@maastrichtuniversity.nl

Related Article:
This is a corrected version. See correction statement: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2021/2/e27998/

Abstract

Background: End-of-day symptom diaries are recommended by drug regulatory authorities to assess treatment response in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. We developed a smartphone app to measure treatment response.

Objective: Because the employment of an app to measure treatment response in irritable bowel syndrome is relatively new, we aimed to explore patients’ adherence to diary use and characteristics associated with adherence.

Methods: A smartphone app was developed to serve as a symptom diary. Patients with irritable bowel syndrome (based on Rome IV criteria) were instructed to fill out end-of-day diary questionnaires during an 8-week treatment. Additional online questionnaires assessed demographics, irritable bowel syndrome symptom severity, and psychosocial comorbidities. Adherence rate to the diary was defined as the percentage of days completed out of total days. Adherence to the additional web-based questionnaires was also assessed.

Results: Overall, 189 patients were included (age: mean 34.0 years, SD 13.3 years; female: 147/189, 77.8%; male: 42/189, 22.2%). The mean adherence rate was 87.9% (SD 9.4%). However, adherence to the diary decreased over time (P<.001). No significant association was found between adherence and gender (P=.84), age (P=.22), or education level (lower education level: P=.58, middle education level: P=.46, versus high education level), while higher anxiety scores were associated with lower adherence (P=.03). Adherence to the online questionnaires was also high (>99%). Missing data due to technical issues were limited.

Conclusions: The use of a smartphone app as a symptom diary to assess treatment response resulted in high patient adherence. The data-collection framework described led to standardized data collection with excellent completeness and can be used for future randomized controlled trials. Due to the slight decrease in adherence to diary use throughout the study, this method might be less suitable for longer trials.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19696) doi:10.2196/19696
Introduction

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a highly prevalent chronic disorder of brain-gut interaction characterized by recurrent abdominal pain and altered bowel habits [1]. Since well-defined organic causes and validated biomarkers for IBS are lacking, patient-reported outcome measures are crucial in assessing treatment response. Accordingly, drug regulatory authorities currently recommend using end-of-day symptom scores in IBS trials to measure drug efficacy [2,3]. Diaries are generally considered to be suitable to measure end-of-day gastrointestinal symptom scores and have the ability to capture symptom variability over time [4]. The validity and reliability of paper diaries, however, may be impeded by fake adherence [5] (ie, falsifying or backfilling written answers outside of the proposed time window [6]). The gap between reported and actual adherence to paper diaries has been shown to be as large as 80% in some studies [7]. Because backfilling introduces considerable recall and ecological bias [8], using paper diaries can distort trial results, which can ultimately lead to incorrect conclusions about treatments. Efficacy endpoints in clinical trials should, therefore, preferably not be assessed by paper diaries.

Recent technological advancements and the widespread availability of smartphones have given rise to numerous health-related apps and electronic diaries in the last decade [9-12], both in clinical and research settings. Digitalized data collection provides several advantages over a paper-based data collection as it results in higher data entry quality and more efficient data handling [13]. For example, responses can be verified automatically by built-in response requirements, routing, and data validation, and manual data transcription can be omitted. More importantly, data entry for previous days can be prevented, and all entries can be given a date- and time-stamp, generating more valid (momentary) results and allowing assessment of actual adherence to the diary. Studies that have implemented electronic diaries have reported excellent adherence, ranging from 76%-100% [5,14,15].

These advantages encouraged our group to implement a digital data-collection framework and develop a smartphone app that can be used as a digital symptom diary. This diary was used to collect Food and Drug Administration (FDA) recommended efficacy outcomes in our randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial on the efficacy of peppermint oil in IBS called the PERSUADE study [16]. This observational study describes the development and evaluates the performance of the overall digital framework used for data collection in that clinical trial. Within the realm of IBS trials, the use of a digital symptom diary is relatively new; most previous studies have not reported adherence for the assessment method used, and data on adherence in other populations cannot necessarily be extrapolated to IBS. Therefore, our primary aim was to evaluate the performance of a custom-made digital symptom diary in patients with IBS, in particular by assessing patients' adherence. Since patient characteristics can impact adherence [17,18], our secondary aim was to identify sociodemographic and clinical patient characteristics associated with adherence.

Methods

Overview

The study was based on data from the PERSUADE study [16]. This was a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial (clinicaltrials.gov; NCT02716285) conducted in 4 hospitals located throughout the Netherlands (Multimedia Appendix 1; Figure S1). The study protocol was approved by the Maastricht University Medical Center+ Ethics Committee. All study procedures were performed in compliance with Good Clinical Practice Guidelines and according to the revised Declaration of Helsinki [19]. All participants gave written informed consent prior to participation.

The study design of the PERSUADE has been described in detail elsewhere [16]. In brief, the primary aim was to investigate the efficacy of peppermint oil—a conventional small-intestinal release formulation and a novel ileocolonic release formulation—in patients with IBS. To this end, patients between 18-75 years of age, who fulfilled the Rome IV criteria for IBS and had a mean worst abdominal pain score of at least 3 on an 11-point rating scale (0, no pain; 10, worst possible pain) during a 14-day pretreatment period were included. Participants were randomized to placebo, small-intestinal release peppermint oil, or ileocolonic release peppermint oil for an 8-week treatment period.

Data were collected using a customized framework for digital data collection, specifically designed and developed for the trial, consisting of (1) a digital symptom diary (smartphone app); (2) an electronic case report file (eCRF, Castor EDC); (3) web-based patient questionnaires (Castor EDC); and (4) a planning tool (Ldot). During the 14-day pretreatment and the 8-week treatment period, patients were instructed to register symptoms daily in the digital symptom diary. Study visits and telephone follow-up telephone interviews were documented in the eCRF. Patients were asked to complete several web-based questionnaires at different time-points within the study duration. The complete list of inclusion criteria and study overview with timing of the questionnaires is given in the Multimedia Appendix 1. Primary efficacy results of the PERSUADE study have been described elsewhere [16].

Digital Symptom Diary: Smartphone App

For the digital symptom diary, an electronic smartphone app was developed by the Center for Data and Information Management at Maastricht University (MEMIC), in close collaboration with the investigators. The app was programmed using Xamarin, a framework to develop cross-platform apps using C sharp programming. The PERSUADE app supports Android and iOS devices. A Maastricht University industrial designer designed the visual content. A MEMIC team of data managers and researchers of the Maastricht University Medical
Center+ Neurogastroenterology group tested the app and provided feedback throughout several phases of development. Additionally, a patient was asked to use the diary and provide feedback regarding its user friendliness. Patient inclusion commenced once a version was reached that all agreed on.

The app’s home screen consisted of 3 main elements: the daily end-of-day symptom questionnaire, a medication list, and the Bristol stool chart questionnaire (Figure 1). The end-of-day symptom questionnaire included one main question to assess the primary outcome (in accordance with FDA guidelines): “How would you rate your abdominal pain today? Think about the worst abdominal pain today” (11-point numerical rating scale) (Figure 2). The daily symptom questionnaire was accessible between 6 PM and 12 PM and was unavailable outside this time window, to avoid premature completion. Other daily questions were related to “need of rescue medication” and “adverse events experienced.” If a patient had not completed the daily entry before 10 PM of that particular day, one push notification was sent. At the end of each week, the end-of-day questionnaire consisted of additional questions regarding abdominal discomfort, abdominal bloating, abdominal cramping, belching, nausea, and urgency during the last week (11-point scale numerical rating scale). It was not possible to enter data for previous days, and participants could not review prior entries. Automated routing, response requirements, and real-time data verification were built in to increase data quality and completeness.

The medication list was used once to register all regular medications. Patients were asked to keep their concomitant medication use as stable as possible. However, if alterations were needed, they were able to delete, add, or change the dosage of nongastrointestinal drugs.

The Bristol stool form scale was used to register all bowel movements (Figure 3). There was no minimum or maximum number of registrations per day.

Figure 1. Home screen of the smartphone app.
All patients received extensive verbal and written instructions during the screening visits on how to use the app and were encouraged to contact the researchers if the app crashed or otherwise did not function properly. A personalized username and password were provided for access to the app. Patients were instructed to enable automatic updates of the app to ensure the most recent version was used. If a patient did not own a smartphone or tablet, a device was provided. During the complete pretreatment and treatment periods, an alert system in the planning tool notified the investigators when a patient had failed to submit 3 or more daily entries. In addition, the development team received automated notifications of app crashes.

Web-Based Patient Questionnaires
At randomization, at 2, 4, 6, and 8 weeks of treatment, and at 3 and 6 months of follow-up after treatment ended, patients were asked to fill out web-based questionnaires. We chose not to implement these into the digital diary because of the large number of questions. Included were a questionnaire regarding demographics and lifestyle and validated questionnaires regarding symptom severity (IBS Symptom Severity System), quality of life (IBS Quality of Life, EuroQoL EQ-5D-5L), comorbid symptoms of anxiety and depression (General Anxiety Disorder 7, Patient Health Questionnaire 9), and health care utilization and productivity loss (Medical Consumption Questionnaire, Productivity Cost Questionnaire). Patients received invitations via email containing an HTML-link to the electronic environment. If a patient had not completed the...
questionnaire within 2 days, 2 automatic reminders were sent via email. Automated routing, response requirements, and real-time data verification were built in to increase data-quality and completeness.

**eCRF**

During the study visits and telephone follow-up calls, investigators documented all findings in a cloud-based eCRF. The eCRF forms were built by the first author with input from the other authors and contained items regarding demographics, Rome IV diagnostic criteria for IBS, history and physical examination, adverse events, and general wellbeing. Investigators were given unique usernames and passwords to view and add data for their respective inclusion centers. To achieve registration uniformity, the investigators were trained on how to enter data, and additional step-by-step instructions were given in a standard operating procedure document. Real-time automated data verification and corresponding pop-up notifications were built in to prevent typing errors or other erroneous entries. Automated routing of questions and response requirements ensured that correct items were displayed and filled in. An audit trail enabled tracking of all data changes.

**Ldot Planning Tool**

Ldot is a web-based tool developed by the Center for Data and Information Management at Maastricht University and was used to monitor study logistics. All personal patient data were entered into Ldot, and the app supported the study workflow by indicating when each study event (eg, randomization, follow-up call, etc) needed to take place for each patient. Ldot was able to communicate with the digital diary and the web-based questionnaires. For example, all email invitations for the questionnaires were sent automatically via Ldot. Patients’ adherence to the diary and web-based questionnaires could be monitored within Ldot and investigators were notified if patients failed to complete 3 consecutive days in the diary. Investigators were also notified if patients failed to complete a web-based questionnaire after a reminder was given. To guarantee the anonymity and quality of research data, no research data could be entered into Ldot. Investigators could view and add personal data for their respective inclusion centers. There was no possibility of viewing data from other inclusion centers, except for the coordinating investigator (first author) who had access to all data. An audit layer of the app tracked and stored information of all changes.

**Storage, Servers, and Privacy**

All software and data storage complied with international ISO27001, ISO9001, good clinical practice guidelines, and Dutch NEN7510 guidelines. Electronic diary data, web-based-questionnaire data, eCRF data, and sensitive personal data (Ldot) were all stored on different (nonconnected) servers. Several back-ups were made per day. Access to the servers was and will be restricted, with 24-hour on-site surveillance. Data will be stored for 15 years after study completion.

**Outcome Measures**

The primary outcome of the current study was patients’ adherence to the digital symptom diary, defined as the mean percentage of entries and calculated by dividing the number of completed entries by the number of minimal requested entries (total number of days in study). Patients were instructed to complete a diary entry on all consecutive days during the 14-day pretreatment and 56-day treatment period, or all days until discontinuation with the study.

Secondary outcomes were change in mean adherence per week over time, sociodemographic characteristics, clinical patient characteristics associated with adherence, time of diary completion, and difference in adherence between patients who were defined as responders to treatment versus nonresponders. Potential data loss and critical evaluation points were considered to explore the overall feasibility of a smartphone app as a primary data-collection tool in a randomized controlled trial. Other secondary outcomes were patients’ adherence to and completeness of the additional web-based questionnaires and investigators’ adherence to and completeness of the eCRF.

**Statistical Analysis**

Statistical analyses were carried out using SPSS statistical software (version 25.0 for Macintosh: IBM Corp). Data are expressed as mean and standard deviation or as number and percentage. Multivariable linear regression analysis was used to investigate the association between baseline patient characteristics and adherence to the digital diary, adjusting for minimization variables (age, gender, IBS subtype, inclusion center, and treatment group). A repeated measures analysis of variance was performed to assess the influence of time (weeks) on adherence. If the Mauchly test indicated that the sphericity assumption was not met, Greenhouse-Geisser corrected results were reported. A $P<.05$ (2-sided) was considered statistically significant.

**Results**

**General**

Overall, 190 patients were randomized. One patient was randomized erroneously (ie, without fulfilling all inclusion criteria). Therefore, 189 patients (age: mean 34.0, SD 13.3 years; female: 147/189, 77.8%; male: 42/189, 22.2%) were analyzed (n=64 in the placebo group, n=62 in the small intestinal release peppermint group, n=63 in the ileocolonic release peppermint oil group). Of the 189 patients, 95.8% (181) were Caucasian and 4.2% (8) were of mixed descent. Most patients (109/189, 57.7%) were recruited from a primary care setting. Eleven patients withdrew from the study during the treatment period (data until discontinuation were included in the analyses). Baseline characteristics are presented in Table 1. During recruitment, only a single patient stated the digital data collection as a reason not to participate.
Table 1. Summary of patient demographic and baseline characteristics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic (N=189)</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>34.0 (13.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>18-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>42 (22.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>147 (77.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education level, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No education</td>
<td>1 (0.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>15 (7.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>80 (42.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>93 (49.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary care</td>
<td>109 (57.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary care</td>
<td>41 (21.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined secondary &amp; tertiary care</td>
<td>39 (20.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IBS subtype, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>83 (43.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constipation</td>
<td>42 (22.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>40 (21.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undefined</td>
<td>24 (12.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IBS severity</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Score, mean (SD)</td>
<td>276.5 (71.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild, n (%)</td>
<td>15 (7.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate, n (%)</td>
<td>100 (52.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe, n (%)</td>
<td>74 (39.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IBS Quality of Life score</strong>, mean (SD)</td>
<td>73.0 (15.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EQ-5D-5L utility score</strong>, mean (SD)</td>
<td>0.7 (0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psychological comorbidities</strong>, mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety</td>
<td>5.4 (4.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
<td>6.8 (4.5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aIBS: irritable bowel syndrome.
bDetermined in a face-to-face interview (according to Rome IV criteria).
cThe Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS) Symptom Severity System consists of 5 items with a maximum score of 100, higher scores indicate more severe symptoms.
dThe IBS Quality of Life questionnaire consists of 34 items with a 5-point Likert scale (1=good, 5=worse).
eThe EuroQol-5D-5L measures 5 dimensions of quality of life. Raw scores are transformed to utility scores [20], which vary from 1 (perfect health) to 0 (death).
fThe General Anxiety Disorder–7 consists of 7 items with a 4-point response scale (0=not at all, 3=almost every day). The Patient Health Questionnaire–9 consists of 9 items with a 4-point response scale (0=not at all, 3=almost every day).

Patients’ Adherence to the Digital Symptom Diary

Most patients used their own smartphones, but 4 out of 189 patients needed a device provided by the investigators. Patient adherence to the daily digital symptom diary was excellent during the entire study period, reflected by a mean completion rate of 87.9% (SD 9.4%), 91.5% (SD 9.2%), and 86.9% (SD 10.8%), during all 70 days of study duration, the 14-day pretreatment period, and the 8-week treatment period, respectively. Adherence during the treatment period did not
differ significantly for treatment groups compared to that of the placebo (placebo: mean 87.2%; small-intestinal release: 88.3%; \( P = .67 \)), and for the ileocolonic release peppermint oil (mean 87.2%; \( P = .33 \)). Adherence did not differ between patients that were clinical responders to treatment (mean 88.0%) versus patients who were nonresponders (mean 86.2%). Over the complete study period of 70 days, a significant decrease in mean weekly patient adherence to the end-of-day questionnaire was found (\( F_{3.9, \, 1114.9} = 15.5, \ P < .001 \)) (Figure 4). Nevertheless, adherence was still good at the end of the study (mean 79.6%, SD 26.6%) (Figure 4).

**Figure 4.** Adherence.

When exploring independent baseline predictors for adherence, the combined regression model that included all minimization variables (age, gender, IBS subtype, inclusion center), treatment group, baseline IBS symptom severity, anxiety and depression scores, and education level showed that 1 of the 4 inclusion centers (center C; Multimedia Appendix 1, Figure S2), (regression coefficient \( B = -10.04 \), 95% CI \(-19.51 \) to \(-0.56 \), \( P = .04 \)) and anxiety scores at baseline (\( B = -0.59 \), 95% CI \(-1.12 \) to \(-0.06 \), \( P = .03 \)) were negatively associated with adherence throughout the study. Indeed, when comparing adherence between the different inclusion centers, adherence in center C was lowest (mean 82.3%, SD 12.5%), compared with adherence in centers A (mean 88.3%, SD 9.2%), B (mean 84.7, SD 14.0%), and D (mean 91.4%, SD 7.7%). There was no statistically significant effect of gender (\( P = .84 \)), age (\( P = .22 \)), or education level (lower education level: \( P = .58 \), middle education level: \( P = .46 \), versus high education level) on adherence. Mean time of completing the end-of-day symptom diary was 9:46 PM (ie, 14 minutes before receiving the push notification).

**Feasibility of a Smartphone App as Primary Data-Collection Method**

Several technical issues were noted by the investigators or reported by patients. In most cases, the cause was found, and the issue was resolved by the app development team without data loss. Encountered hurdles included difficulties installing the app during the screening visit due to connectivity failure, not receiving reminder notifications, inaccurate visual scaling of questionnaires on smaller smartphone screens, updates of Android or iOS operating systems that interfered with prior processes, and connectivity failure due to server maintenance. All documented technical issues and their short-term consequences are presented in Table 2.
Table 2. Technical difficulties and consequences with regard to the digital symptom diary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of technical issue</th>
<th>Patients affected, n</th>
<th>Consequence and solution, if applicable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low internet connectivity hindered installation of the app</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>In most cases, the problem was solved by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during the screening visit</td>
<td></td>
<td>moving to a location with better internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>connectivity or by postponing the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>installation to a later time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not receiving push-notifications as a reminder to complete</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>In many cases, patients would complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end-of-day questionnaires</td>
<td></td>
<td>the questionnaire regardless of receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the notification. However, the exact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effect is unknown, and it may have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>negatively impacted adherence during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>days that no notification was received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In most cases, the problem could be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>resolved by changing the telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>settings (eg by ignoring battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>optimizations). In 2 cases in which the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>issue could not be resolved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reminders were given during the study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>period by setting the alarm of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>device at 10 PM. In the short period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>during which it was unknown how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>devices were affected, additional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>text messages were sent as reminders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete views of the questions due to a too large</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>The issue was resolved by adjusting the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scaling on smaller smartphone screens</td>
<td></td>
<td>scaling in the app during updates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because only a few letters were not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>depicted correctly and because all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>participants had received a manual that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>included the actual questions asked, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>negative effect of short-term scaling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>issues was estimated to be negligible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS or Android updates that interfered with prior</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>The issue did not lead to missing data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settings of the app</td>
<td></td>
<td>because the small bugs did not shut down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the app. The development team provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>updates that resolved the issues as soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance of the hosting server</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>The issue led to missing data of one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complete day (ie, the day on which the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>maintenance took place) in all but 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>patients who were included at the time of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the maintenance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Web-Based Questionnaires: Patients’ Adherence and Completeness

Adherence to the web-based questionnaires was also excellent. One patient did not complete the questionnaires at the end of the treatment period; all others completed all questionnaires until the end of the study or until discontinuation (n=11 discontinued the study). Halfway through the study duration, however, a routing error in one questionnaire became apparent. Although this mistake was corrected immediately, the error had already led to missing data for that particular question in 23.3%-54.0% of all patients, depending on measurement moment (Table S1 in Multimedia Appendix 1). No missing items were found in other questionnaire items.

Investigators’ Adherence to the eCRF

Adherence of the investigators to the eCRF was excellent with a completion rate of more than 99%. In total, there were 27 patients with at least 1 missing variable in the case report file, 11 of whom discontinued the study during the treatment period (the missing values comprehend follow-up calls that were not conducted). The remaining 17 cases with missing data were because of missed follow-up calls (in 11 cases, 1 follow-up (out of 3) was missed), not registering if additional information about the 6-month follow-up period was given, not registering the date of the last menstruation, not registering if the general practitioner was informed about participation in the study, or not registering the number of capsules that were reported not to be taken during one of the follow-up calls.

Discussion

The results of this study demonstrate that patients’ adherence to the end-of-day questionnaire in the digital symptom diary was excellent, with a mean completion rate of 87.9% over 70 days of study duration. The total proportion of missing data and data loss due to technical issues of the app was small, indicating that it is safe and realistic to use the app as a primary data-collection method. Furthermore, patients’ adherence to the web-based questionnaires and investigators’ adherence to the eCRF were also outstanding with completion rates of more than 99%.

In terms of electronic diary usage in clinical trials, the adherence rate found in this IBS study is at least comparable to or higher than previously reported rates [5,14,15]. Most people (90.3%) in the Netherlands own a mobile phone [21]. Only a few patients (n=4) needed a device from the investigator team to participate in the study, and only a single patient stated digital data collection as a reason not to participate. Mean adherence to the digital symptom diary decreased by 11% from the first week of the pretreatment period to the last week of the 8-week treatment period (Figure 4). A slight decrease in adherence to the diary during a study period (ie, logging fatigability) is not uncommon and has also been observed in other studies investigating digital diaries [5,22]. Regarding the usage of digital diaries in randomized controlled trials to assess treatment response (according to FDA-recommended definitions) in IBS patients specifically, we are aware of one recent IBS study [23] that applied an electronic diary to assess treatment effect. However, a direct comparison with this study was not possible, as details on the type of device, app, or adherence to the diary were not provided.

With regard to sociodemographic and clinical patient characteristics associated with completing the daily entries in the diary, we found no evidence of a statistically significant effect of gender (P=.84), age (P=.22), or education level (lower education level: P=.58, middle education level: P=.46, versus high education level) on adherence. This differs from the results of some prior studies and meta-analysis [15,17] that observed, for example, a statistically significant positive effect of age on adherence. Our interpretation is that this may be caused by the
relatively young patient population in the current study. We observed that patients with higher anxiety scores had lower adherence to the digital symptom diary. These data are in line with those of Aaron et al [24], showing that participants with higher stress levels may have lower completion rates. Interestingly, a negative association was found between one inclusion center and adherence. All 4 inclusion centers were located in urban areas but with a wide geographical spread throughout the Netherlands as shown in Multimedia Appendix 1 (Figure S2). The center with the negative association (center C) was in the most urban and populated area (ie, the Amsterdam-The Hague-Rotterdam-Utrecht urban agglomeration). No obvious demographic or baseline differences were observed between study populations in different inclusion centers. No association was found between the lower adherence and the investigator by whom the instructions were given. Although the reason for lower adherence of patients included in this center is unclear, religious and cultural backgrounds of inhabitants of this agglomeration may have differed from those of the inhabitants of other geographical areas [25-27]. Nevertheless, overall adherence during the treatment period in this inclusion center was still good (mean 82.3%, SD 12.5%).

In terms of technical issues arising during the study, minor bugs occurring as a consequence of ever evolving smartphones and operating systems are practically inevitable. It is our experience, therefore, that continuous maintenance and software updating by a development team is crucial to avoid data loss and potential agitation of the study participant due to app malfunctioning. Consequently, the feasibility of using a smartphone app as a primary data-collection method depends to a large extent on skills and availability of development team staff, and research groups should check if appropriate support is available before opting for such methods.

Many high-quality IBS trials have used interactive voice response systems as the primary data collection method [28-31]. In spite of this frequent use, the interactive voice response systems used in IBS trials have not been described in detail, thereby hampering replication and implementation of the methodology in other trials. For comparison with our methodology, we therefore depended on what is known about interactive voice response systems in general. Akin to a digital symptom diary, the interactive voice response systems method allows control of time-windows in which surveys should be completed, provides automated time-stamps to answers, performs data verification and validation, follows a predefined routing schema, enables automatic reminders, collects and stores data in real time, and leads to an overall consistent survey administration. In addition, both methods equally depend on telephone- or internet-service and require staff to program and maintain the software. A potential advantage of interactive voice response systems over those of digital diaries is that it does not depend on literacy skills of the participant. An interactive voice response systems may also need fewer software updates than what is required by smartphone apps due to the high pace of smartphone operating system updates. Potential disadvantages of the interactive voice response systems compared with digital symptom diaries are (1) the inability to get clarification during the survey, whereas a digital symptom diary can have built-in optional clarification of questions; (2) not all interactive voice response systems are equipped with speech recognition; open-ended questions then require transcription by a data manager; (3) the quality of open-ended question recordings depends on enunciation, background noise, and connection; and (4) usage of the interactive voice response systems requires extensive participant training and could be less user friendly [32]. As for patient adherence to the interactive voice response systems, this was reported by only one recent IBS trial [30]; they reported a mean adherence rate of 71% and 73% in the 2 groups examined, when adherence was defined as completing at least 80% of the scheduled calls to the interactive voice response systems. Adherence to the interactive voice response systems in that study [30] was thus notably lower than adherence to the digital symptom diary found in this study.

This study described the overall framework for digitalized data collection used in the PERSUade study. In addition to the digital symptom diary, the electronic framework used in this drug trial consisted of web-based patient questionnaires and an electronic CRF to collect additional secondary outcomes. A troublesome issue that occurred was a routing error in one of the questionnaires that was discovered too late and had already lead to a high proportion of missing data (Table S1 in Multimedia Appendix 1). This applied to only a single question, but routing errors can have potentially disastrous consequences. As such, investigators and data managers should take appropriate care and time when testing questionnaires. Data exports should, furthermore, be examined in an early testing phase and preferably by more than one investigator and data manager. Similar to the diary, the web-based questionnaires and the eCRF featured built-in routing of questions, data validation, and response requirements to encourage data quality and completeness. Overall, these steps allowed for guaranteed standardized data collection with completeness of more than 99% for the web-based questionnaire and eCRF items.

Additional advantages of the combined framework for digitalized data-collection are (1) the ability to monitor patients and their adherence; (2) a reduction in paperwork and physical archiving (eg, in this study the paperwork was reduced to one single informed consent file); (3) manual data transcription can be omitted as research data enter the database immediately; (4) the possibility to adjust and individualize the smartphone app, eCRF, and web-based questionnaires according to the needs of each particular study, and (5) more accurate and standardized data reporting since no error-prone re-entry is necessary. The described framework for digital data collection can, therefore, be employed in different studies investigating different disease entities.

Our findings should be interpreted in light of some potential limitations. First, the study was not primarily designed for the analysis of adherence to the digital symptom diary but for measuring the main clinical outcome [16]. However, since almost 200 patients were included, the sample size was sufficiently large to estimate adherence with enough precision. Second, adherence rate was not assessed within a controlled trial with a more traditional method of data collection (ie, paper-and-pencil diaries, interactive voice response systems) as a comparison. However, the rapid diffusion toward digital
approaches in health care and clinical research renders such comparisons less meaningful from a practical point of view as the use of digital techniques become inevitably ubiquitous. In addition, it is unlikely that these traditional approaches to data collection would result in higher adherence than those observed here. Another limitation was that patient satisfaction with the digital diary or web-based questionnaires was not quantified by means of a questionnaire. In this study, the feasibility of the used framework was evaluated primarily on the basis of patients’ and investigators’ adherence and the proportion of complete data, whereas quantified patient satisfaction was not taken into account. However, a low patient satisfaction would have likely led to a lower adherence, and thereby, a higher proportion of missing data. Therefore, although helpful, it is unlikely that applying such a questionnaire would have altered our main findings.

In this IBS drug trial, the use of a smartphone app as a digital symptom diary to assess treatment response was found to be highly feasible and resulted in high quality data collection with excellent patient adherence of more than 86% during the complete study period. The combination of the digital diary with the eCRF, planning tool, and web-based questionnaires led to overall standardized state-of-the-art data collection with excellent completeness and can be used as a framework for future randomized controlled trials. Due to the slight decrease in patient adherence to the digital diary throughout the study, caution is needed when using such methods in long-term studies. Although this framework was designed for IBS clinical trials, the results reported here are of added value to a far broader range of disorders for which the collection of patient-reported outcome measures is required. Future studies should preferably include a control group, for example, a group using the interactive voice response system or a group using the app without receiving reminder notifications, to compare adherence and to ascertain specific factors driving high adherence.

Acknowledgments

We thank all patients who participated in the PERSUADE study; staff members of the PERSUADE team in the 4 participating centers (Maastricht UMC: A Bours, N Aendekerk, D Jansen, G Van Hooff; Hospital Gelderse Vallei: B Witteman, G Homans, A Van de Vendel; Alrijne hospital Leiden: C Clemens, M Oosterveer; Medical Center Leeuwarden: A Westendorp-IJdema, A de Ruiter-van der Ploeg, G Tack-Blokker, H Lebbink); other members of the PERSUADE study team (J Brouwers, J Tack, H Frijlink, N de Wit, J Muris, B Essers); staff members of Center for Data and Information Management at Maastricht University (D Veldman, J Pisters, L Linden, D de Jong); the Dutch IBS patient federation; and Will Pharma SA employees (K Bouwens, AH Verhage, F Bunel, K Abildayeva).

Authors' Contributions

ZZRMW was responsible for study concept and design, development of online questionnaires, data collection, data cleaning, data analysis, data interpretation, and manuscript writing. KGEH was responsible for development and maintenance of the smartphone app and planning tool, data cleaning. AAMM was responsible for obtaining funding, study concept and design, data interpretation, and constructive review of manuscript. ABAQ was responsible for data collection and data analysis. BW was responsible for statistical support and constructive review of manuscript. LV was responsible for development of online questionnaires, data-collection, and constructive review of the manuscript. DMAEJ was responsible for development and maintenance of the planning tool and online questionnaires, as well as data cleaning. PELMR was responsible for design and data interpretation, and constructive review of manuscript. All authors approved the final manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

AAMM and DK have received a ZonMw, The Netherlands Organization for Health Research and Development (Dutch government) health care efficiency grant for the execution of the PERSUADE study (grant number 836031017). AAMM and DK have received an unrestricted research grant from Will Pharma SA, which also supported ZZRMW and LV in attending a scientific meeting. The study design, data collection, analysis, and interpretation were performed by the academic authors without industry involvement. The employer of DK and AAMM have an agreement with Will Pharma SA regarding the exploitation of a potential market authorization of the ileocolonic formulation of peppermint oil for IBS. AAMM and DK have received research funding from Allergan and Grünenthal involving a different smartphone app for IBS. KGEH, ABAQ, BW, and PELMR have no conflicts of interest. Part of the work of DJ is financed by Grant Top Knowledge Institute (Well on Wheat), the Carbokinetics program as part of the NOWO-CCC Partnership program, and H2020 848228/DISCOvERIE.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Supplementary material.

[DOCX File, 221 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19696_app1.docx ]

References


Abbreviations
- eCRF: electronic case report file
- FDA: US Food and Drug Administration
- IBS: irritable bowel syndrome
- MEMIC: Center for Data and Information Management at Maastricht University

©Zsa Zsa R M Weerts, Koert G E Heinen, Ad A M Masclee, Amber B A Quanjel, Bjorn Winkens, Lisa Vork, Paula E L M Rinkens, Daisy M A E Jonkers, Daniel Keszthelyi. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 02.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Asynchronous mHealth Interventions in Rheumatoid Arthritis: Systematic Scoping Review

Bart F Seppen¹, MD; Pim den Boer¹, BSc; Jimmy Wiegel¹,², MD; Marieke M ter Wee²,³, PhD; Marike van der Leeden¹,⁴, PhD; Ralph de Vries⁵, MSc; Martin van der Esch¹,⁴, Prof Dr; Wouter H Bos¹, MD, PhD

¹Amsterdam Rheumatology and Immunology Center, Reade, Amsterdam, Netherlands
²Department of Rheumatology, VU Medical Center, Amsterdam UMC, Amsterdam, Netherlands
³Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Amsterdam Public Health, Vrije Universiteit Amsterdam, Amsterdam UMC, Amsterdam, Netherlands
⁴Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, VU Medical Center, Amsterdam UMC, Amsterdam, Netherlands
⁵Medical Library, Vrije Universiteit Amsterdam, Amsterdam, Netherlands

Corresponding Author:
Bart F Seppen, MD
Amsterdam Rheumatology and Immunology Center
Reade
Doctor Jan van Breemenstraat 1
Amsterdam, 1056 AB
Netherlands
Phone: 31 202421800
Email: b.seppen@reade.nl

Abstract

Background: Mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets have surged in popularity in recent years, generating numerous possibilities for their use in health care as mobile health (mHealth) tools. One advantage of mHealth is that it can be provided asynchronously, signifying that health care providers and patients are not communicating in real time. The integration of asynchronous mHealth into daily clinical practice might therefore help to make health care more efficient for patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA). The benefits have been reviewed in various medical conditions, such as diabetes and asthma, with promising results. However, to date, it is unclear what evidence exists for the use of asynchronous mHealth in the field of RA.

Objective: The objective of this study was to map the different asynchronous mHealth interventions tested in clinical trials in patients with RA and to summarize the effects of the interventions.

Methods: A systematic search of Pubmed, Scopus, Cochrane, and PsycINFO was performed following the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analysis (PRISMA) guidelines. Studies were initially screened and later assessed by two independent researchers. Disagreements on inclusion or exclusion of studies were resolved by discussion.

Results: The literature search yielded 1752 abstracts. After deduplication and screening, 10 controlled intervention studies were included. All studies were assessed to be at risk for bias in at least one domain of the Cochrane risk-of-bias tool. In the 10 selected studies, 4 different types of mHealth interventions were used: SMS reminders (to increase medication adherence or physical activity; n=3), web apps (for disease monitoring and/or to provide medical information; n=5), smartphone apps (for disease monitoring; n=1), and pedometers (to increase and track steps; n=1). Measured outcomes varied widely between studies; improvements were seen in terms of medication compliance (SMS reminders), reaching rapid remission (web app), various domains of physical activity (pedometer, SMS reminders, and web apps), patient-physician interaction (web apps), and self-efficacy (smartphone app).

Conclusions: SMS reminders, web apps, smartphone apps, and pedometers have been evaluated in intervention studies in patients with RA. These interventions have been used to monitor patients or to support them in their health behavior. The use of asynchronous mHealth led to desirable outcomes in nearly all studies. However, since all studies were at risk of bias and methods used were very heterogeneous, high-quality research is warranted to corroborate these promising results.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19260) doi:10.2196/19260
Introduction

Background

An increase in the prevalence of rheumatoid arthritis (RA), as well as a general shortage of rheumatologists to treat patients with RA, has been described [1,2]. In combination with rising health care costs, this makes structural changes in the Dutch health care system seem inevitable [3]. The challenge set is difficult, as solutions for the increasing health care costs, the rising prevalence of RA, and the subsequent demand on our outpatient clinics will need to follow the treat-to-target guidelines [4]. Integrating mobile health (mHealth) into daily clinical practice may help overcome the challenges the Dutch health care system is facing in the care of patients with RA and other chronic diseases [5-7]. Especially for patients with RA, the anticipated benefits of mHealth use should be evaluated, as adoption of mHealth might be challenging for older patients with RA or patients impeded by hurting joints [8,9].

The World Health Organization defines mHealth as “medical and public health practice supported by mobile devices such as mobile phones, tablets (…)” [7]. Apps for gait analysis, activity tracking, and video consultations and devices for handgrip strength monitoring have been developed and tested in patients with RA [10-13]. Two types of mHealth interventions can be distinguished: synchronous interventions, such as tele- and video consultation (where health care provider and patient are in direct real-time contact), and asynchronous interventions (no direct real-time contact), such as electronic consultations and remote disease activity monitoring through web or smartphone apps [14,15]. Asynchronous mHealth interventions have not received the same degree of attention as synchronous mHealth in RA [16,17], despite the anticipated benefits such as shorter wait times, lower health care usage, and consultations tailored to need [18-21]. So far, it remains unclear what evidence exists for the use of asynchronous mHealth interventions in patients with RA.

Objective

The objective of this scoping review was to map the different asynchronous mHealth interventions tested in clinical trials in patients with RA and to summarize the effects of the interventions. Ultimately, this should help to identify promising implementations and future research opportunities.

Methods

Study Design

We conducted a scoping review of the literature. This type of review is suitable to map the available evidence in new and developing fields. The value of scoping reviews to evidence-based health care and practice lies in the examination of a broader area to identify gaps in the research knowledge base, clarify key concepts, and report on the types of evidence that address and inform practice in the field [22].

Search Methods

A review protocol was developed based on the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analysis (PRISMA) statement [23]. Consequently, a comprehensive search of the bibliographic databases PubMed, Embase.com, Ebsco/PsycINFO, Wiley/Cochrane Library, and Scopus was performed by a medical librarian. Databases were searched from inception to November 20, 2019. The following terms were used as index terms or free-text words (including synonyms and closely related words): smartphones, internet, eHealth, mHealth, wearable, apps, rheumatoid arthritis, and tele-rheumatology.

The search was performed without date, language, or publication status restrictions. Duplicate studies were excluded. The full search strategies for all databases can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1.

Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria

The following inclusion criteria were used: (1) the study population comprised only patients with RA, or the majority of the study population consisted of patients with RA, for whom the data were reported separately, (2) the study evaluated an asynchronous mHealth intervention (ie, the health care provider and patient were not in direct synchronous contact), (3) the study type was randomized controlled trial (RCT), randomized controlled crossover trial, or quasi-experimental clinical trial, (4) the study reported outcomes in relation to the mHealth intervention, and (5) the study was published in English as a full-length paper and an original report.

Studies that reported only qualitative outcomes (eg, from focus groups, semistructured interviews, etc) were excluded from the review. References of retrieved studies were screened for additional relevant studies. Interventions that used a web app were taken into account, as these are easily accessible through mobile devices (smartphone and/or tablet) and therefore regarded as mHealth in this review.

Selection of Studies

Initially, the title and abstract were screened independently for eligibility criteria and blinded to each other with the online tool Rayyan [24]. Full-text papers were retrieved for all abstracts that met the inclusion criteria. Disagreements on the inclusion or exclusion of studies were resolved by discussion.

Data Extraction and Categorization

Data were extracted by one reviewer using a standardized template and verified by a second reviewer. The following data were extracted from each included study: the year of the study, the number of participants, patient characteristics, type of study, type of intervention, duration of study and follow-up, outcome measures, univariate outcomes, and statistical significance. Disagreements or discrepancies in data extraction were resolved by discussion.
Quality Assessment of the mHealth Intervention Studies

The quality of each study was independently evaluated using the Cochrane Collaboration’s tool—a 7-domain tool for assessing risk of bias in which study characteristics are classified as having high, low, or unclear risk of bias [25]. For each study, all items were rated by the same reviewers and substantiated in a Microsoft Excel file (version 2013; Microsoft Corporation). The results were compared and disagreements in results were resolved by discussion and, when necessary, by consultation with a third reviewer.

Results

Study Selection and Inclusion

The search yielded 1752 abstracts (Pubmed: n=286; Embase: n=1088; PsycInfo: n=9; Cochrane library: n=81; and Scopus: n=288). One additional abstract was added after cross-referencing. After deduplication, 1261 abstracts remained, of which 1245 did not meet the inclusion criteria. The main reasons to exclude abstracts were that they were not mHealth studies, the population was not patients with RA, they were conference abstracts, or they were the wrong study type (ie, review or not an intervention study). A total of 17 full-text studies were reviewed and ultimately 10 studies were included (Figure 1). All studies were RCTs, with the exception of a study by Mollard and Michaud [8], which was a nonrandomized controlled study.

Figure 1. Study selection. mHealth: mobile health.

Study Results

A description of the quantitative evidence for the mHealth interventions reported in the included studies is presented in Table 1. In the 10 intervention studies, four different types of interventions were used: SMS reminders (for adherence to medication and physical activity plans) [26-28], web apps (for information and disease monitoring) [13,29-32], smartphone apps (for disease monitoring) [8], and pedometers (for activity tracking) [33]. Measured outcomes and study methods varied among the trials, depending on the aim of the mHealth intervention. All of the studies included between-group comparisons.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ref</th>
<th>Pts with RA, n</th>
<th>Study duration (+ follow-up)</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Outcome measure</th>
<th>Results&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intervention, mean (SD)</td>
<td>Control, mean (SD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[8]</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>6 mths&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>LiveWith Arthritis smartphone app with optical imaging</td>
<td>Self-efficacy: P-SEMS&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;; PAM&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>P-SEMS: 2.80&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;; PAM: 6.37&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[13]</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>12 mths</td>
<td>Physical activity intervention (web app)</td>
<td>Participants that meet Dutch public health physical activity recommendation (%)</td>
<td>6 mths&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;: 38; 12 mths&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;: 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[26]</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>6 mths</td>
<td>SMS reminders</td>
<td>CQR-9&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.32 (5.66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[27]</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>16 wks&lt;sup&gt;k&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Motivational counselling and SMS reminders</td>
<td>Daily sitting time (hours/day)</td>
<td>–0.30 (1.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[28]</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>16 wks</td>
<td>Motivational counselling and SMS reminders</td>
<td>Daily sitting time (hours/day)</td>
<td>–1.61 (CI –1.97 to –1.25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[29]</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>2 mths + 2 mths</td>
<td>Access to different sections of a web app: (1) social support, (2) gaming, (3) information, (4) 1 and 2, and (5) control group</td>
<td>Physical activity (β)&lt;sup&gt;m&lt;/sup&gt;, (minutes); health care use (β), (number of visits); medication overuse (β), (POMI)&lt;sup&gt;n,o&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Physical activity, group 4: β=3.39&lt;sup&gt;o&lt;/sup&gt;; health care use, group 2: β=–0.41, group 4: β=–0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[30]</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>12 mths</td>
<td>Sano (web app)</td>
<td>Patient-physician interaction (PEPPI-5)&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.6 (5.52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[31]</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>12 mths</td>
<td>Telemonitoring with RETE-MARCHE (web app)</td>
<td>Patients with CDAI&lt;sup&gt;l&lt;/sup&gt; remission and comprehensive disease control after 1 year (%)</td>
<td>38.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[32]</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>10 wks + 9 mths</td>
<td>Educational modules for improving self-efficacy in self-management of RA (web app)&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Self-efficacy (ASES)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>PI: 83.9 (19.0); 9 mths PI: 84.1 (16.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[33]</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>21 wks</td>
<td>Activity tracking with pedometer w&lt;sup&gt;o&lt;/sup&gt; or wo&lt;sup&gt;x&lt;/sup&gt; step targets</td>
<td>Physical activity (steps/day); Fatigue (PROMIS&lt;sup&gt;y&lt;/sup&gt;-fatigue)</td>
<td>Steps/day w: 1656 (2161), wo: 1441 (2829); Fatigue w: –4.8 (7.7), wo: –3.2 (7.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Ref: reference.
<sup>b</sup>Pts: patients.
<sup>c</sup>RA: rheumatoid arthritis.
<sup>d</sup>In the results column, between-group differences are presented.
<sup>e</sup>mths: months.
<sup>g</sup>PAM: Patient Activation Measure.
<sup>h</sup>SD unknown.
<sup>i</sup>Intention-to-treat analysis.
<sup>j</sup>CQR-9: 9-item Compliance Questionnaire-Rheumatology.
<sup>k</sup>wks: weeks.
<sup>l</sup>—: not available.
<sup>m</sup>Unstandardized beta-coefficient (β) of multilevel model, including time exposed to intervention; no univariate results presented.
<sup>n</sup>POMI: Prescription Opioid Misuse Index.
<sup>o</sup>No significant differences were found in medication overuse.
<sup>p</sup>No significant differences in the other groups.
The platform combined individual and community features. Improvement of self-efficacy, quality of life, health status, and pain was observed. Shigaki et al [32] evaluated the use of an online platform to support increased physical activity and decreased health care utilization [29].

Support was offered through weekly phone contact, typically lasting between 15 and 30 minutes. The platform improved self-efficacy and quality of life in the intervention group; no statistically significant improvements were seen in terms of health status or pain in the intervention group. Data collected through self-monitoring with patient-reported outcomes (PROs) were used for clinical decision making in one study [31]. In the study, PROs were remotely collected to evaluate disease activity by making use of a web app. A total of 44 patients were randomly allocated into 2 groups: the telemonitoring intensive strategy (TIS) group or the conventional strategy (control) group. In the TIS group, patients were monitored intensively and treated according to strict protocols. More patients in the TIS group achieved Clinical Disease Activity Index (CDAI) remission versus patients in the control group (38.1% versus 25% at 1 year; P<.01). Moreover, remission was achieved more rapidly, with a median of 20 weeks versus a median of over 36 weeks (P<.001) [31].

**SMS Reminders**

Three RCTs investigated the use of SMS reminders. Mary et al [26] evaluated the impact of weekly text messages on medication adherence in patients taking methotrexate for RA. Study participants who received reminder text messages on the day they had to take their methotrexate had a greater increase in medication adherence, as assessed using the 9-item Compliance Questionnaire-Rheumatology (CQR-9), compared with a control group and a group receiving a 15-minute pharmacist counselling session [26].

Two other RCTs [27,28] evaluated the effect of three individual motivational counselling sessions and individually tailored text message reminders on reducing daily sitting time. Initially, the pilot study [27] showed feasibility of the study design and acceptability of the intervention; a second study [28] evaluated the effect of the intervention on a larger population. In the intervention group of both studies, individually tailored text messages were sent to each participant to remind them of their behavioral goal(s). Participants could indicate their desired frequency of reminders (between 1 and 5 per week) [27,28]. Ultimately, patients in the intervention group reduced their daily sitting time by 1.61 hours per day [28].

**Web Apps**

Five RCTs investigated the use of an online platform [13,29-32]. The online platforms were used as informative tools for patients and offered a way to self-monitor disease activity. The platforms demonstrated statistically significant effects in terms of self-management skills, patient empowerment, patient-physician interaction, and physical activity [13,29,30,32].

Allam et al [29] evaluated the effect of different sections of a web app on physical activity, health care utilization, and medication overuse. In the 4 intervention arms of the trial, patients received access to (1) the information section of the web app alone, (2) the information section combined with the social support section of the app, (3) the gaming section of the app, or (4) both the social support section and the gaming section. The intervention arms were compared with a control group that had access to the social support sections on the website decreased health care utilization and medication overuse, and patients with access to gamification features alone or combined with social support increased physical activity and decreased health care utilization [29].

Shigaki et al [32] evaluated the use of an online platform to improve self-efficacy, quality of life, health status, and pain. The platform combined individual and community features.

Individual features included educational modules encouraging positive coping strategies for enhancing self-efficacy. In addition to online features, each member was provided with one-on-one leader support through weekly phone contact, typically lasting between 15 and 30 minutes. The platform improved self-efficacy and quality of life in the intervention group; no statistically significant improvements were seen in terms of health status or pain in the intervention group. Data collected through self-monitoring with patient-reported outcomes (PROs) were used for clinical decision making in one study [31]. In the study, PROs were remotely collected to evaluate disease activity by making use of a web app. A total of 44 patients were randomly allocated into 2 groups: the telemonitoring intensive strategy (TIS) group or the conventional strategy (control) group. In the TIS group, patients were monitored intensively and treated according to strict protocols. More patients in the TIS group achieved Clinical Disease Activity Index (CDAI) remission versus patients in the control group (38.1% versus 25% at 1 year; P<.01). Moreover, remission was achieved more rapidly, with a median of 20 weeks versus a median of over 36 weeks (P<.001) [31].

**Smartphone App**

A smartphone app was used in one study [8]. In the study, the use and feasibility of optical imaging through the smartphone were tested to monitor the progression of RA inflammation and deformity in patients’ hands. Inflammation and deformity were recorded by taking photos using the smartphone’s camera with a standardized procedure. The app also supported self-management behaviors with features to monitor symptoms and record lifestyle and environmental data (eg, diet, activity, and weather). After 6 months of app use, there was a statistically significant improvement in Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS) Self-Efficacy Managing Symptoms (P-SEMS) [8]. Results of the accuracy of the use of optical imaging for diagnosing flares of arthritis were not presented [8].

**Activity Tracking**

A pedometer was used in one study [33], as a tool to monitor and improve physical activity. The overarching aim of the study was to reduce fatigue, measured with the 7-item PROMIS-fatigue questionnaire. Patients were randomly assigned into one of three parallel arms: (1) physical activity education only, (2) a pedometer plus step-monitoring diary, or (3) a pedometer that visualized step counts combined with goal setting. In both pedometer groups, the number of steps increased significantly, and changes differed significantly with the education-only group. Within-group changes in PROMIS-fatigue...
scores in both intervention groups were statistically significant (pedometer plus diary group, \(P=0.02\), and pedometer plus goal setting group, \(P<0.001\)) [33]. However, the between-group difference in fatigue scores over time between the intervention and control groups were not statistically significant (\(P=0.21\)) [33].

**Figure 2.** Assessment of risk of bias with the Cochrane Collaboration’s tool. Green=low risk of bias, red=high risk of bias, and orange=unclear risk of bias.

**Risk-of-Bias Assessment**

At least one domain of the risk-of-bias tool was scored as “at risk for bias in all studies.” Blinding participants was not performed in 9 out of 10 studies. No studies were classified as at high risk for selective reporting. The majority of studies (6/10, 60%) were at risk for bias on multiple domains, and in 70% (7/10) of studies, there was an unclear risk for bias on at least one domain. Results are presented in Figure 2.

**Discussion**

**Summary**

With this review, we provide an overview of the effects of mHealth interventions tested in clinical trials in patients with RA. We identified 10 studies that examined 4 different types of mHealth tools [8,13,26-33]. Web apps were the most tested mHealth intervention [13,29,30,32]. In 9 studies, significant desirable effects were reported on five main outcome measures: medication compliance (SMS reminders) [31], various domains of physical activity (pedometer, SMS reminders, and web apps) [13,27-29,33], percentage of patients that reach remission after 1 year (web app) [31], patient-physician interaction (web app) [30], and self-efficacy (smartphone and web apps) [8,32]. However, all studies were at risk for bias on at least one domain. Due to the heterogeneity in study outcomes and methods used, and the risk of bias in all studies, the promising effect of asynchronous mHealth on all the aforementioned outcomes needs to be corroborated in future studies.

**Principal Results**

The results of the studies in this review show that it is possible with mHealth interventions to effectively monitor patients to achieve remission sooner [31]. Also, by sending reminders, mHealth tools can motivate patients to improve medication compliance [26], as well as to be more physically active [13,28,33]. Furthermore, mHealth can improve the self-efficacy of patients with RA [8,30,32]. If these results are corroborated, mHealth may contribute to better overall health [34,35], less health care usage, and possibly lower health care costs. In addition, we hypothesize that the value of patient-physician consultations that do happen can be increased, as several reviewed studies reported higher self-efficacy scores and better patient-physician communication. However, outcomes and study methods used in the mHealth studies were very heterogeneous, and studies were often at risk of methodological biases, which was also found in other mHealth reviews [15,36]. Heterogeneity was found in the wide range of interventions (smartphone apps, web apps, pedometers, SMS reminders) and chosen outcome measures. For instance, several different outcomes were measured (eg, self-efficacy, physical activity, and time to reach remission) and several different measures of self-efficacy were used (eg, Arthritis Self-Efficacy Scale, Patient Activation Measure, and P-SEMS) [8,32]. Furthermore, bias could have been introduced into most of the study results, as binding of patients to their intervention was rarely achieved. Even though practical limitations often impede binding in mHealth studies, it is recommended to ensure comparable experiences between control and intervention participants [37]. The study of Allam et al [29] illustrates that this can be achieved by utilizing a factorial study design; other options include an early-versus-delayed study design or partial blinding [37].

**Expectations**

Based on the limited evidence available from mHealth intervention studies, we will cautiously discuss some potentially promising implementations and expectations. We distinguished two main implementations of asynchronous mHealth: (1) monitoring of patients, which can be subdivided into active and passive monitoring, and (2) supporting patients in their health behavior (Figure 3). With the help of remote monitoring through mHealth, unnecessary consultations might be prevented. In inflammatory bowel disease, a monitoring mHealth intervention...
has shown to reduce health care visits (33%) and hospital admissions, without increasing disease activity or decreasing patient satisfaction [19]. We expect that monitoring mHealth tools could also be very useful to patients with a stable, chronic rheumatic disease. Often, the value of a consultation is low, as 75% of patients with RA in routine clinical follow-up have low disease activity or are in remission [38]. With monitoring mHealth tools, these consultations could be avoided, which could in turn decrease health care costs. Fewer consultations, however, may also delay biological tapering or treatment when necessary. The safety and cost-effectiveness of this form of monitoring mHealth is currently investigated in two RCTs [20,39]. We anticipate that the use of monitoring mHealth interventions (telemonitoring) will increase based on the increasing number of studies performed with mHealth and the increasing use of smartphones in the population. For patients with RA and their health care providers, objective parameters of disease activity that do not require patient effort (ie, filling in a questionnaire) but are automatically collected would be ideal. That is because passive, remote monitoring eliminates the need for active sharing of disease outcomes and would therefore (partly) surpass adherence issues. Ultimately, this would lead to less missing data and lower the burden for patients. Devices can already collect and share these data without any participation of the patient, and uses in rheumatology are being explored [10,11,40,41] (Figure 3). mHealth that supports patients in their health behavior (supporting mHealth) can help patients adhere better to healthy lifestyles and medication, and can play a significant role in helping patients to cope with their disease by means of social support, education, and improving self-efficacy [13,26-30,32]. In this review, studies used supportive mHealth to get patients more physically active, improve their self-efficacy, and increase their medication adherence [13,26-30,32]. In other medical fields, similar results were found with positive effects in terms of lifestyle and medication adherence [42-44]. This indicates that supportive mHealth may play an important role in preventive (health behavior change) medicine. However, one important gap in our knowledge here is that it is unclear how long the effects of these interventions last. No study in this review had a follow-up of longer than 1 year, and effects often decreased over time. This is likely due to the decrease in adherence to the intervention, which impedes the long-term impact. To increase adherence, some studies have reported on the use of persuasive elements in mHealth tools, such as the use of gamification or persuasive principles in text reminders [29,45]. We expect this to be an important line of research to increase adherence to mHealth tools and to ultimately optimize the impact of mHealth interventions.

**Figure 3.** Identification of asynchronous mobile health (mHealth) uses in rheumatoid arthritis. PROs: patient-reported outcomes.

**Strengths and Limitations**

This review was broad in scope and did not focus on one type of mHealth intervention, allowing it to provide a clear overview of the current position of all mHealth tools tested in clinical trials in patients with RA. To maintain a broad scope, the study regarded web apps as mHealth tools because web apps are easily accessible through mobile phones. However, it is possible, that the adoption of, or adherence to, web apps is different on computers and mobile phones. This might lead to other outcomes of the interventions, which should be further examined in future research. Lastly, it is possible that due to biased preference, only studies with positive results are published, which could have led to an overrepresentation of positive effects in this review. However, there is little evidence that this occurred, as we examined trial registries (clinicaltrials.gov and isrctn.com) and encountered only one trial that was completed more than 2 years ago, which had not published its results.
Conclusion
There is a limited number of studies assessing the effect of asynchronous mHealth interventions in patients with RA. The available studies show that asynchronous mHealth interventions have been used to monitor patients or to support them in their health behavior. The reviewed studies reported significant beneficial results of SMS reminders, web apps, and smartphone apps on several outcomes. However, study methods varied widely, all studies were at risk of bias, and follow-up length was often short. Therefore, the results of the review indicate that all reviewed types of mHealth interventions show some promise, but also that these results need to be corroborated in future studies.

Authors’ Contributions
BS and WB wrote and edited the manuscript, BS and WB screened the abstracts, and BS and PdB assessed the quality of the studies. All other authors provided feedback and edited the manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Search strategy.
[DOCX File, 17 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19260_app1.docx ]

References


Abbreviations

CDAI: Clinical Disease Activity Index
CQR-9: 9-item Compliance Questionnaire-Rheumatology
mHealth: mobile health
PRISMA: Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analysis
PROs: patient-reported outcomes
PROMIS: Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System
P-SEMS: Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System Self-Efficacy Managing Symptoms
RA: rheumatoid arthritis
RCT: randomized controlled trial
TIS: telemonitoring intensive strategy

©Bart F Seppen, Pim den Boer, Jimmy Wiegel, Marieke M ter Wee, Marike van der Leeden, Ralph de Vries, Martin van der Esch, Wouter H Bos. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 05.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original author and source are credited.
open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Real-World Evidence of User Engagement With Mobile Health for Diabetes Management: Longitudinal Observational Study

Anna-Katharina Böhm¹, MSc; Morten Lind Jensen², DPhil, DPM, MD; Mads Reinholdt Sørensen², DPhil; Tom Stargardt¹, Prof Dr

¹Hamburg Center for Health Economics, University of Hamburg, Hamburg, Germany
²Novo Nordisk A/S, Søborg, Denmark

Corresponding Author:
Anna-Katharina Böhm, MSc
Hamburg Center for Health Economics
University of Hamburg
Esplanade 36
Hamburg, 20354
Germany
Phone: 49 40428381627
Email: Anna-Katharina.Boehm@uni-hamburg.de

Abstract

Background: Patient support apps have risen in popularity and provide novel opportunities for self-management of diabetes. Such apps offer patients to play an active role in monitoring their condition, thereby increasing their own treatment responsibility. Although many health apps require active user engagement to be effective, there is little evidence exploring engagement with mobile health (mHealth).

Objective: This study aims to analyze the extent to which users engage with mHealth for diabetes and identify patient characteristics that are associated with engagement.

Methods: The analysis is based on real-world data obtained by Novo Nordisk’s Cornerstones4Care Powered by Glooko diabetes support app. User engagement was assessed as the number of active days and using measures expressing the persistence, longevity, and regularity of interaction within the first 180 days of use. Beta regressions were estimated to assess the associations between user characteristics and engagement outcomes for each module of the app.

Results: A total of 9051 individuals initiated use after registration and could be observed for 180 days. Among these, 55.39% (5013/9051) used the app for one specific purpose. The average user activity ratio varied from 0.05 (medication and food) to 0.55 (continuous glucose monitoring), depending on the module of the app. Average user engagement was lower if modules required manual data entries, although the initial uptake was higher for these modules. Regression analyses further revealed that although more women used the app (2075/3649, 56.86%), they engaged significantly less with it. Older people and users who were recently diagnosed tended to use the app more actively.

Conclusions: Strategies to increase or sustain the use of apps and availability of health data may target the mode of data collection and content design and should take into account privacy concerns of the users at the same time. Users’ engagement was determined by various user characteristics, indicating that particular patient groups should be targeted or assisted when integrating apps into the self-management of their disease.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22212) doi:10.2196/22212

KEYWORDS
user engagement; user activity; mHealth; diabetes mellitus; diabetes apps

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22212/
Introduction

Background and Aims

Diabetes causes elevated blood glucose (BG) because the body is not able to produce any or sufficient amounts of insulin or is not capable of processing it effectively. Patients have an increased risk of developing life-threatening complications caused by prolonged elevated glucose levels [1]. Although for people with early stage type 2 diabetes (T2D), a healthy diet, exercise, and weight loss may be sufficient to maintain near normal BG, people with type 1 diabetes (T1D) or progressed T2D require insulin therapy and more intensive glucose monitoring [2]. Thus, if treated adequately, complications can be avoided or delayed, but this requires thorough self-care and adherence to treatment [3].

The ongoing digital revolution combined with the increasing prevalence of diabetes has led to an abundance of mobile health (mHealth) apps promising novel opportunities for self-monitoring and treatment guidance for diabetes patients [4]. Functions such as providing health information, medication reminders, remote monitoring, and mobile analytics may increase the users’ health literacy, support patients to play a more active role in managing their disease, and promote adherence to treatment [4,5]. In addition, mHealth may enable sharing of data between patients and health care professionals (HCPs), which could support an improved patient-HCP dialogue [6]. Thus, if utilized optimally, mHealth may be an opportunity to increase quality of care while at the same time offering the potential to reduce costs for health care systems [7-9].

On the other hand, factors such as low digital competence or limited availability of technology could reduce the use and cost-effectiveness of mHealth. In addition, data privacy can be a concern for patients and may lead users to omit use or enter artificial information [10,11]. Furthermore, it is inherently difficult for patients and HCPs to select the most appropriate app for the individual patient, as there are over 300,000 health apps with different key features available on the market [12].

Although the variety and popularity of mHealth for diabetes patients is increasing, there is limited evidence about who uses the apps, the users’ engagement, and the apps’ effectiveness [11]. Surveys from the United States and Germany reveal that users of health apps were younger individuals; more often female; had an advanced education, higher income, and better health literacy [13-16]. However, these studies analyzed health apps in general and ignored disease-specific characteristics of use. Similarly, studies exploring user engagement often focused on other disease areas than diabetes [17-20]. A systematic review analyzing the pattern of user engagement of technology-based interventions for T2D patients emphasized the need for studies reporting on engagement, examining associations between user characteristics and engagement, and standardizing how user engagement is reported [21].

Objectives

This study explores real-world data obtained by Novo Nordisk’s Cornerstones4Care (C4C) patient support app (the app) for diabetes. The aim of this study was to study the use of mHealth among diabetes patients, here represented by the users of the app. In particular, the study aims to analyze how intensively users engage with the app and to identify patient characteristics that are associated with engagement with the app. Addressing these aims will help to understand how mHealth apps can be used effectively and what areas could be optimized.

Methods

General Overview of the App

C4C is a US patient support program for diabetes patients, funded by Novo Nordisk A/S. It includes the option to use the Cornerstones4Care Powered by Glooko mHealth app. The app has been available since June 2017, and approximately 30,000 users have installed the app by October 2019 and provided consent to use the data for research purposes. Installation does not require prescription by an HCP. The patient support program and the app provide information materials and tools to monitor nutrition, fitness, medication, and glucose levels (the modules). The app allows users to synchronize data from BG meters, continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) devices, insulin pumps, and external fitness and health devices. In addition, the user can view historic data and trend graphs, set reminders for testing their BG or taking medication, and add custom notes. Thus, it brings together different diabetes data relevant for effective disease management. In addition to this, the app allows sharing of data between the patient and the HCP.

Study Outcomes

A major challenge when assessing how users engage with mHealth is the lack of consensus on how to assess user engagement [22]. Therefore, we based our choice of engagement metrics on a theoretical framework defining user engagement of technology as a progress comprising 4 distinct stages: point of engagement, period of sustained engagement, disengagement, and reengagement [23]. We established 6 metrics capturing different aspects of user engagement. Table 1 summarizes the application of the conceptual framework in our study.

To account for censoring, that is, shorter observation periods for users who have downloaded the app more recently, we restricted our sample to users who had started using the app before April 26, 2019, and assessed user activity during the first 180 days after initiation.
Table 1. Conceptual framework underlying user engagement metrics based on the study by O’Brien and Toms, 2013.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conceptual framework and metric names</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Point of engagement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity delay</td>
<td>Days from consent date to first active day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Period of engagement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User activity ratio</td>
<td>Number of active days divided by number of potentially active days (here 180)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longevity</td>
<td>Days from first until last active day (maximum=180)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recency</td>
<td>Average number of days between entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regularity</td>
<td>Coefficient of variation of number of days between entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discontinuation</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistence</td>
<td>Days until 28 days discontinuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dropouts</td>
<td>Illustrated in Figure 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reengagement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engagement pattern</td>
<td>Illustrated in Figure 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The core metric is the user activity ratio (UAR). It counts the number of active days (ie, days with at least one entry) of user $i$ in module $m$, divided by the number of potentially active days (here 180 days):

$$UAR_i = \frac{\text{number of active days for user } i}{180}$$

In addition to this, we investigated the *activity delay*, which reflects the number of days between the consent date and first active use. Moreover, as proposed by Rahman et al [18], *longevity* captures the time from the initial use until the final entry (maximum 180 days). *Persistence* was expressed as the number of days until the first discontinuation of use within 180 days, where discontinuation was defined as a gap of $\geq$28 concurrent inactive days. The size of the permissible gap was based on the 0.9 percentile of all average user gaps. If users did not discontinue use, persistence was set to 180. In accordance with Taki et al [20] and Peterson and Carrabis [24], we also assessed the *recency*, which was defined as the average time between active days for each user. To quantify the *regularity* of activity, we additionally calculated the coefficient of variation of the time between active days, that is, the standard deviation of the time between active days divided by the recency. This number allows a direct comparison between the modules.

Finally, we calculated alternative versions of the UAR with the number of potentially active days as the (1) longevity or (2) persistence.

In addition to engagement, the metrics reflect the period and amount of data collection and, therefore, the availability of rich health information. Kendall correlations for nonlinear data were calculated to assess the redundancy of the metrics. All metrics were calculated for each of the 5 modules and for the overall app.

**C4C Data**

The C4C data set includes all app entries (manual and automated) collected during the period from app launch (June 28, 2017) to October 21, 2019. The data set is structured according to the 5 main modules of the app, namely, *food intake*, *exercise*, *medication intake*, *BG*, and *CGM*. In addition, it contains basic user information. The app contains no personally identifiable data, and users have provided their consent for data sharing. The data were aggregated for analysis.

**User Information**

Basic user information covers consent information (eg, date of consent), sociodemographic data (age and gender), diabetes type, bodyweight measures (latest height and weight), and a medication profile (medication type, medication name, and time at which the user indicated treatment initiation). Self-reported age is the only mandatory information to be shared when using the app. If information on height and weight was available, we calculated the user’s BMI.

On the basis of the medication profile, we further extracted if a user had registered insulin (yes=1 and no=0), other injectables (yes=1 and no=0), orals (yes=1 and no=0), the total number of registered medications, and the exact number of oral substances. On the basis of the medication name, we also extracted if a user registered fast-acting bolus insulin (yes=1 and no=0) because they represent patients with T1D and progressed T2D, thus patients who may require more intensive monitoring. The resulting treatment regimen information served as a proxy for disease severity.

Furthermore, we combined the information on diabetes type and medication profile to determine if a user was newly diagnosed. T1D patients were considered as recently diagnosed if treatment with insulin started within 180 days before the consent date. T2D patients were considered as recently diagnosed if (1) medication was limited to metformin, which is the typical first-line treatment for people with T2D, and (2) treatment started within 180 days before the date of consent.

**Food Intake**

Data on food intake include information on registered carbs, fat, protein, and calories. The user can either enter the meal manually, select a meal from a list, or scan the barcode of groceries. The data set stores the time the user indicated that the food was consumed and a timestamp marking the data entry.
Sufficient data were available.

within the first 14 days of observations in which exceeded the recommended 70% of time in range (TIR; 70-180 determined that users were in good glycemic control if they established by an international expert panel in 2019 [26]. We control was assessed based on recommended target ranges needs to be opened to sync). In this study, baseline glycemic for user activity in [partly] automated modules because the app exercise module, the engagement metrics can serve as a proxy for user activity in [partly] automated modules). The data set covers the day of the daily summary of the user’s activity as well as a timestamp of the data record, that is, the day of manual entry by the user or synchronization from an external app.

Medication Intake

Data about medication intake contain information on the registered medication, including the name, type (oral, insulin, and other injectables), and dosage. The user can pick the medication from a predefined list or make a manual entry. The data cover the time at which the user indicated the medication was taken and a timestamp marking the data entry by the user.

BG Values

The app allows the storage of BG values (mg/dL) obtained by BG meters. A BG meter is a medical device used to determine the concentration of glucose in the blood. It detects the level of sugar in capillary blood taken from a finger prick. The data set contains information on the time of BG measurement and a data entry timestamp (manual entry by the user or synchronized from a BG device via Bluetooth; this function is only available in few BG meters). In addition, users can add tags indicating if a reading occurs during fasting or is taken postprandially. Meal tags can also be synched from the BG meter. If available, we used this information to assess if the user’s baseline BG, that is, their first preprandial glucose measurement or their first value after nighttime (5:00 AM until 9:00 AM), was well controlled (yes=1 and no=0). The threshold of 80-130 mg/dL was adopted from official recommendation by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) [25].

CGM Data

In contrast to BG meters, which only capture BG at a certain point in time when a user performs the relevant actions, CGM devices typically generate 5-min interval data. An electrode is placed under the skin, while the transmitter sends data to a separate receiver, and the data are then sent to the app via Bluetooth. The data set covers the glucose values (mg/dL) as well as a trend arrow representing the visual change in the glucose trend. It contains information on the measurement time and a timestamp of the phone transmission (similar to the exercise module, the engagement metrics can serve as a proxy for user activity in [partly] automated modules because the app needs to be opened to sync). In this study, baseline glycemic control was assessed based on recommended target ranges established by an international expert panel in 2019 [26]. We determined that users were in good glycemic control if they exceeded the recommended 70% of time in range (TIR; 70-180 mg/dL) within the first 14 days of observations in which sufficient data were available.

Exercise

Exercise data provide a daily summary of the user’s activity, including the duration, distance, burned calories, steps, floors, and elevation. The user can either enter an activity manually, pick one from a list, or synchronize with an external health app (as the app must be opened to sync, our engagement metrics can serve as a proxy for user activity in [partly] automated modules). The data set covers the day of the daily summary of the user’s activity as well as a timestamp of the data record, that is, the day of manual entry by the user or synchronization from an external app.

Statistical Analysis

Exploratory Data Analysis

Descriptive statistics of user characteristics and study outcomes are presented as means, standard deviations, and ranges for continuous variables and as counts and percentages for categorical variables. If the values of self-reported data were implausible, observations were treated as unknown.

Uptake and discontinuation of use for each module are visualized as graphs. Survival curves were created to show the proportion of users who were still active (on that day or on a later day) over time. Event diagrams, moreover, visually summarize the pattern of user activity.

Regression Analysis

Multivariate regression models were used to examine the associations between user characteristics and engagement (UAR) for each module. Specifically, we estimated general linear models with a beta distribution (for each module, the link function was chosen based on the smallest Akaike information criterion and Bayesian information criterion for model selection). By doing so, we account for the fact that engagement is double bounded by the values zero and one (100% user activity). If a user’s UAR was equal to 1, it was set to 0.99. Missing data, which is a major concern in self-reported data sets, were treated as a separate category (unknown) for all variables to retain the full number of observations. The equation of interest can be described as follows:

\[ y = \text{gender} \times \text{age group} \times \text{diagnosis} \times \text{bmi group} \]

where gender represents the sex of the users, age group is a factor variable grouping users according to their age, bmi group represents the user’s BMI according to the official classification by the World Health Organization (WHO), diagnosis reflects the user’s diabetes type, recent is a proxy indicating if a user was recently diagnosed with diabetes, insulin is an indicator specifying if a user is treated with insulin (and therefore more severely ill), by control indicates if the user’s fasting BG at baseline is well controlled, and modules reflects the total number of actively used modules per user. For a meaningful interpretation, the margins were calculated for each parameter. P values less than .10 were considered statistically significant in our analysis.

Sensitivity Analysis

Given that there is no consensus on what constitutes an adequate amount of user engagement, the calculation of activity metrics was repeated based on active weeks rather than active days to confirm the robustness of our findings. In addition, we confirmed the robustness of our findings by applying gamma and logged ordinary least squares regression as alternative regression specifications.
**Results**

**Descriptive Results**

**User Characteristics**

Among the 29,643 users who gave their consent after download, 12,685 initiated usage of the app. Table 2 summarizes user characteristics for the 9051 users meeting our inclusion criteria (ie, they initiated use and could be observed for 180 days); 63.50% (5747/9051) of the users reported being diagnosed with T2D and 13.48% (1220/9051) with T1D. Among users who shared information about their gender, 56.86% (2075/3649) reported to be female. It should be noted that only 40.32% (3649/9051) of all users provided information on their gender. More than half of the users were aged 50 years or older, and the average age of users was 50.4 years. The average BMI was 34.8, that is, in the obesity range according to the official classification by the WHO. However, the number was based on a subset of 36.69% (3321/9051) of users who shared information about their height and weight.

A total of 76.28% (6904/9051) of users set up a medication profile, with an average of 1.9 registered medications. Among these, 63.33% (4372/6904) registered oral medications and 56.34% (3890/6904) registered insulin.

Within users sharing information about their BG, a subset of 90.73% (4550/5015) provided sufficient data to assess their fasting BG, resulting in 34.48% (1569/4550) of well controlled users. Similarly, 86.76% (485/559) of CGM users provided sufficient data to assess their TIR. Among these, 38.14% (185/485) satisfied the recommended 70% of TIR, indicating good glycemic control.
Table 2. Descriptive statistics of user characteristics (N=9051).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Minimum value of user characteristics</th>
<th>Maximum value of user characteristics</th>
<th>Total unknown&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sociodemographics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>2075 (56.86)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>1574 (43.14)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; (n=8880), mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;30 years, n (%)</td>
<td>719 (8.10)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-40 years, n (%)</td>
<td>1184 (13.33)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-50 years, n (%)</td>
<td>2103 (23.68)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-60 years, n (%)</td>
<td>2541 (28.61)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-70 years, n (%)</td>
<td>1737 (19.56)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;70 years, n (%)</td>
<td>596 (6.71)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body measures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (n=3646), mean (SD)</td>
<td>169.70 (10.57)</td>
<td>142.20</td>
<td>205.70</td>
<td>5405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt; (n=3507), mean (SD)</td>
<td>100.38 (29.24)</td>
<td>45.36</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>5544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; (n=3321), mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td>34.83 (9.79)</td>
<td>15.82</td>
<td>106.83</td>
<td>5730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underweight, n (%)</td>
<td>21 (0.63)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal weight, n (%)</td>
<td>354 (10.66)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight, n (%)</td>
<td>716 (21.56)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese I, n (%)</td>
<td>851 (25.62)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese II, n (%)</td>
<td>612 (18.43)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese III, n (%)</td>
<td>767 (23.10)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diagnosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 1 diabetes</td>
<td>1220 (14.96)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2 diabetes</td>
<td>5747 (70.45)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prediabetes</td>
<td>715 (8.77)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>475 (5.82)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Duration, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newly diagnosed</td>
<td>1780 (27.43)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment regimen</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of registered medications (≥1)</td>
<td>1.86 (0.97)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n=6904), mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered insulin, n (%)</td>
<td>3890 (56.34)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered bolus insulin, n (%)</td>
<td>2334 (33.81)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered other injectables, n (%)</td>
<td>1160 (16.80)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered orals, n (%)</td>
<td>4372 (63.33)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of oral substances (≥1) (n=4372),</td>
<td>1.38 (0.64)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Control of disease, n (%) of well-controlled users</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the basis of baseline BG&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1569 (34.48)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the basis of baseline CGM&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>185 (38.14)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8566</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Total unknown

<sup>b</sup>Age

<sup>c</sup>Height

<sup>d</sup>Weight

<sup>e</sup>BMI

<sup>f</sup>Baseline BG

<sup>g</sup>Baseline CGM
### Demanded app modules, n (%)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Minimum value of user characteristics</th>
<th>Maximum value of user characteristics</th>
<th>Total unknown</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ever used medication tracker</td>
<td>3933 (43.45%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever used exercise</td>
<td>1579 (17.45%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever used food</td>
<td>3821 (42.22%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever used BG</td>
<td>5015 (55.41%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever used CGM</td>
<td>559 (6.18%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### User scope

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of modules used (&gt;0)</td>
<td>1.65 (0.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used 1 module, n (%)</td>
<td>5013 (55.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used 2 modules, n (%)</td>
<td>2465 (27.23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used 3 modules, n (%)</td>
<td>1349 (14.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used 4 modules, n (%)</td>
<td>203 (2.24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used 5 modules, n (%)</td>
<td>21 (0.23)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### User Engagement

In addition to the user characteristics, Table 2 summarizes the use of the different modules of the app. Most initiated use of the BG module (5015/9051, 55.41%), medication module (3933/9051, 43.45%), and food module (3821/9051, 42.22%). A total of 17.45% (1579/9051) of all users applied the exercise module and 6.18% (559/9051) used the CGM module. It is noteworthy that more than 50% (5013 of 9051) of the individuals used the app for one single purpose, whereas only a total of 21 users took advantage of the entire app.

Table 3 presents the means and standard deviations of our study outcomes, that is, the 6 different user engagement metrics. Although most initiated use of the BG, medication, and food modules, the UAR was the lowest among the 3 modules (BG 0.07, medication 0.05, and food 0.05). In contrast, the UAR was highest for CGM (0.55) and exercise (0.37), both modules whose initial uptake remained rather low. Accordingly, activity delay was shortest for the medication and food modules (15 and 13 days, respectively), but low persistence (15 and 13 days, respectively) and longevity (23 and 20 days, respectively) showed that a high share of users stopped their engagement with the modules soon after initiation. In contrast, activity delay was longest for the CGM module (83 days), but once initiated, users remained active for an average of 133 days. A similarly high longevity (114 days) was observed for the exercise module. The recency of use was lowest for the exercise module (6 days) and highest for the BG module (18 days). Finally, it should be noted that the UAR turns from lowest to highest for the food module and for the medication module, if the denominator was defined as longevity or persistence, that is, if only the users’ active periods were considered.
Table 3. Descriptive statistics of user engagement metrics for each module.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity metrics</th>
<th>Medication (n=3933), mean (SD)</th>
<th>Food (n=3821), mean (SD)</th>
<th>Exercise (n=1579), mean (SD)</th>
<th>BG (^a) readings (n=5015), mean (SD)</th>
<th>CGM (^b) (n=559), mean (SD)</th>
<th>Any (N=9051), mean (SD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User activity ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denominator specified as 180 days</td>
<td>0.05 (0.15)</td>
<td>0.05 (0.14)</td>
<td>0.37 (0.35)</td>
<td>0.07 (0.15)</td>
<td>0.55 (0.41)</td>
<td>0.14 (0.27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denominator specified as the longevity</td>
<td>0.79 (0.33)</td>
<td>0.82 (0.31)</td>
<td>0.61 (0.32)</td>
<td>0.51 (0.41)</td>
<td>0.72 (0.34)</td>
<td>0.65 (0.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denominator specified as the persistence</td>
<td>0.84 (0.28)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.2)</td>
<td>0.66 (0.29)</td>
<td>0.64 (0.37)</td>
<td>0.83 (0.26)</td>
<td>0.73 (0.33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity delay</td>
<td>14.98 (60.06)</td>
<td>12.73 (54.33)</td>
<td>19.22 (78.10)</td>
<td>20.47 (64.77)</td>
<td>82.55 (149.70)</td>
<td>14.14 (58.96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longevity</td>
<td>23.25 (46.95)</td>
<td>19.68 (42.56)</td>
<td>113.7 (78.50)</td>
<td>57.97 (65.32)</td>
<td>133.00 (66.50)</td>
<td>58.56 (71.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistence</td>
<td>15.20 (36.71)</td>
<td>13.14 (32.45)</td>
<td>100.30 (81.85)</td>
<td>31.11 (49.75)</td>
<td>105.60 (77.49)</td>
<td>40.00 (63.49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recency</td>
<td>9.06 (18.83)</td>
<td>6.83 (16.76)</td>
<td>5.53 (11.85)</td>
<td>17.87 (26.79)</td>
<td>7.68 (22.47)</td>
<td>12.11 (22.78)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regularity</td>
<td>0.96 (0.75)</td>
<td>0.92 (0.80)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.54)</td>
<td>0.97 (0.59)</td>
<td>0.96 (1.06)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.71)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)BG: blood glucose.
\(^b\)CGM: continuous glucose monitoring.

Figures 1 and 2 support the findings in Table 3. Figure 1 emphasizes that dropout occurred faster for the modules in which use was initiated most often (food, medication, and BG). A large fraction of users dropped out already within the first week, and in the following weeks, the dropout continues to be higher than that for the other 2 modules. In contrast, more than half of the users remained active in the CGM and the exercise modules during the entire 180 days period.

Figure 2 shows the event diagrams visualizing the engagement patterns. Each dotted horizontal line represents a user’s interaction with the respective app module. The density of the graph consequently reflects all users’ activity within a module. This means that the darker the area under the curve, the more users engaged with the module. Again, the CGM and the exercise modules appear to be used most persistently, whereas the usage of the other 3 modules was often discontinued, as reflected by the white spaces.

Finally, Figure 3 adds information by showing module uptake over time. The general upward trends of the curves indicate that more individuals initiate use than drop out over time, which may indicate an increasing demand for mHealth and self-management of diabetes, for example, through successful marketing activities or other reasons for increasing awareness.
**Figure 1.** Survival curves visualizing the relative dropout of users per module. Active users are defined as active on that day or on a later day. Day 1 marks the day of initial interaction with each module. BG: blood glucose; CGM: continuous glucose monitoring.

**Figure 2.** Event diagrams expressing the user activity patterns over time for the 5 modules. A dotted horizontal line represents a user’s interaction with the app, and each dot represents an active day. Dots from multiple users and days may be overlapping; however, the density of points shows a pattern of intensity. BG: blood glucose; CGM: continuous glucose monitoring.
Figure 3. Number of active users per month. The increasing trend over time shows that more users are enrolling than dropping out. BG: blood glucose; CGM: continuous glucose monitoring.

Regression Analysis

Tables 4 and 5 summarize the results of the regression analysis, linking user characteristics and user engagement (UAR). Each column represents one module. For easier interpretation, margins are reported for each parameter and translated into active days.

Although more women used the app (2075/3649, 56.86%), the regression results indicate that they engaged significantly less with the app in 4 of the 5 modules. Only the exercise module was used significantly more by female users. Regression results further show that older users engaged significantly more with the app in all modules except the CGM module. In addition, there is a small tendency that individuals with a more recent first diabetes diagnosis used the app more intensively. The total number of actively used modules was positively associated with the interaction in a single module. Finally, body measure and glycemic control at baseline did not correlate significantly with user intensity in any module. Findings relating to diabetes type and severity of the disease do not point to a clear direction in our analysis.

To confirm robustness, the analysis was repeated with an UAR based on active weeks rather than active days. The results supported the abovementioned findings. When comparing the average number of active days and weeks in each module, it can be concluded that users do not engage with the app on concurrent days but instead interact after breaks of several days. Applying alternative regression specifications also confirmed the robustness of our findings.
Table 4. Beta regressions estimating the effect of user characteristics on user engagement (user activity ratio) for nonautomated modules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User characteristics</th>
<th>App module</th>
<th>Medication (n=3933; average UAR=9 days)</th>
<th>Food (n=3821; average UAR=9 days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ME&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;sup&gt;P&lt;/sup&gt; value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sociodemographic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (reference=male)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>−0.019</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>−3.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.020</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>−3.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (reference=30-40 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;30 years</td>
<td>0.000</td>
<td>.99</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-50 years</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>.23</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-60 years</td>
<td>0.007</td>
<td>.004</td>
<td>1.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-70 years</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;70 years</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td>.098</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.003</td>
<td>.69</td>
<td>−0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (reference=normal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underweight (BMI&lt;18.5)</td>
<td>−0.007</td>
<td>.73</td>
<td>−1.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight (25≤BMI&lt;30)</td>
<td>0.010</td>
<td>.12</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese (30≤BMI)</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.000</td>
<td>.99</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type (reference=type 1 diabetes)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2 diabetes</td>
<td>0.004</td>
<td>.095</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prediabetes</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td>.097</td>
<td>2.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>3.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.038</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>6.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recently diagnosed (reference=no)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>.16</td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.012</td>
<td>.16</td>
<td>−2.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment (reference=noninsulin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulin treatment</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>.17</td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.014</td>
<td>.12</td>
<td>2.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood glucose in control (reference=no)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>−0.005</td>
<td>.20</td>
<td>−0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.015</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>−2.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of modules used</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>2.70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>UAR: user activity ratio.

<sup>b</sup>ME: marginal effect reflecting the change in the outcome as the continuous variable changes by one unit (from 0 to 1 for categorical variables).
Table 5. Beta regressions estimating the effect of user characteristics on user engagement (user activity ratio) for (partly) automated modules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User characteristics</th>
<th>App module</th>
<th>Exercise (n=1579; average UAR=a\textsuperscript{a}=67 days)</th>
<th>BG\textsuperscript{b} readings (n=5015; average UAR=13 days)</th>
<th>CGM\textsuperscript{c} (n=559; average UAR=99 days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ME\textsuperscript{d}</td>
<td>P value</td>
<td>Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sociodemographic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (reference=ma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>0.059</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>10.62</td>
<td>−0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.006</td>
<td>.80</td>
<td>10.80</td>
<td>−0.024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (reference=30-40 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below 30 years</td>
<td>−0.067</td>
<td>.009</td>
<td>−12.06</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-50 years</td>
<td>−0.008</td>
<td>.68</td>
<td>−1.44</td>
<td>0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-60 years</td>
<td>0.004</td>
<td>.85</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-70 years</td>
<td>0.040</td>
<td>.09</td>
<td>7.20</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 70 years</td>
<td>0.032</td>
<td>.39</td>
<td>5.76</td>
<td>0.033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.078</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>−14.04</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (reference=normal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underweight (BMI=18.5)</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>.64</td>
<td>32.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight (25≤BMI&lt;30)</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.019</td>
<td>.63</td>
<td>3.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese (30≤BMI)</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>.93</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>−0.004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.002</td>
<td>.94</td>
<td>−0.36</td>
<td>−0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type (reference=type 1 diabetes)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2 diabetes</td>
<td>−0.006</td>
<td>.80</td>
<td>−1.08</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prediabetes</td>
<td>−0.033</td>
<td>.36</td>
<td>−5.94</td>
<td>−0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>−0.038</td>
<td>.31</td>
<td>−6.84</td>
<td>0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.022</td>
<td>.55</td>
<td>3.96</td>
<td>0.046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recently diagnosed (reference=no)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>−0.021</td>
<td>.22</td>
<td>−3.78</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>.75</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment (reference=noninsulin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulin treat-ment</td>
<td>−0.005</td>
<td>.76</td>
<td>−0.90</td>
<td>−0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.035</td>
<td>.27</td>
<td>−6.30</td>
<td>0.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG in control (reference=no)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>−0.014</td>
<td>.49</td>
<td>−2.52</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>−0.045</td>
<td>.02</td>
<td>−8.10</td>
<td>−0.031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of modules used</td>
<td>0.029</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>5.22</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}UAR: user activity ratio.
\textsuperscript{b}BG: blood glucose.
\textsuperscript{c}CGM: continuous glucose monitoring.
Discussion

Principal Findings

The aims of this study were to investigate how intensively users engage with mHealth for diabetes and to identify patient characteristics that are associated with user engagement. Our study revealed that 42.79% (12,685/29,643) of individuals who gave consent initiated use, thus reflecting effective transition from download to use. This could reflect a superficial exploration of several apps or a general insecurity on whether and how to best integrate mHealth apps into disease self-management. The superficial exploration is likely reinforced by the large availability of different apps in the diabetes field. Furthermore, the use may be impacted by the price of the app (the app used in this study is free of charge), and if the app is selected in collaboration with an HCP [27,28]. A survey among patients with diabetes in China revealed that only 19% of the apps were recommended by HCPs, whereas most users selected their app randomly or as recommended by other patients [28]. Finally, users may be reluctant to share information due to privacy concerns. It was found that a large proportion of users did not fill out optional fields in the self-reported user profiles or entered implausible values.

In contrast to the National Diabetes Statistics Report 2020, according to which men had a higher prevalence of diagnosed diabetes, 56.86% (2075/3649) of users reported to be female [29]. This could either indicate that women are more likely to use the app or that women are more willing to share information on their gender. A total of 13.48% (1220/9051) of the users were diagnosed with T1D. Estimates from the ADA suggest that only about 5% of people with diabetes are diagnosed with T1D [30]. Explanations for the high share of users with T1D in our study may either be their higher need for constant self-monitoring (and thus demand for the app) or their usually younger age of disease onset.

For the users who initiated use, the activity delay was much higher on average for the CGM module than for the other modules. This could be explained by the increasing availability of CGM technology during the period when data for this study were collected. Therefore, some users may have gained access to a CGM device months after they consented to the app. In addition, effort and difficulty of use have been identified as the main reasons for dissatisfaction among mHealth users in a previous study [31]. Hence, the activity delay may reflect the burden of initiating the use of the CGM module, for example, due to the necessity to connect the app with an external medical device.

The average 180 days UAR varied between 0.05 and 0.55, depending on the module of the app. Comparing these numbers with existing studies is difficult because engagement metrics and reporting remain heterogeneous in the literature. However, a discrepancy between initial uptake and long-term use was found among the modules: we observed either a fast and high uptake with a lower long-term use or a lower and later uptake and use that is more continuous. Low or decreasing engagement has also been reported in previous studies among patients with diabetes (it should be noted that high churn rates have also been observed for apps in other categories and are not health or disease-specific) [13,17,19,20,32-37]. A recent study using an in-app embedded questionnaire revealed that the most satisfying user experiences took place within the first week of engagement and were related to visual elements and the feasibility of health monitoring [31]. Thus, it is a well-known challenge to keep the user engaged over time.

One reason for the dropouts in this study may be suboptimal service matching, that is, the users engage with the app but experience that the app may not fit their exact needs [38]. The C4C app offers modules targeting different aspects of diabetes treatment. The app could thus demonstrate to patients how dosing along with exercise and diet affects their diabetes. However, most users only take advantage of one specific module, which may suggest that user needs are not the same and that most users may not need the full set of functionalities. Moreover, the UAR was highest for the CGM module, that is, a new technology with potentially fewer app suppliers (ie, alternative products) on the market.

Another cause for low long-term use may be that the app is not used optimally and may therefore result in a suboptimal user experience, for example, due to missing awareness about the importance of (true) entries for effective disease management. Therefore, a rewarding experience may be crucial to keep the users who are less aware of the importance of disease monitoring engaged in the long term [31]. In contrast, it may as well be possible that a patient is reassured about his disease management after having used the app for a while and does not need it anymore.

In this study, the discrepancy between high uptake and fast discontinuation was particularly noticeable in the BG module, in the medication module, and in the food module. In this context, it should be emphasized that the mode of data collection varies between modules. The exercise and CGM modules automatically collect data once the app is connected to an external fitness app or the CGM device. Therefore, exploiting the module does not require any further activity from the users than opening the app. The passive data collection may thus explain the high UAR for these modules. In contrast, users must actively make entries in the medication, food, and BG module (the number of tabs can vary depending on the exact way they choose), that is, modules with lower engagement. Accordingly, the median number of seconds to perform an entry was lowest in the CGM module (0 seconds) and in the exercise module (0 seconds, if from a connected app), followed by the BG module (58 seconds), the medication module (117 seconds), and the food module (156 seconds; Multimedia Appendix 1). Therefore, the mode of data collection may be an important driver for engagement with the app. This finding is in accordance with the existing literature based on surveys. The studies revealed that the data entry burden is the main reason for discontinuation of use, and the authors suggest that enabling features with automatically transmitted data would increase the users’ compliance [27,28]. However, it should be pointed out that it...
remains unclear how actively users ultimately interact with the app when data have been transmitted automatically. As the app needs to be opened to sync, the engagement metrics can (at least) serve as a proxy for user engagement. Furthermore, besides engagement, the metrics inform about the amount of data collected and reflect the availability of rich health information. Previous studies showed that both patients and diabetologists thought that diaries and doctor-patient communication based on collected data were the most important features of apps for diabetes [28,39]. On the other hand, we found that the medication, food, and BG modules had a higher proportion of users than the other modules, potentially because the manual data entry mode makes it possible for anyone with diabetes to register data (for the BG module, a BG meter is necessary, but these are very common for people with diabetes). In contrast, the CGM and exercise modules are meant for synchronization with devices or apps, which the user may not have or which pose an additional burden and complexity to initiate use.

Our regression results indicate that the optimal approach to increase user engagement may be patient specific and depend on their individual characteristics. In line with the findings of Rahman et al [18], we concluded that although most users of the app were female, male users were significantly more likely to be engaged in the app. Only the exercise module was used significantly more by female users. This result could be explained by a higher body consciousness, which is in accordance with existing literature revealing that women reported higher exercise levels than men [40]. Another explanation may be that exercise data are often passively collected and would require active disconnection from the external app. Furthermore, we showed that older users engaged significantly more with the app. Compared with previous studies, this finding is rather novel. On the basis of the interviews with patients aged 50 years or older, Scheibe et al [41] revealed a lack of acceptance and a low use of diabetes apps among the elderly, mainly due to a lack of additional benefits and ease of operation. Similarly, using survey data, Zhang et al [28] showed that the use of diabetes apps decreased with patient age. One explanation for our finding may be that if older individuals overcome a potential lack of knowledge in app use, they may be motivated to apply their newly obtained skills. In contrast, younger mobile device owners might consider their phone as a spare time activity and have a lower burden downloading and trying different apps [42]. Moreover, considering that diabetes is a chronic condition, the older may be more severely ill, and therefore, they require more (self-) monitoring compared with younger patients in earlier stages of the disease.

In addition, our analysis reveals that there is a tendency that individuals with a more recent first diabetes diagnosis used the app more intensively. So far, the existing literature could not find a correlation between disease duration and app use [28]. However, it is possible that new patients have considered their mobile phone as a helpful tool when establishing their initial individual self-management strategy. The great potential of patient support apps is increasingly emphasized by official institutions, such as the ADA or the WHO [11,43]. In contrast, long-term patients may not consider adjusting their predeveloped disease management habits. A usability study with older adults showed that participants were already satisfied with their current management system and that they would need to find a reason why apps are superior to their current medication management system [44]. However, it should be noted that our observation is only based on an approximate measure for the time of diagnosis, and more research is needed to confirm this finding.

The total number of actively used modules was positively associated with the interaction in a single module. This could indicate synergy effects among the modules, if the app was integrated in managing more aspects of a user’s disease or could reflect a higher discipline of users who take advantage of multiple modules.

Limitations

Our study has several limitations. First, missing data is a common problem when analyzing self-reported real-world data, ranging from 9.88% (894/9051) of users who did not share information about their diabetes type to 63.31% (5730/9051) of users who did not share information about their height or weight. We addressed this by categorizing missing data as unknown. In the context of this study, the amount of missing data can be viewed as an important result in itself. It is noteworthy that many unknown categories are highly significant. This may indicate that there are factors associated with user engagement that could not be observed in the given data set. Second, in a broader sense, data limitations constrained our ability to investigate other important factors that may influence user engagement, such as education or patient-doctor interactions. Wherever possible, we generated proxies substituting unobserved variables of interest. Finally, the data set did not cover information about the log-in times. Instead, our study was solely based on data inputs. Although we emphasized the relevance of automated data collection in our discussion, it remains unclear how actively engaged the users actually are, because collecting data is not the same as using data. In this context, it should be the ultimate goal of future research to assess how engagement with mHealth affects health outcomes and which module is most important from the health perspective.

Conclusions

There is no consensus on how to assess user engagement with mHealth solutions, but it is needed. This paper proposes a set of theoretically founded user engagement metrics that were used to assess user engagement in this study. After providing consent, 42.79% (12,685/29,643) of the users initiated use. Most users took advantage of one specific module of the app, indicating that the needs of patients with diabetes are highly heterogeneous. User engagement and amount of collected data were higher for automated modules, although initial uptake remained lower for these modules. Therefore, to increase the use of apps, providers of mHealth should consider the mode of data gathering and content design and take into account the privacy concerns of the users at the same time. Users’ engagement was determined by various patient characteristics. Although most users reported to be female, male users engaged significantly more with the app. Older people and users who were recently diagnosed tended
to use the app more actively. This indicates that particular patient groups should be specifically targeted or assisted when integrating apps into the self-management of their disease.

Acknowledgments
This project has received funding from the European Union’s Horizon 2020 Research and Innovation Programme under the Marie Skłodowska-Curie grant agreement No. 721402. The authors gratefully thank Jessica Baldridge (Glooko) and Katarina LeFever (Novo Nordisk) for providing background information about the app. The authors gratefully thank Professor Werner Brouwer (Erasmus University Rotterdam) and Professor Aleksandra Torbica (Bocconi University) for their suggestions and comments on the manuscript.

Authors’ Contributions
AB, TS, and MJ developed the idea of the study. AB, MS, MJ, and TS developed the design of the study. AB and MS contributed to data management and descriptive statistics. AB performed the regression analysis. AB drafted the manuscript. All authors contributed to the interpretation of the results and read and approved the final version of the paper.

Conflicts of Interest
Cornerstones4Care is a registered trademark of Novo Nordisk A/S. MJ and MS are full-time employees of Novo Nordisk A/S, and AB is associated with Novo Nordisk A/S through a research collaboration as part of her PhD.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Users’ burden to do an entry in each module.

References


Abbreviations

ADA: American Diabetes Association
BG: blood glucose
C4C: Cornerstones4Care
CGM: continuous glucose monitoring
HCP: health care professional
mHealth: mobile health
T1D: type 1 diabetes
T2D: type 2 diabetes
TIR: time in range
UAR: user activity ratio
WHO: World Health Organization

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 06.07.20; peer-reviewed by L Nelson, E Bellei; comments to author 15.08.20; revised version received 24.09.20; accepted 24.09.20; published 06.11.20.

Please cite as:
Böhm AK, Jensen ML, Sørensen MR, Stargardt T
Real-World Evidence of User Engagement With Mobile Health for Diabetes Management: Longitudinal Observational Study
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22212
URL: http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22212/
doi:10.2196/22212
PMID:32975198
Use of the patientMpower App With Home-Based Spirometry to Monitor the Symptoms and Impact of Fibrotic Lung Conditions: Longitudinal Observational Study

Colin Edwards1, PhD; Eamonn Costello1, BEng; Nicola Cassidy2; Bill Vick3; Anne-Marie Russell4,5, PhD, MSc, ATSF

1patientMpower Ltd, Dublin, Ireland
2Irish Lung Fibrosis Association, Dublin, Ireland
3PF Warriors, Plano, TX, United States
4Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust, London, United Kingdom
5University of Exeter College of Medicine and Health, Exeter, United Kingdom

Corresponding Author:
Colin Edwards, PhD
patientMpower Ltd
21 Denzille Lane
Saint Peter's
Dublin, D02 EY19
Ireland
Phone: 353 872599131
Email: colin@patientmpower.com

Abstract

Background: Daily home-based spirometry in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF) has been shown to be feasible and clinically informative. The patientMpower app facilitates home-based spirometry along with home-based monitoring of IPF-related symptoms. The patientMpower app can be downloaded to the user’s mobile phone or tablet device, enabling the recording of objective and subjective data.

Objective: The aim of this paper is to report on the 1-year experience of using patientMpower with home-based spirometry by 36 participants with self-reported pulmonary fibrosis (PF) treated with usual care.

Methods: Self-selecting participants enrolled in this community-based participatory research program through a patient advocacy group in their country: Irish Lung Fibrosis Association in Ireland and PF Warriors in the United States. Disease severity was comparable with a baseline mean predicted forced vital capacity (FVC) of 64% and 62% in the Irish and US participants, respectively. Both groups of participants were allocated to identical, in-country, open-label, single-group observational studies and were provided with a Bluetooth-active Spirobank Smart spirometer integrated directly with patientMpower. Data collected via patientMpower included seated FVC (daily), breathlessness grade (modified Medical Research Council scale score), step count, medication adherence, and symptoms and impact of IPF on daily life, which were measured by a patient-reported outcome measure (PROM) scale that was specifically developed for IPF. Longitudinal patient-reported data on oximetry and oxygen consumption were also collected.

Results: A large majority of the 36 participants reported that their experience using patientMpower was positive, and they wanted to continue its use after the initial 6-week observation. Out of 36 participants, 21 (58%) recorded home-based spirometry without prompting for ≥180 days, and 9 (25%) participants continued with recording home-based spirometry for ≥360 days.

Conclusions: The patientMpower app with associated Bluetooth-connected devices (eg, spirometer and pulse oximeter) offers an acceptable and accessible approach to collecting patient-reported objective and subjective data in fibrotic lung conditions.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e16158) doi:10.2196/16158

KEYWORDS
idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis; pulmonary fibrosis; eHealth; mHealth; patient-reported outcome measure; spirometry; home spirometry; patient experience; digital health; patient advocacy
Introduction

Pulmonary fibrosis (PF) is an irreversible lung disease that leads to progressive breathlessness and deterioration of pulmonary function; it is associated with significant limitation of physical activities and worsening quality of life [1]. The majority of PF cases are idiopathic, and there is no cure. The advent of disease-modifying/antifibrotic pharmacotherapies in the last decade has slowed the progression of PF, with registry data reporting an increase in median survival from 3 to 4.5 years. The progression of PF is highly variable. Acute exacerbations resulting in further impairment of lung function are a major cause of morbidity and mortality in idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF), reducing median survival to <21 months where hospitalization is needed [2].

Adjunctive symptom-based management is integral to disease management given the high symptom burden [3]. Objective assessments of lung function and symptom experience (including breathlessness and fatigue) are important in the monitoring of patients with IPF to inform both their self-management and hospital-based care plan, particularly initiation and adjustment of oxygen therapy, pulmonary rehabilitation, palliative care, and psychological therapies [4]. Traditional monitoring of IPF has typically involved spirometric measurement of forced vital capacity (FVC) along with the assessment of IPF-related symptoms at 6- and 12-month intervals in outpatient clinical settings.

Digital platforms which directly record patients’ symptom experiences and impacts of those symptoms on patients’ daily lives alongside objective clinical measurements (eg, blood pressure) have been developed for chronic medical conditions to support patients in managing their health. There was a lack of digital platforms created specifically for patients with IPF, and there were few disease-specific instruments to assess health-related quality of life with IPF. The IPF patient-reported outcome measure (IPF-PROM) captures symptom experience and impact of IPF on patients’ daily lives [5]. The collection of serial IPF-PROM data provides valuable information on longitudinal trends at individual and population levels. Furthermore, home-based monitoring of FVC by patients using small handheld spirometers is feasible, clinically informative, and more accurate in estimating lung function in patients with IPF than intermittent spirometry performed at clinic visits, and it may be of value as a primary endpoint in short-term IPF-PROM data provides valuable information on longitudinal trends at individual and population levels.

Methods

We conducted 2 parallel studies of the same design and methodology in 2 distinct populations (in the United States and Ireland). The studies were codesigned and conducted in collaboration with 2 advocacy groups for patients with PF: PF Warriors, Texas, United States, and Irish Lung Fibrosis Association (ILFA), Dublin, Ireland. Our approach was not prescriptive, as we aimed to observe the real-world experience of the integration of patientMpower into the daily lives of people with fibrotic lung conditions.

The patient advocacy groups collaborated with us from the outset of this study, informing, reviewing, and approving the study concept and design and leading on the patient information documents prior to the initiation of the study. The study protocol evolved iteratively, informed by the stakeholder and participant discussions and by peer review by health care professionals. Our approach was not that of conventional science and was rather founded in an implementation science approach, working “with” participants instead of “on” them. Participatory action research seeks to empower participants to tailor an intervention to suit their own contexts [11]. We were keen to ensure that patientMpower fitted into the context of an individual’s life. When using such approaches, the area between engagement/consultation and research is gray. Given that this work was led by patient advocacy groups and was focused on increasing experiential knowledge and obtaining results within a timeframe to determine how to scale up the use and sustainability of patientMpower, we were informally advised that approval from an institutional review board was not required. Nonetheless, in line with principles of good clinical practice, all participants provided written informed consent prior to accessing patientMpower and participating in any study-specific procedures. Entry criteria included a diagnosis of PF, ownership of a smartphone or tablet device, an email address, access to the internet at home, and willingness to provide written informed consent.

Each study was an open-label, single group, observational study in patients with PF treated with usual care. After obtaining consent, participants were invited to download the patientMpower app and use it daily for 26 weeks (the active observational study period). All participants were provided with a Spirobank Smart spirometer (Medical International Research), which integrates directly via Bluetooth with patientMpower to capture spirometry data. FVC data were displayed to each participant on their mobile device. Video-based training on the correct use of patientMpower and home-based spirometry was provided on a dedicated YouTube channel [12]. Participants were asked to record the following data via the app: FVC (one forced expiratory maneuver per day, seated), breathlessness (using the modified Medical Research Council [mMRC] score, once a day), step count, medication adherence, symptoms, and impact of IPF on daily life (using PROM scores) [5]. The IPF-PROM consisted of an overall quality of life question and 12 questions covering 4 domains: physical impacts of...
breathlessness, psychological impacts of breathlessness, psychological well-being, and fatigue. There were no prompts to record spirometry or breathlessness; however, participants were prompted to record a PROM once per week for the first 6 weeks.

Participants in the United States could record pulse oximetry on patientMpower using a Nonin 3230 Bluetooth-linked pulse oximeter (Nonin Medical Inc) and oxygen flow rates. The protocol did not specify the frequency or conditions for recording pulse oximetry, and the pulse oximeter was not supplied by the study sponsor.

At the end of the initial 6-week observation, participants were asked to complete a questionnaire to assess the utility and acceptability of patientMpower (Multimedia Appendix 1). Thereafter, participants were free to use patientMpower and the spirometer if they chose.

The sample sizes for each study were determined by estimating the number of participants that could be recruited by the advocacy groups over a 2-month period. We expected 50 participants to be enrolled by the PF Warriors and 30 participants from the ILFA.

The results are tabulated and discussed in the following section. Anonymized demographic data are displayed for all participants who gave informed consent. All other displayed data are for participants who used patientMpower and recorded spirometry at least once.

The data sets used or analyzed in this study are available from the corresponding author on reasonable request.

**Results**

**Study Population**

In the United States, 27 participants enrolled in the study; 24 used patientMpower and recorded spirometry at least once. In Ireland, 13 participants enrolled in the study, all used patientMpower, and 12 recorded spirometry at least once. Baseline demographics were comparable in both groups (Table 1). Most US study participants (25/27, 93%) reported a confirmed diagnosis of PF; this information was not reported by Irish study participants. Most US participants (23/27, 85%) and some Irish participants (4/13, 31%) reported use of antifibrotic therapy at baseline.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1. Baseline demographic data.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender, n (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ethnicity, n (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), mean (range)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FVCa,b (L), mean (range)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FVCb (% predicted), mean (range)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diagnosis confirmed by clinical experte, n (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>On antifibrotic therapye, n (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aFVC: forced vital capacity.
bHome-based spirometry data.
cMean of first 7 days in 23 US participants. A total of 24 US participants provided home-based spirometry data; however, 1 participant did not provide spirometry data in the first 7 days.
dMean of first 7 days in 12 Irish participants who provided home-based spirometry data.
eSelf-reported data.
User-Reported Experience at 6 Weeks
At 6 weeks, 75% (18/24) of the US participants and 92% (11/12) of the Irish participants completed a questionnaire. Analysis of the 29 completed responses indicated that a large majority of respondents liked using patientMpower (28/29, 96%) and found it easy to use (26/29, 90%). A majority reported that patientMpower helped them take the correct dose of medication at the prescribed time and achieve personal exercise goals (19/29, 66%). Most reported that patientMpower helped them take the correct dose of medication at the prescribed time and achieve personal exercise goals (19/29, 66%). Most reported that the effect of using patientMpower on their well-being and daily life was positive (27/29, 93%) and that it was useful to be able to record the impact of lung fibrosis on their well-being and daily life (25/29, 86%). Most participants stated they would recommend patientMpower to others and wanted to continue using it after the initial 6 weeks (27/29, 93%).

Frequency of Home-Based Spirometry Recording
A total of 24 US participants and 12 Irish participants recorded home-based spirometry, and most (28/36, 78%) continued home-based spirometry after the initial 6-week observation (Figure 1). Out of 36 participants, 21 (58%) recorded home-based spirometry at least once after 180 days, and 9 (25%) recorded it at least once after 360 days. There was variation in the frequency and duration of recording of home-based spirometry, with some participants recording spirometry daily and others recording intermittently but over a long duration of follow-up (data not shown). A total of 39% (14/36) of participants recorded home-based spirometry at least once a week on ≥50% of weeks over 1 year.

Figure 1. The proportion of participants from the Ireland and US studies recording home-based spirometry at least once against the duration of follow-up. Proportion of participants providing home-based spirometry data at each follow-up duration calculated relative to total numbers of participants who provided any spirometry data in that population. US: United States.

Recording Health Outcomes
A total of 22 US and 13 Irish participants completed at least 1 IPF-PROM. There was a trend toward a greater number of IPF-PROMs reported by US participants compared with Irish participants (mean 12/person vs 7/person, respectively). More US participants (13/22, 59%) provided IPF-PROMs after 180 days compared to Irish participants (3/13, 23%).

Breathlessness data (using mMRC score) were provided by 15 US participants and 11 Irish participants. Most participants reported breathlessness at baseline (median mMRC score for Irish participants=1; US participants=3) with only a few (2/11 in the Irish study and 2/15 in the US study) reporting an mMRC score of 0 (ie, dyspnea only with strenuous exercise). A greater number of breathlessness data reports were recorded by US participants compared to Irish participants (mean 28/person in the US study vs 12/person in the Ireland study). A similar proportion of participants in the Irish and US study populations recorded a breathlessness score at least once after 180 days (6/15 US participants, 40%, vs 5/11 Irish participants, 45%). There were no reports of exacerbation of IPF or death in the study populations.

Pulse Oximetry
Pulse oximetry data were not available for the Irish population, as Bluetooth integration of the pulse oximeter with patientMpower had not been implemented at that time. In the US study, 20 participants recorded pulse oximetry. The mean number of recordings was 58/person over a duration ranging from...
from 1 to 409 days. A total of 10 participants recorded oximetry for \( \geq \)180 days.

**Figure 2** shows an example of multiple data recorded by a single US participant over approximately 400 days. This participant's self-recorded baseline FVC was 65% predicted, and they reported antifibrotic therapy (nintedanib 150 mg twice daily). This participant reported breathlessness (mMRC score 1 or 2) with a regular use of oxygen (flow rate 3 or 4 L/min) throughout. They described their overall quality of life in the PROM as “good” throughout the follow-up.

**Figure 2.** Patient-recorded spirometry, oximetry, and PROM in a single participant over 1 year in 4 domains (A) psychological impact of breathlessness, (B) psychological well-being, (C) physical impact of breathlessness, and (D) fatigue. FVC: forced vital capacity; PROM: patient-reported outcome measure.

Figure 2 displays all patient-recorded values of FVC and pulse oximetry with no exclusion of outliers. Data on breathlessness (using mMRC scores) and oxygen flow rates were also collected (however, these are not shown in Figure 2). There were 4 grades of severity of a symptom or an impact of a symptom on quality of life for each question in the PROM. A score of 1 indicates lowest severity or impact (ie, the patient experienced the symptom/impact “none of the time” in the previous week). A score of 2 implies that the symptom/impact was experienced “some of the time,” and a score of 3 implies that the symptom/impact was experienced “most of the time.” A score of 4 indicates highest severity or impact (ie, the symptom/impact was experienced “all of the time” in the previous week). The scores for the 3 questions were averaged for each domain (psychological impact of breathlessness in panel A, psychological well-being in panel B, physical impact of breathlessness in panel C, and fatigue in panel D).

**Discussion**

Patients with chronic conditions (including PF) may be interested in using electronic tools to help them monitor and manage their health. The results we observed are consistent with those reported in a study in the Netherlands [13] in which a sample of patients with IPF were asked if they would welcome...
a web-based platform to track their health; 67 (82%) responded “yes.” The Dutch web-based platform was evaluated in a study [14] with 27 patients with IPF who recorded medication use and PROM at baseline and after 14 days. A large majority of these patients were “very satisfied” with their experience of this platform. This research team [14] went on to develop a home-based monitoring program using the MIR Spirobank Smart spirometer (the same device used in our studies); however, the FVC data were displayed on the patient’s personal computer rather than on their mobile device. The FVC data were evaluated in 10 patients with IPF who recorded daily home-based spirometry and symptoms for 4 weeks. Adherence over 4 weeks was very high (99%), with good correlation between home-based and clinic spirometry records. All patients reported that home-based spirometry was useful for them; we replicate these findings here in larger numbers.

Patient-reported spirometry in patients with IPF has been evaluated and found to be feasible in other studies and, in general, it showed good correlation with clinic-measured spirometry [6,7]. In one study [6], correlation was observed between clinic spirometry at 3, 6, and 12 months, and the rate of decline of patient-recorded FVC was predictive of clinical outcome.

In another study, weekly home-based spirometry was evaluated in 25 patients with IPF using the best of 3 forced expiratory maneuvers with data captured directly by the spirometer (rather than in a paper diary) [7]. Mean adherence to weekly spirometry was 90.5% over the 24-week observation period, decreasing thereafter. The study [7] also reported good correlation between patient-measured and clinic spirometry data. The authors hypothesized that use of home-based patient-recorded spirometry data could improve the analytical efficiency of clinical trials and reduce the sample size required (vs clinic spirometry). This has proven to be of particular importance in the era of COVID-19.

The patientMpower app with integrated home-based spirometry has been used in clinical studies in patients with interstitial lung disease. In the first pilot-scale clinical study (n=7) of patientMpower for patients with IPF (recruited through a specialist interstitial lung disease clinic), there was a good correlation between home-based and clinical FVC recordings at 8 weeks [15]. At 8 months after the conclusion of that study, 3 of the 6 participants were still using patientMpower regularly. Other clinical studies in populations with interstitial lung disease reported good adherence to use of the patientMpower app with home-based spirometry [16,17].

There are several limitations to our study. The sample size was chosen arbitrarily (based on estimates of expected recruitment), and actual recruitment was lower than anticipated. Participants self-reported their diagnosis of PF, medication history, and other demographic data without clinical confirmation of these data. The participants were recruited through patient advocacy groups and were likely to represent highly engaged patients with a strong interest in monitoring and managing their health. The level of engagement demonstrated by the participants may not be typical of the general population of patients with PF. The questionnaire used to assess participants’ opinions was developed de novo by the study sponsor and has not been tested in other populations.

A possible future research use of patientMpower would be the assessment of long-term patient-recorded spirometry and quality of life to better understand the correlation between lung function and subjective outcomes in chronic respiratory conditions. Inclusion of occasional formal clinic assessment of lung function and exercise capability (eg, 6-minute walking distance) would enhance the interpretation of study data (although in-clinic assessments are now much more difficult to access during the COVID-19 pandemic). The patientMpower app can be adapted so that clinical centers can view their patients’ recorded data in real time to create a remote patient-monitoring approach. The patientMpower app with remote monitoring of pulse oximetry has already been implemented in lung transplantation centers and in a national program to support early discharge of patients diagnosed with COVID-19 from in-hospital care [18].

The age profiles of the patients in all of these studies were typical of IPF, implying that age per se is not a barrier to the use of home-based spirometry or electronic platforms to track health outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, our studies [9,10,15,17] are the first to report use of a specific mobile app by patients with IPF to capture and view their health data directly within a single platform. Patients with IPF appear to be motivated to record home-based spirometry regularly, even when not prompted.

Recruiting volunteers through patient support groups to participate in observational studies is feasible. Our work has shown that electronic informed consent and remote installation of health care apps (with associated sensor devices) can be implemented in observational studies for some patient populations with PF. This approach may be useful to capture patient-reported long-term trends in FVC, quality of life, and health outcomes in patients with PF and generate richer real-world evidence. This is illustrated by Figure 2 where the participant recorded objective data (FVC and oximetry) and subjective data (breathlessness and impact of IPF on quality of life) simultaneously at multiple time points over 1 year. The patientMpower app can also capture data on step count (from the user’s smartphone or a connected FitBit device), enabling future analysis of activity levels in addition to the reported outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, presently, patientMpower is the only mobile app designed specifically for patients with PF that enables capture of all PF-relevant health outcomes within a single app.

Long-term use of the patientMpower app with integrated Spirobank Smart spirometry to record daily FVC, symptoms, and other health outcomes is acceptable and feasible for patients with PF. Patients with PF show willingness to record home-based spirometry or electronic platforms to track health outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, our studies [9,10,15,17] are the first to report use of a specific mobile app by patients with IPF to capture and view their health data directly within a single platform. Patients with IPF appear to be motivated to record home-based spirometry regularly, even when not prompted.

Inclusion of occasional formal clinic assessment of lung function and exercise capability (eg, 6-minute walking distance) would enhance the interpretation of study data (although in-clinic assessments are now much more difficult to access during the COVID-19 pandemic). The patientMpower app can be adapted so that clinical centers can view their patients’ recorded data in real time to create a remote patient-monitoring approach. The patientMpower app with remote monitoring of pulse oximetry has already been implemented in lung transplantation centers and in a national program to support early discharge of patients diagnosed with COVID-19 from in-hospital care [18].

The age profiles of the patients in all of these studies were typical of IPF, implying that age per se is not a barrier to the use of home-based spirometry or electronic platforms to track health outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, our studies [9,10,15,17] are the first to report use of a specific mobile app by patients with IPF to capture and view their health data directly within a single platform. Patients with IPF appear to be motivated to record home-based spirometry regularly, even when not prompted.

Recruiting volunteers through patient support groups to participate in observational studies is feasible. Our work has shown that electronic informed consent and remote installation of health care apps (with associated sensor devices) can be implemented in observational studies for some patient populations with PF. This approach may be useful to capture patient-reported long-term trends in FVC, quality of life, and health outcomes in patients with PF and generate richer real-world evidence. This is illustrated by Figure 2 where the participant recorded objective data (FVC and oximetry) and subjective data (breathlessness and impact of IPF on quality of life) simultaneously at multiple time points over 1 year. The patientMpower app can also capture data on step count (from the user’s smartphone or a connected FitBit device), enabling future analysis of activity levels in addition to the reported outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, presently, patientMpower is the only mobile app designed specifically for patients with PF that enables capture of all PF-relevant health outcomes within a single app.

Long-term use of the patientMpower app with integrated Spirobank Smart spirometry to record daily FVC, symptoms, and other health outcomes is acceptable and feasible for patients with PF. Patients with PF show willingness to record home-based spirometry or electronic platforms to track health outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, our studies [9,10,15,17] are the first to report use of a specific mobile app by patients with IPF to capture and view their health data directly within a single platform. Patients with IPF appear to be motivated to record home-based spirometry regularly, even when not prompted.

Inclusion of occasional formal clinic assessment of lung function and exercise capability (eg, 6-minute walking distance) would enhance the interpretation of study data (although in-clinic assessments are now much more difficult to access during the COVID-19 pandemic). The patientMpower app can be adapted so that clinical centers can view their patients’ recorded data in real time to create a remote patient-monitoring approach. The patientMpower app with remote monitoring of pulse oximetry has already been implemented in lung transplantation centers and in a national program to support early discharge of patients diagnosed with COVID-19 from in-hospital care [18].

The age profiles of the patients in all of these studies were typical of IPF, implying that age per se is not a barrier to the use of home-based spirometry or electronic platforms to track health outcomes. To the best of our knowledge, our studies [9,10,15,17] are the first to report use of a specific mobile app by patients with IPF to capture and view their health data directly within a single platform. Patients with IPF appear to be motivated to record home-based spirometry regularly, even when not prompted.
spirometry will result in more sustained and frequent collection of home-based spirometry data.

This study was led by patient advocacy groups, and all participants used the patientMpower app independently without help from health care professionals. Our observations suggest that using a mobile device-based app linked to appropriate sensor devices is feasible to capture multiple long-term patient-reported objective and subjective outcomes within a single platform for studies in pulmonary fibrosis. This work was undertaken well ahead of the COVID-19 pandemic announced in March 2020. Our findings have informed the longitudinal clinical studies on the home-based monitoring of patients with fibrotic lung diseases to guide medication adjustments and nonpharmacological support strategies.

Acknowledgments

We are very grateful to all of the participants from the Irish Lung Fibrosis Association and PF Warriors patient groups for testing the application and providing their data. We are particularly grateful to the participant who allowed us to present their data in Figure 2. Gemma O’Dowd of ILFA assisted in participant recruitment and collection of data in Ireland. Data listings were prepared by Martin Holmes and Rebecca Neish, and writing assistance was provided by Amy Boulstridge (all of patientMpower Ltd).

This study was funded by patientMpower Ltd.

Authors’ Contributions

CE and EC conceived the design of the studies. NC, BV, CE, and AMR designed and approved the study protocol and participant information materials. EC developed the patientMpower electronic health journal. NC and BV communicated the study to their respective patient advocacy groups. CE and AMR conducted the data analysis and drafted this manuscript. All authors participated in different parts of the concept, design, and data collection and entry; revised the article critically for important intellectual content; and gave their final approval of the version to be published.

Conflicts of Interest

CE and EC are employees and shareholders of patientMpower Ltd. BV is an adviser to patientMpower Ltd (reimbursed).

Multimedia Appendix 1

Description of the participant questionnaire.

[DOC File, 31 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16158_app1.doc]

References


Abbreviations

FVC: forced vital capacity
ILFA: Irish Lung Fibrosis Association
IPF: idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
IPF-PROM: IPF patient-reported outcome measure
mMRC: modified Medical Research Council
PF: pulmonary fibrosis
PROM: patient-reported outcome measure

Edited by G Eysenbach, R Kukafka; submitted 06.09.19; peer-reviewed by A Younas, M Dahl; comments to author 23.09.20; revised version received 06.10.20; accepted 28.10.20; published 20.11.20.

Please cite as:
Edwards C, Costello E, Cassidy N, Vick B, Russell AM
Use of the patientMpower App With Home-Based Spirometry to Monitor the Symptoms and Impact of Fibrotic Lung Conditions: Longitudinal Observational Study
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e16158
URL: http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e16158/
doi:10.2196/16158
PMID:33216007

©Colin Edwards, Eamonn Costello, Nicola Cassidy, Bill Vick, Anne-Marie Russell. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 20.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Using Mobile Health Technology to Deliver a Community-Based Closed-Loop Management System for Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Patients in Remote Areas of China: Development and Prospective Observational Study

Ning Deng1,2*, PhD; Juan Chen3*, MD; Yiyuan Liu1, MSc; Shuoshuo Wei3, MSc; Leiyi Sheng1, BSc; Rong Lu1, BSc; Zheyu Wang1, BSc; Jiarong Zhu3, BSc; Jiye An1, PhD; Bei Wang3, BSc; Hui Lin1, BSc; Xiuyan Wang3, MSc; Yumin Zhou1, MD; Huiulong Duan1, PhD; Pixin Ran4, MD

1Ministry of Education Key Laboratory of Biomedical Engineering, College of Biomedical Engineering and Instrument Science, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou, China
2Engineering Research Center of Cognitive Healthcare of Zhejiang Province (Sir Run Run Shaw Hospital), Zhejiang University, Hangzhou, China
3Department of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine, General Hospital of Ningxia Medical University, Yinchuan, China
4State Key Laboratory of Respiratory Disease, National Clinical Research Center for Respiratory Diseases, Guangzhou Institute of Respiratory Health, First Affiliated Hospital of Guangzhou Medical University, Guangzhou, China
*these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Pixin Ran, MD
State Key Laboratory of Respiratory Disease
National Clinical Research Center for Respiratory Diseases, Guangzhou Institute of Respiratory Health
First Affiliated Hospital of Guangzhou Medical University
195 Dongfeng Xi Road
Guangzhou,
China
Phone: 86 020 3710 3001
Fax: 86 020 3710 3001
Email: pxran@zhmu.edu.cn

Abstract

Background: Mobile health (mHealth) technology is an increasingly recognized and effective method for disease management and has the potential to intervene in pulmonary function, exacerbation risk, and psychological status of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

Objective: This study aimed to investigate the feasibility of an mHealth-based COPD management system designed for Chinese remote areas with many potential COPD patients but limited medical resources.

Methods: The system was implemented based on a tailored closed-loop care pathway that breaks the heavy management tasks into detailed pieces to be quantified and executed by computers. Low-cost COPD evaluation and questionnaire-based psychological intervention are the 2 main characteristics of the pathway. A 6-month prospective observational study at the community level was performed to evaluate the effect of the system. Primary outcomes included changes in peak expiratory flow values, quality of life measured using the COPD assessment test scale, and psychological condition. Acute exacerbations, compliance, and adverse events were also measured during the study. Compliance was defined as the ratio of the actual frequency of self-monitoring records to the prescribed number.

Results: A total of 56 patients was enrolled; 39 patients completed the 6-month study. There was no significant difference in the mean peak expiratory flow value before and after the 6-month period (366.1, SD 106.7 versus 313.1, SD 116.6; P=.11). Psychological condition significantly improved after 6 months, especially for depression, as measured using the Patient Health Questionnaire-9 scale (median 6.0, IQR 3.0-9.0 versus median 4.0, IQR 0.0-6.0; P=.001). The COPD assessment test score after 6 months of intervention was also lower than that at the baseline, and the difference was significant (median 4.0, IQR 1.0-6.0 versus median 3.0, IQR 0.0-6.0; P=.003). The median overall compliance was 91.1% (IQR 67%-100%). In terms of acute exacerbation, 110 exacerbations were detected and confirmed by health care providers (per 6 months, median 2.0, IQR 1.0-5.0).
Moreover, 72 adverse events occurred during the study, including 1 death, 19 hospitalizations, and 52 clinic visits due to persistent respiratory symptoms.

**Conclusions:** We designed and validated a feasible mHealth-based method to manage COPD in remote Chinese areas with limited medical resources. The proposed closed-loop care pathway was effective at the community level. Proper education and frequent communication with health care providers may encourage patients’ acceptance and use of smartphones to support COPD self-management. In addition, WeChat might play an important role in improving patient compliance and psychological distress. Further research might explore the effect of such systems on a larger scale and at a higher evidence level.

**KEYWORDS**
COPD; mobile health technology; closed-loop care pathway; chronic disease management; exacerbations

**Introduction**

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is one of the most prevalent chronic diseases in China. According to the latest national survey, approximately 99.9 million Chinese adults aged ≥20 years have spirometry-defined COPD [1]. Pulmonary function tests (PFTs) are essential for the diagnosis of COPD [2,3]. However, only 12% of Chinese patients with COPD can receive full PFTs [1], and even fewer can receive full PFTs in remote areas. For example, the Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region is a relatively remote area in China with a population of over 6 million people. The prevalence of COPD in Ningxia is 8.9% in people aged ≥40 years [4]. Only 23.6% of COPD cases are diagnosed, and only 23.3% of COPD cases are treated [4].

Moreover, most COPD patients are unaware of their condition, and few receive follow-ups from doctors. Once diagnosed with COPD, effective management should be performed based on an individualized assessment to improve prognosis [5], consisting of long-term self-management by patients and timely intervention from doctors [6]. Mobile health (mHealth) has become a promising tool for the management of chronic diseases by health care providers [7]. Furthermore, patients are willing to use smartphones to manage chronic diseases [8-10].

Several studies have explored the feasibility of an mHealth-based intervention for COPD management in patients during the stable phase. Farmer et al [11] performed a randomized controlled trial with an intervention group using an internet-linked, tablet computer–based system to manage COPD. van der Heijden et al [12] developed a mobile system to predict and detect exacerbation using an oximeter and spirometer. Zhang et al [13] implemented a smartphone-based Internet of Things system that provided medication reminders, data collection, health education, and communication for COPD self-management. This project offered PFT in community centers in Shanghai. These studies indicate that mHealth systems have the potential to help patients effectively manage COPD. However, most of these studies assumed that patients were in an ideal environment with portable devices and abundant community health care resources, which may not be applicable in remote Chinese areas.

In areas with decreased resources such as Ningxia that have many potential COPD patients but not enough medical resources, the aforementioned pattern of mHealth-based interventions may not work. First, spirometry is a complex and not readily available test in Chinese remote areas. COPD patients in these areas need a simpler and low-cost approach to help monitor pulmonary function. Second, health care providers in remote areas might not perform a guideline-based, comprehensive intervention, which results in a significant gap between standards of care and medical practice [14]. Third, during long-term management, depression and anxiety are common in COPD patients [15-17] and are strongly related to rehospitalization and exacerbation [18-20]. Therefore, appropriate psychological intervention is an essential preventive strategy. Moreover, COPD patients in remote areas have poor knowledge about their disease, thus leading to low self-management ability. Health care providers need to communicate more with patients to assess their condition and guide treatment.

To address these problems, we propose a pilot closed-loop care pathway that transforms the core content of long-term COPD management into a form that can be recognized and executed by the computer. The 2 main characteristics of the care pathway are (1) COPD evaluation combining peak expiratory flow (PEF) with the COPD assessment test (CAT) and (2) psychological intervention based on multiple scales. Our primary objective was to determine whether the introduction of an mHealth system based on the proposed care pathway could improve the COPD-specific health status of patients, such as pulmonary function, quality of life (QoL), and psychological conditions, in remote areas of China. Our secondary objectives were to determine if there were changes in exacerbations, hospitalizations, or clinic visits after implementation of the mobile app.

**Methods**

**Study Design and Patient Recruitment**

We conducted a 6-month prospective observational study to explore the effect of the system in a community-based primary care setting. The study was performed in Yinchuan, Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, China. Patient recruitment was performed between September 2017 and June 2018. The patients were recruited from outpatient clinics of the General Hospital of Ningxia Medical University and its affiliated hospitals throughout Ningxia. Inclusion criteria included (1) age ≥40 years, (2) confirmed diagnosis of COPD according to the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) guidelines [5], and (3) access to a smartphone. Exclusion criteria
included (1) diagnosis of other lung diseases with similar symptoms or any other disease-causing changes in pulmonary function, (2) significant mental health disorder, (3) visual or aural disorders, (4) no home internet access, and (5) involvement in another study.

Patients meeting the criteria and willing to participate in the study signed the informed consent forms. Ethical approval was granted by the Ethics Committee for the Conduct of Human Research at the General Hospital of Ningxia Medical University (NXMU-GH-2017-273). Baseline data, including demographics, clinical characteristics, and primary outcomes, were first collected through laboratory examination and face-to-face interviews. Patients were instructed on how to install and use the app at the same time. Moreover, we provided a peak flow meter for each patient and ensured that they could correctly use it themselves.

After enrollment, patients started self-management using the app, and health care providers supervised patients through the website. In this study, the health care providers consisted of physicians from the hospital and general practitioners from community health centers. General practitioners were responsible for daily management, whereas physicians were responsible for the treatment of acute exacerbations and professional support. All management procedures followed the proposed closed-loop care pathway. Follow-up was the main intervention for health care providers. Generally, follow-up was conducted every 2 weeks. In the event of a warning or low compliance, an additional follow-up was arranged. Telephone was the traditional tool for follow-up; however, sometimes it is inefficient because patients may not be able to conveniently answer the call or may not want to be disturbed. Therefore, we introduced WeChat, the most popular instant messaging app in China, as an alternative follow-up method for patients. Furthermore, a WeChat chat group including all patients and 2 health care providers was formed during the study to facilitate communication. Patients needed to login to WeChat with a password, and they could only be invited by the doctors to join the group chat. Only common questions with no sensitive medical information were included in the group. Patients could chat privately with the doctor on WeChat regarding private information.

**Closed-Loop Care Pathway Design**

The care pathway mainly included risk evaluation, hierarchical management, follow-up, warning, and compliance management, as shown in [Figure 1](#). Following this pathway, patients were first evaluated and classified into different levels, and then different management strategies including medication and pulmonary rehabilitation were provided. Health care providers performed regular follow-ups with patients to track their health status. Patients’ daily self-monitoring data and compliance were evaluated as well to detect abnormal conditions. A detailed description of each module can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1.

**Figure 1.** Flow diagram of the proposed care pathway. CAT: Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Assessment Test; GAD-7: Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7; PEF: peak expiratory flow; PHQ-9: Patient Health Questionnaire-9.
Because of the complexity of spirometry and the lack of professional portable device support in Chinese remote areas, we chose a simpler indicator suitable for home-based management, the PEF, which is the maximum flow achieved during an expiration delivered with maximum force starting from the level of maximal lung inflation [21]. Studies have shown that a PEF rate <80% of predicted may be a good indicator for detecting patients with COPD [22]. Increased variability in PEF could be considered an early index of COPD development [23]. Furthermore, COPD is known to impact patients beyond just dyspnea [5]. Therefore, the CAT, a simple and validated instrument to assess the impact of COPD in routine life [24], is strongly recommended by GOLD. In addition, to monitor patients’ psychological state, patients completed the Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) scale [25] for depression and Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7 (GAD-7) scale [26] for anxiety. The participants were asked to log their PEF value (the highest value of 3 repeated measurements), CAT, GAD-7, and PHQ-9 scales once every 2 weeks over the 6-month period.

**mHealth System Description**

Based on this pathway, we implemented our mHealth-based COPD management system. As shown in Figure 2, the system contained 3 parts: patient app, doctor workstation, and cloud server. The patient app ran on a smartphone and had 2 main modules: diary module and education module. The diary module guided patients to record daily medication and symptoms. Moreover, every 2 weeks, patients were required to record their PEF value, CAT, PHQ-9, and GAD-7 scales through this module. The PEF value can be measured via a simple peak flow meter, which is available in remote Chinese areas. The education module included COPD-related educational materials in the form of videos and text. Patients received personalized materials according to their current situation [27]. We provided 2 versions of the app (Android and iOS). Both versions had the same functionality, and all the data were synchronized with the cloud.

**Figure 2.** System architecture.

The doctor workstation was a web-based platform for health care providers with 3 modules: warning module, follow-up module, and data module. The warning module alerted health care providers as soon as the system detected abnormal data uploaded by patients. The follow-up module provided a template for health care providers to record each follow-up in a uniform format. The data module provided complete patient information, including demographics, in-hospital examination results, and self-monitoring data history. Detailed screenshots and a function description of the patient app and doctor workstation can be found in Multimedia Appendix 2.

The cloud server securely stored all data and had an inference engine to provide decision support to the clients based on the pathway, such as patient classification, follow-up scheduling, and warning generation. In addition, it had a recommendation service for delivering educational material.

**Data Collection and Analysis**

**Primary and Secondary Outcomes**

The primary outcomes included changes in PEF values; changes in QoL, as measured by the CAT scale; and changes in psychological condition, as measured by the PHQ-9 and GAD-7 scales. These outcomes reflected the COPD-specific health
status of patients. As mentioned before, PEF values were measured using a peak flow meter and were uploaded via the patient app, while the 3 scales (CAT, PHQ-9, and GAD-7) were completed directly in the patient app.

The secondary outcome was the number of acute exacerbations during the study. An acute exacerbation was classified as a type of warning in the pathway and was detected from symptoms recorded by the patients. We considered dyspnea, sputum purulence, and sputum volume as major symptoms, each scored as 5 points, and nasal discharge or congestion, sore throat, cough, and wheeze as minor symptoms, each scored as 1 point, according to a previously validated definition [28]. A suspected exacerbation was automatically detected by the system if the summed symptom score was >6 points for ≥2 consecutive days. The detection required further confirmation by health care providers to ensure that the symptoms were caused by COPD.

**Compliance**

In addition to the outcomes, patient compliance during the study was analyzed because of its relevance to self-efficacy [29] and its potential to show system availability. In this study, we defined compliance as the ratio of actual frequency of records to the prescribed number of records for the PEF, CAT scale, PHQ-9 scale, and GAD-7 scale [26], as shown in Figure 3. Patients were required to upload these 4 types of data every 2 weeks. We calculated the compliance for each month within the 6-month period.

**Figure 3.** Calculation of patient compliance during a fixed period.

\[
\text{compliance} = \min \left( \frac{N(\text{PEF}) + N(\text{CAT}) + N(\text{PHQ}) + N(\text{GAD})}{N(\text{prescribed number of records})} \times 100\%, 1 \right)
\]

# N = 4 for a period of 2 weeks

**Adverse Events**

Information regarding serious adverse events was collected and recorded for further analysis. These events included deaths, hospitalizations, and clinic visits due to persistent respiratory symptoms. Only records related to COPD were counted. The adverse outcomes were tracked mainly in 2 ways. First, health care providers checked the hospital information system of the General Hospital of Ningxia Medical University and its affiliated hospitals regularly for records of hospital admission and clinic visits. Second, when conducting routine follow-ups, patients were asked whether they had gone to other hospitals during the study period. For the clinic visits and hospitalizations recorded for adverse outcomes, we also collected records of patients during the 6 months prior to enrollment in the study.

**Statistical Analysis**

Python 3.6 was used for data preprocessing, including extraction of clinical outcomes from the database and calculation of compliance. SPSS V23.0 was used for statistical analyses. A paired Student t test was used to analyze changes in PEF values. The original scores of the 3 scales before and after the 6-month study were analyzed using Wilcoxon signed-rank tests. A P value <.05 was considered statistically significant. Table 1 summarizes the data collected in this study.
Table 1. Data collection and statistical analysis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data</th>
<th>Collection time</th>
<th>Collection method</th>
<th>Statistical test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary clinical outcomes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEF(^a)</td>
<td>At baseline and after 6 months</td>
<td>Peak flow meter</td>
<td>Paired t test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAT(^b)</td>
<td>At baseline and after 6 months</td>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Wilcoxon signed-rank test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHQ-9(^c)</td>
<td>At baseline and after 6 months</td>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Wilcoxon signed-rank test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAD-7(^d)</td>
<td>At baseline and after 6 months</td>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Wilcoxon signed-rank test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary clinical outcome</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute exacerbation</td>
<td>During the study period</td>
<td>Detected by the system according to symptoms and confirmed by health care providers</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance</td>
<td>During the study period (each month)</td>
<td>Calculated by the system</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adverse event</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>During the study period</td>
<td>From HIS(^e) and follow-up</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalizations</td>
<td>During the 6 months prior to enroll-</td>
<td>From HIS and follow-up</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinic visits</td>
<td>ment and during the study period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)PEF: peak expiratory flow.
\(^b\)CAT: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease Assessment Test.
\(^c\)GAD-7: Generalized Anxiety Disorder 7.
\(^d\)PHQ-9: Patient Health Questionnaire 9.
\(^e\)HIS: hospital information system.

Results

Participant Characteristics

A total of 56 patients was enrolled in the study, and 39 patients completed the study. Seventeen participants (17/56, 30%) quit the study prematurely for various reasons. Figure 4 shows the flow diagram of patient recruitment and the study timeline that demonstrates the exit point of the 17 participants.

Figure 4. Flow diagram of patient recruitment and the study timeline.

There were more male patients than female patients (male: 36/39, 92%; female: 3/39, 8%), and the age ranged from 49...
years old to 76 years old. Approximately 85% (33/39) of the participants had an educational background of high school or below, and only 15% (6/39) had at least a college degree. A total of 33 participants were ex-smokers (30/39, 77%) or current smokers (3/39, 8%). Furthermore, the 3 current smokers quit smoking after the study. In terms of COPD severity and pulmonary function, 18% (7/39), 41% (16/39), 15% (6/39), and 26% (10/39) of the participants were at the GOLD1, GOLD2, GOLD3, or GOLD4 stage, respectively. The mean baseline forced expiratory volume in 1 second was 49.91% of predicted (95% CI, 42.54%-57.27%).

Table 2. Characteristics of patients who completed the study (n=39).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient demographic and clinical characteristics</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sex, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>36 (92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td>61.82 (6.09)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education background, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school and below</td>
<td>5 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary school</td>
<td>12 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High school</td>
<td>16 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate and above</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Smoking, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-smoker</td>
<td>30 (77)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current smoker</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-smoker</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulmonary function</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV1(^a) %pred (%), mean (SD)</td>
<td>49.91 (22.73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV1/FVC(^b) (%)</td>
<td>51.45 (13.97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COPD(^c) severity, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOLD1(^d)</td>
<td>7 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOLD2</td>
<td>16 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOLD3</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOLD4</td>
<td>10 (26)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)FEV1: forced expiratory volume in 1 second.

\(^b\)FVC: forced vital capacity.

\(^c\)COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

\(^d\)GOLD: The Global Initiative for Obstructive Lung Disease.

**Primary and Secondary Outcomes**

Table 3 presents the clinical outcomes of the study: PEF for airflow obstruction, CAT for QoL, and PHQ-9 and GAD-7 for psychological state. The psychological state of patients who completed the study significantly improved after the 6-month intervention, especially for depression, as measured by the PHQ-9 scale (\(P=0.001\)). The CAT score after 6 months of management was also significantly lower than that at baseline (\(P=0.003\)). In terms of PEF, the mean value decreased after management but was not significant (\(P=0.11\)). From a clinical viewpoint, the median CAT score remained at a medium level (11-20 [5]), and the median GAD-7 score remained at the “no anxiety disorder” level (0-4 [26]) before and after the study. The median PHQ-9 score changed from mild depression (5-9 [25,30]) to minimal depression (0-4 [25]).
Table 3. Clinical outcomes before and after the study for patients who completed the study (n=39).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Baseline</th>
<th>After 6 months</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PEF(^a), mean (SD)</td>
<td>366.1 (106.7)</td>
<td>313.1 (116.6)</td>
<td>.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAT(^b), median (Q25(^c)-Q75(^d))</td>
<td>17.0 (14.0-23.0)</td>
<td>14 (10.0-18.0)</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHQ-9(^e), median (Q25-Q75)</td>
<td>6.0 (3.0-9.0)</td>
<td>4.0 (0.0-6.0)</td>
<td>.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAD-7(^f), median (Q25-Q75)</td>
<td>4.0 (1.0-6.0)</td>
<td>3.0 (0.0-6.0)</td>
<td>.01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)PEF: peak expiratory flow.
\(^b\)CAT: COPD Assessment Test.
\(^c\)Q25: first quartile.
\(^d\)Q75: third quartile.
\(^e\)PHQ-9: Patient Health Questionnaire 9.
\(^f\)GAD-7: Generalized Anxiety Disorder 7.

In terms of acute exacerbations, 459 warning events were detected by our system during the study, 117 of which were acute exacerbation warnings related to symptoms. Among these symptom warning events, 7 were excluded due to worsening symptoms caused by cardiovascular disease and other diseases, and only 110 events were confirmed as exacerbation of COPD by health care providers (median 2.0 per 6 months, IQR 1.0-5.0). Moreover, 64.5% (71/110) of these exacerbations ended up as a clinic visit or hospitalization. The detailed number of acute exacerbations for each patient can be found in Multimedia Appendix 3.

Compliance

Figure 5 shows the participant compliance per month for all enrolled patients (n=56) and patients who completed the study (n=39). Some participants recorded data more often than prescribed; thus, their compliance was over 100% but was calculated as 100%. Because more than one-quarter of participants withdrew midway, the lower quartile in Figure 5A tended to be 0%. For those who completed the study (n=39), monthly compliance remained at a high level, as shown in Figure 5B. We also calculated the overall compliance of these patients during the 6-month period. The median was 91.1%, (IQR 67%-100%). The overall trends of the uploaded data can also be found in Multimedia Appendix 3.

Adverse Events

According to our definition, a total of 72 adverse events occurred during the study, including 1 death, 52 clinic visits, and 19 hospitalizations. We compared the number of hospitalizations and clinic visits for each patient before and after the study (see Multimedia Appendix 3 for detailed results). During the 6 months prior to enrollment, patients (n=39) reported a total of 115 clinic visits and 69 hospitalizations related to COPD. Both clinic visits (decreased of 54.8%) and hospitalizations (decrease of 72.5%) decreased over the 6-month period compared with the same period before the study.

Discussion

Principal Findings

In this study, we designed and implemented a feasible method to manage COPD in Chinese remote areas using an mHealth-based system over a 6-month period, despite the challenges with pulmonary function monitoring outside of the hospital. Although pulmonary function did not significantly change with the implementation of this system, we found an improvement in COPD-specific QoL and mental health assessments of participants.
Some of our results could be attributed to the diversity of COPD severity among participants. In terms of acute exacerbation, a total of 110 exacerbations were identified during the study, because COPD severity for >80% of participants was at least a GOLD2 level. The median number of exacerbations (2.0 per 6 months) was close to the result (3.0 per year) from a previous survey conducted in the Asia-Pacific region [31]. According to the results of adverse events, over half of these exacerbation cases led to a clinic visit or hospitalization. The rest of the exacerbations were handled remotely by health care providers. The high variability in COPD severity also explains the large SDs of the PEF values.

Of the 56 patients, 17 patients quit midway through the study, mainly due to difficulty using smartphones. The relatively high dropout rate could be attributed to the low educational attainment of participants (about 85% had achieved an educational level of high school or below). For patients who completed the study (n=39), the overall median 6-month compliance reached 91.1%, which was relatively high compared with the rates in prior studies [11,32]. In addition, after the 6-month intervention, 3 current smokers quit smoking. These results indicate that, despite a low educational level, our pathway-driven, timely intervention played an important role in behavioral change by COPD patients.

Comparison With Prior Work

To understand the comparison of this study, we compared our study with prior work from multiple aspects. In terms of QoL, significant improvement in COPD-specific QoL was observed in this study, whereas prior studies reported no change in QoL or only changes in general health status [11,32-35]. CAT and Euroqol-5D (EQ-5D) [36] are the most popular scales for COPD management [11,32-35]. CAT is more disease-specific, whereas EQ-5D focuses more on general health status. Studies using the EQ-5D for QoL measurement often introduced other scales as a supplement for COPD-specific symptoms [11,32]. More scales capture more details for research but place an extra burden on patients, which may lead to poor compliance. Moreover, previous research has shown that the CAT is more suitable for the comprehensive assessment of COPD severity [37]. Therefore, we chose the CAT as the only outcome for QoL.

In terms of pulmonary function, prior studies [33,37,38] did not directly compare changes in pulmonary function measured via portable devices at home. In this study, we chose PEF for continuous pulmonary function monitoring, and the PEF values showed a downward trend because of the irreversible decline of pulmonary function. Although portable spirometers are available and have been used in some studies [33,35,38], mass promotion is difficult in China considering the economic and population factors. Equipped with a peak flow meter and an mHealth system, PEF is easy to measure at home and under supervision. Moreover, to some degree, PEF measurement alone cannot be reliably used as the only diagnostic test because of its weak specificity [5]; hence, we combined PEF with CAT and symptoms to evaluate COPD-specific health status and monitor acute exacerbations. Our study showed that elderly people with a low educational background could master PEF measurements. With limited medical resources, PEF measured by a peak flow meter is suitable for COPD management in Chinese remote areas.

In terms of psychological conditions, except for our study, only 1 study [34] found significant improvement in psychological distress with a long-term (12-month) telehealth intervention but without a clear explanation. Similar to the studies by Farmer et al [11] and Rixon et al [34], we used independent psychological scales, whereas other studies investigated psychological factors within general health status such as with the EQ-5D. In this study, the improvement in psychological status may be explained by the high frequency of communication between patients and health care providers. The interval of routine follow-up visits in the study by Farmer et al [11] was 3 months, and extra contact only occurred for safety alerts, whereas in our study, follow-ups were arranged at least every 2 weeks. With the assistance of WeChat, the communication frequency was even higher in practice.

In terms of the intervention, the care pathway was a unique strategy that we proposed in the field of COPD management, breaking the heavy management tasks into detailed pieces that can be quantified and executed by computers. Combined with mHealth, it was simple and convenient to deliver the COPD management system driven by the care pathway. With the help of this system, both patients and health care providers were aware of what exactly to do in different phases of management. Although the pathway is not yet perfect, it could improve the outcome of patients and efficiency of health care providers.

Strengths and Limitations

Our study has several strengths. First, we defined compliance management as part of the care pathway. An extra follow-up would be required for patients with local compliance. In this study, inspired by our previous study [39], we calculated patient compliance according to the frequency of their self-monitoring behaviors. Compared with prior studies [11,32], our compliance was more objective and practical over the long term. According to our results, the monthly compliance remained high for patients who completed the study. Second, WeChat played a surprisingly important role in our study. WeChat was first designed as a follow-up tool, but as the study progressed, patients found it a convenient way of communication and to have their questions answered. The WeChat chat group produced dozens of messages every day during the study. Patients said that they could learn a lot about self-management skills in the group by just viewing messages because many common questions were raised and answered immediately. To some extent, getting feedback in a short time helped patients build trust with health care providers and maintain high compliance. From another point of view, group talking introduced social activity for COPD patients, and doctors could intervene psychologically by managing patients’ mental health and encouraging group members. This is a convincing reason for the mental health improvement in our study. The impact of social apps on COPD management may be worthy of further study.

Numerous potential weaknesses need to be acknowledged. First, the study was limited by the sample size and gender imbalance. The number of participants was relatively small (n=39), while...
92% of the participants were male. The gender imbalance was mainly due to the higher incidence of COPD in men than in women in Ningxia [4]. The effect of our system on a larger scale and female patients needs further investigation. Second, when collecting the records from clinic visits and hospitalizations, an inherent bias existed because patients might go to hospitals for all related symptoms prior to the study due to a lack of communication with health care providers. Therefore, the difference in pre-study and post-study records may not reflect the change in disease condition. Moreover, from the methodological perspective, our pilot observational study could not yield the highest level of evidence, and a randomized controlled trial should be performed for further study.

Future Work

In future work, we will include more female patients and conduct a high evidence-level clinical trial. A comparison test should be conducted to determine if our intervention can perform well on a larger scale. We also plan to investigate the actual effect of WeChat in improving patient outcomes through the trial. The satisfaction rate of patients using WeChat may be presented as an outcome. Another direction for future work is to explore a more intelligent care pathway to provide more individualized and precise care for patients with COPD. The feasibility of applying a data-driven artificial intelligence approach to strengthen the current pathway will be investigated.

Conclusions

We introduced an mHealth-based method for COPD management at the community level. The tailored closed-loop care pathway was found to be feasible and effective in areas with limited medical resources. Although the decrease in pulmonary function was irreversible, patients’ COPD-specific QoL and psychological status improved significantly after our 6-month study. Moreover, despite the relatively low educational background of participants, proper education and frequent communication may encourage their acceptance and use of smartphones to support COPD self-management. Researchers should choose the most appropriate intervention strategy according to the actual situation of the intervention area.

Acknowledgments

This study was supported by the National Key Research and Development Programs of China (No. 2017YFC0114105, 2016YFC0901703, 2018YFC0910503); National Scientific Foundation of China (No. 81760004); Open Project of State Key Laboratory of Respiratory Disease, China (No. SKLRD-OP-201903); Key research and development programs of Ningxia hui autonomous (No. 2018BFG02009, 2018BEG03035); and Open Fund of Engineering Research Center of Cognitive Healthcare of Zhejiang Province (Sir Run Run Shaw Hospital; No. 2018KFJ002).

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Detailed description of the closed loop care pathway.

Multimedia Appendix 2

Detailed screenshots and function list of the mHealth system.

Multimedia Appendix 3

Detailed results of primary and secondary outcomes.

References


Abbreviations

CAT: COPD Assessment Test
COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
EQ-5D: EuroQol-5D
FEV1: forced expiratory volume in 1 second
FVC: forced vital capacity
GAD-7: Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7
GOLD: Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease
HIS: hospital information system
mHealth: mobile health
PEF: peak expiratory flow
PFT: pulmonary function test
PHQ-9: Patient Health Questionnaire 9
QoL: quality of life
Smartphone-Based Monitoring of Parkinson Disease: Quasi-Experimental Study to Quantify Hand Tremor Severity and Medication Effectiveness

Elina Kuosmanen¹, MSc; Florian Wolling², MSc; Julio Vega³, PhD; Valerii Kan¹, MSc; Yuuki Nishiyama⁴, PhD; Simon Harper³, PhD; Kristof Van Laerhoven², PhD; Simo Hosio¹, PhD; Denzil Ferreira¹, PhD

¹University of Oulu, Oulu, Finland
²University of Siegen, Siegen, Germany
³University of Manchester, Manchester, United Kingdom
⁴University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Corresponding Author:
Elina Kuosmanen, MSc
University of Oulu
Erkki Koiso-Kanttilan katu 3
P O Box 4500
Oulu, FI-90014
Finland
Phone: 358 504821517
Fax: 358 8 553 2612
Email: elina.kuosmanen@oulu.fi

Abstract

Background: Hand tremor typically has a negative impact on a person’s ability to complete many common daily activities. Previous research has investigated how to quantify hand tremor with smartphones and wearable sensors, mainly under controlled data collection conditions. Solutions for daily real-life settings remain largely underexplored.

Objective: Our objective was to monitor and assess hand tremor severity in patients with Parkinson disease (PD), and to better understand the effects of PD medications in a naturalistic environment.

Methods: Using the Welch method, we generated periodograms of accelerometer data and computed signal features to compare patients with varying degrees of PD symptoms.

Results: We introduced and empirically evaluated the tremor intensity parameter (TIP), an accelerometer-based metric to quantify hand tremor severity in PD using smartphones. There was a statistically significant correlation between the TIP and self-assessed Unified Parkinson Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) II tremor scores (Kendall rank correlation test: z=30.521, P < .001, τ=0.5367379; n=11). An analysis of the “before” and “after” medication intake conditions identified a significant difference in accelerometer signal characteristics among participants with different levels of rigidity and bradykinesia (Wilcoxon rank sum test, P < .05).

Conclusions: Our work demonstrates the potential use of smartphone inertial sensors as a systematic symptom severity assessment mechanism to monitor PD symptoms and to assess medication effectiveness remotely. Our smartphone-based monitoring app may also be relevant for other conditions where hand tremor is a prevalent symptom.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e21543) doi:10.2196/21543

KEYWORDS
Parkinson disease; smartphone; hand tremor; mobile health
Introduction

Background

Parkinson disease (PD) is a neurodegenerative condition that affects patients’ physical and mental health [1,2] and has a wide variety of motor and nonmotor symptoms. Tremor is a cardinal motor symptom that can heavily hinder patients’ quality of life [3] and is generally defined as an involuntary, rhythmic, oscillatory movement of a body part [4]. Tremor can be categorized based on its activation conditions into rest and action tremor; in turn, action tremor is further divided into kinetic, postural, or isometric subtypes [4]. Rest tremor affects body parts that are not being voluntarily activated [4], kinetic tremor appears during any voluntary movement, postural tremor presents while maintaining a posture against gravity [5], and isometric tremor occurs during a muscle contraction against a rigid surface [6].

Among patients with PD, approximately 75% suffer from rest tremor, around 50% from moderately severe postural tremor [7], and an undetermined percentage from kinetic tremor [6]. These three types of tremor are pivotal in understanding PD. Typically, the amplitude of rest tremor decreases when patients activate the affected muscles and increases during mentally stressful situations [4,8]. We target hand rest, postural, and kinetic tremor, which occur at different frequency ranges (3-6 Hz, 6-9 Hz, and 9-12 Hz, respectively) [5]. The severity of PD tremor is usually assessed visually by a health professional during clinical visits, using tools such as the Unified Parkinson Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) [9]. Recently, however, researchers have investigated the use of unobtrusive and objective sensing technologies to detect and quantify hand tremor.

Dyskinesia is defined as involuntary movement, different from tremor, and is related to the timing and dosage of levodopa medication [10]. We refer to a movement in the 1-3 Hz frequency range as dyskinesia [11].

Related Work

Accelerometer data have been used to assess hand tremor using smartphones [11-17] and wearable devices [5,18-20]. Previous studies have attached an iPhone (Apple Inc) to a glove and collected data using the smartphone’s built-in accelerometer [11,12,15]. In a study by LeMoyne et al [11], subjects were asked to use the glove while extending their forearm for 10 seconds. The study found a statistically significant difference in the frequency response of the acceleration signal between a participant with PD and one without. Barrantes et al [12] measured rest and postural tremor in 30-second episodes and identified relevant accelerometer features to classify PD tremor and essential tremor. Similarly, Duque et al [15] collected accelerometer data with participants at rest and with their arms extended, and utilized machine learning to classify PD and essential tremor.

Bazgir et al [16] used a similar setup with a glove to classify rest, postural, and kinetic tremor UPDRS scores based on accelerometer data logged during three scripted 1-minute tests: at rest, with arms stretched, and while touching their nose with their index finger. Kostikis et al [14] used a glove-mounted smartphone to quantify rest and postural tremor severity. They found a statistically significant difference between healthy participants and participants with PD. In addition, they studied the effects of PD medications in two volunteers with PD using accelerometer data collected in “on” and “off” medication states in laboratory conditions. The measurements were taken for the right and left hands separately, at rest, and with their hands extended. The “off” measurement was taken right before medication intake, and the “on” measurement was taken 1 hour after intake. The researchers detected a decrease in the metrics (the sums of the squared magnitudes of the acceleration and the sum of absolute differences in the acceleration vector) after medication intake, with the exception of the right-hand extended task for one of the volunteers.

Although these previous experiments have had positive results on quantifying tremor, we believe that the utility of the findings outside of the laboratory or a health care facility is limited. The practicality of carrying and wearing a glove at all times is up for debate, especially under extreme weather conditions. Accordingly, a smartphone-only solution was first investigated by Woods et al [13], where subjects held a smartphone for 10 seconds with their arm perpendicular to their body and elbow pointing out under six conditions: with eyes open, with eyes closed, during a bubble-balancing task, during a laser-pointing task with two different distances, and while counting backward by decrements of three. The authors detected a statistically significant difference in the accelerometer signal between a group with PD and a group with essential tremor, but they focused on the effects of the six cognitive tasks on tremor. Following up this line of research, this paper explores the difference in the accelerometer signal captured during a scripted task without additional hardware other than a smartphone.

In our study, the data were collected in naturalistic settings using a mobile toolkit, the Sentient Tracking of Parkinson’s (STOP) app, for monitoring PD symptoms in daily life. STOP includes a gamified tremor assessment module based on a ball-balancing game that logs the smartphone’s accelerometer, gyroscope, and rotation data. STOP also provides users with a medication intake journal and a daily symptom survey mechanism [21-23]. The data set used in this paper was published previously [21]. In this study, we analyzed the data set’s accelerometer and medication intake data to answer the following research questions: (1) how feasible is it to characterize hand tremor using inertial data captured during our smartphone game?, and (2) can the effects of PD medication be detected using the same inertial data captured during game sessions played before and after medication intake?

Methods

We installed the STOP app into the smartphones of 13 participants diagnosed with PD and collected accelerometer data and medication logs. We used the Welch method to generate the power spectral densities (PSDs) and extracted features from the accelerometer data that we used to investigate the feasibility of hand tremor assessment and medication effect.
STOP Application and Data Collection

STOP is a smartphone app developed for people with PD with four core functionalities: (1) an accelerometer-based ball game for quantifying patients’ hand tremor, (2) a medication journal for logging medication intake times, (3) a daily survey for reporting the overall severity of PD symptoms, and (4) reminder notifications [21-23].

To play the ball game, one has to place the smartphone horizontally on the palm of the hand for 10 seconds and try to keep a virtual ball inside a circle at the center of the screen. During the game session, STOP logs data from the accelerometer, linear accelerometer (acceleration without gravity’s influence), gyroscope, and rotation vector sensors [24]. It also records the position of the ball in relation to the inner circle’s center and the screen’s pixel density to compute an adjusted distance between the center of the ball and the center of the screen. The inertial sensors’ sampling frequency is set to 50 Hz (or the device’s maximum, if less than 50 Hz). In addition, users can record their medication intake using the “now” or “specify time” buttons, or with their voice via the natural language processing provided by Wit.ai [25].

During a real-world trial of STOP, data were collected from 13 participants with PD, eight females and five males [21]. The participants were recruited from two countries, seven from Finland and six from the United Kingdom. In this study, we had to exclude two participants because of poor data quality (see Data Set). Table 1 provides a summary of the remaining 11 participants’ characteristics; more details are provided in Multimedia Appendix 1. Participants were asked to install and use the STOP app for 1 month on their personal smartphones (five iPhones and six Android phones) and to participate in three interviews (at the start of the study, midway, and at the end).

Participants from Finland were located around the country, and their consent to participate in the study was given via the application. Participants from the United Kingdom, on the other hand, signed a paper consent form. Following local guidelines, approval from the University of Oulu’s ethical committee was not needed because the risks associated with participating in the study were similar to those of daily smartphone use. In previous publications, we have shared users’ experience during the trial and an analysis of the interview data [21]. To summarize, participants were willing to use digital tools to track their condition and were open to the possibility of sharing their data with their doctors, which functioned as a motivator to use such tools. In this paper, we analyze the inertial sensor data recorded during the game sessions and medication logs to quantify the severity of hand tremor and the effect that medication has on it.

Table 1. Overview of participants’ characteristics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Participants (n=11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (range)</td>
<td>64.7 (52-73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years since PD diagnosed, mean (range)</td>
<td>7.1 (2-17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of PD medications, mean (range)</td>
<td>3 (1-5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of total daily medications(^a), mean (range)</td>
<td>4.3 (1-7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDRS II score(^b), mean (range)</td>
<td>11.8 (3-31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremor on UPDRS, mean (range)</td>
<td>1.2 (0-3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep brain stimulator installed, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (18%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffer from hand tremor, n (%)</td>
<td>4 (36%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plays with tremor-affected hand, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (18%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffers from other issues affecting hands, n (%)</td>
<td>3 (27%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rigidity</td>
<td>1 (9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bradykinesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Refers to the number of medication intake times (ie, how many times per day the participant has to take medications, one or several at a time).

\(^b\)The Unified Parkinson Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) II score quantifies the severity level of Parkinson disease (PD) symptoms affecting daily activities (maximum score of 52). The scale for the tremor item on the UPDRS is as follows: 0=no tremor, 1=slight and infrequently present tremor, 2=moderate and bothersome tremor, 3=severe tremor interfering with many activities, and 4=marked tremor interfering with most activities.

Data Set

Our data set contained a total of 1856 medication logs (mean of 107 [SD 54.9] logs per participant) and 2213 game sessions (mean of 138 [SD 60.6] sessions per participant). These data were recorded in 13 participants (P01 to P13) in naturalistic conditions. Participants had varying medication regimens. Game sessions were 10 seconds long. We excluded P03’s sessions because the accelerometer sampling rate of his smartphone was approximately 25 Hz instead of the desired 50 Hz, and we excluded P04’s sessions because they only contained one sensor sample throughout the entire game for unknown technical reasons. P05’s phone had data synchronization issues, so only 1 week of data was collected, and P07 missed the first week of data collection because he had problems installing the application. Despite this, we included P05 and P07 in the analysis, resulting in a total of 11 participants.
Because the data were collected during a trial deployment of the STOP app, there were no participant exclusion criteria related to PD symptom severity. Based on the UPDRS II tremor self-reports, we categorized the participants into five groups: (1) all participants: P01, P02, P05, P06, P07, P08, P09, P10, P11, P12, and P13; (2) no tremor (participants reported no tremor): P02, P09, and P11; (3) tremor (participants reported tremor but in an unspecified location): P06, P07, P08, and P12; (4) hand tremor (participants reported hand tremor and played with the unaffected hand): P01 and P05; and (5) plays with hand tremor (participants reported hand tremor and played with the affected hand): P10 and P13.

We highlighted individual circumstances that might affect STOP’s measurements. P02 reported that his hand rigidity helped him to keep the ball still during game sessions. P09 had poor rotation in his wrists and P11 suffered from rigidity and bradykinesia that make him feel stiff and slow, which might have had a similar effect to that of P02. Finally, P01 was right-handed but used his left hand for playing. Multimedia Appendix 1 provides more details about participants’ symptoms and playing conditions.

Data Preprocessing

Accelerometer data were recorded as participants played a game for a duration of 10 seconds, henceforth referred to as a “game session.” The accelerometer sampling rate was set to 50 Hz, but the sampling rate varied across different smartphones, as the participants used their own devices for the study. In addition, for some devices, the sampling rate varied within a game session. In the examples in Figure 1, P01’s sampling rate stayed close to the requested rate, while the rate varied in P08’s device.

For all devices, the sampling frequency was set to 50 Hz. To address the variation in the sensors’ sampling rate and get uniformly sampled data, we applied a linear interpolation on the accelerometer signal (see Multimedia Appendix 2 for technical details).

We identified the closest medication intake record to each game session and labeled the game sessions as “before” or “after” (see Figure 2). Depending on multiple factors, medication can take at least 15 minutes to kick in [26]. Therefore, for participants who had to take their medication once or twice per day (every 24 or 12 hours), a game session was considered “before” medication if it was played between 5 hours before or 15 minutes after the intake log was completed. In contrast, the game session was labeled “after” medication if it was played between 30 minutes and 3 hours after the medication intake log was completed. For participants with more than two medication intakes per day, we used shorter thresholds. Specifically, the game session was labeled “before” if it was played either 1 hour before or 15 minutes after the medication intake, and “after” if it was played between 30 and 90 minutes after the medication intake.

Game sessions outside of these periods were not included in our medication effect analysis. Figure 2 shows an overview of the labeled time periods; the medication intake time is denoted as a red solid vertical line centered around zero.

**Figure 1.** Best case (left) and worst case (right) examples of varying smartphone sampling frequency during a game session.
Figure 2. The timing of medication intake and game sessions. The x-axis shows the time since medication, 0 is the medication intake time and is highlighted with a red vertical line. Each game is associated with the closest medication intake time, either before or after. The y-axis presents the acceleration signal power in logarithmic scale; the sum of power is calculated over the entire spectrum for each game session. Note that the y-axis ranges differ. The first three rows show participants with more than two intakes per day while the last row shows those with only one or two.

Frequency Analysis: PSD

PD symptoms can be observed in specific frequency bands: dyskinesia (1-3 Hz), rest tremor (3-6 Hz), postural tremor (6-9 Hz), and kinetic tremor (9-12 Hz). As described in the introduction, tremor can be classified by its activation condition. In our study setup, depending on the user’s posture during a game session, we expected to see differences in the accelerometer signal in rest tremor, postural tremor, and dyskinesia frequencies, which we tried to detect by analyzing this signal in the frequency domain.

We used the Welch method [27] to generate periodograms of every participant’s game sequences. This method generates a nonparametric estimation of the PSD, determining the power contained in the signal’s particular frequency components (see Multimedia Appendix 2 for more details). The left columns in Figures 3-5 show the mean of all games’ periodograms as well as the confidence interval around the mean. The right columns depict the averaged periodograms for the “before” and “after” game subsets, respectively. We observed a higher PSD value in the groups with PD tremor (ie, “tremor,” “hand tremor,” and “plays with hand tremor” groups) than in the “no tremor” group. A comparison of the groups is presented in the results section.

From the periodograms, several features were calculated to describe the characteristics of the signal:

- area under the curve (AUC): describes the total power of the signal (Hz) [12] (Figures 3-5 present the mean of PSDs in each frequency);
- peak value (PV): represents the maximum value of the PSD;
- fundamental frequency (F0): the frequency of maximum power [5,12,16,19]. The F0 can be used to categorize the game sessions as dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, or kinetic tremor games [5,19]. The percentage of game sessions in each category of each participant is summarized in Table 2 (the red line in Figure 6 illustrates the F0);
• central frequency (F50): the central point where the periodogram is divided into two equal parts in PSD [5, 12, 16, 19] (the green line in Figure 6 illustrates the F50);
• frequency dispersion (SF50): describes the width of the frequency band around F50 containing 68% of the total power of the signal [5, 16, 19] (see the blue area in Figure 6);
• |F50-F0|: the difference between F50 and F0 [5, 16, 19] (see the distance between the red [F0] and green [F50] lines in Figure 6);
• tremor intensity parameter (TIP): calculated as PV divided by SF50. In Figure 6, P10 has a narrow, high peak in PSD, causing a high TIP, whereas P02 has a lower PV and a wide SF50, causing a low TIP. We introduce this parameter to quantify tremor severity based on accelerometer data—a higher TIP indicates a more severe tremor.

We utilized these features to quantify tremor severity during a game session and to detect a difference in medication effects between different game sessions.

Figure 3. Mean of the power spectral densities with the 95% CI for the “no tremor” group (P02, P09, and P11). The left column shows the mean of all game sessions, and the right column shows the mean of the power spectral densities for “before” (red) and “after” (blue) games. Note that the y-axis ranges differ. Frequency areas (dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor) are denoted by different column shades of the background.
Figure 4. Mean of the power spectral densities with the 95% CI for the “tremor” group (P06, P07, P08, and P12). The left column shows the mean of all game sessions, and the right column shows the mean of the power spectral densities for “before” (red) and “after” (blue) games. Note that the y-axis ranges differ. Frequency areas (dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor) are denoted by different column shades of the background.
Figure 5. Mean of the power spectral densities (PSDs) with the 95% CI for the “hand tremor” group (P01 and P05) and the “plays with hand tremor” group (P10 and P13). The left column shows the mean of all game sessions, and the right column shows the mean of the power spectral densities for “before” (red) and “after” (blue) games. Note that the y-axis ranges differ. Frequency areas (dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor) are denoted by different column shades of the background.
Table 2. The game sessions categorized as dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, or kinetic tremor according to the fundamental frequency are shown as percentages of all game sessions of each participant (the absolute number of game sessions appears in parentheses).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant by group</th>
<th>Dyskinesia</th>
<th>Rest tremor</th>
<th>Postural tremor</th>
<th>Kinetic tremor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No tremor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P02</td>
<td>52% (^a) (56/107)</td>
<td>7% (7/107)</td>
<td>41% (44/107)</td>
<td>0% (0/107)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P09</td>
<td>18% (19/104)</td>
<td>62% (^a) (64/104)</td>
<td>20% (21/104)</td>
<td>0% (0/104)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P11</td>
<td>64% (^a) (170/265)</td>
<td>34% (89/265)</td>
<td>2% (5/265)</td>
<td>0% (1/265)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tremor

| P06                  | 30% (53/175) | 70% \(^a\) (122/175) | 0% (0/175) | 0% (0/175)   |
| P07                  | 10% (5/51) | 10% (5/51) | 80% \(^a\) (41/51) | 0% (0/51) |
| P08                  | 30% (52/174) | 12% (21/174) | 58% \(^a\) (101/174) | 0% (0/174) |
| P12                  | 34% (38/111) | 40% \(^a\) (44/111) | 26% (29/111) | 0% (0/111) |

Hand tremor

| P01                  | 1% (26/167) | 66% \(^a\) (111/167) | 18% (30/167) | 0% (0/167) |
| P05                  | 41% \(^a\) (63/152) | 21% (32/152) | 38% (57/152) | 0% (0/152) |

Plays with hand tremor

| P10                  | 4% (7/169) | 95% \(^a\) (160/169) | 1% (2/169) | 0% (0/169) |
| P13                  | 8% (22/282) | 19% (54/282) | 73% \(^a\) (206/282) | 0% (0/282) |

\(^a\)The most prevalent symptom of the participant.

Results

In this section, we study our two research questions using the PSD features described in the previous section: (1) how feasible is it to characterize tremor using inertial data captured during our smartphone game?, and (2) can the effects of PD medication be detected using the same inertial data captured during game sessions played before and after medication?

Hand Tremor Characterization via the TIP: Proposal for an Objective Hand Tremor Severity Score

We found a significant correlation between self-reported UPDRS II tremor severity scores (0 to 4) and the TIP (Kendall rank correlation test: \( z=30.521, P<.001, \tau=0.5367379; n=11 \)). UPDRS II tremor scores and descriptive statistics of the TIP for each participant are shown in Table 3.

We then compared the groups across all features (see Figures 7 and 8). Figure 7 shows the AUC for all frequency ranges. We found that for dyskinesia the means of all four groups were similar and the tremor group had the largest variability. For the
other three frequency ranges (rest tremor, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor), the mean of the “plays with hand tremor” group was greater than that of the other groups. The participants in the “plays with hand tremor” group also had the highest PV and lowest SF50, and thus the highest TIP score (Figure 8). We used a Wilcoxon rank sum test to confirm that the differences between our 4 groups were statistically significant, resulting in six pairwise comparisons for AUC for all four frequency areas (dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor), PV, F0, F50, SF50, |F50-F0| and TIP (see P values in Table 4). Table 4 is extended in Multimedia Appendix 3, also providing the W for the Wilcoxon rank sum test.

All features were significantly different between the “no tremor” and “plays with hand tremor” groups. Additionally, all features except for SF50 showed a significant difference between the “no tremor” and “tremor” groups and between the “no tremor” and “hand tremor” groups. SF50 describes the width of the frequency band around F50 containing 68% of the total power of the signal. This suggests that when the tremor was located in a body part other than the hand holding the device, the power of the signal was spread in a wider frequency range, resembling the case with no tremor. However, the “no tremor” group differed significantly from the groups with tremors.

Features between the “tremor” and “hand tremor” groups were significantly different only in the AUC for the dyskinesia, postural tremor, and kinetic tremor frequency ranges. Hence, we can say that the effect of tremors on the accelerometer signal in these groups was mainly similar. In contrast, the comparison of the “plays with hand tremor” group with the “tremor” group and the “hand tremor” group showed significant differences in all features except F0 and F50. The tremor effect was similar in frequency, but the magnitude of the tremors was different when the tremor hand was used for playing.

Table 3. Self-reported tremor severity scores using the Unified Parkinson Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) II, item 16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant</th>
<th>UPDRS II item 16 score&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>1st quartile</th>
<th>Median</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>3rd quartile</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P02</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>22.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P09</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>19.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P05</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>5.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P07</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>5.49</td>
<td>2.65</td>
<td>81.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P08</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>14.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>2.05</td>
<td>9.47</td>
<td>8.81</td>
<td>142.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P01</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>7.41</td>
<td>4.04</td>
<td>177.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>3.32</td>
<td>15.93</td>
<td>59.26</td>
<td>59.65</td>
<td>769.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P13</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>6.40</td>
<td>3.79</td>
<td>610.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P06</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>4.97</td>
<td>16.54</td>
<td>35.48</td>
<td>38.12</td>
<td>321.28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>0=no tremor, 1=slight and infrequently present tremor, 2=moderate and bothersome tremor, 3=severe tremor interfering with many activities, and 4=marked tremor interfering with most activities.
Figure 7. Comparison of tremor groups using area under the curve for each frequency range: dyskinesia (1-3 Hz), rest tremor (3-6 Hz), postural tremor (6-9 Hz), and kinetic tremor (9-12 Hz).

Figure 8. Comparison of groups in terms of the following features: peak value, fundamental frequency (F0), central frequency (F50), frequency dispersion (SF50), difference between F50 and F0 (|F50-F0|), and tremor intensity parameter.
**Table 4.** The P values from Wilcoxon rank sum tests comparing groups for each feature: area under the curve (AUC) for all four frequency areas, peak value, fundamental frequency (F0), central frequency (F50), frequency dispersion (SF50), difference between F50 and F0 (|F50-F0|), and tremor intensity parameter (TIP).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>No tremor vs tremor</th>
<th>No tremor vs hand tremor plays with hand tremor</th>
<th>Tremor vs hand tremor</th>
<th>Tremor vs plays with hand tremor</th>
<th>Hand tremor vs plays with hand tremor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AUC</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyskinesia</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rest tremor</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.89</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postural tremor</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.02</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinetic tremor</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak value</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.49</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.62</td>
<td>.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F50</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.43</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SF50</td>
<td>.71</td>
<td>.54</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.39</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F50 - F0</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>.78</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Medication Effect Detection**

We investigated the effect of medication intake on the accelerometer signal characteristics. PD medication is often targeted to alleviate motor symptoms; thus, it could have affected participants’ motor performance during their game sessions. To explore this possibility, we compared the “before” and “after” game sessions of each individual.

In Figures 3-5, on the graphs on the right-hand side, we highlighted the mean PSD of “before” (red) and “after” (blue) game sessions with 95% CIs. Because our sample was relatively small, some of the 95% CI boundaries were negative [28]. In the “no tremor” group (Figure 3), P02 and P11 had peaks in the dyskinesia frequency range, and the mean PSD of “before” games was higher than the mean PSD of “after” games. This suggests that the medication partially alleviated this symptom. The 95% CIs for P09 were mostly overlapping, suggesting that there was no difference in the mean PSD of “before” and “after” games.

In the “tremor” group (Figure 4), P06 had a high peak in the rest tremor frequency area, P08 had a high peak in the postural tremor frequency area, and P07 had a peak in both. Compared with the “no tremor” group, the peaks in the “tremor” group were in tremor frequency ranges, rather than in the dyskinesia frequency range, which matches our expectation of observing this symptom. Even though the 95 CIs were overlapping, the 95% CI for “before” games was narrower. Figure 2 shows that P06 and P08 often played the game at the same time as medication intake, which might have resulted in the narrowing of the 95% CI for “before” games. P12 had two peaks in the “before” sessions in the dyskinesia frequency range; these peaks were lower in “after” sessions.

In the “hand tremor” and “plays with hand tremor” groups (Figure 5), P10 had a clear peak in the rest tremor frequency range. However, the effect of medication was not visible, since the “before” and “after” 95% CIs fully overlapped. This might indicate that the medication was working well, and its effect was maintained prior to the next intake. For P01, who suffered from hand tremor but played with his nonaffected hand, we found a difference in the tremor frequency between “before” and “after” game sessions, and the peak frequency had shifted (Figure 5). For P05 and P13, we observed that the mean PSD of “before” games was higher than of “after” games (Figure 5). P05 had a narrow 95% CI for “after” game sessions; thus, the performance was more predictable after medication intake.

In Table 5, we summarized the changes detected in all of the features between “before” and “after” game sessions. Many participants had changes in their features between the game sessions. A Wilcoxon rank sum test confirmed statistically significant differences for three participants: (1) P02 in AUC dyskinesia (W=861, P=.005), AUC resting tremor (W=1016, P<.001), AUC postural tremor (W=970, P=.002), AUC kinetic tremor (W=872, P=.036), PV (W=949, P=.004), SF50 (W=421, P=.006), and TIP (W=953, P=.003); (2) P09 in SF50 (W=469, P=.005); and (3) P11 in AUC dyskinesia (W=2767, P=.003), PV (W=2590, P=.024), F50 (W=1490, P=.027), SF50 (W=1327, P=.004), and TIP (W=2665, P=.011). These three participants (P02, P09, and P11) reported no tremor (UPDRS II, item 16). P02 and P09 presented with rigidity, and P11 presented with rigidity and bradykinesia; hence, it seems that the medication effect was more visible for these symptoms.
Table 5. Change in means of features as percentages between “before” and “after” medication game sessions. The negative values represent a lower mean in “after” game sessions than in “before” game sessions, while positive values represent the opposite.

| Participant by group | AUC<sup>a</sup>, dyskinesia | AUC, rest tremor | AUC, postural tremor | AUC, kinetic tremor | PV<sup>b</sup> | F0<sup>c</sup> | F50<sup>d</sup> | SF50<sup>e</sup> | |F50-F0|<sup>f</sup> | TIP<sup>g</sup> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|--------|---------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| **No tremor**        |                             |                 |                     |                   |           |        |         |           |           |             |
| P02                  | -51<sup>h</sup>             | -51<sup>i</sup> | -53<sup>b</sup>     | -56<sup>b</sup>   | 10         | 9      | 11<sup>b</sup> | 24       | -3<sup>b</sup> |
| P09                  | 52                          | 1               | -23                 | 30                | 1         | -13    | -14     | -23<sup>b</sup> | -28       | 21          |
| P11                  | -29<sup>b</sup>             | -8              | 4                   | 4                 | -25<sup>b</sup> | 7      | 10<sup>b</sup> | 10<sup>b</sup> | 48        | -35<sup>h</sup> |
| **Tremor**           |                             |                 |                     |                   |           |        |         |           |           |             |
| P06                  | 14                          | 21              | 21                  | 25                | 22        | 3      | -4      | 5         | 31        | 4           |
| P07                  | 45                          | 148             | 8                   | 102               | 4         | 10     | 2       | 1         | 2         | -8          |
| P08                  | 41                          | 28              | 142                 | 45                | 139       | 1      | 0       | 3         | 4         | 108         |
| P12                  | -62                         | -40             | -48                 | -30               | -59       | -14    | -9      | 0         | -4        | -69         |
| **Hand tremor**      |                             |                 |                     |                   |           |        |         |           |           |             |
| P01                  | -52                         | 9               | 51                  | 104               | 2         | 7      | 9       | -5        | -24       | -3          |
| P05                  | -26                         | -52             | -26                 | -7                | -45       | 13     | -3      | 1         | 23        | -51         |
| **Plays with hand tremor** |                     |                 |                     |                   |           |        |         |           |           |             |
| P10                  | 1                           | -23             | -52                 | -42               | -21       | -1     | -2      | 7         | 61        | -3          |
| P13                  | -63                         | -53             | -41                 | -34               | -51       | -3     | 1       | 1         | -27       | -65         |

<sup>a</sup>AUC: area under the curve.
<sup>b</sup>PV: peak value.
<sup>c</sup>F0: fundamental frequency.
<sup>d</sup>F50: central frequency.
<sup>e</sup>SF50: frequency dispersion.
<sup>f</sup>|F50-F0|: difference between F50 and F0.
<sup>g</sup>TIP: tremor intensity parameter.

<sup>h</sup>Difference is statistically significant at $P<.05$, based on the Wilcoxon rank sum test.
<sup>i</sup>Difference is statistically significant at $P<.001$, based on the Wilcoxon rank sum test.

**Discussion**

In this paper, we show that it is feasible to detect and characterize PD hand tremor severity using accelerometer data captured during game play. Further, we investigated the medication effect on the accelerometer signal, demonstrating a statistically significant difference in the accelerometer data characteristics of the game sessions played before and after medication intake by participants with rigidity and bradykinesia.

**Revisiting the Research Questions**

First, how feasible is it to characterize hand tremor using inertial data captured during our smartphone game? To this end, we introduced the TIP for characterizing hand tremor severity, as computed using accelerometer data. We show that TIP is significantly correlated with the tremor score (item 16) on the UPDRS II [9]. TIP was significantly different between participants with no tremor and those with tremor symptoms, as well as between the participants playing with the tremor hand and participants with tremor in the opposite hand or in other body parts (Table 4). These results suggest that it is possible to objectively detect and quantify the severity of hand tremor using smartphone accelerometer data across different tremor types and intensities.

Inspired by previous work in hand tremor analysis using accelerometer data [5,11-16,18,19], we analyzed the accelerometer data collected during a 1-month real-world trial of the STOP app [21]. Earlier studies have already shown that accelerometer signals can be used to measure tremor under controlled conditions similar to traditional clinical assessments using the UPDRS II, either by discriminating between people with and without PD [11-13,15,18] or by measuring tremor severity [5,14,16,19]. We used partially similar methods to those used in previous studies [5,12,16,19], but in contrast, we focused on the feasibility of objective assessments in daily life, with a task that could be conducted anywhere in less than 30 seconds using one’s own smartphone. The smartphone is always with you, and a gamified task does not draw attention, even in public places. The low burden enables regular monitoring, providing continuous data of symptoms over time to support in treatment decisions.

Second, can the effects of PD medication be detected using the same inertial data captured during game sessions played before and after medication intake? In other words, we explored...
whether or not medication-induced changes in motor symptoms could be measured using frequency-domain features extracted from accelerometer data. We classified the games played into two groups: “before” and “after” medication intake. For participants suffering from rigidity and bradykinesia, we found a statistically significant difference in particular signal characterizing features (Table 5). It is known that bradykinesia is usually responsive to PD medication [29]. Kostikis et al [14] also compared “off” and “on” medication states in laboratory conditions with two volunteers with PD. Even though they did not measure rigidity, according to the physician observing the measurements, the patients’ rigidity improved after medication intake. Hence, our results are in line with their observations.

Further research is needed to reproduce these findings and to investigate why we could not find a before-and-after difference for all participants and for tremor symptoms. To this end, we hypothesize that the time window of measurement could have had an effect on the results. It is possible that our participants were consistently under the effects of their medication, thus resulting in similar data across all game sessions.

**Reflection on Smartphone-Based Monitoring of PD in Real Life**

As this study was not a laboratory-controlled experiment, the way participants played the game could have affected the accelerometer data signal. For example, if the participant’s hand was extended, such a position might have induced postural tremor, or if the arm was resting on their lap, rest tremor might have become dominant. Table 2 categorized the game sessions according to the F0 as dyskinesia, rest tremor, postural tremor, or kinetic tremor, as determined in a study by Pierleoni et al [5]. Indeed, based on the interview data reported in our previous study [21], some participants implemented strategies to “beat the game.” For example, P10 and P12 reported to press their elbow against their torso to keep their hands steady, and P01 would occasionally play the game while holding the smartphone with both hands. These three participants had the most games classified as rest tremor (Table 2). P08 mentioned that the game was “easier” if sitting down, and a majority of his games were grouped as postural tremor. P07 noticed how his posture impacted the game and held his hand in such a way that it wasn’t supported by his body; very likely as a consequence, 80% of his games were within the F0 postural tremor frequency area.

It should be noted that the F0 in tremor frequencies does not indicate tremor (Table 2). F0 indicates the frequency of maximum power in PSD but does not otherwise take into account the magnitude of the peak. The TIP describes the severity of the tremor effect, and with the F0 we can further characterize the type of tremor.

**Limitations**

With the STOP app, tremor analysis is limited to tremor severity in participants’ hands, measured using their own smartphone as the instrument. Conversely, in assessments by health professionals, tools such as the UPDRS can be used to evaluate other tremor characteristics, such as amplitude in the legs, jaw, and neck. In our study, the fragmentation of the smartphone device base already caused minor issues, and this can only be expected to exacerbate in the future. To this end, measures to also track and account for the exact device make and model should be added to the approach.

Levodopa treatment is prescribed to alleviate motor symptoms, and although we know the medication intake time, we often ignore the symptoms in particular participants that the medication was prescribed for; hence, the analysis of the medication intake effect is preliminary (it is unclear whether or not the medication was meant to reduce tremor severity). Additionally, the time difference between game sessions and medication intake (“before” and “after” game sessions) varied, as did the magnitude of the changes induced by the medication, which were recorded by the STOP app. This time difference should be taken into account in future studies.

The participant sample size was admittedly small. However, this was compensated for by the high number of individual contributions in the form of game sessions. Further, our data analysis focused on results that generalize sufficiently well for the purposes of this paper: investigating the role of accelerometer data in differentiating between different symptoms and the effects of medication.

**Future Work**

Further research is needed to assess the internal and external validity of the TIP, as our results suggest it has the potential to quantify tremor severity. Previous studies [5,14,16,19] have based their tremor severity evaluations on the UPDRS, which evaluates the tremor on a scale from 0 to 4. Similarly, we used the self-assessed UPDRS II as a baseline in our measurements. However, the UPDRS was designed not for daily symptom severity assessment but rather to detect changes in symptom level in the long term. In future, we shall explore different alternatives to quantify tremor that we can use for baseline. One option is to utilize self-reporting about tremor severity, or to compare the TIP of a game session to the user’s long-term average to provide insight into the variation in personal tremor severity levels.

Changes in our accelerometer features were inconsistent between “before” and “after” medication game sessions. This suggests that we could explore personalized tremor classification models. The effect of hand tremor is visible in the accelerometer signal, but we did not find a statistically significant effect of medication. In addition, it is necessary to focus on particular medication types and PD symptoms to explore the difference between “before” and “after” medication game sessions using accelerometer data in more homogeneous conditions.

Given the availability and sensing capabilities of smartphones, we envision that tools such as the STOP app can support the care and monitoring of PD as well as enable frequent, or even continuous, measuring of medication effects in naturalistic conditions. Even though real-life assessments pose a challenge for data quality due to differences in sensing devices and conditions, standalone smartphone solutions can have a lower burden, thus increasing engagement. For clinicians, a richer picture of symptom severity enabled by sensor data could enable them to better understand people’s conditions and prescribe tailored medications.
Conclusions

In summary, it is feasible to detect and quantify the severity of hand tremor using accelerometer data collected with modern, off-the-shelf smartphones. We replicated and validated previously reported features derived from accelerometer data collected in real-world settings. To this end, we presented the TIP, a metric that could support further research into unobtrusive tremor assessment with smartphones but requires further internal and external validation. Additionally, we identified a statistically significant difference between the game sessions before and after medication intake among participants with rigidity and bradykinesia, and concluded that detecting the effects of PD medication is possible but further research is warranted.

Acknowledgments

This work is partially funded by the Academy of Finland (Grants 313224-STOP, 316253-SENSATE, 320089-SENSATE, 318927-6Genesis Flagship, and 318930-GenZ), and by personal research grants awarded by the Finnish Parkinson Foundation, the Tauno Tönnning Foundation, the Jenny and Antti Wihuri Foundation, the Nokia Foundation, and the Emil Aaltonen Foundation.

The author Florian Wolling has been supported by the University of Siegen and the German Academic Exchange Service (DAAD), which enabled his research visit at the University of Oulu, Finland, Biomimetics and Intelligent Systems Group.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Participants' details.
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 152 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21543_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Technical details of the linear interpolation of the accelerometer signal and the Welch method.
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 191 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21543_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3

Wilcoxon rank sum test details of group comparisons.
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 155 KB - mhealth_v8i11e21543_app3.pdf]

References

2. Carolinas P. What is Parkinson’s Disease?. 2020. URL: https://www.parkinsonassociation.org/what-is-parkinsons-disease/ [accessed 2020-11-06]


28. Quora. Is it possible that the confidence interval is a negative number? Is it possible that the confidence interval is a negative number?. 2020. URL: https://www.quora.com/Is-it-possible-that-the-confidence-interval-is-a-negative-number [accessed 2020-06-11]


Abbreviations

- **AUC**: area under the curve
- **F0**: fundamental frequency
- **FS0**: central frequency
[**F50-F0**]: difference between F50 and F0  
**PD**: Parkinson disease  
**PSD**: power spectral density  
**PV**: peak value  
**SF50**: frequency dispersion  
**STOP**: Sentient Tracking of Parkinson  
**TIP**: tremor intensity parameter  
**UPDRS**: Unified Parkinson Disease Rating Scale

Edited by G Eysenbach, L Buis; submitted 17.06.20; peer-reviewed by J Hernández-Vara, M Bardus; comments to author 27.07.20; revised version received 21.09.20; accepted 25.10.20; published 26.11.20.

Please cite as:
Smartphone-Based Monitoring of Parkinson Disease: Quasi-Experimental Study to Quantify Hand Tremor Severity and Medication Effectiveness  
*JMIR Mhealth Uhealth* 2020;8(11):e21543  
doi: [10.2196/21543](https://doi.org/10.2196/21543)  
PMID: [33242017](https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/33242017/)

©Elina Kuosmanen, Florian Wolling, Julio Vega, Valerii Kan, Yuuki Nishiyama, Simon Harper, Kristof Van Laerhoven, Simo Hosio, Denzil Ferreira. Originally published in *JMIR MHealth and uHealth* (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 26.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in *JMIR MHealth and uHealth*, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
A Mobile-Based Intervention for Dietary Behavior and Physical Activity Change in Individuals at High Risk for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Randomized Controlled Trial

Zidu Xu¹,², BSc; Ji Geng², BSc; Shuai Zhang², BSc; Kexin Zhang³, BSc; Lin Yang¹, PhD; Jing Li²*, PhD; Jiao Li¹*, PhD

¹Institute of Medical Information and Library, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing, China
²School of Nursing, Peking Union Medical College, Beijing, China
³Nursing Department, Peking Union Medical College Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing, China

*these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Jing Li, PhD
School of Nursing
Peking Union Medical College
No 33, Badachu Road, Shijingshan District
Beijing, 100144
China
Phone: 86 1088771124
Email: annelec13@126.com

Abstract

Background: Intensive lifestyle modifications have proved effective in preventing type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), yet the efficiency and effectiveness of these modifications need to be improved. Emerging social media interventions are considered useful in promoting these lifestyles; nevertheless, few studies have investigated the effectiveness of combining them with behavior theory.

Objective: This study aims to examine the effectiveness of a 6-month mobile-based intervention (DHealthBar, a WeChat applet) combined with behavioral theory compared with a printed intervention in improving dietary behaviors, physical activity, and intention to change these behaviors among populations at high risk for T2DM.

Methods: Participants aged 23 to 67 years were recruited offline in Beijing, China, and were randomized into the intervention group or the control group, which received educational content via DHealthBar or a printed handbook, respectively. Educational materials were culturally tailored recommendations on improving dietary behaviors, physical activity, and intention to change based on the transtheoretical model. Participants in the intervention arm received push notifications twice per week on WeChat and had access to the educational content for the 6-month study period. Participants in the control arm received the same intervention content through printed materials. The outcomes of participants’ behavior change, intention to change behavior, and anthropometric characteristics were collected via online measuring tools at baseline, 3 months, and 6 months.

Results: In this study, 79 enrolled individuals completed baseline information collection (control: n=38 vs intervention: n=41), and 96% (76/79) completed the 6-month follow-up visit. Attrition rates did not differ significantly between the 2 groups ($\chi^2=0.0, \ P=.61$). Baseline equivalence was found. Participants in both groups reported a statistically significant decrease in energy intake at the 2 follow-up assessments compared with baseline (3 months, control: $\exp[\beta]=0.83$, 95% CI 0.74-0.92 vs intervention: $\exp[\beta]=0.76$, 95% CI 0.68-0.85; 6 months, control: $\exp[\beta]=0.87$, 95% CI 0.78-0.96 vs intervention: $\exp[\beta]=0.57$, 95% CI 0.51-0.64). At 6 months, a significantly larger decrease was observed in the intervention group in energy, fat, and carbohydrate intake, accompanied with a significantly larger increase in moderate-intensity physical activity compared with the control group (energy: $\exp[\beta]=0.66$, 95% CI 0.56-0.77; fat: $\exp[\beta]=0.71$, 95% CI 0.54-0.95; carbohydrates: $\exp[\beta]=0.83$, 95% CI 0.66-1.03; moderate-intensity physical activity: $\exp[\beta]=2.05$, 95% CI 1.23-3.44). After 6 months of the intervention, participants in the intervention group were more likely to be at higher stages of dietary behaviors ($\exp[\beta]=26.80$, 95% CI 3.51-204.91) and physical activity ($\exp[\beta]=15.60$, 95% CI 2.67-91.04) than the control group.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19869

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e19869 | p.298
(page number not for citation purposes)
Conclusions: DHealthBar was initially effective in improving dietary behavior, physical activity, and intention to change these behaviors among populations who were at high risk of developing T2DM, with significant differences in the changes of outcomes over the 6-month intervention period.

Trial Registration: Chinese Clinical Trial Registry ChiCTR2000032323; https://tinyurl.com/y4h8q4uf

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19869) doi:10.2196/19869

KEYWORDS
transtheoretical model; type 2 diabetes mellitus; high risk; social media; dietary behavior; physical activity

Introduction

Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) accounts for over 90% of diabetes mellitus cases [1]. According to the International Diabetes Federation [2], China has the highest number of diabetic adults, with 1 in 10 adults aged 20 to 79 years (116 million adults) having diabetes mellitus. Unhealthy lifestyles are responsible for the increased risk of T2DM, including habitual sedentary behavior, overindulgence in animal fat, refined carbohydrates, and sugar-sweetened beverages [3-5].

Medication interventions, such as metformin, have been recommended as a preventive measure; nevertheless, for long-term effects, lifestyle interventions provide better performance, as described in follow-up studies such as the US Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) and the Da Qing Study [6,7]. The 30-year Da Qing follow-up study reported that a median delay in diabetes onset of 3.96 years and a reduction in diabetes incidence and its complications were achieved, with an additional 1.44-year extension in life expectancy in the intervention group [6]. However, despite these promising results in curbing the diabetes epidemic, the typical face-to-face approaches of behavioral interventions might have trouble reaching a wider population to achieve and sustain healthy lifestyles, especially considering the high cost of current procedures (ie, physician visits, nutrition services, personal consultants, etc) [7].

With advanced information and communication technology and ubiquitous smartphones, medical services based on mobile phones and social networking services have been suggested as promising alternatives for cost-effective delivery of scalable behavior change interventions [8]. Trials have shown the potential of social media (eg, WeChat, Facebook, and Twitter) in delivering behavioral interventions on weight loss, diet pattern reconstruction, and online exercise coaching [9-11]. WeChat, a Chinese multipurpose social media app with a wide range of functions, had nearly 1.151 billion monthly active users on the service platform and over 300 million daily active users of extending applets in the third quarter of 2019, making it well suited to disseminate mobile health (mHealth) interventions in China [12,13]. However, the explosion of mHealth interventions and services does not mean that these interventions are ready for wide use. Rather, they have yet to be sufficiently explored and evaluated. If mHealth interventions were purely self-guided, a lot of information would overload the individuals and deter their adherence [14]. Participants might end up not using the intervention, resulting in low response.

Investigators have called for incorporating behavior theory to nudge mHealth interventions to be more effective in promoting health behaviors [15]. The transtheoretical model (TTM) has long been the most widely accepted model of health behavior change [16]. TTM focuses on the intention of individuals and assumes that the decision making and implementation of behavior change is a continuous, cyclical process divided into precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance [17]. It has been suggested that TTM performs well in measuring one’s current stage of behavior change and accounting for the dynamic process over time [18,19], thus making it possible to provide tailored interventions for individuals at various stages of health behavior change. The individuals would therefore be propelled toward higher stages of behavior change.

TTM-based behavior interventions have been proven effective [18-21]. Lee et al [22] noted that TTM-based interventions have been applied to physical activity and diet improvement among adolescents and male workers using web-based delivery methods. TTM-based interventions have also been successful in lifestyle management among patients with diabetes [22,23]. However, few studies have combined social media delivery modes with TTM-based strategies in tailored health behavior interventions, let alone applied them to high-risk populations for T2DM. In this context, we focused on high-risk individuals and used TTM-based interventions delivered through social media to expand the delivery modes and elements of the TTM-based interventions.

The aim of this study was to investigate the effectiveness of a 6-month WeChat-based (mobile-based) behavior intervention driven by TTM compared with a print-based intervention in promoting dietary behaviors and physical activity among individuals at high risk for T2DM. The secondary purpose was to compare changes in participants’ intentions to change these behaviors. Changes in anthropometric characteristics (ie, BMI and waist circumference) were also considered.

Methods

Research Design

The effectiveness of the TTM-based social media intervention was examined with a 2-arm randomized controlled trial registered on the Chinese Clinical Trial Registry (ChiCTR2000032323). Under the condition of receiving a written and oral explanation of the program requirements and giving informed consent, participants were randomly allocated to either (1) the DHealthBar intervention group or (2) the control group, which received printed materials. The control group was set to obtain stand-alone information about the effect of theory-driven interventions in improving health behaviors...
Study Setting and Data Collection

The enrolled participants were informed of group assignment by phone, text messages, or emails after leaving the study site. Both groups were provided with the same culturally tailored educational materials to encourage lifestyle modification, modified from the US DPP design plan and other evidence-based strategies [25]. TTM-based behavioral intervention techniques and strategies were applied in the delivery of the interventions to both groups. Participants in the mobile-based intervention group were told to follow the WeChat subscription account to access the details of the intervention program, including push notifications for health education content and links to online self-report questionnaires. Participants in the control group were mailed a lifestyle modification handbook. There was no direct interaction between participants in the different groups after randomization, and participants had no further contact with research staff except for reminders for the 3-month and 6-month online follow-up assessments. Reminder notifications for assessments were standardized across groups in content, delivery, and frequency to avoid bias from interactional differences. All follow-up assessment data were collected via WeChat applets connected to an encrypted database. Logic checks were conducted to identify suspicious submissions, and the suspected data errors were dropped from the collections and re-collected after participants understood the meaning of the questions with assistance from the research team members. To enhance the adherence and engagement of participants, each participant was compensated with office supplies valued at around ¥70 (US $10.50) per assessment.

Study Conditions

The DHealthBar Intervention

DHealthBar provided 6 months of a WeChat-based behavior intervention aimed at improving eating habits and physical activity, thus reducing diabetes risk in the long term. It also aimed to increase the intention to change these behaviors. The 6-month mobile-based intervention was composed of educational material sent by the WeChat subscription account named DHealthBar, WeChat applets (lightweight apps that form part of the WeChat ecosystem, which could be used independently) embedded with online questionnaires, and a check-in applet serving as an online forum with functions similar to Twitter Moments.

The general design of DHealthBar and supporting details are displayed in Figure 1. It was designed to educate people at high risk for T2DM about diabetes prevention and specifically focus on providing practical strategies on relevant aspects, such as (1) interventions on behavior change, (2) behavior change instructions, (3) behavior change tracking tools (ie, online questionnaires), and (4) a common space for communication and sharing. Within the WeChat account, 3 modules were set to categorize the push messages: stages of change, knowledge tips, and health records (Figure 1). In the stages of change section, researchers created message interventions for the research participants to improve their motivation for behavior change (ie, from precontemplation to maintenance). The knowledge tips section provided practical instructions for participants to change their dietary behaviors and physical activity. In the health records section, the food frequency questionnaire 25 (FFQ25) diet-tracking tool [26], the International Physical Activity Questionnaire (IPAQ) physical activity tracking tool (long version in Chinese) [27], and the Stage of Change (SOC) Scale stages of change tracking tool [28] were presented in the instant assessment embedded in the WeChat applets and allowed immediate feedback upon submission. Furthermore, there was a check-in online forum for participants to record and share daily diet and exercises in the form of photos and texts; participants could appreciate and comment on tweets that interested them to encourage peers indirectly.
With the support of the DPP design plan [25] and localized evidence-based guidelines [29,30], the push messages were designed and enhanced with TTM-based [31] and evidence-based social media lifestyle intervention strategies [10,32,33] to achieve behavior change goals.

The educational content was designed following several principles. For eating behaviors, the focus was on decreasing added sugars and refined carbohydrates, decreasing saturated and trans fats, and increasing fruits and vegetables. Changes in food types and reduction in portion size were emphasized as means of reducing energy intake rather than specific calorie targets or calorie counting. For dietary behaviors, changing food types and reducing portion size, for instance, limiting the intake of sweetened beverages and refined carbohydrates, increasing fruits and vegetables, and replacing saturated and trans fats with polyunsaturated fats, was meant to (1) reduce total energy intake (in kcal per day) according to age, gender, and level of daily activities [30] and (2) modify the proportion of 3 macronutrients, with carbohydrates at 50% to 65%, protein at 10% to 15%, and fats at 20% to 30% [30].

For physical activity, participants were encouraged to enhance the endurance and frequency of their physical activity to achieve the goal of at least 30 minutes of moderate-intensity physical activity per day [25,29]. Resistance training was also encouraged.

The participant’s psychological readiness to take action for these behavioral changes was addressed using TTM-based behavior change techniques, specifically following strategies aimed at behavior change at different stages [17,28]. For instructions on behavior change skills, the educational material was arranged into comics, stories, or short articles and then sent as push messages on the WeChat subscription. The participants could leave messages about topics of interest and share the recommended content as their WeChat Moments. All presented information was designed with input from an endocrinologist, a diabetes nurse educator, registered dietitians, and health behavior specialists and was reviewed by them before release. Educational content about dietary behaviors and physical activity were posted for all engaging participants twice a week (Multimedia Appendix 2).

WeChat mini applets embedded with online questionnaires were used as automated trackers to encourage participants to monitor their daily health behavior and increase engagement (Figure 2). After completing the assessments, participants received automated feedback and personalized recommendations immediately. In particular, the processes of behavior change were used as indicators for tailored interventions for the participant’s intention to change and as a general guide for the behavior promotion intervention modifications in the next study period [31]. Due to the dynamics of intentions and lifestyle changes, an interval of 3 months was set to reevaluate the participants and rearrange the intervention domains and skills accordingly.

Figure 1. The schema of the TTM-based social media behavior intervention plan. FFQ25: food frequency questionnaire 25; IPAQ: International Physical Activity Questionnaire; SOC: Stage of Change; TTM: transtheoretical model.
Figure 2. Screenshots of the online assessment for dietary behaviors. From left to right: the entry screen for basic information, the food frequency questionnaire 25, and the feedback information on personal dietary behaviors.

Alternative Care: Self-Learning With DPP-Based Handbook

The alternative care for participants in the control group was a behavior change handbook with instructions on dietary behaviors and physical activity modification. A follow-up parallel to the intervention group was conducted after 3 months and 6 months with online questionnaires embedded in the WeChat applets. Participants in the control group were informed of the assessment link at baseline assessment and received reminders through phone calls, text messages, or emails around the follow-up assessment time points. Apart from these time points, participants in the control group had no contact with researchers during the study period.

Outcome Measures

The primary outcome measures were changes in dietary behaviors and physical activity at the 3-month and 6-month follow-up from baseline, serving as the key goals of our interventions. Secondary outcome measures were (1) stage of change for dietary behaviors and physical activity, which reflects one’s intention for behavior change, and (2) anthropometric characteristics, including BMI and waist circumference. Dietary behaviors were described using daily intake of energy; the macronutrients protein, carbohydrates, and fat; and macronutrient proportions. Physical activity was described using weekly physical activity in total and weekly physical activity of light, moderate, and vigorous intensity. Participants completed self-reported assessments at 3 time points: baseline, 3 months, and 6 months.

General Information

General information was collected during the screening process, including gender, age, body mass, body mass index, waist circumference, family history of diabetes, occupation, and education.

Diabetes Risk Screening

Diabetes self-screening tools published by the ADA for risk of type 2 diabetes [24] were adopted and included 6 measures—gender, age, family history, hypertension history, BMI, and sedentariness—with a total of 10 points. Scoring less than 5 points indicated a low risk of diabetes and scoring 5 or more points indicated the state of being prediabetic or at a high risk for diabetes.

Changes in Dietary Behaviors and Physical Activity

Changes in dietary behaviors and physical activity were evaluated to examine the effect of the interventions. The simplified FFQ25 developed by Gao et al [26] was adopted for the dietary behavior assessment. There are 25 types of staple foods and nonstaple foods included. The frequency and weight of food intake were recorded for calculation and analysis. The frequency of food intake was on a 9-point scale, ranging from “never eat” to “more than 3 times a day,” with a corresponding weight sequence of 0, 0.03, 0.07, 0.22, 0.50, 0.79, 1, 2, and 3. The amount of food intake was on a 6-point scale, ranging from “never eat” to “more than 3 times a day,” with a corresponding weight sequence of 0, 0.5, 0.75, 1, 1.5, and 2. The FFQ25 has been demonstrated to be a diet assessment tool with high reliability and validity. Results for dietary behaviors included energy intake (in kcal) per day, 3 macronutrient (ie, carbohydrates, fat, and protein) intakes (in g) per day, and macronutrient proportions (percentage), with higher values indicating greater intake of certain types of nutrients or corresponding types of food. Physical activity was assessed using the self-administered IPAQ (long version in Chinese) [27]. The IPAQ contains a total of 27 questions covering a comprehensive set of 4 domains of physical activity (ie, leisure time physical activity, domestic and gardening (yard) activities, work-related physical activity, and transport-related physical activity), with 2 added questions on sedentary behavior. In addition, items in the form were structured to provide details about the specific types of walking (W), moderate-intensity

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19869
activity ($M$), and vigorous-intensity activity ($V$) within each domain. The volume of activity measured by the IPAQ can be weighted by metabolic equivalents of task (METs) that represent the energy required to yield a score in MET minutes. With selected MET values of each type, the MET score was calculated as the specific MET value ($W, M, V$) × weekly frequency (days per week) × time per day (minutes per day). In this study, because of the equivalent intensity, we used light-intensity activity ($L$) to replace walking activity ($W$) as one of our outcomes. With the weekly light-, moderate-, and vigorous-intensity physical activity summed up, we could determine the MET score for the weekly total physical activity.

In addition to the standardized approach, we adopted long-form IPAQ data processing rules to perform data cleaning and set an upper and lower threshold for the duration of activity, thus qualifying the results within a reasonable range [27].

### Stage of Behavior Change

The SOC Scale, derived from the SOC Scale for reducing dietary fat intake used by Greene and Rossi [28], was adopted to evaluate the intention to change dietary behaviors and physical activity. The Cronbach $\alpha$ coefficient for each item was no less than .76. The stage assessment was divided into 5 phases based on the answers from the participants (precontemplation: "Do not intend to make dietary/physical activity changes in the next 6 months"; contemplation: "Intend to make dietary/physical activity changes in the next 6 months"; preparation: "Intend to make dietary/physical activity changes in the next 30 days"; action: "Have been changing dietary/physical activity but it has been less than 6 months"; maintenance: "Have been changing dietary/physical activity for more than 6 months").

### Statistics Analysis

Based on established methods [34,35], it was estimated that a sample of 74 participants would be required to detect a 715 kcal change in daily energy intake from baseline to 6 months with a standard deviation of 300 kcal, using an $\alpha$ level of .05 and a power level of 80%. The final desired estimated number of participants enrollment was set at 78 after 5% estimated attrition. Descriptive statistics were used to examine the baseline information, using number and percentage for nominal categorical variables and mean and standard deviation or median and interquartile range for normally or not normally distributed variables, respectively. Comparisons between groups at all 3 assessment points (baseline, 3 months, 6 months) were made on demographic measures (baseline only) and all outcome measures (ie, dietary behaviors, physical activity, stage of behavior change, and anthropometric characteristics). We used 2-tailed $t$ tests for continuous variables that were normally distributed. Kruskal-Wallis tests were used for ordinal variables or continuous variables not normally distributed. Chi-square tests were used for nominal categorical variables.

To analyze the repeated outcome measures [36,37], generalized linear mixed models (GLMMs) were used to examine changes over time and differences between the 2 arms in dietary behaviors, physical activity, stage of behavior change, and anthropometric characteristics, which allowed response variables from different distributions, such as nonnormal distribution responses and ordinal categorical responses. Given both fixed and random effects, the general form of the model is [38]:

$$y = \beta X + uZ + \epsilon$$

In the above equation, $y$ is the outcome variable, $X$ is a predictor variable, $\beta$ is a fixed-effects regression coefficient, and $uZ$ is designed for random effects, with $Z$ being the random complement to the fixed $X$ and $u$ being the random complement to the fixed $\beta$. In addition, $\epsilon$ is designed for the residuals, the part of $y$ that is not explained by the model.

The following form of the model is given to make this more concrete in this study setting:

$$y = \beta_1 X_1 + \beta_2 X_2 + \beta_3 X_3 + \beta_4 X_4 + Z + \epsilon$$

In the above equation, $y$ is the outcome variable, either continuous (ie, dietary behavior outcome measures, physical activity outcome measures, BMI, and waist circumference) or categorical (ie, stage of change for dietary behaviors or physical activity). $\beta_1 X_1 + \beta_2 X_2 + \beta_3 X_3 + \beta_4 X_4$ represents fixed effects. Further, in this study, variables were included for intervention ($X_1$: $0=$no, $1=$yes) and time ($X_2$: $1=$baseline, $2=$3-month follow-up, $3=$6-month follow-up), and $\beta$s are fixed-effects regression coefficients. Particularly, to interpret the unique effect of the intervention on time, an intervention-time interaction item ($\beta_4 X_3X_4$) was added. $Z$, the random intercept, is incorporated for the random effects of participants. All analyses were adjusted for baseline age, gender, education level, and occupational level for the probability of an impact on outcome measures [39,40]. Outcomes of GLMM analyses were reported as exponentiated coefficients ($\exp(\beta)$). Adjusted $P$ values and confidence intervals to control the type I error rate at 0.05 (95% CI) were computed through simulations (Multimedia Appendices 3 and 4). Specific model type, link function, and the total number of observations included in the model are listed in the footnotes of Multimedia Appendices 3 and 4.

We conducted post hoc comparisons of the intervention group versus the control group at the 3-month follow-up, the intervention group versus the control group at the 6-month follow-up, the difference in mean changes or proportion changes between the intervention group and the control group at the 3-month and 6-month follow-up, and within-group comparisons between each time point (ie, 0 months vs 3 months, 0 months vs 6 months, 3 months vs 6 months). The first 2 post hoc comparisons evaluated whether the mean levels of outcome measures in the intervention group differed from those of the control group at each time point. The middle 2 comparisons evaluated whether there was a change in the differences between the treatment group and the control group over time. The last comparisons examined the changes in outcome measures across the study period. Besides these comparisons, for the main-effects-only model, if the intervention was statistically significant, post hoc comparisons were conducted to determine if outcome measures differed significantly in mean or proportion between the 2 groups.

All the tests were 2-tailed and used a .05 significance level. All analyses were conducted using per-protocol analysis with R (version 3.6.2; R Foundation for Statistical Computing).
**Results**

**Overview**

A pragmatic, parallel-group, randomized controlled trial in Beijing, China, was conducted from May 2018 to March 2019. Of the 200 potentially eligible participants, 90 (45.0%) agreed to a further test. After excluding 7 participants who declined to participate further (2 after the informed group assignment) and 4 who provided invalid questionnaires, a total of 79 of the 90 (88%) participants were randomly allocated to the social media intervention group (n=38) or control group (n=41). There was high retention and participation in follow-up assessments: of the 79 participants, 78 (99%) were followed up at 3 months and 76 (96%) were followed up with at 6 months. Analyses of the attrition rate did not show statistically significant difference between the 2 groups ($\chi^2 = 0.0; P = .61$). Hence, attrition was not systemic. Figure 3 shows the participants’ flow through the study.

![Flow diagram for the randomized trial](image-url)

The participants were middle-aged (control group: median 47.5, IQR 44.0-55.0 years; intervention group: 46.0, IQR 44.0-48.2 years) and well educated, with 51 of the 76 participants (67%) having a college degree or higher. At baseline, most participants were at relatively low stages (ie, precontemplation, contemplation, or preparation) of dietary behavior or physical activity change. Baseline equivalence of participants was demonstrated between the 2 groups in sociodemographic, anthropometric, and behavioral characteristics (Table 1). No participants in the study did not complete the follow-up assessment for the reason of being diagnosed with diabetes, nor did anyone report adverse events caused by the social media intervention.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Control (n=40)</th>
<th>Intervention (n=36)</th>
<th>t test&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; (df)</th>
<th>H value&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; (df)</th>
<th>Chi-square test (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), median (IQR)</strong></td>
<td>47.5 (44.0-55.0)</td>
<td>46.0 (44.0-48.2)</td>
<td>N/A&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.03 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>24 (60.0)</td>
<td>18 (50.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.4&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt; (1)</td>
<td>.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>16 (40.0)</td>
<td>18 (50.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body mass (kg), median (IQR)</strong></td>
<td>70.0 (65.0-80.5)</td>
<td>72.7 (65.0-80.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.55 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI (kg/m²), median (IQR)</strong></td>
<td>24.7 (23.4-26.1)</td>
<td>25.3 (24.7-26.2)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2.75 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waist circumference (cm), median (IQR)</strong></td>
<td>81.0 (73.7-85.0)</td>
<td>82.5 (77.7-88.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.48 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Family history of diabetes, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>13 (32.5)</td>
<td>18 (50.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.7&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; (1)</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>27 (67.5)</td>
<td>18 (50.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.9&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; (9)</td>
<td>.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupational classification, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator or manager</td>
<td>3 (7.5)</td>
<td>2 (5.5)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office and administrative support</td>
<td>12 (30.0)</td>
<td>10 (28.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health care practitioner</td>
<td>2 (5.0)</td>
<td>2 (5.5)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal profession</td>
<td>3 (7.5)</td>
<td>2 (5.5)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architect or engineer</td>
<td>3 (7.5)</td>
<td>5 (14.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laborer or protective service worker</td>
<td>4 (10.0)</td>
<td>4 (11.1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver</td>
<td>3 (7.5)</td>
<td>2 (5.5)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teacher</td>
<td>4 (10.0)</td>
<td>4 (11.1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer programmer</td>
<td>2 (5.0)</td>
<td>3 (8.3)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired</td>
<td>4 (10.0)</td>
<td>2 (5.5)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education level, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>1 (2.5)</td>
<td>1 (2.8)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.9&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; (2)</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>14 (35.0)</td>
<td>9 (25.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary</td>
<td>25 (62.5)</td>
<td>26 (72.2)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dietary behaviors (FFQ25&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy intake (kcal/d), median (IQR)</td>
<td>2029.0 (1515.0-2547.0)</td>
<td>2263.0 (2047.0-2419.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2.12 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macronutrients intake (g/d), median (IQR)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat</td>
<td>78.3 (56.9-103.2)</td>
<td>81.2 (30.9-38.3)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.001 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates</td>
<td>210.7 (141.3-272.4)</td>
<td>228.8 (153.2-256.3)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.29 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>94.7 (80.4-128.5)</td>
<td>98.3 (63.2-123.9)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.78 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macronutrients proportion (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat, median (IQR)</td>
<td>37.3 (33.0-40.9)</td>
<td>36.8 (30.9-38.3)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.18 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates, mean (SD)</td>
<td>42.7 (7.2)</td>
<td>44.6 (6.2)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.22 (73.88)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein, mean (SD)</td>
<td>20.8 (2.3)</td>
<td>20.1 (2.4)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>–1.20 (72.03)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical activity (IPAQ&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2632.5 (1577.7-3746.2)</td>
<td>2385.5 (803.2-3852.0)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.81 (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Primary Outcomes: Dietary Behaviors and Physical Activity Changes

The results of the outcome measures and univariate analyses at the 3- and 6-month follow-up assessments are reported in Multimedia Appendix 5. For outcome measures in dietary behaviors, mean levels of energy intake ($P<.001$), macronutrient intake of fat and protein (fat: $P<.001$; protein: $P<.001$), and proportion of fat ($P<.001$) were significantly lower in the intervention group than in the control group at the 6-month follow-up assessment, while the proportion of carbohydrates was significantly higher than that in the control group ($P<.001$) (Multimedia Appendix 5).

Significant group $\times$ time interaction effects and significant main effects for time were both observed in intake of energy and the 3 macronutrients, as well as in total physical activity and moderate-intensity physical activity per week (Table 2 and Figure S1 in Multimedia Appendix 6). Significant main effects for time were also observed in light-intensity physical activity per week. Significant main effects for the intervention were only observed in the intake of protein and carbohydrate proportions (Table 2).

For dietary behaviors, energy intake decreased significantly at 3 months and 6 months compared with baseline in both groups (control: 3 months, $P<.001$; 6 months, $P=.003$; intervention: 3 months, $P<.001$; 6 months, $P<.001$). See Multimedia Appendix 3 for $\exp(\beta)$ and 95% CI values. The intake of the 3 macronutrients decreased significantly at 6 months compared with baseline in both groups (control: fat, $P=.047$; carbohydrates, $P=.01$; protein, $P=.006$; intervention: fat, $P<.001$; carbohydrates, $P<.001$; protein, $P=.001$). Intake of fat ($P=.049$) and protein ($P<.001$) decreased significantly at 3 months compared with baseline in the control group. A significant decrease in fat proportion was observed in the intervention group at 6 months ($P=.01$). For physical activity, total physical activity and light-intensity physical activity per week improved significantly at 6 months compared with baseline in both groups (control: total, $P=.03$; light-intensity physical activity, $P=.01$; intervention: total, $P<.001$; light-intensity physical activity, $P<.001$). There were continuously significant changes in energy intake (decrease) and moderate-intensity physical activity (increase) in the intervention group (3 vs 0 months: energy, $P<.001$; moderate-intensity physical activity, $P=.04$; 6 vs 3 months: energy, $P<.001$; moderate-intensity physical activity, $P=.03$). $P$ values in this paragraph were adjusted.

At 6 months, the intake of energy ($P<.001$), fat ($P<.001$), and protein ($P=.003$) and the intake proportion of fat ($P=.003$) were significantly lower in the intervention group than in the control group, while the proportion of carbohydrate intake ($P=.03$) was significantly higher in the intervention group than in the control group. See Multimedia Appendix 4 for $\exp(\beta)$ and 95% CI values.
values. Significantly larger decreases over 6 months were observed in the intervention group in energy ($P<.001$), fat ($P<.001$), and carbohydrate ($P<.001$) intakes compared with the control group. In addition, the increase in moderate-intensity physical activity was significantly larger in the intervention group than in the control group ($P=.002$). $P$ values in this paragraph were adjusted.

### Table 2. The effect of the intervention and time on primary and secondary outcomes over the intervention period.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome measures</th>
<th>Model effects</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Group × time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$F$ test $\left( df \right)$</td>
<td>$P$ value</td>
<td>$F$ test $\left( df \right)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dietary behaviors (FFQ25&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy intake&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.07 (1,70)</td>
<td>.30</td>
<td>73.30 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macronutrient intake&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat</td>
<td>3.23 (1,70)</td>
<td>.08</td>
<td>23.26 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates</td>
<td>0.08 (1,70)</td>
<td>.78</td>
<td>21.78 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>4.83 (1,70)</td>
<td>.03&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>24.73 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macronutrients proportion (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.91 (1,70)</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>2.01 (2,148)</td>
<td>.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.75 (1,70)</td>
<td>.03&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.90 (2,148)</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.67 (1,70)</td>
<td>.11</td>
<td>1.76 (2,148)</td>
<td>.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical activity (IPAQ&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.04 (1,70)</td>
<td>.84</td>
<td>19.38 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light intensity&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.39 (1.66.83)</td>
<td>.53</td>
<td>19.42 (2,133)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate intensity&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.16 (1.66.65)</td>
<td>.69</td>
<td>9.63 (2,139.7)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigorous intensity&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.87 (1.50.53)</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>0.08 (2,76.37)</td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage of dietary behavior change (SOC&lt;sup&gt;h,i,j&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>3.56 (1,145)</td>
<td>.06</td>
<td>6.37 (2,145)</td>
<td>&lt;.002&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage of physical activity change (SOC&lt;sup&gt;h,i&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>2.66 (1,145)</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>6.31 (2,145)</td>
<td>&lt;.002&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthropometric characteristics&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>0.47 (1,70)</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>125.40 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waist circumference (cm)</td>
<td>4.54 (1,70)</td>
<td>.04&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>172.47 (2,148)</td>
<td>&lt;.001&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>FFQ25: simplified food frequency questionnaire 25.
<sup>b</sup>Model (response variable of gamma distribution with log link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=228.
<sup>c</sup>$P$ values represent statistically significant results, $P<.05$.
<sup>d</sup>Model (response variable of lognormal distribution with identity link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=228.
<sup>e</sup>IPAQ: International Physical Activity Questionnaire (long version in Chinese).
<sup>f</sup>Model (response variable of lognormal distribution with identity link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=213.
<sup>g</sup>Model (response variable of lognormal distribution with identity link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=213.
<sup>h</sup>Model (response variable of lognormal distribution with identity link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=220.
<sup>i</sup>Model (response variable of lognormal distribution with identity link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=132.
<sup>j</sup>Model (response variable of multinomial distribution with cumulative logit link) included age, gender, education level, and occupational classification as covariates. Number of observations=228.
<sup>k</sup>SOC: Stage of Change.
Secondary Outcomes: Stage of Behavior Change and Anthropometric Characteristics

According to univariate analyses (Multimedia Appendix 5), there was a statistically significant difference between the 2 groups in the stage of change for dietary behaviors and physical activity at 6 months ($P<.001$) (Multimedia Appendix 5). A statistically significant difference between the 2 groups in the stage of change for dietary behaviors was also observed at 3 months ($P=.02$) (Multimedia Appendix 5).

Significant group $\times$ time interaction effects and significant main effects for time were both observed at 6 months in the stage of change for dietary behaviors and physical activity, as well as in anthropometric characteristics (ie, BMI and waist circumference) (Table 2 and Figure S2 in Multimedia Appendix 6). Significant main effects of the intervention were only observed in anthropometric characteristics (Table 2).

There were continuous, statistically significant changes in all secondary outcome measures in the intervention group (3 vs 0 months: diet SOC, $P<.001$; physical activity SOC, $P<.001$; BMI, $P<.001$; waist, $P<.001$; 6 vs 3 months: diet SOC, $P<.001$, physical activity SOC, $P<.001$; BMI, $P<.001$; waist, $P<0.01$). See Multimedia Appendix 3 for $\exp(\beta)$ and 95% CI values. Statistically significant changes in all secondary outcome measures were observed in the control group at 6 months (diet SOC: $P<.001$; physical activity SOC: $P<.001$; BMI: $P<.001$; waist: $P<.001$). $P$ values in this paragraph were adjusted.

There were significant between-group differences in the distribution of the stages of change for dietary behaviors and physical activity at 6 months; participants in the intervention group had a higher probability of being at higher stages for these behavior changes (diet SOC: $P=.002$; physical activity SOC: $P=.01$). See Multimedia Appendix 4 for $\exp(\beta)$ and 95% CI values. Significantly greater improvements were observed at 6 months in the probability of being at a higher stage of change in dietary behaviors ($P=0.002$) and physical activity ($P=0.003$). There was also a significantly greater decrease in anthropometric characteristics in the intervention group (BMI: $P<.001$; waist: $P<.001$). Additionally, the decrease in waist circumference was significantly greater in the intervention group than in the control group at 3 months ($P<.001$). Adjusted $P$ values were used in this paragraph.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study examined the effectiveness of DHealthBar in improving diet behaviors and physical activity for people at high risk for T2DM. TTM-based behavioral change techniques were applied during the research. Our findings show that this WeChat applet could be effective in inducing positive dietary changes and improving physical activity within a 6-month intervention period. Significant decreases in energy and macronutrient intake were found in both groups, but these decreases differed substantially between groups in energy, fat, and carbohydrate intake. In addition, considerable improvements over 6 months in total and light-intensity physical activity were found in both groups, with no substantial between-group differences. This social media intervention also showed positive effects on participants’ intentions to change these behaviors (measured using stages of behavior change) and anthropometric characteristics.

These improved outcomes are comparable to those of other mobile-based intervention studies that have shown favorable results in improving dietary behaviors and physical activity [33,40-42]. Regardless of the limitations of self-reported assessments, it was encouraging to find a continuous change in dietary behaviors and physical activity associated with the social media intervention. Furthermore, a high level of user engagement and retention was achieved within 6 months. We owe these benefits partly to the merits of the WeChat platform, which is wide reaching, cost-efficient, and easy to use. Shared by disparate populations, WeChat enables health educators to present complex content in the form of vivid graphics or videos, thus spreading health education content for the public in a feasible and accessible way [43]. Given the heavy burden resulting from the growing prevalence of T2DM and the fact that high-risk populations with sedentary lifestyles and dietary patterns rich in fat and refined carbohydrates are much more likely to develop diabetes and other chronic diseases associated with unhealthy lifestyles [1,4], it is plausible to adopt mobile-based approaches to facilitate the provision of behavioral interventions and increase the uptake with good scalability [5,44]. As such, our findings might be insightful for population-level delivery of diet change and physical activity improvement techniques for diabetes prevention, given the wide reach of social media interventions [5,43].

The significant decreases in daily energy and macronutrient intakes in both groups indicated that interventions incorporating behavior change theory and techniques tend to be effective. This observation was supported by previous randomized studies based on TTM behavior intervention strategies [19,20,41]. Changes in dietary macronutrient patterns were examined in this study, and a significant decrease in the proportion of fat intake was observed in the intervention group. Previous studies targeting dietary change have focused on the reduction of energy intake or the consumption of certain foods, such as vegetables, fruits, and low-fat milk [40,41,45]. Interestingly, to the best of our knowledge, few studies have focused on the effect of mHealth interventions on changes in macronutrient patterns. Therefore, this finding might be useful, as it suggests the potential of mHealth interventions to modify dietary macronutrient patterns, which have proved critical to weight loss and cardiovascular risk management [46].

Designed as an extension of DPP-based lifestyle interventions, DHealthBar provided the participants in the intervention group with behavioral support after baseline that was delivered through social media, whereas those in the control group underwent a completely self-guided behavior modification. There would be an enhancement in the efficacy of mHealth or eHealth interventions if they were provided with behavioral support or guidance from counselors either online or face to face, with an insight shared in conclusions related to diabetes prevention and other areas [47]. Consistent with this, a continuous improvement in dietary behaviors and physical activity was observed. In the control group, however, considerable heterogeneity existed in...
the effects over time, and the participants tended to relapse or stagnate after an immediate improvement (<3 months). DHealthBar, which was delivered through a social media platform, provided interaction between care providers and receivers. Since the push notifications with lifestyle instructions were available to all the participants in the intervention group, participants could comment below them. Researchers could be informed of the participant’s preferences and requests for educational content and improve the content accordingly as soon as possible.

Aligned with traditional mHealth interventions delivered through text messages, websites, or smartphone apps [33,40,42,48], behavior change techniques, including self-monitoring, goal setting, and tailored educational content and feedback, may have contributed to the effectiveness of the dietary change and physical activity intervention in this study. As a result of the self-report tools embedded in the WeChat platform, individuals could receive timely automated feedback to better understand their stage achievements and current status [48,49], thereby enhancing their engagement. In addition, some of the effects may have been due to the strengths inherent in social media, especially the sense of interpersonal connection, which is underlined as a key factor of the success of mHealth programs [50]. In the DHealthBar trial, a sense of community was created. Participants in the intervention arm were connected via a social network, where clustered peers concerned about the same health issue provided social and emotional support to each other in an online forum [11,41]. Additionally, they were encouraged to track their daily routines of food or exercise and post them as “moments” to receive appreciation and comments from others.

The positive effects of the social media intervention on physical activity were modest. A significant difference between the 2 groups, however, was observed in moderate-intensity physical activity improvement after 6 months, which is partly ascribed to sociodemographic factors. Most participants in this study were middle-aged and had relatively high socioeconomic indicators. The physical activity of middle-aged or older adults shares a strong pattern of high frequency and slow pace [51]. Accordingly, the exercise program recommended in this study tended to include items such as brisk walking, tai chi, and Chinese square dancing, whereas vigorous physical activity and muscle strength training were only mentioned occasionally. Despite the evidence that adults at higher socioeconomic levels are more likely to show greater engagement in physical activity, due to their improved health-related knowledge and skills [39,52], the type of activity was limited.

One of the strengths of this study was the theory-driven nature of the study design, which allowed the procedures of the intervention and evaluation to be relatively empirical. TTM-based behavioral intervention techniques sensitively measured the stages of change that participants underwent and precisely identified the fluctuations in participants’ intentions to change behaviors that were affected by dynamical barriers or facilitators. Hierarchical strategies could therefore be used according to the readiness of individuals [53]. Additionally, the progression of participants’ behavior improvement in this study kept pace with participants’ stage of change level. One explanation is that substantial change in actual behavior might partly be ascribed to interventions concerned with cognition and intention modification, which serve as critical mediators of actual behavioral change [54]. As previously claimed, the degree of motivation among participants is likely to influence results [52,55].

In this study, changes in anthropometric markers (ie, BMI and waist circumference decreases) were additional benefits in the context of an intensive behavior modification trial. This finding corresponds with the results from similar studies [41,56,57]. To maintain relatively low monetary and time costs, we included physiological measures, such as BMI and waist circumference, but not biochemical markers of physiological health. However, given the genetic and somatotype characteristics of diabetes in East Asia [58,59], as well as the probable independence of glycemic benefit from weight loss or behavior modification [40,41], it is plausible to further include biochemical markers associated with glycemic improvements to induce more indicative clinical outcomes [60].

We acknowledge several limitations of this study. First, our sample is limited in terms of both size and geographical coverage, which might attenuate the power and generalizability of our study. Second, due to initial financial resource limitations and the desire to maintain relatively low attrition by assuring participants’ active engagement within a reasonable period, this randomized trial lasted for only 6 months. Third, participants were not blinded to randomization; consequently, we could not exclude the social desirability bias, that is, whether the postassessments or stand-alone interventions acted as incentives to the participants to provide a positive response. Fourth, due to considerations of cost-effectiveness and convenience, self-reported questionnaires were used for data collection in this study [39], which achieved the additional goal of avoiding the potential burden resulting from wearable tracking tools [45]. Given the characteristics of our assessment tools, which had high reliability and validity, and the characteristics of our participants, who had high education levels, the confounding effect might be insignificant [61]. However, there is no denying that recall bias did exist, which may have resulted in an erroneous estimation of the association between behavior changes and interventions, as mentioned by previous studies [61,62]. Last, despite the strong evidence base for the TTM, substantial heterogeneity remains in the effects of health behavior interventions based on this model, which have not been confirmed uniformly [31,63].

In this study, we demonstrated the initial effect of DHealthBar, a mobile behavior intervention coupled with theory-driven instructions, on individuals recruited from a single region. Investigators in future studies should assess the effectiveness in more diverse socioeconomic contexts. In addition, the usage of this social media platform could be measured to obtain more insights into the participants’ perceptions of the intervention program. Furthermore, novel measurement tools could be included in the future to objectively measure the outcomes, under the condition of such tools being affordable and acceptable. Analyses of images and text on social media with health behavior tags might help health professionals obtain a better understanding of the modification procedure that the participants underwent and reveal potential clinical influences.
Future work should elucidate the “active ingredients” of the techniques, as well as effective ways to employ them, thus shedding light on the design of mHealth interventions.

**Conclusion**

DHealthBar was effective in promoting dietary behaviors and physical activity among populations at high risk for T2DM. Our findings, coupled with high engagement and retention, may suggest the strength of social media as a health behavior intervention delivery mode, inspiring further work on diet and physical activity promotion.

**Acknowledgments**

This research was supported by the Peking Union Medical College National College Students' innovation and entrepreneurship training program (2018Zgc0626), the China Medical Board Nursing Faculty Research Grant (13-168-201611), and the Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences (grant No. 2018-I2M-AI-016 and 2018PT33024).

The study required the efforts of a multidisciplinary research and development team. The authors would like to thank Professor Yanping Liu for providing nutrition consultation and Dr Liang Xu for providing computer expertise. The authors would like to thank all the participants in this study. The authors would also like to thank Peking Union Medical College Hospital for approving the participant recruitment and the provision of the venue.

**Authors’ Contributions**

ZX, Jing L, JG, SZ, and KZ conceived of and designed the study. ZX performed the statistical analysis and authored the manuscript with input from JG, SZ, KZ, Jing L, LY, and Jiao L. Jiao L conducted the workflow design and data analysis, LY and ZX worked on the data integration, and KZ assisted with data preprocessing and analysis. ZX, Jing L, Jiao L, JG, SZ, and KZ conducted the research procedure. Jing L contributed considerably to the theoretical framework construction and coordinated and directed all aspects of study conduction. ZX promoted the development of programs, supported the cloud server construction, and contributed to web design. Jiao L contributed to the DHealthBar workflow design and mHealth-related data analysis. JG, SZ, and KZ contributed significantly to providing behavioral improvement support for participants and offered suggestions for program development and data processing. ZX, JG, SZ, and KZ maintained the social media platform and collected data. Jing L, LY, and Jiao L supervised ZX, reviewed and revised the manuscript with valuable suggestions, and gave ZX oversight of the coaching and training. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

**Multimedia Appendix 1**

CONSORT EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).

**Multimedia Appendix 2**

TTM-based behavioral intervention strategies and contents.

**Multimedia Appendix 3**

Within-group comparisons of outcomes over the intervention period.

**Multimedia Appendix 4**

Between-group comparisons of outcomes over the intervention period.

**Multimedia Appendix 5**

Results for outcome measures at 3-month and 6-months follow-up assessments and univariate analyses.

**Multimedia Appendix 6**

Interaction plots of outcome measures.
References


Abbreviations

- **ADA**: American Diabetes Association
- **DPP**: Diabetes Prevention Program
- **FFQ25**: food frequency questionnaire 25
- **GLMM**: generalized linear mixed model
- **IPAQ**: International Physical Activity Questionnaire
- **MET**: metabolic equivalent of task
- **mHealth**: mobile health
- **SOC**: Stage of Change
- **T2DM**: type 2 diabetes mellitus
- **TTM**: transtheoretical model

©Zidu Xu, Ji Geng, Shuai Zhang, Kexin Zhang, Lin Yang, Jing Li, Jiao Li. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 03.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Abstract

Background: In the emerging era of digitalization and electronic health, various health-related apps have been launched, including apps for sexually transmitted diseases. Until now, little has been known about how patients perceive the value of such apps.

Objective: To investigate patient’s attitudes and awareness toward sexually transmitted disease–related apps in an outpatient sexually transmitted disease clinic setting.

Methods: A cross-sectional study was conducted at a dermatovenereological outpatient unit between April and July 2019. Patients completed a self-administered questionnaire on their perceptions of the popularity and usefulness of sexually transmitted disease–related apps. Descriptive analysis was performed with expression of categorical variables as frequencies and percentages. For continuous variables, the median, range, and interquartile range were indicated. Contingency tables and chi-square tests were used to investigate associations between sociodemographic data and items of the questionnaire.

Results: A total of 226 patients were surveyed (heterosexual: 137/193, 71.0%; homosexual: 44/193, 22.8%; bisexual: 12/193, 6.2%); 11.9% (27/225) had previously used health-related apps. Nearly half of the patients (97/214, 45.3%) specifically considered sexually transmitted disease–related apps useful, 47.8% (100/209) voted that they could supplement or support the consultation of a physician. Interestingly, only 35.1% (74/211) preferred a printed patient brochure on sexually transmitted diseases over downloading and using an app, but 64.0% (134/209) would download a sexually transmitted disease–related app recommended by their physician. General information regarding sexually transmitted diseases (93/167, 55.7%), evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos (78/167, 53.3%), information on the prevention of sexually transmitted diseases (76/167, 45.5%), mediation of nearby contact points or test sites (74/167, 44.3%), anonymous medical advice (69/167, 41.3%), and calculation of the risk of having a sexually transmitted disease (63/167, 37.3%) were rated as the most important features. Men were more likely than women to find sexually transmitted disease–related apps useful in general ($P=0.04; \chi^2=6.28$) and to pay for such apps ($P=0.01; \chi^2=9.19$). Patients aged <40 years would rather download an app recommended by their physician ($P=0.03; \chi^2=7.23$), whereas patients aged >40 years preferred reading a patient brochure on sexually transmitted diseases ($P=0.02; \chi^2=8.14$).
Conclusions: This study demonstrated high general interest in the use of sexually transmitted disease–related apps in this sample of dermatovenereological outpatients. In particular, young age and male sex were significantly associated with a positive perception, underlining the high potential of apps in the prevention and early recognition of sexually transmitted diseases in this group. Future studies are warranted to validate these findings in other populations.

doi:10.2196/16517

KEYWORDS
sexually transmitted diseases; sexually transmitted infection; mobile phone apps; health apps

Introduction
Mobile phones and tablets are being increasingly integrated into the daily lives of many people worldwide. Mobile health apps have a high potential to improve the quality and coverage of care; increase access to health information, services, and skills; as well as promote changes in health behaviors [1]. However, there is little regulatory control over the accuracy and medical validity of the information provided in apps [2]. Furthermore, privacy, moral, and ethical concerns have been raised [3,4]. Data extracted from digital health apps could be used to record, survey, monitor, influence, and discipline users [5].

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) represent a common but preventable cause for morbidity and serious medical complications. In our clinical experience, patients of STD clinics are usually young and especially prone to the use of modern technologies. Digital revolution did not only change their way of social interaction, in fact, in our clinical experience, it changed the risks associated with their sexual behavior, especially among men having sex with men. Meeting sex partners through geosocial networking apps is common among men having sex with men [6]. The use of internet- and app-based services, such as Grindr or Tinder, to facilitate sexual partnering is a known risk factor for the transmission of STDs and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) [7-10].

In response, many online dating apps have established standard notification methods to inform users of recent HIV or STD exposure [7,11]. Other functions of health apps in the context of STDs aim to ensure adherence to antiretroviral therapy medication in patients who are HIV-positive by reminding them of antiretroviral therapy intake, providing health care via video consultations (mobile telemedicine), or through self-test kits (home tests) for detection of STDs [12,13]. Other common features of STD-related apps include sexual health promotion and educational information on prevention of STDs [14].

Given the strong emergence of various STD-related health apps, it is crucial to comprehend their implication in daily life as well as to document user experience and perception of those tools from a patients’ perspective. However, until now, little was known about how patients perceive the value of such apps. Hence, we aimed to examine how patients from an STD clinic perceive mobile health apps for STDs with a cross-sectional study.

Methods
Design and Procedure
A cross-sectional study including patients from the dermatovenereological outpatient clinic of the dermatology and allergy department of the university hospital of Munich was conducted between April and July 2019. This study was approved by the institutional review board of the university hospital (Ludwig Maximilian University Munich; approval number 19-336 KB). We closely adhered to the STROBE statement for cross-sectional studies for the reporting of this study [15,16].

Setting, Participants, and Sampling
The dermatovenereological unit of the university hospital of Munich is a public outpatient clinic in downtown Munich, Germany. Munich represents a wealthy city with comparably low crime and drug use as well as high levels of education [17]. The unit mainly focuses on the diagnosis, treatment, and follow-up care of patients with sexually transmitted infections. Furthermore, patients with nonvenereal genital diseases such as candidiasis or chronic inflammatory dermatoses represent an important number of cases. These 2 patient groups are different in many ways. Patients presenting with STDs are most commonly young men having sex with men. In contrast, patients suffering from inflammatory diseases of the anogenital area are frequently postmenopausal women. During the period when the survey was conducted (April to July 2019), 969 individuals (1241 visits) presented to the unit, with a median age of 40.3 years, of which, 73.1% were male and 26.9% were female. The top 3 diagnoses using International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision (ICD-10) codes were HIV (B24.0; n=319), condyloma acuminata (n=190), and other STDs (A64.0; n=75). In that period, there were 104 patients with nonvenereal diseases that included multiple distinct diagnoses according to ICD-10 (L90.0, L30.9). All German-speaking adult patients (16 years or older) presenting to the unit were asked to complete a 3-page paper questionnaire by a physician (LJ, ZF, TP). Participation was voluntary, and all participants gave verbal informed consent in German before completing the questionnaire. The individual questions were not linked (i.e., individual questions could be skipped to continue with the questionnaire). Refusals were not documented, and no incentives were provided. The study population was a convenience sample.

Survey
As no validated survey tools for the objective of our study existed, the 3-page questionnaire was developed de novo based on a literature review and dermatovenereological expert
consulting, and included questions on STD-related apps and basic demographic information (age; gender; place of residence—town, suburb, or rural area; and education).

In a multiple-choice question format, patients were asked about the reason for presenting to the unit on the day of the assessment, their sexual orientation, and their sexual risk behavior. Other studies [18] that exclusively focus on STDs in a high-risk population have used criteria such as the number of condomless anal intercourse encounters as risk criteria for acquiring an STD. By considering the number of patients with noninfectious diseases of the anogenital area, we estimated that the individual risk level for STDs for those in our study population was moderate. We asked participants if they had changed partners or had a sexual disease recently. Thus, the sexual risk behavior was operationalized by the number of sexual partners in the previous 6 months. This value was decided by our clinical experience in this specific population. Other questions addressed previous use of health-, and specifically, STD-related apps, perceptions of the relevance of those apps, as well as concerns regarding digital security. These questions were dichotomous; however, patients could also state that they were unsure. The full questionnaire is available in Multimedia Appendix 1. It was validated by 10 healthy volunteers (4 male, 6 female) for clarity and comprehensibility, and 5 physicians assessed the questionnaire for clinical validity referring to an external benchmark study [12] that was similar in content to our investigation. Based on their feedback, the questionnaire was revised to its final form. Completed questionnaires were sequentially numbered for data entry purposes but were not linked to any identifying patient information to assure irreversible anonymity.

Data Analysis
Categorical variables were expressed as frequencies and percentages and were compared using 2-sided chi-square tests. \( P<.05 \) was considered statistically significant. For continuous variables, median, range, and interquartile range were reported. Statistical analyses were conducted with SPSS statistical software (version 25; IBM Corp).

Results
Characteristics of the Study Population
A total of 226 patients were included. Sociodemographic characteristics of the population are shown in Table 1.

The majority (75.2%, 170/226) presented with genital discomfort, which persisted for more than 6 weeks in 69.2% of patients (117/169). Additionally, most patients had already consulted a physician in person for their symptoms (124/162, 76.5%). Further reasons for presentation were examination for STDs (72/226, 31.9%), HIV treatment or consultation (20/226, 8.8%), skin cancer screening (16/226, 7.1%), or other (54/226, 23.9%).

The majority of patients had 0-2 different sex partners in the previous 6 months (126/176, 71.6%), and 28.4% (50/176) had more than 2 sex partners in the previous 6 months. Overall, 21.5% of patients had already been diagnosed with an STD prior to presentation (44/205). Regarding sexual orientation, patients were heterosexual (137/193, 71.0%), homosexual (44/193, 22.8%), or bisexual (12/193, 6.2%). Interestingly, 28.0% (58/207) had already made use of an app to arrange sexual encounters, underlining the moderate to high-risk sexual behavior of the study population (Table 1).
Table 1. Overview of the characteristics of the included patients in the cross-sectional study (N=226).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sex (n=210), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>49 (23.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>161 (76.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (in years; n=209)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>median (IQR)</td>
<td>37 (27-52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>16-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean (SD)</td>
<td>40.2 (15.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education (n=206), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University degree</td>
<td>67 (32.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General higher education entrance qualification</td>
<td>57 (27.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary school leaving certificate</td>
<td>47 (22.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower secondary school leaving certificate</td>
<td>28 (13.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other degree</td>
<td>1 (0.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No degree</td>
<td>6 (2.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Residence (n=210), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City or suburb</td>
<td>165 (78.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural area</td>
<td>45 (21.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reason for appointment (n=226, multiple answers possible), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination for STD</td>
<td>72 (31.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin cancer screening</td>
<td>16 (7.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV treatment or consultation</td>
<td>20 (8.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other reasons (eg, follow-up care)</td>
<td>54 (23.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genital discomfort</td>
<td>170 (75.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genital discomfort persisting for more than 6 weeks (n=169)</td>
<td>117 (69.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous consultation of a physician due to genital discomfort (n=162)</td>
<td>124 (76.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Previous diagnosis of an STD (≤6 months) (n=205), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>44 (21.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>161 (78.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sexual orientation (n=193), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterosexual</td>
<td>137 (71.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homosexual</td>
<td>44 (22.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisexual</td>
<td>12 (6.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of sex partners (≤6 months) (n=176), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-2 sex partners</td>
<td>126 (71.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;2 sex partners</td>
<td>50 (28.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Previous use of an app to arrange sexual encounters (n=207), n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>58 (28.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>149 (72.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Previous Experience With Health Apps**

In total, 34.1% (76/223) of the patients owned both a smartphone and a tablet, 59.6% (133/223) were owners of a smartphone only, and 2.2% (5/223) were owners of a tablet only. Only 4.0% (9/223) had none of these devices. Most of patients (184/226, 81.4%) had already searched the internet prior to this survey in order to obtain health-related information, and...
additionally, 72.0% (152/211) had searched the internet before to acquire information about the specific complaints for which they were visiting the clinic.

When asked about previous experience with health-related apps, 11.9% (27/225) had previously made use of such apps, whereas the overwhelming majority (194/225, 86.7%) denied or were unsure (3/225, 1.3%). Apps that had already been used by the patients had been provided by health insurance (DAK-Gesundheit, Allgemeine Ortskrankenkasse, Barmer Ersatzkasse, Techniker Krankenkasse) or had been health-tracking apps offered by Apple, Android, Runtastic (fitness-tracking app), or Garmin.

Most patients (110/166, 66.3%) rated scientifically reliable information as the most important feature for health-related apps. For 52.4% (87/166), credibility of the provider as well as data security were important, followed by user convenience (86/166, 51.8%) and continuous availability (78/166, 47.0%); 41.0% (68/166) and 27.1% (45/166) considered a low price and an attractive layout, respectively, as critical.

Attitude Toward STD-Related Apps

Nearly half of the patients (97/214, 45.3%) considered apps for patients with complaints in the intimate area or venereal diseases to be useful; 31.8% (68/214) and 22.9% (49/214) were unsure or thought that such apps were not useful for patients, respectively; and 47.8% (100/209) voted that STD-related apps could supplement or support the consultation of a physician, while 23.0% (48/209) were unsure. The vast majority did not believe that apps can replace the consultation by a physician (cannot be replaced: 184/209, 88.0%; unsure: 19/209, 9.1%). More than half of the patients (111/208, 53.4%) thought that apps can contribute to detecting diseases in the intimate area earlier. In addition, 46.9% of patients (98/209) were convinced that broad usage may reduce the spread of STDs (unsure: 67/209, 32.1%; cannot reduce the spread: 44/209, 21.1%). Furthermore, less than half of the patients did not agree with the statement that the broad use of such apps can save medical costs (disagree: 493/209, 4.5%; unsure: 61/209, 29.2%).

Interestingly, only 35.1% of patients (74/211) preferred a printed patient brochure on STDs over downloading and using an app. Half of the patients (104/207, 50.2%) had concerns about the unauthorized disclosure of information to third parties, while 30.4% (63/207) did not have concerns and 19.3% (40/207) were unsure. However, 64.0% of the patients (134/209) would download an STD-related app recommended by their physician, and only 22.9% (48/210) were willing to pay for services provided by an STD-related app (Figure 1).

We also asked the patients which app features they considered important for patients with complaints in the intimate area. The majority reported general information regarding STDs to be important (93/167, 55.7%), followed by the evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos (78/167, 47.0%), information on the prevention of STDs (45.5%76/167), mediation of nearby contact points or test sites (74/167, 44.3%), anonymous medical advice (69/167, 41.3%), and calculation of the risk of having an STD (63/167, 41.3%). Less than one-third of the patients found treatment plans with reminders for medication (46/167, 26.9%), mailing of test kits to be used at home (43/167, 25.7%), and verification of STD status of sexual partners or safe dating (24/167, 14.4%) to be relevant.
Figure 1. Patients' answers regarding their attitudes toward STD apps.

**Association Between Sociodemographic Data And Attitude Toward STD-Related Apps**

**Sex (Men Versus Women)**

In comparison to women, men were more likely to find STD-related apps useful in general \((P=.04; \chi^2=6.28)\). However, in terms of possible features, men were less frequently interested than women in apps on information about prevention of STDs \((P=.02; \chi^2=5.82)\). In our sample, more men than women agreed that STD-related apps can detect STDs earlier \((P<.001; \chi^2=15.72)\) and that medical costs can be saved \((P=.006; \chi^2=10.37)\). In addition, more men than women preferred reading a brochure on STDs over downloading an app \((P=.006; \chi^2=10.18)\). There was also an association between the willingness to pay for the services provided by an app and male sex \((P=.01; \chi^2=9.19)\)—men were more willing to pay than women were (Table 2).
Residents (City/Suburb Versus Rural Area)

Patients living in a city or suburb versus those living in rural areas agreed more frequently to the statements—STD-related apps can detect diseases in the intimate area earlier ($\chi^2=7.25$) and apps can contribute to saving medical costs ($\chi^2=6.75$). Furthermore, patients living in a city or suburb, compared to participants from rural areas, were more willing to pay for the services offered in such apps ($\chi^2=6.73$).

Age (<40 Years Versus ≥40 Years)

Patients <40 years of age considered an attractive layout ($\chi^2=4.25$), evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos ($\chi^2=8.498$), and mailing of test kits for home usage ($\chi^2=9.77$) as important features for STD apps more frequently than those >40 years of age. Additionally, patients <40 years were more likely to agree that diseases may be detected in a timely manner ($\chi^2=18.82$) and that medical costs can be saved through the usage of STD-related apps ($\chi^2=9.40$) than those >40 years of age. Furthermore, patients <40 years of age would rather download an app recommended by their physician instead of reading a printed brochure ($\chi^2=7.23$), whereas patients aged >40 years preferred reading a patient brochure on STDs instead of downloading an app ($\chi^2=8.14$).

Sexual Risk Behavior (0-2 Partners Versus >2 Partners in the Previous 6 Months)

Regarding preferred features of STD-related apps, evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos was chosen more frequently by patients with 0-2 sexual partners in the previous 6 months than it was chosen by those with >2 partners ($\chi^2=6.19$). In addition, patients with 0-2 sexual partners in the previous 6 months were more interested in home test kit mailing for STD self-tests ($\chi^2=4.38$) than those with >2 partners in the previous 6 months were. Patients with >2 partners were more interested in safe sex partner dating or verification of the STD status of the partner than those with 0-2 partners were ($\chi^2=8.86$).

Other Factors

Patients without an STD in the previous 6 months indicated more frequently that self-test kits for STDs ($\chi^2=8.05$) and individual STD risk assessment ($\chi^2=7.05$) were important features of STD apps compared to those with a recent STD. Patients who did not use apps to arrange sexual encounters chose the feature evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos ($\chi^2=11.797$) more frequently than those regularly using apps did. Mailing of test kits ($\chi^2=20.64$) was found to be crucial for those who had already made use of dating apps in the past than for those who had not used any apps.

Discussion

In recent years, scientists have evaluated many apps in the field of sexual health [14,19]. We believe it is necessary to ask the target groups of STD-related apps about all aspects of those digital services directly, to explore the patient perspective. The overall goal of this study was to explore the patient perspective of STD-related apps, and thus, to guide the further development of apps based on these identified patient-centered preferences.

We interviewed 226 patients, who presented to an outpatient STD clinic for various reasons, about their perception of STD-related apps. The study population was heterogeneous and included both women and men, with men being predominant. In our clinical experience, the proportion of men having sex with men was low compared to those of other STD clinics. This may be explained by the fact that this STD clinic belongs to the department of dermatology where many patients are treated with chronic inflammatory conditions or other primary nonvenereal diseases of the genital area. Nevertheless, 28.4% of the patients (126/417) reported more than 2 sexual partners in the previous 6 months, and 28.0% (58/207) indicated that they had already used an app at least once to make sexual
contacts. From these data, we conclude that the sexual behavior of the sample presented in this study is most likely to correspond to moderate to high risk for STDs.

To our knowledge, this is the first study to include an analog survey of patients seeking medical advice from a physician on their perception of the many aspects of digital health services regarding sexual health. In contrast to the focus of other studies [20,21], we did not focus exclusively on specific high-risk groups such as men having sex with men, individuals who are HIV-positive, or users of geosocial sexual networking apps but interviewed the patients regardless of their sexual orientation, HIV status, or internet expertise to gain a broad opinion of STD-related apps. We believe that this approach is necessary for 2 reasons. First, many existing STD apps are aimed at a broad usership. Second, in our experience, patients with genital discomfort usually do not know for themselves whether their complaints are due to an STD or some other nonsexually transmitted disease. In this study, we intended to encompass the perspective of these distinct patient groups.

Despite the fact that most of the patients surveyed in this study had no prior experience with health apps, the majority used the internet to get health information in general: 72% of the study population (152/211) affirmed that they had searched the internet for information about the specific complaint that they presented at the STD clinic and, additionally, 64.0% (134/209) indicated that they would download an STD app recommended by their physician. These findings demonstrate a great general interest of STD patients in acquiring digital health information before and after visiting a doctor. It also indicates that even if the vast majority did not believe that apps could replace a consultation by a physician, they would generally appreciate additional information.

There might be a group of patients with similar complaints who had looked up information on the internet, was satisfied, and thus never presented to the clinic, and therefore, was not represented in the study. However, surveys of physicians who offered app-based care for STD patients showed referral rates to clinics of almost 100% [12]. This and other studies [14,19] that evaluated a range of STD-related apps support the statements of our study population that mobile medical apps in the field of STDs do not replace visits to clinics and form an argument against the existence of this second unrepresented group.

Interestingly, despite the low experience of our study population with health apps, the majority preferred to obtain health information delivered via app over reading a patient brochure in contrast to the findings of other studies [22]. Thus, the results highlight the great potential for digital health app providers in targeting multiple patient groups with complaints in the genital area.

When questioned about important aspects of digital health apps, the most valued aspects were scientifically reliable information, followed by data security and a trustworthy provider. These items highlight the strong need for reliability and confidentiality. Of all functions, general information and the evaluation of skin diseases based on photos or videos were the features most frequently desired. We estimate that these features could be useful for both patients with STDs and patients with nonvenereal genital complaints. In contrast, functions to find partners for safe sex, home-based tests, and treatment plans with reminders of medication intake (eg, for antiretroviral therapy) were chosen less frequently. This could be due to the fact that high-risk groups such as men having sex with men or patients who are HIV-positive were relatively underrepresented in this population [20]. In particular, the choice of apps for safe sex partner dating and verification of the STD status of the partner was very significantly associated with the number of sexual contacts within the previous 6 months, highlighting that individual sexual behavior is closely related to desired target functions of the apps. In contrast, patients with fewer sexual partners within the previous 6 months were more interested in an evaluation and recognition of genital diseases, and especially, in home-based tests. These results underline the great interest of patients in an anonymous diagnosis or consultation without the necessity of a direct contact with a physician.

We are aware that this study has several limitations. The sample comprised 226 patients presenting to the venereological outpatient unit. First, this sample size is relatively small, and second, it was not sampled in a random fashion but depending on the availability of patients. The questionnaire has not been validated and was developed de novo. Thus, the questionnaire may lack validity and the results presented here may not be fully generalizable to other populations or other STD clinics and are at risk of sampling bias. Although the survey was anonymized, patients were likely known to the treating physicians, which may have altered the response in either direction, potentially biasing the results. The items of the questionnaire focused primarily on what patients might do outside of a clinic and did not include clinic-specific aspects such as communication with staff. Furthermore, this sample was a selection of patients physically presenting to the unit. Thus, the value and evaluation of STD-related apps among patients who did not present to seek STD consultation and treatment remains unclear. The response rate on the individual questions varied but was generally high. The question with the lowest response rate (77.9%) was the one about the number of sexual partners. This is consistent with other studies that investigated sexual risk behavior [20]. It could be due to the fact that participants perceive answering intimate questions as uncomfortable or, despite being assured anonymity, they are not sure about the confidential treatment of their data [18].

In our study population, men were generally more open to the use of STD-related apps than female patients. In comparison to female participants, men rated STD-related apps as more useful, cost-effective, and more reliable in early detection of STDs. Furthermore, they were more likely than females were to be willing to spend money for the services of an STD-related app. This may be explained by the gender disparity of our study population in terms of distribution of STDs and nonvenereal genital diseases. In our STD department, we observe predominantly male patients with STDs. Furthermore, we tend to have more female patients presenting with nonvenereal genital inflammatory diseases. This perception is consistent with epidemiologic data on the sex distribution of STDs in Germany [23]. Gender disparity in the distribution of STDs could be a
reason for the higher interest of male participants in STD-related apps in general, but could it possibly explain why, in this study, men showed significantly less interest in apps with information on prevention of STDs than women? Higher sexual risk behavior might be associated with a lack of interest in prevention of STDs. We believe these data underline the hypothesis that women and men as well as specific risk groups should be addressed individually with tailored information in order to achieve a higher engagement in adopting preventive behavior. Further studies are needed in order to improve future STD prevention and information efforts and to validate our findings in other populations.

Conflicts of Interest

TJB is the owner of Smart Health Heidelberg GmbH which provides the STD-triage app Intimarzt. LF has consulted and given lectures for Galderma, Janssen, Leo Pharma, Eli Lilly, Abbvie, Amgen and Novartis.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Original questionnaire.

References


Abbreviations

HIV: human immunodeficiency virus
ICD-10: International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision
STD: sexually transmitted disease
STROBE: Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology
Review

Standalone Smartphone Cognitive Behavioral Therapy–Based Ecological Momentary Interventions to Increase Mental Health: Narrative Review

Marta Anna Marciniak1, MSc; Lilly Shanahan2, PhD; Judith Rohde1, MD; Ava Schulz1, PhD; Carolin Wackerhagen3, PhD; Dorota Kobyliryska4, PhD; Oliver Tuescher5, MD; Harald Binder5, PhD; Henrik Walter1, MD; Raffael Kalisch5, PhD; Birgit Kleim1, PhD

1University of Zurich, Psychiatric University Hospital, Zurich, Switzerland
2Jacobs Centre of Productive Youth Development, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland
3Charité Berlin Universitätsmedizin, Berlin, Germany
4University of Warsaw, Warsaw, Poland
5Gutenberg University Medical Center, Mainz, Germany
6Institute for Medical Biometry and Statistics, Faculty of Medicine, University of Freiburg, Freiburg, Germany

Corresponding Author:
Birgit Kleim, PhD
University of Zurich
Psychiatric University Hospital
Lenggstrasse 31
Zurich, 8032
Switzerland
Phone: 41 44 384 23 51
Email: birgit.kleim@uzh.ch

Abstract

Background: A growing number of psychological interventions are delivered via smartphones with the aim of increasing the efficacy and effectiveness of these treatments and providing scalable access to interventions for improving mental health. Most of the scientifically tested apps are based on cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) principles, which are considered the gold standard for the treatment of most mental health problems.

Objective: This review investigates standalone smartphone-based ecological momentary interventions (EMIs) built on principles derived from CBT that aim to improve mental health.

Methods: We searched the MEDLINE, PsycINFO, EMBASE, and PubMed databases for peer-reviewed studies published between January 1, 2007, and January 15, 2020. We included studies focusing on standalone app-based approaches to improve mental health and their feasibility, efficacy, or effectiveness. Both within- and between-group designs and studies with both healthy and clinical samples were included. Blended interventions, for example, app-based treatments in combination with psychotherapy, were not included. Selected studies were evaluated in terms of their design, that is, choice of the control condition, sample characteristics, EMI content, EMI delivery characteristics, feasibility, efficacy, and effectiveness. The latter was defined in terms of improvement in the primary outcomes used in the studies.

Results: A total of 26 studies were selected. The results show that EMIs based on CBT principles can be successfully delivered, significantly increase well-being among users, and reduce mental health symptoms. Standalone EMIs were rated as helpful (mean 70.8%, SD 15.3; n=4 studies) and satisfying for users (mean 72.6%, SD 17.2; n=7 studies).

Conclusions: Study quality was heterogeneous, and feasibility was often not reported in the reviewed studies, thus limiting the conclusions that can be drawn from the existing data. Together, the studies show that EMIs may help increase mental health and thus support individuals in their daily lives. Such EMIs provide readily available, scalable, and evidence-based mental health support. These characteristics appear crucial in the context of a global crisis such as the COVID-19 pandemic but may also help reduce personal and economic costs of mental health impairment beyond this situation or in the context of potential future pandemics.
Introduction

Prevalence of Psychiatric Disorders

Heightened prevalence of psychiatric disorders is one of the largest challenges for modern health care. In 2001, the World Health Organization (WHO) estimated that 1 in every 4 individuals worldwide was affected by one or more mental or neurological health problems during their lives [1]. Prospective longitudinal studies suggest that the vast majority of people will have a mental health disorder at some point in their lives [2,3]. In 2017, >970 million people were diagnosed with mental or substance use disorders [4]. These numbers likely represent a gross underestimate because of underreporting for fear of stigma or limited mental health literacy, limited access to therapy services, high costs of treatment, and additional reasons, such as recent conditions caused by the COVID-19 outbreak.

The global COVID-19 pandemic is likely to further increase the need for mental health care interventions and new ways of implementing them. Global pandemics cause high levels of stress and may lead to mental health problems, such as depression, anger, anxiety disorders, and posttraumatic stress disorder, as well as an increase in smoking and alcohol consumption [5,6]. Current measures of physical distancing and quarantine aimed at curbing the spread of COVID-19 likely have additional detrimental psychological side effects, including loneliness [7]. At the same time, people are considerably less likely to receive professional face-to-face psychological help to overcome their fears, lowered mood, and other mental health problems [8].

Given the low detection rates of mental health problems, the WHO estimates that 76% to 85% of people in low- and middle-income countries and 35% to 50% of people in high-income countries receive no treatment for their mental health disorder [9]. After the pandemic is over, these numbers will be even higher. Moreover, those who seek treatment often do so only years into the mental disease, meaning that comorbid disorders and difficulties in many domains of life, including family and work, have already developed [10].

Ecological Momentary Interventions

The rapid growth in the use of smartphones has created a new branch of medicine—mobile health (mHealth). Currently, the most popular solutions in mHealth are mobile apps because they are easy to use and are widely available [11]. Such apps typically use ecological momentary intervention (EMI) to deliver treatments provided to people in their everyday lives [12]. This approach captures and modifies specific moment-to-moment situations that emerge in the real world rather than targeting problematic thoughts, emotions, and behaviors within therapy sessions or in the hospital [13,14].

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

Most of the scientifically tested apps are based on cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) principles. CBT was first created and established by Beck [15] and Ellis [16] and is based on the theory that maladaptive cognitions, such as general beliefs and automatic thoughts about the self and the world, contribute to the maintenance of emotional distress and behavioral problems. Accordingly, CBT specifically targets these maladaptive cognitions and behaviors. CBT is one of the most extensively used and researched form of psychotherapy [17] and is considered the gold standard for the treatment of many mental health problems [18]. Owing to their strong empirical foundation and clear structure, CBT-based interventions are well suited for application in mHealth. Here, we examine mobile apps that have been designed using a rational app design. With this definition, we refer to apps that are based on a CBT rationale and implement established and empirically validated CBT tools and techniques.

Objectives

Several reviews and meta-analyses reported the efficacy of EMIs for several mental health problems, including depression, anxiety, perceived stress, and eating disorders [12,19-23], but they were not focused solely on CBT-based interventions. Other reviews have focused on or have not excluded blended treatments such as face-to-face psychotherapy in combination with an app [24,25]. However, to the best of our knowledge, there are currently no reviews on the efficacy, effectiveness, and feasibility of standalone EMIs delivered via mobile apps and following a rational app design, in both healthy and clinical populations. However, the rapid development of this type of psychological support and recent pandemic-quarantine circumstances have created an urgent need for a comprehensive summary of the studies published so far.

Methods

Search Strategy

To build a comprehensive overview of the existing literature, 4 search terms were used to identify articles: (1) mental health, (2) smartphones, (3) CBT, and (4) ecological momentary interventions (see Multimedia Appendix 1 for the complete search strings) in the MEDLINE, PsycINFO, EMBASE, and PubMed databases on January 16, 2020.

Inclusion Criteria

The following criteria were used to select the studies: (1) peer-reviewed publications; (2) written in English; (3) published between January 1, 2007, and January 15, 2020; (4) standalone treatments (blended interventions were excluded); (5) explicitly aiming to increase mental health; and (6) focusing on feasibility, efficacy, and/or effectiveness of EMI. Both within- and
between-group designs and studies with both healthy and clinical samples were included.

The time range was decided based on the launch date of the first App Store in 2007. This means that the review proposes an overview of presumably all the papers published since the development of the field started.

Quality Assessment

For selected studies, we assessed the methodological risk of bias of included studies in accordance with the Cochrane Handbook [26] and the guidelines of the Cochrane Consumers and Communication Review Group [27], which recommends the explicit reporting of the following individual elements for the studies: random sequence generation, allocation sequence concealment, blinding (participants and personnel), blinding (outcome assessment), completeness of outcome data, selective outcome reporting, and other sources of bias. Overall, from the 14 randomized controlled trials (RCTs) included, 8 were rated as low risk and 6 as medium risk. From the remaining 12 non-RCT studies, 11 were rated as medium risk and 1 as high risk. The inter-rater reliability was 96%. Owing to the small number of studies fulfilling the inclusion criteria, we decided to keep the study with high risk in the review.

Data Extraction

Data extraction included (1) study design; (2) choice of the control condition; (3) sample characteristics in terms of sample size and justification of the size in power analysis, gender ratio, age, and mental health problems; (4) content of EMI in terms of specific CBT strategies; (5) EMI delivery characteristics in terms of mode, duration, and frequency; (6) feasibility in terms of acceptance, satisfaction, and helpfulness rates; (6) efficacy or effectiveness in terms of improvement in primary outcomes; and (7) outcome measures used in the studies.

Analysis

Owing to the heterogeneity of the designs and objectives of the included studies, quantitative analysis was possible only in a few cases, for instance, for sample characteristics, delivery characteristics, and feasibility measures. However, in many aspects, such as effectiveness and effectiveness measures, quantitative analysis was not possible and, instead, a narrative approach for the summary of the qualitative findings was chosen.

Results

Included Studies

Inclusion criteria resulted in the identification of 26 articles (see Figure 1 for the complete literature flow chart). Of those, 3 [28-30] described the outcomes of 1 trial. For this particular trial, we only included data from the latest publication to avoid bias or duplication. Thus, our results are based on n=24 studies.
Study Design and Control Conditions

A variety of study designs were employed to investigate the effects of EMI: 2-, 3-, or 4-armed RCTs (12 studies [30-41]) as well as a nonrandomized trial with a control group (1 study [42]) for between-group comparisons or case studies and 1-group-only studies (11 studies [43-53]) for within-group or intraindividual comparisons (Table 1). Control conditions were selected based on the research questions of a given study. The control conditions in the studies reviewed here include (1) another app with different content (8 studies), (2) a waiting list (4 studies), (3) ecological momentary assessment (EMA)—participants were involved in self-monitoring only (2 studies), (4) encouragement to visit helpful websites or call hotlines (2 studies), (5) computer-based treatment (the same content of the intervention but delivered via internet browser; 1 study), (6) real-life training provided by a qualified person (eg, meditation training; 1 study), and (7) treatment as usual (1 study).
### Table 1. Summary of the study design and control conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Names of apps</th>
<th>RCT(^a)</th>
<th>Number of arms</th>
<th>Control condition</th>
<th>Type of control condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arevian et al, 2018 [43]</td>
<td>B-RESILIENT app</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker et al, 2018 [32]</td>
<td>Mood Prism, Mood Mission, Mood Kit</td>
<td>✓(^c) 4</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA(^d), AA, WL(^e)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birney et al, 2016 [31]</td>
<td>Mood Hacker</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA (^f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christoforou et al, 2017 [33]</td>
<td>Agoraphobia Free, Stress Free</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA (^g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahne et al, 2019 [34]</td>
<td>¡Aptivate!, iCouch CBT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA, TAU(^h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donker et al, 2019 [35]</td>
<td>ZeroPhobia</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>WL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donovan et al, 2016 [44]</td>
<td>BodiMojo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horsch et al, 2017 [36]</td>
<td>Sleepcare app</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>WL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hur et al, 2018 [37]</td>
<td>Todac Todac app</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>EMA(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al, 2018 [38]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA, WL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al, 2010 [47]</td>
<td>Mood Map</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison Wylde et al, 2017 [48]</td>
<td>Headspace</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>RLT(^i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prada et al, 2016 [49]</td>
<td>EMOTE O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roncero et al, 2018 [50]</td>
<td>GGRO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlosser et al, 2018 [42]</td>
<td>PRIME-D</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>AA, AA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrier et al, 2017 [52]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoll et al, 2017 [51]</td>
<td>REACH app</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis et al, 2018 [40]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>WL, EMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts et al, 2013 [41]</td>
<td>Get Happy</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>C(^j)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wen et al, 2017 [53]</td>
<td>Headspace</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) RCT: randomized controlled trial.
\(^b\) Not applicable or no information.
\(^c\) Used in the study design.
\(^d\) AA: another app with different content.
\(^e\) WL: waiting list.
\(^f\) E: encouragement to visit helpful websites or call hotline in case of a difficult situation.
\(^g\) TAU: treatment as usual.
\(^h\) EMA: app with ecological momentary assessment.
\(^i\) RLT: real-life training with a qualified person.
\(^j\) C: computer-based treatment.

### Target Populations and Mental Health Problems

EMIs were implemented in nonclinical populations, including healthy participants, and participants with subthreshold symptoms of a mental disorder (10 studies). In these studies, EMIs aimed to tackle a variety of problems, including high self-criticism or high levels of stress in the workplace (eg, of medical doctors, novice nurses, and corporation workers), all of which were assumed to increase the risk of developing a mental health disorder. In additional studies with healthy populations, EMIs addressed subthreshold posttraumatic stress disorder. EMIs were also implemented for the treatment of mental health issues in clinical populations (14 studies), including patients with depression, insomnia, bipolar disorder, schizophrenia, alcohol addiction, borderline personality, agoraphobia, or obsessive-compulsive disorder (Table 2).
Table 2. Sample characteristics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Final sample size (n)</th>
<th>Power analysis</th>
<th>Age (years), mean (SD)</th>
<th>Age (years), median (IQR)</th>
<th>Gender (female %)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arevian et al, 2018 [43]</td>
<td>Healthy</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td>18+</td>
<td></td>
<td>40 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker et al, 2018 [32]</td>
<td>Healthy and subthreshold depression and anxiety in screening</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>18-76</td>
<td>34.2 (14.2)</td>
<td>72.7 (144)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birney et al, 2016 [31]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christoforou et al, 2017 [33]</td>
<td>Clinical: agoraphobia</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahne et al, 2019 [34]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>36.05 (11.44)</td>
<td>67 (28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donovan et al, 2016 [44]</td>
<td>Healthy</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td>13-22</td>
<td>16.9 (1.3)</td>
<td>65 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulin et al, 2014 [45]</td>
<td>Clinical: alcohol use disorder</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td>22-45</td>
<td>33.6 (5.6)</td>
<td>46 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidalgo-Mazzei et al, 2018 [46]</td>
<td>Clinical: bipolar disorder</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>36.59 (11)</td>
<td>63.2 (65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hur et al, 2018 [37]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td>18-35</td>
<td>23.71 (3.26)</td>
<td>88 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al, 2018 [38]</td>
<td>Healthy: high self-criticism</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
<td>18-52</td>
<td>22.76 (7.02)</td>
<td>69 (60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al, 2010 [47]</td>
<td>Healthy: high level of stress</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>30-48</td>
<td>37 (5.75)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prada et al, 2016 [49]</td>
<td>Clinical: borderline</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td>18-50</td>
<td>30.5 (93)</td>
<td>100 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratap et al, 2018 [30]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>345</td>
<td></td>
<td>18-70</td>
<td>34.9 (10.72)</td>
<td>77.1 (266)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlosser et al, 2018 [42]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>31.33 (12.4)</td>
<td>78 (28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrier et al, 2017 [52]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-23</td>
<td>19.6 (—)</td>
<td>100 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoll et al, 2017 [51]</td>
<td>Healthy</td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>9.65 (0.82)</td>
<td>62.9 (83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis et al, 2018 [40]</td>
<td>Healthy: high level of stress</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts et al, 2013 [41]</td>
<td>Clinical: depression</td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
<td>18-63</td>
<td>41 (12.38)</td>
<td>80 (28)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a No information.  
b Power analysis was conducted.  
c PTSD: posttraumatic stress disorder.

Sample sizes varied widely, from n=8 to n=348. Seven studies reported a power analysis to justify their sample size. The age range varied from 8 to 80 years. Over one-third of the studies did not report the age range of participants, informing only that they were aged 18 years or older. Five studies did not report the sex composition of their sample. Those that did included a majority (>70%) of female participants. This was due, in part, to the populations of interest. For instance, 1 study was conducted in novice nurses—a profession that is dominated by women. Two other studies included only women. In summary, the sample characteristics of current EMI studies are heterogeneous, and the quality of sample descriptions varies widely across studies.

Content
Cognitive behavioral techniques provide a range of possible interventions that address diverse and complex patient needs [54]. CBT comprises techniques addressing psychological mechanisms that underpin negative and potentially harmful thoughts and beliefs (eg, reflection and cognitive restructuring) and actions (eg, behavioral activation or social skills training) endorsed by patients. The most frequently used CBT strategies were cognitive restructuring, including reappraisal (14 studies), self-monitoring (13 studies), reflection (10 studies), and relaxation (8 studies). Cognitive restructuring identifies and changes the maladaptive thoughts and beliefs and reevaluates a given situation [15].
Self-monitoring is usually implemented in apps that contain an EMA module and is often described as a key component of successful therapy for many mental health conditions [55,56]. By getting access to their self-reported data, users become self-aware; manage their symptoms; better understand their mood, behavior, or illness; and work on these factors of mental well-being. Reflection is a metacognitive process that allows an individual to increase his or her psychological mindedness and another central process in CBT [57,58]. The reflection process requires the user to look at her or his experiences from a distance and often poses a starting point for many other therapeutic strategies (eg, reappraisal and gratitude). In addition, reflection was used, for instance, as an outcome of self-monitoring [37,44].

The use of digital technologies opens a new door to deliver CBT strategies. Apart from basic solutions, such as sending messages [52] or text-based scenarios [37,50], novel approaches were employed in the reviewed studies. For instance, reflection and cognitive restructuring were presented in a fabular comic story of the main character who had depression [41]. A similar solution was employed in the Agoraphobia free app, which was game based and presented a virtual character who needed to meet the virtual therapist to work on reflection and cognitive restructuring [33]. Relaxation and meditation exercises were delivered via audio and video tools [49,53]. Self-monitoring outcomes were presented, for instance, as mood cloud, providing a visual representation of the participant's self-reported mood [44], or in a calendar view, to allow the user to track their behavior day-by-day or even hour-by-hour [36]. One novel solution combines a mobile app with virtual reality (VR) to treat acrophobia with exposure [35] or a platform allowing users to contact each other to provide social support that enhances behavioral activation [42]. All apps in the studies reviewed here used more than one strategy to improve mental health (Table 3).
Table 3. Cognitive behavioral therapy techniques implemented in ecological momentary interventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>BA(^a)</th>
<th>CR(^b)</th>
<th>DF(^c)</th>
<th>DSC(^d)</th>
<th>DST(^e)</th>
<th>EXP(^f)</th>
<th>MDF(^g)</th>
<th>PS(^h)</th>
<th>PE(^i)</th>
<th>RF(^j)</th>
<th>RLX(^k)</th>
<th>SMN(^l)</th>
<th>SST(^m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arevian et al, 2018 [43]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker et al, 2018 [32](^p)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birney et al, 2016 [31]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christofofou et al, 2017 [33]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahne et al, 2019 [34]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donker et al, 2019 [35](^p)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donovan et al, 2016 [44]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hur et al, 2018 [37]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al, 2018 [38]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al, 2010 [47]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prada et al, 2016 [49]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roncero et al, 2018 [50]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlosser et al, 2018 [42]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrier et al, 2017 [52]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoll et al, 2017 [51]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis et al, 2018 [40]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts et al, 2013 [41]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wen et al, 2017 [53]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\)BA: behavioral activation.  
\(^{b}\)CR: cognitive restructuring, including reappraisal.  
\(^{c}\)DF: defusion.  
\(^{d}\)DSC: distancing.  
\(^{e}\)DST: distraction.  
\(^{f}\)EXP: exposure.  
\(^{g}\)MDF: mindfulness.  
\(^{h}\)PS: problem solving.  
\(^{i}\)PE: psychoeducation.  
\(^{j}\)RF: reflection.  
\(^{k}\)RLX: relaxation.  
\(^{l}\)SMN: self-monitoring.  
\(^{m}\)SST: social skills training.  
\(^{n}\)Technique not implemented in the ecological momentary intervention.  
\(^{o}\)Technique implemented in the ecological momentary intervention.  
\(^{p}\)Insufficient information was provided—probably more modules were implemented.  

**Delivery**  
The most common way to deliver EMIs on a smartphone is a mobile app, but ever-growing possibilities are emerging with technological advances. For example, mobile apps can be combined with wristbands to track indicators of physiological function (eg, heartbeat), GPS to track geolocation, or VR. The duration of interventions ranged from 2 weeks to 6 months, with a median of 30 days. A frequent option was to send prompts...
to remind participants either about using EMI or about completing the EMA (17 studies). The number of prompts with EMA or reminders varied from 5 per day to once every week (Table 4). In 4 apps, prompts were sent only when the participant forgot to use the app for a longer, predefined period. Another way to deliver EMIs was to allow participants to use them anytime they needed to or once per day.

Table 4. Characteristics of ecological momentary intervention delivery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Intervention duration in days</th>
<th>Prompts sent</th>
<th>Number of prompts per day</th>
<th>Trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arevian et al, 2018</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Time based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker et al, 2018</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>✓ 1/3</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birney et al, 2016</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christoforou et al, 2017</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>N/I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahne et al, 2019</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donker et al, 2019</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donovan et al, 2016</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulin et al, 2014</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidalgo-Mazzei et al, 2018</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>EMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horsch et al, 2017</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1 AL</td>
<td>Depending on data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hur et al, 2018</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>0.5 ANU</td>
<td>EMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al, 2018</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al, 2010</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison Wylde et al, 2017</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prada et al, 2016</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratap et al, 2018</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roncero et al, 2018</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy et al, 2015</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Depending on data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlosser et al, 2018</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrier et al, 2017</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoll et al, 2017</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis et al, 2018</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts et al, 2013</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wen et al, 2017</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Participant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prompts were sent by ecological momentary intervention.

1/3: in 1 of the 3 apps introduced in the study (when not marked, all apps introduced in the study were sending beeps).

N/I: no information.

N/A: not applicable.

EMA: ecological momentary assessment.

AL: at least (depending on participants’ reports).

Depending on data: depending on participants’ report other than ecological momentary assessment (eg, sleep hygiene).

ANU: beeps were sent only when app was not used.

Triggers can be divided into 3 categories: time based, event based, and randomized within a specific time frame. In 10 studies, event-based triggers were employed to allow participants to trigger EMI themselves. For example, participants were instructed to use the app anytime they felt they might benefit from the EMI (Table 4). Another trigger from this category was EMA (used in 2 studies): when problems or symptoms were reported (eg, low mood or above-threshold stress level), the participant received an EMI. This just-in-time adaptive intervention (JITAI) aims to provide the right type or amount of support, at the right time, by adapting to an individual’s changing internal and contextual state [59]. Four studies used randomized prompt-sending as an EMI trigger to avoid prepared answers from participants. One app sent prompts every morning.

The EMI frequency varied among studies. The range of the frequency of EMI delivery was from 3 times per day to once...
per week. Four studies did not report the number of delivered EMIs.

Taken together, the frequency, triggers, and duration of the intervention varied and depended on the target group, targeted problem, and CBT techniques implemented. A few studies did not report this information, including default or the average number of prompts per participant or duration of intervention for different participants.

**Feasibility**

For this review, feasibility was indexed by compliance rate and participants’ satisfaction with the intervention.

Compliance reporting was variable. First, the definition of compliance differed across studies. Some researchers reported how many training sessions participants completed, how many prompts participants answered, or the number of participants who did not drop out of the study. Others set thresholds, such as reacting to at least one or two prompts and subsequently excluded all participants with lower adherence. For the purpose of this review, we defined *compliance rate* as the number of reactions to prompts. Nineteen studies did not report compliance. None of the studies with healthy samples reported compliance rates.

In other studies, compliance ranged from 33.8% to 93.3% (7 studies; mean 64, SD 22). There was no relationship between compliance rate and duration as well as the overall time cost of the intervention. For instance, one study reported a compliance rate of 55.6% for a 15-day intervention with 1 prompt per day [47], and another reported a compliance rate of 33.8% for a 168-day intervention with 1 prompt per day [43], whereas other studies reported a compliance rate of 90.5% for a 56-day intervention with 1 prompt per week [31] or a compliance rate of 93.3% for a 42-day intervention with 1 prompt per day [28].

All studies with higher than average compliance rates included participants with depression. Lower compliance rates were reported in a study of participants with bipolar disorder. Satisfaction and helpfulness rates were underreported (satisfaction was reported in 7 studies and helpfulness in 4 studies) but rated positively (mean perceived satisfaction 72.6%, SD 17.2 and mean perceived helpfulness 70.8%, SD 15.3). Helpfulness was rated highest by individuals with borderline personality disorder and healthy samples with high self-criticism. Healthy populations, especially adolescents, were generally more satisfied with the EMIs compared with clinical populations (Table 5). The least satisfied were users with bipolar disorder; however, only 1 study was conducted on such a sample. Discrepancies were found in satisfaction rates reported by depressed samples, ranging from 46% and 54% (which were the lowest reported rates) to 91.8% (which was one of the highest rates). However, only 3 of 7 studies that delivered EMI to depressed populations reported these numbers.
Table 5. Feasibility, efficacy, and effectiveness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Compliance in %</th>
<th>Helpfulness in %</th>
<th>Satisfaction in %</th>
<th>Primary outcome measure</th>
<th>Improvement in primary outcome</th>
<th>Secondary outcome measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arevian et al, 2018 [43]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PHQ&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;, GAD&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;, WEMWBS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>ESAS-R&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;, CSES&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;, MHLQ&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakker et al, 2018 [32]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PHQ</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>BADS&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;, ATQ-R&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;, KT&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birney et al, 2016 [31]</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christoforou et al, 2017 [33]</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PAS&lt;sup&gt;k&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahne et al, 2019 [34]</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PHQ</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donker et al, 2019 [35]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>AQ&lt;sup&gt;n&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>ATHQ&lt;sup&gt;o&lt;/sup&gt;, BDI-II&lt;sup&gt;p&lt;/sup&gt;, IPQ&lt;sup&gt;q&lt;/sup&gt;, PHQ, M'&lt;sup&gt;r&lt;/sup&gt;, SUS&lt;sup&gt;s&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donovan et al, 2016 [44]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulin et al, 2014 [45]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>TLFB&lt;sup&gt;t&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidalgo-Mazzei et al, 2018 [46]&lt;sup&gt;u&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>WHO-5&lt;sup&gt;v&lt;/sup&gt;, SF-36&lt;sup&gt;w&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horsch et al, 2017 [36]</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ISI&lt;sup&gt;x&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>PSQI&lt;sup&gt;y&lt;/sup&gt;, DBAS-16&lt;sup&gt;z&lt;/sup&gt;, HADS&lt;sup&gt;aa&lt;/sup&gt;, CES-D&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hur et al, 2018 [37]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>DAS&lt;sup&gt;ac&lt;/sup&gt;, BDI-II, STA&lt;sup&gt;ad&lt;/sup&gt;, RSES&lt;sup&gt;ae&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>QoL&lt;sup&gt;af&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al, 2018 [38]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>78 and 83</td>
<td>81 and 81</td>
<td>FSCRS&lt;sup&gt;ag&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>DASS&lt;sup&gt;ah&lt;/sup&gt;, WSAS&lt;sup&gt;ai&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al, 2010 [47]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>I&lt;sup&gt;bj&lt;/sup&gt;, EMASS&lt;sup&gt;ak&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison Wyld et al, 2017 [48]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>CFST&lt;sup&gt;al&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>LEC&lt;sup&gt;am&lt;/sup&gt;, PCL-C&lt;sup&gt;an&lt;/sup&gt;, FFMQ&lt;sup&gt;ao&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prada et al, 2016 [49]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>EMAAT&lt;sup&gt;ap&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratap et al, 2018 [30]&lt;sup&gt;u&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PHQ, SDS&lt;sup&gt;aq&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roncero et al, 2018 [50]</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>OCT-R&lt;sup&gt;as&lt;/sup&gt;, OBQ&lt;sup&gt;at&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>ROCT&lt;sup&gt;at&lt;/sup&gt;, PROC-S&lt;sup&gt;au&lt;/sup&gt;, DASS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy et al, 2015 [39]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PCL&lt;sup&gt;aw&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>PHQ, GAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlosser et al, 2018 [42]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>PHQ, SDS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrier et al, 2017 [52]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoll et al, 2017 [51]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versluis et al, 2018 [40]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>HR&lt;sup&gt;ax&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>IPANAT&lt;sup&gt;ay&lt;/sup&gt;, IAT&lt;sup&gt;az&lt;/sup&gt;, ERI&lt;sup&gt;ba&lt;/sup&gt;, PSWQ&lt;sup&gt;bb&lt;/sup&gt;, GAD, PHQ, FFMQ, CEQ&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;, EMASE&lt;sup&gt;bd&lt;/sup&gt;, F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts et al, 2013 [41]</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>PHQ</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>K-10&lt;sup&gt;be&lt;/sup&gt;, BDI-II, CEQ, SDS, ERS&lt;sup&gt;xf&lt;/sup&gt;, HRS&lt;sup&gt;yi&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> K-10<sup>be</sup>, BDI-II, CEQ, SDS, ERS<sup>xf</sup>, HRS<sup>yi</sup>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Compliance in %</th>
<th>Helpfulness in %</th>
<th>Satisfaction in %</th>
<th>Primary outcome measure</th>
<th>Improvement in primary outcome</th>
<th>Secondary outcome measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wen et al, 2017 [53]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>PANAS&lt;sup&gt;bi&lt;/sup&gt;, FMI&lt;sup&gt;bi&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>No information.
<sup>b</sup>PHQ: Patient Health Questionnaire.
<sup>c</sup>GAD: Generalized Anxiety Disorder Scale.
<sup>d</sup>WEMWBS: Warwick-Edinburgh Mental Well-Being Scale.
<sup>e</sup>Study with improvement in the primary outcomes. Improvement in primary outcomes = results statistically significant in at least one measure of the primary outcomes.
<sup>f</sup>ESAS-R: Emotional Self-Awareness Scale-Revised.
<sup>g</sup>CSES: Coping Self-Efficacy Scale.
<sup>h</sup>MHLQ: Mental Health Literacy Questionnaire.
<sup>i</sup>BADS: Behavioral Activation for Depression Scale.
<sup>j</sup>ATQ-R: Automatic Thoughts Questionnaire-Revised.
<sup>k</sup>KT: knowledge test.
<sup>l</sup>PAS: Panic and Agoraphobia Scale.
<sup>m</sup>F: feasibility measures.
<sup>n</sup>AQ: Acrophobia Questionnaire.
<sup>o</sup>ATHQ: Attitudes Toward Heights Questionnaire.
<sup>p</sup>BDI-II: Beck Depression Inventory II.
<sup>q</sup>IPQ: Igroup Presence Questionnaire.
<sup>r</sup>M: mastery.
<sup>s</sup>SUS: System Usability Scale.
<sup>t</sup>TLFB: The Timeline Followback.
<sup>u</sup>To provide information about efficacy, we reversed the order of the outcomes.
<sup>v</sup>WHO-5: World Health Organization 5-point Well-Being Index.
<sup>w</sup>SF-36: Short Form Health Survey.
<sup>x</sup>ISI: Insomnia Severity Index.
<sup>y</sup>PSQI: Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index.
<sup>z</sup>DBAS-16: Dysfunctional Beliefs and Attitudes about Sleep.
<sup>aa</sup>HADS: Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale.
<sup>ab</sup>CES-D: Center of Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale.
<sup>ac</sup>DAS: Dysfunctional Attitude Scale.
<sup>ad</sup>STAI: State-Trait Anxiety Inventory.
<sup>ae</sup>RSES: Rosenberg Self-Esteem Scale.
<sup>af</sup>QoL: quality of life.
<sup>ag</sup>FSCRS: Forms of Self-Criticism and Self-Reassurance Scale.
<sup>ah</sup>DASS: Depression, Anxiety, and Stress Scale.
<sup>ai</sup>WSAS: Work and Social Adjustment Scale.
<sup>aj</sup>I: interview.
<sup>ak</sup>EMASS: Ecological Momentary Assessment-Stress Scale.
<sup>al</sup>CFST: Compassion Fatigue Self-Test.
<sup>am</sup>LEC: Life Events Checklist.
<sup>an</sup>PCL-C: Posttraumatic Stress Disorder Checklist-Civilian Version.
<sup>ao</sup>FFMQ: Five Facet Mindfulness Questionnaire.
<sup>ap</sup>EMAAT: Ecological Momentary Assessment-Aversive Tension Scale.
<sup>aq</sup>SDS: Sheenan Disability Scale.
<sup>ar</sup>CR: comparison of recruitment and engagement in a fully remote trial of individuals with depression who either self-identify as Hispanic/Latino or not.
<sup>as</sup>OCI-R: Obsessive-Compulsive Inventory-Revised.
<sup>at</sup>OBQ: Obsessive Beliefs Questionnaire.
<sup>au</sup>ROCI: Relationship Obsessive-Compulsive Inventory.
<sup>av</sup>PROCSI: Partner-Related Obsessive-Compulsive Symptoms Inventory.
Efficacy and Effectiveness

Efficacy or effectiveness was reported in 21 studies. In the 8 studies reviewed here, the authors used both these terms alternately to report the outcomes of EMI. Hence, both effectiveness and efficacy are reported in this review, and the particular term is used as indicated by the authors of the studies.

In total, 16 of the 21 interventions included in our review reported evidence of a significant reduction in mental disorder symptoms (Table 5).

Nine studies reported effect sizes (Cohen $d$). In the EMI study for insomnia, the authors found significant interaction effects between time and condition on the primary outcome measures ($d=-0.66$) and sleep efficiency ($d=0.71$) [33]. A significant effect on insomnia severity was also recorded at the 3-month follow-up. In the study investigating high self-criticism, effect sizes for between-group comparison and for all primary outcome measures ranged from 0.46 to 0.72 (except inadequate self-criticism, which was nonsignificant) [35]. Another study assessing the effectiveness of EMI in individuals with acrophobia found a between-group effect size $d=1.14$ [32].

The within-group effect sizes varied from $d=0.47$ to $d=0.64$ and $d=0.67$ for depressed samples and changes in overall health, as indexed by the Patient Health Questionnaire. One study found effect sizes of $d=0.77$ for measures of mindfulness in a medical workers’ sample and a moderate effect size $d=0.38$ for positive affect [50]. A large effect ($d=1.0$) was found in the study on a population with alcohol use disorder [42]. The only effect sizes that were small or null were found in the study investigating EMI helping in obsessive-compulsive disorder [47]. Taken together, the effect sizes for a reduction in primary outcomes mostly varied from moderate to large, with large effects found for the majority of the reviewed EMI.

The most common method to assess efficacy and effectiveness was with questionnaires, and almost all the studies using this method found statistically significant differences (in both between- and within-group comparisons) in the primary outcomes (Table 5). With respect to other measures of primary outcomes, 1 study used heart rate [37] and 2 other studies calculated effectiveness based on EMA data [44,46]. Although the outcomes based on EMA were statistically significant, there were no effects found based on physiological readouts.

As for secondary outcomes, 1 of the studies employed a knowledge test about depression and found statistically significant positive effects for the program on information and knowledge [28]. In another study, the authors added an Implicit Positive and Negative Affect Test to assess the level of unconscious stress and found that implicit stress did decrease over time for all participants, independent of the intervention [37].

Discussion

Principal Findings

We reviewed 26 studies that investigated the feasibility, efficacy, and effectiveness of standalone CBT-based EMIs to increase mental health. Results show that EMIs can be successfully delivered via smartphones, significantly increase well-being among users, and reduce symptoms of mental disorders. Designs and quality of the studies reviewed using a rational app design were heterogeneous. Across studies, EMIs were generally accepted by users with various age, sex, education background, and professions and were shown to be effective treatments for a broad range of psychological symptoms.

CBT assumptions constitute an evidence-based basis for EMIs, especially with the use of techniques involving self-monitoring, reflection, cognitive restructuring, and relaxation. Such techniques were mostly employed in combination, and users were sometimes provided with a personal choice of which approach they preferred.

Many studies investigated the efficacy of reducing symptoms of depression in clinical populations. The Todac Todac app, for instance, significantly reduced both depression and anxiety symptoms [37]. The Get Happy program was associated with stable reduction of depressive symptoms, including a demonstration of stability at 3 months follow-up [41]. Promising results were also shown in studies with healthy samples, where an increase in positive well-being and higher emotional self-awareness along with self-efficacy as a result of using EMI were reported. Here, the MoodKit, MoodMission, and MoodPraid apps were effective in decreasing mild depressive and anxiety symptoms [32]. Headspace is a mindfulness app that was used in 2 studies with medical workers and tested against a control group that received face-to-face mindfulness classes. Users engaging in Headspace reported higher
self-awareness in their actions, less burnout, and more compassion satisfaction compared with the group receiving face-to-face mindfulness training [47]. In another study of the Headspace app, a single group design was chosen. This study reported heightened mindfulness skills and more positive emotions as a result of using Headspace post-EMI versus pre-EMI in medical workers [53].

Clinical Perspective
From a practical clinical perspective, EMIs may postpone the necessity of professional mental health treatment by a psychiatrist or psychologist, eg, for individuals who struggle financially, have limited access to such services in their place of living, or due to health reasons cannot attend psychotherapy [32,51]. On the basis of this review and previous studies, EMIs may be specifically helpful for individuals who are facing temporary problems, for instance, in the context of personal or professional change or other transitioning periods. Moreover, symptoms of mental health are still affected by considerable stigmatization [60], and EMIs may help reduce the fear of stigma as psychological support can be obtained without seeking treatment in a hospital setting. EMIs are also often a first step for many individuals to test personal preferences and affinity to psychological treatment and may lead to face-to-face or other professional therapeutic services later [61]. The worldwide long-lasting crisis of mental health care, manifested by poor accessibility of cost-free, state-funded psychotherapy, suggests another use of EMIs. Patients could use EMIs as a source of support while awaiting face-to-face treatment [62-64].

EMIs in Context of Pandemics
In the context of COVID-19, the need to implement population-based behavioral measures to counter the rapid spread of the virus has led to home confinement; loss of individual behavioral routines, including exercise; and lack of social contact. Psychological needs may be underaddressed in such times of crises [8,65]. EMIs could be an ideally suited approach to reach a large number of individuals affected by mental health problems and to provide scalable global mental health solutions. It is also estimated, based on experiences with previous pandemics, that after the COVID-19 pandemic is over, such solutions will be needed to help populations with continued psychological symptoms, such as depression and anxiety [66]. Some populations might be at a specific risk of stress in this challenging time, especially doctors, nurses, or emergency personnel [67-69], and 2 of the trials reviewed here investigated effects on the medical staff. The high efficacy of the Headspace app tested in these populations of first responders and frontline workers is encouraging and indicates that mindfulness training delivered via a mobile app can significantly decrease work-related stress. EMIs could thus help to lower the risk of developing unfavorable mental health outcomes in such populations, which have recently been documented [70].

Methodological Limitations
There are several methodological caveats in the studies reviewed here. The choice of control condition varied. Suggestions for the control groups to call hotlines or visit recommended websites imply heterogeneous and less tangible control groups than control groups that could use comparison apps. At the same time, comparing results from 2 different apps can be difficult if they target different symptoms or use different techniques. Little attention has been paid to the psychological mechanisms (eg, cognitive mediators) that allowed for this change in the outcome to develop. To increase the conclusiveness and reliability of studies assessing efficacy, effectiveness, and feasibility of EMIs, more RCTs with adequate control groups are needed [71]. Ideally, RCTs should be preceded by optimization studies, based, for instance, on MOST (Multiphase Optimization Strategy) [72] and SMART (The Sequential Multiple Assignment Randomized Trial) [73], which allow for choosing the right dosage and delivery of intervention based on predefined criteria, for example, individual characteristics of the user, characteristics of psychiatric population, and effectiveness of the intervention. Another valid concern is the reporting of EMI studies. For example, the majority (73%) of the studies did not report a formal power analysis. Consequently, studies might be underpowered, and their quantitative results have not been reported. However, some studies investigated the feasibility rather than efficacy and focused on issues of implementation, launch, and users’ experience with the app; thus, they might have been less concerned about power and sample size. Moreover, it must be noted that there might also be a bias in overestimating the effects of EMI. First, control conditions, if used, cannot simply be blinded, similar to psychotherapy studies. Second, the fact that almost all studies showed a positive effect on the primary outcome makes it likely that there is a publication bias toward positive results.

Despite these limitations, we indicated key strengths and found a number of standalone smartphone-based EMIs that were shown to be effective. It is also in line with findings from previous reviews in this field, although their focus differed, for instance, by focusing on blended therapies [24,25] or specific mental health problems [12,19-23].

Recommendations for Future Development
Exciting future developments lie ahead in the field of EMIs. This is documented by >40 (pre)registered protocols, which we excluded (Figure 1) and which are likely to produce further evidence about the effectiveness of CBT-based standalone EMIs. Future developments should exploit the potential to scale these interventions and test their effects in larger and global populations in times of crises, such as the COVID-19 pandemic. Moreover, it is possible to combine EMIs with wearable technologies [74] to gather physiological data and other information for researchers and clinicians alike. EMIs can be used along passive sensing tracking patterns of smartphone usage, and by using context-aware assessment strategies that link the assessment of experiences to specific sensing events (like, for instance, physical distance to the others), would allow for the design of specific interventions in response to COVID-19 pandemic–induced mental health problems, especially induced by isolation whereas, at the same time, complying with the demanded pandemic containment policies. Here, mobile crowdsensing in combination with EMI would constitute the key technology to address this major mental health challenge. Ideally, these tools can be combined with machine learning to derive algorithms for accurate and precise prediction and...
selection of ecologically valid treatment options [75]. Machine learning, or more generally artificial intelligence techniques, could be useful in at least three ways. First, such approaches could identify individuals and/or time points where the intervention might be particularly important to avoid substantial degradation of mental health.

Second, such approaches could identify factors that critically affect effectiveness, which could subsequently help in personalizing EMIs both delivery mode and contentwise, and in enhancing decision making at precise time points while using personally tailored JITAs.

Third, they could significantly decrease the time invested by health professionals and scientists who administer EMIs, such as in the study where clinicians manually adapted the number of EMIs delivered based on app usage [42].

Conclusions
Taken together, our review showed that standalone CBT-based EMIs can be efficacious in reducing symptoms of psychological disorders in various situations. EMIs may support individuals outside the therapists’ room and could also be helpful when time and resource investment from mental health professionals are limited. At the same time, however, professional clinician-scientists’ input is invaluable in designing and implementing such EMIs. All EMIs reviewed here were based on a rational app design that translates key concepts and findings from CBT to these new interventions. They can provide scalable and evidence-based mental health support for large populations and be readily distributed.


71. Marciniak et al. JMIR MHEALTH AND UHEALTH


Abbreviations

CBT: cognitive behavioral therapy
EMA: ecological momentary assessment
EMI: ecological momentary intervention
JITAI: just-in-time adaptive intervention
mHealth: mobile health
RCT: randomized controlled trial
VR: virtual reality
WHO: World Health Organization
Engagement Features in Physical Activity Smartphone Apps: Focus Group Study With Sedentary People

Marco D’Addario1, PhD; Dario Baretta1, PhD; Francesco Zanatta1, MSc; Andrea Greco2, PhD; Patrizia Steca1, PhD

1Department of Psychology, University of Milan-Bicocca, Milan, Italy
2Department of Human and Social Sciences, University of Bergamo, Bergamo, Italy

Corresponding Author:
Francesco Zanatta, MSc
Department of Psychology
University of Milan-Bicocca
Piazza dell’Ateneo Nuovo, 1
Milan, 20126
Italy
Phone: 39 3920317007
Email: francesco.zanatta@unimib.it

Abstract

Background: Engagement with physical activity mobile apps has been reported to be a core precondition for their effectiveness in digital behavior change interventions. However, to date, little attention has been paid to understanding the perspectives, needs, expectations, and experiences of potential users with physical activity mobile apps.

Objective: The aim of this study was to investigate the features that are judged to be important for engagement with a physical activity mobile app and the reasons for their importance.

Methods: A qualitative focus-group methodology with elements of co-design was adopted in this study. Participants reporting sedentary lifestyles and willingness to improve their physical activity behavior through mobile technology were recruited. The focus group sessions consisted of 13 participants (8 men and 5 women, mean [SD] age 41.9 [7.1] years). Two researchers conducted the data analysis independently by using the inductive thematic approach.

Results: Four main themes emerged in relation to the research question and were named as follows: “physical activity participation motives,” “autonomy and self-regulation,” “need for relatedness,” and “smart.” Additionally, 2 subthemes originated from “physical activity participation motives” (ie, “medical guidance” and “weight loss and fitness for health”) and “smart” (ie, “action planning” and “adaptable and tailored”).

Conclusions: Features enhancing autonomy and self-regulation and positively affecting health and physical well-being as well as the need for relatedness, adaptability, and flexibility should be considered as core elements in the engagement of potential users with physical activity mobile apps. The emerged findings may orient future research and interventions aiming to foster engagement of potential users with physical activity apps.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e20460) doi:10.2196/20460

KEYWORDS
physical activity; smartphone app; engagement; co-design; thematic analysis; mobile phone

Introduction

Background

Regular physical activity is widely recognized as a protective factor against cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, obesity, and some forms of cancer [1-3]. Nevertheless, a third of the adults worldwide are insufficiently physically active [4]; as a consequence, promoting effective interventions targeting physical activity is a priority. Behavior change interventions that increase physical activity have been shown to be effective [5], and diverse findings supporting their cost-effectiveness have been reported [6]. However, most of these interventions have been delivered with a face-to-face methodology, which is considered, for intrinsic reasons, unsuitable for targeting large populations and supporting behavior change in ecological settings.

Mobile technology provides a valid tool to foster interventions [7,8] and to reach large populations [9]. Nevertheless, little
evidence has been provided so far for the modest effect of web-based and mobile-based interventions on physical activity [9-11]. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis has aimed to determine the role of smartphone apps in increasing objectively measured physical activity in adults and it provided modest evidence supporting short-term effectiveness (eg, up to 3 months) [12]. In this regard, engagement was shown to be a fundamental precondition for digital behavior change interventions (eg, physical activity smartphone apps) and their effectiveness [13]. Nevertheless, digital interventions were shown to have low engagement in different contexts, including controlled trials [10,14] and in relation to health app usage in real life settings [15]. Specifically, the lack of desired features and abandoning health goals were reported as reasons for low engagement and subsequent dropout [16]. Conversely, other studies have suggested higher engagement with health smartphone apps to be potentially supported by interactive features such as social and professional support, self-monitoring, and feedback [17-19]. However, in spite of recommendations [20,21], little attention has been paid to understanding users’ perspectives and preferences of these features and implementing them in app functionalities in order to sustain users’ engagement with behavior change and health-related goals. Consistently to this point, a recent systematic review unveiled that personal factors and features of the device play a role in influencing participants’ motivation to engage with mobile apps promoting physical activity [22]. It was noted that, among the personal factors, prior experience with and rationales for using health apps influenced users’ motivation. Moreover, mobile health components were found to potentially facilitate changing users’ ways of thinking and self-awareness in relation to physical activity. Indeed, the monitoring features of the apps gave the users opportunities to reflect, which led them to include additional physical activity in their routines. Furthermore, social features, prompts, goal setting, and gamification were noted as determinants of a better experience of mobile health in physical activity, suggesting higher engagement with app use. Thus, ease of use, personalized features, and the possibility to customize the app were shown as relevant factors too. Another recent qualitative study synthesized what is known about influences on the uptake of and engagement with health smartphone apps, suggesting that factors such as physical and psychological capability, physical and social opportunity, and motivation are pivotal and deserve further investigation [23]. Especially for engagement, app instructions, health and well-being information, and visual or numerical summary of progress were considered essential. In addition, self-monitoring, established routines, and safety netting have been taken into account as pivotal features supporting behavioral regulation and consequent engagement with the app.

For these purposes and according to previous observations, a mixed-methods research design with a specific focus on qualitative methodologies (eg, focus groups, interview with open-ended questions, think-aloud studies) may be preferred [21,24,25]. Qualitative methodologies may indeed benefit from various techniques. One in particular that is gaining attention from mobile health researchers is co-design. The term “co-design” refers to the creative collaboration between researchers and end users and to their involvement in the design development process, where the valuable role of the latter relies on their position as “experts of their experience” [26]. Co-designing, for instance, a digital intervention in cooperation with potential users encompasses advantages, including better idea generation and better fit between users and the product, higher quality, and more effective products as well as more efficiency in project management [27].

Objective
The aim of this study was to elicit the preferences and perspectives of sedentary potential users toward features of a physical activity mobile app. Hence, we intend to elucidate why specific functionalities and features are judged to be important in the design process of a physical activity mobile app that contributes to increasing potential users’ engagement.

Methods

Study Design
This study adopted a focus group methodology with elements of co-design. This study design aimed to address users’ perspectives and expectations in relation to a physical activity mobile app. The cocreation of a fit-for-purpose digital product designed with and around the users represents the real added value of this methodology. Co-design activities allow users to express their creativity and contribute to the development process as experts of their own experiences [26]. The project design, procedures, and informed consent form were approved by the ethics committee of the University of Milan-Bicocca.

Study Participants
The participants were recruited according to the following eligibility criteria: (1) age between 30 years and 50 years, (2) no preexisting health conditions that would impede physical activity, (3) no clinical conditions related to physical inactivity (eg, obesity, diabetes), (4) insufficient physical activity screened with the Global Activity Questionnaire [28] and consequently compared to physical activity recommended guidelines (ie, 150 minutes of moderate physical activity or 75 minutes of vigorous physical activity per week), and (5) interest in increasing physical activity behavior through mobile technologies. No monetary compensation for participation was provided.

Sampling
The aim of the focus group and the eligibility criteria were specified in the recruitment materials (social media, snowball sampling methods, and posters placed on the university campus). Recruitment stopped when no further relevant insights of participants’ experiences and novel themes emerged from the focus groups [29].

Co-Design Materials
While the materials were being developed, design features were primarily defined in order to fulfill the most relevant physical activity participation motives and to implement the behavior change techniques (eg, action planning, goal setting, problem solving, self-monitoring) [30]. Additional features that are expected to be associated with engagement (ie, rewards, reminders, social support) [18] were also included as stimuli.

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e20460/
A co-design pack was created according to a preliminary revision of the literature. The selected functions and features presented to participants differed between the 2 focus groups. In the first focus group, the features were written on post-its and referred to the behavior change techniques recognized as the most effective in physical activity promotion [5] and to the different motives associated with physical activity [31,32]. In the second focus group, the features were presented as images and referred to those mainly included in the publicly available physical activity apps [33]. Changes of materials between the first and the second focus group were made with the aim to provide the participants with a more engaging and realistic co-design activity, since interacting with images may be more stimulating than post-its. Although the creative activities formed a large proportion of the work, co-design materials and the related creative tasks were exclusively considered as stimuli for participants in focus group conduction and were not included in the data analysis phase.

Procedure
Participants were invited to the University of Milan-Bicocca. Before starting the focus group session, participants were given the information sheet describing the nature of the study. They subsequently signed the informed consent form. As the first focus group activity, participants introduced themselves and shared their previous personal experiences with physical activity and with mobile apps. Subsequently, a folder with materials for co-design was provided. Participants were asked to design their own physical activity app according to their preferences for specific functionalities and features. According to the user-centered methodology and the iterative nature of the co-design process, materials and the track for the following co-design sessions were consequently adapted in order to better elicit users’ views about what specific functionalities are expected to be important and why. The first session consisted of evaluating and designing potential physical activity app features (functionalities and features were written on post-its given to participants at the beginning of the focus group session) according to different topics (ie, feedback and monitoring, goal setting and planning, challenges and social features, problem solving). A brief discussion was then conducted when each topic was completed. In the latter session, participants were asked to cut out images of features printed on a paper sheet and paste them on a printed smartphone frame according to their preferences. Once the whole activity was accomplished, a general discussion was conducted. In both co-design sessions, participants were also provided with blank post-its to suggest any further functionalities they would like to see implemented in a physical activity app. Changes to the co-design task relied on the aim to characterize the activity with more concrete stimuli and to stress the creative act of cocreating the product. Therefore, this did not influence the scope of focus group sessions (ie, elicit potential users’ views and preferences for design features) but, rather, provided an opportunity for a better expression of participants’ views and perspectives.

Data Analysis
The focus group sessions were audio-recorded and transcribed verbatim. The transcripts were qualitatively analyzed using inductive thematic analysis [34]. Thematic analysis consists of 6 phases: (1) familiarizing with the data, (2) generating initial codes, (3) searching for themes, (4) reviewing themes, (5) defining and naming themes, and (6) producing the report. Given the exploratory nature of the thematic analysis methodology, it was expected that diverse themes with different contents might emerge [34]. For this reason, the themes might not be strictly connected to engagement. Therefore, any theme that emerged and that was not necessarily related to engagement was accepted as an informative finding. Data and repeated patterns that were considered pertinent to the aim of the study were coded by 2 researchers working independently. New inductive codes were labelled as they were identified during the coding process and the results of the coding were iteratively revised. The next stage involved searching for themes; both researchers reviewed their own generated codes one by one, organizing the findings in order to combine the different codes that have been considered focusing on the same aspect. Finally, the codes generated by the 2 researchers were compared and subsequently organized into themes. Discussion within the entire research group was conducted in order to reach a consensus on the final themes. Once themes were defined and named, examples of transcripts were selected to corroborate themes on the basis of their representativeness and relevance. Data were analyzed in their original language in order to preserve the participants’ original meanings, while coding and themes were formulated in English only. The selected examples of transcripts were translated into English for illustration purposes.

Results
Overview of the Findings
Two focus groups were formed (N=13, 8 men and 5 women). The mean (SD) age of the participants was 41.9 (7.1) years. All the participants reported doing less than 120 minutes of light-to-moderate physical activity per week; 4 participants reported having previously used smartphone apps to support physical activity.

Four themes were developed in relation to the research question and were named as follows: “physical activity participation motives,” “autonomy and self-regulation,” “need for relatedness,” and “smart.” Two subthemes were developed in relation to the “physical activity participation motives” theme: “medical guidance” and “weight loss and fitness.” Additionally, 2 subthemes originated from the “smart” theme: “action planning” and “adaptable and tailored” (see Table 1 for a brief description of the themes and subthemes).
Table 1. Summary of the themes and subthemes that emerged from the thematic analysis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Themes and subthemes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physical activity participation motives</td>
<td>The intention to do physical activity is more related to health and well-being or duty motives, rather than intrinsic motivation or pleasure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical guidance</td>
<td>A physical activity app should contain features that include medical support, providing feedback about physiological parameters related to health.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss and fitness for health</td>
<td>A physical activity app should contain features that contribute to physical benefits and cardiovascular fitness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autonomy and self-regulation</td>
<td>Physical activity app design should include features (eg, monitoring, goal setting, feedback) that contribute to increasing self-regulation and autonomous behaviors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Need for relatedness</td>
<td>It is crucial that a physical activity app contains features that leverage the motivational component of social support and promote privacy, safety, and comparison with oneself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart</td>
<td>Subjects ask for a flexible physical activity mobile app that provides context-aware suggestions and goal-oriented feedback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action planning</td>
<td>Physical activity app design should include activity suggestions in relation to users’ personal goals and flexible programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptable and tailored</td>
<td>Potential users would prefer a customized physical activity mobile app that can deliver tailored suggestions and that is built on their own characteristics and motivations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Physical Activity Participation Motives

Participants highlighted the importance of using a physical activity app focusing on participation motives. Most of them reported that their intention to practice physical activity did not originate from intrinsic motivation or pleasure, but from health and well-being–related or duty motives.

...I consider physical activity as a responsibility to feel healthy, rather than a pleasure. It is an effort that I make to feel better. [Male #1]

...For some people, fitness is a pleasure. Personally, I would exercise because it would make me healthy, not because I’d like it. [Male #2]

Specifically, physical activity participation motives can be attributable to the desire for medical guidance and a specific focus on weight loss and fitness.

Subtheme 1 of Physical Activity Participation Motives: Medical Guidance

Positive opinions about the opportunity to be informed and supported by medical sources (eg, medical doctors or devices) were expressed. This aspect would contribute to making the app more credible, reliable, and trustworthy. Moreover, thanks to the presence of a medical perspective, participants expected the app to be able to provide feedback about the physiological parameters strictly related to health.

...Physical activity should be supported and monitored by a sports doctor, and after an exercise electrocardiogram… It could be dangerous otherwise! [Male #3]

...I would like to be supported by a virtual personal trainer, but I need something more such as a doctor, an expert who gives reliable and evidence-based recommendations. [Male #4]

Subtheme 2 of Physical Activity Participation Motives: Weight Loss and Fitness for Health

Focus group participants remarked the importance of physical activity for weight loss and fitness, thereby contributing to physical benefits and cardiovascular health.

...My eating habits are important but my physical well-being is also a fundamental aim for me; to get my fitness back, to control my body weight and my heart [...] I always imagine an app matching with my main aim, which is weight loss, blood pressure and heart control. I imagine an app as an instrument supporting physical well-being. [Male #5]

...I am interested because my hope is to lose weight. I have perennial fight with my weight...” [Female #2]

Autonomy and Self-Regulation

Most of the participants reported monitoring, goal setting, and feedback as the key components for a physical activity app design. These features would help increase not only self-regulation in physical activity but also autonomous behaviors.

...It must be something [app] that helps me to reach my goal. It should be a calculator of what I did and what I should have done... [Male #5]

...I consider information like how far and how long I have run, the distance and other similar data that I consider the starting point. These may then help to add further elements that an app should offer. [Female #1]

...you receive a notification on your smartphone like “you are worsening, your conditions are decreasing” [Male #1]
In particular, regarding monitoring and feedback features, most participants said that they were interested in having records and statistics about their itineraries.

...I would like my physical activity to be monitored and analyzed with charts and stats. I would prefer to see daily, weekly, and monthly statistics. [Male #2]

...I would like the app to track my paths. It could motivate me to do more, improving my results. Also, I imagine an app providing an archive of previous paths. [Male #4]

Need for Relatedness

Focus group participants expressed social support as a fundamental component that could help to create higher levels of daily commitment, to make exercise a more enjoyable activity, as well as to increase motivation and overcome laziness.

...I should find someone who motivates my goal setting. Not daily goals, but goals helping me to use the app regularly [...] It would push me to share with others, to be more active... [Female #2]

...If you have an appointment, then you can’t quit. [Female #3]

...I have always been very lazy. Laziness leads me to be idle when I’m alone. So, it would be better if there was someone with me. [Female #4]

...You have to find someone at your own pace. [Male #2]

Although peer support was shown to be a core element, most of the participants expressed avoidance to social comparison, exhibitionism, and competition, and preferred privacy, safety, and comparison with oneself.

...I almost never share my private life [...] I don’t think it is interesting to know or to let others know what I usually do. [Female #1]

...It could be dangerous to let you know what I do, or to let me know what you do every day. [Male #3]

...I would exercise for personal motives and not for competing [...] Everything I do is for a comparison with myself: I like seeing my own improvements. [Male #1]

Furthermore, the possibility to interact with a virtual personal trainer who is aware of the personal motivation, abilities, and preferences was reported as a core element.

...I would like to rub the smartphone to bring up a personal trainer [...] I do not perceive the human component. I would need the relationship with a personal trainer, with someone able to show the exercises right in front of you. [Female #5]

...I would need an app like a personal trainer who monitors me [...] Someone who supports me. [Female #2]

...It should be something that gives tailored hints, knowing one’s motivations... like a parent who knows you, who loves you, who says what to do. [Male #3]

...and then, I would like something like Siri that asks to you before you start: “How do you feel today?” “Today, I don’t want to put in too much effort” “Ok, I will choose this path for you, then!” [Female #3]

Smart

Participants imagined a physical activity mobile app presenting flexibility and adaptability toward individual circumstances and motivations. For this purpose, the app should provide context-aware suggestions, goal-oriented feedback, and action-oriented planning for a tailored support in physical activity.

Subtheme 1 of Smart: Action Planning

Participants expressed the preference to use a physical activity app that consisted of features that suggest activities in relation to personal goals and flexible programs.

...I would like the app to propose a training. An app suggesting a training according to my goal. [Male #6]

...an app helping me to identify a lighter training instead of forcing me when I am particularly tired... [Female #3]

...I would need an app suggesting a path, for example, “Today, you have one hour available and you could choose this path. There is a park nearby.” [Female #2]

...an app identifying paths or outdoor gyms. So, for example, when I don’t know where to go to run it could tell me, “These are some paths you might be interested in.” [Female #1]

Subtheme 2 of Smart: Adaptable and Tailored

Most of the participants believed that a physical activity app should be customized to users’ characteristics and motivations and should also be able to read and detect behaviors and needs and deliver tailored suggestions.

...to customize it as much as possible, it should be tailored [...] If the app knows that you have high blood pressure, it will not suggest you go running for 3 hours. [Female #1]

...It should be as complete as possible. It should not be based on only one parameter, but rather on different characteristics [...] It should be customized, for example, according to one’s psychological and physical condition at the specific moment of the day. [Female #2]

...Based on the data on your goals you fill in when registering, the app should modulate the difficulty and give some short term results to achieve your goals. [Male #7]

...Everything needs to be flexible considering that I am flexible. [Male #3]
Discussion

Principal Results

In this study, we investigated the potential features of a physical activity app that are judged to be important for engagement by sedentary potential users and the reasons for their importance. A focus group methodology with elements of co-design was adopted in order to involve participants who reflected about the app features and researchers who characterized the design process. The findings of this study suggest that features that enhance users’ autonomy and self-regulation and those that focus on the impact physical activity has on health and physical well-being were considered to be relevant for engagement. The need for relatedness was considered as a trigger for exercise if it adopts a supportive and motivational style. For this purpose, both a virtual personal trainer with human qualities embedded into the app and opportunities to develop a network of physical activity peers were judged as relevant features. A different aspect noticed in this study was that participants seemed to give importance to the private dimension of exercising and, thus, expressed a preference for self-comparison, privacy, and safety rather than competition, exhibitionism, and social comparison. Finally, participants believed that a smart, tailored interaction between user and app would foster a more effective engagement by providing an adaptable flexible approach for users to achieve personal goals.

Comparison With Prior Work

The intentions and motives related to exercise seemed to be mostly oriented toward health and physical well-being concerns, which were partially coherent with those reported in a previous research [19]. In the previous study [19], specific features focusing on fitness, nutrition, and weight loss were listed as the main reasons for engaging in physical activity. In addition, a preference for particular suggestions and the possibility to track relevant health-related parameters was indicated. As for what emerged in this research, improving cardiovascular fitness and weight loss and monitoring of health-related indicators were repeatedly reported as the primary motivations for being more active and healthier. To address this request, physical activity apps should take into account a wider and more integrated approach for physical activity by involving medical guidance to help users to achieve and monitor their health-related goals (eg, weight control, aerobic improvements). For these purposes, new emerging mobile technology such as self-tracking devices may provide more reliable, integrated information about physical activity behavior and its outcomes (eg, indicators of weight loss, index of fitness, heart rate).

The preferences of the potential users for autonomy and self-regulation features were consistent with those reported in a previous research [19,35] and corroborated the results from a recent review [18], suggesting that behavior change techniques such as goal setting, feedback, and self-monitoring are associated with higher engagement. Specifically, these features allow participants to monitor their improvements, highlighting any potential discrepancy between their physical activity behavior and their goal. Moreover, self-regulation features (ie, goal setting, behavior monitoring, receiving feedback) have been shown to be effective in increasing physical activity [36]. Similar convergent empirical evidence has clearly validated the idea that considering self-regulation features in a physical activity app allows users to self-organize their experience and behavior, thereby fostering their autonomy in exercising [19]. Furthermore, they deserve to be considered as the core component of physical activity apps, as they have already been expected to increase engagement [17,18], be appreciated by users [37], and be associated with physical activity intervention effectiveness [5,38]. It is noteworthy that although commercial physical activity apps often implement such features [39], this might be done in a more theory-driven way as highlighted for goal setting in a recent review and content analysis of commercial apps [40].

The need for relatedness was perceived by potential physical activity app users as a core element for increasing their engagement with the app. Previous research has shown social support features not to be as relevant as the self-regulation feature [41]. In contrast, a recent study [19] supported the motivational aspect of social interactions as an element supporting and fostering higher levels of commitment. Indeed, it was unveiled that although varying types and levels of needs for relatedness with others were expressed, connection with peers and coaching features embedded into the app play a promoting role, thereby increasing motivation and making physical activity more enjoyable. Consistently, the findings of this study show that human interactions with peers and virtual personal trainers are judged to be a trigger for being more active and overcoming laziness, as well as a fundamental feature in support and consequent dedication. Indeed, features connecting the user with a virtual coach or a group of people with similar goals were expected to be important for engagement because of the formation of a shared commitment and the opportunity to be emotionally supported. The findings in this study are consistent with those reported in a previous study [42], suggesting that working alliance and the desire to continue using a digital behavior change intervention to promote physical activity are increased by the support provided by a computer interface with human-relational skills (eg, empathy, social dialogue). Furthermore, a scoping review of web-based interventions showed supportive virtual coaches to be a potentially valuable remedy for low adherence to digital interventions [43]. In accordance with previous research targeting different behaviors [18,37], potential users of physical activity apps are reluctant to share information with social networks about their physical activity. Indeed, users perceived physical activity behavior change as a personal path and did not see merit in showing it to other users. This avoidance of competition and social comparison is consistent with that reported in a previous study [19], as competence and competition were listed among the less relevant motives for practicing physical activity and social comparison was revealed to be one of the less-liked behavior change techniques. Specifically, the latter was also considered as an obstacle for motivation to exercise due to potential exposure to others’ negative judgments. Furthermore, participants definitely rejected the idea of thinking about physical activity from a competitive perspective, probably because any source of social comparison
or competition with more successful users might discourage them, thereby constituting an additional stressful element.

Finally, participants imagined a smart, tailored physical activity app that is customized to “understand” the users’ preferences and expectations and consequently support them as and when required. For example, action planning strategies based on the user’s timetable and suggestions tailored to the user’s level of progress toward a specific goal were expected to be more engaging and effective. The findings in this study corroborate previous observations, indicating that providing tailored physical activity plans based on personal goals and current progress would help users implement their engagement and intentions to exercise [19]. A similar need for a tailored approach was also found in a previous research investigating users’ preferences for design features related to smartphone apps for drinking reduction and smoking cessation [18]. Additionally, participants emphasized their interest in a flexible physical activity app that adapts the intervention content to the specific context and variations in the users’ motivational and emotional states in real time. This suggestion is in line with recent emerging research that has focused on the development of just-in-time adaptive interventions [44] and tailoring physical activity interventions on motivational aspects such as self-efficacy beliefs [45,46].

Limitations
The limitations of this study include the design of the study: a nonlongitudinal design could have limited the long-term investigation of the influence of the features emerged in users’ engagement. For this purpose, further qualitative studies may be conducted comprising a follow-up aimed to evaluate the possible effects on users’ engagement after a period of tailored smartphone app usage. Another limitation of the study is the narrow age range of participants. Actually, the decision to only include adults aged 30-50 years was based on the belief that this would have improved the quality of the findings. Perski et al [18] reported that engagement with digital behavior change interventions is influenced by age (showing a trend toward a positive association between engagement and older age). However, as the moderating role of age on engagement cannot be easily controlled for in qualitative studies, we preferred to avoid recruiting participants younger than 30 years and older than 50 years in order to prevent collecting data from a heterogeneous sample with varying motivations and subjective experiences. Further investigations may be helpful to explore the role of age. Furthermore, the nature of the focus group may have limited the expression of the participants’ true attitudes because of social desirability bias. Finally, as there can be a difference between what is expected to help engagement and what actually has an influence on engagement, a prospective study including a period of physical activity smartphone app use is recommended. In this way, experiencing the app may lead to understanding whether the features actually have the same impact on engagement as expected.

Conclusions
The findings in this study provide informative data concerning sedentary potential users’ preferences and perspectives toward physical activity smartphone app features. Consistent with that reported in prior works, improving health and physical well-being were indicated as the primary motivations for exercising, as was the possibility to track relevant health-related parameters with the additional support of medical sources. Similarly, features strictly related to the behavior change techniques (ie, goal setting, feedback, and self-monitoring) were preferred to support autonomy and self-regulation. Furthermore, the preference of tailored and customized features “understanding” user’s expectations and level of progress was shown and this corroborated prior observations. Finally, features that leverage the motivational component of social support and that promote privacy, safety, and self-comparison were shown to be crucial. Nevertheless, they still represent an open question, as contrasting results emerged in prior studies. In order to increase users’ engagement with physical activity smartphone apps and, thus, to improve their effectiveness, the features described here should be taken into account in future design processes and in future research aiming to broaden knowledge on mobile health in relation to physical activity.

Authors' Contributions
DB conducted the focus group sessions. DB and MD performed the thematic analysis and the entire research group was involved in reaching a consensus on the final themes. All the authors contributed to paper writing and revision.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

References


D’Addario et al

©Marco D’Addario, Dario Baretta, Francesco Zanatta, Andrea Greco, Patrizia Steca. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 16.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Impact of Pediatric Mobile Game Play on Healthy Eating Behavior: Randomized Controlled Trial

Yi-Chin Kato-Lin 1, PhD; Uttara Bharath Kumar 2, MHS; Bhargav Sri Prakash 1, MEng; Bhairavi Prakash 4, MSc; Vasini Varadan 5, MEcon; Sanjeeta Agnihotri 6, MSW; Nrutya Subramanyam 7, MBBS, PGDFM, MRCGP(INT); Pradeep Krishnatray 6, PhD; Rema Padman 8, PhD

1 Hofstra University, Hempstead, NY, United States
2 Center for Communication Programs, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, MD, United States
3 FriendsLearn Inc, Palo Alto, CA, United States
4 The Mithra Trust, Chennai, India
5 Mind in Motion, Chennai, India
6 Center for Communication and Change – India, New Delhi, India
7 Seethapathy Clinic & Hospital, Chennai, India
8 The Heinz College of Information Systems and Public Policy, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, United States

Corresponding Author:
Rema Padman, PhD
The Heinz College of Information Systems and Public Policy
Carnegie Mellon University
5000 Forbes Ave
Pittsburgh, PA,
United States
Phone: 1 412 268 2180
Email: rpadman@cmu.edu

Abstract

Background: Video and mobile games have been shown to have a positive impact on behavior change in children. However, the potential impact of game play patterns on outcomes of interest are yet to be understood, especially for games with implicit learning components.

Objective: This study investigates the immediate impact of fooya!, a pediatric dietary mobile game with implicit learning components, on food choices. It also quantifies children’s heterogeneous game play patterns using game telemetry and determines the effects of these patterns on players’ food choices.

Methods: We analyzed data from a randomized controlled trial (RCT) involving 104 children, aged 10 to 11 years, randomly assigned to the treatment group (played fooya!, a dietary mobile game developed by one of the authors) or the control group (played Uno, a board game without dietary education). Children played the game for 20 minutes each in two sessions. After playing the game in each session, the children were asked to choose 2 out of 6 food items (3 healthy and 3 unhealthy choices). The number of healthy choices in both sessions was used as the major outcome. We first compared the choice and identification of healthy foods between treatment and control groups using statistical tests. Next, using game telemetry, we determined the variability in game play patterns by quantifying game play measures and modeled the process of game playing at any level across all students as a Markov chain. Finally, correlation tests and regression models were used to establish the relationship between game play measures and actual food choices.

Results: We saw a significant main effect of the mobile game on number of healthy foods actually chosen (treatment 2.48, control 1.10; P<.001; Cohen d=1.25) and identified (treatment 7.3, control 6.94; P=.048; Cohen d=.25). A large variation was observed in children’s game play patterns. Children played an average of 15 game levels in 2 sessions, with a range of 2 to 23 levels. The greatest variation was noted in the proportion of scoring activities that were highly rewarded, with an average of 0.17, ranging from 0.003 to 0.98. Healthy food choice was negatively associated with the number of unhealthy food facts that children read in the game (Kendall \( \tau = -.32, P=.04 \)), even after controlling for baseline food preference.

Conclusions: A mobile video game embedded with implicit learning components showed a strong positive impact on children’s food choices immediately following the game. Game telemetry captured children’s different play patterns and was associated
with behavioral outcomes. These results have implications for the design and use of mobile games as an intervention to improve health behaviors, such as the display of unhealthy food facts during game play. Longitudinal RCTs are needed to assess long-term impact.

**Trial Registration:** ClinicalTrials.gov NCT04082195; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT04082195, registered retrospectively.

**KEYWORDS**
pediatric obesity; mobile games; implicit learning; healthy eating behavior evaluation; game telemetry analysis

**Introduction**

**Background and Significance**

Obesity is an increasingly common epidemic in children, with serious long-term health consequences and high health care costs [1,2]. While there are many factors that contribute to overweight and obesity, dietary decisions are a leading cause [1]. Threats to pediatric health risk from the double burden of overweight and malnutrition or undernutrition heightens the need to influence children’s dietary lifestyle habit formation through evidence-based, scalable, digital therapeutic methods [3]. There is a clear need to identify effective methods for improving dietary intake and physical activity habits early in life that children find engaging and can remain intrinsically motivated to adopt.

Several diet-related video games have been designed and evaluated for children in recent years, such as Diab [4], Squire’s Quest! [5], Squire’s Quest! II [6], Quest to Lava Mountain [7], D.W.’s Unicorn Adventure [8], Alien Health Game [9], Fitter Critters [10], Creature-101 [11], Virtual Sprouts [12], Fit, Food, Fun [13], and Garfield vs Hotdog [14]. Most of the video games being evaluated predominantly use explicit education strategies such as providing answers, feedback, instructions, or suggestions to the players [4-6,9-13]. Implicit learning is another strategy that educates players without making them aware of the fact [15]. This is a rapidly growing field due to the high popularity of video games on mobile devices in general and serious games for health and education in particular. Lumosity [16] is one such well-known game, which aims to improve behavioral and cognitive performance by stimulating players’ brain function [17]. Several studies have shown its positive effect [17,18]. Without explicitly educating the players, implicit learning embedded in video games has also been found to improve actual sports behavior and physics knowledge [19,20]. However, evidence of the effects of games with implicit education strategies on pediatric healthy eating behavior is still very limited.

Serious games are generally considered an effective intervention for influencing healthy eating behaviors in children [21,22], with some exceptions [9,12,14]. There are studies providing evidence of their positive effects on food intake [4] and healthy eating attitude and self-efficacy [10]. Hence, personalizable gamification and learnification on mobile devices may be one approach for children to learn about healthy dietary habits in a fun and enjoyable way, especially mobile games embedded with implicit learning strategies. Video games include many levels of challenges, imaginative virtual worlds, and the opportunity to navigate them in distinct ways. While much is known about the design of serious games, recent research has highlighted the gap in understanding probable links between game-playing behaviors and observed outcomes so that game design and redesign can be informed through evidence-based knowledge and practices [23-25]. Existing randomized controlled trials (RCTs) predominantly compare health-related outcomes between treatment and control groups without examining how the games are played [21,22,26]. To design appropriate interventions in the game environment for children’s health-related behavior formation and change, we need to learn more about the underlying patterns of player behaviors or engagement evidenced during gameplay.

The availability of highly granular game telemetry—data obtained about the actual clicks made by players as they navigate the game—provides a unique opportunity to understand the potential associations between game-playing behaviors and observed outcomes. These clickstream data are usually used to identify flaws in game design and improve user retention measures such as churn and attrition [27,28]. The growing field of game analytics mostly focuses on using game telemetry to discover and communicate meaningful characteristics in the context of game development and impact [29]. For example, Westera and colleagues [30] use aggregated game metrics, such as total time played, number of user actions, and number of videos viewed, to describe student engagement and associate these aggregated variables with student learning outcomes. Similarly, Sharma and colleagues [7] examine the relations between aggregate game metrics (time spent in game play and levels played) and health behavioral outcomes. However, the dynamic of game play was not captured, missing potential insights from the flow of the game play, resulting in a gap in existing studies [31]. Additionally, identifying which paths result in the longest game time and what game features engage players in these paths require methods to learn paths from observed outcomes. These clickstream data are usually used to engage players in these paths so that game-playing behaviors and observed outcomes so that game design and redesign can be informed through evidence-based knowledge and practices [23-25]. Existing randomized controlled trials (RCTs) predominantly compare health-related outcomes between treatment and control groups without examining how the games are played [21,22,26]. To design appropriate interventions in the game environment for children’s health-related behavior formation and change, we need to learn more about the underlying patterns of player behaviors or engagement evidenced during gameplay.

Serious games are generally considered an effective intervention for influencing healthy eating behaviors in children [21,22], with some exceptions [9,12,14]. There are studies providing evidence of their positive effects on food intake [4]. Existing randomized controlled trials (RCTs) predominantly compare health-related outcomes between treatment and control groups without examining how the games are played [21,22,26]. To design appropriate interventions in the game environment for children’s health-related behavior formation and change, we need to learn more about the underlying patterns of player behaviors or engagement evidenced during gameplay.

The availability of highly granular game telemetry—data obtained about the actual clicks made by players as they navigate the game—provides a unique opportunity to understand the potential associations between game-playing behaviors and observed outcomes. These clickstream data are usually used to identify flaws in game design and improve user retention measures such as churn and attrition [27,28]. The growing field of game analytics mostly focuses on using game telemetry to discover and communicate meaningful characteristics in the context of game development and impact [29]. For example, Westera and colleagues [30] use aggregated game metrics, such as total time played, number of user actions, and number of videos viewed, to describe student engagement and associate these aggregated variables with student learning outcomes. Similarly, Sharma and colleagues [7] examine the relations between aggregate game metrics (time spent in game play and levels played) and health behavioral outcomes. However, the dynamic of game play was not captured, missing potential insights from the flow of the game play, resulting in a gap in existing studies [31]. Additionally, identifying which paths result in the longest game time and what game features engage players in these paths so that game-playing behaviors and observed outcomes so that game design and redesign can be informed through evidence-based knowledge and practices [23-25]. Existing randomized controlled trials (RCTs) predominantly compare health-related outcomes between treatment and control groups without examining how the games are played [21,22,26]. To design appropriate interventions in the game environment for children’s health-related behavior formation and change, we need to learn more about the underlying patterns of player behaviors or engagement evidenced during gameplay.
the mobile serious game fooya!, an action video game designed to promote healthy eating and physical activity in children [33]. The primary education components are implicitly embedded in the game, aiming to make players think deeply and strategically, without the game explicitly showing the right answers. For example, the avatar in the game collects highly prized coins by fighting against enemies made up of unhealthy foods. Building on prior descriptive work [34], we first examine the immediate impact of fooya! on children’s food choices in comparison with a game without educational components (Uno board game) using an RCT study design. We then examine the various patterns of player engagement and investigate their effects on player food choices. Observed food choice data, game telemetry, and survey data are collected from the RCT, and a relevant subset of the data are analyzed in this study.

This study adds to the literature on serious health games for children by evaluating the effect of a video game with implicit learning on dietary behavior. In addition, this study makes two novel contributions to the literature. First, while it is well known that children have different play patterns during game play, our research quantifies and measures these differences by looking into the detailed game telemetry and constructing measurable variables such as the length of the activity sequence, number of transitions between actions, and frequency of reading food facts in contrast with analyzing survey, interview, and observational data and serves as the first step for evidence-based personalization. Second, this paper provides novel and granular insights into designing more impactful interventions on mobile games using the lens of examining the complex interactions between game playing patterns and health behaviors.

Objectives

The objectives of this study are to (1) examine the immediate impact of a pediatric dietary mobile game with implicit learning on children’s actual food choices, (2) quantify children’s heterogeneous game play patterns, and (3) understand the effects of game engagement by associating game play patterns with players’ actual food choices.

Theoretical Background

The key knowledge for eating healthfully is implicitly embedded in fooya! (eg, the fact that the avatar’s speed and body shape vary in response to the type of food intake) and also presented as nutrition facts at the end of each level. The output of implicit learning, representing the practical knowledge needed to perform a behavior [15], is necessary for behavioral change [35]. This knowledge can be delivered effectively in a game if its engaging nature can trigger children’s intrinsic motivation to pay attention to and engage in the game-like neurocognitive training [36]. This enactive learning process—learning by doing and experiencing the consequences of one’s actions—that the players experience virtually in the game, through the actions of the avatar, also contributes to behavioral change [35,37]. As promoted by the Institute for the Learning Sciences [38], learning by doing is an approach for mastering some real-world tasks. The learning experience in the game can be further transferred to real-world principles, without instructions to concentrate on problem similarity [39,40]. This suggests that actions that result in healthier body shape are retained and those that lead to negative consequences, such as heavier body shape, will be refined or discarded in the real world, which motivates our objective 1.

While children may learn from the experience, they may learn in different ways. Learning styles are often used to describe the distinct characteristics of children during their learning process, such as their use of problem-solving strategies and decision-making behaviors [41-44]. Different learning styles are found to be related to children’s learning outcomes, such as grades, spoken language, and general conduct [41,43,45-47]. The form-function shifts model by Saxe [48,49] assumes that development of thinking can be understood through examination of children’s goal-directed activity, which is also true in game environments. For example, Buckley and Doyle [47] find several relationships between learning styles and game engagement. Hassan and colleagues [42] are able to predict students’ learning styles using play logs with 72% to 78% accuracy. Nasir [50] analyzes video tapes to understand players’ cognitive learning when playing a video game. Therefore, for objectives 2 and 3, we assume that different patterns of game play may lead to different learning outcomes.

In portraying children’s engagement in the game for objectives 2 and 3, we have adapted the MDA (mechanics, dynamics, aesthetics) framework of Hunicke and colleagues [51]. Aesthetics, which “describes the desirable emotional responses evoked in the player when she interacts with the game system” [51], was not included in our paper as it was unobserved. We define player’s reactions to incentives (labeled as incentives) and behaviors in learning about foods (labeled as food learning) as two separate components, as opposed to the paper by Hunicke and colleagues [51], which includes these two in mechanics. Therefore, in this paper, we define game mechanics as the various avatar activities and game features that were experienced by the player (excluding incentives and food learning), game dynamics as the observed responses when the players interact with game mechanics, game strategies as players’ reactions to incentives, and food learning as players’ choices in learning food-related knowledge in the game.

Methods

Intervention

The intervention used in this study, fooya!, is a mobile gaming app available on iOS and Android platforms that employs mechanisms of implicit learning [33]. Based on experiments and hypotheses derived from pediatric neuropsychology [52], fooya! was developed to deliver therapeutic entertainment that makes healthy behavior change fun for the children. Through prior pilot studies, foil! has been shown to deliver positive outcomes with respect to food choices, self-reported dietary choices, and healthy eating intentions [34].

Fooya! is designed as an epic action game with an avatar fighting against robots that represent unhealthy/bad foods. Players present themselves as avatars in fooya!, which currently has 80 game levels that progress with increasing difficulty. In each level, the players’ main goals are to maintain a good body shape for the avatar and earn enough coins to win the level and...
unlock the next level. The body shape changes according to the avatar’s food consumption and physical activity (running/jumping) movements, and the changes affect the speed of the avatar. As the avatar consumes more calories, it becomes heavier and its movements become slower. Incentives such as highly prized coins can be earned by destroying the robots (composed of bad foods) using ammo (short for ammunition, composed of bad foods), which implicitly conveys the idea of getting rid of bad foods. Another way to earn the coins, at twice the rate, is by hitting the robots using a shield obtained by consuming good foods (Figure 1a). This feature implicitly conveys the idea that good foods can provide protection from the negative effects of unhealthy foods. After a level is finished, the screen will display a performance summary (Figure 1b) as well as all the food items encountered by the player in that level. The player can choose to click and read these nutrition facts (Figure 1c). Winning a level unlocks the next level, and the player can choose either to replay a level or proceed to the next level (Figure 1d). Throughout the game, the players were not explicitly taught what the healthy and unhealthy foods are and what foods the avatar should consume. The app has no conversation built into the game at any stage, hence explicitly teaching children about healthy/unhealthy foods using language features is not possible. It is designed to be language neutral and has no literacy requirement for use.

Figure 1. Screenshots of Fooya: (a) player is shielded by the bubble after consuming water, (b) performance summary after completing a level, (c) nutrition facts of a chosen food, and (d) level selection.

Experiment and Data

An RCT with pre- and posttreatment measurements was conducted to achieve the objectives of this study. FriendsLearn Inc provided technology access, data collection and extraction, and management support [53]. Power analysis indicated that, with an effect size of 0.50, alpha level of .05, and power of 0.80, at least 102 children needed to be recruited [54,55]. The RCT was conducted in Chennai, India, and had a sample of 104 participants aged 10 to 11 years (same grade) recruited from 3 classes in 3 schools with similar socioeconomic background, one from each school. All students in the participating classes were eligible to join the study. Approvals and availability of class schedules to complete the experiment were confirmed with the school principals and grade teachers prior to the study design. Additionally, all participating students and their parents provided informed consent, and students were randomly assigned to control and treatment groups (Table 1). Demographics (gender, BMI, baseline food preference) were not significantly different between the control and treatment groups ($P > .17$). Institutional review board approvals from the Center for Media Studies in India, Carnegie Mellon University, and Hofstra University were also obtained. This RCT was retrospectively registered on ClinicalTrials.gov [NCT04082195]. No alterations were made to the experiment design after the RCT began.
Table 1. Sample size, random assignments, and demographic distribution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demographics</th>
<th>Treatment group schools (n=52)</th>
<th>Control group schools (n=52)</th>
<th>P value&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A (n=20)</td>
<td>B (n=16)</td>
<td>C (n=16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male, n (%)</td>
<td>11 (55)</td>
<td>8 (50)</td>
<td>6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female, n (%)</td>
<td>9 (45)</td>
<td>8 (50)</td>
<td>10 (63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;), mean (SD)</td>
<td>17.3 (3.20)</td>
<td>18.1 (4.13)</td>
<td>_&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoodBase&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;, n (%)</td>
<td>8 (50)</td>
<td>3 (23)</td>
<td>3 (21)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>P values were reported from chi-square tests for gender and GoodBase and 2-sample t test for BMI for the pooled sample from schools A and B only, because data from school C were excluded when performing statistical tests for objectives 1 and 3.

<sup>b</sup>BMI for school C was not collected.

<sup>c</sup>GoodBase captures the number of students who reported good food as their favorite food at baseline. There are some missing values for this variable.

A structured pretest questionnaire was used to collect demographics, food eaten in the previous week, food preferences, and use/frequency of playing video games. Students in the treatment group played fooya! for 20 minutes in a continuous session during the school day, while the control group played a board game (Uno), which does not deliver any knowledge about healthy eating. After the game, the children were shown 3 pairs of food items (healthy and unhealthy) offered from 3 categories—drinks (water and Nimbooz, a carbonated soft drink), savory snacks (cashews and Lays potato chips), and sweet snacks (raisins and a 5 Star chocolate bar)—and asked to choose 2 items. These food items were chosen due to their popularity among children of that age in that region of India. Food selection was conducted in a separate room from the game playing classroom, except in school C, where students made their food choices in the game playing room with other students present. Because this posed the risk of potential contamination of their food choices, school C was excluded from all analyses related to food choices. After the food choice, students were allowed to consume the selected food items.

Research staff who recorded the food choice responses were blinded to whether the kids were from the control or treatment group, and participants were blinded to the purpose of the study. Finally, a posttest questionnaire was administered to collect information similar to the pretest questionnaire but with additional information on nutritional knowledge. One week later, the same procedure was administered again with the exception of the pretest survey. Therefore, the children were exposed to the intervention twice, 1 week apart, each for 20 minutes, with children mostly picking up the game from where they left off in the first session. Figure 2 illustrates the study procedures.

Figure 2. Study procedures.

This study is based on a subset of the data collected during the above-mentioned RCT. We analyzed data collected from three sources: survey data (one question each from pretest and posttest), observations of the children’s actual food choices, and game telemetry that included about 65,000 game play actions/clicks. Objectives 1 and 3 were investigated using the data collected from schools A and B, and objective 2 was analyzed using the data from all three schools. Survey data that were irrelevant to our objectives were not analyzed or reported. Figure 3 provides the details of the flow of participants and data being analyzed.
Analysis for Objective 1
To analyze the main effect on actual food choice (objective 1), the total number of good foods chosen in two exposures by the treatment and control groups was compared. We also examined the main effect on food knowledge, measured by one survey question asking the students to identify healthy food items from a list of 4 items. The total number of correctly identified healthy food items in two surveys was compared between the control and treatment groups. As secondary outcomes, the effects on the changes of both major outcomes were assessed. Mann-Whitney U tests were applied to avoid normality assumption. Cohen d was calculated to obtain effect size.

Analysis for Objective 2
To explore children’s game play patterns (objective 2), we focused on the telemetry data generated by the participants assigned to the treatment group. Our goal was to understand how each game feature was used and summarize play patterns when children encountered the features for the first time. Therefore, only the data associated with the first encounter of a level by each child was analyzed even if children repeated playing a level a second time.

First of all, each player’s telemetry data were processed and encoded according to a feature labeling scheme by which every feature in the game was assigned a distinct feature label. Labels S and E were used to indicate the initiation and termination, respectively, of the level. Labels 1 to 5 represent players’ events in the game associated with their avatar (Table 2): (1) consuming good/healthy foods to shield themselves from bad/unhealthy food robots (good food shield), (2) destroying a robot using a shield (destroy by shield), (3) shooting bad food ammo (bad food shot), (4) destroying a robot using bad food shots (destroy by shot), and (5) being hit with bad foods thrown by robots (hit). These labeled events were ordered chronologically to form a sequence based on their recorded timestamps. For example, the time stamped events shown in Table 3 will result in a sequence of S124331E, which has a sequence length of 8 with 6 transitions. More details are described elsewhere [34], and our method of sequence labeling is consistent with existing studies [32,56,57]. These sequences were used to model the process of game playing at any level across all students as a discrete,
time-homogeneous, first-order Markov chain with 7 states, one for each labeled event.

In addition to describing the game play patterns as a model, we further defined game play measures using the MDA framework [51]. The first component in the MDA model is game mechanics, measured as the highest level played in the 2 sessions (Level_max) and average sequence length across levels played (Avg_Seqlen). The second component is game dynamics, which describes how swiftly, or dynamically, the player navigates different features. This is measured by the average number of transitions to a different state in a level across all levels played (Avg_transition). The third component is game strategies, which capture how the player reacts to game rewards. Some might not react to the reward program, others may work hard to get rewards, and still others may figure out the approach to earn rewards strategically. This is measured by the proportion of robots destroyed by shield (Sum2_Sum2+4). To make sure that this is a legal fraction, we use [52] for each player. This measure is chosen to reflect the fact that destroying a robot by shield is highly rewarded with coins and thus demonstrates how strategically a player is amassing rewards. The last game component is food learning. We measure this by counting the average number of good and bad food facts read per level (AvgGFact and AvgBFact, respectively). Descriptive statistics are calculated to summarize these variables.

### Table 2. Definitions of each feature label.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Player starts the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Player finishes the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Player consumes good food to generate shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Robot killed by good food shields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Player shoots bad food ammo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Robot killed by bad food shots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Player hit by bad food robot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3. Example of timestamped data and labeling producing sequence S124331E.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-20-19-775</td>
<td>Player starts the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-20-26-482</td>
<td>Player consumes good food to generate shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-20-28-956</td>
<td>Robot killed by good food shields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-21-10-714</td>
<td>Robot killed by bad food shots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-21-10-814</td>
<td>Player shoots bad food ammo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-21-10-894</td>
<td>Player shoots bad food ammo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-21-14-717</td>
<td>Player consumes good food to generate shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>7/10</td>
<td>09-21-20-281</td>
<td>Player finishes the level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis for Objective 3

To examine the effects of player engagement on actual food choices (objective 3), we first identified the game play measures (the 6 measures for the MDA framework defined in objective 2) that were associated with the behavioral outcome. To this end, we conducted Kendall $\tau$ correlation tests (to avoid the linearity assumption) and stepwise feature selection using the `step()` function in the stats package in the R software (R Foundation for Statistical Computing). The identified variables were then included as explanatory variables in regression models for the total number of good foods chosen in 2 sessions (GoodChoice, ranging from 0 to 4) [36]. We considered modeling GoodChoice as normal and Poisson distributions. The normal distribution was chosen as it had the lowest Akaike information criterion for the distribution fit (values for normal and Poisson were 79.64 and 84.23, respectively). Given the fact that GoodChoice was a count measure, a Poisson regression was also run. We used the data pooled from the 2 sessions to avoid spillover effects. Similar to objective 2, only the first-encounter sequences were used in this analysis.

### Results

**Objective 1**

For objective 1, we found strong evidence of the positive main effect of the mobile game on food choices (Table 4). Specifically, children from the treatment group chose 1.38 more good foods during the 2 exposures, on average, than the control group (treatment 2.48, control 1.10; $P<.001$; Cohen $d=1.25$). The power to detect such an effect size, with an alpha level of .05 and sample size of 58, was more than 99% [54,55]. The number of healthy foods correctly identified by the treatment group in the posttest survey question was also significantly higher.
higher than the control group (treatment 7.3, control 6.94; \(P = .048\); Cohen \(d = .25\)).

When comparing the change in both outcomes (day 2 – day 1) between the two groups, no statistically significant results were found, suggesting that the impact of the intervention on healthy food choices after the first session may be sustained after the second session. Additionally, the nonsignificant effects of the game on the change in food choices may have been partly due to the low dosage the children received in the experiment—only 40 minutes in two sessions combined, played 1 week apart. This result supports both the theory and literature, described in the Introduction, that game play experience is associated with health behavioral outcomes. Next, we investigated the potential patterns during game play that were related to this observed positive main effect with analyses of objectives 2 and 3.

Table 4. Treatment effects on food choice and knowledge.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Actual food choice</th>
<th>Good food ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(T^a (n=27),) mean(SD)</td>
<td>(C^b (n=31),) mean(SD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of good foods chosen/identified in 2 days (0 to 4 for choice; 0 to 8 for ID; day 1 + day 2)(^e)</td>
<td>2.48 (1.19)</td>
<td>1.10 (1.08)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in the number of good foods chosen/identified (–2 to 2 for choice; –8 to 8 for ID; day 2 – day 1)(^e)</td>
<td>–0.11 (–0.93)</td>
<td>–0.13 (1.02)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a\): Treatment.  
\(b\): Control.  
\(c\): \(P\) values are reported from Mann-Whitney tests.  
\(d\): Cohen \(d\).  
\(e\): Only the responses available on both days for schools A and B were used for comparison.

**Objective 2**

A total of 842 sequences were collated from the approximately 65,000 game play actions/clicks. Out of these, 115 sequences from repeated plays of random game levels by 38 children were removed, resulting in 727 first-encounter sequences for analysis. The telemetry data analysis indicated high variability in game play patterns among the children (Table 5). For example, children played 15 levels in 2 sessions, on average, ranging from a low of only 2 levels to a high of 23 levels. Coefficient of variation indicated that the largest variance among the variables was in the proportion of scoring activities that were highly rewarded (\(\text{Sum2}_2\_\text{Sum2+4}\)), with an average of 0.17, ranging from 0.003 to 0.98. The descriptive summary in Table 6 shows that there was also a large variation in feature use among children and types of features. The variation was illustrated by the sample sequences shown in Figure 4. While child 15, in Figure 4, did not perhaps know that they could throw bad foods at level 2, they learned to use all features by level 5. In contrast, child 16 was only hit by the robots and could not find a way to fight back. Across different players and their levels of play, the number, type, and sequences of states greatly varied and was reflective of their game experience.
Table 5. Summary statistics of game play measures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MDA&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; components and game play measures</th>
<th>Min&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>Max&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Variance</th>
<th>Coefficient of variation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Game mechanics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level_max</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14.78</td>
<td>23.00</td>
<td>21.73</td>
<td>31.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg_Seqlen</td>
<td>8.96</td>
<td>65.77</td>
<td>145.42</td>
<td>893.28</td>
<td>45.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Game dynamics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg_transition</td>
<td>3.64</td>
<td>22.51</td>
<td>40.37</td>
<td>76.70</td>
<td>38.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Game strategies</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum2_Sum2+4</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>131.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Food learning</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgGFact</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>98.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgBFact</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>117.85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>MDA: mechanics, dynamics, aesthetics.
<sup>b</sup>Min: minimum.
<sup>c</sup>Max: maximum.

Table 6. Frequency by state for selected levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Level 1 (n=50)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Level 10 (n=41)</th>
<th>Level 20 (n=8)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Min&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Max&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>2.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>32.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1.76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Two children assigned to the treatment group were absent for both exposures.
<sup>b</sup>This is the last level with number of players n>5.
<sup>c</sup>Min: minimum.
<sup>d</sup>Max: maximum.

Figure 4. Sample sequences.

From the Markov chain model in Figure 5, we observe that overall, bad food shot (state 3) played a central role in the game. It could immediately follow all other activities but was mostly followed only by itself (P<sub>33</sub>=.67) or robots being destroyed by food shots (P<sub>34</sub>=.19). We also note that good food shield was seldom followed by destroy by shield (P<sub>12</sub>=.08), suggesting that children failed to identify and take advantage of this highly rewarded transition throughout the experiment. This finding also confirms the theory that children experience many different learning styles demonstrated by their varied game play patterns.
Figure 5. Markov chain for all children who played level 1 (n=50): (left) detailed plot with all transitions and (right) simplified plot with transition probabilities >0.1. The thickness of the lines is proportional to the transition probability.

Objective 3

Table 7 shows the correlation between the outcome (GoodChoice) and the game play measures. Only AvgBFact had a significant association with GoodChoice (Kendall $\tau = -0.32$, $P = 0.04$). However, both AvgBFact and AvgGFact were retained after the stepwise feature selection procedure. To explore the possible associations, both variables were included in the regression model. The results are shown in models 1 (assumed normal) and 3 (assumed Poisson) in Table 8. The normality assumption for model 1 is satisfied using the Shapiro-Wilk normality test.

Table 7. Kendall rank correlation coefficients and significance test results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>GoodChoice</th>
<th>$P$ value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level_max</td>
<td>-0.11</td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg_Seqlen</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg_transition</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum2_Sum2+4</td>
<td>-0.08</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgGFact</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgBFact</td>
<td>-0.32</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* Level_max: maximum level played.

*b* Avg_Seqlen: average sequence length across levels played.

*c* Avg_transition: average number of transitions to a different state in a level across all levels played.

*d* Sum2_Sum2+4: proportion of robots destroyed by shield.

*e* AvgGFact: average number of nutrition facts of good foods read in a level.

*f* AvgBFact: average number of nutrition facts of bad foods read in a level.
Consistent with Kendall rank test, models 1 and 3 agreed that reading more facts about bad foods is associated with worse food choices. Furthermore, we see that AvgGFact may have a positive effect, as shown in model 3. Although the data were collected from a randomized experiment, it is still a concern that these relationships may be due to the children’s food preference at baseline. To control for their food preference at baseline, we included a binary variable GoodBase indicating whether the player’s baseline preference was healthy (coded as 1) or not healthy (coded as 0). This variable was obtained from an open-ended question in the pretest survey asking the children to write down their favorite food. These open-ended answers were then coded by two raters independently. Disagreements were resolved via a consensus meeting. If no consensus could be reached, a third rater made the final decision. Cohen kappa for overall raters’ agreement was 0.72 before consensus and 0.91 after consensus [58].

The results after including the baseline food preference are shown in models 2 (assumed normal) and 4 (assumed Poisson). Not surprisingly, baseline preference had a positive effect on actual food choice. However, the negative effect of AvgBFact still remained, and the potential positive effect of AvgGFact became evident.

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings**

Video games with implicit learning strategies, perceived by children as a fun activity and not a learning tool, present a great opportunity to change children’s health behaviors by delivering relevant knowledge implicitly. However, without explicit education, whether and how the implicit knowledge can be internalized and result in behavioral change is uncertain. Despite the null effect of some video games found in recent studies [9,12,14], our study provides new evidence by comparing fooya! with a standard board game not designed to deliver implicit knowledge on healthy eating. Our result showed that a mobile game that embeds implicit learning in the game mechanism can positively impact children’s actual food choices, consistent with the theory that the tacit knowledge learned from game play can be used to make good decisions [15] and that game play experience can translate to real-world food choices [35-37]. This result is also consistent with empirical studies that have examined the effect of serious video games on health behaviors [21,22].

Furthermore, our analysis of children’s play patterns showed significant variations in game play among participants, confirming theories that suggest different children can experience different learning styles [41-43,45]. Sharma and colleagues [7] also found a high variation in time spent in game play and levels played. To the best of our knowledge, our study presents the first attempt to find support for a wide range of learning patterns among players that are associated with different outcomes. Our results show that food choice was not influenced by levels played, same as reported by Sharma and colleagues [7]. Instead, it was influenced by the food facts read in the game: reading more facts about unhealthy foods was associated with more unhealthy food choices and vice versa. This finding is counterintuitive, as one would expect that reading facts about unhealthy foods would lead to decreased choice of unhealthy foods. While our game did not suggest whether the food was good or bad, one possible explanation is that the children were not influenced by the content of the food facts but the impression (the number of views) of the food fact. This is in line with the phenomenon found in studies investigating the effects of advergames [59], in which food choice was affected by the foods advertised in the game. This may be a result of priming [60], which posits that a person’s response to the current stimuli (actual food choice) can be influenced by previous stimuli (facts read). Despite the negative effect of bad food facts, our subjects looked up more good food facts than bad food facts (actual food choice) can be influenced by previous stimuli (facts read). Despite the negative effect of bad food facts, our subjects looked up more good food facts than bad food facts, which was one of the drivers of the overall positive effect of the game.

Our results provide several implications for game design. First, serious health games with implicit education strategies as the primary mechanism can be an effective intervention for improving healthy eating behaviors. Players are able to enjoy

### Table 8. Regression results for GoodChoice\(^a\) (n=25).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Assumed normal</th>
<th>Assumed Poisson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Model 1, coefficient (robust SE)</td>
<td>P value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercept</td>
<td>2.80 (0.31)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgGFact(^b)</td>
<td>1.12 (0.91)</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgBFact(^c)</td>
<td>-9.51 (3.33)</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoodBase(^d)</td>
<td>-0.92 (0.38)</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodness of fit</td>
<td>Adjusted (R^2=0.31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Outcome variable: number of good foods chosen in day1+day2 (0–4). Only the data available on both days in schools A and B were used.

\(^b\)AvgGFact: average number of nutrition facts of good foods read in a level.

\(^c\)AvgBFact: average number of nutrition facts of bad foods read in a level.

\(^d\)GoodBase: binary variable indicating whether the player’s baseline preference was healthy or not healthy.

\(^e\)Not applicable.

\(^f\)AIC: Akaike information criterion.
the game without noticing that they are being educated. Second, video game designers may want to limit the display of unhealthy foods in the game, especially games that present players with nutritional facts on foods [9], unless some form of protective or explanatory messages are also in place. Furthermore, game designers may also want to insert displays of food facts within the level to make it easier for players to associate the food facts with the change in the avatar’s body shape and speed. Third, video games may be coupled with other interventions, whether in-game or not, for children with different game play patterns such as those who read many bad food facts in the game. This personalization of the game or intervention is made possible by associating the actual food choice with game play behaviors measured and quantified using detailed game telemetry.

Limitations and Future Research
This research provides several directions for future extensions by reviewing its limitations. The major limitation of this study is the small sample size. The authors recruited 104 students, but due to the potential bias in the behavioral outcome in one school, data from only 58 students were analyzed for objectives 1 and 3. Due to the observed large effect size, the small sample size is not a problem for objective 1. However, for objective 3, the small sample size prevents us from including the full set of game play measures and controls such as gender and other demographics. It also limits the reliability of regression estimates, especially for the 3-variable models. This small sample size, short game sessions with fixed duration, and the homogeneous subject groups also limit the generalizability of our results. However, these limitations are not unique to this paper, as can be seen in recent game-related literature. For example, existing literature reporting studies with sample size of 46 [61], 20-minute game exposure time [62], or subjects recruited from a single institution [61,63] still provide novel and useful insights. Second, the fact that the actual food choices were made immediately after playing the game limits our observed effect to be the immediate effect. Future longitudinal studies could impose a delay before making the actual food choice to minimize the priming effect and examine whether the game effect is sustained over a longer period and how long it takes for the effect to be internalized.

Third, the kids were not required to consume the chosen food items on site, raising a concern that the strategically thinking kids may choose good foods just to leave a good impression. This concern may be minimal, as the students were not told the purpose of the study. Their choices were also not observed by the people whose opinions they care about, such as their classmates or teacher. With ample sample size and data, future longitudinal studies may further minimize this concern by controlling for students’ academic performance, which can be used as a proxy for smartness. Fourth, the choice of a board game (Uno) as a control only allows us to compare the effect of fooya! with a nonserious game. With established effects of games with implicit education strategies, future studies may further examine whether fooya! is preferred to other modes of education on healthy nutrition. Fifth, the BMI in our control group is slightly higher than that in our treatment group, raising a concern that we may have overestimated the size of our main effect. However, the difference in BMI is not statistically significant between the two groups. Last, we use the game play pattern of the first play as a proxy for learning styles.

Future studies may establish the association between learning styles and game play patterns such that tailoring of the intervention can happen before game play. With the overall positive effect found in this study, future studies may also carefully craft and compare the effect of individual implicit education strategies with the results of explicit education components. In addition, analyzing the game play patterns of repeated plays of a level to understand players’ established routines rather than first-encounter effects is another avenue for exploration. With more high-quality evidence obtained from longitudinal studies that address these limitations, there is potential for such digital interventions to act as a digital vaccine for pediatric obesity.

Conclusions
Implicit and gamified learning about healthy eating delivered via a mobile app can significantly improve children’s food choices immediately after the game. While additional scientific evidence is needed to confirm that such apps can serve as a digital vaccine with long-term impact, this study provides novel insights about the potential drivers of the observed positive short-term effect. We measured and quantified the variation in children’s game play patterns that may be associated with children’s health behavior outcomes. Specifically, the positive main effect may be strengthened when players read more nutrition facts about healthy foods in the game. However, the effect is compromised when the players read more facts about unhealthy foods. Results of this study provide promising directions for the use of a viable alternative to improve children’s eating habits and help address the pediatric overweight and obesity epidemic in the long term. Future research with large scale, longitudinal RCTs is needed to fully understand how game play patterns with their underlying learning styles may facilitate desired behavioral outcomes.

Acknowledgments
The authors thank Satya Gopal, PN Ramya and Niveditha Srinivasan from Ethiraj College, Chennai, and Nikitha Carmel, Chanchal Yadav, and Rena Singhi for their help with the RCT; and Palak Narang, Sross Gupta, Dish Gupta, and Ketan Deshmukh at Carnegie Mellon University for their assistance in data processing and preliminary analysis. The authors greatly appreciate the comments and suggestions from the anonymous reviewers of JMIR, which have significantly improved the manuscript. This study was partly funded by the Remala Foundation to support graduate students with data processing and preliminary analysis.
Authors’ Contributions
RP and YCKL defined the study objectives, conducted the data analysis, and wrote and edited the manuscript. UBK and PK designed and conducted the RCT and edited the manuscript. BSP provided the mobile game intervention and technical support and edited the manuscript. BSP, VV, and SA helped to conduct the trial and collect the data. NS provided clinical knowledge and contributed to the design of the RCT.

Conflicts of Interest
Coauthor BSP is the founder and CEO of FriendsLearn, the company that produced the mobile game used in this study, but provided no financial support and did not influence the design or results of this study. Other authors declared there are no competing interests.

Editorial Notice
This randomized study was only retrospectively registered due to the lack of awareness about the need to register it by the co-authors who conducted the RCT in Chennai. They obtained the required approvals from the Institutional Review Board in India, but did not recognize the need to register the trial prior to recruiting participants. They affirm that no alterations to the experiment design were made after the RCT was initiated. The editor granted an exception from ICMJE rules mandating prospective registration of randomized trials, because the risk of bias appears low. However, readers are advised to carefully assess the validity of any potential explicit or implicit claims related to primary outcomes or effectiveness, as retrospective registration does not prevent authors from changing their outcome measures retrospectively.

Multimedia Appendix 1
CONSORT-eHEALTH checklist (V. 1. 6. 1).
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 1324 KB - mhealth_v8i11e15717_app1.pdf ]

References


33. Fooya. URL: https://fooya.com/ [accessed 2020-10-19]


Abbreviations

**Avg_Seqlen**: average sequence length across levels played

**Avg_transition**: average number of transitions to a different state in a level across all levels played

**AvgBFact**: average number of bad food facts read per level

**AvgGFact**: average number of good food facts read per level

**GoodBase**: binary variable indicating whether the player’s baseline preference was healthy or not healthy

**GoodChoice**: total number of good foods chosen in the 2 sessions

**Level_max**: highest level played in the 2 sessions

**MDA**: mechanics, dynamics, aesthetics

**RCT**: randomized controlled trial

**Sum2_Sum2+4**: proportion of robots destroyed by shield
Behavior Change Techniques in Wrist-Worn Wearables to Promote Physical Activity: Content Analysis

Abstract

Background: Decreasing levels of physical activity (PA) increase the incidences of noncommunicable diseases, obesity, and mortality. To counteract these developments, interventions aiming to increase PA are urgently needed. Mobile health (mHealth) solutions such as wearable sensors (wearables) may assist with an improvement in PA.

Objective: The aim of this study is to examine which behavior change techniques (BCTs) are incorporated in currently available commercial high-end wearables that target users’ PA behavior.

Methods: The BCTs incorporated in 5 different high-end wearables (Apple Watch Series 3, Garmin Vivoactive 3, Fitbit Versa, Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2, and Polar M600) were assessed by 2 researchers using the BCT Taxonomy version 1 (BCTTv1). Effectiveness of the incorporated BCTs in promoting PA behavior was assessed by a content analysis of the existing literature.

Results: The most common BCTs were goal setting (behavior), action planning, review behavior goal(s), discrepancy between current behavior and goal, feedback on behavior, self-monitoring of behavior, and biofeedback. Fitbit Versa, Garmin Vivoactive 3, Apple Watch Series 3, Polar M600, and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 incorporated 17, 16, 12, 11, and 11 BCTs, respectively, which are proven to effectively promote PA.

Conclusions: Wearables employ different numbers and combinations of BCTs, which might impact their effectiveness in improving PA. To promote PA by employing wearables, we encourage researchers to develop a taxonomy specifically designed to assess BCTs incorporated in wearables. We also encourage manufacturers to customize BCTs based on the targeted populations.

Introduction

Various forms of physical activity (PA) reduce the incidence of noncommunicable diseases, obesity, and mortality. However, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), levels of physical inactivity are increasing with approximately 28% of adults failing to meet PA guidelines [1]. Therefore, measures to increase PA are urgently needed.

Behavioral PA interventions (eg, employing cognitive and behavioral techniques to modify and increase PA behavior) successfully increase PA [2]. However, these interventions target smaller groups of mostly previously motivated participants. The eHealth and mobile health (mHealth) [3] solutions employing wearable sensors (wearables) may encourage various populations to increase their levels of PA on a larger scale. Wearables monitor certain components of PA via surrogate markers (eg, movement acceleration converted to metabolic equivalents or electrical signals converted to heart rate) [4] and provide biofeedback [5], thereby potentially assisting in elevating PA. A recent review concludes that...
wearables have the potential to increase PA participation as long as wearables are the primary component of an intervention or part of a broader intervention [6]. Additionally, the WHO aims to endorse digital health concepts [7]. In Germany, physicians are permitted to prescribe digital health solutions if proven to be effective [8]. At the same time, wearable-assisted interventions may be more cost-effective than traditional interventions [9].

To promote PA, different behavior change techniques (BCT) can be incorporated in wearables, which likely have different outcomes for promoting PA [3]. The selection of wearables using appropriate BCTs based on specific research questions and goals of healthy behavior is particularly crucial in the continuously growing wearable market. Manufacturers are releasing new models with rapidly changing features at least once every year, creating more choices for researchers and consumers.

Currently, little is known about how wearables differ from each other and which technologies are more effective in increasing levels of PA. Therefore, this study aimed to examine which BCTs targeting PA behavior are incorporated in the commercially available high-end wearables.

**Methods**

**Wearables**

For our analysis, we chose wearables manufactured by leading companies in the market [10]. The 5 wrist-worn wearables were the Apple Watch Series 3 (Apple Inc), Fitbit Versa (Fitbit Inc), Garmin Vivofit 3 (Garmin), Polar M600 (Polar Electro Oy), and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 (Huami Technology). Each wearable was installed as instructed by the respective manufacturer and was synchronized with the companion app for smartphones (Apple iPhones).

**Coding Procedure**

Wearables and companion apps were coded using the BCT Taxonomy Version 1 (BCTTv1), which was previously employed in similar studies [11-13]. The BCTTv1 is explained in detail by Michie et al [14]. Briefly, the BCTTv1 incorporated 93 nonredundant techniques, grouped into 16 hierarchical clusters in total, each coded using a dichotomous score of either 0 or 1, indicating nonpresence or presence, respectively [14].

Each wearable was worn by 2 researchers (MT and PD) for 1 week. The 2 researchers were well acquainted with the handling of the wearables, using the companion apps, and employing the BCTTv1. The researchers completed the training on the BCTTv1 website [15] before the analysis. Interrater reliability assessing each wearable incorporating a BCT was calculated using a kappa statistic in SPSS 22.0 (IBM Corp). Magnitude of agreement was interpreted as per the following criteria: 0.00=poor, 0.01-0.20=slight, 0.21-0.40=fair, 0.41-0.60=moderate, 0.61-0.80=substantial, and 0.81-1.00=almost perfect [16].

Coding disagreements were resolved by a discussion between the researchers. In case of disagreement, a third researcher's opinion (SK) was included to resolve the disagreement.

In line with the aim of this study, BCTs targeting PA were examined, while the feedback on other factors (eg, sleep or diet) was ignored. The researchers were instructed to include periods of physical inactivity as well as those of PA into the assessment week to verify the corresponding feedback by wearables.

**Evaluating the Effectiveness of BCTs in the Wearables to Promote PA**

To evaluate the potential effects of incorporated BCTs, we employed a previous list [9] created for the same purpose. The list is based on a meta-analysis [17,18], meta-regression [19], and systematic reviews [20-22] as well as recommendations from the US Preventive Services Taskforce [23]. These BCTs were marked with checkmarks in Table 1. As in the earlier study [9], we used this list to count the number of effective BCTs, which were incorporated in each wearable to promote PA.

**Results**

Table 1 summarizes the different BCTs incorporated in the 5 different wearables. Techniques from the taxonomy not immanent in any of the systems were excluded from the table. One disagreement between the original 2 researchers was solved by the opinion of the third one. The interrater reliability was almost perfect (Cohen kappa=0.965).
Table 1. Behavior change techniques incorporated in different wrist-worn wearables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BCTs&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Proven effectiveness to promote physical activity</th>
<th>Apple Watch Series 3</th>
<th>Fitbit Versa</th>
<th>Garmin Vivoactive 3</th>
<th>Polar M600</th>
<th>Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2</th>
<th>Incorporations, N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goal setting (behavior) (item 1.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrier identification/problem solving (item 1.2)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action planning (item 1.4)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review behavior goal(s) (item 1.5)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discrepancy between current behavior and goal (item 1.6)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commitment (item 1.9)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feedback on behavior (item 2.2)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-monitoring of behavior (item 2.3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biofeedback (item 2.6)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social support (unspecified) (item 3.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social support (emotional) (item 3.3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction on how to perform the behavior (item 4.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information about health consequences (item 5.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information about social and environmental consequences (item 5.3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of emotional consequences (item 5.4)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information about emotional consequences (item 5.6)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstration of the behavior (item 6.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social comparison (item 6.2)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompts/cues (item 7.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavioral practice/rehearsal (item 8.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graded tasks (item 8.7)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credible source (item 9.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonspecific reward (item 10.3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social reward (item 10.4)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonspecific incentive (item 10.6)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Incorporations, N

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BCTs (^a)</th>
<th>Proven effectiveness to promote physical activity</th>
<th>Apple Watch Series 3</th>
<th>Fitbit Versa</th>
<th>Garmin Vivoactive 3</th>
<th>Polar M600</th>
<th>Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2</th>
<th>Incorporations, N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Self-reward (item 10.9)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding objects to the environment (item 12.5)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reward approximation (item 14.4)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Situation-specific reward (item 14.6)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbal persuasion about capability (item 15.1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus on past success (item 15.3)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-talk (item 15.4)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCT clusters, n</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporated BCTs, n</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporated BCTs with proven effectiveness [17-23], n</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)BCT: behavior change technique.
\(^b\)Available as a paid add-on feature.
\(^c\)Not applicable.

**Incorporated BCTs**

Out of the 93 BCTs analyzed by the BCTTv1, 26 different BCTs were incorporated in the 5 wearables. On average, 19 BCTs (range 15-24) were incorporated in the wearables. Fitbit Versa and Garmin Vivoactive 3 incorporated the most BCTs (n=24), followed by Apple Watch Series 3 (n=18), Polar M600 (n=16), and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 (n=15). Due to technical issues with the Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 device, we could not evaluate the BCT item of social support (emotional) (item 3.3); thereby, that item was not marked as incorporated with a checkmark in Table 1. Multimedia Appendix 1 provides detailed information about how often a BCT was incorporated in each wearable.

According to Lyons et al [9], 23 BCTs are effective in promoting PA. Out of these BCTs, Garmin Vivoactive 3 (n=16) and Fitbit Versa (n=14 + 3 paid BCTs) incorporate most BCTs, followed by Apple Watch Series 3 (n=12), Polar M600 (n=11), and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 (n=11). Only Fitbit Versa and Garmin Vivoactive 3 included the BCT items of instruction on how to perform behavior and behavioral practice/rehearsal. None of the wearables included the following BCT items: barrier identification/problem solving, self-reward, self-talk, commitment, information about social and environmental consequences, and information about emotional consequences.

**Clusters**

On average, 11 (range 8-13) clusters were incorporated in the 5 wrist-worn wearables. Fitbit Versa and Garmin Vivoactive 3 incorporated most clusters (n=13), followed by Apple Watch Series 3 (n=10), Amazfit Stratos 2 (n=10), and Polar M600 (n=8). The 3 most common clusters were goals and planning (cluster 1) (n=4), feedback and monitoring (cluster 2) (n=3), and reward and threat (cluster 10) (n=3).

**Discussion**

This study was designed to examine which BCTs were incorporated in the leading high-end wearables to promote PA. Our major findings were as follows:

1. The most common BCTs were goal setting (behavior), action planning, review behavior goal(s), discrepancy between current behavior and goal, feedback on behavior, self-monitoring of behavior, biofeedback, social support (unspecified), social comparison, prompts/cues, social reward, and adding objects to the environment.

2. Wearables often incorporate the same BCTs according to the BCTTv1. However, Fitbit Versa and Garmin Vivoactive 3 provided the most and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 provided the least number of BCTs.

3. Fitbit Versa (n=17) and Garmin Vivoactive 3 (n=16) offered the most BCTs, which showed to be effective to promote PA, while Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 and Polar M600 had the least number of BCTs (n=11).

The number of incorporated BCTs in this study is in line with previous research examining incorporated BCTs within earlier versions of the wearables tested herein [11-13]. In studies comparing different wearables, Fitbit incorporated a higher number of BCTs than those incorporated by the Garmin [12] or Polar [11,13] wearables.

Absolute numbers of BCTs incorporated in wearables might not effectively inform about which wearables seem suitable to increase levels of PA. People’s decision making can be...
A combination of BCTs (with proven effectiveness) may maximize effectiveness in promoting PA. A meta-analysis revealed that (1) “provide information about behavior–health link” combined with “prompt intention formation” (mean effect size, \(g=0.46\)) and (2) “provide information about behavior–health link” combined with “provide information on consequences” and “use of follow-up prompts” (mean effect size, \(g=0.44\)) were the most successful BCTs to alter health behavior [26]. When converted to the BCTTv1 taxonomy, the equivalent BCTs are (1) information about health consequences (item 5.1) combined with action planning (item 1.4), and (2) information about health consequences (item 5.1) with prompts/cues (item 7.1), respectively. A total of 4 devices tested herein (those manufactured by Fitbit, Garmin, Polar, and Xiaomi) incorporated all these BCTs; while the device manufactured by Apple incorporated all the BCTs except the information about health consequences (item 5.1).

Although the aforementioned BCTs and their combinations are effective in promoting PA on group level, effective BCTs may differ for specific populations and on an individual level. In fact, individual characteristics (eg, age, PA level, and personality) play a key role in a person’s choices and continuous device usages [27]. Consequently, it may be worthwhile to customize the incorporated BCTs in wearables to meet individual characteristics for PA promotion.

On an individual level, the effectiveness of BCTs and the choice of a wearable depend on practical factors. For example, BCTs incorporated in wearables are only effective when worn, which (among other factors) depend largely on personal preferences, including design and texture, battery life, and handling [27]. Additionally, sensor data that prompt different BCTs need reliable information [28]. For example, if a wearable uses inertial measurement units and optical heart rate sensors to calculate a person’s energy expenditure (a surrogate marker of PA) for prompting different BCTs, the sensor data and algorithms need to be as accurate as possible. Otherwise, the BCTs may mislead and ultimately fail personal PA goals. In our experience, companies often do not disclose the information of sensor data and algorithms applied to prompt a certain BCT. Transparency in this regard would assist in understanding the prompting of BCT and identifying preferred wearables to promote PA.

An effective increase of PA also depends on the user’s awareness of PA and its impact on health [29]. Using wearables without such knowledge might not represent an optimal option to improve PA. Although a recent meta-analysis showed that wearables improve PA (ie, measured by the number of daily steps, moderate to vigorous PA, and energy expenditure) discretely, a combination of wearables with other BCTs (eg, telephone counseling or group-based education) shows better results in increasing levels of PA [6].

Since wearables are commercially available, they can be used by consumers without consulting an expert opinion (eg, opinion of an exercise physiologist or a health expert). Potentially, the lack of professional guidance can induce unfavorable or dangerous PA participation (eg, by increasing PA too rapidly).

**Limitations**

Although the taxonomy we applied to assess BCTs in wearables was employed previously [9], this taxonomy was not directly developed for machine to person (ie, wearable to consumer) interaction but for person to person (ie, psychologist to patient) interaction. This modification results in some difficulties in the application of this taxonomy. For example, different surrogate markers of PA (eg, number of steps or energy expenditure) can be employed to prompt the same BCT. To the best of our knowledge, it remains unclear which surrogate marker is most suitable as a basis for BCTs to improve PA.

Additionally, the BCTTv1 taxonomy does not allow certain functions, for example, evaluating how a BCT is visualized, evaluating how frequently BCTs are implemented (eg, daily report and hourly feedback), and determining whether a BCT is interactive (eg, a BCT disappears from the screen when an increase in PA is detected). However, we assume that these aspects affect the effectiveness of the BCTs and hence, that of the respective wearables in altering PA behavior among users.

Since the number of wearables promoting PA is rapidly increasing, we urge researchers to develop a taxonomy covering these aspects to assess the preferred BCTs employed by wearables.

Some BCTs displayed by the wearables addressed sedentary behavior as well as PA (ie, prompts/cues). Sedentary behavior is recognized as an independent behavior of PA [30,31]. In this study, we did not separate BCTs in terms of PA behavior and sedentary behavior. However, sedentary behavior and PA follow unique intervention logic [31,32], and research suggests that different factors influence each behavior. Future research should analyze the incorporated BCTs in wearables for sedentary behavior, separately of PA. Targeting both behaviors can have greater health benefits.

The shelf life of consumer-grade wearables, such as that of the devices we analyzed in this study, is short. Manufacturers frequently release new models, while older ones disappear from the market. Consequently, frequent assessment of new wearables, ideally before the market release (as recommended elsewhere [28]) is warranted.

**Conclusions**

Based on our analysis, we conclude that out of all the tested wearables, Fitbit Versa (n=14+3 paid) and Garmin Vivoactive 3 (n=16) included most of the BCTs with proved effectiveness, followed by Apple Watch 5 (n=12), Polar M600 (n=11), and Xiaomi Amazfit Stratos 2 (n=11). Out of all the tested wearables, Garmin Vivoactive 3 and Fitbit Versa might be the most promising wearables to promote PA from a psychological perspective. However, future studies need to evaluate the effectiveness of these devices in experimental studies along with the validity and reliability of variables obtained by these devices. Since no specific taxonomy is available to investigate BCTs incorporated in digital health tools, including wearables manufactured by Apple incorporated all the BCTs except the information about health consequences (item 5.1).
for promoting PA, we advise developing such a taxonomy given the global urgency to improve PA and the increasing popularity and availability of wearables. Since the effectiveness of BCTs is affected by individual characteristics, we recommend manufacturers to allow customization of BCTs.

Acknowledgments

This publication was supported by the Open Access Publication Fund of the University of Wuerzburg.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Examples of the behavior change techniques incorporated in the wearables tested herein. [PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 39627 KB - mhealth_v8i11e20820_app1.pdf]

References

15. BCT Taxonomy Online Training. URL: https://www.bct-taxonomy.com/ [accessed 2020-11-02]


Abbreviations

BCT: behavior change technique
BCTTv1: BCT Taxonomy version 1
mHealth: mobile health
PA: physical activity
WHO: World Health Organization
Behavior Change Techniques in Wrist-Worn Wearables to Promote Physical Activity: Content Analysis

Düking P, Tafler M, Wallmann-Sperlich B, Sperlich B, Kleih S

©Peter Düking, Marie Tafler, Birgit Wallmann-Sperlich, Billy Sperlich, Sonja Kleih. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 19.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Pre-Conception Interventions for Subfertile Couples Undergoing Assisted Reproductive Technology Treatment: Modeling Analysis

Régine Steegers-Theunissen1, MD, PhD; Annemieke Hoek2, MD, PhD; Henk Groen3, MD, PhD; Annelies Bos4, MD, PhD; Grada van den Dool5, MD; Marieke Schoonenberg6, MD; Jesper Smeenk7, MD, PhD; Eva Creutzberg8, PhD; Loes Vecht9, MD; Luc Starmans9, PhD; Joop Laven1, MD, PhD

1Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Erasmus MC, University Medical Center, Rotterdam, Netherlands
2Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, University Medical Center Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
3Department of Epidemiology, University Medical Center Groningen, University of Groningen, Groningen, Netherlands
4Department of Reproductive Medicine and Gynecology, University Medical Centre Utrecht, Utrecht, Netherlands
5Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Albert Schweitzer Hospital Zwijndrecht, Zwijndrecht, Netherlands
6Nij Geertgen Centre for fertility Elsendorp, Elsendorp, Netherlands
7Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Elisabeth-TweeSteden Hospital Tilburg, Tilburg, Netherlands
8Department of Gynaecology, Ferring BV Hoofddorp, Amsterdam, Netherlands
9KPMG, Amsterdam, Netherlands

Corresponding Author:
Régine Steegers-Theunissen, MD, PhD
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Erasmus MC
University Medical Center
Office EE-2271a, Dr.Molewaterplein 40, 3015 GD
Rotterdam
Netherlands
Phone: 31 107038255
Email: r.steegers@erasmusmc.nl

Abstract

Background: Approximately 1 in 7 couples experience subfertility, many of whom have lifestyles that negatively affect fertility, such as poor nutrition, low physical activity, obesity, smoking, or alcohol consumption. Reducing lifestyle risk factors prior to pregnancy or assisted reproductive technology treatment contributes to the improvement of reproductive health, but cost-implications are unknown.

Objective: The goal of this study was to evaluate reproductive, maternal pregnancy, and birth outcomes, as well as the costs of pre-conception lifestyle intervention programs in subfertile couples and obese women undergoing assisted reproductive technology.

Methods: Using a hypothetical model based on quantitative parameters from published literature and expert opinion, we evaluated the following lifestyle intervention programs: (1) Smarter Pregnancy, an online tool; (2) LIFEstyle, which provides outpatient support for obese women; (3) concurrent use of both Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle for obese women; (4) smoking cessation in men; and (5) a mindfulness mental health support program using group therapy sessions. The model population was based on data from the Netherlands.

Results: All model-based analyses of the lifestyle interventions showed a reduction in the number of in vitro fertilization, intracytoplasmic sperm injection, or intrauterine insemination treatments required to achieve pregnancy and successful birth for couples in the Netherlands. Smarter Pregnancy was modeled to have the largest increase in spontaneous pregnancy rate (13.0%) and the largest absolute reduction in potential assisted reproductive technology treatments. Among obese subfertile women, LIFEstyle was modeled to show a reduction in the occurrence of gestational diabetes, maternal hypertensive pregnancy complications, and preterm births by 4.4%, 3.8%, and 3.0%, respectively, per couple. Modeled cost savings per couple per year were €41 (US $48.66), €360 (US $427.23), €513 (US $608.80), €586 (US $695.43), and €1163 (US $1380.18) for smoking cessation, mindfulness, Smarter Pregnancy, combined Smarter Pregnancy AND LIFEstyle, and LIFEstyle interventions, respectively.
Conclusions: Although we modeled the potential impact on reproductive outcomes and costs of fertility treatment rather than collecting real-world data, our model suggests that of the lifestyle interventions for encouraging healthier behaviors, all are likely to be cost-effective and appear to have positive effects on reproductive, maternal pregnancy, and birth outcomes. Further real-world data are required to determine the cost-effectiveness of pre-conception lifestyle interventions, including mobile apps and web-based tools that help improve lifestyle, and their effects on reproductive health. We believe that further implementation of the lifestyle app Smarter Pregnancy designed for subfertile couples seeking assistance to become pregnant is likely to be cost-effective and would allow reproductive health outcomes to be collected.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19570) doi:10.2196/19570

KEYWORDS
fertility, periconception, pregnancy chance, Smarter Pregnancy, cost-effectiveness, nutrition, obesity, IVF treatment; mobile and web-based lifestyle apps

Introduction

Many couples who undergo fertility treatment have multiple lifestyle risk factors that reduce their chances of becoming pregnant [1]. Female lifestyle risk factors such as smoking, alcohol use, and poor diet are inversely associated with fecundity and time to pregnancy, and the effects of these factors increase with increasing BMI [2]. Chronic stress or high anxiety levels reduce fecundability, and high depression scores are also associated with subfertility [3]. Furthermore, evidence is accumulating that poor nutrition, stress, drug use, infection, or exposure to environmental chemicals during prenatal development has a life-long impact on offspring health as shown by the Developmental Origins of Health and Disease paradigm [4]. Obese pregnant women are more likely to have gestational diabetes, hypertensive complications, premature delivery, higher risk of cesarean delivery, and fetal death [5]. Obese men are more likely than men of normal weight to have lower sperm quality [6].

Despite the evidence available, weight-loss interventions in overweight or obese couples prior to fertility treatment remain controversial, as there is limited evidence that these interventions increase the chance of a live birth or reduce pregnancy complications [7,8]. Two well-conducted randomized controlled trials [9,10], however, show that spontaneous conceptions significantly increased with pre-conception weight-loss lifestyle interventions in obese subfertile women and led to lower number of fertility treatments, though neither trial showed an increase in assisted reproductive technology treatment-dependent pregnancies.

Health care budgets are increasingly under pressure due to noncommunicable diseases associated with an aging population, scarcity in the workforce, and rising costs of novel medical technologies. It is, therefore, key that lifestyle interventions aimed at subfertile couples improve reproductive outcomes and in a cost-effective manner.

The aim of this evaluation was to estimate and model the impact of pre-conception lifestyle interventions on the likelihood of the occurrence of pregnancy, and maternal pregnancy and birth outcomes after fertility treatment in subfertile couples and in subfertile obese women, as well as to assess whether these lifestyle interventions are cost-effective.

Methods

Overview

We created a hypothetical model to estimate the effectiveness of pre-conception lifestyle interventions on reproductive, pregnancy, and birth outcomes and potential cost savings in subfertile couples, including a subgroup of subfertile obese women, undergoing in vitro fertilization (IVF), intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), or intrauterine insemination (IUI) treatment.

Lifestyle Factors Relevant to Fertility Care

Modifiable factors most relevant to fertility treatment, reproductive health, and pregnancy complications with compelling quantifiable clinical published evidence were women’s BMI (a marker of health and lifestyle), diet (nutrition intake), physical activity, smoking cessation, and stress [2,9,11-23].

Pre-conception Lifestyle Interventions

Five lifestyle interventions matching the selected lifestyle factors were selected by the fertility experts for inclusion in the cost-effectiveness model (Table 1). These programs included support for changing lifestyle factors deemed most relevant to pre-conception care that were outlined above. The programs used in our model were Smarter Pregnancy [12,20], and LIFEstyle [9,11]. We also modeled smoking cessation in men by using analysis of IVF and ICSI outcomes in men who smoke and men who do not smoke [24], and mindfulness-based mental health support for couples undergoing IVF [16].
Table 1. Lifestyle interventions selected for cost-effectiveness modeling.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Model target population</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy intervention [12,20]</td>
<td>Women aged 25-44 years trying to conceive, comprising subfertile couples seeking medical assistance to conceive (IVF\textsuperscript{a}/ICSI\textsuperscript{b}) and fertile couples</td>
<td>Provides 26 weeks of individual online coaching and information via smartphone tailored to improve nutrition and lifestyle during the pre-conception and pregnancy period in order to improve the health of the reproductive population and subsequent generations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIFEstyle intervention [9,11]</td>
<td>Obese subfertile women with BMI &gt;29 kg/m\textsuperscript{2} seeking fertility treatment</td>
<td>Provides 6 outpatient visits (each 30 minutes long) and 4 telephone consultations (15 minutes) during a 24-week period to provide motivation and support for nutrition (energy restriction of approximately 500 kCal/day) and exercise strategies (10,000 steps per day, 2-3 moderate vigorous exercise sessions per week for weight loss in obese women (BMI &gt;29 kg/m\textsuperscript{2}) seeking fertility treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle interven-</td>
<td>Combination of the 2 target audiences mentioned above</td>
<td>Providing both Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle support for obese women (the remaining couples were modeled to receive the Smarter Pregnancy intervention only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tion [9,11,12,20]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking cessation [24]</td>
<td>Subfertile men who smoke</td>
<td>Comparison of IVF and ICSI outcomes in male smokers and non-smokers from couples seeks reproductive assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mindfulness support [16]</td>
<td>Subfertile women undergoing their first IVF or ICSI cycle</td>
<td>Comparison of IVF outcomes in couples either receiving or not receiving group sessions to teach stress reduction through a mindfulness-based intervention while undergoing IVF treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}IVF: in vitro fertilization.  
\textsuperscript{b}ICSI: intracytoplasmic sperm injection.

Model Population and Treatment Policies
The model population comprised couples living in the Netherlands seeking fertility treatment, representing a general subfertile population including a subgroup of obese women. The prevalence of subfertility in men and women living in the Netherlands aged 25-45 years was 0.7% and 2.2%, respectively, representing approximately 15,000 men and 46,000 women who are subfertile (Multimedia Appendix 1). Based on available published data [25,26], we calculated that there were 5400 subfertile obese women, 3200 smoking men, and 13,700 women undergoing their first IVF or ICSI cycle. Based on clinical experience, we assumed approximately 24% of the couples living in the Netherlands seeking assisted reproductive technology treatment received IVF treatment (mean 1.5 cycles), 16% received ICSI (mean 1.5 cycles) in total per couple, and 60% received IUI (mean 3.0 cycles). We did not include couples seeking ovulation induction in our model.

Modeling Clinical Outcomes
For each pre-conception lifestyle intervention program, the published data were reviewed to determine input parameters for the model to estimate the intervention’s impact on chance of a spontaneous ongoing pregnancy (a viable pregnancy at week 12), number of IVF, ICSI, and IUI treatments, as well as on pregnancy complications—gestational diabetes, gestational hypertensive complications, and preterm delivery—expressed per couple per year. For each lifestyle intervention, the model only included the fertility treatments and known complications from the lifestyle intervention according to high quality evidence.

Modeling Potential Cost Savings
The general structure of the cost-effectiveness model is depicted in Figure 1. The cost-effectiveness evaluation was performed from a health care perspective and included direct medical costs of the lifestyle intervention, fertility treatments, medication, and any resulting pregnancy. The model (business case) was designed to estimate the cost impact of the selected lifestyle interventions on fertility and obstetric care per subfertile couple, expressed as the difference in costs per patient or per couple and the overall cost difference per year in the Netherlands.
Figure 1. General structure of the cost-effectiveness model for each lifestyle intervention. IUGR: intrauterine growth restriction; IUI: intrauterine insemination; IVF: in vitro fertilization; ICSI: intracytoplasmic sperm injection.

Model Input Parameters

The effects of the respective interventions on each of the selected lifestyle factors were modeled according to available published literature or expert opinion agreed by consensus. Costs for ovulation induction prior to IUI were not included as part of the cost-effectiveness model. Where published data existed, previously estimated costs of pregnancy complications, such as fetal growth restriction, gestational diabetes, gestational hypertensive complications (including preeclampsia), and premature birth, were used.

The general costs for assisted reproductive technology and pregnancy are presented in Multimedia Appendix 1. Costs, indexed to 2016 price levels, for pregnancy, birth and admission until 6 weeks postpartum in singleton and multiple pregnancies conceived after IVF were estimated.

Specific parameters related to each pre-conception lifestyle intervention are presented in Multimedia Appendix 2 including costs of the intervention, the estimated costs of pregnancy outcomes, chances of spontaneous pregnancy, intrauterine growth restriction, and gestational diabetes or hypertension. For each lifestyle intervention that was modeled, the estimated impact on fertility treatment or pregnancy outcomes were only included if there were data to support effects associated with that specific lifestyle intervention.

Results

Modeled Impact of Lifestyle Interventions on Clinical Outcomes

The modeled impact of lifestyle interventions on fertility outcomes, including the reductions in assisted reproduction and pregnancy complications, are presented in Tables 2 and 3. Each of the 5 modeled lifestyle interventions showed a reduction in the number of IVF and ICSI treatments per couple required to achieve a successful ongoing pregnancy. Smarter Pregnancy in the subfertile couples and LIFEstyle in subfertile obese women resulted in 10,800 (23.4%) and 1100 (20.0%) fewer IUI cycles, respectively, among the modeled population for the Netherlands than if no lifestyle intervention was used. Overall, Smarter Pregnancy was modeled to have both the largest increase in the number of spontaneous pregnancies (6000 additional spontaneous pregnancies among the modeled population, which is a 13% reduction in the number of couples who require assisted reproductive technology treatment) and the largest reduction in potential number of assisted reproductive technology treatments per couple (4.7% for in vitro fertilization, 3.1% for intracytoplasmic sperm injection, and 23.4% for intrauterine insemination). Smarter Pregnancy was associated with a reduction of fetal growth restriction by 2.6%, and LIFEstyle was associated with a reduction of gestational diabetes (4.4%), gestational hypertensive complications (3.8%), and preterm delivery (3.0%). There were no published data regarding the effects of smoking cessation or mindfulness on the likelihood of achieving spontaneous pregnancies, or on fetal growth restriction, gestational diabetes, hypertensive, or premature birth pregnancy complication.
Table 2. The effect of each lifestyle intervention on assisted reproductive technology clinical outcomes modeled for the Netherlands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Modeled changes in clinical results (per year)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spontaneous pregnancies, n (%)(^{a})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy (SmollerZwanger)</td>
<td>+6000 (13.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIFEstyle</td>
<td>+500 (9.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy + LIFEstyle(^{e})</td>
<td>+6000 (13.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking cessation (men only)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental health/ mindfulness</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\)Percentage has been calculated as the proportional change in the number of events (spontaneous pregnancy or assisted reproductive technology treatment resulting in pregnancy) for the model population per intervention.

\(^{b}\)IVF: in vitro fertilization.

\(^{c}\)ICSI: intracytoplasmic sperm injection.

\(^{d}\)IUI: intrauterine insemination.

\(^{e}\)Only for the subset of women with BMI over 29 kg/m\(^{2}\).

\(^{f}\)No published data found in literature searches.

Table 3. Effect of each lifestyle intervention on clinical outcomes of pregnancy complications modeled for the Netherlands (modeled per year).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Modeled changes in clinical results (per year)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IUGR(^{a}), n (% change)(^{b})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy (SmollerZwanger)</td>
<td>−1200 (−2.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIFEstyle</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy + LIFEstyle(^{e})</td>
<td>−1200 (−2.6)(^{d})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking cessation (men only)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental health/ mindfulness</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\)IUGR: intrauterine growth restriction.

\(^{b}\)Percentage has been calculated as the proportional change in the number of events (pregnancy complications) for the model population per intervention.

\(^{c}\)No published data found in literature searches.

\(^{d}\)Only for the subset of women with BMI over 29 kg/m\(^{2}\).

Estimated Cost-Savings of Lifestyle Interventions and Sensitivity Analysis

A summary of the estimated cost savings for each lifestyle intervention is presented in Table 4. The lifestyle intervention that was modeled to have the highest cost saving was LIFEstyle, with an estimated saving of €1163 (US $1380.18 at the time of publication) per couple; however, this intervention is specifically for subfertile obese women. The combination of Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle, for which obese women would have access to both Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle and all other subfertile couples would use Smarter Pregnancy only, was modeled to save €586 (US $695.43) per couple. Across the entire potential target group in the Netherlands, the greatest financial saving would be achieved with the combination program Smarter Pregnancy and LIFEstyle (€27 million, approximately US $32 million), followed by Smarter Pregnancy (€24 million, approximately US $28.4 million) alone. The lifestyle intervention of smoking cessation for men represented the lowest cost saving €41 (US $48.66) per couple in the Netherlands.
Principal Results

Using a model population based on subfertile couples and subfertile obese women living in the Netherlands undergoing IVF, ICSI, or IUI, we developed a hypothesis-based model using quantitative parameters from published literature and expert opinion to explore how 5 selected lifestyle intervention programs, each using different approaches and targets, can potentially improve the chances of spontaneous pregnancy, reduce the number of cycles of IVF, ICSI, or IUI treatments, and reduce the chance of adverse maternal pregnancy and birth outcomes. As part of the analysis our model also assessed potential cost savings of the selected lifestyle intervention programs for the model population. In order to estimate the cost savings, we calculated the estimated cost savings per couple for each of the selected lifestyle intervention programs. Multiplying this number with the size of the target group of the selected lifestyle intervention program yielded the total estimated cost savings. Cost savings per couple were modeled for each of the lifestyle programs taking into account the cost savings achieved by reducing the volume of fertility care, as well as cost savings achieved due to a reduction of pregnancy complications. Estimated costs of the lifestyle intervention were subsequently subtracted from these savings, in order to achieve the total cost savings of the lifestyle intervention. For each lifestyle intervention, the model only included the fertility treatments and complications that the lifestyle intervention was known to have an effect upon using available evidence.

Modifiable lifestyle factors were selected based on their positive associations with the likelihood of spontaneous conception or successful fertility treatment and thus would be most relevant for evaluating in terms of potential cost saving. Age was considered to be important but not modifiable at the moment of the health care visit. In men, moderate alcohol consumption, caffeine intake, and scrotal temperature were considered less relevant lifestyle factors and, therefore, were not included in our model. Thus, the most important modifiable factors were maternal BMI (used as a surrogate marker of health and lifestyle), diet, physical activity, smoking, and stress. These factors had sufficient published quantitative data regarding their impact on reproductive health, fertility treatment, and pregnancy complications to develop our model and have also used by others [9,11,12,16,20,24].

In our model, both Smarter Pregnancy and LIFESTyle increased the number of spontaneous pregnancies by 13.0% and 9.9% per couple, respectively, compared with no lifestyle intervention. This supports data from another study that showed that a 1-point increase in a pre-conception dietary risk score was associated with 65% increased chance of ongoing pregnancy [27] and a “Mediterranean”-style diet is likely to improve IVF and ICSI treatment success with an increased probability of pregnancy (odds ratio 1.4, 95% CI 1.0-1.9) [28]. Similarly, in our model, these 2 lifestyle interventions decreased the number of IVF, ICSI, and IUI cycles required for a successful pregnancy. Although there were no data available for the effect of smoking cessation in men and mindfulness mental health support on spontaneous pregnancies or number of IUI treatments, our model suggests that both may decrease the number of IVF and ICSI treatments required for a successful pregnancy.

Our model also showed that validated lifestyle interventions may contribute to a reduction of pregnancy complications, including fetal growth restriction, gestational diabetes, hypertensive complications and premature births. Published clinical data about fetal growth restriction were only available to model Smarter Pregnancy, for which there was a 2.6% decreased occurrence of fetal growth restriction per couple. Indeed, the evidence for pre-conception nutrition associated with birth weight is compelling, with studies advocating “Mediterranean”-style diets high in fruit, vegetables, vegetable oil, fish, pasta, and rice as well as lower consumption of meat and potatoes [28,29]. For example, the size of the embryo represented by the crown-rump length is improved by an energy-rich nutritious diet (effect estimate 1.62, 95% CI 0.52-2.72; P < .05) [29]. Moreover, pre-conception diets with increased pre-conception omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid intake from fruit and vegetables was associated with improved

Discussion

Table 4. Estimated cost savings per year of lifestyle interventions (business cases) on assisted reproductive technologies and reduction of pregnancy complications modeled for the Netherlands (an exchange rate of approximately €1=US $1.19 is applicable at the time of publication).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Estimated cost benefit per couple (least favorable, most favorable scenario)</th>
<th>Total target group (prevalence)</th>
<th>Total annual target group (incidence)</th>
<th>Estimated overall cost saving (least favorable, most favorable scenario) per year</th>
<th>Estimated total associated reproductive technology cost saving per year (least favorable, most favorable scenario)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy (SlimmerZwanger)</td>
<td>€513 (€100, €2200)</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>1191</td>
<td>€24 M (€4.6 M, €101.2 M)</td>
<td>€6 M (€1.2 M, €26.2 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIFESTyle</td>
<td>€1163 (€900, €1600)</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>1391</td>
<td>€6 M (€4.9 M, €8.6 M)</td>
<td>€1.6 M (€1.3 M, €101 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smarter Pregnancy + LIFESTyle</td>
<td>€586 (€100, €2200)</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>1191</td>
<td>€27 M (€4.6 M, €101 M)</td>
<td>€7 M (€4.6 M, €26.4 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking cessation (men only)</td>
<td>€41 (€ –20, €170)</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>826</td>
<td>€0.130 M (€ –0.064 M, €0.54 M)</td>
<td>€0.034 M (€ –0.017 M, €0.140 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental health/ Mindfulness</td>
<td>€36 (€–190, €500)</td>
<td>13,700</td>
<td>3551</td>
<td>€4.9 M (€ –2.6 M, €6.9 M)</td>
<td>€1.3 M (€ –0.7 M, €1.8 M)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aOverall cost savings include all medical intervention costs for complications.

bIncludes cost savings for assisted reproductive technology procedures that would no longer be necessary.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19570
embryo morphology (linear regression coefficient β=0.6, \(P\leq0.05\)) [30]. Similarly, a “traditional Western” diet (high intake of potatoes, mayonnaise and other fatty sauces, meat products, refined grains, sugar, and confectionary) was associated with an sperm DNA damage (linear regression coefficient β=13.25, \(P=0.01\), whereas a “health conscious” diet (high intakes of fruit, vegetables, fish and other seafood, whole grains and legumes) was inversely associated with sperm DNA damage (β=–2.81, \(P=0.05\)) [31].

In contrast, published clinical data on gestational diabetes, hypertensive complications, and premature births were only available to model LIFEstyle, the pre-conception intervention to help obese women lose weight prior to and during early pregnancy. We modeled that implementation of the LIFEstyle program for obese women in the Netherlands seeking reproductive assistance may result in 4.4% lower chance of gestational diabetes, 3.8% lower chance of hypertensive complications, and 3.0% chance of premature birth. In subanalyses of the LIFEstyle study, women in the intervention group significantly reduced their consumption of sugary drinks and savory snacks, as well as increased their physical activity [32], and reduced the likelihood of developing metabolic syndrome [33]. A recent meta-analysis has shown that healthy diets (Mediterranean Diet, Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension diet and Alternate Healthy Eating Index diet) were associated with 15%-38% reduced relative risk of gestational diabetes, and compared with no physical activity, any prepregnancy or early pregnancy physical activity was associated with 30% and 21% reduced odds of gestational diabetes, respectively [34].

Our model also showed that lifestyle intervention programs are cost-effective to improve the chances of pregnancy [2]. It should be noted, however, that our estimated cost savings are conservative, as we did not include the cost of ovulation induction in our model. Moreover, we used conservative data regarding the number of subfertile men and women in the Netherlands. In our model, LIFEstyle has the greatest cost saving of €1163 (US $1380.18) per couple, which was similar to a cost analysis of the LIFEstyle study showed an overall saving of €1278 (US $1512.92) per couple which we have not included cost savings that can reasonably be expected as a result of improved lifestyle in the mother and father, likely leading to fewer health care expenditures as well as potentially a greater contribution to the workforce (and therefore taxation).

In our model, we included a comparison of the effects of smoking on IVF and ICSI outcomes in men. To date, there have been no published studies on pregnancy outcomes regarding the use of smoking cessation apps or programs in couples seeking to become pregnant, therefore, we have likely underestimated the effects of smoking cessation on pregnancy outcomes and the cost implications of smoking cessation in terms of reducing the need for fertility assistance and pregnancy complications. In addition, the effects of second-hand smoke have not been considered in our model.

Another limitation is that the costs of fertility treatment vary greatly depending on country and procedures required, and the costs of some procedures are uncertain. The type of fertility treatment required would depend on the cause of subfertility, which we have not included or addressed in our model. Further investigations are required to understand to what extent lifestyle modifications can reduce the risk of pregnancy complications, as well as affect direct outcomes of fertility treatment.

Comparisons With Prior Work

Our model input parameters were mostly based on good-quality evidence from published literature; however, as is inherently the case with hypothesis-based modeling, some assumptions were made. There have been 2 randomized controlled trials [9,10] that have investigated pre-conception lifestyle interventions to help obese women to lose weight. Although the study LIFEstyle [11] did not increase the healthy live birth rate, there was an increased rate of spontaneous pregnancies specifically among anovulatory women. A further exploratory analysis [13] suggested that a periconceptional decrease in BMI in obese subfertile women could lead to a decrease of the rates of hypertensive pregnancy complications and preterm birth; however, further randomized controlled trials are required to confirm these results. Similarly, in the second study, significantly more live births were achieved through spontaneous pregnancies in the weight reduction group (10.5%) than in the control group (2.6%; \(P=0.009\)) [10]. Results from another randomized controlled trial, the UK Pregancies Better Eating and Activity Trial (UPBEAT) [36], showed that specific dietary patterns in obese women in early pregnancy are linked to...
gestational diabetes; however, the early pregnancy UPBEAT intervention did not reduce the incidence of gestational diabetes in its cohort [37]. Nevertheless, a secondary analysis of UPBEAT suggested that women randomized to the UPBEAT intervention had healthier metabolic profiles than those who received standard care [38]. As such, overweight or obese couples are likely to benefit from pre-conception lifestyle modifications of improved nutrition and physical activity prior to fertility treatment in an effort increase the chances of spontaneous conception and to help reduce pregnancy complications of gestational diabetes, hypertensive complications, and preterm birth. Improving lifestyle during the periconception period (defined as at least 14 weeks before conception) and the first 10 weeks of pregnancy is likely to help alleviate the risk of several adverse birth outcomes, such as congenital malformations, fetal growth restriction and babies born small or large for gestational age, as well as maternal complications such as gestational diabetes, hypertensive disorders, and premature delivery [11-13,27].

Our data are also supported by a previous model-based cost analysis for Smarter Pregnancy used by 793 subfertile women undergoing IVF treatment [2]. This program resulted in 86 additional pregnancies and saved £270,000 (approximately US $319,630) compared to usual care after 2 IVF cycles, with an incremental cost-effectiveness ratio of €–3050 (95% CI €–3960 to €–540; or approximately US $–3688 to US $–639) per additional pregnancy. The largest cost saving was from avoided IVF treatment costs. Sensitivity analyses showed that Smarter Pregnancy would need to increase the ongoing pregnancy rate by at least 51% after 2 IVF cycles for cost saving. Thus, Smarter Pregnancy is potentially cost saving for subfertile couples after their first IVF treatment.

There have been no published randomized controlled trials specifically on pre-conception interventions to quit smoking or to reduce or stop alcohol consumption. Nevertheless, Smarter Pregnancy has assessed pre-conception healthy nutrition and lifestyle, including tailored advice based on questionnaire responses regarding smoking and alcohol consumption in both couples seeking fertility treatment, and couples conceiving spontaneously [12]. Importantly, the Smarter Pregnancy intervention has been the only study to show a positive correlation between women whose partners also made positive lifestyle modifications of improved nutrition and physical activity prior to fertility treatment and their partner, but these couples also appreciated the program very much and showed comparable effectiveness. There remains a lack of randomized controlled trials in this area as first highlighted by a Cochrane review nearly a decade ago [39].

Current evidence on the effectiveness of internet or app-based interventions is limited, and further investigation is needed in order to fully appraise their impact on fertility outcomes such as pregnancy rate, as well as pregnancy complications and newborn health. A recent systematic review [40] looked into feasibility, acceptability, and effectiveness of mobile health lifestyle and medical apps during pregnancy in high-income countries, which may be an appropriate way of offering lifestyle intervention support to subfertile couples in the future. Lifestyle apps that aimed to improve health behavior, reduce gestational weight gain, and for smoking cessation were generally effective [40]. As such, internet-based technologies such as Smarter Pregnancy have the potential to answer some of these questions as well as raise awareness around the importance of pre-conception care when trying to conceive [21]. Moreover, cognitive behavior therapy or psychological support during fertility treatment is suggested to lead to significantly more viable pregnancies than routine care [41]. As such, pre-conception lifestyle interventions, including medical apps, have the potential to increase ongoing pregnancy rates and birth outcomes in subfertile couples [40].

We do not yet know if various lifestyle modifications such as smoking, alcohol, and nutrition have different effects that depend on the socioeconomic status, educational level, or social background of the couple trying to conceive. Recent analysis of Smarter Pregnancy suggests that the program has been more effective in women living in nondeprived neighborhoods, who were, however, less likely to complete the 24 weeks of coaching than women who lived in deprived neighborhoods [42]. Although subfertile couples seeking fertility treatment are often intrinsically motivated to make positive lifestyle changes to improve the likelihood of a successful pregnancy, the socioeconomic status of couples may impact lifestyle as well as their ability to change lifestyle habits.

Conclusions

In summary, lifestyle is an important public health issue that has a significant and cumulative impact on fertility. Appropriate counseling could result in substantial reductions in the referrals for fertility investigations and treatments [27]. In order to maximize the pregnancy rates during fertility care, many subfertile couples could benefit from pre-conception lifestyle interventions delivered before fertility treatment. Although more research is needed regarding the use of internet- and app-based technologies for lifestyle and lifestyle interventions prior to fertility treatment, our results can be used to support subfertile couples, fertility care providers, and policy makers involved in public health to optimize clinical outcomes at affordable costs. Pre-conception lifestyle interventions are likely to be a cost-effective way of supporting subfertile couples trying to conceive. Further implementation of the app Smarter Pregnancy also designed for subfertile couples seeking fertility assistance is likely to be cost-effective and allow data on reproductive outcomes to be collected.

Acknowledgments

Christina Birch Olsen, an employee of Ferring International, conducted literature searches. Celia J Parkyn, PhD, provided medical writing and linguistic support during manuscript development, and was funded by Ferring BV. The fertility expert working group...
advisory board meetings, the cost-effectiveness modeling of the lifestyle interventions and medical writing support was funded by Ferring BV.

**Authors’ Contributions**

RS-T, JL, EC, and LS made substantial contributions to the conception and design of the study. EC, LS, and LV made substantial contributions to the literature search, the acquisition of data, and data analysis. RS-T, AH, HG, and JL provided additional data needed for the model. All authors also attended 3 advisory workshops to discuss fertility and lifestyle interventions. LS and LV developed the fertility outcomes and cost-effectiveness model. All authors made substantial contributions to the interpretation of data. All authors critically reviewed multiple versions of the manuscript during development, including a draft outline as well as full drafts. All authors approved the final version of the manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

EC is employed by Ferring BV, which funded this research. LS is and LV was (during data collection, analysis, and manuscript preparation) employed by KPMG and are advisors to Ferring BV. AH, HG, AB, GD, MS, JS, and JL received payment from Ferring BV, for attending the fertility expert working group advisory board meetings. The department of Obstetrics and Gynecology at the University Medical Center Groningen Hanzeplein received an unrestricted educational grant from Ferring BV. RS-T contributed from the department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Erasmus University Medical Center, and as consultant of eHealth Care Solutions, to one working group meeting for which she received one payment from Ferring BV. JL received unrestricted research grants from Ferring BV, ZonMw, and the Dutch Heart Association. He also received consultancy fees from the following companies: Danone, Euroscreen/Ogeda, Ferring BV, and Titus Healthcare.

**Multimedia Appendix 1**

Table S1: Input parameters for specific lifestyle interventions per year.

**Multimedia Appendix 2**

Table S2: Input parameters – assisted reproductive technology costs, assumptions and fertility data from the Netherlands.

**References**


21. van Dijk MR, Koster MP, Rosman AN, Steegers-Theunissen RP. Opportunities of mHealth in Preconception Care: Preferences and Experiences of Patients and Health Care Providers and Other Involved Professionals. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2017 Aug 17;5(8):e123 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.7834] [Medline: 28818820]


28. van Dijk MR, Koster MP, Rosman AN, Steegers-Theunissen RP. Opportunities of mHealth in Preconception Care: Preferences and Experiences of Patients and Health Care Providers and Other Involved Professionals. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2017 Aug 17;5(8):e123 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/mhealth.7834] [Medline: 28818820]


Abbreviations

BMI: body mass index
IUI: intrauterine insemination
IVF: in vitro fertilization
ICSI: intracytoplasmic sperm injection
UPBEAT: UK Pregancies Better Eating And Activity Trial
Effectiveness of an mHealth Intervention Combining a Smartphone App and Smart Band on Body Composition in an Overweight and Obese Population: Randomized Controlled Trial (EVIDENT 3 Study)

Cristina Lugones-Sanchez¹, NP; Maria Antonia Sanchez-Calavera², MD, PhD; Irene Repiso-Gento¹, MD; Esther G Adalia³, MSc; J Ignacio Ramirez-Manent⁴, MD, PhD; Cristina Agudo-Conde¹, MSc; Emiliiano Rodriguez-Sanchez⁶, MD, PhD; Manuel Angel Gomez-Marcos⁸, MD, PhD; Jose I Recio-Rodriguez⁷*, PhD; Luis Garcia-Ortiz⁸*, MD, PhD; EVIDENT 3 Investigators⁹

¹Institute of Biomedical Research of Salamanca (IBSAL), Primary Care Research Unit of Salamanca (APISAL), Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL), Salamanca, Spain
²Institute for Health Research Aragón (IISA), Department of Internal Medicine, Psychiatry and Dermatology, University of Zaragoza, Zaragoza, Spain
³Valladolid Rural Health Center I. Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL), Valladolid, Spain
⁴University of Castilla-La Mancha, Health and Social Research Center, Cuenca, Spain
⁵Calvià Primary Care Center, Health Service of Balear Islands, Balear Islands, Spain
⁶Institute of Biomedical Research of Salamanca (IBSAL), Primary Care Research Unit of Salamanca (APISAL), Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL), Department of Medicine, University of Salamanca, Salamanca, Spain
⁷Institute of Biomedical Research of Salamanca (IBSAL), Primary Care Research Unit of Salamanca (APISAL), Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL), Department of Nursing and Physiotherapy, University of Salamanca, Salamanca, Spain
⁸Institute of Biomedical Research of Salamanca (IBSAL), Primary Care Research Unit of Salamanca (APISAL), Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL), Department of Biomedical and Diagnostic Sciences, University of Salamanca, Salamanca, Spain
⁹Spanish Research Network for Preventive Activities and Health Promotion in Primary Care (REDIAPP), Barcelona, Spain

*these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Cristina Lugones-Sanchez, NP
Institute of Biomedical Research of Salamanca (IBSAL)
Primary Care Research Unit of Salamanca (APISAL)
Health Service of Castilla y León (SACyL)
Av. Portugal 83, 2nd Fl.
Salamanca, 37005
Spain
Phone: 34 923 291100 ext 54750
Email: crislugsa@gmail.com

Abstract

Background: Mobile health (mHealth) is currently among the supporting elements that may contribute to an improvement in health markers by helping people adopt healthier lifestyles. mHealth interventions have been widely reported to achieve greater weight loss than other approaches, but their effect on body composition remains unclear.

Objective: This study aimed to assess the short-term (3 months) effectiveness of a mobile app and a smart band for losing weight and changing body composition in sedentary Spanish adults who are overweight or obese.

Methods: A randomized controlled, multicenter clinical trial was conducted involving the participation of 440 subjects from primary care centers, with 231 subjects in the intervention group (IG: counselling with smartphone app and smart band) and 209 in the control group (CG: counselling only). Both groups were counselled about healthy diet and physical activity. For the 3-month intervention period, the IG was trained to use a smartphone app that involved self-monitoring and tailored feedback, as well as a smart band that recorded daily physical activity (Mi Band 2, Xiaomi). Body composition was measured using the InBody 230 bioimpedance device (InBody Co., Ltd), and physical activity was measured using the International Physical Activity Questionnaire.
Results: The mHealth intervention produced a greater loss of body weight (−1.97 kg, 95% CI −2.39 to −1.54) relative to standard counselling at 3 months (−1.13 kg, 95% CI −1.56 to −0.69). Comparing groups, the IG achieved a weight loss of 0.84 kg more than the CG at 3 months. The IG showed a decrease in body fat mass (BFM; −1.84 kg, 95% CI −2.48 to −1.20), percentage of body fat (PBF; −1.22%, 95% CI −1.82% to 0.62%), and BMI (−0.77 kg/m², 95% CI −0.96 to 0.57). No significant changes were observed in any of these parameters in men; among women, there was a significant decrease in BMI in the IG compared with the CG. When subjects were grouped according to baseline BMI, the overweight group experienced a change in BFM of −1.18 kg (95% CI −2.30 to −0.06) and BMI of −0.47 kg/m² (95% CI −0.80 to −0.13), whereas the obese group only experienced a change in BMI of −0.53 kg/m² (95% CI −0.86 to −0.19). When the data were analyzed according to physical activity, the moderate-vigorous physical activity group showed significant changes in BFM of −1.03 kg (95% CI −1.74 to −0.33), PBF of −0.76% (95% CI −1.32% to −0.20%), and BMI of −0.5 kg/m² (95% CI −0.83 to −0.19).

Conclusions: The results from this multicenter, randomized controlled clinical trial study show that compared with standard counselling alone, adding a self-reported app and a smart band obtained beneficial results in terms of weight loss and a reduction in BFM and PBF in female subjects with a BMI less than 30 kg/m² and a moderate-vigorous physical activity level. Nevertheless, further studies are needed to ensure that this profile benefits more than others from this intervention and to investigate modifications of this intervention to achieve a global effect.

Trial Registration: Clinicaltrials.gov NCT03175614; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03175614.

International Registered Report Identifier (IRRID): RR2-10.1097/MD.0000000000009633

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e21771 doi:10.2196/21771

KEYWORDS
diet records; mobile app; telemedicine; electric impedance; obesity; body fat distribution; weight control

Introduction

Obesity and overweight are considered a major public health issue. The prevalence of obesity has reached epidemic levels, with 650 million adults worldwide estimated to be obese in 2016 [1]. Additionally, more than one-half of the population in Europe is classified as overweight or obese [2]. In the case of Spain, the proportion of obese people may reach 58% by 2030 [3]. The association of obesity with cardiovascular diseases and type 2 diabetes [4], among other diseases, is well known, and obesity also exacerbates cardiovascular risk factors [5]. Thus, it contributes to an increase in the mortality rate worldwide, as a more frequent cause than underweight or malnutrition [6]. This situation makes the development and implementation of weight management interventions imperative.

Because of the complex nature of obesity, a multifactorial strategy is needed. The modification of lifestyles is the cornerstone of weight management, including diverse aspects, such as reduced energy intake, increased energy expenditure, exercise, and behavior change strategies [7,8]. Primary care providers (PCPs) play a critical role in recommending appropriate weight-loss strategies. Moreover, the positive effect of PCP advice on patient engagement in weight loss efforts has been demonstrated [9]. Unfortunately, there are some barriers to obesity management, such as the lack of tools or training [10]. Also, interventions are usually individual and face-to-face, which generates more demands by the patient, thereby increasing the burden on health care professionals and the health care system.

Mobile health (mHealth) could be an excellent strategy for PCPs to implement with their patients to help them maintain lifestyle changes. Information and communication technologies (ICTs) have the potential to standardize and improve the quality of treatment provided and increase resources for prevention activities [11]. They also allow PCPs to address barriers through enhancing self-monitoring of the patient by registering progress or symptoms, which could improve feedback communication and enable PCPs to spend less time gathering routine data and more time engaging with patients. This means of interaction might enhance treatment outcomes as well as improve follow-up of some chronic diseases [12] while optimizing PCP time and reducing costs [13]. Every year, thousands of mobile apps are developed with the purpose of improving lifestyles. To ensure that these tools are able to have a positive influence, more studies are needed because most apps available are suboptimal in quality, meaning that they have inadequate scientific coverage and accuracy of weight-related information [14]. Compared with usual practice, the use of ICTs in the primary care context might help patients to achieve significant weight loss [15], including patients who are socioeconomically disadvantaged [16], thereby increasing egalitarian access to treatment. However, further research is needed to determine the optimal use of technology in weight loss, since the inclusion of small sample sizes, and the variability in study designs, follow-up times, and interventions, may hinder replication and comparison of results [17], leading to unclear conclusions in this regard.

In relation to weight loss interventions on body composition, some studies have reported the effect of an energy-restricted high-protein diet combined with exercise on decreasing fat-free mass [18] and leisure-time exercise in reducing fat mass [19]. In recent years, some studies have provided important findings related to the feasibility of ICT interventions in this practical setting, such as the LEAN study [20] and the IDEA study [21]. In addition, a recent pilot study assessing a telenutrition weight loss intervention in primary care showed greater loss of weight and body fat in obese men compared with usual care [22]. These results spotlight the need for more research in this field in order
to achieve the optimal combination of health tools and the time needed to achieve changes.

However, previous studies have usually considered weight and BMI as the main outcomes. Although BMI is easy to obtain, it is an indirect measure of body composition and, therefore, less accurate than other measures [23] in estimating the distribution of body fat, resulting in misclassification of obesity. Recent studies have highlighted other useful measures involved in weight regulation, such as fat-free mass (FFM), body fat mass (BFM), and percentage of body fat (PBF), which could better explain body composition changes during weight interventions [24]. These variables are analyzed by bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA), an indirect measure that uses multiple electrical currents through the body to estimate the percentage of different types of body tissue. Regarding the PBF, the correlation between BIA and the reference measure—dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry—was 0.88 for a healthy population [25], with a mean difference of $-1.83$ (SD 4.1%) for all subjects. In addition, BIA is the most cost-effective method of measuring body composition [26], making it a good alternative for its estimation.

Furthermore, it is important to determine whether these technologies can increase weight loss and modify body composition to clinically significant levels, which would show that ICTs could potentially be useful in tackling obesity. This study aims to assess the short-term effectiveness of a 3-month intervention that includes a smartphone app in combination with a smart band to lose weight and change body composition in sedentary Spanish adults who are overweight or obese.

Methods

Design and Scope

EVIDENT 3 is a randomized controlled, multicenter clinical trial with two parallel groups with a follow-up period of 12 months. The study was conducted in a primary care setting. The Primary Care Research Unit in Salamanca (APISAL) at the Biomedical Research Institute of Salamanca (IBSAL) coordinated the project in five primary care centers belonging to the Network for Preventive Activity and Health Promotion (REDIAPP) (Salamanca, Valladolid, Cuenca, Palma de Mallorca, and Zaragoza). Between June 2017 and November 2019, evaluations were made at baseline and at the 3-month follow-up visit. The results presented in this paper correspond to the short-term effect (3 months) of the intervention on body composition, considered one of the EVIDENT 3 study’s secondary outcomes.

Study Population

The participants were selected by random sampling among the patients attending a consultation with their family doctor in each participating center. The inclusion criteria were age between 20 and 65 years, a BMI between 27.5 kg/m$^2$ and 40 kg/m$^2$, agreement to participate in the study, and signing the informed consent document. A detailed description of inclusion and exclusion criteria has been published in the study protocol [27]. To determine the effect of the intervention on body composition, an additional criterion was set: only subjects with both body composition measurements (at baseline and 3-month visit) assessed using the InBody 230 Body Composition Analyzer (InBody Co., Ltd) were included in the analysis. Hence, the study sample consisted of 440 subjects.

Sample Size

The sample size calculation was performed for the primary study endpoint of weight loss. Accepting an α risk of 0.05 and a β risk of 0.20, with an SD of 12 kg, and estimating from subjects from the EVIDENT 2 study [28], it was determined that 592 subjects would be needed (296 per group) to detect a decrease in weight of 3 kg or more [29] in the intervention group (IG) versus the control group (CG), taking into consideration a 15% loss of subjects at follow-up. This effect size represented a 3% to 5% difference between the groups, which was expected to produce clinically relevant health benefits [30]. There were 440 participants who completed the 3-month visit (IG, n=231; CG, n=209). Taking into account the sample size and a common SD of weight difference of 3.27 kg, the poststudy power to detect the 0.839 kg weight loss difference found between groups as significant was 77%.

Randomization

Participants were randomly assigned into two groups in a 1:1 ratio for the control group (CG) and intervention group (IG). Randomization was done after informed consent was obtained. The allocation sequence was generated through a standardized computer program (Epidat 4.2) by an independent researcher and concealed until the trial group was assigned (Figure 1). To minimize contamination between groups, the investigator who performed the intervention was different from the investigator who conducted the evaluation. The investigator who performed the data analysis was blinded to the subjects’ groups. Due to the nature of the study, the subjects could not be blinded to the intervention.
Procedures
Each participant had to complete an initial visit and two follow-up visits, at 3 months and 12 months, after study inclusion. Baseline and follow-up data were collected by a research nurse. The IG completed an additional set of measurements at an appointment 7 days after baseline, with a different nurse performing the measurements, where the application was explained and the smart band given.

Outcome Measurements
The primary outcome was weight loss. Secondary outcomes included changes in some parameters of body composition. All outcomes were measured at baseline and 3 months after randomization.

Weight Loss
Body weight was measured to the nearest 0.1 kg, with the subject barefoot, wearing light clothing, and removing heavy
allowed the metabolic equivalents (METs) per minute per week and average duration in minutes over the past week. This level, participants reported frequencies such as days per week walking, moderate intensity, and vigorous intensity. For each according to the energy expenditure estimated for each level: subjectively. The IPAQ is a self-reported questionnaire that Questionnaire (IPAQ) [33] was used to measure activity. The short version of the International Physical Activity \( \text{BFM, skeletal muscle mass (SMM), PBF, distribution of lean body mass, ratio of segmental lean mass, basal metabolic rate (BMR), and impedance of each body segment. This validated device [32] uses multiple currents at varying frequencies to provide precise body composition analysis without empirical estimation, increasing the reliability of the results.} \]

The measurement was taken in the morning, before noon, with the subject barefoot, wearing light clothing, and standing upright for approximately 5 minutes before testing, with at least 2 hours of fasting and an empty bladder. These recommendations aim to measure body composition to the highest accuracy possible. The standing patient was required to wipe the palms of the hands, thumbs, and soles of the feet with the InBody tissue before placing them in the electrodes properly before testing. Individuals with medical implant devices such as pacemakers, essential support devices, or orthopedic prostheses, as well as pregnant women, could not be tested.

**Clinically Relevant Measures**

Data on the sociodemographic characteristics of the population including age, sex, education level, occupation, smoking history, and personal history of hypertension, dyslipidemia, and diabetes mellitus, as well as any active medical treatment, were collected. Smoking history was assessed through questions about the participant’s smoking status (smoker or nonsmoker). We considered smokers to be subjects who currently smoked or who had stopped smoking less than 1 year before.

The short version of the International Physical Activity Questionnaire (IPAQ) [33] was used to measure activity subjectively. The IPAQ is a self-reported questionnaire that assesses physical activity performed at three intensity levels according to the energy expenditure estimated for each level: walking, moderate intensity, and vigorous intensity. For each level, participants reported frequencies such as days per week and average duration in minutes over the past week. This allowed the metabolic equivalents (METs) per minute per week to be calculated and subjects to be classified according to three activity levels: light, moderate, and vigorous.

Other variables were measured, including drug use, blood pressure, postprandial glucose, and biochemical parameters (total serum cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol, and high-density lipoprotein-cholesterol). A detailed description of how these variables were measured was published in the study protocol [27].

**Intervention**

**Standard Counselling (CG and IG)**

Both groups (CG and IG) received 5 minutes of counselling at the end of the baseline visit and prior to randomization. A trained nurse at each primary health center, who was not involved in other aspects of the study, gave advice on physical activity and healthy diet according to the current international recommendations for the general population. The health benefits of physical activity and the recommendation to complete at least 30 minutes of moderate activity 5 days a week, or 20 minutes of vigorous activity 3 days a week, were explained. Counselling on food was in compliance with the plate method [34].

**Specific Intervention (IG)**

The IG received the smartphone app and a smart band (Mi Band 2, Xiaomi) for 3 months, corresponding to the length of the intervention. Once the baseline visit was completed, another 15-minute visit was carried out 7 days later, at which the subjects were trained to use the device and the app (EVIDENT 3 Application [record entry no.00/2017/2438]), which was specifically designed for the study by CGB Computer Company and APISAL.

During the 15-minute visit, the app was configured with each participant’s data (sex, age, weight, and height). It was designed to allow the dietary intake to be self-reported daily (Figure 2) and automatically record physical activity data from the smart band. Variables collected from the wearable device were number of steps taken, time of activity, kilometers traveled, and kilocalories expended. Subjects entered their food intake daily (divided into breakfast, midmorning snack, lunch, afternoon snack, and dinner) by selecting dishes and foods from the app menu and indicating the portion size. Thus, data collected comprised average energy intake (kcal), macronutrients and micronutrients (g/day), and time spent using the app (days). Food composition data were collected from the Spanish Food Composition Database [35] developed by RedBEDCA and AESAN. Once all of the daily information was collected, the app integrated the data to create personalized recommendations, based on the subjects’ characteristics, and specific objectives and goals for weight loss. The subject was able to consult the app for these recommendations, as well as information about caloric intake changes and macronutrient distribution. At the 3-month visit, the devices were collected. All information generated by the app was duly analyzed and entered into the database.
The behavioral strategies used in the intervention were those that enhance behavior changes toward healthier lifestyles. In this case, activities were meant to enhance self-efficacy, which is one of the most important determinants of behavior change [36,37], through self-monitoring, goal setting, and positive reinforcement. In order to avoid scheduling issues due to work shifts or other daily duties, participants were advised to use the app at the end of the day to register daily meals as well as to check physical activity information on the app. The smart band, worn at every moment, was set to congratulate the user when reaching 10,000 steps, following the general steps per day recommendation [38].

**Blinding Strategy**

The investigator carrying out the intervention with the IG was different from the person responsible for the assessment and standard counselling; both were kept blinded throughout the study, as was the investigator conducting data analysis. Due to the nature of the study, the subjects could not be blinded. To prevent contamination between groups, in the assessment visits (at 3 and 12 months), only the study variables were evaluated, but no advice or reinforcement could be given. In addition, the app was not available for download on the internet until the end of the study, so the CG could not make use of it in any way. During the follow-up visits, participants were instructed not to use other digital health technologies.

**Ethical Considerations**

The study was approved by the Clinical Research Ethics Committee of the Health Area of Salamanca on April 2016. All procedures were performed in accordance with the ethical standards of the institutional research committee and with the 2013 Declaration of Helsinki. All patients signed written informed consent documents prior to participation in the study.

The trial was registered at ClinicalTrial.gov with identifier NCT03175614.

**Statistical Analysis**

**General Analysis**

The results were expressed as mean (SD) for quantitative variables and as frequency distributions for qualitative variables. The statistical normality was tested using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test. Chi-square and Fisher tests were used to analyze the association between independent qualitative variables. Student t and Mann-Whitney U tests were used for the comparison of means between 2 independent groups. Pearson correlation and Spearman rho were used to evaluate the relationship between quantitative variables.

**Analysis of Intervention Effect on Primary and Secondary Outcomes**

To analyze the changes at 3 months after baseline in primary (weight loss) and secondary endpoints within the same group, we used the paired t test or McNemar test for quantitative or dichotomous variables, respectively. To analyze the effect of the intervention, we performed a multivariate analysis of variance of repeated measures, adjusted by the baseline value of each variable, in the follow-up for primary and secondary endpoints.

**Analysis by Subgroups**

We carried out subanalyses of the intervention effect on primary and secondary outcomes by sex (men and women), BMI at baseline (<30 kg/m² and ≥30 kg/m²), and initial self-reported physical activity level (light and moderate-vigorous physical activity). Subanalyses were sufficiently powered (>65%) to detect differences in women, moderate-vigorous physical
activity, and overweight and obesity, but not in men or light physical activity.

The contrast in hypotheses established an $\alpha$ of .05. The data were analyzed using SPSS Statistics software (version 25.0; IBM Corp).

Results

Baseline Characteristics of the Participants and Follow-up

A total of 650 subjects fulfilled all of the inclusion criteria. They were included into the program and randomized to the IG or CG. Participant flow is presented in Figure 1. Testing at the 3-month visit was completed by 563 of 650 participants (86.6%).

In addition to the 87 subjects (13.4%) who dropped out during the study (Figure 1), 123 (123/650, 18.9%) subjects were excluded from the analysis. Exclusion requirements to perform the test were met in 86 subjects (86/650, 13.2%), so there were no measurements at any visit. In addition, the measurements of 37 subjects were not included due to incorrectly performed tests (25/650, 3.8%) or misrecorded data (12/650, 1.8%). Thus, 440 subjects (IG: n= 231; CG: n= 209) were included in the final analysis.

Both groups had a similar mean age—47.4 (SD 10.0) years in the IG and 48.8 (SD 9.2) years in the CG—and most participants were women (IG: 161/231, 69.7%; CG: 144/209, 68.9%) (Table 1). Most participants had middle or high school education or higher (206/231, 89.2% and 181/209, 86.6%) and a mean baseline BMI of 32.8 (SD 3.3) and 32.9 (SD 3.4) in the IG and CG, respectively. No differences in baseline characteristics were observed between the IG and CG.

Adherence to the smartphone app in the IG was calculated from app output data, showing that 129 of 231 (55.8%) subjects adhered sufficiently by using it for 60 days or more, 41 of 231 (17.8%) subjects used the app for 31 to 60 days, and 43 of 231 (18.6%) subjects entered data on 30 days or less. Two subjects (2/231, 0.9%) did not register any food intake information, and there were 16 corrupted files (16/231, 6.9%) from which no information was obtainable (Figure 3).

Regarding body composition variables, which were evaluated using BIA, no differences were found between the groups, with a mean weight of 89.7 kg (SD 13.1) in the IG and 90.7 kg (SD 13.9) in the CG. PBF, estimated using the InBody device, was 41.8% (SD 7.6%) and 42.1% (SD 6.4%) in the IG and CG, respectively. The main variables related to body composition are shown in Table 2.

In terms of self-reported physical activity, the IG had a total of 1263.6 METs/min/week and the CG had a total of 1353.3 METs/min/week, measured using the 7-day IPAQ, with no difference between them. At baseline, most of the sample showed a moderate physical activity level, in both the IG (50.2%) and the CG (51.2%).
Table 1. Baseline characteristics of the study population (N=440).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Baseline characteristics</th>
<th>Intervention group (n=231)</th>
<th>Control group (n=209)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td>47.4 (10.0)</td>
<td>48.8 (9.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Female sex, n (%)</strong></td>
<td>161 (69.7)</td>
<td>144 (65.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Work situation, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Works outside the home</td>
<td>170 (73.6)</td>
<td>157 (75.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homemaker</td>
<td>20 (8.6)</td>
<td>14 (6.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired</td>
<td>14 (6.1)</td>
<td>13 (6.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>8 (3.5)</td>
<td>4 (1.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed</td>
<td>19 (8.2)</td>
<td>21 (10.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Educational level, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University studies</td>
<td>97 (42.0)</td>
<td>88 (42.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle or high school</td>
<td>109 (47.2)</td>
<td>93 (44.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary school</td>
<td>25 (10.8)</td>
<td>28 (13.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Smoking status, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonsmoker</td>
<td>97 (42.0)</td>
<td>90 (43.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoker</td>
<td>46 (19.9)</td>
<td>44 (21.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former smoker</td>
<td>88 (38.1)</td>
<td>75 (35.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clinical variables, mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>32.8 (3.3)</td>
<td>32.9 (3.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waist circumference (cm)</td>
<td>105.9 (10.1)</td>
<td>107.1 (9.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic blood pressure (mmHg)</td>
<td>118.3 (14.4)</td>
<td>119.8 (15.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diastolic blood pressure (mmHg)</td>
<td>79.2 (8.7)</td>
<td>80.4 (9.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total cholesterol (mg/dL)</td>
<td>199.7 (35.6)</td>
<td>201.7 (41.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides (mg/dL)</td>
<td>127.3 (73.5)</td>
<td>127.3 (63.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasting plasma glucose (mg/dL)</td>
<td>92.5 (12.6)</td>
<td>94.3 (15.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycated hemoglobin (%)</td>
<td>5.4 (0.4)</td>
<td>5.5 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chronic diseases, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>57 (24.7)</td>
<td>72 (34.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyslipidemia</td>
<td>59 (25.5)</td>
<td>61 (29.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>8 (3.5)</td>
<td>9 (4.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medication use, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td>35 (15.2)</td>
<td>41 (19.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipid-lowering drugs</td>
<td>40 (17.3)</td>
<td>39 (18.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI classification, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI&lt;30</td>
<td>60 (26.0)</td>
<td>50 (23.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI&gt;30</td>
<td>171 (74.0)</td>
<td>159 (76.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical activity classification, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light physical activity</td>
<td>93 (40.3)</td>
<td>86 (41.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate physical activity</td>
<td>116 (50.2)</td>
<td>107 (51.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigorous physical activity</td>
<td>22 (9.5)</td>
<td>16 (7.6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 3. Adherence to the EVIDENT smartphone app (number of days with a record in the app).

Table 2. Anthropometric and physical activity baseline data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>Intervention group (n=231), mean (SD)</th>
<th>Control group (n=209), mean (SD)</th>
<th>P valuea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Body composition</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>89.7 (13.1)</td>
<td>90.7 (13.9)</td>
<td>.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total body water (kg)</td>
<td>38.4 (7.9)</td>
<td>38.6 (7.8)</td>
<td>.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>10.3 (2.2)</td>
<td>10.4 (2.1)</td>
<td>.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>3.6 (0.7)</td>
<td>3.7 (0.7)</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body fat mass (kg)</td>
<td>37.4 (8.5)</td>
<td>38.1 (7.9)</td>
<td>.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat-free mass (kg)</td>
<td>52.3 (10.8)</td>
<td>52.6 (10.6)</td>
<td>.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skeletal muscle mass (kg)</td>
<td>29.1 (6.6)</td>
<td>29.2 (6.4)</td>
<td>.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>32.7 (3.3)</td>
<td>32.9 (3.4)</td>
<td>.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body fat (%)</td>
<td>41.8 (7.6)</td>
<td>42.1 (6.4)</td>
<td>.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basal metabolic rate (kcal/day)</td>
<td>1499.4 (233.0)</td>
<td>1506.8 (229.3)</td>
<td>.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waist-to-hip ratio</td>
<td>1.0 (0.1)</td>
<td>1.0 (0.1)</td>
<td>.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical activity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>METs b of intense activity</td>
<td>164.5 (258.9)</td>
<td>677.9 (1333.8)</td>
<td>.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>METs of moderate activity</td>
<td>218.9 (141.2)</td>
<td>656.6 (587.8)</td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>METs of light activity</td>
<td>880.1 (884.8)</td>
<td>901.6 (968.0)</td>
<td>.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total METs/minute/week</td>
<td>1263.6 (1285.0)</td>
<td>1353.3 (1723.2)</td>
<td>.88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P value differences between intervention group and control group.

bMETs: metabolic equivalents.

Changes in Body Weight During Study Period
The IG showed large changes in body weight (–1.97 kg, 95% CI –2.39 to –1.54) between baseline and 3 months, while the change was smaller (–1.13 kg, 95% CI –1.56 to –0.69) in the CG. Comparing groups, the IG achieved a weight loss of 0.84 kg more than the CG at 3 months (Table 3).
Analyzing by sex, there were no significant changes observed in body weight among men in the CG and IG. However, women in the IG had a significant weight loss of 1.37 kg (95% CI −2.03 to −0.71) compared with their CG counterparts.
## Table 3. Effect of intervention on body composition variables for the total sample and by sex.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body composition variables</th>
<th>Difference at 3 months</th>
<th>Control group (CG), mean (95% CI)</th>
<th>IG-CG, mean (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All subjects</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–1.97 (–2.39 to –1.54)*</td>
<td>–1.13 (–1.56 to –0.69)*</td>
<td>–0.84 (–1.45 to –0.23)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; (kg)</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.42 to 0.34)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.39 to 0.37)</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.57 to 0.50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.17 to 0.08)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.11 to 0.11)</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.21 to 0.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.11 to 0.03)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.04 to 0.02)</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.11 to 0.05)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; (kg)</td>
<td>–1.84 (–2.48 to –1.20)*</td>
<td>–1.11 (–1.69 to –0.53)*</td>
<td>–0.73 (–1.59 to 0.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; (kg)</td>
<td>–0.13 (–0.63 to 0.38)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.53 to 0.50)</td>
<td>–0.11 (–0.83 to 0.60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt; (kg)</td>
<td>–0.12 (–0.49 to 0.25)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.31 to 0.35)</td>
<td>–0.14 (–0.64 to 0.36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>–0.77 (–0.96 to –0.57)*</td>
<td>–0.23 (–0.46 to 0.01)</td>
<td>–0.54 (–0.84 to –0.24)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; (%)</td>
<td>–1.22 (–1.82 to –0.62)*</td>
<td>–0.79 (–1.34 to –0.25)*</td>
<td>–0.42 (–1.24 to 0.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>–2.63 (–13.49 to 8.23)</td>
<td>–0.30 (–11.37 to 10.77)</td>
<td>–2.34 (–17.82 to 13.15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.07 to 0.01)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.01 to 0.00)*</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.07 to 0.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Men</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–1.70 (–2.54 to –0.85)*</td>
<td>–2.02 (–3.03 to –1.02)*</td>
<td>0.33 (–0.97 to 1.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW (kg)</td>
<td>0.06 (–0.37 to 0.50)</td>
<td>–0.17 (0.55 to 0.20)</td>
<td>0.24 (–0.33 to 0.81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.11 to 0.15)</td>
<td>–0.05 (–0.16 to 0.06)</td>
<td>0.07 (–0.10 to 0.24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>0.01 (–0.01 to 0.04)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.06 to 0.03)</td>
<td>0.03 (–0.02 to 0.08)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM (kg)</td>
<td>–1.80 (–2.77 to –0.83)*</td>
<td>–1.79 (–2.51 to –1.07)*</td>
<td>–0.01 (–1.22 to 1.20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM (kg)</td>
<td>0.10 (–0.47 to 0.68)</td>
<td>–0.23 (–0.74 to 0.27)</td>
<td>0.34 (–0.43 to 1.11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM (kg)</td>
<td>0.11 (–0.27 to 0.49)</td>
<td>–0.11 (–0.43 to 0.20)</td>
<td>0.22 (–0.27 to 0.71)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>–0.58 (–0.87 to –0.29)*</td>
<td>–0.55 (–0.92 to –0.18)*</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.49 to 0.43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF (%)</td>
<td>–1.48 (–2.39 to –0.57)*</td>
<td>–1.14 (–1.60 to –0.68)*</td>
<td>–0.34 (–1.37 to 0.69)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>2.35 (–10.11 to 14.81)</td>
<td>–5.05 (–15.98 to 5.89)</td>
<td>7.40 (–9.13 to 23.93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.02 to 0.00)**</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.03 to 0.00)*</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.01 to 0.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–2.08 (–2.58 to –1.59)*</td>
<td>–0.71 (–1.14 to –0.28)*</td>
<td>–1.37 (–2.03 to –0.71)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW (kg)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.61 to 0.43)</td>
<td>0.07 (–0.46 to 0.60)</td>
<td>–0.16 (–0.89 to 0.58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>–0.07 (–0.24 to 0.10)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.13 to 0.17)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.32 to 0.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.17 to 0.04)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.04 to 0.04)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.18 to 0.06)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM (kg)</td>
<td>–1.86 (–2.68 to –1.04)*</td>
<td>–0.80 (–1.58 to –0.02)**</td>
<td>–1.06 (–2.19 to 0.08)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.23 (–0.91 to 0.45)</td>
<td>0.09 (–0.63 to 0.80)</td>
<td>–0.32 (–1.30 to 0.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.22 (–0.73 to 0.29)</td>
<td>0.08 (–0.38 to 0.54)</td>
<td>–0.30 (–0.99 to 0.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>–0.89 (–1.13 to –0.66)*</td>
<td>–0.17 (–0.39 to 0.05)</td>
<td>–0.72 (–1.05 to –0.40)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF (%)</td>
<td>–1.10 (–1.87 to –0.33)*</td>
<td>–0.63 (–1.41 to 0.14)</td>
<td>–0.47 (–1.56 to 0.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>–4.84 (–19.59 to 9.90)</td>
<td>1.90 (–13.55 to 17.34)</td>
<td>–6.74 (–28.02 to 14.54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.10 to 0.03)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.01 to 0.00)</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.10 to 0.04)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>TBW: total body water.
<sup>b</sup>BFM: body fat mass.
<sup>c</sup>FFM: fat-free mass.

---

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e21771/
Changes in Body Composition After Intervention

The IG showed a decrease in body composition variables (Figure 4), with a change of \(-1.84\) kg (95% CI \(-2.48\) to \(-1.20\)) in BFM, \(-1.22\)% (95% CI \(-0.96\)% to \(-0.57\)% in PBF, and \(0.77\) kg/m\(^2\) (95% CI \(-0.96\) to \(-0.57\)) in BMI. A significant between-group difference was noted only in BMI (\(-0.54\) kg/m\(^2\), 95% CI \(-0.84\) to \(-0.24\)).

Figure 4. Evolution over time of main body composition variables. (A) Weight. (B) BMI. (C) Body fat mass. (D) Percentage of body fat.

Analyzing by sex, men who received the intervention reduced BFM (\(-1.80\) kg, 95% CI \(-2.77\) to \(-0.83\)), PBF (\(-1.48\)%, 95% CI \(-2.39\)% to \(-0.57\)%), and BMI (\(-0.58\) kg/m\(^2\), 95% CI \(-0.87\) to \(-0.29\)). Women and men in the IG achieved similar results, decreasing BFM (\(-1.86\) kg, 95% CI \(-2.68\) to \(-1.04\)), PBF (\(-0.89\)%, 95% CI \(-1.13\)% to \(-0.66\)%), and BMI (\(-0.89\) kg/m\(^2\), 95% CI \(-1.13\) to \(-0.66\)). Although no significant changes were observed in any of these parameters in men, BMI was significantly reduced in women in the IG compared with women in the CG.

Changes in Weight and Body Composition by Baseline BMI Classification

Regarding BMI groups at baseline (Table 4), weight loss in the IG was greater in subjects with type I obesity (BMI \(\geq 30\) kg/m\(^2\)) than in overweight (BMI <30 kg/m\(^2\)) subjects, with significant results in both cases, although compared with the CG, the differences were higher in the overweight group (\(-1.10\) kg, 95% CI \(-2.01\) to \(-0.18\)) than in the group with type I obesity (\(-0.77\) kg, 95% CI \(-1.52\) to \(-0.01\)).
### Table 4. Effect of intervention on body composition according to BMI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Difference at 3 months</th>
<th>Intervention group (IG), mean (95% CI)</th>
<th>Control group (CG), mean (95% CI)</th>
<th>IG-CC, mean (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI&lt;30 kg/m²</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–1.76 (–2.42 to –1.11)*</td>
<td>–0.67 (–1.31 to –0.03)**</td>
<td>–1.10 (–2.01 to –0.18)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW(^a) (kg)</td>
<td>0.31 (–0.16 to 0.77)</td>
<td>0.24 (–0.04 to 0.53)</td>
<td>0.06 (–0.51 to 0.63)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>0.09 (–0.05 to 0.23)</td>
<td>0.06 (–0.02 to 0.14)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.14 to 0.19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.01 to 0.05)</td>
<td>0.02 (–0.01 to 0.04)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.03 to 0.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM(^b) (kg)</td>
<td>–2.17 (–3.10 to –1.25)*</td>
<td>–0.99 (–1.55 to –0.43)*</td>
<td>–1.18 (–2.30 to –0.06)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM(^c) (kg)</td>
<td>0.41 (–0.21 to 1.04)</td>
<td>0.33 (–0.06 to 0.71)</td>
<td>0.09 (–0.67 to 0.85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM(^d) (kg)</td>
<td>0.28 (–0.12 to 0.69)</td>
<td>0.21 (–0.02 to 0.44)</td>
<td>0.07 (–0.42 to 0.56)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>–0.68 (–0.92 to –0.44)*</td>
<td>–0.22 (–0.46 to 0.02)</td>
<td>–0.47 (–0.80 to –0.13)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF(^e) (%)</td>
<td>–2.01 (–3.02 to –0.99)*</td>
<td>–0.99 (–1.49 to –0.49)*</td>
<td>–1.01 (–2.21 to 0.18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR(^f) (kcal/day)</td>
<td>8.95 (–4.46 to 22.36)</td>
<td>7.02 (–1.31 to 15.35)</td>
<td>1.93 (–14.45 to 18.31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR(^g)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.03 to 0.00)**</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.01 to 0.00)**</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.02 to 0.01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI≥30 kg/m²</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–2.04 (–2.57 to –1.50)*</td>
<td>–1.27 (–1.81 to –0.73)*</td>
<td>–0.77 (–1.52 to –0.01)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW (kg)</td>
<td>–0.16 (–0.65 to 0.33)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.58 to 0.40)</td>
<td>–0.07 (–0.77 to 0.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.25 to 0.07)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.16 to 0.12)</td>
<td>–0.07 (–0.28 to 0.15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.16 to 0.04)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.05 to 0.02)</td>
<td>–0.05 (–0.15 to 0.06)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM (kg)</td>
<td>–1.72 (–2.52 to –0.92)*</td>
<td>–1.15 (–1.89 to –0.41)*</td>
<td>–0.57 (–1.67 to 0.52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.32 (–0.96 to 0.33)</td>
<td>–0.12 (–0.78 to 0.54)</td>
<td>–0.20 (–1.12 to 0.73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.26 (–0.74 to 0.22)</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.47 to 0.38)</td>
<td>–0.22 (–0.86 to 0.43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>–0.84 (–1.07 to –0.60)*</td>
<td>–0.31 (–0.55 to –0.07)**</td>
<td>–0.53 (–0.86 to –0.19)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF (%)</td>
<td>–0.94 (–1.67 to –0.22)**</td>
<td>–0.73 (–1.44 to –0.03)**</td>
<td>–0.21 (–1.22 to 0.80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>–6.70 (–20.61 to 7.22)</td>
<td>–2.60 (–16.94 to 11.75)</td>
<td>–4.10 (–24.01 to 15.81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>–0.04 (–0.09 to 0.02)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.02 to 0.00)**</td>
<td>–0.03 (–0.09 to 0.04)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)TBW: total body water. 
\(^b\)BFM: body fat mass. 
\(^c\)FFM: fat-free mass. 
\(^d\)SMM: skeletal muscle mass. 
\(^e\)PBF: percentage of body fat. 
\(^f\)BMR: basal metabolic rate. 
\(^g\)WHR: waist-to-hip ratio. 
*P<0.01. 
**P<0.05.

In terms of body composition variables, both the CG and the IG showed reductions in BFM, PBF, and waist-to-hip ratio (WHR), with the reductions being greater in the IG. Comparing these groups, the biggest reductions were seen in the overweight group, with reductions in BFM (–1.18 kg, 95% CI –2.30 to –0.06) and BMI (–0.47 kg/m², 95% CI –0.80 to –0.13), whereas the group with type I obesity only decreased BMI (–0.53 kg/m², 95% CI –0.86 to –0.19). We observed no significant between-group differences in other study variables.

### Changes in Weight and Body Composition by Baseline Self-Reported Physical Activity

When the data were analyzed according to the baseline physical activity level measured using the IPAQ (Table 5), there was a decrease in body composition variables in both the light physical activity and the moderate-vigorous physical activity groups within the IG. Participants in the light physical activity group lost similar weight (–1.99 kg, 95% CI –2.74 to –1.24) as those in the moderate-vigorous physical activity group (–1.95 kg, 95% CI –2.46 to –1.43). However, only the moderate-vigorous...
physical activity group achieved a significant net loss compared with the CG (−1.03 kg, 95% CI −1.76 to −0.29).

In addition, the IG decreased body composition variables, showing reductions in the moderate-vigorous physical activity group such as −1.89 kg (95% CI −2.36 to −1.42) in BFM, −1.34% (95% CI −1.70% to −0.97%) in PBF, and −0.76 kg/m² (95% CI −0.95 to −0.57) in BMI, whereas the light physical activity group showed reductions of −1.77 kg (95% CI −3.21 to −0.33) in BFM and −0.85 kg/m² (95% CI −1.21 to −0.49) in BMI. Comparing these results with their counterparts in the CG, we found that only BMI (−0.51 kg/m², 95% CI −0.97 to −0.06) showed a significant difference in the light physical activity group, while the moderate-vigorous physical activity group reduced BFM (−1.03 kg, 95% CI −1.74 to −0.33), PBF (−0.76%, 95% CI −1.32% to −0.20%), and BMI (−0.51 kg/m², 95% CI −0.83 to −0.19) significantly. Differences in other body composition variables were not found.
Table 5. Effect of intervention on body composition according to physical activity at baseline.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Intervention group (IG), mean (95% CI)</th>
<th>Control group (CG), mean (95% CI)</th>
<th>IG-CC, mean (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LPA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–1.99 (–2.74 to –1.24)*</td>
<td>–1.42 (–2.17 to –0.66)*</td>
<td>–0.57 (–1.63 to 0.49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW (kg)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.93 to 0.89)</td>
<td>0.06 (–0.76 to 0.89)</td>
<td>–0.08 (–1.31 to 1.15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteins (kg)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.39 to 0.20)</td>
<td>0.01 (–0.23 to 0.25)</td>
<td>–0.10 (–0.49 to 0.28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>–0.10 (–0.28 to 0.07)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.07 to 0.04)</td>
<td>–0.09 (–0.28 to 0.10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM (kg)</td>
<td>–1.77 (–3.21 to –0.33)**</td>
<td>–1.48 (–2.67 to –0.29)**</td>
<td>–0.29 (–2.16 to 1.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.23 (–1.42 to 0.97)</td>
<td>0.06 (–1.05 to 1.17)</td>
<td>–0.29 (–1.92 to 1.34)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.29 (–1.19 to 0.60)</td>
<td>0.07 (–0.66 to 0.79)</td>
<td>–0.36 (–1.52 to 0.80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>–0.85 (–1.21 to –0.49)*</td>
<td>–0.34 (–0.62 to –0.06)**</td>
<td>–0.51 (–0.97 to –0.06)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF (%)</td>
<td>–1.04 (–2.44 to 0.35)</td>
<td>–1.11 (–2.30 to 0.08)</td>
<td>0.07 (–1.77 to 1.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>–4.78 (–30.67 to 21.10)</td>
<td>1.44 (–22.61 to 25.49)</td>
<td>–6.23 (–41.48 to 29.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.17 to 0.05)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.03 to 0.00)**</td>
<td>–0.05 (–0.16 to 0.07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MVPA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>–1.95 (–2.46 to –1.43)*</td>
<td>–0.92 (–1.45 to –0.39)*</td>
<td>–1.03 (–1.76 to –0.29)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBW (kg)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.25 to 0.14)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.36 to 0.24)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.35 to 0.35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein (kg)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.06 to 0.05)</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.09 to 0.08)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.01 to 0.10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals (kg)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.01 to 0.02)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.03 to 0.03)</td>
<td>0.01 (–0.03 to 0.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFM (kg)</td>
<td>–1.89 (–2.36 to –1.42)*</td>
<td>–0.85 (–1.39 to –0.32)**</td>
<td>–1.03 (–1.74 to –0.33)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFM (kg)</td>
<td>–0.06 (–0.33 to 0.21)</td>
<td>–0.07 (–0.48 to 0.34)</td>
<td>0.01 (–0.47 to 0.48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMM (kg)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.17 to 0.16)</td>
<td>–0.02 (–0.27 to 0.23)</td>
<td>0.01 (–0.28 to 0.31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²)</td>
<td>–0.76 (–0.95 to –0.57)*</td>
<td>–0.25 (–0.52 to 0.01)</td>
<td>–0.51 (–0.83 to –0.19)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF (%)</td>
<td>–1.34 (–1.70 to –0.97)*</td>
<td>–0.57 (–1.01 to –0.13)**</td>
<td>–0.76 (–1.32 to –0.20)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR (kcal/day)</td>
<td>–1.18 (–6.93 to 4.57)</td>
<td>–1.51 (–10.37 to 7.34)</td>
<td>0.33 (–9.96 to 10.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>–0.01 (–0.01 to 0.00)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.01 to 0.00)</td>
<td>0.00 (–0.01 to 0.00)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aLPA: light physical activity.
*bTBW: total body water.
*cBFM: body fat mass.
*dFFM: fat-free mass.
*eSMM: skeletal muscle mass.
*fPBF: percentage of body fat.
*gBMR: basal metabolic rate.
*hWHR: waist-to-hip ratio.
*iMVPA: moderate-vigorous physical activity.

**P<.01.
***P<.05.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study showed that the combined use of a mobile app and a smart band for 3 months, plus brief counselling at the start of the intervention, achieved a slight decrease in weight and BMI but not in other body composition variables. However, subanalyses by BMI, self-reported physical activity, and sex showed a greater decrease in variables such as BMI, WHR, BFM, and PBF in the IG with counselling than in the CG with counselling alone. Adding mHealth as a way of coaching and promoting healthy lifestyles in obese individuals may enhance weight loss outcomes at 3 months. More specifically, the intervention might be more effective in overweight women with

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e21771/
moderate physical activity, given that this group experienced greater reductions in weight and body composition variables.

This study offers relevant insight into the effect of mobile apps combined with wearable devices, such as an activity-tracking bracelet, on changing body composition with a large sample size. In recent years, interest in the effects of mHealth on body composition using BIA has increased, giving rise to research such as the TALENT study [39], in which an intensive, web-based lifestyle intervention (Individual Health Management) showed promising results, achieving a mean loss of approximately 10% of the baseline weight and a reduction in BMI, BFM, PBF, and waist circumference at 12 months. Even though the exercise intervention was on a web-based program, and no wearable devices were used, the results are in line with the results of this study. However, the IDEA study [21], in which one of the study groups was provided with wearable technology with a web-based interface for 24 months, did not find differences in body composition. Moreover, the study sample comprised only young adults, and it is not possible to generalize these results to other populations.

Taking studies with mobile apps into account, these results agree with other similar studies assessing the short-term effect of the Noom app (Noom Inc), a commercialized app that provides lifestyle-related logs, mainly food intake and exercise. The Noom app has been studied in combination with human coaching for 8 weeks [40] and alone for 15 and 52 weeks [41], achieving statistically significant decreases in weight, BMI, waist circumference, BFM, and PBF in both sexes. Nonetheless, none of these studies included a proper control group, requiring further research with high-quality methodology, which was the purpose of this study.

In terms of physical activity, a recent meta-analysis [42] demonstrated that a wearable technology intervention duration of more than 12 weeks was significantly more efficient than an intervention of fewer than 12 weeks in terms of BMI outcomes, and a systematic review [43] suggested that an activity tracker combined with a weight loss program may provide superior short-term (less than 6 months) results in middle-aged or older adults. Similarly, an intervention with Fitbit wrist activity tracker (Fitbit Inc) in medical students showed a positive trend for PBF in overweight women and lean body mass in overweight men [44], and another study using an app with push notifications to enhance diet and physical activity showed greater weight loss and body fat loss in obese women [45]. These results are in line with the results of this study, where there was a trend in BFM and PBF to decrease more in the IG, although no significant reduction was observed. In these studies, as in our research, a larger effect on fat mass was observed in women, which may be explained by the influence of psychological determinants, as women are more interested in participating in nutritional interventions [46] because of a desire to lose weight [47]. Also, we obtained a lower participation rate in men than in women, following the trend of the majority of studies of weight management [48], which could have led to body fat differences not being found in the male group in this study. Furthermore, body composition varies depending on sex, as women usually have a larger body fat mass proportion, whereas men are more likely to show greater lean mass, making a larger decrease of fat tissue in interventions with women plausible. Additionally, Slentz et al [49] reported that low amount/moderate-intensity and low-amount/vigorous-intensity endurance training (activity equivalent to 12 miles per week of walking or jogging) were equally effective in reducing the PBF, BFM, and waist circumference in sedentary adults. This result is in line with our findings and may explain part of the improvement in body composition variables in women through increased physical exercise.

The current results show the potential benefit of a short-term mHealth intervention with a mobile app, a smart band, and brief counselling as a useful tool for modifying body composition in overweight and obese healthy people in a primary health context. These findings are clinically relevant for various reasons. First, being an mHealth intervention with no professional face-to-face sessions or follow-up implies that there might be a cost reduction to implementing it in public health programs, and thus, this could be more cost-effective than other approaches. Through this study, we have identified the potential target profile for this intervention: overweight women (aged 18 to 65 years) with moderate physical activity at baseline. However, the physical activity classification was made using the IPAQ, which implies some degree of subjectivity and inaccuracy due to self-reporting. Future studies should explore the classification by accelerometer or another objective source of baseline physical activity in an attempt to obtain similar results. Nevertheless, these findings could be useful for adapting the intervention to population groups, whereby characteristics of each group could be taken into account in increasing the usefulness of the mHealth intervention.

Second, weight and/or BMI cannot solely be used as an accurate indicator of health, since body composition information is also relevant. The analysis of body composition could shed light on this field, allowing us to differentiate between the metabolically healthy but overweight and those with normal weight but with a pathological state. These states can be related to body components (eg, leg fat or SMM), endocrine interactions between individual fat deposits and muscle mass, and/or inflammation [50]. This stratification may be necessary to optimize prevention and treatment strategies and could be measured directly through bioimpedance variables. Furthermore, it is well known that excess body fat and its distribution are associated with metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance [51]. For these reasons, interventions that can modify body composition, focusing on decreasing BFM and PBF and leading to improved health markers, should be a priority in national health policies. In this sense, it is important to implement other measures related to fat distribution in addition to weight or BMI in daily clinical practice for a better approach. Even though our study showed moderate reductions in weight, BFM, and PBF in the IG, current findings support that a reduction in whole-body fat mass could predict changes in cardiometabolic health indices when increasing physical activity [52], even when body weight remains stable. In addition, physical activity seems to have a cardioprotective effect in subjects with higher PBF [53]. Thus, implementing this intervention in daily clinical practice could reduce the cardiovascular risk in overweight and obese people and its associated long-term issues.
Finally, it is important to point out the main limitations of this study. Missing InBody data were greater than expected (123 subjects). The majority of data lost were due to participants not meeting requirements to carry out the measurement, mainly because of medical implant or essential support devices. Despite this fact, losses were similar in both the IG and the CG. Due to the nature of the intervention, this could not be blinded to the participants; however, a recent meta-epidemiological study [54] suggested that blinding is less important than often believed. The duration of the intervention was only 3 months, so we could not measure the sustainability and long-term effect of the intervention. Also, despite the advice provided to subjects at baseline and follow-up visits to avoid the use of other apps related to nutrition or physical activity, we cannot guarantee that other apps were not used.

**Conclusion**

The results of this multicenter, randomized clinical trial study showed that, compared with standard counselling alone, using a self-reported app and a smart band obtained beneficial results in weight loss in women and a reduction in BMI related to nutrition or physical activity, we cannot guarantee that other apps were not used. The study was funded by the Spanish Ministry of Science and Innovation, Instituto de Salud Carlos III, and co-funded by the European Union (ERDF/ESF, “Investing in your future”) (RD12/0005/0001, RD16/0007/0003, RD16/0007/0005, RD16/0007/0008, RD16/0007/0009 and PI16/00101, PI16/000952, PI16/0075, PI16/00659, PI16/00421, PI16/00070, FI17/00040). Gerencia Regional de Salud de Castilla y Leon (GRS 1277/B/16) also collaborated in the funding of this study. They played no role in the study design, data analysis, reporting results, or decision to submit the manuscript for publication.

**Acknowledgments**

This study was funded by the Spanish Ministry of Science and Innovation, Instituto de Salud Carlos III, and co-funded by the European Union (ERDF/ESF, “Investing in your future”) (RD12/0005/0001, RD16/0007/0003, RD16/0007/0005, RD16/0007/0008, RD16/0007/0009 and PI16/00101, PI16/000952, PI16/0075, PI16/00659, PI16/00421, PI16/00070, FI17/00040). Gerencia Regional de Salud de Castilla y Leon (GRS 1277/B/16) also collaborated in the funding of this study. They played no role in the study design, data analysis, reporting results, or decision to submit the manuscript for publication.

The EVIDENT 3 Investigators Group comprised the following:

**Unidad de Investigación de Atención Primaria de Salamanca (APISAL):**


**Centro de Salud Torreramona de Zaragoza (Health Service of Aragón):**


**Centro de Salud Cuenc a I (Health Service of Castilla-La Mancha):**

Fernando Salcedo-Aguilar, Fructuoso Muelas-Herraz, Maria A Molina-Morate, Amparo Pérez-Parra, Fernando Madero, Angel Garcia-Imbroda, José M Izquierdo, María L Monterde.

**Universidad de Castilla-La Mancha (University of Castilla-La Mancha):**


**Centro de Salud Sta Ponça de Palma de Mallorca (Health Service of Balear Islands):**

José I Ramírez-Manent, José L Ferrer-Perelló, José E Romero-Palmer, Manuel Sarmiento-Cruz, Guillermo Artigues, Jitka Mudrychova, María Albaldadeo-Blanco, Margarita I Moyá-Seguí, Cristina Vidal-Ribas, Patricia Lorente-Montalvo, Isabel Torrens-Darder, María M Torrens-Darder, Lucía Pascual-Calleja.

**Centro de Salud San Pablo de Valladolid (Health Service of Castilla and León):**

Maria J Alvarez-Miguel, Maria D de Arriba-Gómez, Maria A Rodríguez-Fernández, Isabel Arranz-Hernando, Silvia Ramos-de la Torre, Amparo Arqueaga-Luengo, Maria E Moreno-Moreno, Agustina Marcos-García, Nora Manrique-Vinagre, Nieves Palomo-Blazquez, José L Montalvillo-Montalvillo, María E Fernández-Rodriguez, Alejandro González-Moro, Marta Santiago-Pastor, María I Pérez-Concejo, Aurora Rubio-Fernández.

**Centro de Salud Casa del Barco de Valladolid (Health Service of Castilla and León):**


---

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e21771/

CGB Computer Company, Salamanca, Spain, contributed to the technical development of EVIDENT 3 application.

Authors' Contributions
LGO and JIRR contributed to the conception and design of the study. LGO had full access to all of the data in the study and takes responsibility for the integrity of data and the accuracy of data analysis. CLS, LGO, and JIRR contributed to the drafting of the paper and CLS had the primary responsibility for final content. MAGM, LGO, and JIRR contributed to the analysis and interpretation of the data. CLS, MAGM, ERS, JIRR, and LGO contributed to the critical review of the paper for important intellectual content. CLS, MASC, IRG, JIRM, EGA, and CAC were responsible for collection and assembly of data. All the authors read and approved the final manuscript. LGO and JIRR contributed equally to this work.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

References


35. RedBedca, AESAN. BEDCA. Base de datos Española de composición de alimentos. URL: https://bedca.net/ [accessed 2020-02-15]


Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFM</td>
<td>body fat mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIA</td>
<td>bioelectrical impedance analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR</td>
<td>basal metabolic rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FFM: fat-free mass  
ICTs: information and communication technologies  
IPAQ: International Physical Activity Questionnaire  
METs: metabolic equivalents  
mHealth: mobile health  
PBF: percentage of body fat  
PCP: primary care provider  
SEEDO: Spanish Society for the Study of Obesity  
SMM: skeletal muscle mass  
TBW: total body water  
WHR: waist-to-hip ratio
A Smartphone-Based Approach to Screening for Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss: Cross-Sectional Validity Study

Heng-Yu Haley Lin\textsuperscript{1*}, MPH, MD; Yuan-Chia Chu\textsuperscript{2,3,4*}, PhD; Ying-Hui Lai\textsuperscript{5}, PhD; Hsiu-Lien Cheng\textsuperscript{5,6}, MS; Feipei Lai\textsuperscript{4,7,8}, PhD; Yen-Fu Cheng\textsuperscript{6,9,10,11}, MD, PhD; Wen-Huei Liao\textsuperscript{6,10}, MD, PhD

\textsuperscript{1}Department of Medical Education, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{2}Information Management Office, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{3}Big Data Center, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{4}Graduate Institute of Biomedical Electronics & Bioinformatics, National Taiwan University, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{5}Department of Biomedical Engineering, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{6}Department of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{7}Department of Electrical Engineering, National Taiwan University, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{8}Department of Computer Science & Information Engineering, National Taiwan University, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{9}Department of Medical Research, Taipei Veterans General Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{10}School of Medicine, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei, Taiwan
\textsuperscript{11}Institute of Brain Science, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei, Taiwan

\* these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Wen-Huei Liao, MD, PhD
Department of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery
Taipei Veterans General Hospital
No. 201, Section 2, Shipai Road, Beitou District
Taipei
Taiwan
Phone: 886 2 2875 7808 ext 7264
Email: whliao victor@gmail.com

Abstract

Background: Sudden sensorineural hearing loss (SSNHL) is an otologic emergency that warrants urgent management. Pure-tone audiometry remains the gold standard for definitively diagnosing SSNHL. However, in clinical settings such as primary care practices and urgent care facilities, conventional pure-tone audiometry is often unavailable.

Objective: This study aimed to determine the correlation between hearing outcomes measured by conventional pure-tone audiometry and those measured by the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app and determine the diagnostic validity of the hearing scale differences between the two ears as obtained by the Ear Scale app for SSNHL.

Methods: This cross-sectional study included a cohort of 88 participants with possible SSNHL who were referred to an otolaryngology clinic or emergency department at a tertiary medical center in Taipei, Taiwan, between January 2018 and June 2019. All participants underwent hearing assessments with conventional pure-tone audiometry and the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app consecutively. The gold standard for diagnosing SSNHL was defined as the pure-tone average (PTA) difference between the two ears being \( \geq 30 \) dB HL. The hearing results measured by the Ear Scale app were presented as 20 stratified hearing scales. The hearing scale difference between the two ears was estimated to detect SSNHL.

Results: The study sample comprised 88 adults with a mean age of 46 years, and 50\% (44/88) were females. PTA measured by conventional pure-tone audiometry was strongly correlated with the hearing scale assessed by the Ear Scale app, with a Pearson correlation coefficient of .88 (95\% CI .82-.92). The sensitivity of the 5-hearing scale difference (25 dB HL difference) between the impaired ear and the contralateral ear in diagnosing SSNHL was 95.5\% (95\% CI 87.5%-99.1\%), with a specificity of 66.7\% (95\% CI 43.0%-85.4\%).

Conclusions: Our findings suggest that the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app can be useful in the evaluation of SSNHL in clinical settings where conventional pure-tone audiometry is not available.
Introduction

Sudden sensorineural hearing loss (SSNHL) is an otologic emergency that warrants urgent clinical visits and timely management. SSNHL is commonly defined as a sensorineural hearing loss of 30 or more decibels (dB) over at least 3 consecutive audiometric frequencies occurring within a 72-hour period [1]; it affects approximately 5 to 27 per 100,000 people annually, and its incidence is gradually increasing over time [1-4]. Although SSNHL can occur at any age, the peak incidence occurs among adults aged 45 to 64 years, which is the general age range of working individuals [5]. The typical manifestations of SSNHL include immediate or rapidly progressive hearing loss and, sometimes, hearing loss upon awakening [1]. However, many patients with SSNHL often initially experience only nonspecific symptoms, such as aural fullness or a sensation of a blocked ear, and fail to recognize a loss of hearing, which results in delayed evaluations and treatment [1]. Compounded with the effects of aging and associated symptoms such as dizziness and tinnitus, SSNHL significantly impacts individuals’ general health and quality of life and causes a considerable health care burden [1,6]. Previous studies have identified possible prognostic factors for hearing recovery following SSNHL, including age, severity of hearing loss, duration of hearing loss, and delay in treatment [5,7,8]. As it is a potentially modifyable variable, shortening the time between onset of hearing loss and adequate intervention is a crucial step in improving posttreatment hearing outcomes and minimizing other negative health consequences associated with hearing loss [9-12].

Currently, pure-tone audiometry remains the gold standard for evaluations of SSNHL since it not only reflects the severity of hearing loss but also provides a baseline hearing status for the assessment of recovery [5,8]. Conventional pure-tone audiometry usually requires a standard soundproof booth and calibrated audiometer, is performed by a qualified audiologist, and takes approximately 10 to 20 minutes per patient to perform. Considering the strict requirements regarding equipment and hearing care professionals, the accessibility of timely hearing evaluations using conventional pure-tone audiometry can be limited, especially in primary care settings [13,14]. To address these challenges and optimize the use of hearing health care, the traditional model of hearing screening and health service delivery should be supplemented with more efficient and attainable approaches. For hearing care, a hybrid hearing clinic with both internet-based and in-person services has been implemented in prior research and has revealed high patient satisfaction [15]. In terms of hearing screening, innovative telemedicine tools such as computer-assisted hearing tests [16-19] and mobile phone–based devices [20-23] have been introduced and investigated.

The Hearing Scale Test (HST) is a novel hearing screening tool derived from consecutive hearing screening procedures and used to estimate the current hearing status of each ear; it is based on the concepts of the Landolt C vision test chart [24,25]. With stratified hearing scales that represent various sound levels and four of the main frequencies in speech perception, 0.5 kHz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, and 4 kHz, the HST not only precisely reflects an individual’s hearing status but also has a computer-based design that enables outcome monitoring and patient surveillance [24]. The HST has demonstrated satisfactory feasibility and accuracy for hearing screening programs in pediatric populations in prior studies [24,25]. A recent study that integrated the HST into a smartphone-based app (Ear Scale) reported remarkable validity for hearing screening among school-aged children [26]. Given the paucity of studies applying innovative mobile phone–based hearing measures to screen for SSNHL, the aim of our study was to determine the correlations of hearing outcomes measured by the proposed smartphone-based hearing screening app with those measured by traditional pure-tone audiometry. We sought to determine the diagnostic validity of the smartphone-based hearing screening approach and, additionally, to explore its role and value in the evaluation of individuals with potential SSNHL.

Methods

Study Design and Population

This cross-sectional study was conducted at a tertiary medical center in Taipei, Taiwan, from January 2018 to June 2019. The sample size needed to reach a power of 0.80 was 82. We recruited 88 adults with possible SSNHL who visited either an otolaryngology outpatient clinic or emergency department. The study was approved by the institutional review board of the Taipei Veterans General Hospital (2016-12-004BC). Investigators explained the research objectives and process, and written informed consent was obtained from all patients enrolled. Instructions regarding the screening procedures and operations were provided by the trained examiners prior to each hearing screening test.

Hearing Measurements

Conventional Pure-Tone Audiometric Assessments

Pure-tone audiometry was administered by certified audiologists in the outpatient department. Otoscopy was performed to examine the clearness of the ear canal. Audiometric examinations were performed with a GSI 61 2-channel audiometer (Grason-Stadler Inc) in a soundproof booth. Standard clinical methods (modified Hughson-Westlake methods) were used to obtain pure-tone air conduction thresholds. To assess the reliability of the threshold measures, 1000 Hz was tested twice in each ear; participants with a >10 dB (dB) change between measures were considered unreliable. The pure-tone average (PTA) was calculated using air conduction thresholds at 0.5 kHz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, and 4 kHz in each ear. Each individual’s pretreatment hearing status measured by conventional pure-tone audiometry was categorized into the following 5 grades according to the modified Siegel criteria for
SSNHL [27]: grade 1 (PTA ≤25 dB HL), grade 2 (PTA 26-45 dB HL), grade 3 (PTA 46-75 dB HL), grade 4 (PTA 76-90 dB HL), and grade 5 (PTA >90 dB HL).

**Smartphone-Based Hearing Screening App**

The mobile devices used in this study were the iPhone 7 or iPhone 7 Plus (Apple Inc), with iOS software version 13.3.2. The iOS-based automated Ear Scale app (version 2.0) was integrated with the HST and used to measure the hearing statuses of both ears in the enrolled participants (Figure 1a). The items included in the hearing test checklist were assessed by examiners (Figure 1b). The patients were taught how to wear the headphones and click the response button when they heard the test tones. The headphones used throughout the examination were calibrated for Apple EarPods. The detailed calibration procedures are described in the next section. After the participants put on the headphones correctly, the background noise level was assessed immediately using the built-in function in the Ear Scale app to ensure that the ambient noise was less than 50 A-weighted decibels (Figure 1c). Last, the mobile device and headphones were calibrated and standardized before the HST was started (Figure 1b). The HST incorporated in the Ear Scale app was a novel hearing screening tool developed on the basis of consecutive hearing screening procedures to estimate the current hearing status of each ear [24,25]. The HST measured individuals’ hearing status with respect to stratified hearing scales that represented sound intensity and 4 test frequencies (0.5 kHz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, and 4 kHz). The adjacent scales differed from one another by 5 dB (Multimedia Appendix 1). The test tones lasted for 1.5 seconds, and the silent intervals lasted for 2 to 3 seconds [26,28]. The Ear Scale app started with hearing scale 5 (S5), which corresponded to 25 dB HL. The four test tones were automatically presented to patients in a fixed order of 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, and 0.5 kHz. The stimulus level of the pure tones descended to the next adjacent hearing scale only if the patient responded correctly to all tones (Figure 1d). The minimum audible hearing scale indicated the lowest pure-tone stimulus level at which the participant responded correctly to all four test tones, was shown at the end of each examination, and was saved to the devices (Figure 1e). The hearing scale difference between the impaired ear and the contralateral ear was determined and used for identifying patients with SSNHL (Figure 1e).
iOS Automated Audiometry Calibration

To calibrate the sound output of the iOS mobile devices to a hearing threshold level of zero at various frequencies, we applied the reference equivalent threshold sound pressure levels for Apple EarPods, which were reported in a prior study with consistent output across different EarPod pairs and between the right and left earphones and therefore could be applied to various Apple mobile devices with EarPods [29]. The Knowles Electronics Manikin for Acoustic Research (KEMAR) was initially invented in collaboration with the audiological industry for the use of hearing aid development. KEMAR meets the international standards that are specified by ISO, IEC as well as ANSI. To record the eardrum pressure and evaluate the sound quality, the EarPods were placed in the left and right pinna of a KEMAR manikin, which included a head and torso that had been designed specifically for anthropomorphic testing in the audiologic industry [30]. The microphones of the simulators and the electrical and acoustical measurement systems were calibrated using a 42AA Pistonphone (GRAS Sound & Vibration). The hearing thresholds were determined in an ascending order, as described in ISO 8253-1 [29], with a step size of 1 dB. The initial stimulus level was set to be 10 dB lower than the lowest subject response threshold, which was predetermined by conventional audiometry. Pure-tone stimuli at 0.25 kHz, 0.5 kHz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, and 8 kHz were generated on the iOS mobile devices and delivered by the Apple EarPods. All the devices were standardized by setting the user-controllable volume to 100% of the maximum limit. A 2-down, 1-up adaptive staircase procedure was used to determine the final hearing threshold of each subject after 3 reversals [31]. The maximum output difference between the right and left EarPods was less than 1 dB, and the maximum output difference between the devices (iPhone 7 and iPhone 7 Plus) was less than 1.5 dB. The output levels of the EarPods were calibrated in units of dB sound pressure level when the volume of the Apple mobile device was set to the maximum. The output level (dBSPL) of...
the pure tone at each test frequency was similar to that previously reported [28,29].

**Hearing Screening Procedures**

Figure 2 illustrates how the proposed Ear Scale app was used for hearing screening among patients enrolled in this study who had signs of possible sudden hearing loss. Participants underwent the Ear Scale app examination at presentation and were classified into 3 groups (≤S5, S6–S10, >S10) based on their test results. We then arranged comprehensive hearing assessments, including otoscopy, conventional pure-tone audiometry, and other examinations for those who had a hearing scale greater than S10 in one ear or asymmetrical hearing with hearing scale differences greater than 5-scale between the affected ear and the contralateral ear (Figure 2). Participants with bilateral sudden sensorineural hearing loss or conductive hearing loss were excluded from the study population.

**Figure 2.** Hearing screening procedures used in this study.

**Statistical Analysis**

Pearson correlation coefficients were estimated to investigate the correlation between PTA measured by conventional pure-tone audiometry and the hearing scale derived from the Ear Scale app using the HST, as well as the differences in the hearing results between the impaired ear and the contralateral ear of each individual. The corresponding PTA of each hearing scale group was demonstrated using a box plot. Analysis of variance was used to determine the difference in the mean PTA between each scale. Indicators of validity and the predictive value were estimated to determine the diagnostic accuracy of the HST for SSNHL compared with that of the gold standard pure-tone audiometric evaluation. Patients with a PTA difference between the two ears of at least 30 dB within a 72-hour period (ie, the diagnostic gold standard for identifying SSNHL that was used in this study), as assessed by conventional pure-tone audiometry, were considered positive for SSNHL. We then estimated the sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, and negative predictive value for diagnosing SSNHL on the basis of 3 hearing scale differences (5-scale difference, 6-scale difference, and 7-scale difference) between the two ears as measured by the Ear Scale app. Sensitivity was defined as the percentage of individuals with true SSNHL (ie, patients with PTA thresholds that met the diagnostic gold standard for the presence of SSNHL included in the American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery guidelines [1]) who were correctly identified as having SSNHL by the Ear Scale app. Positive predictive value was defined as the probability of true SSNHL being present among participants who were considered positive for SSNHL by the Ear Scale app. The significance tests for all analyses were 2-sided and included a type I error of .05. The power was set to be 0.80. The statistical software used was Stata 15 (StataCorp LLC).

**Results**

**Baseline Characteristics of the Study Sample**

This study included 88 adults with possible SSNHL who visited the emergency department or an otolaryngology clinic from January 2018 to June 2019; patients with bilateral or conductive hearing loss were excluded. The mean age of the study cohort was 46 years, and 50% (44/88) were females (Table 1). The average PTA of the cohort included in the analytic cohort was 67.1 dB HL (Table 1). The average hearing scale measured by the Ear Scale app was S17 (ie, 85 dB HL). Regarding the differences in the hearing results between the two ears, the mean PTA difference was 47.6 dB, whereas the average hearing scale difference (obtained from the Ear Scale app) was 9 hearing scales (ie, 45 dB difference; Table 1).
Table 1. Baseline characteristics of the study sample (n=88).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age in years, mean (SD)</td>
<td>46 (14.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (female), n (%)</td>
<td>44 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretreatment hearing grade of worst-hearing ear, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1 (PTA&lt;25 dB HL)</td>
<td>7 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2 (PTA 26-45 dB HL)</td>
<td>8 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3 (PTA 46-75 dB HL)</td>
<td>43 (49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 4 (PTA 76-90 dB HL)</td>
<td>16 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 5 (PTA &gt;90 dB HL)</td>
<td>14 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTA of worst-hearing ear, dB, mean (SD)</td>
<td>67.1 (24.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average scale of worst-hearing ear, mean (SD)</td>
<td>17 (4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average PTA difference&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;, dB, mean (SD)</td>
<td>47.6 (25.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average scale difference&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;, mean (SD)</td>
<td>9 (4.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>PTA: pure-tone average.

<sup>b</sup>dB HL: decibel hearing level.

<sup>c</sup>PTA difference = PTA of impaired ear – PTA of contralateral ear.

<sup>d</sup>Hearing scale difference = hearing scale of impaired ear – hearing scale of contralateral ear.

**Correlation Between the Pure-Tone Average and Hearing Scale**

The Pearson correlation analyses revealed strong positive correlations between the PTA assessed by pure-tone audiometry and the hearing scale measured by the Ear Scale app as well as between the PTA differences and hearing scale differences between the two ears, with correlation coefficients of .88 (95% CI .82-.92) and .84 (95% CI .77-.90), respectively (Figure 3).

The association of the PTA and hearing scale differences between the two ears is presented in Figure 4. The mean PTA difference differed significantly across the hearing scale groups ($P<.05$).

**Figure 3.** Scatter plots demonstrating the (a) correlation between the pure-tone average (PTA) obtained by pure-tone audiometry (y-axis) and the hearing scale measured by the Ear Scale app (x-axis) and (b) correlation between the PTA differences and hearing scale differences between the impaired and contralateral ears.
Figure 4. Box plot of the pure-tone average (PTA) difference (y-axis) in relation to the hearing scale difference (x-axis) between the impaired and contralateral ears. The green line depicts the best-fitted mean PTA difference in relation to the hearing scale difference for the linear regression, and the green area represents the 95% confidence interval of the model (*p<.05, significant differences were found between each hearing scale difference group). The dashed line represents PTA differences of 30 dB (ie, diagnostic gold standard for detecting sudden sensorineural hearing loss in this study).

Validity of the Ear Scale App in Diagnosing Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss

The diagnostic gold standard for SSNHL used in our study was a PTA difference between the impaired ear and the contralateral ear of ≥30 dB. The indicators of validity of the Ear Scale app and the cutoff values for the hearing scale differences are displayed in Table 2. The 5-scale difference (ie, 25 dB difference) had the highest sensitivity (95.5%, 95% CI 87.5%-99.1%) in diagnosing SSNHL, while the 7-scale difference (ie, 35 dB difference) showed the highest specificity (90.5%, 95% CI 69.6%-98.8%).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hearing scale difference</th>
<th>Sensitivity, % (95% CI)</th>
<th>Specificity, % (95% CI)</th>
<th>PPVb, % (95% CI)</th>
<th>NPVc, % (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 hearing scales (25 dB)</td>
<td>95.5 (87.5-99.1)</td>
<td>66.7 (43.0-85.4)</td>
<td>90.1 (80.7-95.9)</td>
<td>82.3 (56.6-96.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 hearing scales (30 dB)</td>
<td>92.5 (83.4-97.5)</td>
<td>85.7 (63.7-97.0)</td>
<td>95.4 (87.1-99.0)</td>
<td>78.3 (56.3-92.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 hearing scales (35 dB)</td>
<td>91.0 (81.5-96.6)</td>
<td>90.5 (69.6-98.8)</td>
<td>96.8 (89.0-99.6)</td>
<td>76.0 (54.9-90.6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aHearing scale difference = hearing scale of impaired ear – hearing scale of contralateral ear.
bPPV: positive predictive value.
cNPV: negative predictive value.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study is the first to investigate the validity of a smartphone-based hearing screening app integrated with the novel HST for the assessment of SSNHL. This study confirmed that there is a strong correlation in hearing results between conventional pure-tone audiometry and the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app in a cohort of patients with possible SSNHL. The sensitivity of the hearing scale difference between the two ears measured by the Ear Scale app (95.5% for 5-hearing scale difference [25 dB] with a specificity of 66.7%, 92.5% for 6-hearing scale difference [30 dB] with a specificity of 85.7%, and 91.0% for 7-hearing scale difference [35 dB] with a specificity of 90.5%) in diagnosing SSNHL was high, suggesting that the smartphone-based approach can assist
in the evaluation of SSNHL, particularly in clinical settings where conventional pure-tone audiometry is not available.

Comparison With Prior Works

A previous study implemented the proposed Ear Scale app for hearing screening among a pediatric population and reported a strong correlation in the PTA between the app and conventional pure-tone audiometry in a soundproof booth as well as high accuracy in identifying school-aged children with hearing impairment [26]. Notably, Handzel et al [32] used a different smartphone-based app, the uHear hearing test app, for the initial assessment of unilateral SSNHL in 32 patients who had been diagnosed with SSNHL by standard audiometry. Table 3 illustrates the comparison between the gold standard approach (ie, pure-tone audiometry), the uHear app, and the proposed Ear Scale app in this study. The authors observed a sensitivity of 76% with the most stringent gold standard and of 94% with the least stringent criterion when they used the smartphone-based hearing screening tool for diagnosing SSNHL (Table 3) [32]. Our results were consistent with these findings, added to the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic approach</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Audiometric criteria of SSNHL</th>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Sample size, n</th>
<th>Measurement unit</th>
<th>Sensitivity/specificity, %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uHear hearing test app</td>
<td>Handzel et al [31]</td>
<td>Hearing loss of at least 2 hearing grades across 3 or more consecutive frequencies</td>
<td>Smartphone-based test</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Hearing grade</td>
<td>76.0/91.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear Scale app (current study)</td>
<td>Lin et al [10]</td>
<td>Hearing loss of at least 5 hearing scale difference</td>
<td>Smartphone-based test</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>Hearing scale</td>
<td>95.5/66.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*SSNHL: sudden sensorineural hearing loss.
*Definition according to the American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery guidelines [1].
*Hearing loss is defined as related to the opposite ear’s thresholds.
*not available.
*dB HL: decibel hearing level.

Clinical Implications

Several practice guidelines and reviews have suggested that patients with possible SSNHL undergo a comprehensive clinical workup upon arrival in the clinic, including thorough history taking, relevant physical examinations, and tuning fork tests to differentiate other types of hearing loss from SSNHL, identify nonidiopathic etiologies, and generate differential diagnoses [1,5,33,34]. Although these approaches are important and convenient, they can yield unreliable, even misleading, results [35,36]. Audiometric confirmation is still mandatory for definitively diagnosing SSNHL and should be performed on an emergent basis [1,5]. Conventional pure-tone audiometry remains the preferred method because it accurately distinguishes conductive hearing loss from those of sensorineural origins and establishes frequency-specific hearing thresholds, which are required components of frequently used audiometric criteria for SSNHL [1,5]. Initial audiometric outcomes also provide information essential for predicting prognoses and planning treatments [1]. Given their critical role in the management of SSNHL, audiometric assessments should be performed in accordance with the protocols proposed by the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association and the standards regarding the maximum allowable ambient noise and proper calibration [1,37,38]. In primary care practices (PCPs) or other busy clinical settings, such as urgent care and emergency departments, performing a standard battery of audiology tests can be challenging [13,39]. The high costs of equipment, limited space and time, noisy environments, and shortage of qualified personnel who are capable of conducting the screening and daily health assessments with audiometry are barriers to conventional pure-tone evaluations [13,39,40]. In a study that investigated the procedures performed by general practitioners working in PCPs, less than 20% of clinicians performed audiometry in their practices [41]. Since conventional pure-tone audiometry is mostly unavailable in PCP settings, innovative telehealth approaches have emerged that have been demonstrated as applicable and cost-effective for hearing assessments in
PCP-level settings [14,40,42,43]. The Ear Scale app proposed in this study has been shown to be feasible for hearing screenings in the pediatric population [26] and has been shown to have a good level of diagnostic accuracy for SSNHL. We believe that this novel tool, which incorporates the HST and smartphone-based technology, can serve as a point-of-care test for SSNHL at the PCP level because it is affordable, efficient, and requires minimal training to administer. The proposed procedure used in this study (Figure 2) could be the standardized approach when implementing the Ear Scale app in real-world settings. It could therefore assist healthcare providers in PCP or urgent care settings in making appropriate decisions regarding otolaryngology referrals, reduce the possibility of delayed management, and potentially improve the hearing recovery of patients with SSNHL.

Since the premorbid hearing status is generally unknown among people with possible SSNHL, hearing loss is usually defined on the basis of the difference between the two ears in the thresholds [1]. Based on our results, the PTA differences and hearing scale differences between the two ears are strongly correlated, with a correlation coefficient of .84. The diagnostic validity of three selected hearing scale difference cutoffs is reported in our study. Although all three cutoff values yielded satisfactory sensitivity, we preferred and recommended using the 5-hearing scale difference, as it had the lowest false-negative responses and can serve as the diagnostic standard for SSNHL. There is evidence that patients with untreated/unrecovered SSNHL have more tinnitus and balance problems as well as a poorer long-term quality of life [6,44]. These findings pose significant concerns regarding other negative health consequences associated with hearing loss, including falls [9,45], social isolation [46], depression [47], and incident dementia [10]. In the presence of other common sources of hearing loss, such as presbycusis, the impact of SSNHL is aggravated. In addition, misclassifying diseased cases as nondiseased cases may lead to delayed care among individuals with SSNHL, which is an important prognostic factor because it can be prevented [7,8]. Given that further hearing evaluations of SSNHL, which mainly include standard pure-tone audiometric assessments, are neither invasive nor harmful, minimizing the false-negative rate should be the goal of adequate tools when screening persons with possible SSNHL.

Limitations

Our results are limited by a high prevalence of SSNHL because the study cohort consisted of patients referred to tertiary academic medical centers. This factor could potentially bias our estimations of the positive and negative predictive values. Additionally, our screening approach may not be applicable for individuals with bilateral hearing loss. Individuals with conductive hearing loss were excluded from the study cohort, and testing such individuals may pose concerns of safety and feasibility. Despite these limitations, our study confirmed that hearing results can be compared between conventional pure-tone audiometry and the proposed Ear Scale app and that the app has sufficient diagnostic validity for SSNHL. To increase the generalizability and ensure the feasibility and safety of this smartphone-based hearing screening approach in PCP or urgent care settings, future Studies with prospective designs and larger sample sizes, acceptability surveys among patients and clinicians, and health-economic analyses are needed. Furthermore, the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app creates new possibilities in the management of SSNHL at the PCP level since it can serve as a patient surveillance tool, enabling frequent monitoring and treatment adjustments [24,25]. Given the often limited insurance coverage of conventional pure-tone audiometric assessments, implementing a smartphone-based hearing screening approach is a crucial step toward the decentralization of hearing care in the PCP setting, increased accessibility of timely management, and, ultimately, better hearing prognoses in patients with SSNHL.

Conclusions

This study demonstrated that the hearing results measured by conventional pure-tone audiometry and the proposed smartphone-based Ear Scale app are strongly correlated among patients with possible SSNHL. Our results showed that the hearing scale difference between the two ears, as measured by the Ear Scale app, has a satisfactory level of validity in detecting SSNHL. The results also suggested that this smartphone-based approach may effectively assist the evaluation of SSNHL in clinical settings where conventional pure-tone audiometry is not available.

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank Shang-Liang Wu, Hsia-Wei Tseng, Hsin-Yi Huang, the Big Data Center of Taipei Veterans General Hospital, and the Biostatistics Task Force of Taipei Veterans General Hospital for their assistance during the study. This study was based in part on data from the Big Data Center at Taipei Veterans General Hospital. The interpretations and conclusions contained herein do not represent the position of the Taipei Veterans General Hospital. This study was supported by grants from Taipei Veterans General Hospital (V108C-178, V108C-145, V109C-157, 108VACS-003), the Ministry of Health and Welfare (MOST 108-2221-E-075-001, MOHW109-TDU-B-211-114001, MOST 109-2221-E-075-001, MOHW109-TDU-B-211-134019) and the Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST108-2221-E-075-001, MOST109-2320-B-075-006, MOST109-2218-E-010-004). The funders did not play any roles in the study design, data collection or analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.
Authors' Contributions

Both WHL and YFC (email: yfcheng2@vghtpe.gov.tw) are corresponding authors for this paper and contributed equally to this work. WHL and YFC were responsible for the acquisition of the data. HYHL, YCC, YHL, and HLC were responsible for the analysis and interpretation of the data. HYHL and YCC drafted of the manuscript. HYHL and YCC performed the statistical analysis. WHL and YFC obtained funding, and YCC, YHL, FL, and YFC were responsible for administrative, technical, or material support. YFC and WHL supervised the study. All authors were responsible for study concept and design, critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content, and approval of the final version.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Sound volume in decibels for each stimulation level examined in the Hearing Scale Test and for different frequencies.

References


Abbreviations

- **dB**: decibel
- **HL**: hearing level
- **HST**: Hearing Scale Test
- **KEMAR**: Knowles Electronics Manikin for Acoustic Research
- **PCP**: primary care practice
- **PTA**: pure-tone average
- **SSNHL**: sudden sensorineural hearing loss
Effect of a Text Messaging–Based Educational Intervention on Cesarean Section Rates Among Pregnant Women in China: Quasirandomized Controlled Trial

Yanfang Su1*, SCD; Jesse Heitner2*, SCD; Changzheng Yuan3,4*, SCD; Yafei Si5, MA; Dan Wang6, MA; Zhiying Zhou7, MA; Zhongliang Zhou6, PhD

1School of Medicine, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, United States
2Aceso Global, Washington, DC, United States
3The Children’s Hospital and School of Public Health, Zhejiang University School of Medicine, Hangzhou, China
4Nutrition Department, Harvard School of Public Health, Boston, MA, United States
5School of Risk & Actuarial Studies and Centre of Excellence in Population Ageing Research (CEPAR), University of New South Wales, Sydney, Australia
6School of Public Policy and Administration, Xi’an Jiaotong University, Xi’an, China
7School of Public Health, Xi’an Jiaotong University Health Science Center, Xi’an, China

* these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Zhongliang Zhou, PhD
School of Public Policy and Administration
Xi’an Jiaotong University
28# Xianning West Road
Xi’an
China
Phone: 86 18291498261
Email: zzliang1981@xjtu.edu.cn

Abstract

Background: Consensus exists that appropriate regional cesarean rates should not exceed 15% of births, but China’s cesarean rate exceeds 50% in some areas, prompting numerous calls for its reduction. At present, China’s 2016 two-child policy has heightened the implications of national cesarean section trends.

Objective: This study leveraged pervasive cellular phone access amongst Chinese citizens to test the effect of a low-cost and scalable prenatal advice program on cesarean section rates.

Methods: Participants were pregnant women presenting for antenatal care at a clinic in Xi’an, China. Assignment was quasirandomized and utilized factorial assignment based on the expecting mother’s birthday. Participants were assigned to one of the following four groups, with each receiving a different set of messages: (1) a comparison group that received only a few “basic” messages, (2) a group receiving messages primarily regarding care seeking, (3) a group receiving messages primarily regarding good home prenatal practices, and (4) a group receiving text messages of all groups. Messages were delivered throughout pregnancy and were tailored to each woman’s gestational week. The main outcome was the rates of cesarean delivery reported in the intervention arms. Data analysts were blinded to treatment assignment.

Results: In total, 2115 women completed the trial and corresponding follow-up surveys. In the unadjusted analysis, the group receiving all texts was associated with an odds ratio of 0.77 (P=.06), though neither the care seeking nor good home prenatal practice set yielded a relevant impact. Adjusting for potentially confounding covariates showed that the group with all texts sent together was associated with an odds ratio of 0.67 (P=.01). Notably, previous cesarean section evoked an odds ratio of 11.78 (P<.001), highlighting that having a cesarean section predicts future cesarean section in a subsequent pregnancy.

Conclusions: Sending pregnant women in rural China short informational messages with integrated advice regarding both care-seeking and good home prenatal practices appears to reduce women’s likelihood of undergoing cesarean section. Reducing clear medical indications for cesarean section seems to be the strongest potential pathway of the effect. Cesarean section based
on only maternal request did not seem to occur regularly in our study population. Preventing unnecessary cesarean section at present may have a long-term impact on future cesarean section rates.

**Introduction**

The global health care community has estimated that regional cesarean section (CS) rates should not exceed 10% to 15% [1,2]. However, in the Global Survey by the World Health Organization (WHO), CS in China was estimated to involve 46.2% of all deliveries, which is the highest rate for any country in the survey [3]. In a recent multicenter survey of 39 hospitals across mainland China, the overall CS rate was 54.90% [4]. It is estimated that between 1990 and 2014, China had an average annual rate of increase in CS of about 10%, and misconceptions of pain, genital modification, safety, and cultural fortune were reported as leading factors [5]. Since at least 2008, this increase was most visible in the rural counties of China [6]. Though rural counties have clearly lower rates of CS than general city or “supercity” areas, as of 2014, the average rural county CS rate was slightly over 30%, and it is rising [6].

When warranted, CS is a vital intervention. Many studies have confirmed that it has a strong protective effect on perinatal mortality when conditions, such as breech presentation, placenta previa, and uterine rupture, are encountered [3,7,8]. A study of 66,226 deliveries in Shanghai found that compared with vaginal delivery, CS was associated with a reduction in antepartum stillbirth, bone trauma, intracranial hemorrhage, and neonatal hypoxic encephalopathy [9]. Moreover, studies suggest no evidence of a difference in maternal mortality between planned vaginal and planned cesarean delivery [10]. In the Global Survey by the WHO, the maternal mortality risk for antepartum CS without an indication could not be estimated because there were no maternal deaths in the group [3]. However, CS does come with serious risks [8]. Using data from the Global Survey by the WHO, although researchers found no association with maternal mortality, CS without medical indications had strong associations with severe maternal morbidity. On putting death and several severe morbidities, namely admission to the intensive care unit, blood transfusion, and hysterectomy, into one “Severe Maternal Outcomes” index, the authors found that elective antepartum CS had an adjusted odds ratio (OR) of 5.93 (CI 3.88-9.05) for qualifying for the index and elective intrapartum CS had an adjusted OR of 14.29 (CI 10.91-18.72) (both P<.05) [11]. A large cohort study in Australia found that mothers delivering via CS were more likely to be readmitted to the hospital within 8 weeks of birth [12].

CS is also associated with problems after delivery. A recent study found that women delivering via CS had roughly twice the odds of persistent pain 1 year after delivery [13]. The association between CS and reduced future fertility has been demonstrated in numerous studies [14]. In a new pregnancy, a prior CS may cause an increased risk of fetal wastage and may be linked to unexplained stillbirth [10,14]. Further, there is a strong body of evidence on impaired uterine function following cesarean delivery. In subsequent pregnancies, CS poses a risk of uterine scar dehiscence, and, in some cases, uterine rupture [14].

Given the risks and benefits, the WHO has concluded that “cesarean section should ideally only be undertaken when medically necessary” [2]. Yet, Lumbiganon et al estimated that 11.7% of all deliveries in China during their study period involved CS with no medical indications [3]. Combining the 24 countries in the Global Survey by the WHO, it was estimated that 63% of all CS procedures without medical indications were performed in China [11]. An important driver of this pattern is that women with no indications necessitating CS frequently request this procedure. Cesarean delivery on maternal request accounted for 15.53% of all deliveries and 28.43% of all cesarean deliveries in a multicenter survey [4]. This national estimate confirms what at least 11 other smaller and qualitative studies [15] and at least one regional estimate [16] have suggested (women’s preferential choices are part of the rise in China’s CS rates). Influencing this demand may be an important strategy for reducing medically unnecessary CS.

There is also evidence that part of the “demand” for CS is supplier induced [17]. CS brings in approximately double the hospital revenue per birth as compared with vaginal delivery [16,18], and the power imbalance between patients and providers may mask the true decision making [14].

In a recent study in Shanghai, of 599 women interviewed in their third trimester, 17.0% reported preferring cesarean delivery. Yet, among women completing the study, 58.1% underwent CS. Of those, only 50.0% had clinically accepted indications for CS [19]. Therefore, educating and empowering women to refute inappropriate doctor recommendations for CS may be as important of a pathway for reducing CS as changing women’s underlying preferences.

There is agreement that the rate of CS in China, whether supply or demand-side driven, is excessive, and experts are calling for strategies for its reduction [1,4,17]. Mobile health (mHealth) generally has already shown relevant effects in several intervention areas. However, evidence for or against its efficacy for maternal and child health is scarce [20,21], and larger scale evaluations of its possible effects are warranted [22-27]. This study comprises a portion of the Evaluation for mHealth

**Trial Registration:** ClinicalTrials.gov NCT02037087; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02037087.

**International Registered Report Identifier (IRRID):** RR2-10.1136/bmjopen-2015-011016

**KEYWORDS**

cesarean section; short message service; SMS text messaging; quasirandomized controlled trial; mobile health

---

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e19953
Interventions’ Newborn Health Project. The Newborn Health Project has several aims, and its primary (trial registered) metric of success is a newborn’s appropriate weight for gestational age [28,29]. This study investigated whether the project was successful in the secondary goal of lowering the rate of CS in the intervention arms.

Methods

The Newborn Health Project offers expectant mothers in the rural district of Gaoling in Xi’an, China, a package of free, short, informational messages regarding pregnancy and childbirth via cell phones. The full protocol of the Newborn Health Project has been published elsewhere [29], including the process and rationale for selecting the study site. The study utilizes factorial quasirandomization at the individual level to assign women to receive one of four groups of text messages and then compares outcomes between the four groups. Participating women were blinded to assignment. All data analyses were performed with blinding to treatment assignment. The trial has been registered at ClinicalTrials.gov (NCT02037087).

The four study arms were as follows: (1) good home prenatal practice messages (home practices), which included advice on nutrition, exercise, self-awareness of depression, breastfeeding, etc; (2) care-seeking messages (care seeking), which included information about government-subsidized programs, warning signs of potential problems, and the importance of care seeking during illness; (3) both types of messaging (all texts); and (4) a very limited (25 in total) set of “basic” messages about pregnancy (acting as a comparison group). Women in the other intervention arms also received all of the basic messages. It was decided that the comparison group should receive at least some regular informational “placebo” messages to make the participants in this group feel like they received a service and were part of the program. Ethically, it also ensured that all enrollees received the most basic pregnancy information, which is the informational equivalent of “basic care.” These basic messages primarily included updates on fetal development, as well as reminders for prenatal visits and promotion of certified skilled attendance of labor. Group comparisons of treatment arms elicited the effect of (assignment to) receiving the content in the intervention messages in addition to the basic ones, and estimated this effect separated out from any effect associated with being included in an informational messaging study. The number of messages by topic and study arm is presented in Multimedia Appendix 1.

The four treatment arms received differing sets of messages relevant to labor and delivery that could potentially impact a woman’s choice of delivery mode. Of the “basic” (comparison) group’s 25 messages, none were relevant to delivery. The “care-seeking” group was sent seven relevant messages, generally focusing on describing proper indications for CS and cautioning that CS and anesthesia make birth less painful but come with their other risks. The “home practices” group was sent 15 delivery-relevant messages, generally focusing on inspiring confidence in vaginal delivery and discussing nonanesthetic ways to cope with pain during delivery. The “all texts” group received 22 relevant messages composed of those sent to the other treatment arms. The sent messages relevant to labor and delivery are presented in Multimedia Appendix 2. Though presented in English there, all sent messages were in Mandarin.

This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of the School of Medicine at Xi’an Jiaotong University on January 18, 2013, and an updated version was approved on May 2016 (approval number: 2016-392). All women attending their first visit for antenatal care at Gaoling district’s local maternal and child health center (MCHC) during the study period were invited to participate if they were aged 18 to 45 years old and had access to a cellular phone within their household. All participants signed an informed consent form. Pilot testing with 140 subjects occurred between September and October 2013, and survey questionnaires were finalized after incorporating feedback from the testing. The participants included in our pilot were excluded in our data analysis and causal inferences. Enrollment and data collection for the study were performed between November 2013 and February 2016. Enrollment stopped before our power calculation–based sample size goals were reached in December 2015, when Gaoling MCHC stopped sending program texts after decided that future patient communications should preferably be sent over WeChat than cellular SMS text messaging. It is extremely noteworthy that the contents of our SMS intervention could easily be sent via WeChat, but in December 2015, the trial was not set up to do so.

At recruitment, prior to treatment assignment, a baseline survey was conducted by a health worker at the local MCHC during the first antenatal visit. We collected demographic data, self-reported health data, and data relating to each enrollee’s thoughts and perceptions regarding health during pregnancy and childbirth. The follow-up survey was conducted by a health worker at the newborn’s home around 1 week after delivery. The follow-up survey collected information on knowledge, psychological and behavioral changes, and pregnancy-related maternal and neonatal measures. A final survey was conducted by phone to assess postpartum depression around 1 month after delivery. Additionally, the final survey asked whether the enrollee had successfully received our messages.

Results

Our program enrolled a total of 4629 women (Figure 1). In our prior publication and Multimedia Appendix 3 [28], we present summary statistics and balance checks for all 55 measured baseline covariates. As previously reported via these balance checks, we inferred that our quasirandomization was effective in assigning treatment orthogonally to relevant observable covariates.
In total, 2115 women completed a postdelivery follow-up survey, which could be linked to the baseline survey (Figure 1). Among these, 526 (24.9%) were in the “basic” group, 518 (24.5%) in the care-seeking group, 497 (23.5%) in the home practices group, and 574 (27.1%) in the all texts group. A chi-square test failed to reject equal loss to follow-up at $P = .44$.

A balance check on all measured baseline characteristics was performed restricted to the final 2115 women. Only one test rejected balance at $P < .05$, and a further three rejected balance at $0.05 < P < 0.10$. We therefore inferred that among the women completing our study, our quasirandomization was effective in assigning treatment orthogonally to observable covariates. This set of balance checks is presented in Multimedia Appendix 4.

Loss to follow-up occurred via multiple pathways. First, only women who delivered their children, including stillbirths, were available for analysis regarding mode of delivery. This analysis was inapplicable for any woman who miscarried or underwent an abortion after enrollment. About 15% of clinically recognizable pregnancies end in spontaneous miscarriage within the first trimester [30]. As of 2010, China’s induced abortion rate was hovering steadily around 19.5% [31]. Rates of miscarriage and abortion were not collected as part of our trial, but likely account for important shares of our loss to follow-up. Further, if women moved or otherwise gave birth outside of our study catchment area or if the village health attendant was otherwise unaware of a birth or unable to reach a new mother at her home, the pregnant woman was lost to follow-up. Finally, it was sometimes impossible to match follow-up surveys to baseline surveys. This happened when women provided sufficiently different identifying information in the baseline and follow-up surveys or when such information was sufficiently misrecorded.

The unadjusted rates of cesarean delivery by treatment assignment are presented in Table 1. The largest difference was between the “basic” group and the “all texts” group, whose rate was lower by 5.2 percentage points.
Table 1. Cesarean section numbers, rates, and odds ratios by treatment assignment, among women who reported delivery mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Women who completed follow-up survey, n</th>
<th>Women who reported delivery mode, n</th>
<th>Vaginal deliveries, n (%)</th>
<th>Cesarean sections, n (%)</th>
<th>Cesarean, odds ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>526</td>
<td>522</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>150 (28.7)</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care Seeking</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>136 (26.4)</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Practices</td>
<td>497</td>
<td>494</td>
<td>&gt;369</td>
<td>&gt;125 (25.3)</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Texts</td>
<td>574</td>
<td>&gt;570</td>
<td>&gt;436</td>
<td>&gt;134 (23.5)</td>
<td>&gt;0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2115</td>
<td>2101</td>
<td>1556</td>
<td>545 (25.9)</td>
<td>N/Aa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aN/A: not applicable.

Only 2101 of 2115 women reported their mode of delivery (Figure 1). Some missingness is to be expected in any large-scale survey, and no variable measured had all 2115 responses. It has been shown that a process called “multiple imputation” using expectation maximization will generally outperform the most common general techniques of handling missing data [32]. Thus, multiple imputation was performed in R (R Foundation for Statistical Computing) using the Amelia package. This process imputed 16 data sets that had “complete” data on all variables of interest, allowing all 2115 observations to be used in regression analysis. All regression analyses were run once per imputed data set, and the results were combined using the Rubin technique for combining quantities of interest [32].

Four regression models were run to explore the impact of treatment on CS rates. Model 1 is an unadjusted logistic regression of the (log) odds of having CS on indicators for assignment to each intervention arm, with the “basic” arm omitted as the base case. Results are presented in Table 2. In Model 1, neither the “care-seeking” group nor the “home practices” group alone was associated with a statistically significant reduction in the odds of undergoing CS (P=.37 and P=.21, respectively). In combination, the all texts group was associated with an OR of 0.77, but the P value was .06.

A second model, also presented in Table 2, included all baseline covariates found to be unbalanced at P<.10 for either the full sample or for the 2115 subjects who completed the study. Adding these unbalanced covariates had negligible effect on regression results. The P value on assignment to the all texts group reached .048, but accounting for multiple comparisons left this finding not statistically significant. One noteworthy finding is that having a previous miscarriage was strongly predictive of undergoing CS at our study site, with an associated OR of 1.37 (95% CI 1.12-1.68). Whether the mechanism of this association is physiological or psychological may be an area for future study.

As a further robustness check, a third logistic regression model (Model 3) was run, which contained all unbalanced baseline covariates as well as an array of baseline general health, maternal, socioeconomic, and health psychology covariates that might influence or predict birth via CS. These results are also presented in Table 2. The health psychology covariates (not shown) attempted to account for the major constructs of the most widely cited theories of health behavior, namely the health belief model, social cognitive theory, theory of planned behavior, theory of reasoned action, and trans-theoretical model [33-35].
Table 2. Logistic regression analysis of cesarean birth according to treatment assignment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Odds ratio</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model 1: Unadjusted logistic regression</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment assignment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic only</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.67-1.16</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care seeking</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.63-1.11</td>
<td>.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good home practices</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.59-1.01</td>
<td>.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All texts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model 2</strong>: Adjusted logistic regression for imbalance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment assignment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic only</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.66-1.14</td>
<td>.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care seeking</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.62-1.08</td>
<td>.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good home practices</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.58-1.00</td>
<td>.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All texts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model 3</strong>: Adjusted logistic regression for all</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment assignment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic only</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.54-1.04</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care seeking</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.56-1.07</td>
<td>.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good home practices</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.49-0.92</td>
<td>.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All texts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aN/A: not applicable.

bModel 2 adjusted for all unbalanced baseline covariates.

cModel 3 adjusted for all unbalanced baseline covariates as well as an array of baseline general health, maternal, socioeconomic, and health psychology covariates (Multimedia Appendix 4).

These additional covariates noticeably strengthened the measured effect of assignment to each treatment arm. The OR for the care-seeking group fell from 0.87 to 0.75, the OR for the home practice group fell from 0.82 to 0.77, and the OR for the all texts group fell from 0.76 to 0.67. The P values on assignment to the first two groups remained above traditional significance (P=.08 and P=.12 respectively), but that of assignment to the all text group dropped to P=.01, which remained statistically significant under the Bonferroni method of correcting for multiple testing of three tests in the same regression.

Most of the magnitude of these changes can be accounted for by the addition of two variable sets (analysis not shown), including whether the woman previously had CS (OR 11.8, 95% CI 7.2-19.3) and indicators for her stated preferred mode of delivery during enrollment. Preferring CS over vaginal birth and feeling unsure are both associated with twice the odds of CS (OR 2.0, 95% CI 1.3-3.2 and OR 2.0, 95% CI 1.4-2.9, respectively). Intriguingly, this equality implies that feeling “unsure” carries the same effect as actually preferring CS, perhaps implicating a strong supply-side nudge toward CS for uncertain women. An enormously pressing implication of Model 3 is that if a woman has CS in one pregnancy, she is vastly more likely to have one in any subsequent pregnancy, raising the possibility that preventing unnecessary CS now may have a direct and long-term impact on future CS rates.

As mentioned, the postdelivery survey also inquired whether the enrollees had actually received text messages from the Newborn Health Project during pregnancy. Surprisingly, of the 2115 participants, only 1627 (76.93%) answered “Yes,” 459 (21.70%) reported not receiving messages from the study, and 29 (1.37%) did not respond to that question. A final model was run with the same unadjusted functional form as Model 1, but limited to participants who answered “Yes” or were imputed to have answered “Yes.” The results are displayed in Table 3.

It is unknown why 459 of the 2115 participants (21.70%) reported not receiving messages from the study. Nonexclusive possibilities include phone numbers being miswritten on the survey, phone numbers being misentered into the SMS delivery system, participant phone numbers changing after enrollment, participants giving numbers beside their text-enabled cellular numbers as requested, and recall error.

This subset that reported receiving this study’s texts displayed a stronger unadjusted intervention effect than that for all study participants. In this subset (Figure 1), the all texts group was associated with a highly significant reduction in the odds of undergoing CS (OR 0.66, P=.008).
Table 3. Logistic regression analysis of cesarean birth according to treatment assignment (women who reported text receipt).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment assignment (unadjusted logistic regression)</th>
<th>Odds ratio</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic only</td>
<td>Base case</td>
<td>N/A*</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care seeking</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.55-1.04</td>
<td>.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good home practices</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.58-1.09</td>
<td>.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All texts</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.49-0.90</td>
<td>.008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aN/A: not applicable.

Discussion

External Validity

After adjusting for potentially confounding covariates, our main finding shows that the group with all texts sent together had an OR of 0.67 (P=.01). The rate of CS in the basic (comparison) group of our study (28.7% between 2013 and 2016) is identical to that in a study in rural Shaanxi, China in 2018 [36] and is well representative of (slightly lower than) the typical rural county rate of just over 30% in China in 2014, which was reported by Li et al [6]. Nonetheless, it is roughly double the WHO’s recommended rate of 10% to 15%, and merits improvement. One possible reason for this disparity is that our sample came from an MCHC in a rural area. It has been estimated that women in large cities in China have 2.4 times the odds of CS as compared with women in smaller cities [37]. Further, Liu et al found that CS rates increased with hospital complexity, with tertiary care facilities having the highest rates [4]. Thus, our findings are likely to be most closely replicated in rural areas of China, but may be well indicative of such counties.

Potential Pathways

Our informational texts had several hypothesized pathways by which they might impact mode of delivery, including (1) altering women’s underlying preferences, (2) empowering women to decline doctor-suggested CS by increasing their knowledge and self-efficacy, and/or (3) reducing the number of legitimate indications for CS. Our follow-up survey asked women who delivered via CS why they did so, and investigating their responses shed some light on how our intervention may have been effective. Due to the very strong association between a reported previous CS and mode of delivery, we first present responses broken down by CS history in Figure 2.

There was an unadjusted increase in the probability of delivering via CS of 54 percentage points, from about 27% probability among women without a previous CS to about 81% probability given a previous CS. A previous CS is often considered its own indication for CS and accounted for the largest difference between the two groups, but women with a history of CS had more CS procedures for every single reason category. The percentages in Figure 2 were derived from compiling the imputed “complete” data sets. The raw unimputed data had a smaller sample but indicated an even more stark difference in group rates of CS. Because of this strong association, we hypothesize that CS history could act as an effect modifier for our SMS intervention, but we were not powered to test this hypothesis directly. Therefore, we present in Multimedia Appendix 5 the stated reasons for CS by intervention group only for those women with no stated history of CS, accounting for about 87% of our sample. For convenience, Multimedia Appendix 6 presents the same data in terms of each arm’s differences from the “basic” texts group.

CS based only on maternal request was not a common occurrence in our sample (Figure 2). Stated reasons for CS that were not a medical indication accounted for less than 5% of CS cases (26/548 cases) in our sample. This left our intervention very little room to affect CS by reducing cesarean delivery on maternal request, though the “other/not specified” category may or may not be comprised largely of maternal requests. Multimedia Appendix 6 shows that reducing clear medical indications for CS seems to be the strongest potential pathway for our texts to have had an effect, with this category showing the largest reduction in all treatment groups. The provider-induced “doctor-suggested” category had mixed evidence, being reduced in the “all texts” group but ostensibly increased in the individual “care-seeking” or “home practices” group.
Limitations

Our study has several limitations. First, women self-reported their delivery method to health workers. If our intervention induced a belief that vaginal delivery was a more socially desirable answer than CS, CS could be underreported in intervention arms. Second, our study population was concentrated in a single county. It is unknown how results would differ in other settings. Finally, high loss to follow-up lowered the planned statistical power of our study. Attrition does not seem to be associated with treatment assignment, and baseline covariates were balanced within both the full sample and the subset that completed the study, which suggests that loss to follow-up did not bias our results. However, we cannot measure whether it is associated with the mode of delivery, and as such, we cannot confidently rule out the possibility that high attrition altered our findings.

Implications

As a first of its kind, this evaluation breaks ground in the fields of SMS text messaging for maternal health in China and SMS text messaging for influencing the mode of delivery. In 2015, China had 16.55 million new births [38]. With the recent relaxations in China’s one-child policy, this number could grow considerably in the next few years. Given the risk that unnecessary CS poses and the current excessive amount in China, wider distribution of the Newborn Health Project’s messages on delivery mode seems to be a strategy worth trying. The acceptability and effectiveness of WeChat as a mode of delivering such messages also warrant scientific exploration.

Conclusions

A quasirandomized controlled trial distributing informational text messages to pregnant women in Gaoling, China found evidence that the full set of text messages may have reduced the number of cesarean deliveries in that group by 5.2 percentage points compared with the comparison group. Focusing on the subset of women who reported actually receiving program texts and adjusting for baseline covariates greatly strengthened this measured relationship. Given the numerous calls for strategies to reduce the rate of medically unnecessary CS in China, exploration of the wider distribution of these text messages seems warranted.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank our implementation team members from Xi’an Jiaotong University. We are also grateful for all the support from leaders and health workers in the local collaborating organizations in Gaoling and Lantian. The authors would like to thank Drs David Canning, Till Bärnighausen, and Margaret McConnell for feedback on this manuscript. This study was made possible...
with generous funding from the UBS Optimus Foundation and B&P Foundation. The funders had no role in the study except providing financial support.

**Authors’ Contributions**

Yan S as the Project Director for the team led designing the intervention and study, led literature review, and detailed the method of program evaluation. JH participated in literature review, participated in development of survey questionnaires regarding psychological and behavioral measurements, led the data analysis, and led drafting of the manuscript. CY helped design the study, participated in literature review, and led the development of the text messages and survey questionnaires. Ya S, DW, and Zhi Z assisted in implementation, data entry, and data cleaning. Zho Z helped design the study and led the implementation of the project. All authors have made significant intellectual or practical contributions. All authors critically revised the manuscript and approved the final version of this paper.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

SMS text messages by general topic, treatment group, and timing.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 87 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Messages regarding delivery advice by treatment arm.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 120 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3

Balance check and all baseline variables: all enrollees.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 405 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app3.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 4

Balance check and all baseline variables: women with follow-up surveys.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 404 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app4.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 5

Reasons for current cesarean section delivery by SMS intervention assignment (N=2104).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 11 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app5.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 6

Differences in reasons for current cesarean section delivery by SMS intervention assignment.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 11 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app6.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 7

CONSORT-EHEALTH checklist (V 1.6.1).

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 2716 KB - mhealth_v8i11e19953_app7.pdf]

**References**


Abbreviations

- CS: cesarean section
- MCHC: maternal and child health center
- mHealth: mobile health
- OR: odds ratio
- WHO: World Health Organization

©Yanfang Su, Jesse Heitner, Changzheng Yuan, Yafei Si, Dan Wang, Zhiying Zhou, Zhongliang Zhou. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 03.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use,
distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Network Support Using Social Networking Services to Increase Exercise Adherence Among Korean-Chinese Middle-Aged Migrant Women: Mixed Methods Study

Hyeyeon Lee¹, MPH; Hyeonkyeong Lee², PhD; Youlim Kim¹, MPH; Sookyung Kim¹, MPH; Young-Me Lee³, PhD

¹College of Nursing, Yonsei University, Seoul, Republic of Korea
²Mo-Im Kim Nursing Research Institute, College of Nursing, Yonsei University, Seoul, Republic of Korea
³School of Nursing, College of Science and Health, Depaul University, Chicago, IL, United States

Corresponding Author:
Hyeonkyeong Lee, PhD
Mo-Im Kim Nursing Research Institute
College of Nursing
Yonsei University
50-1 Yonse-ro, Seodaemun-gu
Seoul, 03722
Republic of Korea
Phone: 82 2228 3373
Fax: 82 2392 5440
Email: hlee39@yuhs.ac

Abstract

Background: Social networking services (SNSs) are recognized to be a promising approach to easily deliver health interventions and to enhance social support for exercise adherence. However, the patterns and aspects of social support through SNSs have not been reported and their influence on other social-cognitive factors remains inconclusive.

Objective: Our objective is to explore how social support delivered through SNSs impacts interactions among Korean-Chinese (KC) middle-aged women and to identify how this approach influences social-cognitive factors for exercise (eg, sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise).

Methods: A mixed methods design was used. Text analysis of SNS messages and text mining using the Korean Natural Language Application (KoALA) were conducted. Social-cognitive factors (eg, sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise) were assessed at baseline and after 12 weeks using a structured questionnaire. A comparison of social-cognitive factors at baseline and at 12 weeks was conducted to identify any potential significant changes, using the Wilcoxon signed-rank test.

Results: A total of 259 SNS messages were collected from 24 KC women, distributed among four chat groups, who participated in a 12-week walking intervention program between August and October 2018. The individual average frequency of chatting via the SNS was 10.79 (range 0-34) and the most frequent type of social support through the SNS was network support (172/259, 66.4%). The most common words extracted from the SNS were Health, Exercise, Participation, and We. Overall, the perceived levels of sense of community ($P<.001$) and social support for exercise ($P=.002$) were significantly increased at 12 weeks compared with baseline. Group 1 ($P=.03$) and Group 4 ($P=.03$), whose members demonstrated the highest frequency of network support, experienced a significant increase only in the level of sense of community.

Conclusions: By integrating these data and conducting a mixed methods analysis, we observed that among the types of social support, network support was a key point for the promotion of social-cognitive factors in increasing exercise adherence. Therefore, network support through SNS-based interventions should be considered as a useful strategy to help vulnerable migrant populations make changes to exercise behaviors.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e19159) doi:10.2196/19159

KEYWORDS
SNS; social support; network support; exercise adherence; social-cognitive factors; text mining
Introduction

Social Networking Services as Useful Tools for Health Promotion

Interpersonal relationships and social interactions are shifting from face-to-face to online environments due to the development of the internet and smart devices, as well as an increase in economic development [1]. Social networking services (SNSs) have enabled individuals to interact and connect with others more easily, regardless of time and place, including those with diverse racial and ethnic backgrounds. While there are negative influences of SNSs on well-being due to social comparison and isolation [2], individuals easily establish new interpersonal networks and experience psychological well-being (eg, happiness and satisfaction with life) by using SNSs, such as Facebook or Twitter [3,4]. SNSs are also recognized as valuable and excellent platforms for delivering health interventions to hard-to-reach minority populations [4].

Exercise and Social-Cognitive Factors in Migrant Populations

The population of South Korea is multicultural, with more than 2.1 million migrants in 2017, including roughly 680,000 (32.9%) Korean-Chinese (KC) [5]. The proportion of this KC population that is made up of middle-aged women (ages 40-65 years) is 33.17% (n=225,488), and these women often work in the restaurant service industry or as houseworkers [5,6]. Due to changes in their health, middle-aged women are vulnerable to physical and mental health problems (eg, cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, obesity, hypertension, and depression) [7,8]. Although physical activities are important for managing the health of middle-aged women, migrant groups often have lower participation rates in programs that promote a healthy lifestyle compared to other groups, due to cultural differences, insufficient knowledge of health services, and limited access [9,10]; access may be considerably limited due to the working environment (eg, less flexible and less autonomous) compared with native Koreans [10]. These women face many other barriers, including physical-related barriers (eg, lack of time and space to exercise), knowledge-related barriers (eg, lack of knowledge about exercise), psychological barriers (eg, low self-efficacy), and lack of social support [11]. As a result, it is especially difficult to implement physical activity–based interventions for middle-aged migrant women.

As a strategy to encourage exercise adherence in migrant populations, social-cognitive factors such as social support have been commonly adopted in interventional designs [12]. Recently, SNS-based interventions emphasizing social support as well as social-cognitive factors have been found to increase exercise adherence. For instance, in one study of adults with type 2 diabetes, participants in a private Facebook group that received feedback, coaching, and social support in real time increased the number of steps taken in a day compared to those in the nonintervention group [13]. However, earlier studies only identified and categorized the perceived degree of social support through SNSs without an analysis of the patterns or aspects of social support during the intervention period [14,15]. In addition, although existing evidence demonstrates that social support has a positive correlation with other social-cognitive factors (eg, sense of community and self-efficacy for exercise) [16-18], there are still a limited number of studies, and results remain inconclusive.

Definition and Types of Social Support

Overview

Social support is defined as interpersonal interactions that involve emotional attention, instrumental assistance, information about the environment, and a positive self-assessment [19,20]. Types of social support through SNSs in this study are based on previous studies and include the following: (1) network support, (2) emotional support, (3) information support, and (4) esteem support [19-21]. Exceptionally tangible or instrumental support was excluded from the analysis because it is based on private topics and offline conversations [22]. Additionally, gratitude is related to social support and substantially and positively affects emotional support; this study included the expression of gratitude as a subdomain of emotional support [23].

Network Support

Network support is defined as the presence of companions or potential aides (eg, “Find assistants to help you”) who share or engage in social activities and resources [2,21,24]. Network support is identified from the desire to be emotionally satisfied and to maintain a relationship with a group to which one belongs [25]. In the online health community, a network could include conversations about members’ interests [21] and life-related topics that are not related to health issues [22,26]. Subcategories of network support are access, presence, and companionship [20,27]. Access refers to a person in a similar situation asking questions on behalf of you or sharing mailing address and/or contact information. Presence involves a supportive expression indicating that you are willing to help others. Companionship includes messages that reassure members that they share a similar environment and experience, including experiences not related to health issues [28] (eg, nonverbal cues, such as emoticons, narratives, poetry, humor, jokes, and vacation planning).

Emotional Support

Emotional support includes expression, encouragement, sympathy, affection, empathy, care, and concern [14,22,26] (eg, “You can do it!” “I believe,” and “Keep it up”). Subcategories of emotional support are relationship, physical affection, confidentiality, sympathy, understanding or empathy, encouragement, prayer, and gratitude. Relationships are indicated with important messages that express friendliness or closeness within the online community. “Good morning” and “Nice to meet you” are often used as the first phrases of conversation conveying emotional support. Physical affection in an SNS is delivered as text-based messages (eg, “HUG”) and provides emotional support, such as physical stability. Confidentiality is related to protection of secrets, whereas sympathy is an expression of sorrow for another member’s stress and suffering. Understanding is an expression of empathy to another member who is experiencing difficult and/or complex situations. Encouragement includes messages that convey hope
and confidence to other members. Prayer offers a blessing for other members, and gratitude is an expression of appreciation.

**Information Support**

Information support involves the delivery of information or the provision of guidelines or suggestions (eg, information about physical activity, recommendations, and how to deal with symptoms) [14,22,26]. Subcategories of information support include advice, referral, situational appraisal, and teaching. Referral involves sharing specific informational resources (eg, books, websites, and institutions) with other members. Situational appraisal might come in the form of a message to help re-evaluate another member’s situation. Teaching involves the dissemination of factual information.

**Esteem Support**

Esteem support involves sharing a complimentary expression, such as “Congratulations” or “Great job” [14,26]. Subcategories of esteem support are compliment, validation, and relieving of blame. A compliment is a celebration of accomplishment despite a negative situation or a positive statement to other members. Validation involves agreeing with the feelings and stories of other members or to support their view of the situation. Relieving of blame comes in the form of an expression of support for another member who expresses guilt for a particular situation.

**Purpose of This Study**

The purpose of this study was to (1) explore how social support through SNSs appeared in interactions among KC middle-aged women who are vulnerable to health problems and (2) identify how this social support influenced social-cognitive factors for exercise (eg, sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise).

**Methods**

**Design**

The mixed methods design was used to combine qualitative and quantitative data to better understand patterns of social support and its effect on other social-cognitive factors potentially impacting exercise adherence.

**Participants and Data Collection**

A community-based project was conducted to improve physical and mental health of KC migrant women through a 6-month, culturally adaptive, mobile app–based walking intervention between May 2017 and February 2019 [29]. For recruiting participants, we visited a public health center, the Korea Support Center for Foreign Workers, and a KC church; distributed leaflets; and promoted the health intervention program. Participants in the study were KC middle-aged women (40-65 years of age) who had no health restrictions against increasing physical activity. Based on physical activity assessed using the Physical Activity Readiness Questionnaire, those who walked more than three times a week and more than 30 minutes at a time were excluded. Only those who were able to use the smartphone app and participate in the program for 6 months were included in the study. There were 28 participants in the experimental group, all of whom completed the baseline assessment after completing the informed consent form. In order to promote social support and networking for physical activity, these 28 KC middle-aged women were divided into four groups. A group leader was appointed by vote within each group and instructed to encourage and support other group members throughout the study to increase exercise adherence.

Data collection was conducted over an intervention period of 12 weeks between August and October 2018. Out of the 28 participants, 1 (4%) dropped out at the fifth week and 2 (7%) did not complete the 12-week assessment and were, thus, excluded from analysis. During the 12-week intervention period, a total of 353 messages were collected via KakaoTalk, the most common chatting app in Korea. However, a woman whose comments made up a disproportionate number of total SNS conversations (94/353, 26.6%) was excluded because her contributions may have distorted the study results. Ultimately, all 259 text messages written in Korean from the SNS groups of 24 KC middle-aged women were used in the final analysis of this study.

**Qualitative Data Analysis: Text Analysis and Text Mining**

**Text Analysis**

Text analysis was conducted on 259 messages sent among the 24 participants via SNS over the 12 weeks by types of social support. Two researchers (Hyeyeon L and YK) independently coded all 259 messages according to social support codes. Inconsistent codes were reviewed and discussed with the principal investigator (Hyeonkyeong L) to reach consensus [14].

**Text Mining**

Text mining was conducted using the Korean Natural Language Application (KoALA) (Monda CA) to identify themes and interests of KC middle-aged women interacting using an SNS. The KoALA engine is an application for social media mining and supports the entire text-mining process, including social media data collection, preprocessing, and analysis [30]. A word cloud visually highlights keywords based on how frequently they are used. Co-occurrence analysis is a matrix form that calculates the weight based on the frequency of keywords appearing in the text at the same time. The simultaneous appearance of certain keywords in the text means that they are related to each other, and the repetition of these keywords indicates a high correlation between the keywords.

Four chat room conversations undertaken over 12 weeks using an SNS were integrated. After extracting all text and dividing it into sentence units, the process of recognizing entity names was conducted using the entity name dictionary. The next step was to remove stop words. Data analysis was performed using the word cloud approach and co-occurrence matrix. After preprocessing was complete, 20 nouns were extracted from the chat group in order of appearance. Those were used to analyze the word exercise and the words that appeared as co-occurring terms.
Quantitative Data Analysis

Overview

Social-cognitive factors (eg, sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise) were assessed at baseline and at 12 weeks. General characteristics, mean, standard deviation, and frequency of data were analyzed by descriptive statistics using SPSS Statistics for Windows, version 25.0 (IBM Corp). Additionally, the Wilcoxon signed-rank test was conducted to confirm the significance of sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise by individuals and groups.

Sense of Community

Sense of community was measured using the Korean version of the Brief Sense of Community Scale, a tool based on the scale developed by Peterson et al [31] and later modified by Oh [32]. The scale involves eight items rated on a 5-point Likert scale, ranging from 1 (strongly disagree) to 5 (strongly agree). A higher score represents a greater sense of community. Among the items, peer/friend was changed to neighbor, and peer group was changed to neighborhood. In the study, the Cronbach alpha was .73.

Self-Efficacy for Exercise

Self-efficacy for exercise was measured using the Korean version of the Barrier Self-Efficacy Scale developed by McAuley [33] and modified by Choi [34]. The scale includes 13 items, and ratings range from 0 (completely certain that I could not) to 10 (completely certain that I could). The higher the average score, the higher the self-efficacy for exercise. In the study, the Cronbach alpha was .89.

Social Support for Exercise

Social support for exercise was assessed using a questionnaire developed by Sallis et al [35] and translated and modified by Choi [36]. In this study, six items were selected, except the one added by Choi. The scale includes six items that assess perceived social support for exercise from family and friends during the past 3 months. The scale is rated using a 4-point Likert scale, ranging from 1 (strongly disagree) to 4 (strongly agree). The higher the total score, the higher the social support from family and friends. In the study, the Cronbach alpha was .88.

Results

Participant Characteristics

A total of 24 KC middle-aged women participated in the SNS groups. The average age of participants was 47.2 (SD 6.5) years; average time spent working daily was 10 (SD 4) hours; average duration of stay in Korea was 144.2 (SD 79.1) months (about 12 years); average number of months working at current job was 39.6 (SD 50.3); and average monthly income was about US $1504.50 (SD 469.75). Most participants had an educational level above high school graduate (17/24, 71%), and the service industry (ie, cook, waiter, housekeeper, hairdresser, and caregiver) was the most common job type (10/24, 42%). Moreover, 259 text messages written in Korean from the SNS groups were collected over an intervention period of 12 weeks between August and October 2018. The individual average frequency of chats via SNS was 10.79 (range 0-34).

Qualitative Findings

Text Analysis: Social Support in the SNS

Social support in this study was divided into 18 subcategories (see Table 1). The most frequent type of social support through the SNS identified by this group was network support (172/259, 66.4%), followed by emotional support (40/259, 15.4%), information support (28/259, 10.8%), and esteem support (19/259, 7.3%).
Table 1. Conceptual definitions of social support and frequency of messages of each type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Categories and subcategories of social support</th>
<th>Frequency of messages (N=259), n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>172 (66.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Access</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Presence</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Companionship</td>
<td>172 (66.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emotional support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>40 (15.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Relationship</td>
<td>11 (4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Physical or visual affection</td>
<td>2 (0.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Confidentiality</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Sympathy</td>
<td>1 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Understanding or empathy</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Encouragement</td>
<td>14 (5.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Prayer</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Gratitude</td>
<td>12 (4.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>28 (10.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Advice</td>
<td>10 (3.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Referral</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Situational appraisal</td>
<td>1 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Teaching</td>
<td>17 (6.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Esteem support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>19 (7.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Compliment</td>
<td>13 (5.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Validation</td>
<td>6 (2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Relieving of blame</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In total, 66.4% (172/259) of the support messages collected from the SNS were network support messages. Network support messages made up three of the 18 subcategories of social support; of these three subcategories, all messages involved companionship (172/172, 100%). Companionship includes a response, for example, to attending an offline cultural class, naming a group, talking about daily life, and discussion about exercise barriers; companionship may come in the form of short opinions, photos, and emoticons (eg, ![image1] and ![image2]). No messages corresponded to access or presence.

Emotional support messages within the SNS made up 15.4% (40/259) of all support messages and eight of the 18 subcategories of social support. In this study, all emotional support messages fell into one of five of these eight subcategories: (1) encouragement (14/259, 5.4%), (2) gratitude (12/259, 4.6%), (3) relationship (11/259, 4.2%), (4) physical affection (2/259, 0.8%), and (5) sympathy (1/259, 0.4%). No messages corresponding to confidentiality, understanding or empathy, or prayer were noted.

Information support messages within the SNS made up 10.8% (28/259) of all support messages and four of the 18 social support subcategories. In this study, all information support messages fell into one of three of these four subcategories: (1) teaching (17/259, 6.6%), (2) advice (10/259, 3.8%), and (3) situational appraisal (1/259, 0.4%). No referral messages were observed in this study.

Esteem support messages obtained from the SNS accounted for 7.3% (19/259) of all messages. These esteem support messages are categorized into two out of three of the 18 subcategories of social support: (1) compliment (13/259, 5.0%) and (2) validation (6/259, 2.3%). No messages from this study were categorized as relieving of blame. Example quotes by the type of social support are addressed in Table 2.
### Table 2. Example quotes from messages of each type of social support.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of support</th>
<th>Quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network support: companionship</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offline culture class</td>
<td>“It is difficult for me to attend.” [ID 5, September 9, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Ok, I will attend.” [ID 9, August 15, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Where will it be held?” [ID 2, September 4, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naming a group</td>
<td>“Beautiful Women Club?” [ID 45, August 17, Group 4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“How about Happy Club?” [ID 26, August 10, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“I’d like to recommend ‘Happy Club’ too; I think if we are not happy, our health is meaningless.” [ID 28, August 14, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily life</td>
<td>“I’m on vacation for 5 days.” [ID 2, August 21, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“I’ll have salad for breakfast.” [ID 2, September 14, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“What sauce?” [ID 5, September 14, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise barriers</td>
<td>“I do well walking, but muscle exercise is difficult for me.” [ID 20, August 10, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“It is hard to keep myself motivated for doing muscle exercise.” [ID 18, August 10, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“I can’t exercise because the weather is hot.” [ID 25, August 10, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emotional support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship</td>
<td>“Nice to meet you.” [ID 22, August 10, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Have a nice day.” [ID 2, September 17, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Have a nice weekend.” [ID 26, September 29, Group 4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical affection</td>
<td>“Emoticon: kiss.” [ID 2, August 29, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sympathy</td>
<td>“I’m sorry to hear that.” [ID 26, September 4, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encouragement</td>
<td>“Let’s exercise this week as well for health.” [ID 43, August 23, Group 4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gratitude</td>
<td>“Thanks everyone.” [ID 26, August 23, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>“To eat less sodium, I put some vegetables in Korean noodles.” [ID 19, September 18, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Situational appraisal</td>
<td>“This offline cultural class is an essential education for a healthy life, I think.” [ID 26, September 4, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching</td>
<td>“The phone will work again if you turn the phone off and on.” [ID 18, August 13, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“It is good to leave three holes of band to wear the Fitbit band.” [ID 22, August 10, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Esteem support</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliment</td>
<td>“Congratulations.” [ID 2, August 25, Group 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“The yellow umbrella and your elegant fashion go well together; it’s so pretty.” [ID 26, August 28, Group 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation</td>
<td>“I agree.” [ID 28, August 10, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“When you put on makeup after taking a makeup class, your face definitely looks better.” [ID 28, August 20, Group 3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Text-Mining Findings

A keyword-extraction algorithm was used to identify the top 20 keywords and confirm whether these keywords were related to the exercise-adherence program analyzed here. The most common words extracted from the SNS were Health (n=21), Exercise (n=20), Participation (n=18), and We (n=18). The keyword used the most was Health, which confirmed that participants mainly talked about health-related topics on the SNS. The second-most used keyword was Exercise. Participants talked about their compliance with muscular exercise and walking related to Exercise. The third-most used keywords were Participation and We, confirming that these 24 KC middle-aged women encouraged one another to participate in exercise, referring to themselves as “We” with the goal of exercise adherence. As a result of co-occurrence analysis, the words that appeared to be highly related to Health were Exercise, We, Muscle strength, and Happiness (see Figure 1). It was found that KC middle-aged women encouraged Exercise and formed a sense of belonging of We regarding health in the SNS. The words We and Happiness were highly related, and the words that appeared most often with Culture were Education and Class.
Quantitative Findings

Changes in the Levels of Social-Cognitive Factors at Baseline and at 12 Weeks

The Wilcoxon signed-rank test was conducted to analyze changes in sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise among KC middle-aged women from baseline to 12 weeks. Overall, the perceived levels of sense of community ($z=-3.30, P<.001$) and social support for exercise ($z=-3.09, P=.002$) were significantly increased at 12 weeks compared with baseline (see Table 3). The level of sense of community after the 12-week intervention increased significantly only in Group 1 ($z=-2.20, P=.03$) and Group 4 ($z=-2.20, P=.03$). The only increase in self-efficacy for exercise was in Group 1 ($z=-2.03, P=.04$), and the only increase in social support for exercise was in Group 4 ($z=-2.02, P=.04$).
Table 3. Changes in the levels of social-cognitive factors at baseline and 12 weeks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Total (N=24)</th>
<th>Group 1 (n=6)</th>
<th>Group 2 (n=8)</th>
<th>Group 3 (n=4)</th>
<th>Group 4 (n=6)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sense of communityb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>23.79 (7.35)</td>
<td>24.17 (3.66)</td>
<td>21.75 (8.71)</td>
<td>18.75 (7.46)</td>
<td>25.90 (5.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td>29.25 (8.24)</td>
<td>31.17 (4.02)</td>
<td>22.00 (7.60)</td>
<td>28.00 (7.35)</td>
<td>37.83 (2.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-efficacy for exercised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>6.92 (1.95)</td>
<td>6.17 (2.32)</td>
<td>6.75 (1.58)</td>
<td>8.00 (2.00)</td>
<td>7.17 (2.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td>7.46 (2.30)</td>
<td>8.67 (1.21)</td>
<td>5.63 (2.67)</td>
<td>7.75 (0.50)</td>
<td>8.50 (2.07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social support for exercisee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>14.83 (5.22)</td>
<td>17.00 (3.63)</td>
<td>13.13 (3.83)</td>
<td>15.00 (7.75)</td>
<td>14.83 (6.74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td>18.63 (4.17)</td>
<td>19.50 (2.59)</td>
<td>15.00 (4.01)</td>
<td>20.50 (1.92)</td>
<td>21.33 (3.78)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aThe Wilcoxon signed-rank test was conducted.
bMeasured using the Korean version of the Brief Sense of Community Scale; scores range from 1 (strongly disagree) to 5 (strongly agree).
cItalicized P values indicate significant results.
dMeasured using the Korean version of the Barrier Self-Efficacy Scale; scores ranged from 0 (completely certain that I could not) to 10 (completely certain that I could).
eAssessed using a questionnaire developed by Sallis et al [35] and translated and modified by Choi [36]; scores ranged from 1 (strongly disagree) to 4 (strongly agree).

Discussion

Principal Findings

The main result of this study is that the most frequent type of social support through the SNS was network support and that levels of social-cognitive factors, including sense of community, self-efficacy for exercise, and social support for exercise, increased in groups with a high frequency of network support. Moreover, the simultaneously appearing keywords were We, Exercise, and Happiness. This study analyzed SNS messages shared among KC middle-aged women who participated in mobile app–based health promotion programs to examine the patterns of social support and to identify keywords and their associations through text mining. In addition, through intervention, changes in the levels of social-cognitive factors among KC women were confirmed through statistical analysis. To achieve this, SNS messages exchanged among group members for 12 weeks were characterized using text analysis, text mining, and statistical methods. It is worth mentioning that, to our knowledge, this is the first attempted analysis of SNS text messages to examine patterns of social support.

Strengths

This study has a number of strengths. First, the result of the mixed methods analysis demonstrated that the most common type of social support conveyed through SNS messages was network support, followed by emotional support, information support, and esteem support. This finding is congruent with other studies that have examined the influence of social support through an SNS. In a study of an online community for breast cancer survivors, the most common social support identified...
was information support [22]. In another intervention designed to improve smoking cessation efforts, information and emotional support were found to be the most frequent supports [37]. Network support includes not only stories from the everyday lives of the health-related online community’s participants, such as chat, humor, and teasing (eg, birthday wishes and vacation plans), but also stories that are not related to health problems [22,26]. KC women often interacted through the SNS because they worked as house caretakers during the week throughout the intervention. Since KC women are often in similar situations and environments, it is thought that there is a high frequency of network support interactions like real-life-related topics between participants [38]. Thus, to approach migrant populations within this environment, network support can be hypothesized to impact health promotion [39].

Second, we found that levels of social-cognitive factors after a 12-week intervention were significantly increased in groups that had a high frequency of network support. In a previous study that analyzed dialogue between Canadian Indigenous women who participated in internet chat rooms [40], those who received social support through SNS activities were encouraged to enhance their confidence and self-efficacy for health promotion. Also, network support in an online community may help to solidify the social network and increase a sense of community among group members [28]. In another study that analyzed conversations on social media sites like Facebook, text messages related to network support derived more reciprocal responses among participants, and that study suggested that (1) network support involves communication with many other people with similar experiences and (2) there may be evidence that network support increases a sense of belonging to a social group [21,41]. This explanation is applicable to the findings of this study because the group with the most frequent network support experienced a significant increase in sense of community after 12 weeks. As in previous studies, it was shown to be necessary to increase social-cognitive factors for exercise adherence; social support facilitated an increase in social-cognitive factors [12,13]. Therefore, strengthening network support through an SNS in an online community may be useful for increasing physical activity.

Third, this study was the first to attempt text mining to analyze text messages shared via SNS among KC women. Quantitative analysis has limitations when trying to explore the real-life social network of participants. Through text mining, this study extracted interests, themes, and relationships of words using scientific evidence. In a study of alcohol and marijuana use, online text message analysis using text mining was shown to improve understanding of the participants’ impact on health-related behaviors and the role of social networks [42]. Also, by using text mining to analyze patterns of participants’ chats about electronic cigarette cessation, a study attempted to find factors of interest in developing strategies for promoting future behavioral change [43]. Specifically, co-occurrence word analysis confirmed the development process and structural relationships of scientific knowledge by extracting research topics and discovering the relationships among them [44,45].

After identifying the most common keywords (from #1 to #20) using a keyword-extraction algorithm, it was noted that KC middle-aged women frequently talked about exercise. This study confirmed that the use of an SNS encouraged participants to keep exercising because exercise was perceived as routine or a habit rather than as an extra burden [46]. Although it has been suggested that more evidence is needed to determine the actual usability of an SNS for changing behavior and increasing engagement [47], this study suggests that network support through an SNS may be an effective strategy for exercise adherence. Also, KC middle-aged women mainly talked about the contents of offline cultural classes addressing acculturation. Even if programs for cultural adaptation were provided to immigrants, low participation rates and high attrition rates would be likely be obstacles, as has been noted [46,48]. Although immigrants lack social networks and social support due to language or cultural differences, it was found that SNS-based group intervention can be a useful tool for enhancing the intercultural interaction among immigrants [48].

Moreover, co-occurrence analysis revealed which keywords were related to awareness of the promotion of physical activity. Specifically, We, Exercise, and Happiness were the most closely connected terms; the use of We in the chat group indicated that participants often thought collectively, and We – Exercise means that they encouraged one another to exercise and be healthy and perceived each other as a community. Another mobile phone–based intervention showed consistent findings through a walking group or buddies to enhance social support for exercise [49]. Moreover, the words We and Happiness were highly related, implying that SNS-mediated social support created a network of support among group members, leading to happiness in life as well as a form of exercise adherence. Therefore, an SNS-based group intervention is expected to be effective in forming network support and a sense of community and to promote health through exercise adherence for groups with limited access to health care. Studies that determine if network support can predict health outcomes such as happiness are apparently warranted.

Limitations

Text analysis of SNS messages has several limitations; therefore, care is needed when interpreting the implications of these findings. First, some messages contain two or more types of social support. Since this study set the criteria for dialogue as the send button, within one dialogue phrase there can be examples of mixed social support. For example, a greeting, which corresponds with emotional support, and teaching, which corresponds with information support, can coexist in one dialogue message. Second, an additional type of social support might be needed. In this study, we identified a pattern for asking questions and finding answers in the SNS. Although this study classifies this conversation type as network support, it may also be further broken down into seeking support and providing support [22]. Third, there was a lack of data saturation. A total of 259 SNS text messages collected over 12 weeks was insufficient for text mining. Although the KoALA program, which is suitable for the Korean language, was used, 79 conversations included emoticons or URL video links and, thus, were excluded from text mining. As emoticons enrich the information provided on SNSs and strengthen social connections, further research to analyze emoticons is required.
which will enhance usability [50-52]. Lastly, participation patterns in chats differed by group, and although positive effects through the SNS may occur, the potential for negative consequences (eg, loneliness and social comparison) cannot be excluded [47]. Therefore, further research must examine the potential negative influences of participation in SNSs and must suggest strategies to maximize the likelihood of positive outcomes following the use of an SNS.

Conclusions
SNSs have been found to be essential communication tools for KC migrant women in Korea. The findings of this study improve our understanding of the potential impact of SNSs on improving social-cognitive factors related to exercise and promoting healthy behaviors in migrants. Specifically, the KC migrant women who participated in the culturally adaptive walking intervention described herein received network support from group members through the SNS. The group network support appeared to be more effective at increasing the levels of social-cognitive factors, which are known to be facilitators of healthy behaviors and acculturation, compared with other types of social support. Therefore, interventions designed to enhance network social support through SNSs may be effective strategies for improving health-related behaviors and cultural adaptation for migrant populations.

Acknowledgments
This work was supported by a grant from the National Research Foundation (NRF) of Korea, funded by the Korean government (Ministry of Science and ICT) (NRF-2017R1A2B4008671) and the Ministry of Education (NRF-2020R111A2069894). We would like to thank the Korea Support Center for Foreign Workers for their cooperation.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

References


34. Choi M, Kim H. Nutrition knowledge, dietary self-efficacy and eating habits according to student's stage of regular breakfast or exercise [article in Korean]. Korean J Community Nutr 2008 Sep 29;13(5):653-662 [FREE Full text]


44. He Q. Knowledge discovery through co-word analysis. Libr Trends 1999;48(1):133-159.
49. Lindgren T, Hooper J, Fukuoka Y. Perceptions and experiences of women participating in a digital technology-based physical activity intervention (the mPED Trial): Qualitative study. JMIR Public Health Surveill 2019 Dec 20;5(4):e13570 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/13570] [Medline: 31859677]

**Abbreviations**

KC: Korean-Chinese  
KoALA: Korean Natural Language Application  
NRF: National Research Foundation  
SNS: social networking service
in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Gamified Text Messaging Contingent on Device-Measured Steps: Randomized Feasibility Study of a Physical Activity Intervention for Cancer Survivors

Michael C Robertson1,2, MPH; Elizabeth J Lyons3, PhD, MPH; Yue Liao1,4, PhD, MPH; Miranda L Baum1, MA; Karen M Basen-Engquist1, PhD, MPH

1Department of Behavioral Science, University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, United States
2Health Promotion & Behavioral Sciences, University of Texas School of Public Health, Houston, TX, United States
3Department of Nutrition and Metabolism, School of Health Professions, The University of Texas Medical Branch at Galveston, Galveston, TX, United States
4Department of Kinesiology, College of Nursing and Health Innovation, University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, United States

Corresponding Author:
Karen M Basen-Engquist, PhD, MPH
Department of Behavioral Science
University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center
1515 Holcombe Blvd
Houston, TX, 77030
United States
Phone: 1 713 745 3123
Email: kbaseneng@mdanderson.org

Abstract

Background: Physical activity can confer diverse benefits on cancer survivors. Unfortunately, many cancer survivors are not sufficiently active. The efficacy of physical activity interventions for this population may be increased by grounding them in Self-Determination Theory (SDT). Combining game design elements with wearable technologies may be a useful and scalable approach to targeting SDT constructs to promote cancer survivors’ physical activity.

Objective: The primary aim of this study is to evaluate the feasibility and acceptability of Steps2Health, a physical activity intervention for cancer survivors. It also aims to investigate the effects of the intervention on motivation, physical activity, and step count.

Methods: We randomized 78 insufficiently active cancer survivors to an experimental or comparison group. All participants received a physical activity tracker. The experimental group participants also received a set sequence of multimedia messaging service messages that were triggered in real time by meeting predetermined cumulative step count totals. Messages presented information about a virtual journey and included photographs and vivid descriptions of locations to increase autonomous motivation. Additional messages targeted perceptions of relatedness (eg, role modeling) and competence (eg, facilitating mastery experiences). We administered pre- and postintervention surveys and conducted 15 individual interviews to evaluate the intervention. We performed directed content analysis of qualitative data and conducted mixed effects linear modeling to investigate participants’ changes in motivation, self-reported physical activity, and device-measured step counts.

Results: There was minimal loss to follow-up (3/78, 4%), the device wear rate was high (2548/3044, 83.71% of days), and technical problems with messaging based on real-time step counts were limited. Our qualitative data analysis revealed 3 overarching themes: accessibility, autonomous motivation, and relatedness. Participants successfully navigated the technological aspects and game design elements of the intervention. Participants found messages targeting autonomous motivation and competence or self-efficacy to be enjoyable and compelling, but one feasibility criterion for participant engagement (response rate to text messages) was not met. Messages targeting relatedness were less highly rated than the messages targeting autonomous motivation and competence or self-efficacy. During the intervention, both groups increased their motivation for physical activity ($B=0.16; 95\% CI 0.01 to 0.30; P=.04; d=0.49$), and assignment to the experimental group was associated with increased self-reported leisure activity score ($B=10.78; 95\% CI 3.54 to 18.02; P=.005; d=0.64$). The experimental group had greater increases in daily step counts over time ($B=322.08; 95\% CI 54.01 to 590.15; P=.02; d=0.28$).
Conclusions: This study supports the feasibility of using real-time game design elements to target SDT constructs and increase cancer survivors’ physical activity. Overall, our findings support the acceptability of the Steps2Health intervention, but fostering active participant engagement and targeting relatedness may present additional challenges. Steps2Health may help cancer survivors increase their physical activity levels.

**KEYWORDS**
cancer survivors; physical activity; motivation; self-control; mobile health; mobile phone; technology

**Introduction**

**Background**

Physical activity is generally safe and a health protective factor for cancer survivors. It is associated with a lower risk of all-cause mortality in this population, and for survivors of some types of cancer, it is associated with lower risks of recurrence and cancer-related mortality [1]. Increasing moderate-to-vigorous physical activity may ameliorate symptoms that cancer survivors commonly report, including fatigue, pain, anxiety, decreased physical functioning, and cancer-related cognitive impairment [2]. Unfortunately, the majority of cancer survivors do not meet the nationally recommended aerobic physical activity guidelines for adults [3], which call for engaging in 150 min of moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity or 75 min of vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity (or some equivalent combination of both) per week. An analysis of data from adult cancer survivors responding to the 2014 National Health Interview Survey indicated that under 45% of adult survivors aged 45-64 years met the guidelines for aerobic physical activity, and this percentage was approximately 35% in survivors 65 years and older [4]. Studies using accelerometers to objectively measure physical activity guideline adherence indicate that this percentage may be between 4% and 13% [5,6]. Cancer survivors may encounter barriers that impede physical activity guideline adherence faced by the general population (eg, competing demands for time) and additional barriers attributable to cancer and its treatment. These can include decreased physical functioning, fatigue, and pain [7,8].

Electronically delivered behavioral interventions have been shown to be effective in promoting physical activity in cancer survivors [9]. Such interventions readily lend themselves to widespread dissemination and increasingly feature mobile and wearable computing technologies (mobile health [mHealth]) that can provide timely feedback on behavior. Although behavioral interventions incorporating wearable consumer technologies have been used to initiate physical activity among cancer survivors [10], evidence of the long-term effectiveness of these interventions is lacking. Furthermore, most mHealth programs have high discontinuation rates (eg, 25% of users abandon mobile apps after just a single use) [11]. Many mHealth programs are centered on facilitating self-regulatory processes (eg, goal setting, self-monitoring) but are not necessarily designed to affect participants’ motivation for physical activity. This is an important distinction, particularly because cancer survivors may face barriers that can diminish their motivation to engage in physical activity (eg, decreased physical functioning, fatigue, pain) [7,8]. Increasing cancer survivors’ motivation for physical activity may facilitate sustained engagement with mHealth programs and improve long-term behavioral adherence to recommended guidelines [12].

Self-Determination Theory (SDT) provides a framework for understanding the role of quality of one’s motivation in long-term adherence to health-related lifestyle behaviors [13]. It posits that motivation can be conceptualized as existing on a continuum that ranges from fully external or controlled motivation to fully internal or autonomous motivation and that increasing the latter tends to yield longer lasting behavioral change than the former [13]. SDT also holds that autonomous regulation is determined in large part by the satisfaction of an individual’s core psychological needs (autonomy, relatedness, and competence) [13]. This theoretical approach can be useful in predicting and influencing physical activity in the general population [14], and targeting SDT constructs may be similarly beneficial for promoting physical activity in cancer survivors [15]. Indeed, SDT is increasingly being used to inform interventions in this population [16,17].

One approach that has been used to effectively target SDT constructs in the general population is gamification, the application of game design elements to nongame contexts [18-20]. Thus, we drew from the games-for-health literature to develop Steps2Health, an mHealth intervention that targets SDT constructs to promote cancer survivors’ physical activity. As only few models for systematic planning of gamification interventions exist [21], we adapted the Behaviour Change Wheel model for this purpose [22]. This model typically asks planners to match intervention functions (eg, persuasion) to theoretical constructs (eg, reflective motivation). Our adaptation included playful experiences taken from the Playful Experiences Framework [23] as potential intervention functions. We chose to focus on playful experiences as broad methods of intervention (rather than game mechanics as specific behavior change techniques) to emphasize the autonomy-supportive, playful aspects of games, as has been recommended [21,24]. Specifically, we focused on the playful experiences of discovery, exploration, and humor to target intrinsic regulation. In addition, we included techniques from Motivational Interviewing and Acceptance and Commitment Therapy to complement the game messages and target integrated regulation [25,26].

**Objectives**

The main purpose of this study is to assess the feasibility of Steps2Health and the participating cancer survivors’ satisfaction with it. Its secondary objective is to assess the effects of Steps2Health on participants’ autonomous regulation.
self-reported physical activity, and device-measured physical activity (ie, step counts).

**Methods**

**Recruitment**

We identified potential participants through various means, including health fairs, conferences, and other local events in South Texas; social media (eg, Facebook, Twitter); and our institutional website and publications. We contacted interested individuals via email and telephone and conducted a formal screening process via telephone. We engaged in a verbal informed consent process with all eligible individuals between September 2018 and February 2019. All research protocols were approved by the University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center’s Institutional Review Board (protocol 2018-0239). Participants were adult cancer survivors who had completed primary cancer treatment for at least three months previously, owned a smartphone, and were willing to receive text messages and complete web-based surveys. Eligible participants did not meet the recommended physical activity levels [27] at screening as determined by verbal administration of the modified Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire [28].

**Study Design**

We conducted a randomized controlled pilot trial. As the intervention duration was contingent on participants' cumulative step count (ie, participants who registered more daily steps progressed though the intervention more quickly), we assigned participants to the experimental and comparison groups in pairs. We recruited cohorts of 6 participants (to facilitate the logistics of study operations) and randomly assigned pairs within each cohort and group assignment within each pair (ie, for each group of 6 participants, we randomly assigned each participant to 1 of 3 pairs, and for each pair, we randomly assigned one participant to the experimental group and the other to the comparison group). The study staff conducted this restricted randomization procedure using Research Electronic Data Capture (Vanderbilt University). The intervention duration for both participants in each pair was determined by the experimental group participant’s time to reach a predetermined cumulative step count (see the Intervention section). We administered surveys before and after the intervention. For each pair, we continued to record participants’ step counts for 4 weeks after the experimental group participant had completed the intervention. The participants assigned to the control arm completed baseline and follow-up assessments in the same timeframe as their paired counterpart (ie, the Intervention section details the study duration for each pair determined by the activity level of the experimental group participant).

We conducted individual, semistructured interviews with 15 experimental group participants at the end of their study participation. Questions were centered on obtaining feedback on the feasibility and acceptability of the intervention and insights into how it may be improved (Multimedia Appendix 1). We interviewed some participants who completed the intervention most quickly and some who completed it last quickly. We interviewed additional participants at the discretion of the principal investigator (eg, to ensure that we interviewed some men). Each interview lasted for 30 to 60 min, and all interviews were conducted by the first author (MR). The study staff (MB) took detailed notes in all interviews. Immediately after the interview, the first author reviewed and contributed to these notes. We performed qualitative data collection until there was consensus among the research team that the point of data saturation had been reached and the individual interviews were not producing novel content any longer.

**Intervention**

All participants engaged in this study remotely. We synchronized wrist-worn Fitbit Alta devices to Fitabase (Small Steps Laps), a web-based data management platform for wearable devices, and then mailed each participant a device. We instructed participants to wear the device during waking hours. We included instructions and links to the Fitbit content detailing how to set up the Fitbit device to synchronize automatically. All participants had access to the Fitbit website and app. In addition, the participants in the experimental group received Steps2Health multimedia messaging service (MMS) messages that were designed to target SDT constructs. These messages, which were developed by the research team, presented information about a virtual journey through Japan’s Inland Sea region and were triggered by step counts in real time. Participants’ progress on the 166,000-step (approximately 83 miles) virtual journey was determined by cumulative step counts measured by the Fitbit devices. All experimental group participants received the same series of text messages. The duration of the Steps2Health intervention was determined by how long it took participants to register 166,000 steps on their device (ie, if participants were more active, they received the messages more frequently). We chose this distance because we anticipated that it would take most participants about 1 month to complete the journey. We designed the Steps2Health intervention to have a variable duration contingent on participant step count to facilitate a sense of autonomy for the user and verisimilitude for the gamified intervention’s premise of undertaking an actual journey in real time. There is only one journey featured in this pilot study, but ultimately, Steps2Health may feature a variety of journey options that users can engage in sequentially for a more continuous experience.

The Steps2Health intervention included 54 total messaging blocks designed to target autonomous regulation, autonomy, relatedness, and competence (Multimedia Appendix 2). Messages were informed by insight from previous qualitative research in cancer survivors and developed in a consensus-building process among the research team, which has expertise in health behavior change theory and physical activity promotion for cancer survivors [29]. All messaging blocks contained text, and some additionally contained images or hyperlinks (Table 1). Each block included 1 to 3 messages. Messages targeting autonomous regulation presented photographs and vivid descriptions of destinations along a geographically accurate virtual tour of the region. These messages presented playable experiences of exploration, discovery, and humor and encouraged participants to identify value-based life goals linked to physical activity (Table 1). Some messages contained hyperlinks to various resources for healthy living (eg, videos demonstrating muscle strengthening...
exercises, healthy recipes local to the current virtual location, stress-reduction techniques, etc). We designed the Steps2Health intervention to most heavily target this construct (devoting 21 of 54 messaging blocks to it), given its emphasis on SDT and its central role in the gamification elements of the intervention. Participants were also given the choice to participate in additional mini journeys (13 messaging blocks). These optional messages were similar to those targeting autonomous regulation. To target the SDT construct of relatedness, we included messages in 10 messaging blocks from Ruby, an ovarian cancer survivor (this was a fictitious character, and participants were made aware of this). This character was written to be a positive role model. Her messages provided encouragement and prompted participants to reflect on questions that were derived from motivational interviewing principles to elicit positive change talk [26]. Finally, 10 messaging blocks included messages adapted from previous studies to increase participants’ competence or self-efficacy for increasing physical activity.

Table 1. Example messages targeting Self-Determination Theory constructs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step count</th>
<th>Example messages</th>
<th>Image</th>
<th>Construct targeted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Welcome to Steps2Health!</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Autonomous motivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please save this number in your phone as Steps2Health, and be sure that your Fitbit is up set to sync automatically.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bridges serve as major checkpoints for this 83 mile island-hopping trek through beautiful Japanese islands. Keep your step count high to maximize your progress!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>RUBY: Hello! My name is Ruby. I am an ovarian cancer survivor and have already completed this journey.</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Relatedness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I wanted to get strong to keep up with my grandson.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is there a goal you’d like to work toward?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Would you share it with me in a text? If not, just text 0.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>Would you like to take a quick trip to Onomichi, the “Town of Hills and Cats” today? You'll get some extra photos of high points of Onomichi.</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reply YES or NO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57,300</td>
<td>You have made it to the beautiful Kosanji temple. It was built in 1936 by a wealthy industrialist in honor of his mother!</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Autonomous motivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is written in a famous haiku:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The mothers of the world are as the Goddess of Mercy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84,000</td>
<td>HEALTH TIP: Living through cancer can be stressful, but you can manage the stress. Even a 10-minute time-out can help by taking time to move and breathe.</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Competence or self-efficacy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aN/A: not applicable.

We used Fitabase to gather participants’ data in real time from the Fitbit server. We worked with Mosio to build a platform to send intervention text messages on the basis of participants’ real-time step counts. This platform queried Fitabase twice an hour to determine participants’ cumulative step counts. We ensured that participants enabled their devices to frequently and automatically upload current data to the Fitbit server (ie, synchronize with the server). The text messaging platform sent automatic text message reminders for participants to synchronize their devices if they had not done so in 2 days or more, and study staff sent email reminders after 5 days.

Outcomes

Overview

For the primary aim of this study, we evaluated intervention feasibility and acceptability via quantitative and qualitative methods. For the secondary aim, we evaluated changes in autonomous regulation, self-reported moderate-to-vigorous physical activity, and device-measured step count over the course of the intervention period. We administered web-based surveys to each participant at baseline and after the experimental group participants completed the Steps2Health intervention. The surveys contained items pertaining to participants’ characteristics, the feasibility of the intervention, and participants’ autonomous motivation and physical activity.

Intervention Feasibility

We evaluated feasibility by assessing whether (1) more than 75% (59/78) of all participants wore their Fitbit at least 5 days a week for at least 75% of the study period (valid wear); (2) less than 30% (23/78) of all participants reported technical difficulties with the Fitbit or receipt of the text messages (technical difficulties); (3) the experimental group participants responded to at least 80.1% (157/196) of the messages requiring a response (participant engagement); and (4) at least 75% (30/39) of the experimental group participants reported that they would recommend the program to friends or family (participant satisfaction). These criteria were derived from

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e18364
metrics for assessing the feasibility of consumer-based wearable physical activity trackers used in other digital behavior change studies [30] and our intervention’s theoretical orientation.

**Autonomous Regulation**

We administered the Behavioral Regulation for Exercise Questionnaire-3 (BREQ-3) to all participants before and after the intervention. BREQ-3 has acceptable internal consistency [31]. As SDT posits that autonomous regulation is composed of identified regulation, integrated regulation, and intrinsic regulation, we averaged these subscale scores to represent this construct [13].

**Physical Activity**

We administered the Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire and calculated the Leisure Score Index to measure participants’ moderate-to-vigorous–intensity physical activity [28]. This survey has minimal participant burden, good test-retest reliability (reliability coefficient=0.81), and convergent validity with VO₂ max (maximum rate of oxygen consumption during intense exercise) [28,32]. In addition, we evaluated participants’ daily Fitbit step count trends. In consideration of the insufficiently active sample recruited in this study and to maximize the use of available data, we used 2 variables to define nonvalid wear days. We defined a nonvalid wear day as a day during which participants (1) did not wear the device for at least 10 hours (out of the full 24-hour day) according to minute-level device data and (2) registered fewer than 1500 steps according to day-level data [33-35]. Minute-level nonwear was defined as periods of 90 consecutive minutes of 0 steps with a 2-min nonzero tolerance, consistent with commonly used accelerometer protocols [36]. We used a combination of day- and minute-level data because some research indicates that the use of accelerometer protocols for minute-level data may tend to overestimate nonwear in Fitbit data [37], and Fitbit devices are programmed to automatically delete minute-level data when their batteries run low or if the devices are not regularly synchronized. Thus, we supplemented this decision rule with the 1500 steps day-level threshold used in other studies [34,35].

**Data Analysis**

Two analysts (MR and MB) conducted directed content analysis [38] of the field notes from the individual interviews. We created and assigned inductive and deductive codes to discrete points made by each participant. We organized these codes in an iterative process to gain insight into the perceived feasibility and acceptability of the intervention and means by which the intervention might be improved.

We calculated descriptive statistics for participant characteristics and feasibility items and performed Pearson chi-square tests to evaluate differences in descriptive characteristics between groups. We used linear mixed models to assess between-group differences in pre- to postintervention changes in autonomous regulation (as assessed using the BREQ-3) and physical activity (as assessed using the Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire Leisure Score Index). These models included terms for group-by-time interactions with random coefficients for participants nested within pairs. We used a linear growth model with random intercepts and slopes to assess between-group differences in changes in Fitbit-measured step counts during the intervention [39]. As the intervention duration varied among pairs, we modeled each participant’s average daily step count as a function of quartiles of the intervention period. We specified an autoregressive covariance structure because of the time series nature of the data and adjusted for the number of days of valid Fitbit wear. We used the maximum likelihood estimation for all linear mixed models. We performed a likelihood ratio test to determine if it was necessary to specify the third level in the linear growth model (pairs subsuming individuals). The results of this test did not show a statistically significant difference in model fit between the 3-level model and a 2-level model (P=.90); furthermore, the conclusions to be drawn from the results of the competing models were not substantively different. Accordingly, we present results from the more parsimonious 2-level model with observations nested in individuals. We created plots recommended by Bolger and Laurenceau [40] to analyze and present the linear growth model results. We supplemented the mixed model findings with Cohen d effect size calculations. We set the nominal α value to .05 for all analyses, which we performed in R version 3.6.1.

**Results**

**Participants**

We randomized 78 participants to either the experimental group or comparison group. Of these 78 participants, 3 (4%) were lost to follow-up and 75 (96%) completed the baseline and follow-up surveys (Figure 1). The study sample was mostly female (71/78, 91%) and relatively well educated (Table 2). The participants’ mean age was 55.1 (SD 13.5) years. Most participants were breast cancer survivors (45/78, 58%) and overweight (38/75, 50%) or obese (19/75, 25%). The overall mean time since cancer diagnosis was 9.4 (SD 7.3) years. All participants in the experimental group who completed the preintervention survey also completed the 166,000-step journey.
Figure 1. The CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) diagram for Steps2Health recruitment, retention, and analysis.
Table 2. Participant characteristics (N=78).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Experimental group, n (%)</th>
<th>Comparison group, n (%)</th>
<th>P value&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18-34</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-49</td>
<td>10 (26)</td>
<td>14 (36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-64</td>
<td>13 (33)</td>
<td>12 (31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>13 (33)</td>
<td>10 (26)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥75</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education level</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;High school</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High school diploma or general educational development</td>
<td>5 (13)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some college</td>
<td>11 (28)</td>
<td>12 (31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bachelor’s degree</td>
<td>14 (36)</td>
<td>10 (26)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graduate school degree</td>
<td>9 (23)</td>
<td>14 (36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Employment status</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employed full time</td>
<td>15 (34)</td>
<td>18 (42)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employed part time</td>
<td>8 (18)</td>
<td>6 (14)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not employed for pay, not seeking paid employment</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not employed for pay, but seeking paid employment</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired</td>
<td>8 (18)</td>
<td>7 (16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homemaker</td>
<td>6 (14)</td>
<td>7 (16)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volunteer</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>36 (92)</td>
<td>35 (90)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
<td>4 (10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marital status</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td>9 (23)</td>
<td>5 (13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married</td>
<td>23 (59)</td>
<td>24 (62)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divorced</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td>9 (23)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widowed</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Race</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indian or Alaska native</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asian</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black or African American</td>
<td>8 (21)</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>30 (77)</td>
<td>32 (82)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ethnicity&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanic</td>
<td>8 (21)</td>
<td>7 (18)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Hispanic</td>
<td>30 (79)</td>
<td>32 (82)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cancer diagnosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>20 (51)</td>
<td>25 (64)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian</td>
<td>4 (10)</td>
<td>3 (7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristics</td>
<td>Experimental group, n (%)</td>
<td>Comparison group, n (%)</td>
<td>( P ) value\textsuperscript{a}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorectal</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>3 (7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrial</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal or pelvic</td>
<td>1 (3)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td>.51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( ^{a} \)Pearson chi-square test.

\( ^{b} \)Over 98% (77/78) responded to this item.

\( ^{c} \)Over 96% (75/78) responded to required items.

### Device Wear

The median number of days to complete the journey for experimental group participants was 30; this ranged from 15 to 128 days (IQR 23-51). The overall day-level percentage of valid Fitbit device wear was 83.71% (2548/3044). At the week level, 79% (59/75) of participants wore their Fitbit at least 5 days a week for at least 75% of the overall study period. This exceeded the a priori target of >75%, supporting the feasibility of intervention. During the intervention period, the average percentage of nonvalid wear days was 13.5% for the experimental group and 8.8% for the comparison group. During the follow-up period, these percentages were 27.5% and 20.1%, respectively.

### Intervention Feasibility

We conducted in-depth interviews with 15 participants in the experimental group (12 females and 3 males). Qualitative data analysis revealed 3 overarching themes: \textit{accessibility}, \textit{autonomous motivation}, and \textit{relatedness}.

#### Theme 1: Accessibility

### Limited Technical Difficulties

Findings from qualitative and quantitative data analyses indicated that participating cancer survivors perceived the \

\textit{Steps2Health} intervention to be accessible. Regarding the intervention’s technological aspects, participants perceived the intervention to be straightforward and practicable. One participant stated:

\textit{Not a single issue. Worked straight up no problem…it was remarkable to me that there were no issues at all. [P60]}

This sentiment is generally supported by participants’ survey data. Quantitative data revealed that only 11% (8/74) of participants indicated that they had problems with using the Fitbit device, and only 14% (10/74) indicated that they had problems receiving the text messages (Figure 2). These numbers were below the a priori target of <30%, supporting intervention feasibility. Technical difficulties included 4 instances of faulty hardware; in each case, the Fitbit customer support team ultimately replaced the device. One early technical issue was that the MMS messages requiring a response were repeated. This was remedied for the third (6 persons) cohort of participants. There was one instance when all intervention messages were sent at once to a participant. With the participant’s permission, we were able to get this person resituated on the journey.
Figure 2. Participant satisfaction with the Steps2Health intervention.

During interviews, several participants suggested providing a more thorough orientation process that would more fully reveal exactly how the text messaging platform worked. In general, participants who offered this suggestion reported that if they did not synchronize their devices frequently, they would receive a burst of several text message blocks in quick succession when they next synchronized their devices. Participants who experienced this said that a more thorough understanding of the intervention messaging mechanism would help them to better navigate these instances and encourage them to synchronize their devices more regularly.

**Celebratory Orientation**

Participants appreciated the Steps2Health design that celebrated participants meeting their cumulative physical activity accomplishments and rewarded them with fun and interesting content. This orientation to physical activity promotion made the Steps2Health intervention feel like an accessible program
that accommodates participants’ fitness levels. One participant said:

“I’m not real big on exercising and it (Steps2Health) definitely was encouraging. One thing (that was encouraging) was hitting your markers when you’ve made it there, and there was interesting information…Having that didn’t overwhelm me and I could make the markers they were setting up for me.” [P22]

A few participants noted that they appreciated that the Fitbit device gave them credit for steps when they were walking without their smartphones, and some stated that they wished the Steps2Health intervention would also be able to celebrate achievements in other forms of exercise that did not necessarily increase step count (eg, swimming).

**Theme 2: Autonomous Motivation**

**Enjoyment of Journey Messages**

Messages targeting autonomous regulation and competence or self-efficacy received the highest ratings in the follow-up survey (Figure 2). These messages comprised the bulk of the Steps2Health intervention. Participants generally found the intervention to be enjoyable and compelling. In total, 78% (29/37) of participants reported that they would recommend the intervention to a friend or family member (Figure 2). This met the a priori target of >75%, supporting the feasibility of the intervention.

In individual interviews, 14 of the 15 participants (93%) said that they would participate in another journey if offered. Some interviewees indicated that they were motivated to be more active to see what was next on the journey. One participant said:

“It’s very easy in survivorship to have the world be overwhelming, you fall behind. You move slower than before, and it helped keep it a priority. This was very helpful—some of these messages were really pleasant, and I wanted to see what was going to come next.” [P60]

Another participant said:

“I am coming from a year where fitness wasn’t my strong point after treatment but I enjoyed the messages and was sad that it ended…I was excited to read the messages. I talked about them with my kids and it was like a family event. I showed them the milestones about the bridges we crossed. It was really neat.” [P29]

However, a few participants said that the text messages were not very enjoyable or motivating to them. One said:

“Text messages were annoying—they came at random so I blocked it.” [P34]

Despite this, the Fitbit feedback and app functions were almost universally well received.

**Linked Media Content**

The use of linked media content in the messages was almost categorically cited as being a good idea, but in individual interviews, many participants said that they did not often access the links. The primary reason given for this was that the participants were too busy to give these messages enough attention when they were received. Participants appreciated that the content would remain in their text message history, but many said that they seldom went back to access them. Recommendations from participants included providing a more readily accessible repository of this content and providing messages that were more individually relevant or personally tailored (eg, messages of prescriptions of physical activity that take into account the user’s general fitness level, personal preferences, and/or mobility limitations).

**Motivation for Physical Activity**

Although participants in general seem to have enjoyed the intervention content, results concerning whether participants felt the text messages effectively motivated them to engage in more physical activity were mixed. When asked in individual interviews, participants tended to respond that the messages did make them feel more motivated to exercise. However, qualitative data analysis suggested that participants often did not disentangle the effects of the Steps2Health intervention messages from those provided by the Fitbit device or app (eg, messaging from the Fitbit device that is provided if or when the user reaches 10,000 steps in a day). Furthermore, the results of the quantitative data analysis were mixed, with 51% (19/37) of the sample agreeing or strongly agreeing with the statement “Receiving the text messages motivated me to increase my physical activity,” whereas 22% (8/37) disagreed or strongly disagreed with this statement and 27% (10/37) indicated they were neutral (Figure 2).

**Participant Engagement**

Some intervention messages explicitly requested a response, and in this study, we conceptualized participant engagement as the response patterns to these intervention messages. Messages requesting a response targeted either autonomy or relatedness. The response rate for the former was 73% (45/62) and that for the latter was 36.7% (79/215). These results did not meet the a priori target of >80% and did not support intervention feasibility. In individual interviews, participants indicated that they were sometimes unaware that they had missed these texts. This may have been partly because of the fact that these text messages could sometimes become buried by subsequent messages if participants were particularly active or if they had not synchronized their devices in a while. Participants indicated that they were often on the move when these messages were received and were unable or unwilling to attend to the messages at that time. The response rate for messages pertaining to relatedness was particularly low, possibly owing to lower participant satisfaction with these messages, detailed below.

**Theme 3: Relatedness**

Participants’ satisfaction with the intervention messages targeting relatedness was mixed. Quantitative data indicated that these messages were less well received than the other types of messages, with 24% (9/37) of participants disagreeing or strongly disagreeing with the statement, “The text messages from Ruby were enjoyable to me” (the least well rated of the specific types of messages, as shown in Figure 2). In individual
interviews, some participants were very positive about this aspect of the program:

> I was waiting for those messages every day... I feel like [Ruby] was my coach. [P30]

Some reported that they did not believe that this approach had much utility in fostering feelings of relatedness; one participant said:

> Ruby, I just didn't do well on that. I am not one of those people who does a lot of texting. [P68]

Others said that they liked the idea of having a supportive role model but became disillusioned with this aspect of the intervention when they received only brief, automatic replies in response to the thoughtful messages they sent.

As noted earlier, the participant response rate to questions that explicitly requested a response was low (79/215, 36.7%). During interviews, participants offered several suggestions for improving this aspect of the intervention. One suggestion was to avoid using generic replies to participant responses to mimic an actual conversation. Another suggestion was to provide multiple character avatars for users to choose from, which might enhance relatability:

> The idea of selecting among two or three (role models) would be awesome, and that may be all you need. At most four. We aren’t going to be chatting, so don’t try to make it feel like we are chatting. [P60]

This point was emphasized by the male survivors we interviewed, who felt they did not have much in common with the female role model character. To foster feelings of relatedness, some participants suggested making use of text messaging or social media platforms to connect users to one another. One participant said:

> If we could do a group text... that way maybe if someone was having a hard day we could encourage each other. [P4]

However, this notion was met with mixed opinions. According to another participant:

> My trust level in terms of responding to other people I do not know—I just don’t do that. [P68]

### Intervention Effects

#### Autonomous Regulation

There was a small, statistically significant effect of time such that participants’ autonomous regulation scores tended to increase by 8% from before to after the intervention (B=0.16; 95% CI 0.01 to 0.30; P=.04; d=0.49). The results did not support a group-by-time interaction for autonomous regulation (P=.59).

#### Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire

Linear mixed model results indicated a statistically significant group-by-time interaction for physical activity as measured by the Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire (B=10.78; 95% CI 3.54 to 18.02; P=.005). Assignment to the experimental group was associated with increased self-reported physical activity behaviors (d=0.64). On average, participants in the experimental group had an increase of 52% in their Godin Leisure-Time Exercise Questionnaire score, whereas participants in the comparison group tended to have a slight decrease in their score (Multimedia Appendix 3).

#### Step Count

The intraclass correlation coefficient for participants’ mean daily step count per journey quartile was 0.73 (95% CI 0.64 to 0.81). The linear growth model results indicated a statistically significant group-by-time interaction for step count during the intervention (Table 3; Multimedia Appendices 4-6). The experimental group participants were more likely to increase their step counts during the intervention (d=0.28) than the comparison group participants, and this trend extended into the follow-up period (Figure 3). The linear growth model suggested that the experimental group participants tended to have a lower step count earlier in the intervention than the comparison group participants, but this difference was not statistically significant.
### Table 3. Parameter estimates for the linear growth model of the mean daily step count per intervention quartile as a function of group assignment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Estimate SE</th>
<th>SE</th>
<th>P value</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercept</td>
<td>6473.46</td>
<td>324.26</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>5837.91 to 7109.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>-107.41</td>
<td>96.06</td>
<td>.27</td>
<td>-295.69 to 80.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>-885.80</td>
<td>466.38</td>
<td>.06</td>
<td>-1799.90 to 28.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days of valid wear</td>
<td>-287.14</td>
<td>227.86</td>
<td>.21</td>
<td>-733.75 to 159.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group by time</td>
<td>322.08</td>
<td>136.77</td>
<td>.02</td>
<td>54.01 to 590.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random at level 2 (between persons)*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercept</td>
<td>2,648,712</td>
<td>628,223</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>1,417,395 to 3,880,029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope for time</td>
<td>1284</td>
<td>21,090</td>
<td>.48</td>
<td>-40,052 to 42,620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random at level 1 (within person)**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual</td>
<td>1,399,430</td>
<td>207,992</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
<td>991,766 to 1,807,094</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aThe correlation between the intercept and slope for time was 0.90.

**The autocorrelation was 0.21.

---

**Figure 3.** Mean device-measured daily step counts with linear trend lines by group over the study period. Quartiles are presented for the intervention period because the intervention duration differed for each pair. The median intervention period was 30 days (IQR 23-51 days).

---

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings and Comparison With Prior Work**

*Steps2Health* is a physical activity intervention that pairs game design elements with wearable mHealth technologies to target SDT constructs. In general, the results of our study support the feasibility of sending text messages for physical activity promotion contingent on real-time step counts to insufficiently active cancer survivors. One exception is that the participants’ response rate to the text messages requesting a response was low; this corroborates previous literature that has identified participant engagement as a challenge to mHealth interventions [41,42]. Our results also corroborate previous studies’ findings supporting the feasibility and acceptability of behavioral interventions centered on providing wearables to cancer survivors to promote their physical activity [43]. Over 96% (75/78) of the participants in this study completed the intervention, and similar to other studies, the percentage of valid wear time of the Fitbit device in this study sample was high [43,44]. Participants generally rated their satisfaction with the intervention as high but had mixed ratings for aspects of the intervention centered on targeting relatedness. Questionnaire data suggested that the *Steps2Health* intervention increased self-reported moderate-to-vigorous physical activity levels from pre- to postintervention. Device-measured data suggested that the *Steps2Health* intervention was associated with a greater increase in daily step count over the course of the study period;
the comparison group appeared to have a higher step count early in the intervention period, which steadily declined, whereas the experimental group had a lower step count early on, which steadily increased.

The game design elements of the Steps2Health intervention are in line with the recommendation by Nicholson [45] that, to foster long-term behavior change, gamified intervention approaches should be centered on providing information that engenders meaningful connections. Beyond providing performance feedback, which may not always be relevant to insufficiently active cancer survivors [29], the Steps2Health intervention messages were designed to build autonomous motivation by fostering curiosity, unexpected adventures, and playfulness in the context of cancer survivorship. The results of this study support the general acceptability of this approach and the feasibility of using the approach in real time. Survey and qualitative data from individual interviews indicated that participants found the messages targeting autonomous motivation to be pleasant and compelling and that they would recommend the experience to friends and family. The messages targeting autonomy and competence or self-efficacy were also well rated.

Compared with the messages targeting autonomy and competence or self-efficacy, the messages targeting relatedness were not as well received, and the feasibility criterion associated with the response rate to these messages was not met. Enhancing relatedness has the potential to promote physical activity in cancer survivors; however, the marked heterogeneity of this population introduces challenges [29,46]. Some individuals may be more receptive to having this need fulfilled by constructive social support, whereas others may benefit more from healthy competition [47]. The incorporation of more granular, individualized tailoring may enable future mHealth interventions to meet this need for a greater diversity of individuals. In this study, participants recommended providing multiple role model characters to choose from, which they felt would help to enhance relatability. Anticipating our study sample, we created a female role model, but our findings support the notion emphasized in previous literature that participant self-tailoring may foster individual autonomy and connection to digital interventions (eg, allowing users to choose role models whose background and story most resonate with their own) [41]. Some participants suggested including aspects of social media as a part of the intervention experience; however, this idea was met with mixed opinions and some skepticism.

One increasingly viable intervention option that may serve to enhance relatedness in cancer survivors in mHealth interventions to some degree is the use of more sophisticated conversational technology, such as automated conversational agents, known as chatbots. Chatbots are increasingly being used as health intervention components [48,49] and this emerging technology could help increase participant engagement and/or facilitate feelings of relatedness for some individuals while preserving the scalability of the intervention. Relatedness is theorized to influence health-related outcomes both directly and by impacting autonomous regulation [13]. Accordingly, targeting relatedness should be a priority for interventionists but the degree to which this psychological need can be met via electronic means is unclear. More research is needed to determine how mHealth interventions can meaningfully impact this construct in cancer survivors.

Research indicates that mHealth programs generally have high rates of participant discontinuation [50] and that participant engagement plays an important role in influencing the decision to continue an intervention [41,42]. In this study, Fitbit device wear was relatively high, and participants tended to rate the intervention favorably. However, the messages that requested a response were not well received. Individual interviews revealed that one potential barrier to this aspect of participant engagement was that the messages requesting a response sometimes required participants to engage in deeper reflection. This was generally perceived as inappropriate for the context in which participants tended to receive the messages (ie, when they were more active). Thus, one lesson learned from this study is to carefully consider the context in which intervention messages are to be received. We found that participants were not very likely to review past text messages, and this sentiment was echoed by participants’ admission that they seldom accessed previously sent links to resources for healthy living. Future mHealth physical activity interventions could potentially increase engagement by configuring messages to be sent during lulls in physical activity that follow bouts of exercise (eg, at the conclusion of bouts of physical activity as registered by meeting a threshold level of Fitbit Active Minutes over a predetermined time period). This may be more conducive to participant engagement and serve as a useful opportunity to provide positive reinforcement and/or self-reflective, just-in-time support [51].

Our operationalization of participant response rate in this study was a summative measure of frequency. Future research should investigate what constitutes effective engagement or a broader conceptualization of engagement that relates more directly to desired intervention outcomes [41,42]. In this study, although the participant engagement feasibility criterion corresponding to the text message response rate was not met, participants in the experimental group tended to increase their physical activity levels more than their counterparts in the comparison group. A successful aspect of this study that helped facilitate participant engagement and high device wear was our inclusion of automated messages that were automatically sent if participants did not synchronize their Fitbit device for a prescribed period of time. The timestamp of users’ last synchronization is available through the Fitbit application programming interface. In this study, we were able to use these data to help increase participants’ engagement and data collection in a manner that minimized the use of study resources.

Although the experimental group reported increases in physical activity, the study results were mixed regarding whether participants felt that the Steps2Health messages motivated them to increase their physical activity levels. Interestingly, Zuckerman and Gal-Oz [52] noted a similar phenomenon regarding a discrepancy between the perceived and empirical effects of a gamified physical activity intervention. Participants may not necessarily attribute lifestyle changes to apparently effective gamification elements. Furthermore, we found no evidence that group assignment was associated with an increase in autonomous regulation. A review conducted by Johnson [53]
revealed that the effects of gamification-centered wellness interventions are strongest for physical activity–related behavioral outcomes but weaker for motivation-related cognitions. Nonetheless, both the experimental and comparison groups exhibited a small, statistically significant increase in autonomous regulation. The provision of a wearable device alone could impact autonomous regulation in this population; however, this notion should be met with caution. The provision of consumer wearable technologies alone may undermine physical activity–related motivations in some populations [54] by emphasizing less autonomous forms of motivation, inducing anxiety and stigma, or by imposing unattainable or inappropriate norms [55].

Our findings indicated that the Steps2Health intervention was associated with an increase in self-reported exercise and device-measured step count during the intervention. Survey analyses provided evidence for a medium effect size from baseline to follow-up that is consistent with other mHealth-based behavioral interventions for promoting cancer survivors’ physical activity [56,57]. This finding was supplemented by an analysis of device-measured step counts over the intervention period. The comparison group participants’ step count was initially high but trended steadily downward. This is concordant with a waning novelty effect associated with physical activity device technologies [12]. The gamification aspects of the Steps2Health intervention may have influenced participants to gradually increase their step count. Future studies should further investigate these dynamics, as long-term physical activity maintenance is needed to best realize the diverse health benefits of physical activity. In some cases, it may be prudent to delay game design intervention components to capitalize on their effects and the novelty effect associated with the provision of physical activity tracking technologies. In fact, the Maintain IT Model of health behavior change posits that interventions centered on self-regulation may be appropriate for health behavior initiation, whereas interventions centered on precipitating a more centered and empowered state, consistent with SDT, may be more effective for leading to long-term health behavior maintenance [58].

Study Limitations

The establishment of the acceptability and feasibility of digital behavior change interventions is critically important, given their high initial costs and high rate of discontinuation of use. Furthermore, the CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) 2010 Statement Extension to Randomized Pilot and Feasibility Trials outlines the need for prespecified assessments of pilot trial objectives [59]. Unfortunately, there is a lack of consensus on the established criteria to aid researchers in determining the feasibility and acceptability of digital behavior change interventions. In this study, we set an a priori criteria for assessing the feasibility of Steps2Health based on the intervention’s unique components (eg, text messaging contingent on physical activity tracker device–derived data), data observed in comparable studies (eg, for physical activity tracker wear), and the theoretical orientation of our intervention (ie, the emphasis on intrinsic motivation in SDT). However, we acknowledge that these criteria, and the thresholds we set for them, may not be applicable to other studies (or necessarily the ideal benchmarks for evaluating the feasibility of Steps2Health). Establishing universal quantitative criteria and corresponding thresholds may be a challenge, given the heterogeneous and rapidly evolving nature of digital behavior change interventions, but establishing basic metrics for commonly occurring physical activity intervention components may facilitate the conduct of rigorous research. Future research on this topic could make a meaningful contribution to the literature.

This study was limited by its small sample size and the use of convenience sampling recruitment methods. Participants may have been particularly motivated to change their physical activity levels from the outset, which may have interacted with the intervention components. The generalizability of the study’s findings is limited by the fact that the study sample was relatively well educated and mostly female. Another limitation of this study is that we did not audio record the in-depth interviews and used field notes instead. Loss of details from field notes may have increased the risk of bias in the qualitative analysis. Furthermore, although every effort was made to capture insightful quotations accurately, some errors may have been introduced in this process. Nevertheless, associated threats to validity were reduced by our relatively straightforward applied research questions, short interviews, study staff members exclusively dedicated to taking field notes, and a research protocol specifying that the interviewer separately provided field notes immediately after all interviews. The measurement of physical activity via self-report has known limitations, and this is also true for consumer-grade wearable devices. Fitbit devices tend to overestimate step counts in free-living conditions, particularly for individuals with chronic disease and/or mobility limitations [38]. However, this study’s limitations are offset by its notable strengths, including a randomized controlled design, a novel intervention approach, minimal loss to follow-up, the use of both quantitative and qualitative methods, and intervention qualities that lend themselves readily to widespread dissemination.

Conclusions

The findings of this study support the feasibility and acceptability of using the gamification of real-time step counts to increase cancer survivors’ physical activity. Both the experimental and comparison groups increased their autonomous regulation for physical activity, and assignment to the experimental group was associated with increased physical activity. Coupling game design elements with wearable technologies is technically feasible and acceptable to cancer survivors and is potentially effective. More research is needed to develop these approaches as they have the potential to have a meaningful impact on public health.
Acknowledgments
This research was made possible by the Center for Energy Balance in Cancer Prevention and Survivorship and by the Duncan Family Institute for Cancer Prevention and Risk Assessment, both at the University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center. MR was supported by the National Cancer Institute of the National Institutes of Health (F31 CA236433). This study used the assessment, intervention, and measurement (AIM) core by MD Anderson, a shared resource supported by the National Institutes of Health through MD Anderson’s Cancer Center Support Grant (P30 CA016672). This study was supported by the Center for Energy Balance in Cancer Prevention and Survivorship, the Duncan Family Institute for Cancer Prevention and Risk Assessment, and a donation from Jason’s Deli. The content of this paper is solely the responsibility of the authors and does not necessarily represent the official views of the National Institutes of Health. EL was supported by a Mentored Research Scholar Grant in Applied and Clinical Research from the American Cancer Society (MRSG-14-165-01-CPPB). YL was supported by a faculty fellowship from the Duncan Family Institute for Cancer Prevention and Risk Assessment.

Authors’ Contributions
MR contributed to the conception of the study design, data collection, quantitative and qualitative data analysis, and drafting of the paper and provided approval of the version to be published. EL contributed to the conception of the study design, provided critical revision of the paper, and provided approval of the version to be published. YL contributed to quantitative data analysis, provided critical revision of the paper, and provided approval of the version to be published. MB contributed to the conception of the study design, data collection, and qualitative data analysis and provided approval of the version to be published. KBE contributed to the conception of the study design, data collection, quantitative and qualitative data analysis; provided critical revision of the paper; and provided approval of the version to be published.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

This randomized study was not registered. The authors explained that their study was "not an applicable clinical trial and did not require registration in the Clinical Trials Registry." The editor granted an exception of ICMJE rules for prospective registration of randomized trials because the risk of bias appears low. However, readers are advised to carefully assess the validity of any potential explicit or implicit claims related to primary outcomes or effectiveness.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Steps2Health interview guide.
[DOCX File, 20 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app1.docx]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Conceptual model for Steps2Health intervention.
[PNG File, 40 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app2.png]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Mean Godin Leisure-Time Physical Activity Questionnaire scores by group at baseline and follow-up. Error bars indicate 95% CIs.
[PNG File, 23 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app3.png]

Multimedia Appendix 4
Spaghetti plots of mean (thick) and subject-specific (thin) step count trajectories for the comparison and experimental groups during the intervention period.
[PNG File, 39 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app4.png]

Multimedia Appendix 5
Raw and fitted step count trajectories for individual participants in the experimental group.
[PNG File, 84 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app5.png]

Multimedia Appendix 6
Raw and fitted step count trajectories for individual participants in the comparison group.
[PNG File, 85 KB - mhealth_v8i11e18364_app6.png]

References


Abbreviations

BREQ-3: Behavioral Regulation for Exercise Questionnaire-3
mHealth: mobile health
MMS: multimedia messaging service
SDT: Self-Determination Theory
Mobile Phone Apps in Australia for Improving Pregnancy Outcomes: Systematic Search on App Stores

Loretta M Musgrave¹,², MEd; Nathalie V Kizirian², PhD; Caroline S E Homer³,⁴, PhD; Adrienne Gordon²,⁵, PhD

¹Centre for Midwifery, Child and Family Health, University of Technology Sydney, Ultimo NSW, Australia
²Faculty of Medicine and Health, Charles Perkins Centre, University of Sydney, Camperdown NSW, Australia
³Burnet Institute, Melbourne VIC, Australia
⁴Centre for Midwifery, Child, and Family Health, University of Technology Sydney, Ultimo NSW, Australia
⁵Sydney Local Health District, NSW Health, Camperdown NSW, Australia

Corresponding Author:
Loretta M Musgrave, MEd
Centre for Midwifery, Child and Family Health
University of Technology Sydney
Building 10, Level 11
235 Jones St
Ultimo NSW
Australia
Phone: 61 421633406
Email: loretta.musgrave@uts.edu.au

Abstract

Background: Women are increasingly turning to mobile health platforms to receive health information and support in pregnancy, yet the content of these platforms vary. Although there is great potential to influence health behaviors, little research has assessed the quality of these platforms or their ability to change behavior. In recent years, validated tools to assess app quality have become available.

Objective: To identify and assess the quality and ongoing popularity of the top 10 freely available pregnancy apps in Australia using validated tools.

Methods: A systematic search on app stores to identify apps was performed. A Google Play search used subject terms pregnancy, parenting, and childbirth; the iTunes search used alternative categories medical and health and fitness. The top 250 apps from each store were cross-referenced, and the top 100 found in both Google Play and iTunes were screened for eligibility. Apps that provided health information or advice for pregnancy were included. Excluded apps focused on nonhealth information (e.g., baby names). The top 10 pregnancy apps were assessed using the Mobile App Rating Scale (MARS). A comparative analysis was conducted at 2 time points over 2 years to assess the ongoing popularity of the apps. The MARS score was compared to the download and star rating data collected from iTunes and Google Play in 2017 and 2019. Health behaviors including breastfeeding, healthy pregnancy weight, and maternal awareness of fetal movements were reviewed for apparent impact on the user’s knowledge, attitudes, and behavior change intentions using the MARS perceived impact section and the Coventry, Aberdeen, and London—Refined (CALO-RE) taxonomy.

Results: A total of 2052 free apps were screened for eligibility, 1397 were excluded, and 655 were reviewed and scored. The top 10 apps were selected using download numbers and star ratings. All 10 apps were suboptimal in quality, practicality, and functionality. It was not possible to identify a primary purpose for all apps, and there was overlap in purpose for many. The mean overall MARS app quality score across all 10 apps was 3.01 (range 1.97-4.40) in 2017 and 3.40 (range 2.27-4.44) in 2019. A minority of apps scored well for perceived impact on health behavior using the MARS tool. Using the CALO-RE 40 item taxonomy, the number of behavior change techniques used was low. The mean number of behavior change techniques for breastfeeding was 5 (range 2-11), for pregnancy weight was 4 (range 2-12), and for maternal awareness of fetal movements was 5 (range 2-8).

Conclusions: This review provides valuable information to clinicians and consumers about the quality of apps currently available for pregnancy in Australia. Consideration is needed regarding the regulation of information and the potential opportunity to incorporate behavior change techniques to improve maternal and fetal outcomes.
smartphone apps; mobile phone; pregnancy; health behavior change; MARS tool; CALO-RE taxonomy; pregnancy outcomes; quality assessment methods

Introduction

Smartphone ownership and app use in Australia are high, with 81% of people possessing a smartphone, and 97% of mobile consumers aged between 18 and 34 years [1]. In 2019, mobile phones were the most common device used to access the internet (87%), followed by a laptop (69%), then tablets (56%) [2]. The most recent Australian data suggest that 46% of internet users access the internet for health services; this is an increase from 22% in 2014-2015 [3]. It has been estimated that up to 1 in 4 Australians use their smartphones to access health-related apps to support healthy behaviors [4].

Pregnant women are increasingly turning to mobile health (mHealth) to receive health information and support rather than relying on face-to-face and paper-based delivery methods [5-11]. This use of mobile health apps during pregnancy provides a unique window of opportunity—a teachable moment—when women are often more motivated to optimize health and change their lifestyle [12,13]. Apps also have the potential to act as a platform for specific pregnancy behavior change interventions, such as maternal awareness of decreased fetal movements, maternal weight monitoring, and breastfeeding [14-17]. A recent systematic review [18] found limited data of the effects of mobile app interventions during pregnancy on maternal knowledge and behavior change. This review [18] concluded that well-designed studies are needed to evaluate apps. App developers should include women in co-design, implementation, and evaluation phases of development. This was further supported by a systematic review [19] that aimed to evaluate usability (feasibility and acceptability) as well as the effectiveness of lifestyle and medical apps in supporting health care during pregnancy in high-income countries. The review [19] concluded that further evidence is needed before such apps are implemented in health care. For apps to be used as an adjunct to health care, issues related to the accuracy of the information, privacy, and security also need to be addressed [19].

Health behaviors such as maternal awareness of decreased fetal movements, maintaining a healthy weight in pregnancy, and breastfeeding are modifiable behaviors with known benefits for both mothers and babies. Globally, apps have been used to address such behaviors; however, further evidence is needed to establish if these apps have an impact on pregnancy outcomes [18]. In Australia, such apps have been assessed in a research setting, including Growing Healthy, which provides information on healthy infant feeding [20], and the My Baby’s Movements app, which provides information about normal fetal movements and has a tracking tool [21]. In 2018, a quasi-experimental study [20] was conducted to describe the effects of Growing Healthy on parental feeding practices, infant food preferences, and infant satiety responsiveness; the authors concluded that mHealth design and delivery characteristics that impact on infant feeding practices need further research. My Baby’s Movements has also been tested in a randomized controlled trial [21]; results are not yet published.

Women who are overweight or obese have an increased risk of pregnancy complications [22]. Pregnancy weight gain can be addressed through lifestyle and dietary interventions [23]. Institute of Medicine weight gain recommendations [24], National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence guidelines [25], and Australian dietary and physical activity guidelines are referenced and recommended in national Clinical Practice Guidelines for pregnancy care [26]. A recent systematic review of nutritional information available to pregnant women on smartphones in the United Kingdom found that apps do not consistently provide useful or accurate nutritional information [27].

The health benefits of exclusive breastfeeding for 6 months for mothers and infants are well established [28]. A 2019 systematic review [29] of digital interventions that support breastfeeding found that there is potential to improve breastfeeding outcomes. A recent cohort study [30] conducted in the United Kingdom evaluated the effectiveness of the Baby Buddy app; Baby Buddy is an mHealth intervention that is available on the UK National Health Service Library that supports and guides women through pregnancy and the first 6 months of their child’s life. The posthoc analysis of this study suggested that Baby Buddy app users were more likely to report exclusively breastfeeding or ever breastfeeding [30].

This study aimed to identify and review the top 10 pregnancy apps available in Australia over 2 years using validated tools to assess the quality and perceived impact of 3 important pregnancy health behaviors.

Methods

Study Design

This review used a stepwise systematic approach to identify, select, assess, and evaluate the 10 most popular pregnancy apps in Australia from November 2017 to October 2019. We assessed their quality and use of behavior change techniques for 3 specified behaviors—maternal awareness of decreased fetal movement, managing weight in pregnancy, and breastfeeding—using validated tools [31,32].

Step 1: Selection of Smartphone Apps

Apps were identified using a search strategy developed using PRISMA-P (Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analysis Protocol) guidelines [33] for reporting systematic reviews evaluating health care interventions. Both iTunes (Apple Inc, Australia) and Google Play (Google Inc, Australia) were searched using a set of terms developed for each online app store. The searches were conducted on the authors’ smartphones. Google Play search terms included pregnancy, parenting, and childbirth. Categories searched in iTunes were...
medical and health and fitness. The top 250 apps from each store that met the search terms were cross-referenced to find the top 100 available in both Google Play and iTunes. These 100 apps were then screened for eligibility. Apps were screened for relevance based on the inclusion criteria, using the information provided in the app store description. The top 10 apps were then selected using the download numbers and star ratings provided in each store. A comparative analysis of the top 10 apps was conducted at 2 time points, in November 2017 and in October 2019. Discrepancies regarding the selected apps were discussed and resolved by the review team.

Apps were included in the search that satisfied the following criteria: available free (with or without in-app purchase) AND modifiable or interactive AND provided general pregnancy information or education. In addition, there was a criterion that the app either aimed to support targeted behavior change in pregnancy such as healthy diet and exercise or aimed to support general well-being and disease prevention in pregnancy including mental health. Apps were excluded in the search if they satisfied any of the following criteria: a cost was involved, the app was not available in both Australia iTunes or Google Play stores, the app was not available in English, the app was not designed for interactive use, the app was primarily designed to track or assist with contraception or fertility, the app was classified as a game or entertainment only and was not designed for education or information delivery (eg, baby names), or the app was designed primarily for use by other consumers (such as health care professionals, women’s partners).

Step 2: Evaluation of Smartphone Apps

App Classification and Quality

Two reviewers classified and evaluated the quality of the top 10 pregnancy apps using the Mobile Application Rating Scale (MARS) [31]. The MARS tool was chosen as it has proven reliability through test-retest studies and has excellent internal consistency [31]. MARS has been validated for health applications and has been used in several studies, for example, pregnancy-specific nutrition apps [34,35], medication adherence [36], apps for treatment of speech disorders in children [37] and pain management [38]. Using the descriptive information provided by each app, the reviewers identified the focus and theoretical background (or strategies) used by the app developers. Affiliations, technical aspects, and target age groups were also examined. The 23-item tool has 4 objective quality subscales and 1 subjective quality rating scale. A 5-point rating scale (1, inadequate, to 5, excellent) was used for each of the 4 objective subscales: engagement, functionality, aesthetics, and information quality. A mean score was calculated that ranged from 1-5. A score of 5 denoted excellent quality, and a score of 1 indicated poor app quality [31]. The overall app quality score was calculated using the scores for the 4 domains. MARS has been designed in this way so that the total score can be directly translated to a star rating, and therefore, can be easily compared with app stores. Each app was assessed for subjective quality using a 5-point scale and calculated mean. The 4 subjective items were potential benefit, use, cost, and overall personal star rating (a score of 5 denoted “One of the best apps I’ve used” and a score of 1 denoted “One of the worst apps I’ve used”) [31]. Reviewers used each app for at least 10 minutes and assessed how easy the app was to use. The 10 included apps were assessed on both iOS and Android devices to determine if there was any variance in functionality or usability between the different platforms. Data related to app settings, developer information (affiliations), external links, and security features were also reviewed.

Comparative Analysis

At 2 time points, 2 years apart, a comparative analysis of the MARS scores, downloads and star ratings of the top 10 apps was conducted to assess the ongoing quality and popularity of the selected apps. Data were collected from iTunes and Google Play on November 3, 2017 and October 5, 2019. This was done to assess whether the quality or download rating had changed.

Step 3: Analysis of Behavior Change Techniques Used

The 3 prespecified target health behaviors were found in all 10 apps. These behaviors were assessed in 2019 using both the additional component of the MARS tool [31], perceived impact, and the Coventry, Aberdeen, and London—Refined (CALO-RE) taxonomy [32]. This was undertaken to compare which apps could be effective in modifying behavior change. Content related to the behaviors was reviewed in each app to assess potential impact on user awareness, knowledge, attitudes, intentions to change, help-seeking, and behavior change and was documented using a 5-point rating scale from 1 (strongly disagree) to 5 (strongly agree) [31]. To assess the perceived impact, we used a method described by Furlong et al [37]. We identified best-practice principles for decreased fetal movement awareness, weight management, and breastfeeding as well as the intervention techniques used by the apps (eg, self-monitoring, instruction on how to perform the behavior, and information on consequences of behavior). A mean score was then calculated [37]. The CALO-RE tool was chosen as an adjunct to MARS perceived impact as it has been used successfully for reporting, evaluating, and implementing physical activity, healthy eating, and lifestyle interventions [34]. CALO-RE is a systematic way to apply evidence and theory linked to behavior change using a taxonomy consisting of 40 behavior change techniques items [32]. Each app was reviewed for all 3 target behaviors. Definitions were used to accurately describe the behavior change techniques such as goal setting, action planning, and barrier identification [32]. Using a method described by Brown et al [34], we assessed the frequency of behavior change technique inclusion in all 3 behaviors in all 10 apps. To do this, we reviewed app content, assigned individual behavior change techniques as defined by Michie et al [32] and calculated a score out of 40 possible behavior change techniques [34]. We repeated this process for each behavior.

Fetal Movement Awareness

Information about fetal well-being and advice given regarding decreased fetal movement were examined using the Australian Safer Baby Bundle Handbook and Resource Guide [39]. Using MARS and CALO-RE, we considered the potential impact that each app would have on changing women behaviors toward monitoring fetal movements and the likelihood that they would act on concerns and contact a health care provider.
Healthy Weight in Pregnancy
Advice on gestational weight gain included in apps was reviewed against US Institute of Medicine weight gain recommendations, the UK National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence weight management guidelines for pregnancy, and the Australian clinical practice guidelines for pregnancy care.

Breastfeeding
Breastfeeding content was compared for alignment with the World Health Organization (WHO) Breastfeeding Friendly Hospital Initiative 10 Steps to Successful Breastfeeding [40] and International Code of Marketing of Breast-Milk Substitutes [41]. Information, images, advertising, and sponsorship of each app were reviewed and evidence of breaches of the WHO Code was collated alongside the MARS and CALO-RE data.

Results

Step 1: Selection of Smartphone Apps
In November 2017, a total of 2052 apps were identified. Of these, 1111 apps were found only in Google Play, and 941 were found only in iTunes. Due to the volume of apps, the top 250 free apps in both stores were cross-referenced to identify the top 100 most downloaded. A total of 71 apps were excluded, and 29 met inclusion criteria. Of these 29 apps, the 10 apps with the highest number of downloads and star ratings in both stores were identified (Figure 1). The following apps were assessed for quality: Ovia Pregnancy Tracker, I’m Expecting, Baby Centre, Pregnancy +, Glow, What to Expect, Baby Bump Pregnancy Pro, Sprout Pregnancy, Week by Week, The Bump. In 2019, the top 10 apps identified from 2017 were again searched for in both stores to conduct a comparative analysis of download and star ratings at 2 time points.

Figure 1. Flowchart of the app selection process.
Step 2: Evaluation of Selected Smartphone Apps

App Classification

The focus, theoretical background, and strategies used in each app were difficult to ascertain. Affiliations and sources of funding information available indicated that all 10 were commercially developed. All apps lacked transparency regarding the details of funding. The review team was unable to determine the target age groups as these were not specified. The app description, design, functionality, and content were designed to appeal to women of reproductive age; however, some had user pathways for partners and carers. Of the 10 apps, 7 had reminders, 7 allowed password protection, 7 had an app community, 9 allowed sharing, 9 required logins, and all 10 required web access.

There was no single dedicated focus described for any of the 10 apps, and there was an overlap between categories. Four of the apps had additional categories that were not prespecified (other), these linked directly to online stores to upgrade the app or buy baby-related products (4/10 apps). The entertainment category included apps that had links to online communities and information that was not always related to pregnancy health, and well-being. The physical health category included apps that provided information about pregnancy symptoms, milestones, nutrition, exercise, maternal weight gain, medication, and prenatal vitamin reminders (10/10 apps). Of the 10 apps, 5 had a component that related to supporting mental health (reducing negative feelings, anxiety, and depression).

All 10 apps provided some health information and education. All app descriptions stated that the app would help monitor and track various healthy behaviors, provide advice, tips, and strategies; 9 out of 10 apps had such content. Further analysis of the content using the MARS tool showed that few provided the necessary goal-setting (4/10 apps), assessment (3/10 apps), and feedback (2/10 apps) required to successfully support behavior change.

App Quality

The mean of the 4 MARS subscale scores across all 10 apps were 3.01 (range 1.97-4.40) in 2017 and 3.40 (range 2.27-4.44) in 2019. The app that had the highest quality scores was Ovia Pregnancy Tracker App (in 2017: mean 4.40; in 2019: mean 4.44). The app that had the lowest quality score in 2017 (mean 1.97) was Baby Bump Pregnancy Pro. This app was no longer available for download in 2019, therefore, was not analyzed at the second time point. In both 2017 and 2019, functionality was rated the highest in both 2017 and 2019 followed by aesthetics, engagement, and information (Table 1). Ovia Pregnancy Tracker scored highest across all subscales. Apps that scored higher for engagement and aesthetics scored lower for information. We found that sources of information were not cited, and studies and trials were not included. There was inconsistent information, and there appeared to be an ad hoc approach with several pieces of content missing review dates. The subjective quality items were calculated as a mean score. Apps that had the highest subjective scores in 2017 were Ovia Pregnancy Tracker (mean 3.75) and Sprout Pregnancy (mean 2.75). These 2 apps also had the highest overall MARS scores in 2017 (mean 4.40 and mean 3.38, respectively).

Table 1. MARS scores of the Top 10 apps in 2017 and 2019.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App</th>
<th>Engagement score</th>
<th>Functionality score</th>
<th>Aesthetics score</th>
<th>Information score</th>
<th>Overall quality score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All, mean</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>3.62</td>
<td>4.25</td>
<td>3.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovia Pregnancy Tracker</td>
<td>4.60</td>
<td>4.60</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>4.75</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m Expecting</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby Centre</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.60</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy +</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>4.25</td>
<td>4.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glow</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>4.33</td>
<td>3.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What to Expect</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>3.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby Bump Pregnancy Pro</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>_a</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprout Pregnancy</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>4.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week by Week</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>2.80</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Bump</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aDenotes that this app was not available for download in 2019.

Comparative Analysis

Baby Bump Pregnancy Pro had the lowest MARS score in 2017 and was not available to download at the second time point on either iOS or Android. For the majority of apps, there was an increase in the mean quality scores from 2017 to 2019. The exceptions to this were I’m Expecting, Sprout Pregnancy, and Week by Week, which had lower scores than their 2017 scores. Sprout Pregnancy had the lowest star rating (4.5) at both time points. This app dropped significantly in ranking from 2017 (ranked second) to 2019 (ranked ninth). Ovia Pregnancy Tracker ranked first at both time points (Table 2).
Step 3: Analysis of Behavior Change Techniques Used

Overall, Ovia Pregnancy Tracker scored the highest for perceived impact using the MARS tool across all 3 behaviors (breastfeeding: mean 3.0; healthy weight: mean 3.5; maternal fetal movement awareness: mean 4.0; all apps: range 1-4). When examined using CALO-RE, Ovia Pregnancy Tracker did not have the highest number of behavior change techniques for any of the behaviors reviewed (Table 3). What to Expect used the highest number of behavior change techniques (breastfeeding: 11/40; healthy weight: 9/40; maternal fetal movement awareness: 8/40; all apps: range 2-12) (Table 3). A detailed analysis of the frequency of CALO-RE behavior change techniques included across the 10 apps for the 3 behaviors is included in Multimedia Appendix 1.

Fetal Movements

Ovia Pregnancy Tracker scored the highest for perceived impact for fetal movements (mean 4.0; range 1-4) (Table 3). When assessed using CALO-RE, the highest number of behavior change techniques used was 8/40 (range 2-8). When cross-referenced with the Australian Safer Baby Bundle Handbook and Resource Guide [39], we found several discrepancies. All apps had some inaccurate or incomplete information about maternal fetal movement monitoring. One app stated that normal baby movement was 10 kicks in 2 hours and all other apps provide no or partial information alongside the in-app tools provided. Three of the 10 apps incorrectly suggested the mother should consume something sweet to encourage fetal movements. One app recommended buying a fetal Doppler ultrasound, claiming that it was beneficial and so that the pregnant woman could monitor fetal well-being. This is not evidence-based and may impact negatively on fetal outcomes [42]. Three of the apps did not articulate or encourage women to contact a health care provider if concerned about decreased fetal movements or mention the risk of stillbirth.

Healthy Weight in Pregnancy

Ovia Pregnancy Tracker scored the highest for perceived impact (mean 3.5, range 1.0-3.5). Basic information on diet and exercise was included in all apps, with a focus primarily on fitness rather than weight management. Tools to track exercise and weight were included in 5 of the apps; however, little or no information was given on how, when, or why it is important to do so. Weight tracking tools in 2 apps provided incorrect information on expected weight gain, and 2 apps provided information that was misleading regarding increasing calorie intake and advocating the need to eat for two. CALO-RE analysis showed that Baby Centre (12 techniques) and What to Expect (9 techniques) utilized the highest of behavior change techniques (all apps: mean 4.4, range: 2-12), but there was no clear alignment with Institute of Medicine, National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, or Australian pregnancy care guidelines (Table 3).

Breastfeeding

Basic breastfeeding information was provided in all apps; however, the content did not adequately cover all aspects of breastfeeding, was inaccurate, or did not follow best practice outlined in the WHO code [41]. Although Ovia Pregnancy Tracker scored the highest for perceived impact (mean 3.0), it had one of the lowest numbers of behavior change techniques (5/40) when compared against other apps (What to Expect: 11/40; The Bump: 10/40). Two apps provided information for later in pregnancy and highlighted some difficulties with breastfeeding. It was noted that these apps did not mention midwives or lactation consultants as a form of support, instead suggesting that formula is equal to breastmilk. The apps varied greatly; 1 app provided a feeding tracker and gave links to relevant articles while another app gave information that was directly linked to online shopping for nipple cream and bras. One app had affiliations with a company that sells breastmilk substitutes; this app scored the lowest in both MARS and CALO-RE and directly contradicted the WHO code [41].
Table 3. Perceived impact of app on modifiable healthy behavior using the MARS app-specific tool and CALO-RE behavior change techniques taxonomy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App</th>
<th>Breastfeeding</th>
<th>Healthy weight</th>
<th>Fetal movements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MARS&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; perceived impact score, mean</td>
<td>CALO-RE&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; behavior change techniques, n (%)</td>
<td>MARS&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; perceived impact score, mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovia Pregnancy Tracker</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>5 (12.5)</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm Expecting</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby Centre</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>9 (22.5)</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy +</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>6 (15)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glow</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What to Expect</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>11 (27.5)</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby Bump</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>___&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprout Pregnancy</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week by Week</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2 (5)</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Bump</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>10 (25)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>MARS: Mobile Application Rating Scale.
<sup>b</sup>CALO-RE: Coventry, Aberdeen, and London—Refined.
<sup>c</sup>Denotes that this app was not available for download in 2019.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This review showed that highly rated pregnancy smartphone apps were generally of low to moderate quality. This study is the first to have systematically described app quality and the use of behavior change techniques in pregnancy apps for 3 key health behaviors—maternal fetal movement monitoring, pregnancy weight monitoring, and breastfeeding.

The trend toward the use of mobile health opens up an opportunity to reach women who are less likely to or have yet to engage with health care providers. The information provided in all 10 apps, however, was not tailored for specific groups, for example, young mothers. We were unable to find any information in the 10 apps that suggested that pregnant women were engaged as co-designers at any stage of the app development or that endorsement from key maternity care organizations, health departments, or colleges was sought. All apps required web access. This may be a barrier for women living outside major Australian cities with limited Wi-Fi connection or with restricted data plans. Those who may benefit most are potentially not able to access interventions that may improve health outcomes and support pregnancy and early parenthood.

Functionality appears to be the main focus for developers. All 10 apps work technically well and have some in-built mechanisms for sharing, basic privacy settings (to meet Australian law), and rudimentary personalization capability. All reviewed apps lacked transparency regarding affiliations and have been set up to be commercial rather than as an intervention to change behavior. Although the functionality and usability of the apps have increased in the last two years, content credibility has not. Several reviews have found that health apps have insufficient evidence-based content [43-45]. Since there is limited regulatory oversight of the quality of apps and content provided, the MARS tool could be used by clinicians and by women themselves to identify high-quality apps rather than relying on download and star ratings. Our results confirm that few apps provide evidence-based information; therefore, caution is advised before recommending the use of these during pregnancy. For example, regarding maternal fetal movement awareness, reviewed app tools appeared to be for entertainment purposes since they were designed poorly and lacked essential information. We were unable to determine if fetal movement tools in apps during pregnancy would positively impact maternal knowledge, behavior change, or perinatal health outcomes. Of concern is the possibility of women assuming that app content is evidence-based and credible; however, in reality, apps are a platform for in-app purchases and link to unnecessary and potentially harmful advice. This was highlighted in the breastfeeding information with links to breastmilk substitutes and pictures of idealized artificial feeding. Such breaches of the WHO code do not contribute to motivating women to breastfeed exclusively for 6 months or seek help and assistance to do so.

Strengths and Limitations

The strength of this study is the use of a stepwise systematic approach to identify and review pregnancy mobile apps in Australia. By assessing current apps using the MARS tool and CALO-RE taxonomy, we were able to evaluate features and quality, as well as capture the usefulness of these apps as behavior change intervention strategies. We looked at the top 10 apps in terms of popularity using downloads and star ratings in Australian iOS and Android app stores. We then assessed 3
prespecified healthy pregnancy behaviors. Our inclusion criteria were deliberately set wide to assess what apps are commonly used by pregnant women; the disadvantage of using this criteria was that we may have missed other behaviors.

Our study supports the work by Brown et al who reviewed the quality of Australian iPhone pregnancy apps and the inclusion of behavior change techniques for pregnancy-specific nutrition information using MARS and CALO-RE [34] and free pregnancy apps available in the Google store [35]. Similarly, we found that only a small number of behavior change techniques were utilized across the 3 healthy behaviors we examined using CALO-RE. Likewise, our MARS findings had an overall mean quality score of 3.02 compared to the mean of 3.05 in Brown et al [34]. We found no single tool could cover all aspects of pregnancy apps and therefore we used both the MARS tool and the CALO-RE taxonomy. We chose the MARS tool as it has been validated for the quality of health apps. CALO-RE was used because it has more detail about specific behavior change techniques.

CALO-RE and perceived impact scores in this study are low. This may be attributed to the lack of behavior change theory in app design or that behavior change was not the purpose of the apps. The number of behavior change techniques used and the perceived impact does not necessarily correlate with actual behavior change as a result of using these apps. A feasibility study would need to be conducted to establish the link between perceived and actual impact, this is beyond the scope of this study; however, using CALO-RE and the MARS tool to assess the likelihood of behavior change has highlighted the need for improvement if apps are to be used as interventions.

Finally, searching for pregnancy apps is problematic due to inconsistent search terms across iTunes and Google Play. The implication of this, is that a search cannot be replicated, and therefore, validated. A potential solution to facilitate searching would be the development of a vocabulary for app indexing similar to Medical Subject Headings [46]. This would enable users and researchers alike, to have the ability to easily find the most appropriate apps with pregnancy information. Also, with the constant addition and removal of apps from the market, it is difficult to provide a timely appraisal of the current apps available. Future research could explore the creation of a combined scoring tool for pregnancy apps that could be used by both clinicians and women.

Conclusions

This study confirms that publicly available, free pregnancy apps in Australia should be treated with caution rather than recommended. Clinicians and researchers need to work collaboratively and show leadership in developing evidence-based pregnancy apps that incorporate behavior change techniques. Engagement with pregnant women in co-design must occur at all stages of app development, and endorsement from peak maternity care organizations, health departments, and professional societies should be sought. Smartphone apps have the potential to influence healthy behaviors in pregnancy, but an evidence-based approach is needed.

Acknowledgments

This study is part of LM’s doctoral thesis, which is funded through the Ho Kong Fung Ling postgraduate scholarship.

Authors’ Contributions

This project was conducted as part of a Doctor of Philosophy. LM and AG contributed to the concepts and design of the study. LM and AG conducted the research and analyzed the data. LM drafted the first version of the manuscript. AG, NK, and CH contributed to writing and editing the manuscript. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Frequency of behavior change technique inclusion.
[DOCX File, 35 KB - mhealth_v8i11e22340_app1.docx ]

References


Abbreviations

- **CALO-RE**: Coventry, Aberdeen, and London—Refined
- **MARS**: Mobile Application Rating Scale
- **mHealth**: mobile health
- **WHO**: World Health Organization

©Loretta M Musgrave, Nathalie V Kizirian, Caroline S E Homer, Adrienne Gordon. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 16.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Comparison of Mobile Health Technology Use for Self-Tracking Between Older Adults and the General Adult Population in Canada: Cross-Sectional Survey

Mirou Jaana¹, PhD; Guy Paré², PhD

¹Telfer School of Management, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada
²Research Chair in Digital Health, HEC Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Corresponding Author:
Mirou Jaana, PhD
Telfer School of Management
University of Ottawa
55 Laurier Ave East
Ottawa, ON, K1N 6N5
Canada
Phone: 1 16135625800 ext 3400
Email: jaana@telfer.uottawa.ca

Abstract

Background: The burden of population aging and chronic conditions has been reported worldwide. Older adults, especially those with high needs, experience social isolation and have high rates of emergency visits and limited satisfaction with the care they receive. Mobile health (mHealth) technologies present opportunities to address these challenges. To date, limited information is available on Canadian older adults’ attitudes toward and use of mHealth technologies for self-tracking purposes—an area that is increasingly important and relevant during the COVID-19 era.

Objective: This study presents contributions to an underresearched area on older adults and mHealth technology use. The aim of this study was to compare older adults’ use of mHealth technologies to that of the general adult population in Canada and to investigate the factors that affect their use.

Methods: A cross-sectional survey on mHealth and digital self-tracking was conducted. A web-based questionnaire was administered to a national sample of 4109 Canadian residents who spoke either English or French. The survey instrument consisted of 3 sections assessing the following items: (1) demographic characteristics, health status, and comorbidities; (2) familiarity with and use of mHealth technologies (ie, mobile apps, consumer smart devices/wearables such as vital signs monitors, bathroom scales, fitness trackers, intelligent clothing); and (3) factors influencing the continued use of mHealth technologies.

Results: Significant differences were observed between the older adults and the general adult population in the use of smart technologies and internet \((P<.001)\). Approximately 47.4% (323/682) of the older adults in the community reported using smartphones and 49.8% (340/682) indicated using digital tablets. Only 19.6% (91/463) of the older adults using smartphones/digital tablets reported downloading mobile apps, and 12.3% (47/383) of the older adults who heard of smart devices/wearables indicated using them. The majority of the mobile apps downloaded by older adults was health-related; interestingly, their use was sustained over a longer period of time \((P=.007)\) by the older adults compared to that by the general population. Approximately 62.7% (428/682) of the older adults reported tracking their health measures, but the majority did so manually. Older adults with one or more chronic conditions were mostly nontrackers (odds ratio 0.439 and 0.431 for traditional trackers and digital trackers, respectively). No significant differences were observed between the older adults and the general adult population with regard to satisfaction with mHealth technologies and their intention to continue using them.

Conclusions: Leveraging mHealth technologies in partnership with health care providers and sharing of health/well-being data with health care professionals and family members remain very limited. A culture shift in the provision of care to older adults is deemed necessary to keep up with the development of mHealth technologies and the changing demographics and expectations of patients and their caregivers.

\((JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e24718)\) doi:10.2196/24718
KEYWORDS

mobile health; older adults; self-tracking; wearable technology; smart devices; mobile apps; survey; mobile phone; seniors; elderly

Introduction

Population aging is a phenomenon that is associated with increased prevalence of chronic conditions worldwide [1-3]. In 2017, the global number of people 60 years and older was 962 million (including 137 million ≥80 years), and this number is expected to reach 2.1 billion by 2050 [3]. This growing population of older adults leads to an increased demand on the health systems for services, which are costly and require significant resources [4].

A recent Commonwealth survey of older adults in 11 countries investigated the challenges faced by adults aged ≥65 years at the social and health care levels [2,5]. The results showed that, across all surveyed countries, older adults, in general, and older adults with high needs, in particular (ie, multiple chronic conditions/functional challenges), experience social isolation and have high rates of emergency visits and general dissatisfaction with the quality of care they receive [2]. The current COVID-19 crisis has further catalyzed this problem. Older adults represent a group of the population that is at higher risk of death from severe acute respiratory syndrome associated with coronavirus, thus necessitating social distancing, which may lead to social isolation [6]. This confinement and social isolation can in turn have negative psychological effects and sleeping problems [7,8] and increased risk for early mortality [9]. In addition to potential social isolation, COVID-19 may have long-term effects on people with preexisting noncommunicable chronic diseases [10]. This is particularly observed with decrease in physical activity, unhealthy lifestyles during the COVID-19 crisis, and changes in the management of these conditions (eg, reduced outpatient visits, difficulty in diagnosing new conditions or recognizing deterioration in the existing ones) [10].

In Canada, wait times for various types of services (eg, doctors, specialists, emergency) have been historically longer compared to some other developed countries [11]. Generally, Canadians tend to be more frequent users of health services [11], and concerns have been growing about the ability of the public health care system to address the increasing needs of an aging population [12]. For instance, the population of Canadian adults aged 65 years and older reached 6.5 million in 2019 [13], and this number is expected to increase by 68% over the next 20 years [14]. This is particularly critical, given the high health care spending per capita on older adults and large use of services by this group [12].

Mobile health (mHealth) technologies present an opportunity to address the challenges associated with population aging and enable support for older adults in the community. mHealth refers to the use of mobile devices (eg, patient monitoring devices, mobile phones) to detect and monitor physiological changes and support medical and public health practice [15]. Prior research has examined the potential role of mHealth technologies in providing long-term support for older adults [16-18] and in monitoring chronic conditions often associated with older age [19-26]. Self-tracking devices in particular (eg, smart devices with mobile apps, fitness trackers, blood pressure monitors) have gained interest in recent years in light of their potential for monitoring and motivating individuals to remain healthy [27-31]. However, their use remains variable and less widespread among older adults [32], and prior research has reported risks associated with health information tracking, which may trigger negative emotions among patients with multiple chronic conditions and potential emotional draining in this group [33]. With the current COVID-19 crisis, calls for initiatives and efforts to bridge health information and communication technologies with the care for older adults have appeared in various countries as a preparedness mechanism and a mitigating approach against the current and future pandemics [7,10,34,35]. However, to date, limited information is available on older adults’ attitudes toward and their use of mHealth technologies for self-tracking purposes—an area that reveals to be increasingly important during and following this COVID-19 era.

This study, which is part of a larger program on digital health self-tracking [36], addresses this gap and presents the results of a national survey across all provinces in Canada, which assessed older adults’ familiarity with and use of mHealth technologies comprising mobile apps, smart devices, and wearables. Specifically, we report findings on the pattern of older adults’ use of mHealth technologies for self-tracking purposes and compare it to that of the general adult population. We also investigate the factors that influence the continued usage of mHealth technologies among older adults.

In order to address the objectives of this study, we propose a research model based on the work of Bhattachjee [37] and Hong et al [38] and the expectation-confirmation theory [39]. In the present context, this model suggests that an older adult’s intention to continue using mHealth technologies is mainly influenced by his or her level of satisfaction, which is in turn affected by the extent to which his or her initial expectations toward mHealth technologies are confirmed, in addition to ease of use and perceived usefulness [40]. The latter factors also have direct links with usage continuance intention [38]. Hence, this study presents evidence on the extent to which older adults use mHealth technologies to self-track their health, compares their use of mHealth technologies to that of the general adult population, and analyzes the factors that influence the continued use of these technologies in the older population.

Methods

Study Design and Sampling

We present in this section the survey that was conducted in accordance with the Checklist for Reporting Results of Internet E-Surveys [41]. A web-based questionnaire was administered to a national sample of 4109 Canadian residents, aged 18 years or older, and who spoke English or French. The sample was selected from a proprietary web-based panel (AC Nielsen Company), which is one of the largest and most representative

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e24718/
panels in Canada. To ensure representativeness of the overall population, the quota method was applied (age and gender) following a stratification by the geographic region. The ethics approval for the study was granted by the HEC Montréal’s research ethics committee. The older adult group in the sample consisted of all respondents aged 65 years and older and the general adult population in the sample consisted of respondents aged 18-64 years.

Survey and Data Collection
The survey instrument consisted of 3 sections assessing the following items: (1) demographic characteristics, health status, and comorbidities; (2) familiarity with and use of mHealth technologies (ie, mobile apps, consumer smart devices/wearables such as vital signs monitors, bathroom scales, fitness trackers, intelligent clothing); and (3) factors influencing the continued use of mHealth technologies. The latter section also measured respondents’ satisfaction, ease of use, expectation confirmation, perceived usefulness, and intention to continue using mHealth technologies in the future.

Sociodemographic variables were measured using standardized indicators used in other international surveys [42-45]. These included gender, age, region, gross family income, education, occupation, and use of mobile phones and digital tablets. Health status was self-rated by respondents on a 5-point Likert scale (1=poor or fair, 5=very good or excellent), which is a common approach used in prior research [46]. A total of 11 chronic conditions were investigated (eg, diabetes, high blood pressure, cardiovascular disease, lung or respiratory cancer).

Respondents’ familiarity with mHealth technologies was assessed using a combination of items. A general question measured their familiarity with consumer wearables and smart medical devices on a 5-point Likert scale (1=not much at all familiar, 5=extremely familiar). Participants were also asked to indicate the devices that they owned by using descriptive terms that referred to 13 devices identified in the literature and available in the Canadian market. When participants indicated owning a specific device or wearable, they were asked to rate on a (1-7) scale (1=once a month or less, 7=many times a day) how often they used it in the past 3 months.

Three self-tracking profiles were identified in this study based on the respondents’ indication of their health tracking behavior. Those who regularly tracked one or more aspects of their health or well-being by using mHealth technologies, including mobile apps for health, consumer wearables (eg, fitness trackers), and smart medical devices (eg, blood pressure monitors), were defined as “digital trackers.” Respondents who regularly monitored one or more aspects of their health and well-being by using manual tools (ie, recording the information in writing) were defined as “traditional trackers.” All other respondents who did not regularly monitor any aspect of their personal health were considered as “nontrackers.”

The factors that are likely to influence the continued usage of mHealth technologies were captured. First, measures of perceived usefulness (7 items) and ease of use (4 items) were adapted from Davis [40] and rated on a 5-point Likert scale (1=strongly disagree, 5=strongly agree). We also adapted measures from Bhattacharjee [37] and Hong et al [38] to assess users’ satisfaction (3 items) and confirmation of initial expectations (3 items) on a 5-point Likert scale (1=strongly disagree, 5=strongly agree).

The survey instrument was first pretested during face-to-face interviews with 16 adults who were representative of the Canadian population in terms of gender, language, and age. Some small adjustments were made to the questionnaire following this step. A copy of the final survey instrument may be obtained from the authors upon request. Panel members were invited to participate in the study by email. Once participants clicked on the URL provided in the email letter, they were screened for the abovementioned eligibility criteria. All respondents read and approved an informed consent form prior to completing the questionnaire. Survey respondents were able to enter the survey at any point during the data collection period, ie, from January 11, 2017 to February 2, 2017. In accessing the web-based questionnaire, respondents were assigned a unique identifier and secret code (closed survey) that allowed them access to their data until the survey was done. Those who partly completed the survey were able to exit the questionnaire and return at a later time to enter additional data and to review and change their prior answers. Participants were rewarded gift cards (eg, Amazon, iTunes, Starbucks, magazine subscriptions) for survey completion. Rewards ranged in value from CAD $5 to CAD $75.

Statistical Analysis
Data analysis was conducted to explore and better understand the pattern of use of these technologies and self-tracking behaviors by older adults in the community and compare it to that of the general adult population. Descriptive data analysis was performed to present an overview of the older adult group characteristics and their use of mHealth technologies. Bivariate analyses (two-sided t test for continuous variables and chi-square for categorical variables) were conducted to assess the differences between the 2 groups on these variables. Multinomial logistic regression tests were used to compare self-trackers (traditional and digital) and nontrackers, and Pearson correlation tests and partial least squares multiple regression analyses were used to analyze users’ appreciation of digital self-tracking devices. Data analyses were performed on SPSS Statistics v25 (IBM Corp) and SmartPLS 2.0 (SmartPLS GmbH).

Results
Sample Characteristics
Of the total study population of 4109 participants distributed across all provinces, 682 (16.6%) were aged 65 years and older (older adults) and 3427 (83.4%) were aged 18-64 years (general adult population), which represents the actual distribution of the older adults in the Canadian population [13]. Table 1 shows that a higher proportion of the older adults live on the east coast of Canada and British Columbia.
Table 1. Comparison of the characteristics of the older adults with those of the general adult population in this study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Older adult population, n=682, n (%)</th>
<th>General population, n=3427, n (%)</th>
<th>Total, N=4109, n (%)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>400 (58.6)</td>
<td>1718 (50.1)</td>
<td>2118 (51.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>282 (41.3)</td>
<td>1709 (49.9)</td>
<td>1991 (48.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Region</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic provinces</td>
<td>56 (8.2)</td>
<td>237 (6.9)</td>
<td>293 (7.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quebec</td>
<td>153 (22.4)</td>
<td>833 (24.3)</td>
<td>986 (24.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ontario</td>
<td>265 (38.9)</td>
<td>1310 (38.2)</td>
<td>1575 (38.3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prairies</td>
<td>37 (5.4)</td>
<td>229 (6.7)</td>
<td>266 (6.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta</td>
<td>50 (7.3)</td>
<td>387 (11.3)</td>
<td>437 (10.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Columbia and territories</td>
<td>121 (17.7)</td>
<td>431 (12.6)</td>
<td>552 (13.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Highest education level</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary and secondary school</td>
<td>181 (26.7)</td>
<td>758 (22.5)</td>
<td>939 (23.2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College/CEGEP</td>
<td>177 (26.1)</td>
<td>972 (28.8)</td>
<td>1149 (28.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University undergraduate</td>
<td>207 (30.6)</td>
<td>1093 (32.4)</td>
<td>1300 (32.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University graduate</td>
<td>112 (16.5)</td>
<td>549 (16.3)</td>
<td>660 (16.3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Employment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-time</td>
<td>37 (5.4)</td>
<td>1921 (56.1)</td>
<td>1958 (47.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part-time</td>
<td>44 (6.4)</td>
<td>385 (11.2)</td>
<td>429 (10.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired</td>
<td>587 (86.1)</td>
<td>350 (10.2)</td>
<td>937 (22.8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>14 (2.1)</td>
<td>771 (22.5)</td>
<td>785 (19.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Income</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;$20,000</td>
<td>32 (5.7)</td>
<td>236 (8.1)</td>
<td>268 (7.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$20,000-$39,999</td>
<td>123 (22.1)</td>
<td>461 (15.7)</td>
<td>584 (16.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$40,000-$59,999</td>
<td>131 (23.5)</td>
<td>482 (16.4)</td>
<td>613 (17.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$60,000-$79,999</td>
<td>95 (17.1)</td>
<td>465 (15.9)</td>
<td>560 (16.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$80,000-$99,000</td>
<td>74 (13.2)</td>
<td>424 (14.4)</td>
<td>498 (14.3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥$100,000</td>
<td>102 (18.3)</td>
<td>863 (29.4)</td>
<td>965 (27.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chronic conditions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>342 (51.4)</td>
<td>939 (28.0)</td>
<td>1281 (31.9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>323 (48.6)</td>
<td>2413 (72.0)</td>
<td>2736 (68.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current health status</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very poor/poor</td>
<td>63 (9.2)</td>
<td>339 (9.9)</td>
<td>402 (9.8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>345 (50.7)</td>
<td>1724 (50.3)</td>
<td>2070 (50.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very good/excellent</td>
<td>274 (40.2)</td>
<td>1364 (39.8)</td>
<td>1638 (39.9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tracking health measures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual self-tracking</td>
<td>307 (45.0)</td>
<td>744 (21.7)</td>
<td>1051 (25.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic self-tracking</td>
<td>121 (17.8)</td>
<td>1547 (45.1)</td>
<td>1668 (40.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No self-tracking</td>
<td>254 (37.2)</td>
<td>1135 (33.1)</td>
<td>1389 (33.8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Atlantic provinces include Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, New Foundland and Labrador, and Prince Edward Island; Prairies include Manitoba and Saskatchewan; Territories include Nunavut, Yukon, and Northwest territories.*
Significant differences were observed between seniors and the general population on all variables except for “Current health status” and the “Highest level of education”.

There were 5 and 55 nonrespondent in the older adult group and the general population, respectively.

There were 125 and 496 nonrespondents in the older adult group and the general adult population, respectively. All income data are provided in Canadian dollars (CAD $1=US $1.31).

There were 17 and 75 nonrespondents in the older adult group and the general adult population, respectively.

When comparing the older adult population with the general adult population, significant differences were observed in all the characteristics, with the exception of education level and reported health status; comparable educational levels were noted in the 2 groups and the perceived health status was reported as good-to-excellent in both groups. Compared to the general adult population, the older adult population had a larger number of men, who were retired, and had an annual income below CAD $60K. Of the 682 older adults, 342 (50.1%) indicated having one or more chronic conditions compared to 939 (27.4%) respondents of the total general adult population of 3427. Among the 62.8% (428/682) of the older adults who reported self-tracking of their health, 17.7% (121/682) did so electronically (digital trackers) compared to 45.1% (1547/3426) in the general adult population. The majority of the older adults reported tracking their health parameters manually (traditional trackers).

Table 2 shows significant differences between the older adult population and the general adult population in terms of internet and smart technology use. Of the 682 older adults, 323 (47.3%) and 340 (49.8%) reported using a smartphone and a digital tablet, respectively, as compared to 2887 (84.2%) and 2337 (68.2%) respondents of the 3427 respondents in the general adult population. Among the 463 older adults using smartphones/digital tablets (out of 682 participating in this study), only 91 respondents (19.6%) downloaded ≥1 mobile apps and 314 (67.8%) indicated accessing the internet on a daily basis versus 45.6% (1406/3082) and 87.9% (2709/3082) in the general adult population, respectively. When asked about their familiarity with smart devices/wearables for health, 82.7% of the older respondents (383/463) indicated hearing of these technologies, but only 32.1% of the older adults (123/383) were somewhat familiar or very familiar with them.

Table 2. Comparison of the internet and mobile health technology use of the older adults with that of the general adult population.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use of internet and mobile health technology</th>
<th>Older population</th>
<th>General population</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using a smartphone</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, n (%)</td>
<td>323 (47.4)</td>
<td>2887 (84.2)</td>
<td>3210</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, n (%)</td>
<td>359 (52.6)</td>
<td>540 (15.8)</td>
<td>899</td>
<td>21.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using a digital tablet</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, n (%)</td>
<td>340 (49.9)</td>
<td>1997 (58.3)</td>
<td>2337</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, n (%)</td>
<td>342 (50.1)</td>
<td>1429 (41.7)</td>
<td>1772</td>
<td>43.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accessing internet using smartphone/digital tablet</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never, n (%)</td>
<td>52 (11.2)</td>
<td>89 (2.9)</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than daily, n (%)</td>
<td>97 (21.0)</td>
<td>284 (9.2)</td>
<td>381</td>
<td>10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily, n (%)</td>
<td>314 (67.8)</td>
<td>2709 (87.9)</td>
<td>3023</td>
<td>85.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Downloaded ≥1 mobile apps on smartphone/digital tablet</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, n (%)</td>
<td>91 (19.6)</td>
<td>1406 (45.6)</td>
<td>1497</td>
<td>42.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, n (%)</td>
<td>372 (80.3)</td>
<td>1676 (54.4)</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>57.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heard of smart devices/wearables for health</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, n (%)</td>
<td>383 (82.7)</td>
<td>2667 (86.5)</td>
<td>3050</td>
<td>86.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, n (%)</td>
<td>80 (17.3)</td>
<td>415 (13.5)</td>
<td>495</td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Familiarity with smart devices/wearables for health</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slightly familiar, n (%)</td>
<td>260 (67.9)</td>
<td>1227 (46.0)</td>
<td>1487</td>
<td>48.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somewhat familiar, n (%)</td>
<td>103 (26.9)</td>
<td>973 (36.5)</td>
<td>1076</td>
<td>35.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very familiar, n (%)</td>
<td>20 (5.2)</td>
<td>467 (17.5)</td>
<td>487</td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The total values in the rows indicate the number of respondents for that category, which may be lower than the total number of older adults and the general adult population.
Mobile Apps for Health and Well-being

Table 3 compares the use of mobile apps for health/well-being between the older adult population and the general adult population. Among the 91 older adults who downloaded ≥1 mobile apps (presented in Table 2), 78 respondents (86%) indicated having used mobile apps for health/well-being in the last 3 months, which is comparable to that of the general population (1257/1406 respondents, ie, 89.4%). No significant differences were noted in relation to the number of mobile apps for health used nor in the extent of data sharing between the 2 groups. Among the 30 older adults that reported sharing data, 21 respondents (70%) indicated sharing data with family members, and 4 respondents (13%) reported sharing data with their friends and doctors. Interestingly, 38% of the older adults (29/77) reported using these mobile apps for 1-2 years as compared to 22.1% in the general population (269/1219). However, it is important to note that no significant differences were observed between the older adults and the general population who used mobile apps for health in the factors that affect their use (ie, perceived ease of use, perceived usefulness, and expectation confirmation). The overall satisfaction and intention to continue using mobile apps were favorable in both groups.

Table 3. Comparison of the use and perceptions of mobile apps for health between older adults who indicated downloading these apps and their counterparts in the general adult population.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use and perceptions</th>
<th>Older population</th>
<th>General population</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mobile apps for health/well-being used (last 3 months)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>1257</td>
<td>1335</td>
<td>.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 app, n (%)</td>
<td>40 (51)</td>
<td>514 (40.9)</td>
<td>554 (41.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 apps, n (%)</td>
<td>26 (33)</td>
<td>406 (32.3)</td>
<td>432 (32.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥3 apps, n (%)</td>
<td>12 (15)</td>
<td>337 (26.8)</td>
<td>349 (26.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of use of mobile health/well-being apps&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>1219</td>
<td>1296</td>
<td>.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1 year, n (%)</td>
<td>39 (51)</td>
<td>790 (64.8)</td>
<td>829 (64.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2 years, n (%)</td>
<td>29 (38)</td>
<td>269 (22.1)</td>
<td>298 (23.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;2 years, n (%)</td>
<td>9 (12)</td>
<td>160 (13.1)</td>
<td>169 (13.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing of health/well-being data from apps&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>1238</td>
<td>1315</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, n (%)</td>
<td>30 (39)</td>
<td>436 (35.2)</td>
<td>466 (35.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, n (%)</td>
<td>47 (61)</td>
<td>802 (64.8)</td>
<td>849 (64.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satisfaction with mobile apps, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.79 (1.67-5)</td>
<td>3.78 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.70 (1-5)</td>
<td>.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ease of use, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.00 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.95 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.95 (1-5)</td>
<td>.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expectation confirmation, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.74 (1.67-5)</td>
<td>3.60 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.61 (1-5)</td>
<td>.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived usefulness, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.59 (1.25-5)</td>
<td>3.56 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.56 (1-5)</td>
<td>.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intention to continue using mobile apps, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.97 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.91 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.92 (1-5)</td>
<td>.61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The total values in the rows indicate the number of respondents for that category, which may be lower than the total number of older adults and the general adult population.

<sup>b</sup>The means represent the average of 4 questions that constitute each scale (satisfaction with mobile apps, ease of use, expectation confirmation, perceived usefulness, and intention to continue using mobile apps). Continuous variables were measured on a 5-point Likert scale.

Smart Devices/Wearables for Health

Among the 383 older adults in the sample who had heard of smart devices/wearables (as presented in Table 2), 47 respondents (12.2%) reported having ≥1 smart devices and indicated currently using them, while another 35 respondents (9.1%) reported having these devices but not using them; the remaining 78.6% (302/383) indicated not having smart devices/wearables. The majority of the older adults had only 1 device as opposed to the general adult population with more respondents indicating having 2 or more devices (see Table 4), and the most common type of smart devices/wearables used was bracelet/wristband watches.
Table 4. Comparison of the use of smart devices/wearables for health between older adults who own these devices and their counterparts in the general adult population.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use and perceptions</th>
<th>Older population</th>
<th>General population</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Having ≥1 smart device/wearables for health, n (%)</strong>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, and use them</td>
<td>47 (12.2)</td>
<td>533 (20.0)</td>
<td>580 (19.0)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, and stopped using them</td>
<td>24 (6.3)</td>
<td>236 (8.9)</td>
<td>260 (8.5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, and never used them</td>
<td>11 (2.8)</td>
<td>164 (6.1)</td>
<td>175 (5.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>302 (78.6)</td>
<td>1734 (65.0)</td>
<td>2036 (66.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of smart devices or wearables owned, n (%)</strong>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>39 (83)</td>
<td>368 (69.3)</td>
<td>407 (70.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥2</td>
<td>8 (17)</td>
<td>163 (30.7)</td>
<td>171 (29.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duration of use of smart devices/wearables, n (%)</strong>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1 year</td>
<td>19 (42)</td>
<td>297 (56.0)</td>
<td>316 (55.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2 years</td>
<td>18 (40)</td>
<td>153 (28.9)</td>
<td>171 (29.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;2 years</td>
<td>8 (18)</td>
<td>80 (15.1)</td>
<td>88 (15.3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use of smart devices/wearables in partnership with health care provider, n (%)</strong>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3 (7)</td>
<td>73 (13.7)</td>
<td>76 (13.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>43 (94)</td>
<td>460 (86.3)</td>
<td>503 (86.9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Satisfaction with smart devices/wearables, mean (min-max)</strong>&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ease of use, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.20 (2-5)</td>
<td>4.21 (1-5)</td>
<td>4.21 (1-5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expectation confirmation, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.78 (1.67-5)</td>
<td>3.89 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.88 (1-5)</td>
<td>.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived usefulness, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.66 (1.50-5)</td>
<td>3.82 (1-5)</td>
<td>3.80 (1-5)</td>
<td>.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intention to continue using smart devices/wearables, mean (min-max)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.22 (1-5)</td>
<td>4.26 (1-5)</td>
<td>4.25 (1-5)</td>
<td>.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The total values in the rows indicate the number of respondents for that category, which may be lower than the total number of older adults and the general adult population.

<sup>b</sup>The means represent the average of 4 questions that constitute each scale (satisfaction with mobile apps, ease of use, expectation confirmation, perceived usefulness, and intention to continue using mobile apps). Continuous variables were measured on a 5-point Likert scale.

When asked about the types of devices used, the answers also varied between the 2 groups. The most commonly reported devices were bracelets/wristbands. The adults in both the groups who reported using smart devices/wearables did not differ significantly in relation to the duration of use of these technologies and the extent of use in partnership with a health care provider, which was relatively low among the respondents, that is, 7% of the older adults (3/46) and 13.7% (73/530) of the general adult population. As in the case of mobile app use for health, no significant differences were observed in the factors that affect the use of smart devices/wearables (ie, perceived ease of use, perceived usefulness, and expectation confirmation) between the older adult and the general adult population. The overall satisfaction with and the intention to continue using these smart devices/wearables were high. The older adults who used wearables and smart devices reported being very satisfied (mean 4.1 on the 5-point Likert scale), perceived their devices to be user-friendly (mean 4.2), and had a firm intention to continue using them in the future (mean 4.2). Importantly, respondents perceived these devices as relatively useful. About 6 out of 10 users said that they maintained or improved their health status by using digital self-tracking devices. Approximately 66% (31/47) of the older adult users of smart devices/wearables reported they were more informed or more knowledgeable about their health condition due to the use of these devices. For their part, 53% (25/47) of the older adult users said they felt more confident taking care of their health or more autonomous in the management of their condition. Interestingly, feeling less anxious about one’s own health and having more informed discussions with a doctor were not perceived as major benefits among the older adult group.

Perception of Smart Devices and Self-tracking Behaviors Among Older Adults

Cronbach alpha was used to assess the reliability of the measures related to satisfaction and use of mHealth technologies, which were included in this study. The results (see Table 5) show that all the measures exceed the .70 threshold of statistical reliability.
significance [47]. The validity of the variables was also supported; the square root of the variance shared by each variable and its respective items (diagonal) was greater than the intercorrelations between the variables.

Table 5. Variance shared by the variables considered in this study.a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables</th>
<th>Number of items</th>
<th>Cronbach α</th>
<th>Perceived usefulness</th>
<th>Perceived ease of use</th>
<th>Confirmation of expectations</th>
<th>User satisfaction</th>
<th>Intention to continue usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perceived usefulness</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>.86</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.42b</td>
<td>0.79b</td>
<td>0.70b</td>
<td>0.71b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived ease of use</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>.88</td>
<td>.84</td>
<td>0.65b</td>
<td>0.62b</td>
<td>0.45b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirmation of expectations</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>.70</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.78b</td>
<td>0.63b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User satisfaction</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>.88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.74b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intention to continue usage</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>.93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aThe diagonal (italicized values in the table) refers to the square root of the variance shared by each variable and its respective items. The values off the diagonal refer to the intercorrelations between the variables. The values in the lower part of the table are a mirror of those in the upper part above the diagonal.

bThe correlation was significant at \( P < .01 \).

Partial least squares regression analyses that were performed to test the associations between satisfaction, initial expectations, and intention to continue using smart devices/wearables (Figure 1) showed that all relationships but one were supported, and the model explained 60% of the variance in the dependent variable. These results indicate that expectation confirmation is strongly related to ease of use, perceived usefulness, and user satisfaction, which in turn affect the older adults’ intentions to continue using these mHealth technologies.

Figure 1. Results of the partial least squares regression analyses that were performed to test the associations between satisfaction, initial expectations, and intention to continue using smart devices/wearables. * \( P < .05 \); ** \( P < .01 \); *** \( P < .005 \); ns: nonsignificant.

Last, a multinomial logistic regression, including sociodemographic and health status variables, was performed to calculate the odds ratios describing the odds of tracking one’s own health using traditional or digital devices compared with the odds of nontracking (reference category) among the older adult group. The traditional .05 criterion of statistical significance was employed for all tests. Addition of the predictors to a model that contained only the intercept significantly improved the fit between model and data; \( \chi^2_{34}(n=682)=49.46, \text{Nagelkerke } R^2=0.11, P<.01 \).

As indicated in Table 6, our analyses showed no statistically significant differences between the groups (traditional trackers, digital trackers, and nontrackers) in terms of gender, education level, occupation, and perceived health condition. However, significant differences were observed in terms of region (\( P=.005 \) and \( P=.03 \) for traditional trackers and digital trackers, respectively, in Alberta) and chronic conditions (\( P<.001 \) and \( P=.003 \) for traditional trackers and digital trackers, respectively). Older adults living in the province of Alberta were 4.9 times more likely to be in the digital self-tracking group than the older adults living in other Canadian regions. Compared with older adults living with no chronic condition, older adults with chronic conditions were 0.4 times less likely to be digital self-trackers.
Table 6. Multinomial logistic regression results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Traditional trackers, n=307</th>
<th>Digital trackers, n=121</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OR(^b) (95% CI)</td>
<td>P value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercept</td>
<td>N/A(^c)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>1.176 (0.761-1.817)</td>
<td>.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Region</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic provinces</td>
<td>1.342 (0.582-3.094)</td>
<td>.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quebec</td>
<td>1.896 (0.983-3.658)</td>
<td>.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ontario</td>
<td>1.503 (0.828-2.729)</td>
<td>.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prairies</td>
<td>1.270 (0.487-3.309)</td>
<td>.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alberta</td>
<td>6.053 (1.719-21.312)</td>
<td>.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary and secondary school</td>
<td>1.064 (0.539-2.102)</td>
<td>.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>College/CEGEP</td>
<td>1.371 (0.686-2.738)</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>University undergraduate</td>
<td>1.270 (0.675-2.392)</td>
<td>.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-time employment</td>
<td>1.078 (0.181-6.422)</td>
<td>.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part-time employment</td>
<td>1.972 (0.342-11.375)</td>
<td>.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired</td>
<td>1.596 (0.333-7.649)</td>
<td>.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perceived health condition</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very poor/ poor</td>
<td>0.524 (0.240-1.14)</td>
<td>.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fair or good</td>
<td>1.094 (0.692-1.730)</td>
<td>.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥1 chronic disease(s)</td>
<td>0.439 (0.281-0.686)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Reference category: nontrackers (n=254).
\(^b\)OR: odds ratio.
\(^c\)N/A: not applicable.

**Discussion**

**Study Relevance**

This study investigates older adults’ use of mHealth technologies in comparison to that of the general adult population and assesses the pattern of use of these technologies for self-tracking purposes. The surveyed older adult population differed significantly from the general population in relation to the sociodemographic variables. This stresses the importance of having a closer examination of older adults’ use of mHealth technologies for self-tracking purposes separately from the general adult population, which would inform future research, practice, and policy efforts in this area.

**Principal Findings**

Although there were significant differences between older adults and the general adult population in the use of internet and smart technology, a considerable number of older adults reported using them. Specifically, 47.3% (323/682) and 49.8% (340/682) of the older population (65 years and older) reported using a smartphone or a digital tablet, respectively, and 67.8% (314/463) indicated accessing the internet on a daily basis. A large number of Canadian older adults in the community have already acquired these technologies, which presents an opportunity to leverage them beyond basic communication use to support their well-being by enhancing social connectedness and improving the management of their health conditions [48,49].

Despite the comparable good-to-excellent health status reported by older adults and the general adult population, the prevalence of chronic conditions was significantly higher among the older adult group compared to that among the general adult population (\(P<.001\)), which necessitates close monitoring and management of their health and conditions. Therefore, it is important to leverage existing technologies that can support their health and well-being needs in the community and potentially connect them with caregivers and health care providers. This is particularly relevant in relation to wearables (eg, wristbands, pedometers) and mobile apps that allow users to store and monitor health-related data. Prior research has discussed the important role of technology to support the ability of older adults to remain at home, improve their quality of life and health outcomes, and enhance family caregivers’ and health care providers’ experiences.
professionals' access to relevant information [16,50]. This is in line with the findings of this study that showed a high satisfaction rate with mHealth technologies and favorable conditions for their use.

Nevertheless, this study demonstrates that the potential of mHealth technologies for self-tracking purposes has not been fully captured yet in the context of older adults. Although 62.8% (428/682) of the older adults reported tracking their health measures, the majority did so manually, which may compromise the process, given the risk of losing information and the difficulty in sharing it with health care providers and caregivers. This considerable number of older adults tracking their health measures is indicative of the need and interest among this group to monitor their health. In the absence of the widespread use of personal health records, older adults do not have options for tracking and monitoring their health status but through their own initiative; as such, many seem to resort to the traditional manual recording of their health. This may be an indication of limited knowledge that they may have on mHealth technologies and how they work or a lack of funding and incentives to acquire and use these technologies (ie, from the health care providers, government, and caregivers). Surprisingly though, older adults with one or more chronic conditions appeared to be mostly nontrackers, which raises concerns as to the extent to which mHealth technologies are indeed benefitting the older adults most in need of them.

In light of these findings, it is critical to develop strategies to enhance older adults’ awareness and knowledge of the existing mHealth technologies available at their disposal and how to use them and encourage family physicians and allied health professionals to communicate about these options with them. In addition, it is equally important to understand older adults’ priorities and self-tracking needs in order to offer technologies suitable to address these needs [32]. This is particularly relevant in light of recent studies in other countries showing that older adults’ acceptance of mobile apps can be improved by informing them about the potential benefits of these technologies [51] and that older adults agree to share collected data through in-home monitoring and sensors with professional caregivers and demand participation in decisions about technology [52].

Interestingly, the majority of the mobile apps downloaded by the surveyed older adults consisted of apps used for health and well-being, reflecting a “targeted” use of these technologies by older adults. Around half of the older adults who reported mobile app use in the past 3 months specified using 2 or more of these apps. This is indicative of the perceived benefits of these technologies by older adults and can also reveal a level of comfort and interest in the use of these mobile apps over time. Once older adults start using mobile apps for health, their interest and willingness to use more than one mobile app over a long period of time was confirmed (Table 3 shows higher proportion of older adults reporting >1-year use compared to the general population). Future studies should investigate the motivating factors that facilitate their embracement of mHealth technologies to develop strategies that would enable a broader range of older adults to benefit from them.

It is also important to note that a low proportion of respondents among the older adults and in the general population, that is, 39% (30/77) and 35.2% (436/1238), respectively, indicated either sharing data from mobile apps or using smart devices/wearables in partnership with health care providers. Hence, it appears to be a disconnect between the actual needs and willingness of the older adults in the community to use mHealth technologies and the ability and readiness of health care providers to leverage these tools to support the care provided for these individuals. Despite previous efforts to explore the factors that affect health information technology adoption by older adults in the community [26], we have very limited information about the facilitators and barriers that play a role in bridging this disconnect and enabling more optimal use of mHealth technologies for older adults’ care.

The partial least squares regression analyses confirmed that expectation confirmation is strongly related to ease of use, perceived usefulness, and user satisfaction. Hence, it is critical to adequately manage older adults’ initial expectations to ensure greater adherence and continued usage of wearables and smart devices. These initial expectations may be considered as the anchor for the subsequent behavior of older adults, and their acceptance and the use of these technologies, and which may be shaped by the environment in which they live. Caregivers and family members, peers, as well as health care providers can play a significant role in shaping these initial expectations and the subsequent benefits that older adults may reap out of using these technologies. Interestingly, the results of this study show that older adults living in Alberta were 4.9 times more likely to be in the digital self-tracking group compared to older adults in other regions. Alberta is a province known to attract young families and is known for its highest rate of workforce growth. This may have implications for older adults living in this province who are surrounded by a younger population heavily immersed in technology and who may have expectations in relation to the role of mHealth technologies in the care for their older persons.

A culture shift in the provision of care to Canadian older adults living in the community is deemed necessary in order to keep up with the development of mHealth technologies and the changing demographics and expectations of patients and their caregivers. This is particularly important in light of the results in this study that show that older adults living with chronic conditions are 0.4 times less likely to be digital self-trackers. This is a “missed opportunity” at the community level as the individuals who may benefit most from mHealth technologies (ie, older adults with chronic conditions) do not seem to be actually using them. Given this state, how can we make this leap and paradigm shift? Evidently, this shift cannot come along without paralleled changes at the health system level in relation to existing policies, reimbursement modalities, and the structure of health care services delivery. In order to optimize the use of mHealth technologies to support older persons in the community, who need and are capable of using them, it is important that health care providers integrate data gathered through these smart devices in the delivery of care to them.

With the recent COVID-19 crisis, we have seen a rapid uptake of virtual care worldwide, which has been catalyzed by a dire
need to provide “remote care” to a vulnerable population (ie, older adults) and a facilitated reimbursement approach. For example, as of May 1, 2020, the Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care in the province of Ontario, one of the largest health jurisdictions in Canada, implemented new temporary fee schedule codes that cover virtual assessments and provision of services [53]. Despite this agile adaptation during the time of crisis, it is equally important to develop long-term plans to leverage technologies to support the care for Canadian older adults, which may require reforms at the health system level.

Before the COVID-19 crisis, we had started to witness unconventional changes in this area in some Canadian provinces with initiatives that allowed patients to leverage wearables and smart devices to support their health. Alberta, for example, had released a personal health record initiative allowing patients to collect and store their own health data by using wearables and smart medical devices and manage authorizations for accessing these data. Other provinces, including Quebec, Nova Scotia, and Saskatchewan, are following this lead with health information portals giving patients more access and control over their health data. These initiatives are promising; however, they have to be paralleled and supported by changes at the policy and reimbursement levels to close the loop and encourage health care providers to endorse new technologies as integrated components in the delivery of health services for older adults and enablers for improved quality of care.

It is worth noting that the consistent high satisfaction of older adults with mobile apps and smart devices/wearables and their intention to continue using them is a positive indication of the evolving expectations of the older adult population and a potential game changer for the future of care for older adults. The results of this study confirm that once mobile apps and smart devices/wearables are used, the perceived ease of use and usefulness of these technologies do not vary by age of the users. As the older adult population continues to grow to include people currently still in the workforce and using technology in their daily lives (eg, mobile apps, smart devices), the demand for more connectedness with health care providers and better response from the health care system in a networked society will likely increase.

**Limitations and Future Research**

This study presents contributions to an underresearched area on older adults and mHealth technology use. These findings are the first step toward understanding the behaviors and attitudes of older adults toward these technologies. By unveiling the actual prevalence of mHealth technology use among the Canadian older adult population and exploring their familiarity and satisfaction with these technologies, we set the stage for future research to investigate the optimal environment and predictors for their effective use [54].

At present, there are still significant differences between older adults and the general adult population in relation to the use of mHealth technologies. This necessitates a particular focus on older adults in future studies in order to better understand the needs and perceived facilitators and barriers for the use of these technologies this group. However, interestingly, both groups considered in this study demonstrated similarities in terms of limited current use of mobile apps and wearable devices for sharing data in partnership with health care providers. This calls for future research, which extends to the whole population, to better understand the underlying reasons and challenges in this area and study the feasibility and readiness of health care providers to leverage these tools to support the care that they provided to their patients.

Last, it is important to note some limitations associated with the study design and breadth of data. The data set used in this study is from a single country, thereby limiting the generalizability of the findings. In addition, the web-based survey was completed by respondents who had access to the internet, which may preclude representativeness of potential respondents with no internet access. Given the cross-sectional nature of the survey, a full assessment of the predictors of older adults’ use of mHealth technologies as well as an evaluation of the variation in their behaviors over time, especially in relation to changes in their health conditions, was not feasible. Furthermore, given the exploratory nature of the study and the focus on mobile apps and smart devices/wearables, limited data were collected on the functional ability of the older adults, their level of independence and health condition, and other sociodemographic characteristics that may play a role in shaping their use of these technologies. Future studies should take these factors into account to better understand the variation in the use of mHealth technologies by older adults in the community and determine the optimal conditions in which these technologies can best benefit them.

**Conclusion**

The burden of population aging and the associated chronic conditions is observed worldwide. Mobile technologies present an opportunity to address the challenges faced by older adults in relation to their health and the care that they receive. This study shows that a considerable number of older adults are familiar with and use these technologies. Importantly, older adults who use mHealth technologies are highly satisfied with them and plan to continue using them in the future. Understanding why older adults who are familiar with mHealth technologies are not using them would inform progress in this area. In particular, leveraging these mHealth technologies for older adults who need and may benefit from them, in partnership with family physicians and allied health care professionals remains very limited at present. The current development and deployment of various personal health record initiatives in Canada appear as a promising avenue to facilitate bidirectional health information exchanges between health care providers and patients, including older adults.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.
References


42. Eysenbach G. Improving the quality of Web surveys: the Checklist for Reporting Results of Internet E-Surveys (CHERRIES). J Med Internet Res 2004 Sep 29;6(3):e34 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.6.3.e34] [Medline: 15471760]

43. Eysenbach G. Improving the quality of Web surveys: the Checklist for Reporting Results of Internet E-Surveys (CHERRIES). J Med Internet Res 2004 Sep 29;6(3):e34 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.6.3.e34] [Medline: 15471760]

44. Eysenbach G. Improving the quality of Web surveys: the Checklist for Reporting Results of Internet E-Surveys (CHERRIES). J Med Internet Res 2004 Sep 29;6(3):e34 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.6.3.e34] [Medline: 15471760]

45. Eysenbach G. Improving the quality of Web surveys: the Checklist for Reporting Results of Internet E-Surveys (CHERRIES). J Med Internet Res 2004 Sep 29;6(3):e34 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.2196/jmir.6.3.e34] [Medline: 15471760]


Abbreviations

mHealth: mobile health

©Mirou Jaana, Guy Paré. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 27.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Once Daily Versus Overnight and Symptom Versus Physiological Monitoring to Detect Exacerbations of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease: Pilot Randomized Controlled Trial

Ahmed M Al Rajeh1, BSc, MSc, PhD; Yousef Saad Aldabayan1, BSc, MSc, PhD; Abdulaleah Aldhahir2,3, BSc, MSc, PhD; Elisha Pickett4, BSc, MSc; Shumonta Quaderi2, BSc, MBBS; Jaber S Alqahtani2,5, BSc, MSc; Swapna Mandal2,4, BSc, MBBS, PhD; John R Hurst2,4, BSc, MBBS, PhD

1Department of respiratory care, King Faisal University, Al-Ahsa, Saudi Arabia
2UCL Respiratory, University College London, London, United Kingdom
3Respiratory Care Department, Faculty of Applied Medical Sciences, Jazan University, Jazan, Saudi Arabia
4Department of respiratory medicine, Royal Free London NHS Foundation Trust, London, United Kingdom
5Department of Respiratory Care, Prince Sultan Military College of Health Sciences, Dammam, Saudi Arabia

Corresponding Author:
John R Hurst, BSc, MBBS, PhD
UCL Respiratory
University College London
Gower Street
London, WC1E 6BT
United Kingdom
Phone: 44 20 7679 2000
Email: j.hurst@ucl.ac.uk

Abstract

Background: Earlier detection of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) exacerbations may facilitate more rapid treatment with reduced risk of hospitalization. Changes in pulse oximetry may permit early detection of exacerbations. We hypothesized that overnight pulse oximetry would be superior to once-daily monitoring for the early detection of exacerbations.

Objective: This study aims to evaluate whether measuring changes in heart rate and oxygen saturation overnight is superior to once-daily monitoring of both parameters and to assess symptom changes in facilitating earlier detection of COPD exacerbations.

Methods: A total of 83 patients with COPD were randomized to once-daily or overnight pulse oximetry. Both groups completed the COPD assessment test questionnaire daily. The baseline mean and SD for each pulse oximetry variable were calculated from 14 days of stable monitoring. Changes in exacerbation were expressed as Z scores from this baseline.

Results: The mean age of the patients was 70.6 (SD 8.1) years, 52% (43/83) were female, and the mean FEV1 was 53.0% (SD 18.5%) predicted. Of the 83 patients, 27 experienced an exacerbation. Symptoms were significantly elevated above baseline from 5 days before to 12 days after treatment initiation. Day-to-day variation in pulse oximetry during the stable state was significantly less in the overnight group than in the once-daily group. There were greater relative changes at exacerbation in heart rate than oxygen saturation. An overnight composite score of change in heart rate and oxygen saturation changed significantly from 7 days before initiation of treatment for exacerbation and had a positive predictive value for exacerbation of 91.2%. However, this was not statistically better than examining changes in symptoms alone.

Conclusions: Overnight pulse oximetry permits earlier detection of COPD exacerbations compared with once-daily monitoring. Monitoring physiological variables was not superior to monitoring symptoms, and the latter would be a simpler approach, except where there is a need for objective verification of exacerbations.

Trial Registration: ClinicalTrials.gov NCT03003702; https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT03003702

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e17597) doi:10.2196/17597

KEYWORDS
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; exacerbations; telehealth; CAT; heart rate; oxygen saturation
Introduction

Background

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is a major global health problem. The World Health Organization estimated the global prevalence in 2016 to be 251 million cases, and COPD is ranked as the fifth leading cause of death [1]. COPD is predicted to become the third most common cause of death by 2030 [2]. Individuals with COPD experience acute deteriorations in respiratory health called exacerbations [3], which profoundly affect quality of life and can lead to hospital admission [4]. Prevention and mitigation of exacerbations is a key goal in managing COPD. One method that might improve COPD outcomes is the early identification of exacerbations. Prompt access to therapy at exacerbation onset is associated with faster symptom recovery [5]. Delay in accessing care may be because of the difficulty in differentiating day-to-day symptom variations from exacerbations [6]. Therefore, there has been interest in the utility of monitoring physiological variables to support the earlier detection of exacerbations [7]. Early objective identification of exacerbations would also be of value in research.

The utility of measuring physiological variables to detect COPD exacerbations remains unclear [8]. In our 2010 pilot study, we combined daily monitoring of symptoms, heart rate, and oxygen saturation [9]. A composite score created from these variables changed significantly just before exacerbation onset and could be used to monitor recovery. Measurements of heart rate and oxygen saturation in this study were taken once daily, and one-off readings could be affected by non-exacerbation-related factors such as exercise, medication, and anxiety. We hypothesized that monitoring patients’ pulse oximetry overnight and removing the effects of non-exacerbation-related factors would provide earlier exacerbation detection.

Objectives

This study aims to evaluate whether measuring changes in heart rate and oxygen saturation overnight is superior to once-daily monitoring of both parameters and to assess symptom changes in facilitating earlier detection of COPD exacerbations.

Methods

Participants and Recruitment

Participants in COPD clinics and pulmonary rehabilitation classes were approached between September 2016 and January 2018 at 3 different sites in London, United Kingdom. Ethical approval was obtained from the local committee at the Royal Free Hospital and the UK Health Research Authority (16/LO/1120). The study was registered at ClinicalTrials.gov (NCT03003702). All the participants provided written informed consent. The inclusion criteria were a confirmed diagnosis of COPD (smoking history ≥10 pack years and postbronchodilator forced expiratory volume in one second/forced vital capacity FEV1/FVC<0.7), one or more self-reported moderate or severe COPD exacerbations in the previous 12 months, and the ability to use study equipment and attend appointments. The exclusion criteria were an existing diagnosis of obstructive sleep apnea (either self-reported or resulting from STOP-Bang or Epworth questionnaires [10,11]) and significant comorbidity preventing participation (such as poor peripheral perfusion).

Study Procedures

At recruitment, we collected demographic and clinical data and performed postbronchodilator spirometry (FEV1 and FVC). Subjects were randomized using sealed envelopes; each envelope contained a card indicating once-daily or overnight measurement. The researcher instructed the participants on how to use the pulse oximetry equipment based on their allocation. Wristband pulse oximeter (Nonin 3150) for overnight monitoring (measurement recorded every 4s), or finger pulse oximeter (Nonin G92) for once-daily (morning) monitoring. Patients were also instructed on the use of a peak expiratory flow (PEF) meter and the Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease assessment test (CAT) questionnaire, and how to record the results on a diary card. Subjects were monitored for 6 months or until they recovered from the first exacerbation (whichever was earlier).

Data recorded in the first week were not included in the analysis. During the subsequent 2 weeks (the stable state), participants were closely monitored to ensure they were using the equipment properly and recording data accurately. Participants were then instructed to call the researcher if they developed an exacerbation or if they developed any medical problem resulting in hospitalization. Monitoring was continued through the exacerbation until clinical recovery, at which point the equipment was returned and participation was complete. The equipment was removed, and the study was completed for any participant who did not develop an exacerbation within 6 months. In the absence of an exacerbation, in-person visits were scheduled at 2 weeks, 3 months, and 6 months. An exacerbation was defined as the need for oral corticosteroids or antibiotics, as judged by the patient’s clinician or self-management plan.

At the end of the study, a 10-question acceptability survey was administered to participants allocated to the overnight monitoring group to evaluate their acceptance of continuous overnight pulse oximetry monitoring. The questionnaire covered willingness to use the monitoring equipment, effect on sleep quality, and convenience of the device. The highest possible score was 90 (the higher the score, the greater the acceptance).

Pulse Oximeter

Participants allocated to the overnight monitoring (Nonin3150 pulse oximeter) group were instructed to wear the device at night before sleeping and to remove it as soon as they woke up (confirmed by the daily date and time stamp from the device and then compared with the date on the diary card).

Participants allocated to the once-daily (morning) monitoring (Nonin G92 pulse oximeter) group were instructed to take their measurements before morning medication, after 10 min of rest, and with the measurement recorded after 10 seconds of using the device.

The accuracies of Nonin G92 and Nonin 3150 were assessed by the manufacturer. The devices comply with ISO 80601-2-61 and have a stated accuracy of 70% to 100% SpO2 (SD 2%) [12,13].
Power Calculation

The primary outcome was the difference in time to receive treatment from symptoms (CAT score) exceeding baseline compared with pulse oximetry exceeding baseline. A power calculation based on 2 previous data sets [11,14] suggested that 64 patients with COPD were required to capture 44 COPD exacerbations.

Statistical Analysis

Data collected from each participant were reviewed by a respiratory therapist. Participants who had less than 2 weeks of data during the stable state were excluded from the analysis. Participants with 2 or more consecutive days of missing data during the preexacerbation phase (2 weeks before exacerbation) were excluded. Normally distributed data are reported as mean (SD) and nonparametric data as median (IQR). Groups were compared using the t test, Mann-Whitney U test, or Chi-square test as appropriate, and relationships between variables were assessed using the Pearson or Spearman Rank coefficient. Analysis of variance (ANOVA) and Kruskal-Wallis tests were used to assess the differences between 3 different periods (stable state, preexacerbation treatment, and post exacerbation). The baseline (stable state) for each patient was set by calculating the mean and SD over 2 weeks for each variable (average for each day for 14 days). Data were converted to Z score values by subtracting each measure (average per day [X]) from the corresponding mean baseline value (x) and dividing by the baseline SD as follows: \[ Z = \frac{X - \mu}{\sigma} \]. Any variable outside the 95% CI of the baseline mean (1.96 SD) was considered statistically significant at \( P < 0.05 \).

We calculated sensitivity, specificity, and positive predictive values by examining changes in heart rate, oxygen saturation, and peak flow in a second 2-week period when the patient was stable (not the same stable period as used to calculate the baseline).

The acceptability score is presented as mean (SD). Univariate and multivariate linear regression analyses were applied to identify patient characteristics associated with the acceptability of overnight home pulse oximetry.

Results

Patient Characteristics

The study flowchart is shown in Figure 1. In total, we approached 186 patients with COPD for participation in the study, and 47.3% (88/186) agreed. Thus, 88 patients with COPD were recruited and randomized to either the once daily or continuous overnight monitoring groups. Of the 88 patients, 5 patients from the overnight group were subsequently excluded from the study because they later required oxygen therapy or were diagnosed with obstructive sleep apnea. Overall, 16 and 18 patients, respectively, in the overnight and once-daily groups completed follow-up, with 13 and 14 exacerbations available for analysis, respectively.

The baseline characteristics of the 83 patients who received their allocated intervention are presented in Table 1. The mean age was 70.6 (SD 8.1) years, 52% (43/83) were female, and the mean percentage FEV\(_1\) was 53.0% (SD 18.5%). A majority of the patients were ex-smokers 77% (64/83). The median (IQR) number of COPD exacerbations within the past 12 months was 2.0 (1.0–3.0). We had a higher-than-anticipated dropout rate of 59%, as discussed below. Table 1 also reports the baseline data from the 27 patients in whom exacerbations were successfully monitored. No statistically significant differences were found between the once-daily and the overnight groups, suggesting that the groups were similar at baseline. The successfully monitored participants were also generally similar to the patients who had dropped out of the study.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17597
Figure 1. CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) flow diagram. OSA: obstructive sleep apnea; $O_2$: oxygen.
Table 1. Patient demographics and clinical measures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>All patients (n=83)</th>
<th>Once-daily arm (n=14)</th>
<th>Overnight arm (n=13)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>70.6 (8.1)</td>
<td>72.2 (2.6)</td>
<td>70.7 (2.9)</td>
<td>.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender (Female), n %</td>
<td>43 (52)</td>
<td>10 (71)</td>
<td>6 (46)</td>
<td>.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²), mean (SD)</td>
<td>26.7 (5.9)</td>
<td>25.6 (1.4)</td>
<td>25.5 (1.9)</td>
<td>.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking status, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex-smoker</td>
<td>64 (77)</td>
<td>11 (79)</td>
<td>10 (77)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current smoker</td>
<td>19 (23)</td>
<td>3 (21)</td>
<td>3 (23)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live with someone? n (%)</td>
<td>43 (52)</td>
<td>7 (50)</td>
<td>8 (62)</td>
<td>.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV₁ L, mean (SD)</td>
<td>1.2 (0.4)</td>
<td>1.0 (0.3)</td>
<td>1.1 (0.5)</td>
<td>.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV₁%, mean (SD)</td>
<td>52.9 (18.6)</td>
<td>53.5 (17.7)</td>
<td>44.8 (18.2)</td>
<td>.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVC L, mean (SD)</td>
<td>2.6 (0.8)</td>
<td>2.3 (0.7)</td>
<td>2.5 (0.9)</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVC %, mean (SD)</td>
<td>83.7 (21.7)</td>
<td>82.9 (17.7)</td>
<td>77.8 (15.6)</td>
<td>.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV₁/FVC %, mean (SD)</td>
<td>51.9 (11.7)</td>
<td>52.6 (14.5)</td>
<td>50.8 (10.7)</td>
<td>.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC Breathlessness Score, mean (SD)</td>
<td>2.9 (0.8)</td>
<td>2.6 (0.2)</td>
<td>2.9 (0.2)</td>
<td>.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of exacerbation/previous year, median (IQR)</td>
<td>2 (1-3)</td>
<td>1.5 (1-2)</td>
<td>2.0 (1-3)</td>
<td>.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of hospitalization/previous year, median (IQR)</td>
<td>0 (0-0)</td>
<td>0 (0-0)</td>
<td>0 (0-0)</td>
<td>.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlson comorbidity index, mean (SD)</td>
<td>4.1 (1.2)</td>
<td>4.0 (0.3)</td>
<td>4.5 (0.2)</td>
<td>.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aBaseline data reported as mean (SD) or median (IQR) unless stated otherwise. P value is comparison between once-daily and overnight arms. Data analysis was performed using Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS), Version 24.

bFEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second.

cFVC: forced vital capacity.

Changes in Symptoms at Exacerbation of COPD

First, we examined changes in the CAT score to understand the symptom changes during exacerbations. Both groups measured the CAT score once each day, and therefore the data from both groups were combined. Figure 2 shows the CAT score from 2 weeks before exacerbation (day −1 to day −14), day 0 (defined as the start of treatment), and for 2 weeks subsequently, as the patient recovered (day 1 to day 13). Day −15 on the graph represents the mean of the stable period (2 weeks baseline monitoring, as described above).

The mean CAT score for the 27 patients with COPD at baseline was 15.6 (SD 0.4) points. Any score greater than or equal to 1.96 SD units away from the mean was considered statistically significant at P<.05. Figure 2 demonstrates that the CAT score crossed this statistical threshold from day −5 and did not return to baseline on day 13. The increase in CAT score was greatest on day 0 (the day of treatment initiation), with a maximum change of +6.2 SD (=7 points).

The minimal clinically important difference (MCID) for the CAT questionnaire is 2 points. The mean CAT score for the 27 patients with COPD increased above the MCID from day −5 (=18.3 points) to day 12 (=18.2 points). The difference in mean CAT scores between the 3 phases was statistically significant (stable state=15.6 points, pre exacerbation=17.4 points, post exacerbation=19.7 points, P<.001). Thus, patients had statistically and clinically elevated CAT scores from 5 days before receiving treatment for exacerbation to 12 days after treatment initiation. The variability of CAT score increased before exacerbation compared with baseline (SD 2.34 vs 1.46, P=.004). From this, we concluded that the exacerbations we detected had been associated with significant changes in symptoms and that it was appropriate to go on and examine changes in PEF and pulse oximetry.
Figure 2. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease assessment test score (green line) and peak expiratory flow (blue line) changes pre and post exacerbation in 27 patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The y-axis represents Z score relative to the patient’s baseline mean. The x-axis represents the time expressed in days. Day −15 is the mean of the stable period, days −14 to −1 is the preexacerbation period, day 0 is the day of initiation of treatment for exacerbation, and days 1 to 13 is the postexacerbation recovery period. The red lines represent the threshold limits of ±1.96 SD.

Changes in PEF at Exacerbation of COPD

Next, we examined changes in PEF to confirm that changes in symptoms were associated with changes in lung function. The mean PEF for the 27 patients with COPD (both groups) at baseline was 214 (SD 3.7) Lmin⁻¹. As illustrated in Figure 2, the PEF decreased gradually before the treatment of exacerbation and fell below 1.96 SD between day 0 and day 4, with the maximal change at day +1.

ANOVA analysis demonstrated a statistically (but not clinically) significant difference in PEF between the 3 different phases (stable state=213.8 Lmin⁻¹, pre exacerbation=201.6 Lmin⁻¹, post exacerbation=198.0 Lmin⁻¹, P=.001). Post hoc, the differences were significant between the stable phase vs preexacerbation periods (P=.02) and stable vs postexacerbation periods (P=.002). There was no difference in PEF variability between the stable and preexacerbation phases (13.81 vs 15.54 Lmin⁻¹, P=.49).

In summary, the exacerbations we captured were associated with typical changes in symptoms and PEF. We next went on to examine changes in the variables monitored differently between the 2 groups: heart rate and oxygen saturation.

Changes in Heart Rate at Exacerbation of COPD

Figure 3 shows the heart rate changes in the once-daily group (n=14) and the overnight group (n=13). The mean stable heart rate for the once-daily group was 77.1 (SD 3.6) beats min⁻¹. At no point did changes in heart rate in the once-daily group cross the threshold of greater or less than 1.96 SD units away from the stable mean. The maximum change occurred at day −1 (SD 1.7), representing an increase of 7 beats min⁻¹. An ANOVA test showed a statistically (but not clinically) significant difference between the 3 periods (stable state=77.1 beats min⁻¹, pre exacerbation=76.7 beats min⁻¹, post exacerbation=81.2 beats min⁻¹, P=.007). The difference was significant between post exacerbation vs the stable phase (P=.02) and post exacerbation vs pre exacerbation (P=.01). In the once daily group, the variability (SD) in heart rate did not differ between the baseline and preexacerbation phases (4.50 vs 5.50, P=.28).

The mean heart rate for the overnight group in the stable period was 70.0 (SD 1.8) beats min⁻¹. When compared with the once-daily group, the stable state SD in the overnight group was significantly smaller (1.8 vs 3.6 min⁻¹, P<.001). In the overnight group, the heart rate did cross the significance threshold and was consistently above this from day −5 to day 0 with a maximal increase of 10 beats min⁻¹ (at day −4, equivalent to 3.95 SD). There was a significant difference between the 3 periods (stable state=70.0 min⁻¹, pre exacerbation=73.9 min⁻¹, post exacerbation=67.6 min⁻¹, P=.001). The difference was significant between the preexacerbation period versus the stable state and preexacerbation vs postexacerbation phase (P=.04 and P=.001, respectively). Heart rate variability was statistically higher in the preexacerbation phase compared with baseline (7.00 vs 4.01 min⁻¹, P=.04).
Changes in Oxygen Saturation at Exacerbation of COPD

We next examined trends in oxygen saturation through the time course of an exacerbation. Figure 4 shows the SpO_2% variability in the once-daily measurement group (n=14) and the overnight measurement group (n=13). The mean oxygen saturation during the stable period in the once-daily group was 94.0% (SD 0.81%). SpO_2% variability remained within the stable range in the once-daily group with a maximum reduction of −1.80 SD (−2%) at day −1. There was no significant difference between the 3 periods (stable state=94.0%, pre exacerbation=93.9%, post exacerbation=93.2%, P=.09). Variability in the oxygen saturation signal between the stable and preexacerbation phases was not statistically significant (1.12 vs 1.53%, P=.13).

The mean oxygen saturation in the stable phase in the overnight group was 91.0% (SD 0.36%). When compared with the once-daily group, the stable state SD in the overnight group was smaller (0.36 vs 0.81% P=.002). The SpO_2% decreased more than 1.96 SD in the overnight group on 3 days: −7, −6, and −1 (−1.93 SD, −2.04 SD, and −2.25 SD, respectively), equivalent to a maximal reduction of 1.2%, but these changes did not occur over a consistent period. The means of the 3 phases (stable, 91.0%; pre exacerbation, 91.0%; and post exacerbation, 91.3%) were not statistically significant (P=.26) or clinically different. The variability (SD) of the oxygen saturation signal in the overnight group was not significantly different in the preexacerbation phase compared with baseline (1.13% vs 1.01%, P=.58).
Figure 4. Oxygen saturation changes pre and post exacerbation for the 27 patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The y-axis represents the Z score relative to the patient’s baseline mean. The x-axis represents the time expressed in days. Day −15 is the mean of the stable period, days −14 to −1 is the preexacerbation period, day 0 is the day of initiation of treatment for exacerbation, and days 1 to 13 is the postexacerbation recovery. The red line represents the threshold limit of +1.96 SD. The once-daily group is represented by the green line and the overnight group by the blue line.

Changes in a Composite Oximetry Score at Exacerbation of COPD

We have previously demonstrated that an exacerbation is typically associated with unidirectional changes in the pulse oximetry signal, specifically an increase in heart rate and a decrease in oxygen saturation, and demonstrated that a composite oximetry score calculated as \((Z_{HR} - Z_{SPO2})\) performs better at detecting changes at exacerbation than either variable alone [15]. Therefore, we proceeded to calculate this score for both groups. Figure 5 shows the composite score for the once-daily group (n=14) and the overnight group (n=13). In the once daily group, the composite score increased more than 1.96 SD away from the baseline mean on day −1 and day 0, with a maximum change of 3.58 SD at day −1. In contrast, in the overnight group, the composite score crossed the threshold consistently between days −7 and day 0, with a maximum change of 6.11 SD on day −1.

The composite score crossed the threshold for abnormality in 11 of 13 patients during the 2 weeks before the exacerbation. While examining the same patients in a 2-week period when stable, the score became abnormal at some point in 3 of 11 patients. Thus, the sensitivity, specificity, and positive predictive value of the score in detecting an exacerbation were 84.6%, 81.8%, and 91.7%, respectively. A summary of the results is provided in Table 2.
Figure 5. Composite pulse oximetry score changes pre and post exacerbation for the 27 patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The y-axis represents the Z score relative to the patient’s baseline mean. The x-axis represents the time expressed in days. Day $-15$ is the mean of the stable period, days $-14$ to $-1$ is the preexacerbation period, day 0 is the day of initiation of treatment for exacerbation, and days 1 to 13 is the postexacerbation recovery. The red line represents the threshold limit of $+1.96$ SD. The once-daily group is represented by the green line and the overnight group by the blue line.

Table 2. Summary table reporting the days when variables showed statistically significant variation from baseline based on a difference of 1.96 SD units or more away from the stable-state mean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Combined groups (n=27 patients)</th>
<th>Once-daily group (n=14)</th>
<th>Overnight group (n=13)</th>
<th>$P$ value$^a$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAT score</td>
<td>day $-5$ to day $+13$</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak expiratory flow</td>
<td>day 0 to day $+4$</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>None$^c$</td>
<td>day $-7$, $-5$ to day 0, and day $+2$</td>
<td>.007 (once daily group); .001 (overnight group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen saturation</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>day $-7$, $-6$, and $-1$</td>
<td>.09 (once daily group); .26 (overnight group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite pulse-oximetry score</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>day $-1$, 0</td>
<td>day $-7$ to day 0, and day $+2$</td>
<td>.299 (once daily group); .007 (overnight group)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$ $P$ value is the difference in means between the 3 different periods (stable, pre exacerbation, and post exacerbation).

$^b$ N/A: not applicable.

$^c$ “None” means that the variable did not cross the threshold of more than 1.96 SD units during the pre- and postexacerbation periods.

**Time Difference to Exacerbation Between Symptoms and Physiology**

Our prespecified primary analysis was used to assess the time difference to initiate treatment from when a change in symptoms (CAT) was first statistically different from baseline compared with changes in physiological variables (PEF, HR, SpO$_2$, and composite score). First, we combined both groups to assess the difference between symptoms and PEF (n=27) and found no difference between the groups. The median (IQR) time to receive treatment from symptoms becoming abnormal was 2.0 (0-10) days, whereas for PEF, it was 0.5 (0-5) days ($P$=.15). The results for the differences between symptoms and physiological variables in the once daily and overnight groups are reported in Table 3. None of the pulse oximetry monitoring approaches were superior to the use of CAT alone.
Finally, we compared the time between change in physiological signal becoming abnormal and receiving treatment between the 2 different monitoring groups. The results are reported in Table 4. There was a statistically significant difference in time between the overnight group and the once-daily group for heart rate (median 5 [0.5-7.5] days vs 0 [0-0.5] days, \( P=0.03 \)), but not for the other variables or composite score. This demonstrates that where objective verification of exacerbation is required, overnight monitoring of heart rate has the greatest potential to detect or assist in the detection of exacerbations of COPD and is significantly better than once-daily measurement.

**Table 3.** Time difference to treatment initiation at exacerbation between symptoms and physiological variables first becoming abnormal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>CATa–HRb</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>CAT—Oxygen Saturation</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>CAT—Composite score</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Once-daily</td>
<td>1 (0-9) vs 0 (0-0.5) days</td>
<td>.41</td>
<td>1 (0-9) vs 0 (0-2) days</td>
<td>.13</td>
<td>1 (0-9) vs 6.5 (2-11) days</td>
<td>.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overnight</td>
<td>5 (0-11) vs 5 (0.5-7.5) days</td>
<td>.78</td>
<td>5 (0-11) vs 0 (0-3.5) days</td>
<td>.13</td>
<td>5 (0-11) vs 6 (2-10) days</td>
<td>.76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aCAT: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease assessment test.
bHR: Heart rate.

Patients’ Acceptance of Overnight Continuous Pulse Oximetry Monitoring

A total of 29 participants completed the acceptability questionnaire, with a response rate of 97%. Overall, patients had moderate acceptability, with a mean score of 59.8/90 (12.6). Univariate linear regression showed that patients who had a higher Charlson Comorbidity Index score and those who were living alone had higher acceptability (\( \beta=0.453 \text{ } P=0.01 \), and \( \beta=0.424 \text{ } P=0.02 \), respectively); thus, acceptability was higher in frailler patients (in whom this technology may potentially be most beneficial).

**Table 4.** Time difference to receive treatment between once-daily and overnight measurement groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>CATa</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>Heart rate</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>Oxygen sat</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>PEFb</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
<th>Composite score</th>
<th>( P ) value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Once-daily</td>
<td>1 (0-9) days</td>
<td>.33</td>
<td>0 (0-0.5) days</td>
<td>.03</td>
<td>0 (0-2) days</td>
<td>.64</td>
<td>0 (0-1.5) days</td>
<td>.12</td>
<td>6 (2-11) days</td>
<td>.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overnight</td>
<td>5 (0-11) days</td>
<td>.09</td>
<td>5 (0.5-7.5) days</td>
<td>.12</td>
<td>0 (0-3.5) days</td>
<td>.78</td>
<td>5 (0-8) days</td>
<td>.64</td>
<td>6 (2-10) days</td>
<td>.03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aCAT: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease assessment test.
bPEF: peak expiratory flow.

**Discussion**

We conducted a randomized trial to compare the ability of overnight vs once daily monitoring of pulse oximetry to provide earlier detection of COPD exacerbations and to assessment of changes in symptoms and PEF. Early detection of exacerbations is important because it could facilitate prompt access to therapy, with faster resolution of exacerbations and decreased risk of hospitalization [5]. Our central hypothesis was that monitoring overnight pulse oximetry would remove non–exacerbation-related effects from the oximetry signal and, therefore, be more effective.

Our key findings are, first, that the time to treatment initiation from changes in symptoms vs changes in pulse oximetry first becoming abnormal were not statistically significant. However, patients waited an average of 5 days before treatment, and therefore, objectively monitoring symptoms or use of overnight oximetry may prompt patients to seek attention. Second, overnight measurement of heart rate may permit earlier detection of exacerbations compared with once-daily measurement because the SD of the stable state mean is smaller, permitting detection of smaller changes (increased signal-to-noise ratio). Third, changes in heart rate were more useful than changes in oxygen saturation or PEF. Finally, a combined oximetry score calculated by subtracting the Z score of change in oxygen saturation from the Z score of change in heart rate had a positive predictive value over 90% for the detection of exacerbation. The findings of this pilot study support our hypothesis that nocturnal pulse oximetry could facilitate earlier objective detection of COPD exacerbations.

**Respiratory Symptoms**

COPD exacerbations are defined by a change in respiratory symptoms above the day-to-day variation [16]. Seemungal was the first to report that symptoms changed significantly during the seven-day period preceding an exacerbation [6]. Aaron et al [17] went on to describe two patterns of exacerbation symptom onset. Our findings also show that symptoms increased above baseline 5 days before the treatment of exacerbation. In our study, we used the CAT questionnaire to assess symptom severity. A previous study by Lee et al investigated the use of the CAT questionnaire in the prediction of COPD exacerbations [3] and was able to identify patients at risk of developing an exacerbation (area under the curve=0.83). A 2-point change in CAT is clinically significant [18]. Previous studies have shown that the mean CAT score increased above 2 points from baseline at the onset of exacerbation [19]. Our findings are consistent with this, as the mean CAT score in our study increased above baseline by more than 2 points from 5 days before initiation of treatment for exacerbation. However, although the CAT questionnaire is an objective tool for assessment of symptoms, each question is answered based on patients’ self-perception, and there remains no objective way to confirm or exclude an exacerbation.
Physiological Variables

In our study, we monitored 3 physiological variables: PEF, heart rate, and oxygen saturation. The evidence for using physiological parameters to identify exacerbations is controversial, reflecting the poor quality of existing studies [7]. The approach used in previous studies was generally once-daily monitoring, and few studies have reported the magnitude of change in physiological variables (which is essential to define alarm limits in clinical practice). We studied two different monitoring approaches and examined differences in day-to-day variation in physiological parameters during 3 different phases (stable, pre exacerbation, and post exacerbation). We show that for heart rate and PEF, but not oxygen saturation, the mean value during the preexacerbation phase was significantly different from that during the stable phase. In addition, variability in the heart rate signal increased as patients first became unwell. These findings support the hypothesis that COPD exacerbations are associated with changes in cardiorespiratory physiology and that monitoring these variables may facilitate the earlier identification of exacerbations.

PEF is a simple tool to assess lung function, and measurements of PEF correlate with FEV1 [20,21]. The PEF in our study decreased during the preexacerbation phase and was significantly lower than baseline on the day of initiation of treatment for exacerbation. The maximum decrease in PEF during the exacerbation was 34 L/min^-1. Seemungal et al reported that PEF decreased below baseline at exacerbation with a median change of 6.6 L/min^-1 [22]. In another study conducted by this group, PEF decreased significantly from baseline on the day of exacerbation with a median change of 8.6 L/min^-1 [6]. Even though these changes are statistically significant, a decrease in PEF of this magnitude is not clinically significant and is not accurately measurable with current PEF devices. There is no accepted MCID for PEF at exacerbation of COPD.

Heart rate and oxygen saturation in our study were monitored once daily (in the morning) or continuously overnight. Our findings show that the mean heart rate in both groups increased significantly during the preexacerbation phase compared with the stable state. In the overnight group, the heart rate crossed the significance threshold from day 5 for 5 consecutive days. The mean heart rate in the once-daily group increased by 7 min^-1, consistent with results from other studies [9,23]. The maximum increase in heart rate in the overnight group was 10 min^-1. Importantly, and as we had hypothesized, the variation of heart rate in the overnight group was smaller compared with the variation in the once-daily group (SD 1.8 vs 3.6 min^-1), which supports the hypothesis that overnight monitoring of heart rate might enhance the detection of exacerbations by improving the signal-to-noise ratio.

The use of oxygen saturation to support detection and monitoring recovery of community-treated COPD exacerbations has been previously examined. In a pilot study, we reported that oxygen saturation decreased by a mean of 1.2% 2 days into the exacerbation [9]. Other studies have reported that oxygen saturation decreased 1 to 3 days before exacerbation onset by 1% to 2% [23-25]. In our study, the mean oxygen saturation in the once-daily group decreased by 2% 1 day before exacerbation. In contrast, the oxygen saturation of the overnight group had decreased by 1.2% for several days before the onset of the exacerbation. The variation in the overnight group (±0.36%) was less than that in the once-daily group (±0.81%), which again would increase the potential to detect changes at exacerbation of COPD. However, it should be noted that these changes are small in magnitude and within the measurement error of the device.

Pulse Oximetry

We hypothesized that a continuous overnight monitoring approach might help in earlier detection of COPD exacerbations by eliminating non-exacerbation-related influences on the pulse oximetry signal, such as that from exercise, medication, and anxiety. We acknowledge that changes in heart rate and oxygen saturation with exercise may provide an alternative approach for the early detection of exacerbations, but our study was not designed to examine this.

Although our data suggested that monitoring pulse oximetry may help in early identification of exacerbations, there remains a need to prospectively test an algorithm that could be implemented in telehealth systems. We have shown that combining two variables in a combined oximetry score increases the potential to detect changes earlier, with sensitivity, specificity, and positive predictive value that would be clinically valuable. Our composite score crossed the significance threshold in both groups but was superior in the overnight group. The score in the overnight group crossed the threshold for 7 days before the treatment was initiated in the patient. The monitoring of heart rate and oxygen saturation in COPD telehealth services is widespread. In a cross-sectional survey on the use of telehealth in COPD, heart rate and oxygen saturation were the variables most commonly monitored, but there was no standardized method for detecting changes and thus defining alarm limits [26]. Consequently, tele-health users report a high frequency of false alarms. In a previous systematic review, we reported that the majority of telehealth studies were taking measurements intermittently [7]. This approach might not be optimal for using pulse oximetry to detect exacerbations as the signal might be affected by external factors such as exercise, medication, and anxiety. We have shown that overnight monitoring of heart rate and oxygen saturation permits the detection of changes earlier than once-daily monitoring.

Although symptoms changed as early as physiological variables, patients do not routinely quantify symptoms in relation to their own baseline, and therefore, objective monitoring has potential benefits in the context of both clinical practice and research (avoiding missing unreported exacerbations, increasing event rates, and thus, requiring fewer patients to meet an exacerbation end point).

We found that living alone and the presence of comorbidities may be associated with higher acceptance of overnight monitoring. Previous studies have shown patients’ willingness to use home monitoring devices if they thought it would benefit their condition [27].
To our knowledge, this is the first study to monitor patients with COPD overnight to support earlier detection of exacerbations. We measured the pulse rate and oxygen saturation every 4 seconds, which reduced day-to-day variability in the measurement signal compared with once-daily monitoring. A significant limitation in our study was the higher-than-expected dropout rate. We believe this was because the equipment used in the overnight group was not designed for this purpose, patients lost interest in the study, and there was no real-time interaction with the health care provider with regard to their measurements. Although these factors are modifiable, we did not detect the number of exacerbations required to satisfy our power calculation, and therefore, the results are best considered as a pilot. Our findings have shown the potential for pulse oximetry to assist in the early detection of exacerbations, but we cannot draw a stronger conclusion about the efficacy because of the small number of exacerbations captured.

In conclusion, we have demonstrated that overnight pulse oximetry could facilitate earlier objective detection of COPD exacerbations. Overnight pulse oximetry allowed earlier detection compared with once-daily monitoring. Heart rate was superior to oxygen saturation and PEF and combining heart rate and oxygen saturation data provided the best performance.

Acknowledgments
The authors gratefully acknowledge the study participants and support they received from the pulmonary rehabilitation sites and staff.

Authors' Contributions
AR and JH conceived and designed the study, and the methodology was revised by SM, YA, AA, ML, JA, EP, and SQ. AR and JH performed the initial analysis, interpretation, and evaluation of the data. AR wrote the first manuscript draft, and all the authors revised it for important intellectual content. All the authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
CONSORT checklist.
[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 206 KB - mhealth_v8i11e17597_app1.pdf]

References


Abbreviations

ANOVA: analysis of variance
CAT: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease assessment test
COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
FEV1: forced expiratory volume in one second
FVC: forced vital capacity

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17597  JMir Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e17597 | p.504 (page number not for citation purposes)
MCID: minimal clinically important difference
PEF: peak expiratory flow

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 23.12.19; peer-reviewed by J Parak, J Sedláček; comments to author 02.03.20; revised version received 17.04.20; accepted 15.05.20; published 13.11.20.

Please cite as:
Al Rajeh AM, Aldabayan YS, Aldhahir A, Pickett E, Quaderi S, Alqahtani JS, Mandal S, Lipman MCI, Hurst JR
Once Daily Versus Overnight and Symptom Versus Physiological Monitoring to Detect Exacerbations of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease: Pilot Randomized Controlled Trial
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e17597
URL: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17597
doi: 10.2196/17597
PMID: 33185560

©Ahmed M Al Rajeh, Yousef Saad Aldabayan, Abdulelah Aldhahir, Elisha Pickett, Shumonta Quaderi, Jaber S Alqahtani, Swapna Mandal, Marc CI Lipman, John R Hurst. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 13.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Implementing Mobile Health–Enabled Integrated Care for Complex Chronic Patients: Patients and Professionals’ Acceptability Study

Jordi de Batlle 1,2, PhD; Mireia Massip 1, BSc; Eloisa Vargiu 3, PhD; Nuria Nadal 4, MD; Araceli Fuentes 5, MD; Marta Ortega Bravo 6,7,8, MD; Jordi Colomina 9, MD; Reis Drudis 10, MD; Montserrat Torra 10, MD; Francesc Pallís 9, PhD; Felip Miralles 3, PhD; Ferran Barbe 1,2, MD; Gerard Torres 1,2, MD; CONNECARE-Lleida Group 11

1 Group of Translational Research in Respiratory Medicine, Institut de Recerca Biomedica de Lleida, Lleida, Spain
2 Center for Biomedical Network Research in Respiratory Diseases, Madrid, Spain
3 eHealth Unit, Eurecat, Centre Tecnològic de Catalunya, Barcelona, Spain
4 Gerència Territorial de Barcelona, Institut Català de la Salut, Barcelona, Spain
5 Atenció Primària Àmbit Lleida, Lleida, Spain
6 Research Support Unit Lleida, Fundació Institut Universitari per a la recerca a l’Atenció Primària de Salut Jordi Gol i Gurina, Lleida, Spain
7 Centre d’Atenció Primària Cappont, Gerència Territorial de Lleida, Institut Català de la Salut, Lleida, Spain
8 Universitat de Lleida, Lleida, Spain
9 Servei de Cirurgia Ortopèdica i Traumatologia, Hospital de Santa Maria de Lleida, Lleida, Spain
10 Unitat de Dolor Agut, Hospital de Santa Maria de Lleida, Lleida, Spain
11 Institut de Recerca Biomedica de Lleida, Lleida, Spain

Corresponding Author:
Gerard Torres, MD
Group of Translational Research in Respiratory Medicine
Institut de Recerca Biomedica de Lleida
80 Rovira Roure Lleida
Lleida, 25198
Spain
Phone: 34 973705372
Email: gtorres@gss.cat

Abstract

Background: Integrated care (IC) can promote health and social care efficiency through prioritization of preventive patient-centered models and defragmentation of care and collaboration across health tiers, and mobile health (mHealth) can be the cornerstone allowing for the adoption of IC.

Objective: This study aims to assess the acceptability, usability, and satisfaction of an mHealth-enabled IC model for complex chronic patients in both patients and health professionals.

Methods: As part of the CONNECARE Horizon 2020 project, a prospective, pragmatic, 2-arm, parallel, hybrid effectiveness-implementation trial was conducted from July 2018 to August 2019 in a rural region of Catalonia, Spain. Home-dwelling patients 55 years and older with chronic conditions and a history of hospitalizations for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or heart failure (use case [UC] 1), or a scheduled major elective hip or knee arthroplasty (UC2) were recruited. During the 3 months, patients experienced an mHealth-enabled IC model, including a self-management app for patients, a set of integrated sensors, and a web-based platform connecting professionals from different settings or usual care. The Person-Centered Coordinated Care Experience Questionnaire (P3CEQ) and the Nijmegen Continuity Questionnaire (NCQ) assessed person-centeredness and continuity of care. Acceptability was assessed for IC arm patients and staff with the Net Promoter Score (NPS) and the System Usability Scale (SUS).

Results: The analyses included 77 IC patients, 58 controls who completed the follow-up, and 30 health care professionals. The mean age was 78 (SD 9) years in both study arms. Perception of patient-centeredness was similarly high in both arms (usual care: mean P3CEQ score 16.1, SD 3.3; IC: mean P3CEQ score 16.3, SD 2.4). IC patients reported better continuity of care than controls (usual care: mean NCQ score 3.7, SD 0.9; IC: mean NCQ score 4.0, SD 1; P=.04). The scores for patient acceptability (UC1: NPS +67%; UC2: NPS +45%) and usability (UC1: mean SUS score 79, SD 14; UC2: mean SUS score 68, SD 24) were outstanding. Professionals’ acceptability was low (UC1: NPS −25%; UC2: NPS −35%), whereas usability was average (UC1: mean SUS score 68, SD 24).
Introduction

In recent decades, socioeconomic development has increased life expectancy and led to progressively aging populations with an increased burden of chronic diseases [1]. This increased disease burden has heavily affected the already overburdened health and social care systems, which struggle to provide adequate services with limited resources. Traditional care models are falling short in adequately responding to the needs of chronic patients. The struggle of different care settings to communicate efficiently among themselves leads to care fragmentation and patients being left with the feeling of starting anew after every transition [2]. Moreover, patients are often passive actors without the necessary empowerment and no clear role in their own management [2]. Overall, there is a need for a profound redesign of how care is provided to older people with chronic health conditions, with a focus on patient participation, care quality, and system sustainability [3]. Integrated care (IC) models were created to address these challenges, with the aim of generating efficiencies through the adoption of patient-centered models, promotion of efficient continuity of care across settings, and prioritization of preventive strategies [4]. eHealth and mobile health (mHealth) can be the cornerstone allowing for the adoption of IC models [5].

In this scenario, the Horizon 2020 European Union Research and Innovation project CONNECARE—Personalized Connected Care for Complex Chronic Patients—attempted to co-design, develop, deploy, and evaluate a smart adaptive IC model for complex chronic patients (CCPs) [6]. From April 2016 to December 2019, participants in CONNECARE co-designed and experienced an organizational model supported by an eHealth platform that allows IC. The IC model allowed shifting from a conventional reactive care to a home-based preventive model built on cross-setting collaboration and interoperability, patient empowerment, and health risk prediction and management based on the analysis of patient-specific and population-based data. The model was supported by an advanced eHealth platform, based on information and communication technologies and Internet of Things, offering a cross-setting web-based Smart Adaptive Case Management (SACM) system for professionals and an mHealth self-management app with 3-level monitoring for patients. Finally, the CONNECARE IC model and supporting eHealth platform were tailored to different settings involving CCPs across Europe, including Lleida and Barcelona in Spain, Groningen in the Netherlands, and Ashdod in Israel.

Most novel IC interventions are assessed in light of the Triple Aim compass, which enhances patient experience, improves population health, and reduces overall costs [7]. According to the Triple Aim concept, patients’ acceptability and satisfaction are key aspects for the large-scale adoption of novel management strategies. However, it is equally important that the involved health and social care professionals feel that any change in their routines will allow them to provide better care to their patients. This key concept has been described well in the Quadruple Aim, which expands Triple Aim to include the improvement of the work life of clinicians and staff [8]. Therefore, the assessment of acceptability and satisfaction in patients and professionals should be an unavoidable aspect in the evaluation of novel IC strategies, complementing effectiveness and cost-effectiveness assessments.

The CONNECARE mHealth-enabled IC model is being deployed and tested in different European settings. This paper focuses on the assessment of acceptability and satisfaction in patients and professionals in relation to the implementation of mHealth-enabled IC in the rural region of Lleida—Catalonia (Spain)—which had historically struggled with low levels of cross-setting interoperability, limiting the capacity of professionals from different settings to provide a coordinated response to patients’ needs, and limited patient empowerment, with patients having mostly passive roles throughout their care paths.

Methods

Study Design

A prospective, pragmatic, 2-arm, parallel, type 1 hybrid effectiveness-implementation trial [9] that assesses patients and professionals’ acceptability of a 3-month mHealth-enabled IC intervention as compared with that of usual care was conducted. The study was conducted from July 2018 to August 2019 in Lleida, which is a large rural area of more than 4300 km², including 2 tertiary hospitals, University Hospital Arnau de Vilanova and University Hospital Santa Maria, and a network of 23 primary care centers spread across the whole territory, providing services to 400,000 citizens.
Target Population
The intervention was deployed for 2 different use cases (UCs): (1) home-dwelling patients, with chronic conditions and a history of visits to the emergency room (ER) leading to hospitalizations (UC1); and (2) home-dwelling patients, with chronic conditions, undergoing a major elective hip or knee arthroplasty surgery (UC2). The specific eligibility criteria included the following: age more than 55 years, having a hospital admission because of a respiratory or cardiovascular event (UC1), having a programmed major elective hip or knee arthroplasty surgery (UC2), not having dementia or cognitive impairment (Global Deterioration Scale<5 [10]), LACE index for readmission score<7 (UC1) [11], American Society of Anesthesiologists Physical Status Classification System II or III (UC2) [12], being assigned to a primary care center in the region, living at home and being discharged back to the community, and passing a basic technological test assessing home connectivity and patients and/or care givers’ competence with the use of technology (Multimedia Appendix 1 [13,14]).

Recruitment
Patients were recruited either during an unanticipated admission to the hospital through the ER (UC1) or at the time of surgery (UC2). All patients were identified based on data from electronic medical records (EMRs) and contacted by a case manager. Regardless of the UC, once a patient was recruited for the intervention arm, the search for a similar control began. All patients and their caregivers, regardless of the UC and study arm, received a face-to-face explanation about the study.

Intervention
Patients in the intervention arm experienced an mHealth-enabled IC model, including (1) a preliminary assessment of the patient’s health status using several questionnaires, tests, and indices specific to their main chronic diseases and social needs done before hospital discharge for UC1 patients and at the time of scheduled surgery for UC2 patients; (2) access to a self-management app with status and performance reports, a virtual coach with customizable automated feedback, and full communication with the care team and guidance on its day-to-day use, taking into account that the app could be managed directly by the patients or indirectly by the informal caregivers or relatives; (3) a Fitbit Flex 2 (Fitbit) digital activity tracker [15] and additional sensors deemed necessary by the care team [16]: digital pulse-oximeter, digital scale, and digital blood pressure monitor, all of them fully integrated into the self-management app; (4) a patient’s profile in the SACM tracker [15] and additional sensors deemed necessary by the care team [16]: digital pulse-oximeter, digital scale, and digital blood pressure monitor, all of them fully integrated into the self-management app; (4) a patient’s profile in the SACM web-based platform, which would be accessible by all the involved professionals (hospital, primary, and social care) and used to coordinate and communicate with professionals in the different settings, control the patient’s evolution, and contact the patient if needed; and (5) assignment of a case manager in charge of supervising the whole process and being the main patient contact point. Additional details on the IC model and the required implementation efforts can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1. It must be noted that, as part of the CONNECARE project, the supporting technology used by patients and professionals was being developed and fine-tuned throughout the study. Usual care arm patients were managed from primary care.

Data Collection
Patients’ characteristics were collected at recruitment, including age, sex, main chronic diseases, Charlson Comorbidity Index [17], Barthel Index for Activities of Daily Living [18], and the Pfeiffer Mental Status Questionnaire [19]. The main patient outcomes were collected after 3 months and included patient’s perception of person-centeredness, assessed by the Person-Centered Coordinated Care Experience Questionnaire (P3CEQ) [20]; patient’s perception of continuity of care, assessed by questions G1 to G5 of the Nijmegen Continuity Questionnaire (NCQ) [21]; satisfaction with the IC platform in IC arm patients and staff, assessed by the Net Promoter Score (NPS) [22] and the System Usability Scale (SUS) [23]; and the actual use of the different elements of the IC platform by patients. The NPS was based on the question “How likely is it that you would recommend our system CONNECARE to a family member or friend?” to be answered in a 0 (not at all likely) to 10 (extremely likely) scale. Individuals scoring 9 or 10 were considered as promoters, individuals scoring 7 or 8 as passives, and individuals scoring 0 to 6 as detractors. The final NPS score was obtained by subtracting the proportion of detractors from the proportion of promoters, and it could range from −100% to +100% (a positive score is considered good, +50% is considered excellent, and anything more than +70% is exceptional) [24].

Statistical Analyses
Participants’ baseline characteristics were described by the number (percentage), mean (SD), or median (P25-P75), as appropriate. Comparisons between IC and usual care patients’ baseline characteristics were performed using chi-square test, t test, or Kruskal-Wallis test, as appropriate. Comparisons between IC and usual care patients’ person-centeredness and continuity of care were performed using chi-square test or t test, as appropriate, excluding patients answering “Don’t know” or “No answer.” Satisfaction with the IC platform in IC patients and staff were described using mean (SD) or median (P25-P75), as appropriate. Finally, the actual use by patients of the different elements of the IC platform was described by reporting the proportion of times reported over times prescribed, using median (P25-P75). Data analyses were conducted using Stata, version 12.1 (StataCorp). The threshold for significance was set at .05.

Implementation Framework
The Consolidated Framework for Implementation Research (CFIR) [13] was used to assess implementation aspects. A detailed description of the implementation strategies and framework can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1.

Ethical Considerations
This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of Hospital Arnau de Vilanova (CEIC-1685), and all participants provided written informed consent. All collected data were handled and stored in accordance with current National and International legislation.
Results

In this study, up to 194 patients were screened for eligibility (112 for UC1 and 82 for UC2). After excluding patients who did not meet the inclusion criteria, 91 patients were recruited for the intervention arm and 65 for the usual care arm. Final analyses were based on 77 IC patients and 58 usual care control patients who completed the follow-up and 30 health care professionals (Figure 1).

Figure 1. Study flowchart. EMR: electronic medical record; UC: use case.

The main characteristics of the patients included in the study are shown in Table 1. The mean age was 78 (SD 9) years in both study arms, with patients in UC1 being 10 years older than patients in UC2 on average. Patients in UC1 had a higher burden of comorbidities than patients in UC2 (Charlson Comorbidity Index in UC1: mean 6.9, SD 2.1; UC2: mean 4.2; SD 1.6; \( P < .001 \)). No statistically significant differences were found between patients in the usual care arm and patients in the IC arm, regardless of UC. Regarding the analyses of health care professionals, UC1 included 1 hospital case manager, 3 hospital physicians, 3 primary care case managers, 9 primary care physicians, and 6 primary care nurses, and UC2 included 1 hospital case manager, 1 hospital physician, 1 hospital surgeon, 1 hospital anesthesiologist, 2 primary care case managers, 9 primary care physicians, and 6 primary care nurses.

Table 1. Baseline characteristics of patients in usual care and integrated care.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Use case 1 (n=48)</th>
<th>Integrated care (n=29)</th>
<th>( P^a ) value</th>
<th>Use case 2 (n=30)</th>
<th>Integrated care (n=29)</th>
<th>( P^a ) value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sex (male), n (%)</td>
<td>17 (61)</td>
<td>24 (50)</td>
<td>.37</td>
<td>8 (27)</td>
<td>12 (41)</td>
<td>.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>82 (8)</td>
<td>82 (7)</td>
<td>.88</td>
<td>73 (8)</td>
<td>72 (9)</td>
<td>.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlson(^b) (score), mean (SD)</td>
<td>7.4 (2.1)</td>
<td>6.7 (2.0)</td>
<td>.15</td>
<td>4.2 (1.7)</td>
<td>4.2 (1.5)</td>
<td>.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barthel(^c) (score), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>90 (73-95)</td>
<td>90 (68-100)</td>
<td>.40</td>
<td>95 (90-100)</td>
<td>100 (95-100)</td>
<td>.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfeiffer(^d), NI, n (%)</td>
<td>21 (75)</td>
<td>37 (77)</td>
<td>.67</td>
<td>30 (100)</td>
<td>27 (93)</td>
<td>.14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Chi-square test, \( t \) test, or Kruskal-Wallis equality-of-populations rank test, as appropriate.

\(^b\)Charlson Comorbidity Index.

\(^c\)Barthel Index for Activities of Daily Living.

\(^d\)Pfeiffer Mental Status Questionnaire.

\(^e\)NI: no impairment.

Regardless of UC and intervention arm, the perception of patient-centeredness was very high, with a mean P3CEQ score of 16.1 (SD 3.3) in the usual care arm and 16.3 (SD 2.4) in the IC arm. Regarding the continuity of care, patients in IC scored better than patients in usual care (usual care: mean NCQ G1-G5 score 3.7, SD 0.9; integrated care: mean NCQ G1-G5 score 4.0, SD 1.0; \( P = .04 \)). Further information on patient-perceived person-centeredness and continuity of care can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1.
Patients and professionals’ satisfaction with the deployed technology for IC is presented in Tables 2 and 3. Patients in UC1 reported an overall NPS score of +67% and patients in UC2 of +45%, whereas professionals involved in UC1 scored −25% and in UC2 −35%. Similarly, although the mean score for SUS was 75 (SD 19), the mean score for professionals was 61 (SD 20).

**Table 2.** Integrated care patients’ satisfaction with the technology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>All (n=77)</th>
<th>UC1 (n=48)</th>
<th>UC2 (n=29)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NPS\textsuperscript{b} questions (0 [poor] to 10 [good]), median (P25-P75)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall satisfaction</td>
<td>10 (8-10)</td>
<td>10 (8-10)</td>
<td>10 (8-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easiness of use</td>
<td>9 (8-10)</td>
<td>9 (8-10)</td>
<td>8 (5-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to be used without help</td>
<td>9 (7-10)</td>
<td>9 (8-10)</td>
<td>8 (5-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you recommend it</td>
<td>10 (8-10)</td>
<td>10 (8-10)</td>
<td>9 (8-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPS score (−100% to +100%)</td>
<td>+58%</td>
<td>+67%</td>
<td>+45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUS\textsuperscript{c} score (0 [awful] to 100 [excellent])</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>75 (19)</td>
<td>79 (14)</td>
<td>68 (24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users scoring over 68 points, n (%)</td>
<td>54 (70)</td>
<td>38 (79)</td>
<td>16 (55)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}UC: use case.
\textsuperscript{b}NPS: Net Promoter Score.
\textsuperscript{c}SUS: System Usability Scale.

**Table 3.** Staff’s satisfaction with the technology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>All (n=30)</th>
<th>UC1 (n=22)</th>
<th>UC2 (n=21)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NPS\textsuperscript{b} questions (0 [poor] to 10 [good]), median (P25-P75)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall satisfaction</td>
<td>6 (5-8)</td>
<td>6 (5-8.5)</td>
<td>6.5 (5-8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easiness of use</td>
<td>6 (6-7)</td>
<td>6.5 (5-8)</td>
<td>6 (4.5-7.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to be used without help</td>
<td>6 (5-9)</td>
<td>6.5 (5-9)</td>
<td>6 (5.5-9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you recommend it</td>
<td>6.5 (5-8)</td>
<td>6.5 (5.5-8.5)</td>
<td>6.5 (5-7.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPS score (−100% to +100%):</td>
<td>−29%</td>
<td>−25%</td>
<td>−35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUS\textsuperscript{c} score (0 [awful] to 100 [excellent])</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean (SD)</td>
<td>61 (20)</td>
<td>63 (20)</td>
<td>62 (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users scoring over 68 points, n (%)</td>
<td>14 (47)</td>
<td>10 (46)</td>
<td>9 (43)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{a}UC: use case.
\textsuperscript{b}NPS: Net Promoter Score.
\textsuperscript{c}SUS: System Usability Scale.

Table 4 reports on the actual use of technology by the patients experiencing IC. The actual use of the physical activity tracker was outstanding, with up to 77% (58/75) of patients having reported measures over 60 days out of 90. The ratio of times reported over times prescribed for the rest of sensors that could be proposed to patients ranged from 37% for oxygen saturation to 67% for weight. Finally, the use of the messaging function allowing patients to ask or answer requirements for or from the professional care team was high, with a median (P25-P75) of 19 (10.5-41) in UC1 and 10 (5-22) in UC2 over the 90-day intervention.

Finally, the results of the evaluation of the implementation according to CFIR can be found in Multimedia Appendix 1.
Table 4. Integrated care patients’ use of technology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technologies</th>
<th>All (n=77)</th>
<th>UC1 (n=48)</th>
<th>UC2 (n=29)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Daily steps (Fitbit)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days reported, median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>86 (63-92)</td>
<td>86 (63-92)</td>
<td>87 (68.5-92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users reporting ≥60 days, n (%)</td>
<td>58 (77)</td>
<td>36 (77)</td>
<td>22 (79)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (Withings), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Times R/Pb</td>
<td>67 (42-91)</td>
<td>67 (42-91)</td>
<td>NUc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure (Withings), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>41 (32-50)</td>
<td>43 (37-50)</td>
<td>38 (21-58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate (Withings), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>42 (36-51)</td>
<td>42 (36-51)</td>
<td>NU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen saturation (SpO₂; Withings), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>37 (22-42)</td>
<td>37 (22-42)</td>
<td>NU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body temperature (Withings), median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>41 (36-48)</td>
<td>NU</td>
<td>41 (36-48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages to the care team, median (P25-P75)</td>
<td>18 (7-37)</td>
<td>19 (10.5-41)</td>
<td>10 (5-22)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aUC: use case.
bR/P: reported or prescribed.
cNU: not used in the UC.

Discussion

Principal Findings

The assessment of the patients and professionals’ acceptability of an mHealth-enabled IC program targeting home-dwelling CCP patients with a history of hospitalizations (UC1) or undergoing a major elective hip or knee arthroplasty surgery (UC2) showed 2 different perceptions. Although patients and/or informal caregivers or relatives reported a very high acceptability of the IC program and its supporting technology, professionals rated it as moderately poor. Patients reported very high perceptions of patient-centeredness, continuity of care, satisfaction, and usability of the IC platform, and matching with these positive perceptions, actual use of the different features of the IC platform was high. Although patients positively qualified their user experience [25], professionals felt the burden of a system under constant development, which in turn limited their experience and translated to moderately poor satisfaction with the IC platform.

Strengths and Limitations

This study has several strengths: (1) from day 1, an effort was made to involve all actors from different organizations who would participate in a large-scale deployment of the mHealth-supported IC program, which is key as the lack of cooperation between organizations and professionals is a well-known barrier for the implementation of IC [4]; (2) the involvement of informal carers as actors being important in facilitating the use of the patient’s app in older patients; (3) the prescription and monitoring of patients’ physical activity, as mobility impairment is frequent in people older than 65 years [26]; and (4) the geography of the implementation area, a large rural region of more than 4300 km², which could benefit the most from community-based integrated care initiatives that precluded unnecessary visits to primary care centers or hospitals. Similarly, there were several limitations: (1) the IC platform was in a constant process of refinement and addition of new functionalities; thus, the user experience was richer by the end of the implementation study compared with the very beginning; and (2) having a single entry point to the IC program, which was the hospital either after an ER admission (UC1) or at the time of surgery (UC2), as it is important that system-wide cross-organizational care pathways consider multiple entry points [27]. However, primary care centers are currently being considered as a potential additional entry point if the IC system is further implemented in the region.

Patients’ Perspective: Comparison With Previous Work

The use of mHealth apps for patients with chronic conditions has been explored in the last decade, showing the potential for appropriate security level, effective monitoring, self-management, and communication [28]. However, a 2016 review of Apps for Heart Failure symptom monitoring and self-care reported that a minority of the available apps had the required quality, content, or functionality [29]. Our IC platform aimed to go beyond a patient’s app and established a comprehensive IC model, including a patient’s app, a portfolio of different sensors linked with the app, and a professional’s web-based platform for monitoring, communication with the patient, and collaboration among professionals in different health settings. The first indicator of the success of an mHealth
intervention is the rate of dropouts. In our study, only 13% of patients in the IC arm decided to abandon the program. For instance, Bentley et al [30] reported that half of the participants in an mHealth-based self-management intervention for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) withdrew from the study. The scores for acceptability (UC1: NPS +67%; UC2: NPS +45%) and usability (UC1: mean SUS score 79, SD 14; UC2: mean SUS score 68, SD 24) were outstanding. These results are better than most results obtained in existing mHealth tools targeting chronic patients, for example, mHealth tools aiming to improve quality of life in breast cancer survivors such as BENECA (NPS +7%) [31] or Oncokompas (NPS −36%) [32], an Intelligent Virtual Assistant for promoting behavior change and self-care in older people with type 2 diabetes (mean SUS 74, SD 13) [33], or a gait-monitoring mobile phone app for older users (mean SUS 60, SD 11) [34]. Similarly, interventions targeting surgical patients by means of education and communication apps have obtained positive results in terms of acceptability and usability [35,36], comparable with results obtained with automated phone messaging platforms [37,38].

Finally, preliminary results of variants of the CONNECARE IC model implemented in other European settings have been positive. For instance, the CONNECARE self-management app was rated positively by older patients with cancer who were offered remote home monitoring after surgery (mean SUS 74, SD 19; NPS +29%) [39].

**Patients’ Perspective: Lessons Learned**

The key factors for the success of our comprehensive IC model from the patients’ perspective have been (1) including a comprehensive set of features with the patient’s app acting as a hub of services including the integration of monitoring devices, in line with a 2016 review of Apps for Heart Failure symptom monitoring and self-care reporting that a minority of the available apps had the required content or functionality [29]; (2) the involvement of patients since early phases of development, as proposed by Lundell et al [40] in a recent qualitative analysis of the use of home telemonitoring in patients with COPD; (3) the flexibility of potential end users, as the app could be managed directly by the patients (most UC2 patients) or by a relative or informal carer (most UC1 patients); (4) enabled bidirectional communication with the care team, potentially avoiding unnecessary visits to primary care centers or hospital; (5) appropriate feedback on the daily monitoring and patients’ achieved goals, including personalized motivational advice; (6) push-up notifications to remind key events, tasks, or goals; and (7) ease of use and quality-of-life features, such as being able to monitor key aspects of chronic diseases or monitoring pain after surgery, enabling communication between carers in different care settings; having the option to prescribe and monitor physical activity; or case managers having access to a geographical representation of patients in a map, with the possibility of selecting patients based on predefined characteristics or generating optimized routes for home visits, showed professionals the game-changing features of the platform. On the other hand, a system under constant development, not achieving a full integration with legacy EMR systems and the coexistence of 2 management systems (usual care and IC) at the same time (which implied some duplicity of tasks) were the main barriers to adoption.

**Challenges for Large-Scale Deployment**

Although usability and acceptability are key for the adoption of mHealth-enabled IC, large-scale adoption requires cost-effectiveness and an adequate reimbursement and payment model. On the one hand, regarding cost-effectiveness, the implementation of our IC model reduced unplanned contacts with the health system, reduced health costs, and was cost-effective, as reported elsewhere. On the other hand, designing of an reimbursement and payment model capable of accommodating the costs of new roles and required technologies, while fully benefiting from the savings in terms of reductions in the use of health and social care resources, can be challenging, especially when the model involves different organizations and providers. Therefore, a firm positioning of the involved health authorities and governing bodies is required to fully fulfill the ambition of our mHealth-enabled IC model. The use of the CFIR framework highlighted the key barriers and facilitators for large-scale adoption (Multimedia Appendix 1).

**Conclusions**

The assessment of the patients and professionals’ acceptability of an mHealth-enabled IC program showed outstanding results from the patients’ perspective. However, the web-based professionals’ platform needs to be fully matured and fully integrated into legacy systems before moving forward toward large-scale deployment. This paper, thus, provides useful lessons learned through the development and assessment process and may be of use for organizations willing to develop or implement mHealth-enabled IC for older adults.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22136

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e22136 | p.512

(page number not for citation purposes)
Acknowledgments

The authors would like to express their sincerest gratitude to all the participating patients and their caregivers as well as all the involved health and social care professionals. All of them were key in the co-design of the CONNECARE integrated care model and its initial implementation in the region of Lleida.

The CONNECARE-Lleida group: Maria Aguilà Balastegui, Sandra Alexandre Loxano, Laila Al-Jouya Llortente, Tomás Alonso Sancho, Enrique Aparicio Bañeres, Ana Arce Vila, Jose Maria Baron Burriel, Ramon Basconpte Claret, Albert Bigorda Sague, Emilia Blanco Ponce, Maria Boldó Franque, Àngels Bosch Roig, Carmen Bravo Santiago, Alba Capdevila Saramona, Aida Castelló Correte, Jordi Colomina Morales, Montse Coma Gassó, Fina Cregenzan Ortiz, Dolors Del Pozo García, Reis Drudis Morell, Mireia Falguera Vilamajó, Pere Farre Pagés, Yolanda Fauria Garcia, Anabel Fusalba Canales, Jara Gayan Ordas, Sergi Godia Lopez, Irene Gomez Companys, Jessica González Gutierrez, Anna Gort Oromí, Carme Jorge Tufet, Mercè Lavega Llorens, Laia Llort Samsó, Maria Rosa Lopez Cervelló, Belen Malla Clua, Josep Maria Marsol Mas, Teresita Martí Ribes, Diana Martín Capella, José María Martínez Barriuso, Esther Mateus Solé, Ramon Mazana Novellon, Petra Merino De los Santos, Miquel Mesas Julio, Sonia Minguet Vidal, Nuria Moles Porta, Luis Miguel Montaña Esteban, Dolors Moreira Roset, Meritxell Moyà Oro, Irene Muñoz Del Campo, Francisco Nicolás Sánchez, Inés Ortiz Catalán, Mireia Ortiz Valls, Sonia Ortiz Congost, Jose Maria Palacín Peruga, Francesc Pallisó Folch, Eugeni Paredes Costa, Pablo Pastor Puyó, Ana Pérez Sainz, Antonio Plana Blanco, Anna Planas Hiraldo, Pepita Pont Aldoma, Marife Queló Alonso, Rebeca Ramirez Molinero, Maria Àngels Reves Juanbaro, Anna Ribé Miró, Eva Ribó Caubet, Rebeca Rodríguez Corbaton, Marina Rué Florensa, Oscar Sacristán García, Irene Sammartí Forns, Maria Cruz Sanz Martínez, Neus Sendra Bordes, Montse Torra Riera, Maria Cruz Urgelés Castillón, Laia Utrillo Montagut, and Montse Vidal Ballesté.

This work was supported by the European Union’s Horizon 2020 Research and Innovation Programme (under grant agreement no. GA-689802). JB acknowledges receiving financial support from the Catalan Health Departament (Pla Estratègic de Recerca i Innovació en Salut 2016: SLT002/16/00364) and Instituto de Salud Carlos III (ISCIII; Miguel Servet 2019: CP19/00108), cofunded by the European Social Fund (ESF), Investing in your future, and the European Regional Development Fund, “A way to make Europe.” The funding organizations had no role in the design and conduct of the study; collection, management, analysis, and interpretation of the data; preparation, review, or approval of the manuscript; and decision to submit the manuscript for publication.

Authors’ Contributions

JB, EV, NN, FP, FM, FB, and GT participated in the conceptualization of the project. MM, EV, MOB, JC, RD, MTR, and GT conducted data collection. MM, EV, and JB participated in data curation. JB conducted all statistical analyses. JB wrote the original draft of the manuscript. All authors reviewed the final manuscript. JB, EV, FM, FB, and GT secured funding for the project.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Implementing mobile health–enabled integrated care for complex chronic patients: a patients and professionals’ acceptability study.

References


Abbreviations

- CCP: complex chronic patient
- CFIR: Consolidated Framework for Implementation Research
- COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- EMR: electronic medical record
- ER: emergency room
- IC: integrated care
- mHealth: mobile health
- NCQ: Nijmegen Continuity Questionnaire
- NPS: Net Promoter Score
- P3CEQ: Person-Centered Coordinated Care Experience Questionnaire
- SACM: Smart Adaptive Case Management
- SUS: System Usability Scale
- UC: use case
Implementing Mobile Health–Enabled Integrated Care for Complex Chronic Patients: Patients and Professionals’ Acceptability Study

Please cite as:

Implementing Mobile Health–Enabled Integrated Care for Complex Chronic Patients: Patients and Professionals’ Acceptability Study
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22136
URL: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22136
doi:10.2196/22136
PMID:33216004

©Jordi de Batlle, Mireia Massip, Eloisa Vargiu, Nuria Nadal, Araceli Fuentes, Marta Ortega Bravo, Jordi Colomina, Reis Drudis, Montserrat Torra, Francesc Pallisó, Felip Miralles, Ferran Barbé, Gerard Torres, CONNECARE-Lleida Group. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 20.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Original Paper

Internet and Telerehabilitation-Delivered Management of Rotator Cuff–Related Shoulder Pain (INTEL Trial): Randomized Controlled Pilot and Feasibility Trial

Peter Malliaras¹, BPhysio, PhD; Kate Cridland¹, BPhysio; Ruben Hopmans¹, BMM, MIT; Simon Ashton¹, BPhysio; Chris Littlewood², BPhysio, PhD; Richard Page³, BMedSci, MBBS; Ian Harris⁴,⁵,⁶, MBBS, PhD; Helen Skouteris⁷, BSc, PhD; Terry Haines⁸, BPhysio, PhD

¹Physiotherapy Department, School of Primary and Allied Health Care, Faculty of Medicine Nursing and Health Science, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia
²Faculty of Health, Psychology and Social Care, Manchester Metropolitan University, Manchester, United Kingdom
³Barwon Orthopaedic Research and Education, Barwon Health and School of Medicine, Deakin University, Geelong, Australia
⁴Whitlam Orthopaedic Research Centre, Ingham Institute for Applied Medical Research, Sydney, Australia
⁵South Western Sydney Clinical School, University of New South Wales, Sydney, Australia
⁶Liverpool Hospital, Sydney, Australia
⁷Monash Centre for Health Research and Implementation, School of Public Health and Preventive Medicine, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia
⁸School of Primary and Allied Health Care, Faculty of Medicine Nursing and Health Science, Monash University, Melbourne, Australia

Corresponding Author:
Peter Malliaras, BPhysio, PhD
Physiotherapy Department, School of Primary and Allied Health Care, Faculty of Medicine Nursing and Health Science
Monash University
Moorooduc Hwy, Frankston
Melbourne, 3199
Australia
Phone: 61 0400206480
Email: peter.malliaras@monash.edu

Abstract

Background: Rotator cuff–related shoulder pain (RCRSP) is a common and disabling musculoskeletal condition. Internet-based and telerehabilitation delivery of recommended care may improve access to care and improve adherence and outcomes.

Objective: The primary aim of this pilot randomized controlled trial was to assess the feasibility of a 12-week internet-delivered intervention for RCRSP comparing advice only, recommended care, and recommended care with group-based telerehabilitation.

Methods: Reporting was in accordance with the Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT) checklist for pilot and feasibility trials. People with a primary complaint of RCRSP for 3 months or longer were identified via a paid Facebook strategy. Screening involved an online questionnaire followed by a 20-minute telehealth assessment. Participants were randomly allocated (via a Zelen design) to receive (1) advice only, (2) recommended care (internet-delivered evidence-based exercise and education), or (3) recommended care and telerehabilitation (including a weekly group teleconference session). Progression criteria for a full-scale trial included (1) recruitment of 20% or greater of eligible participants, (2) acceptable adherence (two or more of the three prescribed weekly sessions) among 70% or greater of participants, (3) 80% or greater retention of participants, (4) absence of intervention-related serious adverse events, and (5) 80% or greater response rates to questionnaires. Secondary clinical and patient knowledge outcomes were collected (via email or text) at baseline, six weeks, and 12 weeks (for clinical and patient knowledge), and within-group change was reported descriptively.

Results: We enrolled 36 of 38 (95%) eligible participants and all participants were recruited within a 3-week period. Of the 36 participants, 12 participants were allocated to each of the three trial arms. The mean age of participants was between 51 and 56 years, and 83% (10/12) to 92% (11/12) were female. Retention at the 12-week endpoint was 94% (34/36) and response to email questionnaires at other time points was 83% or greater. We found acceptable adherence (defined as greater than 70% of participants performing exercise 2 or 3 times/week) in the recommended care group with telerehabilitation but not in the recommended care group without telerehabilitation. There was a total of 24 adverse events over 108 person-months of observation. All adverse...
events were mild or moderate (mainly muscle and shoulder symptoms), with the exception of one instance of elective surgery (unrelated to the person’s shoulder condition).

Conclusions: Our prespecified success criteria were met or exceeded, but there was a gender imbalance toward women. It is feasible to progress to a fully powered trial, but strategies to address the gender imbalance need to be implemented.

Trial Registration: Australian New Zealand Clinical Trials Registry (ACTRN12620000248965); https://tinyurl.com/yy6eztf5

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e24311 doi:10.2196/24311

KEYWORDS
rotator cuff; tendinopathy; shoulder; teledicine; telerehabilitation; randomized controlled trial; pilot; feasibility; pain; internet-delivered intervention

Introduction

Rotator cuff–related shoulder pain (RCRSP) is a common and disabling musculoskeletal condition. The estimated point prevalence of shoulder pain among adults is between 15% and 27% [1], and RCRSP is regarded as the most common cause, accounting for 70% of cases [2]. RCRSP can severely limit work and daily functions, including dressing and personal care, and can lead to substantial societal burden through utilization of health care resources and work absenteeism [1,3]. Up to 40% of those affected experience ongoing pain and disability beyond 12 months and many eventually require further interventional care (eg, injection, surgery) [1]. The estimated annual cost of managing shoulder pain is US $5,234.54 per person in 2009, and this is heavily influenced by sick leave and surgical costs [4].

Clinical practice guidelines recommend up to 12 weeks of conservative care (activity, medication, and exercise) for first presentation of RCRSP prior to considering imaging or surgery [5-7]. In contrast, high rates of imaging for first presentation of RCRSP were observed in a general practitioner (GP) database study (55%) [8] and a survey of GPs (82%) [9], both undertaken in Australia. One in 6 GPs would also refer for surgical opinion [9]. These imaging and surgical referral practices involve significant costs and, in some cases, unnecessary surgery [10], and may partly explain the doubling of rotator cuff–related surgeries and tripling of associated costs in Western Australia in just over a decade (2001-2013) [11].

Although the decision is multifactorial, one reason clinicians provide care is that not guideline recommended is to appease patients [12,13]. Pressure from patients for imaging and surgical referrals may stem from beliefs about the relevance of pathoanatomy and imaging findings [14,15]. Further, patients’ beliefs about expected outcomes are strong predictors of conservative care outcomes for shoulder pain [16] and RCRSP [17]. Educating patients directly about their condition and recommended care has the potential to improve health literacy, quality of care, and health outcomes [18-20]. Additionally, patient-directed education circumvents clinician-related barriers to recommended care that can be challenging to influence.

By increasing access to guideline-recommended care, internet-based delivery of patient-directed recommended care may improve quality of care and outcomes. Internet-based delivery of patient-direct recommended care is convenient and enables care delivery to people in rural and remote regions [21-23]. However, internet delivery of health care (eg, for low back pain and chronic pain) has demonstrated heterogeneous effects on health care use and clinical outcomes [24,25]. Telerehabilitation may improve outcomes of internet-based care delivery [26] and reduce attrition [27] and may be able to replace face-to-face care that includes exercise [21] while reducing costs [28]. Further, group-based telerehabilitation may be more cost-effective and includes an opportunity for peer-to-peer support, and its outcomes are comparable with those for individual care for musculoskeletal conditions [29]. Internet-based delivery of care with or without telerehabilitation has the potential to improve quality of care and outcomes for people with RCRSP, but it is not known whether investigating these interventions in RCRSP is feasible.

The primary aim of this study was to assess the feasibility of a future substantive randomized controlled trial (RCT) comparing the effectiveness of three internet-delivered interventions for RCRSP (advice only, recommended care, and recommended care with telerehabilitation). Primary feasibility aims included assessing (1) rates of conversion and recruitment, (2) levels of adherence, (3) rate of retention, (4) incidence of adverse events, and (5) response rates to questionnaires. A secondary aim was to explore any signals of treatment effect and variability in clinical outcomes at 6 and 12 weeks.

Methods

Study Design

The study was a 3-arm, parallel-group pilot and feasibility RCT. Study design and reporting were in accordance with the Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT) eHealth guidelines [30] and extension for randomized pilot and feasibility trials [31], as well as the Consensus on Exercise Reporting Template (CERT) [32]. The trial protocol was prospectively registered on February 26, 2020, at the Australian New Zealand Clinical Trials Registry (ACTRN12620000248965). Ethical approval was granted by the Monash University Human Ethics Committee (No. 22338).

Recruitment Strategy and Incentive

Thirty-six community-dwelling people with RCRSP were recruited and randomized into 3 groups (12 individuals per group). Recruitment was via a paid Facebook campaign. To compensate them for their time, participants were incentivized by receiving an Aus $100 (US $70) shopping voucher on completion of their 12-week questionnaire (regardless of other
outcome data returned). This strategy was considered important to improve participant retention [33-35].

**Internet Eligibility Screening**

Inclusion was based on the following question set (they were excluded if they answered one or more questions with the response indicated in parenthesis): (1) Has your shoulder problem been diagnosed by a health professional as frozen shoulder, arthritis, a labral tear, instability? (yes), (2) Is your shoulder pain a result of a shoulder dislocation? (yes), (3) Is your shoulder pain mainly around the area shown in the photos (anterolateral upper arm/shoulder pain)? (no), (4) Is your shoulder pain made worse by neck movement? (yes), (5) Is your shoulder pain brought on by moving your arm above your head? (no), and (6) Are you able to lift your arm to the height in the photo (90 degrees of elevation)? (no). The last question was designed to exclude people with massive rotator cuff tears involving multiple tendons or frozen shoulder [7]. People who were younger than 18 years, had shoulder pain for less than 3 months, had had prior surgery for their currently most symptomatic shoulder, or who had another complaint more troubling than their shoulder were excluded. People were also excluded if they indicated that they were severely depressed; taking recreational drugs, oral steroids (eg, prednisolone), or blood thinning medications (eg, warfarin); had angina, heart problems, or severe middle abdominal or upper back pain; had a history of cancer; had recent dizziness, blurred vision, slurred speech, difficulty swallowing, falls, or unsteadiness; or had a recent seizure. People excluded were advised to seek advice from their GP.

**Telerehabilitation Eligibility Screening**

We undertook a 20-minute teleconference (Zoom) session with participants to check answers to questions 1 to 6 described above (regardless of answers to these questions). This was only done with people who passed the remaining online screening questions.

**Randomization**

Participants who passed both screening stages completed an electronic consent form and were then eligible to be randomized. We utilized the two-stage Zelen randomization process in order to minimize refusal to participate related to randomization and reduce attrition (which is relatively common in the context of internet-based interventions) related to resentful demoralization in the active control group. Eligible participants were initially informed and consented to participate in a single-cohort study involving the advice-only group. The cohort was then randomized into the three groups. People randomized to one of the two intervention groups were invited to join their allocated group and were provided with information about the recommended care provided in these groups. If they agreed, they completed a second electronic consent form specific to their group allocation. Randomization was via a computer-generated random number sequence. To ensure allocation concealment, a researcher who had no contact or knowledge of any characteristics of the participants performed the randomization. Once participants were randomized, the independent researcher accessed the trial database and randomized the 36 included participants. The same researcher then initiated (via emails to the participants) treatment for people in the advice-only and recommended care groups, and allocated (randomly) 3 participants to each of the 4 physiotherapists providing care in the recommended care and telerehabilitation group.

**Blinding**

The trial was single-blind (assessors), as all outcomes were collected via self-report questionnaires. Clinicians providing the telerehabilitation intervention were aware of treatment allocation. Because of the Zelen design, all participants perceived receiving an intervention, and participants in the recommended care groups knew their intervention contained additional components.

**Baseline Assessment**

Baseline assessment was via an online questionnaire and included demographic factors, medical history, site and duration of symptoms, previous treatments, and baseline outcomes (described below).

**Internet Intervention Content Development**

Content was based on available guidelines, systematic reviews and consensus statements [5-7,36-41]. In developing the education intervention, we also sought the views of 8 international clinical shoulder researchers (semistructured interviews) [42] and 8 patients with RCRSP (focus group).

**Internet Intervention Format and Testing**

Interventions included text, infographics, and videos (created with Powtoon animation software; Powtoon Ltd). Following development of the content for each of the groups, the international clinical shoulder researchers and patients were invited to provide feedback regarding the accuracy, adequacy, and clarity of the content. The Patient Education Materials Assessment Tool (PEMAT) was used to assess understandability and actionability of the multimedia education content [43]. Minor changes were made (layout and wording) based on clinician and patient feedback and the PEMAT results.

**Internet-Based Interventions**

Each of the internet-based interventions was 12 weeks in duration.

**Advice Only**

The advice-only group received education about the rotator cuff muscles and risk factors (Multimedia Appendix 1) and advice about modifying general and work-related activities (Multimedia Appendix 2) consistent with current guidelines [5,6]. Activity modification was labelled an intervention so that participants perceived that they were receiving treatment. Participants were advised to continue day-to-day and work activities if pain during these tasks was “acceptable” (a score of 4 or less on an 11-point numerical rating scale, with 10 representing worst pain imaginable) [44]. It was also acceptable for pain after activity to increase if it returned to pre-exercise levels within a reasonable period [44]. Participants were advised to stop or modify (ie, reduce volume of) activities until they could be performed with acceptable pain.
**Advice With Recommended Care**

Recommended care included exercise (described below) and education about the causes of RCRSP and pain mechanisms, as well as education about exercise and other treatments and their effectiveness and potential harms (Multimedia Appendix 3). Emphasis was on addressing knowledge gaps and barriers and enablers to recommended care. For example, challenging participants’ understanding of the relevance of tendon structure and imaging [15], expectations from exercise interventions, and pain and exercise self-efficacy [16]. The education intervention was informed by adult learning theory [45] and evidenced-based principles of self-management and cognitive behavioral therapy [46].

**Advice With Recommended Care and Telerehabilitation**

The group receiving recommended care and telerehabilitation was identical to the recommended care group, but it also received a weekly telerehabilitation session with a physiotherapist via free videoconferencing software (Zoom; Zoom Video Communications Inc). Participants were provided with information about how to set up the telerehabilitation environment, including how to position their phone, tablet, or laptop (desktops were discouraged), video settings, and camera angle. Prior to starting, the telerehabilitation environment was extensively piloted for this context. In the first two rehabilitation sessions (60 minutes each), the physiotherapists presented PowerPoint slides (screensharing via Zoom) providing education about RCRSP (Session 1: Understanding RCRSP and the treatments available; Session 2: Exercise and self-management). In the remaining sessions (30 minutes each), the physiotherapists prompted discussion about pain and pathology beliefs, exercise expectations, and individual physical activity goals, as well as monitoring and providing feedback regarding exercise fidelity.

**Exercise Intervention**

The exercise approach was identical for the recommended care and recommended care and telerehabilitation groups and was based on available evidence and expert consensus [37-40,47]. Two exercises were included (Figure 1): shoulder elevation in standing position from 10 to 150 degrees, and external rotation in side-lying position, full range. Elevation was performed as shoulder abduction, scapular plane elevation or flexion, depending on acceptable pain response (as defined above) and patients’ preference. Progression and regression were based on pain or how difficult the exercise was (Multimedia Appendix 4). If pain during exercise was 5 or greater on the 11-point numerical rating scale or the exercise was too difficult (allocated repetitions could not be completed), the following modifications were trialed (in this order): (1) reduce load if participant was using a weight, (2) reduce range of motion and/or the number of repetitions, or (3) revert to isometric hold exercise. This process was reversed to progress exercise when the pain was acceptable or the allocated volume did not achieve muscular fatigue (defined below). Participants were instructed to perform the exercises 3 times per week for 12 weeks: 3 sets of 15 repetitions and 4 seconds per cycle for isotonic exercises (2-second concentric and 2-second eccentric phase) or 6 sets of 30 seconds for isometric exercise, with a 2-minute rest between each set. Fatigue was defined as self-reported inability to complete a further complete repetition. Participants were encouraged to use a heavier weight if they felt they could do 17 repetitions or more, or a lighter weight if they could do 13 repetitions or fewer. Participants were advised to adjust the weight in 0.5 kg or 1 kg increments and use their own dumbbells at home or an empty container (eg, large plastic milk container) filled with water until it approximated the desired weight. Participants entered pain and fatigue data onto the website (Multimedia Appendix 5) prior to commencing the exercise session and after each set of exercise, and the algorithm provided guidance on progression and regression.
Behavioral Strategies for Intervention Groups

Strategies to improve adherence included an interactive website-based exercise progression and regression tool with built-in electronic exercise diary (Multimedia Appendix 5), allowing patients some choice in exercise selection (ie, elevation plane), challenging cognitions and beliefs that might impact adherence (eg, pain beliefs or fear avoidance, as described above), and providing regular feedback and monitoring (telerehabilitation group) [48].

Physiotherapist Recruitment and Training

Four registered physiotherapists working in primary care settings with experience managing shoulder conditions were recruited to deliver the telerehabilitation interventions. The physiotherapists participated in four 1-hour training sessions via teleconference to learn about the intervention and standardize the delivery of care.

Primary Feasibility Outcomes

The following outcomes (based on a high-quality trial undertaken in the same geographical region and using similar recruitment strategies [49]) were used to determine feasibility (ie, yes, no, or modifications required) for a substantive RCT:

- the number of eligible participants who consented and were randomized (feasible defined as 20% or greater).
- exercise adherence—participants were asked whether they completed 0, 1, 2, or 3 or more of the 3 prescribed sessions per week; acceptable adherence was defined as 70% or more participants in a group completing 2 or more prescribed exercise sessions) per week.
- rate of retention (feasible defined as 80% or greater).
- response rates to questionnaire outcomes (feasible defined as 80% or greater).
- incidence of adverse events—adverse events were defined as any symptom experienced during the trial that may or may not be causally related to the intervention; the frequency (number of participants and number of adverse events), type (eg, muscle soreness), and severity (mild: lasting less than 7 consecutive days; moderate: lasting 7 consecutive days or longer; severe: results in death, life-threatening complication, hospitalization, surgery, permanent or temporary physical disability, congenital abnormalities, or any findings the research team believed could lead to significant health hazards).

Adverse events and adherence were reported via email questionnaire at 4, 8, and 12 weeks.
Outcomes for Economic Evaluation

Outcomes for economic evaluation were included to assess the feasibility of collection in a future full-scale trial (feasible defined as a response rate of 80% or greater). Health care use related to RCRSP was assessed with a patient questionnaire. Productivity (including absenteeism and presenteeism) was measured using the iMTA Productivity Cost Questionnaire [50]. These outcomes were collected via email questionnaire at 4, 8, and 12 weeks. Costs were divided into direct costs (intervention related and other) and indirect costs (including absenteeism and presenteeism). Physiotherapists’ hourly rate was assumed to be Aus $150 (US $106) and average Australian hourly rate to be Aus $60 (US $42).

Secondary Clinical Outcomes

Clinical outcomes were assessed at baseline, 6 weeks, and 12 weeks via email questionnaire as follows:

- pain and function—measured with the Shoulder Pain and Disability Index (SPADI), a validated questionnaire [51] that has been used extensively among people with RCRSP; the minimal clinically important difference (MCID) for SPADI among people with RCRSP is reported to be between 8 and 13 points [52].
- global rating of change—measured using the patient Global Rating of Change (GROC) 11-point Likert scale [53]; participants were asked to rate how their shoulder pain had changed since receiving the intervention.
- worst pain in the last 7 days—measured using the 100-mm visual analog scale (VAS; zero=no pain, 100=worst pain possible).
- health-related quality of life—measured with the EuroQol 5D-5L (EQ5D), a validated and reliable tool [54], including 5 domains (mobility, self-care, usual activities, pain/discomfort, and anxiety/depression).
- kinesiophobia (fear of movement)—measured with the Tampa Scale for Kinesiophobia (TSK), which has been validated among people with musculoskeletal pain [55].
- pain catastrophizing—measured with the Pain Catastrophizing Scale (PCS), a validated measure of pain catastrophizing [56].
- pain self-efficacy—measured with the reliable, valid, and responsive short form of the Pain Self-Efficacy Questionnaire (PSEQ) [57].
- RCRSP knowledge—assessed with a custom knowledge test at 0 (pre- and immediately post-education), 6, and 12 weeks. The questionnaire was developed based on the patient knowledge questionnaire for patients with osteoarthritis (OA) [58] and included 16 multiple-choice questions (6 questions about the disease, eg, risks and symptoms, and 10 questions about treatments, and treatment efficacies and harms). Psychometric properties of this scale were evaluated and deemed acceptable. If participants did not complete email questionnaires within 7 days, they were reminded via email (2 emails/week) and later via a phone call.

Statistical Analysis

Data were analyzed using SPSS (version 25; IBM Corp). Frequencies and proportions were found for categorical data, means and SDs for continuous data, and medians and IQRs for ordinal data. This pilot RCT was not powered to detect comparative treatment effects; however, within-group mean differences and 95% CIs as well as within-group standardized mean differences (SMDs, mean difference/pooled SD) were reported for change between baseline and 6 weeks and between baseline and 12 weeks. The SMD was interpreted in the following way: 0.2=small effect, 0.5=moderate effect, 0.8=large effect, and 1.2=very large effect [59]. The GROC was dichotomized, where a successful outcome was defined as “moderately better,” “much better,” or “very much better” on this scale [53].

Results

Demographic data for the 36 participants recruited are shown in Table 1. The mean age of participants was 53.9 (SD 12.0) years and 89% (32/36) of the cohort was female.
Table 1. Demographic information of study participants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demographic factor</th>
<th>Advice only (n=12)</th>
<th>Recommended care (n=12)</th>
<th>Recommended care and telerehabilitation (n=12)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>53.7 (11.5)</td>
<td>51.3 (13.7)</td>
<td>56.6 (11.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female, n (%)</td>
<td>11 (92)</td>
<td>10 (83)</td>
<td>11 (92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (cm), mean (SD)</td>
<td>166.3 (7.0)</td>
<td>170.8 (11.8)</td>
<td>165.1 (8.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass (kg), mean (SD)</td>
<td>84.3 (24.7)</td>
<td>74.9 (16.9)</td>
<td>76.4 (12.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI (kg/m²), mean (SD)</td>
<td>30.9 (10.3)</td>
<td>25.9 (5.7)</td>
<td>28.0 (4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employed, n (%)</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
<td>8 (67)</td>
<td>5 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residence, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban</td>
<td>7 (58)</td>
<td>9 (75)</td>
<td>9 (75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other urban</td>
<td>4 (25)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>3 (25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected/worst side is right side, n (%)</td>
<td>8 (67)</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
<td>7 (58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of symptoms (weeks), mean (SD)</td>
<td>27.6 (17.1)</td>
<td>42.5 (17.7)</td>
<td>33.8 (20.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior exercise treatment, n (%)</td>
<td>8 (67)</td>
<td>8 (67)</td>
<td>9 (75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior activity modification, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>5 (42)</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior shoulder imaging, n (%)</td>
<td>3 (25)</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
<td>3 (25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPADI, mean (SD)</td>
<td>30.6 (17.7)</td>
<td>37.3 (16.7)</td>
<td>41.8 (19.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worst pain in the previous week, mean (SD)</td>
<td>5.4 (2.8)</td>
<td>7.5 (2.0)</td>
<td>6.3 (3.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comorbidities, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteoarthritis</td>
<td>5 (42)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>3 (25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory bowel disease</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibromyalgia</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypercholesterolemia</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>5 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>1 (8)</td>
<td>3 (25)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Primary Feasibility Outcomes

Rate of Conversion and Recruitment

The CONSORT flow diagram is shown in Figure 2. The total cost of the Facebook advertising campaign was Aus $2,146.02 (US $1512.94). The campaign was active for 21 days over 4 weeks—average cost of Aus $59.61 (US $42.03) per participant recruited—which generated 71,201 impressions and 2492 clicks to the trial site. There were 68 potentially eligible participants who were screened via teleconference, of which 38 were eligible and 36 consented to participate (rate of conversion=36/38=95% of eligible participants recruited). All 36 participants were recruited in 1 calendar month.
Retention and Email Questionnaire Response Rates

The questionnaire data at 12 weeks were submitted via email by 34 participants (34/36, 94% retention). Response to email questionnaires at 4 weeks (32/36, 88%), 6 weeks (32/36, 88%), and 8 weeks (30/36, 83%) were also acceptable.

Exercise and Telerehabilitation Adherence

Acceptable exercise adherence was achieved in the recommended care group (11/12, 92%) but not without telerehabilitation (8/12, 67%) (Figure 3). One-third (4/12, 33%) of people in the recommended care without telerehabilitation group performed no exercise at all. A mean of 10.6 (SD 1.4) out of 12 (88%) teleconference sessions were attended.
Figure 3. Exercise adherence in patients receiving recommended care and recommended care with telerehabilitation.

Adverse Events

Adverse events reported were classified as either mild or moderate (Table 2). There was 1 serious adverse event—a participant in the recommended care with telerehabilitation group had elective surgery (brain surgery unrelated to RCRSP) and was absent from the trial for approximately 3 weeks. Other adverse events in all 3 groups could be categorized as either increased shoulder symptoms or muscle soreness around the shoulder, with the exception of 2 incidences of back pain in the advice-only group.

Table 2. Adverse events and co-interventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverse event or co-intervention measure</th>
<th>Advice only</th>
<th>Recommended care</th>
<th>Recommended care and telerehabilitation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participants reporting adverse event</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
<td>4 (33)</td>
<td>6 (50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total number of adverse events</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>7 (70)</td>
<td>4 (57)</td>
<td>6 (75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>3 (30)</td>
<td>3 (43)</td>
<td>1 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serious</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>0 (0)</td>
<td>1 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-intervention, n (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participants using co-interventions</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total number of co-interventions</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therapy sessions</td>
<td>9 (64)</td>
<td>9 (56)</td>
<td>9 (60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other interventions</td>
<td>1 (7)</td>
<td>5 (31)</td>
<td>3 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodes of medication use</td>
<td>4 (29)</td>
<td>2 (13)</td>
<td>3 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participants using medication, n (%)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
<td>2 (17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total number of days of medication usea</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aFrom a total of 1080 person-days (12 participants x 90-day study period).

Feasibility of Future Economic Evaluation

The response to health service use questionnaires and iMTA Productivity Cost was acceptable (greater than 80%), indicating it is just as feasible to collect economic outcomes from this population as it is clinical outcomes. Direct costs were Aus $195.64 (SD 224.25; US $137.93), absenteeism was Aus $223.33 (SD 864.41; US $157.45), and presenteeism was Aus $430.23 (SD 752.61; US $303.31) per person across the cohort.
Secondary clinical outcomes

Data for secondary outcomes are presented in Figure 4 and Table 3.

The median knowledge test score was between 6 and 9 of a possible 16 points on the baseline test (Figure 5). Immediately after exposure to the education intervention, the median increased to 14 or 15 points in the groups receiving the recommended care, with a smaller increase in the advice-only group.

**Figure 4.** Global rating of change.
Table 3. Secondary outcomes (reported as mean [SD]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Advice only</th>
<th>Recommended care</th>
<th>Recommended care and telementorization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPADI</strong>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>30.6 (17.7)</td>
<td>37.3 (16.7)</td>
<td>41.8 (19.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>32.9 (19.9)</td>
<td>27.3 (18.5)</td>
<td>15.0 (9.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>26.6 (22.3)</td>
<td>21.7 (17.8)</td>
<td>12.9 (6.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>2.3 (−9.5 to 14.1)</td>
<td>−14.0 (−26.7 to −1.3)</td>
<td>−26.9 (−39.2 to −14.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−4.8 (−20.3 to 10.8)</td>
<td>−16.0 (−26.0 to −6.0)</td>
<td>−28.9 (−40.9 to −28.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMDb baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Worst pain in previous 7 days</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>56.8 (17.9)</td>
<td>51.6 (22.4)</td>
<td>59.7 (21.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>55.7 (22.2)</td>
<td>41.5 (22.2)</td>
<td>31.9 (23.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>41.8 (23.1)</td>
<td>44.8 (28.1)</td>
<td>28.1 (25.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−0.2 (–11.3 to 10.9)</td>
<td>−9.3 (−34.9 to 16.29)</td>
<td>−26.8 (−44.8 to −8.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−15.8 (−33.1 to 1.5)</td>
<td>−3.2 (−19.7 to 13.4)</td>
<td>−31.6 (−49.89 to −13.28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TSK</strong>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>36.0 (7.0)</td>
<td>35.2 (5.8)</td>
<td>35.5 (6.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>37.3 (6.6)</td>
<td>31.5 (8.9)</td>
<td>32.6 (7.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>36.3 (6.5)</td>
<td>30.6 (5.7)</td>
<td>31.1 (6.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−0.2 (−4.2 to 3.8)</td>
<td>−4.8 (−8.8 to −0.8)</td>
<td>−3.6 (−7.2 to 0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−1.9 (−5.9 to 2.1)</td>
<td>−5.0 (−7.0 to −3.0)</td>
<td>−4.4 (−8.8 to −0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PCS</strong>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>7.3 (9.2)</td>
<td>4.6 (5.8)</td>
<td>4.8 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>8.8 (10.5)</td>
<td>6.0 (10.5)</td>
<td>3.7 (3.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>5.1 (0.5 to 9.7)</td>
<td>2.7 (1.1 to 4.2)</td>
<td>4.0 (1.0 to 7.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>0.6 (−1.1 to 2.3)</td>
<td>0.1 (−1.8 to 2.0)</td>
<td>−1.6 (−3.1 to 0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−3.4 (−7.3 to 0.5)</td>
<td>−2.0 (−4.6 to 0.6)</td>
<td>−0.8 (−3.3 to 1.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PSEQ</strong>e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>50.4 (9.4)</td>
<td>50.1 (9.3)</td>
<td>52.3 (6.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>49.7 (6.4)</td>
<td>51 (7.6)</td>
<td>55.1 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>50.5 (7.9)</td>
<td>54.8 (6.5)</td>
<td>55.6 (5.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−1.1 (−5.1 to 2.9)</td>
<td>1.7 (−7.2 to 10.5)</td>
<td>3.6 (0.8 to 6.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>1.3 (−4.1 to 6.7)</td>
<td>4.2 (−1.6 to 9.9)</td>
<td>3.3 (1.0 to 5.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EQ5D</strong>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Discussion

Principal Findings

Based on our predefined progression criteria, conducting a full-scale RCT to evaluate delivery of care via the internet and telerehabilitation for RCRSP is feasible. Prespecified rates of conversion (36/38, 96%; criterion of greater than 20%), recruitment (36 per month), and retention (34/36, 94%; criterion of greater than 80%) were high, and there were acceptable responses to questionnaire outcomes at all time points (30/36, 83% or higher; criterion of greater than 80%). Adherence was acceptable (2 to 3 sessions per week among more than 70% of participants) for the group receiving recommended care with telerehabilitation (11/12, 92%) but not for the group receiving recommended care without telerehabilitation (8/12, 67%). The trial was not powered to investigate between-group differences, but we have reported descriptive variability and within-group change data for clinical outcomes in accordance with pilot trial recommendations [60].

Although recruitment was efficient using our social media strategy, there was a gender imbalance favoring women (32/36, 89%). A systematic review of health behavior change interventions also reported much higher participation among women even though both genders were targeted via a social media campaign [61]. Addressing gender balance is an important consideration for a future full-scale trial to ensure that the findings are generalizable to the population with RCRSP. There are reports that men are more likely to respond to Facebook ads that utilize concise text and appeal to leadership themes and masculine themes, and less likely to respond to unisex ads [62]. Facebook also enables targeting ads only to men and this could be used during a full-scale trial if gender imbalance emerged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Advice only</th>
<th>Recommended care</th>
<th>Recommended care and telerehabilitation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baseline</td>
<td>0.76 (0.11)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.13)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 6</td>
<td>0.73 (0.12)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.12)</td>
<td>0.77 (0.11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week 12</td>
<td>0.73 (0.09)</td>
<td>0.77 (0.13)</td>
<td>0.78 (0.07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 6 weeks (95% CI)</td>
<td>−0.02 (−0.10 to 0.06)</td>
<td>0.02 (−0.08 to 0.12)</td>
<td>0.05 (−0.02 to 0.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference at 12–weeks, (95% CI)</td>
<td>−0.02 (−0.14 to 0.10)</td>
<td>0.01 (−0.10 to 0.12)</td>
<td>0.03 (−0.02 to 0.09)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 6</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMD baseline-week 12</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aSPADI: shoulder pain and disability index.
bSMD: standardized mean difference.
cTSK: Tampa Scale for Kinesiophobia.
dPCS: Pain Catastrophizing Scale.
ePSEQ: Pain Self-Efficacy Questionnaire.
fEQ5D: EuroQol 5D-5L.

Figure 5. Knowledge test change over time. post: postintervention; pre: preintervention; wk: week.
By removing cost and travel barriers, our internet and remote interventions may have promoted health-seeking behavior among people who would not ordinarily seek care. Our participants were slightly younger (mean age 54 years versus 60 years) and had slightly lower SPADI scores (37 versus 43) compared with a large, high-quality trial that recruited people with RCRSP via primary care from the same geographic region [49]. However, more people in our trial had tried exercise or physiotherapy treatment (69% versus 38%) [49], indicating that most of our cohort is representative of people who seek care for RCRSP. Nevertheless, strategies to increase the RCRSP severity of people recruited (eg, a minimum SPADI score as an inclusion criterion) may increase the extent to which our cohort is representative of people who seek care for this condition in primary care.

The Zelen randomization design that we used (theoretically) provides two key design advantages: (1) it improves recruitment rates by avoiding consent refusal related to simple randomization, and (2) it reduces attrition (and therefore selection bias) related to resentful demoralization among people in the control group [63]. This approach may have contributed to the efficiency of recruitment and high retention in this feasibility trial. Opting to remain in the original group rather than joining the group that people are randomized to (also referred to as crossover) is another potential issue with the Zelen design [63], but 100% of people accepted the offer of randomization in our trial. A potential limitation of the Zelen design is that people offered additional treatment perceive this as superior to the original care they consented to, but this can be mitigated by careful wording of the trial information to introduce uncertainty about the comparative efficacy of the interventions being tested. Overall, we recommend that researchers consider Zelen’s design for internet-based interventions where recruitment and retention may be challenging (eg, where there is no human contact).

Efficient recruitment and high retention rates may also be related to the monetary incentive (Aus $100 [US $70] for 12-week outcomes). Previous systematic reviews have reported that monetary incentives can improve retention rates for studies that utilise postal or electronic questionnaires [33-35]. We employed this strategy because of the substantial attrition rates that have been reported in some trials investigating internet interventions aimed at improving health outcomes, including interventions for musculoskeletal conditions [26,64,65]. For example, 45% attrition was reported at 3 months for an internet-delivered physical activity intervention for knee OA [66]. Although we have no knowledge of rates of attrition without the monetary incentive, attrition may be an issue for our interventions, particularly the advice-only intervention (active control).

Contact with a physiotherapist may explain the higher exercise adherence in the group receiving telerehabilitation. Consistent with our findings, there are reports of low adherence for internet-only interventions [67], and a recent study found that website-based exercise with remote physiotherapist support improved adherence (at 4 weeks) compared with the provision of a leaflet explaining the exercises [68]. Participants in our study may have perceived value in telerehabilitation (eg, improved explanation, reassurance, feedback, monitoring, individualization, and peer support). Alternatively, our findings may be explained by Hawthorne effects [69]. We used behavioral strategies to improve adherence in the internet intervention (eg, electronic exercise diary, addressing beliefs), although “persuasive technologies” such as electronic reminders or tailoring to individual users’ needs or personalities may further improve adherence in the group receiving recommended care without telerehabilitation [70].

**Comparison With Prior Work**

There are numerous internet-only delivery of care interventions targeted toward people with chronic pain as well as OA, but feasibility (retention and adherence) and outcomes have been mixed [26,66,71]. There is also evidence that care for people with musculoskeletal conditions can be successfully delivered via telerehabilitation. Cottrell et al [21] reviewed trials investigating telerehabilitation interventions for musculoskeletal conditions (knee OA, neck pain) and after shoulder and knee joint surgery. The review concluded that the telerehabilitation-only interventions, which are comparable with our recommended care and telerehabilitation group, were equivalent to face-to-face care for function outcomes. Our intervention is novel in that it blends internet, telerehabilitation, and group-based care delivery for RCRSP.

**Strengths**

The content of our education intervention was informed by stakeholders, including patients, clinicians, or researchers with expertise in shoulder pain management [42]. Stakeholders helped to determine the education needs for people with RCRSP and subsequently assessed accuracy and clarity of the content and delivery modes. The exercises were based on consensus statements [37,38], systematic reviews [36,39-41], practice guidelines [5-7], and a protocol for a high-quality trial currently underway in the United Kingdom [72]. The intervention incorporated only two exercises to ensure simplicity for the internet-only delivery mode and included behavioral strategies to increase exercise adherence [72].

**Limitations**

This trial design has limitations. First, generalizability to a primary care population may be improved by implementing strategies to improve the gender balance and recruit people with greater RCRSP severity (as discussed above). Second, we did not measure adherence to recommendations to modify activity behavior (the only intervention component in the advice-only group), which may help to explain findings in this group. Third, the findings may be influenced by placebo and contextual factors given that participants in the intervention groups were aware that they were allocated to an intervention involving additional evidence-based care. In our pragmatic trial design, we chose a control intervention that represents an acceptable standard of care [73]. Fourth, diagnosis was based on remote screening (online and teleconference). Although it was based on guidelines [7], this remote method has not been tested.

**Conclusion**

Our prespecified success criteria were met or exceeded but there was a gender imbalance toward women. It is feasible to progress...
to a fully powered trial, but strategies to address the gender imbalance need to be implemented.

Acknowledgments

Funding for this study was provided by an Arthritis Australia Project Grant (Aus $30,000 [US $21,150] and an Australian Physiotherapy Association Physiotherapy Research Fund Seed Grant (Aus $11,840 [US $8347]).

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Educational materials for advice-only group.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 835 KB - mhealth_v8i11e24311_app1.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 2

Activity-modification guide for advice-only group.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 983 KB - mhealth_v8i11e24311_app2.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 3

Educational materials for recommended care group.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 976 KB - mhealth_v8i11e24311_app3.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 4

Progression and regression criteria for exercise.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 62 KB - mhealth_v8i11e24311_app4.pdf]

Multimedia Appendix 5

Website interface of exercise progression and regression tool with built-in electronic exercise diary.

[PNG File, 309 KB - mhealth_v8i11e24311_app5.png]

References


51. Angst F, Schwyzer H, Aeschlimann A, Simmen BR, Goldhahn J. Measures of adult shoulder function: Disabilities of the Arm, Shoulder, and Hand Questionnaire (DASH) and its short version (QuickDASH), Shoulder Pain and Disability Index (SPADI), American Shoulder and Elbow Surgeons (ASES) Society standardized shoulder assessment form, Constant (Murley) Score (CS), Simple Shoulder Test (SST), Oxford Shoulder Score (OSS), Shoulder Disability Questionnaire (SDQ), and Western Ontario Shoulder Instability Index (WOSI). Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken) 2011 Nov;63 Suppl 11:S174-S188 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.1002/acr.20630] [Medline: 22588743]


**Abbreviations**

- **Aus $**: Australian dollars
- **CERT**: Consensus on Exercise Recording Template
- **CONSORT**: Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials
- **EQSD**: EuroQol 5D-5L
- **GP**: general practitioner
- **GROC**: Global Rating of Change

iPCQ: iMTA Productivity Cost Questionnaire
MCID: minimal clinically important difference
OA: osteoarthritis
PCS: Pain Catastrophizing Scale
PEMAT: Patient Education Materials Assessment Tool
PSEQ: Pain Self-Efficacy Questionnaire
RCRSP: rotator cuff–related shoulder pain
RCT: randomized controlled trial
SMD: standardized mean difference
SPADI: shoulder pain and disability index
TSK: Tampa Scale for Kinesiophobia
VAS: visual analog scale

©Peter Malliaras, Kate Cridland, Ruben Hopmans, Simon Ashton, Chris Littlewood, Richard Page, Ian Harris, Helen Skouteris, Terry Haines. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 18.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Implementation of Telerehabilitation Interventions for the Self-Management of Cardiovascular Disease: Systematic Review

Narayan Subedi¹, MPH; Jonathan C Rawstorn¹, PhD; Lan Gao², PhD; Harriet Koorts¹, PhD; Ralph Maddison¹, PhD

¹School of Exercise and Nutrition Sciences, Faculty of Health, Deakin University, Melbourne, Australia
²School of Health and Social Development, Faculty of Health, Deakin University, Melbourne, Australia

Corresponding Author:
Narayan Subedi, MPH
School of Exercise and Nutrition Sciences
Faculty of Health
Deakin University
221 Burwood Highway
Burwood Victoria
Melbourne, 3125
Australia
Phone: 61 404745397
Email: nsubedi@deakin.edu.au

Abstract

Background: Coronary heart disease (CHD) is a leading cause of disability and deaths worldwide. Secondary prevention, including cardiac rehabilitation (CR), is crucial to improve risk factors and to reduce disease burden and disability. Accessibility barriers contribute to underutilization of traditional center-based CR programs; therefore, alternative delivery models, including cardiac telerehabilitation (ie, delivery via mobile, smartphone, and/or web-based apps), have been tested. Experimental studies have shown cardiac telerehabilitation to be effective and cost-effective, but there is inadequate evidence about how to translate this research into routine clinical practice.

Objective: This systematic review aimed to synthesize research evaluating the effectiveness of implementing cardiac telerehabilitation interventions at scale in routine clinical practice, including factors underlying successful implementation processes, and experimental research evaluating implementation-related outcomes.

Methods: MEDLINE, Embase, PsycINFO, and Global Health databases were searched from 1990 through November 9, 2018, for studies evaluating the implementation of telerehabilitation for the self-management of CHD. Reference lists of included studies and relevant systematic reviews were hand searched to identify additional studies. Implementation outcomes of interest included acceptability, appropriateness, adoption, feasibility, fidelity, implementation cost, penetration, and sustainability. A narrative synthesis of results was carried out.

Results: No included studies evaluated the implementation of cardiac telerehabilitation in routine clinical practice. A total of 10 studies of 2250 participants evaluated implementation outcomes, including acceptability (8/10, 80%), appropriateness (9/10, 90%), adoption (6/10, 60%), feasibility (6/10, 60%), fidelity (7/10, 70%), and implementation cost (4/10, 40%), predominantly from the participant perspective. Cardiac telerehabilitation interventions had high acceptance among the majority of participants, but technical challenges such as reliable broadband internet connectivity can impact acceptability and feasibility. Many participants considered telerehabilitation to be an appropriate alternative CR delivery model, as it was convenient, flexible, and easy to access. Participants valued interactive intervention components, such as real-time exercise monitoring and feedback as well as individualized support. The penetration and sustainability of cardiac telerehabilitation, as well as the perspectives of CR practitioners and health care organizations, have received little attention in existing cardiac telerehabilitation research.

Conclusions: Experimental trials suggest that participants perceive cardiac telerehabilitation to be an acceptable and appropriate approach to improve the reach and utilization of CR, but pragmatic implementation studies are needed to understand how interventions can be sustainably translated from research into clinical practice. Addressing this gap could help realize the potential impact of telerehabilitation on CR accessibility and participation as well as person-centered, health, and economic outcomes.

Trial Registration: International Prospective Register of Systematic Reviews (PROSPERO) CRD42019124254; https://www.crd.york.ac.uk/prospero/display_record.php?RecordID=124254
Introduction

Cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) are a leading cause of clinical (ie, death and disability), health, and economic burden globally, accounting for approximately 31% (17.9 million) of total deaths each year [1-3]. Coronary heart disease (CHD), including myocardial infarction (MI) and angina, is the most common and burdensome form of CVD [4,5]. CHD accounts for a high proportion of all CVD deaths and more disability-adjusted life years than diseases such as cancer and diabetes [4-6]. Therefore, secondary prevention interventions that support CVD management are critical to reducing disease burden and health care expenditure.

Cardiac rehabilitation (CR) is an essential component of secondary prevention for CHD that comprises coordinated, multifaceted interventions designed to improve physical, psychological, and social functioning [7-12]. CR includes medical evaluation, exercise prescription, cardiac risk factor modification, education, and counseling [13]. CR is safe, effective [14], and more cost-effective than no CR on overall health service expenditure [15-17]. Systematic reviews have shown that participation in center-based programs (ie, face-to-face delivery) reduces risks of hospital admissions and cardiac mortality, and improves health-related quality of life [14,18].

Despite these benefits, uptake and adherence of center-based CR are suboptimal [19-21]. Reasons for this are multifaceted [22-26], but accessibility-related factors, such as limited availability of programs, transportation, and parking, are prominent [22,24-28]. For these reasons, home-based delivery models have been tested to improve access and participation outside of clinical settings [29].

Home-based CR, which typically includes print resources, home visits, and/or telephone calls, has been shown to be as effective as center-based programs for improving health-related quality of life, CVD risk factors, and mortality [30]. However, few CR services offer home-based options (eg, less than one-quarter in the United Kingdom, United States, and Australia [30,31]). In addition, home-based programs are typically unable to provide the level of supervision, individualized coaching, and feedback from CR professionals that is common in center-based programs. Therefore, alternative delivery models that combine the accessibility of home-based programs with the comprehensive support of center-based CR are needed.

The use of information and communication technologies (ICTs) to connect participants and CR professionals, which is termed cardiac telerehabilitation [32], has been investigated as an alternative. Systematic reviews have demonstrated the effectiveness of cardiac telerehabilitation for improving cardiovascular risk factors and health-related quality of life [33-37]. However, early telerehabilitation interventions were mostly limited to telephone counseling, which limits the types of rehabilitation support that can be provided [38]. Technological innovations including mobile phones, particularly smartphones, and mobile broadband [39,40] have enabled more flexible cardiac telerehabilitation interventions [36,41-43].

Recent studies using cutting-edge technologies, such as smartphones, mobile apps, and the internet, have demonstrated that cardiac telerehabilitation can deliver more comprehensive services [44], including individualized real-time exercise monitoring and coaching, similar to center-based programs [45]. Growing evidence indicates telerehabilitation could substantially broaden the benefits and impact of CR; however, most interventions have only been evaluated in controlled experimental settings (eg, [41-45]). There is little evidence to guide the successful, scalable, sustainable translation of telerehabilitation into real-world settings [46-48]; that is, there is a lack of studies that have tested telerehabilitation interventions when delivered by health care staff in routine clinical practice.

Real-world implementation of an intervention is contextually dependent, influenced by individual (ie, personal characteristics), organizational (ie, hospital or service organization), community (ie, local government), and system-level (ie, government) factors, all of which are difficult to control in experimental designs [49]. Many public health interventions fail to be adopted or are less likely to be scaled and sustained when delivered in real-world settings, and the complexities and challenges involved in real-world implementation and scale-up are partly responsible for this lack of translational success [50]. A greater understanding of factors related to the implementation of interventions in practice settings is imperative for increasing population-level impact [51].

The purpose of this review was to synthesize research evaluating the implementation of cardiac telerehabilitation interventions when delivered in routine clinical practice.

Methods

Registration

This review was registered in PROSPERO (International Prospective Register of Systematic Reviews) (CRD42019124254) before screening search results, and was conducted according to the PRISMA (Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses) statement [52,53].

Information Sources and Search Strategy

Electronic databases—MEDLINE, Embase, PsycINFO, and Global Health—were searched between January 1990 and November 9, 2018, for studies that combined three concepts: telehealth, CVD, and implementation science. The search strategy was created for MEDLINE and modified for the other databases (see Multimedia Appendix 1).
Eligibility and Study Selection

Eligible studies were those that evaluated the implementation of cardiac telerehabilitation in routine clinical practice or assessed implementation outcomes of interest in experimental studies, including randomized and nonrandomized designs, among adults (aged ≥18 years) with CHD (ie, MI, angina, and coronary revascularization).

Cardiac telerehabilitation interventions were defined as those with at least 50% of the program delivered via ICT, including any mobile phone (ie, feature phone or smartphone), web-based platforms, or wireless devices such as sensors. Implementation in routine clinical practice was defined as interventions delivered as part of existing CR services, without significant ongoing input from a research team.

Experimental studies were included as we anticipated few studies examining real-world implementation, and experimental studies provide the next best available evidence to advance the field; eligibility was not limited to randomized controlled trials (RCTs) to allow the inclusion of translational studies that used alternative study designs. In addition to other criteria, eligible experimental studies were those that assessed constructs defined in a taxonomy of key constructs related to the effective implementation of evidence-based interventions, including acceptability, adoption, appropriateness, feasibility, fidelity, implementation cost, penetration, and sustainability [54]. To acknowledge the importance of multiple stakeholder levels in successful implementation projects [55,56] and to meet the aims of this review, we assessed these constructs at the consumer (ie, participant), individual provider (ie, CR practitioner), and provider (ie, health care organization or institution) levels [54]. Constructs were defined as follows:

1. Acceptability: satisfaction among implementation stakeholders with different aspects of the intervention, such as content, delivery, and complexity. Stakeholders included health care consumers, practitioners, and health care organization operational staff who participated in, delivered, and oversaw the provision of CR services, respectively.
2. Adoption: rates of uptake or utilization of the intervention at the practitioner and/or health care organization level.
3. Appropriateness: program suitability or compatibility at the health care consumer, practitioner, and/or health care organization level.
4. Feasibility: practicability of the intervention for everyday use at the practitioner and/or health care organization level.
5. Fidelity: delivery of the intervention as designed.
6. Implementation cost: assessments of marginal cost, cost-effectiveness, or cost benefit.
7. Penetration: the degree to which the intervention was institutionalized within health care organizations.
8. Sustainability: continued delivery of the intervention beyond the study period, as well as characteristics of the implementation context that did or could influence the continuation of intervention delivery [54].

Feasibility and pilot studies were excluded from this review. To meet the aims of this review, it was important to include only interventions that had already undergone preliminary testing for feasibility and were considered by their respective authors as feasible for testing in the trial or delivery in practice. Conference abstracts, nonhuman studies, non-English-language papers, and grey literature were also excluded. Systematic reviews and study protocols were not eligible for inclusion; however, relevant systematic reviews were searched for eligible studies and cited where appropriate, and results articles were sought for relevant study protocols.

Search results were exported to a reference manager, EndNote X8 (Clarivate), for duplicate removal, then transferred to Rayyan (Qatar Computing Research Institute) for screening [57]. Records were assessed by NS, verified by JR and HK, and underwent full-text review if the title or abstract identified the specified population and intervention components.

Data Extraction

Data describing eligibility, study design, participant and intervention characteristics, risk of bias, and outcomes of interest were extracted by NS using a standardized electronic form and verified by JR.

Risk-of-Bias Assessment

Risks of selection, performance, detection, attrition, reporting, and other biases in included experimental studies were assessed using the Cochrane risk-of-bias tool [58]. Risks of bias in nonrandomized cohort studies were assessed using the Joanna Briggs Institute Critical Appraisal Checklist for Cohort Studies [59]. Risks of bias were assessed by NS and verified by JR. When available, risk-of-bias assessments were augmented with study protocols and clinical trial registrations.

Data Synthesis

A narrative synthesis of the data was carried out in this review.

Results

Study Selection

In total, 2044 unique study reports were screened. From these, 21 underwent full-text review; 16 reports describing 10 studies (2250 participants in total) met the eligibility criteria and were included in the narrative synthesis [41-45,60-64]. Study selection is summarized in Figure 1.
Characteristics of Included Studies

Included studies were published between 2013 and 2018; studies were conducted in developed countries, including New Zealand [42-43,45], Australia [41,44], Canada [61], the Netherlands [60], Poland [63], and the United States [62]. One multi-country study was carried out in Spain, Germany, and the United Kingdom [64].

No eligible studies were identified that evaluated the effectiveness of the implementation of cardiac telerehabilitation in routine clinical practice. Of the 10 included studies, 9 (90%) used randomized controlled experimental designs [41-43,45,60-62,64], while 1 (10%) used an uncontrolled pre-post intervention design [63].

The mean age of study participants ranged from 55 to 65 years, and most participants were male (72%-93%). All studies recruited participants via hospitals or community-based CR centers. Detailed characteristics of the included studies (ie, study design, treatments, and primary and implementation outcomes) are presented in Multimedia Appendix 2.

Cardiac Telerehabilitation Intervention Characteristics

Out of 10 studies, 3 interventions (30%) were delivered using a mobile phone, smartphone, or web-based platform alone [41,61,62], while remaining interventions used combinations of web-based content, mobile phones or smartphones, and sensors. The most commonly targeted lifestyle risk factors were physical activity, diet, tobacco smoking, and medication adherence. Intervention duration ranged from 30 days [62] to 24 weeks [41-43] (see Multimedia Appendix 2).

Most interventions (6/10, 60%) comprised a messaging component (eg, SMS or push notifications) [41,43-45,61,62] to educate or motivate participants to improve self-management behaviors. Out of 10 interventions, 7 (70%) enabled communication between providers and participants via a web-based program, mobile phone or smartphone, and/or telephone [42,44,45,60,61,63,64]. Out of 10 interventions, 6 (60%) included exercise monitoring [42,44,45,60,61,63,64], including 2 (20%) that provided live guidance [64] or real-time monitoring and coaching during exercise [45]. Out of 10 studies, 5 (50%) delivered telerehabilitation in combination with usual care (ie, center- or community-based CR) [41-43,60,4], 4 (40%) delivered cardiac telerehabilitation alone [44,61,62,64], and 1 (10%) delivered a hybrid intervention comprising center-based and telerehabilitation components [63] (see Multimedia Appendix 2).

Risk of Bias in the Included Studies

The quality of the included studies in the review varied (see Multimedia Appendix 2). Risk of bias was judged to be low in 6 out of 10 (60%) experimental studies [41-43,45,60,61] and high in 3 (30%) studies [44,62,64]. High risk of bias was judged due to incomplete outcome data and lack of blinding of participants and outcomes.

The single nonrandomized study (1/10, 10%) had a high risk of bias due to lack of a control group, not identifying
confounding factors, and inadequate reporting of follow-up time [63].

Implementation Outcomes

Overview

Included studies reported between three and six implementation outcomes. Appropriateness, acceptability, fidelity, adoption and feasibility, were assessed in 9 (90%), 8 (80%), 7 (70%), and 6 (60%), of the 10 studies, respectively; cost of intervention was assessed in only 4 (40%) studies, and penetration and sustainability were not assessed. Outcomes were predominantly assessed from a participant perspective, rather than from individual provider (ie, practitioner) or organizational perspectives. Implementation outcome findings are summarized below, with supporting data provided in Table 1 [41-45,60-71].
Table 1. Implementation outcomes for telerehabilitation interventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study author, year, and implementation construct</th>
<th>Implementation outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chow, 2015 [41,65]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>SMS intervention acceptability was 90.9% (279/307); request to stop SMS was 2.3% (7/307)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>Focus groups reported high user engagement with saving and sharing SMS messages, receiving support from providers and family, and message personalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>SMS was useful: 90.9% (279/307)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMS was easy to understand: 96.7% (297/307)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMS was motivating for change: 77.2% (237/307), especially for diet (249/307, 81.1%), exercise (223/307, 72.6%), and medication adherence (234/307, 76.2%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appropriateness of language used in SMS: 94.8% (291/307)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appropriateness of SMS frequency (4 times/week): 86.0% (264/307); timing: 89.9% (276/307, random timing was considered ideal); and 6-month duration: 77.2% (237/307)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidelity</td>
<td>96.0% (338/352) of participants received all scheduled messages (analytic data) and read ≥75% of SMS messages: 95.4% (293/307 self-report survey respondents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation cost</td>
<td>US $0.10/SMS message (&lt;US $10 per capita)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainability</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dale, 2015 [42]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>Satisfaction with 24-week program duration was 79% (48/61) and with number of SMS messages was 84% (51/61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recommend to other people: 90% (55/61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>98% (60/61) of participants initiated the SMS intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥1 website login: 75% (46/61); median 3, range 0-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>90% (55/61) and 43% (26/61) of participants felt that SMS messages and the website were good cardiac rehabilitation (CR) delivery methods, respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appropriate number of SMS messages: 84% (51/61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intervention useful for learning about (47/61, 77%) and recovering from (51/61, 84%) a heart event and for changing behaviors, such as physical activity (39/61, 64%) and consumption of fruit and vegetables (37/61, 61%), saturated fat (34/61, 56%), and salt (26/61, 43%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidelity</td>
<td>Read all SMS messages: 85% (52/61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sent ≥1 SMS step count message: 95% (58/61); mean of 15 submissions (SD 8.7) over 24 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation cost</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainability</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kraal, 2013 [60,66]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>Satisfaction was higher for telerehabilitation than for center-based rehabilitation (8.7/10 vs 8.1/10; P=.02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidelity</td>
<td>Exercise adherence was similar in telerehabilitation and center-based rehabilitation (mean 22.0, SD 6.8, vs mean 20.6, SD 4.3, sessions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation cost</td>
<td>Similar per-capita cost to deliver telerehabilitation and center-based rehabilitation (€314 vs €336)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Per-capita costs did not differ between telerehabilitation and center-based rehabilitation for total health care use (mean €2419, SD 1968, vs mean €2855, SD 2797; P=.39) or total work absenteeism (mean €3846, SD 8400, vs mean €6569, SD 8170; P=.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Probability of cost-effectiveness was higher for telerehabilitation than for center-based rehabilitation under several assumptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study author, year, and implementation construct</td>
<td>Implementation outcomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainability</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lear, 2015 [61,67]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>22 purposively sampled interviews reported satisfaction, acceptability, and confidence in using virtual CR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>High self-reported engagement and utilization in virtual CR (interview data)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean website log-ins was 27 per participant (range 0-140)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean engagement in chat sessions with health care providers was 3.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>Virtual CR perceived to be accessible and effective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Virtual CR perceived to be convenient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidelity</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation cost</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainability</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maddison, 2015 [43,68]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>SMS and website intervention components were liked by 57% (43/75) and 73% (55/75) of participants, respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability of 24-week intervention duration: 71% (53/75)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability of message delivery timing: 57% (43/75); exercise ideas SMS content: 77% (58/75); exercise benefits education content: 79% (59/75); and website content: 47% (35/75); 49% (37/75) did not use the website</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>Some (number not reported) participants who were already exercising felt the intervention was unnecessary or the exercise prescription was not relevant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Difficulties using website: 17% (13/75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major barriers were lack of high-speed broadband or knowledge about using websites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidelity</td>
<td>93% (70/75) read most SMS messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64% (48/75) used the website (visits per participant: mean 11, SD 16, range 0-82)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation cost</td>
<td>NZ $239 per capita (intervention set-up + delivery only; health care utilization and indirect societal costs excluded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost-effectiveness ratio: NZ $28,768 per quality-adjusted life year (QALY)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability of cost-effectiveness: 72% (willingness to pay: NZ $20,000 per QALY) and 90% (willingness to pay: NZ $50,000 per QALY)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustainability</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maddison, 2019 [45,69]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptability</td>
<td>87% (58/67) would choose telerehabilitation instead of center-based rehabilitation if implemented in clinical practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satisfaction with individualized exercise prescription: 90% (60/67); real-time exercise monitoring: 94% (63/67); encouragement and social support: 87% (58/67); behavior change messages: 85% (57/67); self-monitoring: 96% (64/67); and goal-setting features: 69% (46/67)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption</td>
<td>94% (77/82) of participants initiated telerehabilitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appropriateness</td>
<td>97% (65/67) of patients reported that telerehabilitation is a good approach for delivering exercise rehabilitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feasibility</td>
<td>Wearable sensor is easy to use: 99% (66/67); and is comfortable: 97% (65/67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smartphone app is easy to use: 79% (53/67); easy to understand: 87% (58/67); and reliable: 66% (44/67)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare technical difficulties, commonly solved with familiarization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study author, year, and implementation construct</td>
<td>Implementation outcomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fidelity</strong></td>
<td>Adherence to prescribed exercise was comparable in telerehabilitation (mean 58.34%, SD 36.58, range 0-100) and center-based rehabilitation (mean 63.80%, SD 30.59, range 0-100; $P_{=.31}$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Implementation cost</strong></td>
<td>Lower per-capita program delivery cost for telerehabilitation than for center-based rehabilitation (NZ $1130 vs NZ $3466)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No difference in total (i.e., program delivery + health care and medication utilization) per-capita cost (NZ $4920 vs NZ $9535)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penetration</strong></td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sustainability</strong></td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Park, 2014 [62]**

| **Acceptability**                            | Strong or moderate agreement about intervention satisfaction: 82% (23/28) for SMS reminders + education; and 88% (22/25) for SMS education alone |
| **Adoption**                                  | Not assessed |
| **Appropriateness**                           | Strong or moderate agreement that the interventions were useful for assisting medication adherence: 71% (20/28) for SMS reminders + education; and 48% (12/25) for SMS education alone |
| **Feasibility**                               | Strong or moderate agreement that interventions were easy to use: 88.6% |
|                                               | Technical difficulties receiving SMS: 7.6% |
| **Fidelity**                                  | Not assessed |
| **Implementation cost**                       | Not assessed |
| **Penetration**                               | Not assessed |
| **Sustainability**                            | Not assessed |

**Piotrowicz, 2014 [63,70]**

| **Acceptability**                            | Not assessed |
| **Adoption**                                  | Not assessed |
| **Appropriateness**                           | Felt safer during exercise with hybrid telerehabilitation than unsupervised: 80.9% |
|                                               | Hybrid telerehabilitation was useful for increasing exercise: 95%; daily physical activity: 80%; and mental health: 71% |
| **Feasibility**                               | Telemonitoring device was very easy or easy to use: 98.3% |
|                                               | No problems self-fitting electrocardiogram (ECG) electrodes: 99.4% |
|                                               | No problems transmitting ECG from home: 84% |
|                                               | Missed ≥1 exercise session due to technical difficulties: 39.3% |
|                                               | Problems communicating with telemonitoring center: 62.8% |
| **Fidelity**                                  | Not assessed |
| **Implementation cost**                       | Not assessed |
| **Penetration**                               | Not assessed |
| **Sustainability**                            | Not assessed |

**Salvi, 2018 [64,71]**

<p>| <strong>Acceptability</strong>                            | Guided exercise telerehabilitation ratings (mean [95% CI] rating score, max 5) for ease of use: 3.53 (2.94-4.12); interest: 4.42 (4.11-4.74); stimulation: 3.95 (3.49-4.41); and enjoyment: 3.84 (3.46-4.22) |
|                                               | nb: data represent only 35% (19/55) of participants randomized to telerehabilitation |
| <strong>Adoption</strong>                                  | 73% (40/55) of participants initiated guided exercise telerehabilitation |
|                                               | Nonadoption was attributed to unavailability of the clinical team |
| <strong>Appropriateness</strong>                           | Guided exercise telerehabilitation ratings (mean [95% CI] rating score, max 5) for usefulness to increase motivation: 4.59 (4.35-4.83); to increase safety: 4.47 (4.13-4.81); and to increase compliance: 4.47 (3.93-5.01) |
|                                               | Overall, guided exercise telerehabilitation was considered appropriate for its purpose |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study author, year, and implementation construct</th>
<th>Implementation outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Feasibility                                     | Exercise sessions affected by technical errors: 18% (ie, poor biosensor signal or connectivity and poor transmission of data to server)  
Suboptimal internet connectivity prevented 15 participants from recording or completing any exercise sessions  
6 dropouts were attributed to technical challenges |
| Fidelity                                        | Participants initiated (mean [95% CI]) 61% (76%-46%) of the prescribed number of exercise sessions  
(79% [91%-67%] among 17 participants who completed the study) and completed 32% (44%-20%) of the prescribed duration of exercise (45% [59%-31%] among 17 participants who completed the study) |
| Implementation cost                             | Not assessed |
| Penetration                                     | Not assessed |
| Sustainability                                  | Not assessed |
| Varnfield, 2014 [44]                            | Acceptability:  
Program uptake (ie, completion of ≥1 exercise session) was higher in telerehabilitation than center-based rehabilitation: 80% (48/60) vs 62% (37/60); relative risk (RR)=1.30, 95% CI 1.03-1.64; \( P < .05 \)  
Adoption:  
Smartphone-measured step counts increased motivation to reach exercise goals: 84% (38/45)  
Feasibility:  
Categorical adherence (ie, completing 4/6 weeks of exercise training) was higher in telerehabilitation than center-based rehabilitation: 95% (45/48) vs 68% (25/37); RR=1.40, 95% CI 1.13-1.70; \( P < .05 \)  
Implementation cost                             | Not assessed |
| Penetration                                     | Not assessed |
| Sustainability                                  | Not assessed |

**Acceptability**

Out of 10 included studies, 8 (80%) [41-43,45,60-62,64] reported the acceptability of telerehabilitation interventions from the participant perspective only; none reported acceptability from the individual provider or organization perspectives. Specific outcome measures within the acceptability implementation construct included perceived acceptability, satisfaction, likes and dislikes, interest, stimulation, and enjoyment. Studies reported high rates of acceptance for cardiac telerehabilitation, ranging from 71% [43] to 99% of participants [45]. Interventions that facilitated interaction between participants and providers [42,45,60,61,64] and delivered individually tailored content [43,60], in particular, appeared to have high acceptability. However, 4 studies out of 10 (40%) reported lack of interest among some participants [43,62,64]. In particular, messaging interventions (eg, SMS and push notifications) were not satisfactory for participants who would prefer face-to-face interaction with rehabilitation professionals [43]. Usability challenges such as insufficient internet connectivity, which fall within the feasibility implementation construct (see Feasibility section below), can also impact negatively on acceptability [42,64].

**Adoption**

Out of 10 included studies, 6 (60%) reported adoption of the intervention from the participant perspective only; none reported adoption from the individual provider or organization perspectives [41,42,44,45,61,64]. Specific outcome measures within the adoption implementation construct included initial uptake and engagement with telerehabilitation interventions. While levels of adoption varied between studies, they were generally high across SMS, website, and smartphone-based interventions. Out of 10 studies, 1 (10%) attributed some lack of adoption to the availability of staff delivering the intervention [64].

** Appropriateness**

Out of 10 included studies, 9 (90%) reported on the appropriateness of cardiac telerehabilitation from the participant perspective; none reported on appropriateness from the individual provider or organization perspectives [41-45,61-64]. Studies included a very broad range of outcome measures within the appropriateness implementation construct, including usefulness; suitability as an alternative CR delivery model; perceptions of safety, reassurance, accessibility, and effectiveness; as well as appropriateness of the intervention content, language, frequency, and duration.

These outcomes were positively appraised by the majority of participants, and cardiac telerehabilitation was perceived as convenient, flexible, safe, instant, private, and user-friendly. Many participants considered messaging (eg, SMS and push notifications) and smartphone apps to be appropriate mechanisms for delivering CR support [41,42,45,61,63]. Comprehensibility and interactivity also appeared to support participants’ perceptions of intervention appropriateness [41-43,45,60,61,63,64]. Participants reported that telerehabilitation interventions were useful for increasing motivation and confidence to exercise, modifying health...
behaviors such as medication adherence and healthy eating, self-monitoring their health condition, and facilitating remote access to individualized exercise support [41,42,45,61,62,64]. Small proportions of participants perceived SMS to be either inadequate or unnecessary [41-43,62]. Overall, cardiac telerehabilitation interventions were considered appropriate by most participants [41-45,61-64]; however, significant heterogeneity of intervention designs and outcome measures in the literature reviewed makes it difficult to identify factors that optimize intervention appropriateness.

Feasibility

Out of 10 included studies, 6 (60%) reported aspects of feasibility from a participant perspective but not from the individual provider or organization perspectives. Specific outcome measures within the feasibility implementation construct included usability, suitability of interventions for everyday use among participants, system reliability, or technical difficulties experienced by participants [43,45,61-64]. No included studies assessed the feasibility of telerehabilitation delivery from individual provider or organization perspectives. Large majorities of telerehabilitation participants self-reported that technologies such as SMS, wearable sensors, smartphone apps, and websites were easy to use, convenient, comfortable, and easy to understand [43,45,61-63]. However, some technical challenges were noted. Approximately 20%-30% of participants reported reliability issues during real-time, remotely monitored, exercise rehabilitation, although the authors did not report whether issues were related to the required smartphone app, wearable sensor, or broadband internet connection [45]. Out of 10 studies, 4 (40%) reported a negative impact of unreliable broadband connectivity on user experiences during interventions that included web-based components and/or transmission of data to CR providers, which, at worst, can prevent participants from initiating their telerehabilitation intervention at all [43,62-64].

Fidelity

Out of 10 included studies, 7 (70%) reported on the fidelity of intervention receipt and/or completion among participants [41-45,60,64]. Specific outcome measures within the fidelity implementation construct included participant responsiveness or adherence to the intervention, such as receiving all the scheduled SMS messages, program completion, and adherence to prescribed exercise or medication. Large majorities (≥75%) of participants in SMS interventions self-reported reading all or most messages [41-43]. However, self-reported use of an intervention website was lower [43]. Out of 10 studies, 3 (30%) demonstrated that adherence to prescribed exercise telerehabilitation sessions was comparable to [45,60], or better than [44], center-based comparators.

Telerehabilitation interventions appeared to be delivered as per study protocols, with the exception of deviations caused by technical challenges (see Feasibility section above); however, only 1 study out of 10 (10%) formally assessed the fidelity of intervention delivery; analytic data indicated all SMS messages were successfully delivered to 96% of participants [41].

Implementation Cost

Only 4 of 10 (40%) included studies reported analyses of telerehabilitation intervention cost [41,43,45,60]. As interventions appear to have been provided at no cost to participants, these data likely represent cost from an organizational perspective. Specific outcome measures within this implementation construct included intervention delivery cost and cost-effectiveness. Intervention delivery costs varied markedly from US $10 per capita for an SMS intervention [41] to NZ $1130 per capita for a smartphone-based intervention that delivered real-time remote exercise supervision and coaching [45]. Out of 10 studies, 1 (10%) reported that the telerehabilitation intervention delivery cost was comparable to center-based CR [60], while another (1/10, 10%) reported almost 70% lower delivery costs for telerehabilitation compared with center-based programs [45]. Out of 10 studies, 2 (20%) that conducted cost-effectiveness analyses reported a 72%-90% probability of cost-effectiveness for an SMS intervention, assuming willingness-to-pay thresholds of NZ $20,000-$50,000 per quality-adjusted life year [43], and moderate to high probabilities that telerehabilitation would be more cost-effective than center-based rehabilitation, particularly at low willingness-to-pay thresholds [60]. None of the studies included in this review evaluated how telerehabilitation could be funded as an adjunct to existing CR services (ie, in additional to center-based program delivery costs).

Penetration and Sustainability

No included studies assessed any outcome measures within the penetration or sustainability implementation constructs.

Discussion

Principal Findings

The primary finding of our review is that, despite encouraging evidence for effectiveness [33-37], there is a lack of evidence evaluating the translation of cardiac telerehabilitation interventions from research into routine clinical practice. It is unclear whether this suggests that evidence-based interventions have yet to be implemented in clinical practice, have been implemented without evaluation, or have been implemented and evaluated but not yet published in the scientific literature.

The next best available data comes from a small number of experimental studies that have assessed key constructs related to the effective implementation of evidence-based interventions. Almost all included studies reported factors related to intervention appropriateness, acceptability, and fidelity; however, adoption, fidelity, and cost have received less attention, and intervention penetration and sustainability had yet to be evaluated.

Moreover, while consumers (ie, CR participants), individual providers (ie, CR practitioners), and organizations (ie, health care services) all play critical roles in achieving successful implementation outcomes [54,72], the cardiac telerehabilitation literature we reviewed has focused only on the consumer perspective. This may reflect the lack of research conducted in routine clinical practice, as individual and organizational providers may have little involvement in the delivery or...
management of telerehabilitation interventions during experimental trials.

Cardiac telerehabilitation was generally well accepted among the majority of participants, even across a broad range of different interventions. While the small number of studies in our review makes it difficult to determine which interventions may be most acceptable to participants, intervention features that enable participants to communicate with practitioners and receive tailored or individualized support appear to promote high rates of acceptance. Unfortunately, acceptability has not yet been evaluated from a delivery perspective, so the perceptions of rehabilitation providers (ie, individual practitioners and organizations) remain unknown. Cardiac telerehabilitation was considered an appropriate delivery model by many participants, particularly those who value convenient, flexible, and accessible intervention support. Moreover, many participants reported that cardiac telerehabilitation was useful for improving their self-management of lifestyle behaviors and CVD risk factors. At the participant level, acceptability and appropriateness also appear to be moderated by intervention feasibility. Interventions that were simple to access, easy to use, reliable, and delivered through ubiquitous mobile, smartphone, and/or web technologies appeared to have higher acceptability and appropriateness.

As our review findings are drawn from experimental studies, it is unclear if they would generalize to the delivery of cardiac telerehabilitation in routine clinical practice. In particular, the predominance of randomized treatment allocation in included studies differs markedly from a recommendation that CR participants should be offered a choice of alternative CR delivery models that best fit their needs and preferences [73]. Studies that include preference-based treatment allocation are needed to mimic this key element of routine clinical practice or, better yet, evaluation studies should be conducted in parallel with the translation of cardiac telerehabilitation into routine clinical practice. The single non-RCT included in the review reported high acceptance and usability among participants who preferred telerehabilitation [63].

Reporting of participant-level feasibility was mixed, which may reflect the difficulty of documenting both the incidence and impact of usability and technical challenges. However, collectively the evidence suggests telerehabilitation is feasible for most participants. Feasibility among individual and organizational providers is also critical for successful implementation [74,75] but, similar to other implementation constructs, was not evaluated in the included studies.

Fidelity is one of the important implementation outcomes, as it contributes to intervention quality [54]. While 7 of 10 (70%) included studies reported high intervention uptake, some outcome measures of adherence may be confounded by self-reporting bias. Reassuringly, 3 (30%) studies indicate that adherence to cardiac telerehabilitation can be at least as high as center-based programs [44,45,60]. A key gap in the literature we reviewed is the lack of information about the fidelity of intervention delivery from the perspectives of individual and organizational providers, which is critical to understand when implementing new interventions to maintain intervention quality [76]. This may reflect known challenges in measuring implementation constructs and a lack of available validated tools [54]; however, we note that the delivery fidelity of interventions that require little, if any, provider input (eg, SMS) may be sufficiently assessed via software analytics.

There was little specific evidence that intervention delivery deviated from study protocols in the included studies, but it is unclear whether this indicates high fidelity intervention delivery or a lack of documentation to support such a conclusion. While future translational research could comprehensively evaluate the fidelity of intervention delivery, comparisons with preceding experimental research may be confounded by assumptions about equivalence between experimental and translational research contexts.

Intervention cost is a key contributor to low uptake of interventions by health care providers [77], and comparison of costs and cost-effectiveness is crucial for making evidence-based decisions about implementing and scaling new interventions [76]. Relatively few included studies reported economic analyses, and telerehabilitation costs varied markedly across different intervention designs. Our review indicates that telerehabilitation can reduce CR delivery costs and be cost-effective, but it is unclear if cost-effectiveness varies between different types of interventions. For example, interventions that require significant practitioner input, such as real-time remote exercise monitoring and coaching [45], may be substantially cheaper to deliver than center-based programs but more expensive than semiautomated interventions, such as SMS. Whether or not an intervention represents good value depends on health effects and costs, as well as intervention and health care objectives. Therefore, examining the cost and health effects of telerehabilitation interventions in routine clinical practice is essential to provide more valuable information for implementation and scale-up.

The remaining implementation constructs of interest in this review—penetration and sustainability—were not assessed in any included studies. This was not surprising, as penetration and sustainability are more relevant to the mid- and later stages of implementation [54]. Short-duration experimental trials limit penetration to those who are willing to volunteer for research and preclude assessment of longer-term intervention sustainability. As a result, we lack valuable information on factors that could influence the sustainability of the interventions and how this might impact potential scale-up.

Opportunities for Future Research

Evidence suggests the spread, scale-up, and sustainability of health care innovations are influenced by a broad range of factors related to the people who receive (ie, participants) and deliver (ie, health care practitioners and providers) the innovations as well as by numerous organizational and societal factors [55,56,74]. The experimental studies in our review focused on a relatively narrow range of outcomes, omitted the individual and organizational provider stakeholder levels, and could not replicate the complexity of implementation in routine clinical practice. Robust experimental evaluation of effectiveness and safety is critical before real-world implementation [78]. However, it is now critical to evaluate the implementation of
proven interventions in routine clinical practice, preferably as a complementary adjunct to existing center-based programs, to incorporate the critical element of consumer choice that we and others have advocated [45,73]. Such studies should target all key implementation constructs across all relevant stakeholder levels, be embedded fully in routine clinical practice, and be evaluated for a sufficient duration to enable comprehensive assessment of all factors that contribute to successful, scalable, and sustainable implementation [74].

While it was beyond the scope of this review, an understanding of the relative importance of different factors on the implementation of telerehabilitation interventions in clinical practice is also needed. Although effective implementation is understood to be an interactive combination of factors [74], our review highlights the variability in the assessment and reporting of implementation constructs. It is unknown if this variability was due to, for example, researchers’ perceived importance of specific factors when selecting the study outcomes, evidence for the differential impact of implementation factors on outcomes, or the feasibility of evaluating multiple factors within a trial design. Improving the translation of interventions into routine clinical practice requires a greater understanding of the roles of implementation factors and consistent measurement of their impact. Research that explores the relative importance of such factors would greatly advance our ability to effectively scale interventions.

**Strengths and Limitations**

A major strength of this review was the use of a robust systematic review methodology to understand a novel research area. Secondly, while broad variability of intervention designs across a small number of studies makes it difficult to determine how to optimize telerehabilitation for translation into clinical practice, it provides a broad overview of potential issues that could be associated with implementation and scale-up.

The findings of our review are primarily limited by a lack of studies that have evaluated cardiac telerehabilitation interventions when implemented in routine clinical practice. The assessment of implementation-related outcomes during controlled experimental studies provides some insight, but marked differences within the context of real-world rehabilitation service delivery limit their generalizability. Additionally, while promising early evidence for effectiveness, safety, acceptability, and cost of cardiac telerehabilitation interventions [33-37] suggest they could play an important role in increasing overall participation in CR, it remains unclear whether positive trial outcomes will be retained following translation into clinical practice [76]. Our review includes a small number of studies with relatively small sample sizes and homogenous cohorts. This may limit generalizability to population subgroups who are typically underserved by CR, including older adults, women, people living in regional or rural areas, and people with diverse non-English-speaking cultural backgrounds [41-45,60,64]. Finally, there was a lack of studies from developing countries where telerehabilitation could have an even greater impact due to a low provision of traditional center-based CR [79-81].

**Conclusions**

Cardiac telerehabilitation interventions appear to be acceptable and appropriate for many participants in experimental trials and may be a cost-effective way to increase the reach and utilization of CR. However, explicit implementation studies are urgently needed to inform best-practice translation into routine clinical practice. When possible, such studies should implement telerehabilitation in parallel with existing center-based programs so consumers can autonomously match program delivery models to their individual needs and preferences.

**Acknowledgments**

We would like to thank Ms Rachel West, Liaison Librarian, at Melbourne Burwood Campus, Deakin University, for her guidance in finalizing the search strategy. NS received a Deakin University Postgraduate Research Scholarship for his PhD from the university.

**Authors' Contributions**

NS, JR, and RM designed the study. NS conducted the search; removed the duplicates; screened the titles, abstracts, and full text of the studies; and drafted the systematic review manuscript. JR and HK contributed to verifying screening, and JR contributed to the full-text review and drafting the manuscript. All coauthors—JR, LG, HK, and RM—contributed to the critical revision of the manuscript and approved the final manuscript.

**Conflicts of Interest**

None declared.

**Multimedia Appendix 1**

Search strategies for included studies.

[DOCX File, 23 KB - mhealth_v8i11e17957_app1.docx]

**Multimedia Appendix 2**

Characteristics of included studies.
References


52. PROSPERO: International prospective register of systematic reviews. National Institute for Health Research. URL: https://www.crd.york.ac.uk/prospero/ [accessed 2019-02-07]


75. Greenhalgh T, A’Court C, Shaw S. Understanding heart failure; explaining telehealth - A hermeneutic systematic review. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e17957 | p.550http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e17957/


**Abbreviations**

CHD: coronary heart disease  
CR: cardiac rehabilitation  
CVD: cardiovascular disease  
ICT: information and communication technology  
MI: myocardial infarction  
PRISMA: Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses  
PROSPERO: International Prospective Register of Systematic Reviews  
RCT: randomized controlled trial
Exploitation of Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls in the Context of Circadian Rhythms of Social Activity Among Elderly People: Observational Descriptive Study

Timothé Aubourg\textsuperscript{1,2,3}, MSc; Jacques Demongeot\textsuperscript{2,3,4}, MD, PhD; Hervé Provost\textsuperscript{1,3}, MSc; Nicolas Vuillerme\textsuperscript{2,3,4}, PhD

\textsuperscript{1}Orange Labs, Meylan, France
\textsuperscript{2}Univ Grenoble Alpes, AGEIS, Grenoble, France
\textsuperscript{3}LabCom Telecom4Health, Univ Grenoble Alpes & Orange Labs, Grenoble, France
\textsuperscript{4}Institut Universitaire de France, Paris, France

Corresponding Author:
Timothé Aubourg, MSc
Orange Labs
Chemin du Vieux Chêne
Meylan
France
Phone: 33 0950399591
Email: timotheeaubourg@gmail.com

Abstract

Background: In the elderly population, analysis of the circadian rhythms of social activity may help in supervising homebound disabled and chronically ill populations. Circadian rhythms are monitored over time to determine, for example, the stability of the organization of daily social activity rhythms and the occurrence of particular desynchronizations in the way older adults act and react socially during the day. Recently, analysis of telephone call detail records has led to the possibility of determining circadian rhythms of social activity in an objective unobtrusive way for young patients from their outgoing telephone calls. At this stage, however, the analysis of incoming call rhythms and the comparison of their organization with respect to outgoing calls remains to be performed in underinvestigated populations (in particular, older populations).

Objective: This study investigated the persistence and synchronization of circadian rhythms in telephone communication by older adults.

Methods: The study used a longitudinal 12-month data set combining call detail records and questionnaire data from 26 volunteers aged 70 years or more to determine the existence of persistent and synchronized circadian rhythms in their telephone communications. The study worked with the following four specific telecommunication parameters: (1) recipient of the telephone call (alter), (2) time at which the call began, (3) duration of the call, and (4) direction of the call. We focused on the following two issues: (1) the existence of persistent circadian rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls in the older population and (2) synchronization with circadian rhythms in the way the older population places and responds to telephone calls.

Results: The results showed that older adults have their own specific circadian rhythms for placing telephone calls and receiving telephone calls. These rhythms are partly structured by the way in which older adults allocate their communication time over the day. In addition, despite minor differences between circadian rhythms for outgoing and incoming calls, our analysis suggests the two rhythms could be synchronized.

Conclusions: These results suggest the existence of potential persistent and synchronized circadian rhythms in the outgoing and incoming telephone activities of older adults.

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e13535  doi:10.2196/13535

KEYWORDS
circadian rhythms; phone call detail records; older population; digital phenotype
Introduction

Background

The lives of humans are deeply structured on a daily basis, which both reflects and contributes to the emergence of regular rhythms of activity, the so-called circadian (i.e., 24 hours) rhythms [1]. Circadian rhythms help individuals affirm and maintain stability in their lives. Behind the apparent regularity, circadian rhythms reflect complex processes with multiple origins. On one hand, at the endogenous level, they stem directly from a biological clock, known as the suprachiasmatic nucleus [2]. Depending on the individual, this internal clock has an almost 24-hour period and regulates the functioning of the entire body throughout the day. On the other hand, at the exogenous level, these biological time posts are entangled with physical and social cues [3], such as the day-night alternation [4] and the daily social interactions [5] that occur between individuals and their social network. These external “time givers,” known under the German word “Zeitgeberen,” permit individuals to adapt themselves to their physical and social environments by aligning their daily activities to a precise and persistent 24-hour clock [4]. Overall, this close synchronization results from the continuous interplay between the fundamental biological and social time cycles in the lives of all individuals [6].

According to the social zeitgeber theory [7], a change in social cues or the occurrence of particular social events, such as life stress [7] and affective episodes [8], may have severe repercussions on these biological and social times. Notably, social changes have the potential to weaken the stability of individuals’ daily lives [7], and the resulting instability may be associated with the social jet-lag phenomenon, in which the biological and social circadian rhythms are desynchronized [9]. In the field of health monitoring, such desynchronization provides important information about an individual’s health status because it may be directly associated with health complications, such as sleep disruption [10], depression [11], and cardiometabolic problems [12]. For health professionals, it is important to properly manage these social disruptions. Thus, their detection may permit us to better understand the mechanisms underlying these severe health issues and thereby prevent them.

For seniors in particular, monitoring circadian rhythms is of importance, as amply demonstrated by the rich literature on the subject, in which these rhythms were shown to change greatly with age (eg, [13-16]). Such changes are generally due to a degradation in temporal organization in the life of seniors caused by age-related alterations that affect their biological clock [15]. These alterations are reflected, for instance, by the chronotype shift that usually appears with aging [14]. This behavioral drift can be considered as a time-induced transition in a senior’s preferences for being active during the day, generally in the morning [17]. At the social level of seniors, this chronotype shift may notably be associated with alterations in their social routines, such as those imposed by social-rhythm stereotyping [18]. Moreover, the chronotype shift may be accompanied by the nonreception of social cues caused by the aging process, leading to a decline in social interactions [19,20], inconsistent meal times [21,22], or fragmented sleep [17]. Finally, these social disruptions may cause feedback and impact the biological state of the individual [7]. Such feedback may notably maintain or worsen the dysregulation of biological circadian rhythms, thus facilitating the health issues mentioned above, which may dramatically impact an older person’s life, as evinced by Alzheimer disease [23-25], Parkinson disease [26], or dementia [21]. Thus, it is of importance to investigate the social aspects of circadian rhythms and their disruption in the elderly population to better understand how these rhythms, or lack thereof, affect the biological clock of seniors and the mechanisms that trigger health problems.

Prior Studies

A body of literature is presently emerging around mobile health sensing, including the effect of circadian rhythms and social behaviors (eg, [27-29]). Much of this literature discusses the potential of using telephones to enhance the traditional health care system by exploiting health-related data generated by telephone use [30,31]. In particular, analyses of telecommunication data, such as telephone call detail records, enable the detection of circadian rhythms of social activity [32-36]. For example, the recent work of Aledavood et al [32] demonstrated the existence of a circadian temporal signature of outgoing telephone call activity in a young population. Additionally, with the same population sample, Aledavood et al [33] showed that when using a descriptive approach to compare outgoing telephone calls with outgoing text messages, young adults establish persistent temporal signatures whose patterns may differ between voice calls and text messages. In the field of health care research, these fundamental results about digital rhythms suggest that telephones may be used to monitor daily social activity. In recent publications, this sort of exploitation of telephones has provided promising results for monitoring the health status and biological timeframe of individuals [37-40].

Note, however, that it remains unclear whether similar results apply to underinvestigated populations and how they can be implemented. In particular, no studies have heretofore investigated whether the telephone activity of seniors follows a consistent and synchronized circadian rhythm.

Study Goals

This work was thus specifically designed to determine whether persistent and synchronized circadian rhythms exist in the telephone activity of older adults. To this end, we used a longitudinal data set of 12 successive months combining call detail records and questionnaire data from 21 volunteers over 70 years of age. In this study, we extracted the following four specific telecommunication parameters from the call detail records: (1) recipient of the telephone call (alter), (2) time at which the telephone call began, (3) telephone call duration, and (4) telephone call direction (outgoing or incoming).

Methods

Data Collection and Volunteer Recruitment

This study involved a secondary analysis of previously published and unpublished data set analyses [41-43]. Our data set included
12 months of outgoing call detail records for 26 volunteers (20 women and 6 men; median age 84 years, range 71-91 years). Call detail records provided by the local communication service provider were collected from the personal telephones of the volunteers. Each call detail record contained the date, hour, source ID, recipient ID, direction, and duration of the call (in seconds). In addition, volunteers with several telephones registered with their communication service provider (eg, one or more landlines and/or one or more mobile telephones) provided call detail records for all their telephones. Note that the telephone owners and the telephone contacts remained anonymous. Additionally, each volunteer filled in a questionnaire about the people in their telephone social network and classified each of their telephone contacts into one of the following five social categories: family, friend, acquaintance, health professional, and other.

This study and its corresponding experimental protocols were declared to the French Data Protection Authority (CNIL registered data protection officer, France Telecom 2011 n°44). All experimental methods were carried out in accordance with the relevant regulations, and written informed consent was obtained from all participants before data were collected and anonymized.

**Data Preprocessing**

Participants did not all enroll in the survey at the same time, so the dates of inclusion varied. Thus, the call detail record data set was filtered to select the time interval when the greatest number of volunteers were actively participating in the study. The call detail record data set was then preprocessed by applying the method described by Saramäki et al [44], which involved selecting only those participants who used their telephones throughout the 12-month observation period, providing a set of 21 individuals (Table 1). Additionally, note that only the incoming telephone calls answered by the volunteer were used in the analysis (ie, incoming telephone calls that went unanswered were removed from the call detail record data set).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Before preprocessing</th>
<th>After preprocessing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of participants</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), range</td>
<td>71-91</td>
<td>71-91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years), mean (SD)</td>
<td>84 (4)</td>
<td>83 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total number of calls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>19,198</td>
<td>18,338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>20,062</td>
<td>17,879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average number of calls per individual, first quartile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>579</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average number of calls per individual, median</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>590</td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>718</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average number of calls per individual, third quartile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>944</td>
<td>1096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>947</td>
<td>992</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Data Analysis**

**Measuring the Daily Rhythms of Telephone Activity**

We followed the descriptive approach proposed by Aledavood et al [32] that treats outgoing and incoming telephone calls separately. This approach involves calculating the daily pattern of telephone activity for the study’s entire 12-month data set, which is done by applying a two-step process consisting of (1) coarse graining the time dimension into unique days divided into 24 one-hour time slots and (2) calculating the average fraction of daily calls. The fraction of daily telephone calls for each time slot is given by the following formula:

$$f(t) = \frac{n(t)}{d}$$

where $n(t)$ is the number of calls in time slot $t$.

We followed this approach at the aggregate level to obtain a concise overview of the data set’s structure and trends. Thereafter, to avoid an ecological fallacy [32], the daily rhythms of telephone activity for each individual (ie, ego) was estimated by zooming in to the individual level, as done by Aledavood et al [32].
Determining the Consistence of Daily Rhythms of Telephone Activity in Older Adults

To determine the consistence of daily rhythms of telephone calls for each ego, we followed an analytical approach based on the notion of persistence applied separately to outgoing and incoming telephone calls. This notion was proposed by Saramäki et al [44] and applied previously [32-34] to assess the repeatability in time of daily rhythms of telephone activity in accordance with circadian rhythm framing. The approach consists of comparing the stability of estimated daily rhythms at distinct successive time points by applying the below three steps.

(1) Step 1: Time discretization. We applied a coarse-graining process [32]. Since the call detail record data set contained 12 months of observations, it was split into three successive 4-month periods called T1, T2, and T3. Note that, although the literature offers no clear consensus regarding the time-interval size, aggregating data into intervals of several months enhances the robustness of the persistence analysis and limits the short-term variations in the patterns of telephone calls [45].

(2) Step 2: Calculation of daily rhythm. We calculated the daily rhythm of telephone calls for each ego and for each time interval (T1-T3) by using the same two-step computation described in the previous section.

(3) Step 3: Persistence of daily rhythm. The persistence of daily rhythm was determined for each ego by measuring the repeatability of the daily rhythms of telephone call activity over time via a persistence analysis. This analysis involves calculating the stability of each ego’s call patterns in each time period (T1-T3) by using the square root of the Jensen-Shannon divergence dissimilarity measure [35] (see Statistical Tools in the Methods section).

We denote by $D_{self}$ the dissimilarity measure of the individual’s daily rhythms between two successive periods. $D_{self}$ is given by the following formula:

$$D_{self} = \sqrt{\text{JSD}(P_i^T,(P_i^{T+1}))}$$

where $P_i^T$ ($P_i^{T+1}$) is the discrete probability distribution of the call fraction of ego $i$ at time period $T$ ($T+1$) and JSD is Jensen-Shannon divergence.

We denote by $\langle D_{self} \rangle$ the average of $D_{self}$ as follows:

$$\langle D_{self} \rangle = \frac{1}{N_T} \sum_{T=1}^{N_T} D_{self}$$

where $N_T=3$ is the number of time periods.

Thereafter, a reference scale for further comparison was implemented for each ego by calculating, for each time interval (T1-T3), the square root of the Jensen-Shannon divergence between the daily pattern of the given ego and that of every other ego.

We denote by $D_{ref}$ the dissimilarity measure between two daily rhythms for two distinct individuals in the same time period. $D_{ref}$ is given by the following formula:

$$D_{ref} = \sqrt{\text{JSD}(P_i^T,(P_j^T))}$$

where $P_i^T$ ($P_j^T$) is the discrete probability distribution of call fractions for ego $i$ ($j$) at time period $T$, with $i \neq j$, and JSD is Jensen-Shannon divergence.

We denote by $\langle D_{ref} \rangle$ the average of $D_{ref}$, which is given as follows:

$$\langle D_{ref} \rangle = \frac{1}{n(n-1)} \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} D_{ref}$$

where $n=21$ is the number of individuals.

Finally, the persistence of daily rhythm for a given ego was evaluated by comparing the average call pattern over time with the average reference scale. Formally, an ego’s daily rhythm is persistent if and only if $\langle D_{self} \rangle/\langle D_{ref} \rangle < 1$.

Comparing Daily Rhythms of Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Activity

The daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls are compared by using the following two steps:

(1) Step 1: Synchronization assessment. For each individual and for each time interval (T1-T3), we applied the Kolmogorov-Smirnov comparison test to compare the distribution of outgoing telephone calls during the day with the distribution of incoming telephone calls [46]. The two distributions are considered synchronized if and only if they follow the same law with a $P$ value >.05 under the following null hypothesis: “$H_0$: the distributions of outgoing and incoming telephone calls follow the same law.”

(2) Step 2: We completed the synchronization assessment by applying a descriptive approach that investigates the alter specificity of the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls to determine whether specific time intervals exist for communicating with specific alters during the day. To this end, we used both the call detail records and questionnaire data for the egos, as performed by Aledavood et al [32]. Based on these pieces of information, the following three questions were addressed: (1) Were there specific hours for communicating with specific alters? (2) What was the fraction of telephone calls to/from the top two alters and who were the top two alters (ie, the alters most frequently in telephone contact with the ego)? (3) What was the variation in the duration of telephone calls between egos and their social network?

In particular, to answer question 1, we analyzed how each ego corresponds with his or her alters through the day by applying the following steps (step 1 and step 2):

(1) Step 1: Time discretization. For each ego in each time period (T1-T3), we coarse grained the time dimension into four bins of equal time as follows: night (12 AM-6 AM), morning (6 AM-12 PM), afternoon (12 PM-6 PM), and evening (6 PM-12 AM).

(2) Step 2: Alter-specificity assessment. For each ego and for time periods T1 to T3, the alter specificity of the daily rhythms was assessed by comparing the alter structure with that of a null model simulating total randomness in alter specificity. To this
end, we estimated the diversity of alters for each 6-hour bin and for each ego by calculating the associated relative entropies (see Statistical Tools in the Methods section) for time periods T1 to T3. This calculation was performed in two steps as follows: (1) Step 2a: Calculation of origin entropy. We calculated the origin entropy $H_{\text{org}}$ for each ego and for each 6-hour time bin for time periods T1 to T3; (2) Step 2b: Calculation of relative entropy. Thereafter, we obtained the relative entropy $H_{\text{rel}}$ by normalizing $H_{\text{org}}$ by the average $(H_{\text{ref}})$ of the reference entropy resulting from a null model. This null model is based on the hypothesis that no specific times are associated with telephone calls to specific alters. Thus, a low relative entropy, tending to zero, indicates a relevant alter specificity in the call pattern.

### Statistical Tools

This section presents the following three technical tools used in this study: (1) normalization formulas, (2) Jensen-Shannon divergence, and (3) relative entropy.

#### Normalization

To visualize the peaks and troughs of each subject’s telephone call activity on a single graph, we normalized the daily fraction of their calls to the range (0, 1) by using a unity-based normalization formula [47]. Formally, we let $n=21$ be the number of participants included in this study and let $p_i$ be a length $t$ vector of the daily fraction of calls for subject $i$, with $t$ in $\{0, 1, \ldots, 23\}$ and $i$ in $\{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$. We denote by $p_i(t)$ the ratio of calls of subject $i$ at hour $t$. Then, for each element $p_i(t)$ in the vector $p_i$, we denote by $p_i(\text{normalized}(t))$ its normalized value as follows:

#### Jensen-Shannon Divergence

Jensen-Shannon divergence is a measure of dissimilarity that compares two probability distributions; it is a symmetrical finite-valued version of the Kullback-Leibler divergence. Its square root can be used as a metric for measuring the distance between two probability distributions. Formally, in a discrete context, we have the following:

where $p1$ and $p2$ are two discrete probability distributions, $H(\cdot)$ is the Shannon entropy, and JSD is Jensen-Shannon divergence.

#### Entropy Measures

At the individual level, to compare the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls by investigating their alter specificity, we measured the diversity of alters at different hours of the day by calculating the relative entropy. As detailed below, the relative entropy is computed separately for outgoing and incoming telephone calls.

For a given ego $i$, with $i$ in $\{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ and $n=21$ being the number of participants, we calculated the relative entropy of alter specificity by normalizing the origin entropy by the reference entropy for each 6-hour time interval. This calculation was performed in the following three steps:

1. **Step 1: Origin entropy.** Formally, let $A_i = \{a_{i1}, a_{i2}, \ldots, a_{im}\}$ be the set of alters of ego $i$, where $m$ gives the size of the social network of ego $i$. For a 6-hour time interval $t$, the origin entropy is as follows:

\[
H_{\text{org}}(t) = \sum_{a_i \in A_i} p_i(t) \log \frac{1}{p_i(t)}
\]

where $p_i(t)$ is the fraction of calls between ego $i$ and the alter $a_i$ at time interval $t$.

2. **Step 2: Reference entropy.** We now defined a null model that simulates a system with no specific alter structure. To this end, the number of calls between ego $i$ and each alter is preserved, but to simulate randomness, we shuffled the time of the calls in each 2-week period [32]. Thereafter, for each 6-hour interval $t$ for this shuffled data set, we calculated the corresponding origin entropy $H_{\text{org}}(t)$ as outlined in the previous step. By iterating this process $N=1000$ times, we obtained the reference entropy [32].

3. **Step 3: Relative entropy.** To estimate the alter specificity of our original system, we normalized the origin entropy of ego $i$ in each time interval $t$ by the reference entropy as follows:

\[
H_{\text{rel}}(t) = \frac{H_{\text{org}}(t) - H_{\text{ref}}}{H_{\text{ref}}}
\]

### Results

#### Telephone Activity of Older Adults Exhibited Daily Rhythms

Figure 1 shows separately, at the aggregate level, the overall daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls for the older adults participating in the study. The results showed that both of these daily rhythms were marked by the following two distinct peaks in activity: (1) a peak at mid-morning around 10 AM after typical waking times and (2) a peak at the end of the day around 6 PM. Both peaks are in accordance with the notion of circadian acrophase in humans, which is usually diurnal [2]. Note that these two peaks are separated by a period of low activity in the afternoon, beginning around 2 PM and matching the typical nap time for elderly people [48]. Additionally, telephone call activity was the slowest during the habitual sleep times in the nocturnal period, in accordance with the circadian nadir phenomena usually occurring at this time [2]. For outgoing telephone calls only, we also noted a small peak in nocturnal activity around 2 AM, which seems rather unusual given the circadian rhythm framing. Interestingly, the daily rhythms for outgoing and incoming telephone calls resembled each other, although they also had their own specific characteristics.
Figure 1. Daily rhythm of telephone calls of older adults at the aggregate level for outgoing and incoming telephone calls. The shape of the curves suggests that similarities exist in how older adults place and receive telephone calls during the day. It also suggests differences, especially at night around 2 AM and in the evening when the fraction of incoming telephone calls is prominent.

To avoid an ecological fallacy [32], we also observed separately the daily telephone activity of each ego. Figure 2 shows the call fractions for four egos, for which the highest peak in telephone activity was in the morning, afternoon, evening, and night. The results suggest not only (1) the existence of daily rhythms for each ego for both outgoing and incoming telephone calls, but also (2) similarities and differences in the way the egos place and receive telephone calls during the day.

Figure 2. Representative daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone activity for four egos. The solid (dotted) curve shows the outgoing (incoming) call pattern. When the fraction of outgoing telephone calls is greater than the fraction of incoming telephone calls, the difference is shown in green. In the opposite case, the difference is shown in red. The results suggest that both similarities and differences exist in the way the egos place telephone calls and respond to telephone calls during the day. The importance of these observations also appears to vary between egos. In particular, ego D has a prominent nocturnal outgoing telephone call activity that does not appear in the incoming telephone call activity.

To put these illustrative results into context, Figure 3 shows the normalized circadian patterns of the outgoing and incoming telephone calls at the ego level. Here, for each ego and to avoid visual distraction and the influence of extreme values, we normalized the hourly fraction of telephone calls in the range (0, 1), where unity is the maximum fraction and zero is the minimum fraction (see Statistical Tools in the Methods section). The normalized results are displayed on a comparative heat map to illustrate the existence of various daily rhythms in the older adults participating in this study. Interestingly, for some egos, variations appeared between the outgoing and incoming peaks of telephone activity. For instance, individual D switched from a nocturnal peak in outgoing telephone activity to a morning peak in incoming telephone activity. Similarly, the outgoing telephone activity for egos S, T, and U peaked in the morning, whereas the incoming telephone activity peaked in the evening. These differences imply that the hours most propitious for social interaction depend on the social activity or social reactivity of the ego. Taken together, these observations emphasize the interesting characteristics of telephone activity, such as its potential to reflect the daily rhythms of social interactions in...
older people and to reveal possible discrepancies between social activity and reactivity.

Figure 3. Normalized daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone activity at the individual level. The normalized daily rhythms for each ego are aggregated into a heat map for the outgoing telephone calls (right panel) and for the incoming telephone calls (left panel). The colored squares in each row give the daily rhythm for the telephone calls of one ego with 1-hour resolution (see color scale at the top). Higher fractions of telephone calls correspond to brighter squares. The results show that, in general, most telephone activity occurs during the day rather than at night, except for ego D. Similarities and differences also appear in the way egos place telephone calls versus how they receive telephone calls during the day. Taken together, these observations highlight the potential of telephone activity to reveal the daily rhythms of social activity in older adults.

Evidence of Persistent Daily Rhythms in Both Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls in Older Adults

An approach based on the notion of persistence may be applied to analyze outgoing and incoming telephone calls. This approach was first introduced by Saramäki et al to analyze social signatures [44] and then used by Aledavood et al [32-34] to analyze circadian rhythms. At the individual level, the persistence of the daily rhythms calculated above was assessed by comparing the repeatability in time of each ego’s daily patterns (denoted $D_{\text{self}}$) with a reference scale (denoted $D_{\text{ref}}$) separately for the outgoing and incoming telephone calls (see Data Analysis in the Methods section). The results revealed the persistence of daily rhythms. In fact, for each ego, the average self-distance $D_{\text{self}}$ was less than the reference distance $D_{\text{ref}}$ for outgoing telephone calls. Similarly, the average $D_{\text{self}}$ was less than $D_{\text{ref}}$ for 20 of the 21 egos. Averaging the results for all egos provided $\langle D_{\text{self}} \rangle = 0.24$ (SD 0.06) and $\langle D_{\text{ref}} \rangle = 0.38$ (SD 0.07) for outgoing telephone calls, and $\langle D_{\text{self}} \rangle = 0.19$ (SD 0.03) and $\langle D_{\text{ref}} \rangle = 0.28$ (SD 0.04) for incoming telephone calls (Figure 4).
Figure 4. Average persistence histogram. Red bars represent the average reference distances, whereas blue bars represent the average self-distances for all egos in this study. Blue and red dashed lines represent the average reference distance and the average self-distance of the overall population, respectively. The results show that, on average, the self-distance of egos is less than their reference distance, which is evidence of circadian rhythms in telephone activity among older adults.

Additionally, we confirmed the persistence analysis by using a nonparametric statistical approach. To this end, for each ego, we compared the successive daily patterns of telephone call activity by applying Kolmogorov-Smirnov comparison tests to outgoing and incoming telephone calls separately, as previously performed [32]. The $P$ values were strictly greater than .05 for 40 out of 42 cases concerning outgoing telephone calls, and after applying the Holm-Sidak method to correct for multiple comparisons [38], the adjusted $P$ values were greater than .05 for all 42 cases. Similarly, for the incoming telephone calls, we obtain $P$ values greater than .05 and adjusted $P$ values greater than .05 for all 42 cases.

Taken together, these results indicate that, in general, the similarity in the egos’ daily rhythms cannot be rejected. Alternatively, a similar persistence analysis may be performed by using a classic Euclidean distance ($L^2$) instead of the Jensen-Shannon divergence measure, as proposed previously [32]. Executing this alternative led to a similar conclusion for the rhythms of both the outgoing and incoming telephone calls (Table 2).

Table 2. Summary of averaged square root of Jensen-Shannon divergence and $L^2$ metrics for the overall population for both reference distances and self-distances.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>$\sqrt{\text{JSD}}$ distance</th>
<th>$L^2$ distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Self-distance, mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>0.24 (0.06)</td>
<td>0.14 (0.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>0.19 (0.03)</td>
<td>0.14 (0.06)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference distance, mean (SD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing</td>
<td>0.38 (0.07)</td>
<td>0.23 (0.07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming</td>
<td>0.28 (0.04)</td>
<td>0.24 (0.11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$JSD: Jensen-Shannon divergence.

$^b$L$_2$: classic Euclidean distance.

Synchronization of Daily Rhythms for Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls at the Individual Level

Having thus far seen evidence that persistent daily rhythms exist in outgoing and incoming telephone calls and that these rhythms may correspond to circadian rhythm framing, we investigated any possible synchronization between these two daily rhythms. First, Figure 5 shows the square root of Jensen-Shannon divergence (see Statistical Tools in the Methods section) averaged over the 12-month study period for each ego to illustrate the synchronization between outgoing and incoming telephone calls at the individual level. The results revealed different dissimilarity values between the distributions of the outgoing and incoming telephone calls, which, except for one ego, tended to remain below a certain threshold.
Distance D (i.e., square root of Jensen-Shannon divergence) between the distributions of the outgoing and incoming telephone calls at the individual level and over the 12-month study period. The descriptive results show that dissimilarities exist between the daily rhythms for outgoing and incoming telephone calls of the various egos. In particular, although the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone call activity are highly dissimilar for ego D, the other individuals have dissimilarities that remain under a lower threshold.

We next applied a statistical approach based on the Kolmogorov-Smirnov comparison test under the null hypothesis “H₀: the distributions of outgoing and incoming telephone calls follow the same law.” The results emphasized the similarity between these two distributions with a P value strictly greater than .05 for all 42 cases. These results can be explained by noting that, despite the variations between the daily rhythms of the outgoing and incoming telephone calls at the individual level, older people tended to distribute their outgoing and incoming communication time in the same way during the day. In short, a notable daily synchronization occurs in the way individuals place and receive telephone calls.

One interesting consequence of this synchronization is that, at the individual level, when combining the outgoing and incoming telephone calls without distinguishing their direction, the resulting mixed daily pattern persists over time. In fact, to evaluate the persistence of these combined rhythms over time, we estimated the daily rhythms of the telephone call activity of each ego by merging together their outgoing and incoming telephone calls and removing the call direction. The results showed that, on average, 20 of the 21 individuals were persistent in their daily rhythms of telephone call activity. In addition, a statistical approach confirmed these results by comparing, for each ego and for each time period, the successive daily patterns of telephone call activity. Applying the Kolmogorov-Smirnov comparison test provided P values greater than .05 for all 42 cases (Figure 6). Taken together, these results show that, because of the synchronization, the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone activity can be merged without distinction. However, these results do not imply that the daily rhythms for outgoing and incoming telephone activity contain exactly the same information about how older people communicate with their social network during the day. Instead, older people have similar rhythms in their telephone activity and reactivity. Further, the alter specificity investigation designed by Aledavood et al [32] should provide useful insights.
Figure 6. Histogram showing the average persistence for mixed outgoing-incoming telephone calls. Red bars represent the averaged reference distances, whereas blue bars represent the averaged self-distances for all the egos in the study. Blue and red dashed lines represent the averaged self-distance and the averaged reference distance of the overall population in the study, respectively. The results suggest that, on average, individuals have a self-distance that is less than their reference distance, which implies that, when mixing outgoing and incoming telephone calls without distinction, the daily rhythms of older adults persist over time.

Alter Specificity Similarities in the Daily Rhythms of Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls

The results presented above show that persistent rhythms exist at the individual level for both outgoing and incoming telephone calls and that these rhythms are clearly synchronized with respect to the direction of the telephone call. However, these results do not provide alter specificity information about how older adults interact during the day with their social network. To clarify this situation, we used the method of Aledavood et al [32] to investigate whether alter specificity exists separately for outgoing and incoming telephone calls (see Data Analysis in the Methods section).

Overall, comparing the circadian rhythm of the outgoing telephone calls with that of the incoming telephone calls suggested that similarities exist for alter specificity. For both calling directions, the average relative entropy (see Data Analysis in the Methods section) of the population shown in Figure 7A indicated that egos tend to have low entropy in the evening and night but higher entropy in the morning and afternoon. However, this result did not hold for all egos, as shown in Figure 7B. Additionally, the incoming circadian rhythms at night nuance the relevance of these results because only four egos were active during this time interval. This low number of observations prevented us from concluding that the average entropy for this time period applies to the whole population.

We next investigated whether particular rhythms exist at the individual level in communications involving the favorite telephone contacts of egos for both outgoing and incoming telephone calls. Figure 8 shows the specificity in telephoning to the top two contacts (ie, the two most-contacted alters), as performed by Aledavood et al [32]. The results suggest that similarities exist in how egos place telephone calls and respond to telephone calls with their two favorite alters during the day. Specifically, for outgoing and incoming telephone calls, the corresponding average pattern gives the maximum fraction of calls with the top two contacts in the evening and night, whereas it decreases in the morning and afternoon, as shown in Figure 8A. Additionally, this average fraction of calls also seems inversely proportional to the average relative entropy (Figure 7A). The heat map for the top two alters shown in Figure 8B confirmed that a large fraction of the telephone communications with the top two alters occurred at night. However, as discussed for Figure 7, because only four egos were contacted at night, we cannot extrapolate the resulting average entropy to the whole population.
Figure 7. Relative entropy at the individual level. Panel A shows the averaged relative entropy for both outgoing (black curve) and incoming (dashed curve) telephone calls. Panel B summarizes the relative entropy of all 21 egos in a heat map. Light (dark) colors correspond to low (high) entropy, and gray indicates missing values. Although individuals have their own alter specificity during the daytime, the average relative entropy of the population is similar, except at nighttime when too much data are missing to obtain a significant result.

Figure 8. Fraction of telephone calls with the top two alters at the individual level. Panel A shows the average fraction of calls with the top two alters for both outgoing (black curve) and incoming (dotted curve) telephone calls. Panel B summarizes on a heat map the fraction of telephone calls with the top two alters for all 21 egos. A light (dark) color indicates a high (low) fraction, and gray indicates missing values. Although individuals have their own top two alter specificity during the day, the average relative entropy of the population seems similar, except at nighttime when too much data are missing to draw significant conclusions.

Finally, we completed our investigation into alter specificity by considering the duration of telephone calls between egos and their social network during the day. Figure 9 shows the results. The following two results clearly stand out: (1) the duration of telephone calls tended to increase throughout the day until the night, when it dropped rapidly to a minimum and (2) on average, egos communicated longer with their close social network (family and friends) than with others (associations and health professionals). In fact, a threshold in call duration seemed to separate these two social circles.
Figure 9. Average duration of telephone calls between egos and their social network during the day. Data show the average duration of telephone conversations between egos and their family (red), friends (green), health professionals (purple), and associations (blue).

Discussion

Principal Findings

Persistence and synchronization are important mechanisms that affect the daily rhythms of the social activities of older individuals. Unfortunately, they remain underinvestigated in the current literature on call detail record analysis. This work contributes to filling this gap by comparing estimates of circadian rhythms in call detail records of outgoing and incoming telephone calls of an older population. To this end, we focused on the following two issues: (1) the possibility of circadian rhythms existing in the outgoing and incoming telephone calling activities of seniors, and (2) the possible existence of synchronization between these two rhythms. This study used a data set of 12 successive months that combined call detail records and questionnaire data from 21 volunteers, all of whom were over 70 years of age. In particular, we extracted the following four specific telecommunication parameters from the call detail records: (1) recipient of the call (ie, alter), (2) time at which the call began, (3) duration of the call, and (4) direction of the call (outgoing or incoming).

The results indicated that differences exist between the daily rhythms of the salient features of outgoing and incoming telephone activities (eg, hourly peaks of calling) by older individuals (Figures 1-4) and that both of these rhythms are in accordance with circadian rhythm framing. Despite these differences, the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone calls generally follow the same distribution. In other words, the rhythms are synchronized. Interestingly, one consequence of this synchronization is that the daily rhythm persists upon combining outgoing and incoming telephone calls (Figure 6). Finally, based on a descriptive approach, we suggest that, behind this temporal synchronization, individuals also present similarities in the way that they place calls to and receive calls from specific alters during specific periods of the day (Figures 7-9).

Comparing the present findings on older adults with the existing literature on young individuals [32,33] reveals similarities in the way in which old and young individuals make telephone calls during the day. Both older adults and younger individuals exhibit consistent daily rhythms in their telephone activity in accordance with circadian rhythm framing. Furthermore, for both younger and older individuals, telephone calls made in the evening and night were more focused on specific well-known alters than those made during the rest of the day. However, particular differences also existed between these two populations. In particular, at the aggregate level, older adults exhibited general circadian rhythms of telephone activity with a bimodal distribution. Their telephone activity peaked in the morning and again in the evening, separated by a period of low activity in the afternoon. The circadian rhythm of the telephone activity of younger individuals, however, tends to follow a Gaussian distribution centered on the afternoon period [32,33].

This important difference between younger and older individuals may be explained by invoking the following four hypotheses:

1. With increasing age, people tend to nap more in the afternoon, which could explain the period of low telephone activity in the older population studied herein [48].

2. The work schedule for younger adults, as noted previously [32,33], may module their social activity and thus their telephone activity. Thus, specific periods of the day, such as after school, could be more propitious for telephone activity than other periods, such as the morning.

3. In the older population, the chronotype shift that usually appears with age tends to make people more active in the morning, which could explain the first peak of telephone activity in the morning [17].
(4) Finally, cultural differences between the two samples, such as the country of origin of the participants (France in this study and the United Kingdom in previous studies [32,33]) may also impact the general circadian rhythms observed in the two studies, notably regarding cultural zeitgebers such as mealtimes and nap times.

Thus, taken together, the present results show that (1) older individuals may present persistent daily rhythms in telephone activity for both outgoing and incoming telephone calls in accordance with circadian rhythm framing and (2) the daily rhythm of their outgoing and incoming calls may be synchronized. These circadian rhythms contain both similarities and differences when compared with those of other populations, such as younger adults. In the field of health monitoring, these results suggest that the telephone may serve as a digital sensor of the temporal social activity of older individuals. In clinical practice, the telephone activity of older patients could be monitored to supervise their health in real-time based on their social activity and reactivity. Such supervision could consist of detecting particular health issues in progress, such as insomnia and other sleep disturbances that often occur with age [17], which could be signaled by nocturnal telephone activity. Additionally, such supervision could help to prevent risky social situations, such as isolation and depression, by detecting a decrease in the number and duration of outgoing and incoming telephone calls with individuals in the close social network of the patient. Both of these detections (ie, health issues and social risks) could be presented to health professionals in the form of triggers to help them better understand and anticipate health complications or worsening conditions of older patients. Notably, information stemming from monitoring telephone activity has the advantage of being collected in a passive and unobtrusive way. Such monitoring could be done in conjunction with traditional clinical questionnaires about the rhythms of social activity that are often used in clinical practice to monitor the daily behavior of patients [18]. Thus, this digital approach could potentially improve traditional health care systems by providing objective estimates of the social activity of patients to augment the subjective answers to questionnaires collected at more dispersed time intervals. However, before considering such an approach, the limitations described in the next section should be considered.

Limitations

Because we provided a descriptive analysis based on a relatively rich but small sample of 21 older individuals, no straightforward generalization of the results should be made to the overall elderly population. In particular, given the potential sparsity of data and the small number of telephone calls made each day by the subjects in this study (Table 1), no foregone conclusions should be made regarding observations made under different conditions or on different data sets. To resolve this, future work should consider larger data sets and, more broadly, analyze different populations, such as healthy, disabled, or chronically ill individuals, or even vary the time period of observation. An evaluation of the reproducibility of the proposed approach would help to determine the robustness of the present results, which would in turn determine the feasibility of analyzing call detail records for health-monitoring purposes.

In addition, given the small sample size, the present quantitative data should be confronted with qualitative data. For health monitoring, such an approach could provide an interesting perspective to contextualize the present findings.

Finally, a technical limitation is present in the size of the time interval used in our data analysis for investigating the persistence and synchronization of circadian rhythms over time. Although no clear consensus exists in the literature about the size of the time interval when analyzing temporal telephone data, previous studies [41] have reported that aggregating data over long time intervals (eg, several months) limits the effect of short-term variations in call patterns, thereby enhancing the robustness of the persistence analysis. Consequently, by splitting our 12-month data set into three equal 4-month intervals as performed in previous work [32], the results for persistence and synchronization are valid only for a 4-month interval. For other intervals, further studies are required. Such investigations are welcome because call detail record analyses generally suffer from a lack of investigation into the reproducibility of the existing methodology to more general conditions, as mentioned previously [44].

Conclusion

In this work, we estimated the circadian rhythms of the telephone activity of older adults. The results showed (1) temporal persistence and (2) synchronization between how older adults place and receive telephone calls over the day. At this point, more investigations are needed to determine the extent to which such rhythms may be harnessed for health-monitoring purposes. In particular, the results of this study showed that, despite high persistence and synchronization, differences exist between the daily rhythms of the outgoing and incoming telephone activities of older adults. These differences may relate, for example, to the daily peak hour in telephone activity.

Perspectives

Determining the similarities and dissimilarities between the daily rhythms of outgoing and incoming telephone activities for health-monitoring purposes is of interest to health care professionals. At this point, however, the methodology used here, which is largely inspired by a previous report [32], does not permit us to determine the significance of the results. Along these lines, extracting relevant and important information from telephone activity for health monitoring is part of our immediate plan. We believe that such an approach could provide an opportunity for assessing the relevance of digital circadian rhythms to characterize the behavior of older patients and, more broadly, to investigate the role of new technologies in improving health care monitoring. Future studies should investigate, in particular, older adults with onset of neurodegenerative diseases, such as Alzheimer disease, for whom the persistence evinced here could be replaced by a transition to a pathologic perseveration that could be detected and characterized by repeated outgoing calls with a given circadian rhythm.
Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

References


Aubourg T, Demongeot J, Provost H, Vuillerme N
Exploitation of Outgoing and Incoming Telephone Calls in the Context of Circadian Rhythms of Social Activity Among Elderly People: Observational Descriptive Study
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e13535
URL: http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e13535/
doi:10.2196/13535
PMID:33242018

©Timothée Aubourg, Jacques Demongeot, Hervé Provost, Nicolas Vuillerme. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 26.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
Assessing User Retention of a Mobile App: Survival Analysis

Yu-Hsuan Lin, MD, PhD; Si-Yu Chen, MS; Pei-Hsuan Lin, BSc; An-Shun Tai, PhD; Yuan-Chien Pan, MSc; Chang-En Hsieh, BSc; Sheng-Hsuan Lin, MD, ScD

1 Institute of Population Health Sciences, National Health Research Institutes, Miaoli, Taiwan
2 Department of Psychiatry, National Taiwan University Hospital, Taipei, Taiwan
3 Department of Psychiatry, College of Medicine, National Taiwan University, Taipei, Taiwan
4 Institute of Health Behaviors and Community Sciences, College of Public Health, National Taiwan University, Taipei, Taiwan
5 Institute of Statistics, National Chiao Tung University, Hsinchu, Taiwan

Corresponding Author:
Sheng-Hsuan Lin, MD, ScD
Institute of Statistics
National Chiao Tung University
1001 University Road
Hsinchu, 300
Taiwan
Phone: 886 (3) 5712121 ext 56822
Email: shenglin@nctu.edu.tw

Abstract

Background: A mobile app generates passive data, such as GPS data traces, without any direct involvement from the user. These passive data have transformed the manner of traditional assessments that require active participation from the user. Passive data collection is one of the most important core techniques for mobile health development because it may promote user retention, which is a unique characteristic of a software medical device.

Objective: The primary aim of this study was to quantify user retention for the “Staff Hours” app using survival analysis. The secondary aim was to compare user retention between passive data and active data, as well as factors associated with the survival rates of user retention.

Methods: We developed an app called “Staff Hours” to automatically calculate users’ work hours through GPS data (passive data). “Staff Hours” not only continuously collects these passive data but also sends an 11-item mental health survey to users monthly (active data). We applied survival analysis to compare user retention in the collection of passive and active data among 342 office workers from the “Staff Hours” database. We also compared user retention on Android and iOS platforms and examined the moderators of user retention.

Results: A total of 342 volunteers (224 men; mean age 33.8 years, SD 7.0 years) were included in this study. Passive data had higher user retention than active data ($P=0.011$). In addition, user retention for passive data collected via Android devices was higher than that for iOS devices ($P=0.015$). Trainee physicians had higher user retention for the collection of active data than trainees from other occupations, whereas no significant differences between these two groups were observed for the collection of passive data ($P=0.700$).

Conclusions: Our findings demonstrated that passive data collected via Android devices had the best user retention for this app that records GPS-based work hours.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e16309) doi:10.2196/16309

KEYWORDS

smartphone; passive data, user retention; mobile application; app; survival analysis; work hours

Introduction

In the past decade, smartphones have become nearly ubiquitous. Over 3 billion smartphones have internet subscriptions, and each device has the information processing capacity of supercomputers of the 1990s [1]. Even in areas without easy access to clean water, ownership of a smartphone and rapid access to information have become symbols of modernity [2]. Although most comparable sources of big data are scarce in the
world’s poorest nations, mobile phones are a notable exception [3]. Individuals’ history of mobile phone use can be used to infer their socioeconomic status [4]. Mobile apps could also help to fill the gap of health inequality, such as that for workers with extremely long work hours.

User retention is defined as the number of initial users who are still active in a given time frame. User retention is usually calculated as the number of those who are still active divided by the total number of users registered [5]. User retention enables designers to understand how often the users return to use the available service of a mobile app. Tracking user retention is both important and difficult, because the majority of mobile app users only use apps over a short timeframe [6] and report that the most important and acceptable components of a mobile app are ease of use and time, with the average time of use being 9.3 seconds. Gathering enough data to make reliable inferences of the retention rate over long timespans is also a challenge. Recently, user retention was adopted as a crucial index to evaluate the effect and utility of mobile apps designed for self-management. Previous studies have shown that users benefit from long-term engagement with an app [7]. However, the lack of studies with large samples using a mobile app may signal a need for additional studies on the potential use of a mobile app to assist individuals in changing self-management behaviors, such as health behaviors [5].

There were over 90 million documented mental health app installations by the end of 2018 [8]. Although mobile apps have been considered a feasible and acceptable means of administering health intervention, most literature regarding health apps has focused on preventing and managing chronic disease, self-monitoring of health behaviors, or content analyses of health and fitness apps [5]. However, studies investigating the utility of mobile apps as a health intervention were mostly executed in empirical study settings. Understanding patterns of real-world usage of health apps is key to maximizing their potential to increase self-management of care by the public [8]. Although the number of app installs and daily active minutes of use may seem high, only a small portion of users actually use apps for a long period of time [8]. A usage analysis of user engagement of unguided mental health apps found the general user retention is poor, with a median 15-day retention of 3.9% and 30-day retention of 3.3% [8]. Therefore, how to enhance long-term engagement of real-word usage of health apps may be crucial for both designers and users.

Passive data are defined as data that are generated without any direct involvement from the subject, such as GPS traces and phone call logs. By contrast, active data are defined as data that require active participation from the subject, such as surveys and audio samples [9]. Passive data generated by mobile apps have transformed the manner of traditional assessments based on active data. In 2003, the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education implemented work hour limits for all physicians in training in the United States. However, surveying medical interns’ compliance with these work hour limits using a traditional assessment took 2 years, and the national survey was published in 2006 [10]. In addition, these self-reports could not reflect fluctuations in work hours in a timely manner, especially for medical staff with frequent on-call duties.

Nowadays, smartphones offer us objective and ecological sources of measurement that continuously and passively collect data. These reliable, quantitative data could facilitate real-time policy evaluation and target resources to those with the greatest requirement, even in remote and inaccessible regions. In addition, policy regarding resident physician work hours has shifted frequently in recent years [11,12]; assessing user retention of an app like “Staff Hours” is useful to track the implementation of a work hours policy, as well as the resident physicians’ compliance with work hour limits.

We developed an iOS and Android smartphone app called “Staff Hours” that automatically calculates users’ work hours through GPS data. This passive data collection by “Staff Hours” is similar to that of our previous apps, “Know Addiction” and “Rhythm,” which collect and calculate smartphone screen time and sleep time, respectively [13-18]. However, these two apps were experimentally used for months, and user retention of an app collecting passive data in a natural setting is still unknown. The inherently dynamic nature of apps adds to the challenge of developing reliable metrics of app users’ retention. In addition, mobile app development is largely consumer-led and commercial-driven, and the evaluation of user retention is often app-centered and not user-centered. For example, a study tracking the longitudinal availability of mental health apps reported that these apps have a half-life; after a certain amount of time, an app may no longer be available for public use [19]. These app-centered metrics may have a low correlation with the apps’ clinical utility or usability [20].

Despite the ability of passive data collection by smartphone apps, little is known about user retention in the real world. Of particular interest are potential factors associated with the user retention of mobile apps. We hypothesized that user retention for passive data collection is higher than that for active data collection. We further hypothesized that power-saving operating systems and the target audience increase user retention for passive data and active data, respectively. The primary aim of this study was to quantify the user retention for the “Staff Hours” app using survival analysis. The secondary aim was to compare user retention between passive data and active data, as well as factors associated with the survival rates of user retention.

Methods

Participants

We collected data from 421 office workers from August 2018 to March 2019 from the “Staff Hours” database, which is owned by the National Health Research Institutes. This newly developed “Staff Hours” app automatically estimates users’ work hours daily through a GPS record using an algorithm. All participants were volunteers who were interested in their work hours and had successfully installed this app. We defined any data uploaded to our server during the first 28 days of their registration as successful installation of this app. We excluded 79 of the 421 app users who did not provide demographic data such as gender and age. Otherwise, app users had to provide their demographic data and occupation. A total of 342 participants (224 men; mean age 33.76 years, SD 7.01 years, range 20-59 years) were included in this study. Most of the
participants (286/342, 83.6%) were medical staff, and most of the medical staff (128/286, 44.8%) were trainee physicians (resident physicians). The “Staff Hours” app is only available in Taiwan, and consent was obtained from all users to allow their data to be collected electronically before installation. Different versions of this app were available on the Android or iOS platform. The study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of the National Health Research Institutes. All clinical investigations were conducted according to the principles expressed in the Declaration of Helsinki.

Measures

**Designing the App — Staff Hours**

The “Staff Hours” app is designed to automatically record GPS data in the background without interrupting the smartphone operating system. In the beginning of installation, users have to provide at least one workplace location; the app can track up to 5 locations simultaneously. The location is transformed to longitude and latitude with the Google map format. The process of recording the GPS-defined work hours is illustrated in Figure 1. The GPS detection range is a 1-km radius around the workplace, and the recording of work hours starts when the workplace location is within range for a consecutive 30 minutes. Similarly, the recording of work hours ends when there is a consecutive 30-minute period without the workplace within 1 km of the device. To save battery power, the sampling rate of GPS data is fixed at 10 minutes. The user interface of the “Staff Hours” app is shown in Figure 2. In addition to GPS-defined work hours, users can set up their work schedules in this app. The user-inputted “scheduled work hours” include “regular work hours” and “on-call duty hours.” Aside from total work hours, the app also provides the output “overtime work hours” using the formula of “total work hours” minus “scheduled work hours.”

**Figure 1.** Recording process of GPS-defined work hours. In this example, the user walks into and leaves the 1-km radius centered on the workplace at 8:50 AM and 6:20 PM, respectively. The app then automatically generates GPS-defined work hours in real time (8:50-6:20).

**Figure 2.** Screenshots of the "Staff Hours" app: (A) home screen and registration; (B) workplace login; (C) data visualization.
Collecting Passive Data — GPS-Defined Work Hours

Collecting and uploading data to the dedicated lab server occur automatically in the app background, and no interference with the daily routine of the smartphone use is observed. “Staff Hours” collects these GPS-defined work hours in the Android operating system, but the app stops during background refresh in the iOS. These GPS-defined work hours data are called “passive data” throughout this article since the data collection does not require any active participation from the smartphone user.

Collecting Active Data — Mental Health Survey

Every morning, there is a notification to remind the app users to examine their work hour records. On the first day of every month, this app pushes a notification for an 11-item mental health survey. This questionnaire includes the Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9) for depressive symptoms [21], experience with phantom vibration and ringing syndrome [22], and one item for quality of life measured on a 4-point Likert scale. In contrast to passive data, self-reported data from the questionnaire are called “active data” throughout this article.

Defining User Retention

Considering the intermittent usage of this app and patterns of uploaded data, we herein define that user retention of this app stopped on the first date of a 28-day period without any data being uploaded. For every smartphone, user retention was measured separately for passive and active data.

Statistical Analysis

In this study, the user retention length and indicator of whether an individual uninstalled the app were treated as a survival event. The Kaplan-Meier estimator, a standard nonparametric statistic used to estimate survival function of time-to-event data, was applied to measure the survival rate of user retention. A log-rank test was used to examine the difference in survival curves among different subpopulations or data collection modes (ie, active vs passive). A Cox proportional hazards model (Cox model) was used to assess the association between the hazard rate of user retention and two factors (smartphone users’ operating system and occupation). Occupations included resident physicians, visiting staff, medical students, nurses, and others. Comparing different occupations, we focused on resident physicians because their work hours are the longest among all occupations [22-27]. All analyses were performed using R software (version 3.4). The survival analysis was based on the package “survival” [28]. A P value less than .05 was considered statistically significant.

Patient and Public Involvement

No patients nor public members were involved in our work.

Results

We first compared user retention time between self-reported and GPS-defined work hours by analyzing active and passive data recorded using the “Staff Hours” app. Survival curves of user retention by passive and active data are illustrated in Figure 3. The survival rate of user retention for passive data was 46.7% after 1 week, whereas the rate for active data was 22.2%. After 1 month, the survival rate for passive data was 27.3%, and that for active data was 3.4%. The log-rank test results show that the survival time of passive data was significantly higher than that of active data (P=.011). This result is consistent after conditioning on the different operation systems, which is shown in Multimedia Appendix 1.

The survival curves for the 2 operating systems (Android and iOS) for passive data are shown in Figure 4 and for active data are shown in Figure 5. For passive data, 1-week survival rates of user retention for Android and iOS were 69.2% and 36.2%,
respectively. After 1 month, the survival rate for Android reduced to 49.5%, whereas the rate for iOS reduced to 16.7%. For active data, 1-week survival rates of user retention for Android and iOS were 8.3% and 28.6%, respectively. After 1 month, the survival rate for Android reduced to 0.8%, and the survival rate for iOS reduced to 4.5%. The log-rank test revealed that patterns of user retention varied based on the operating system, with Android users maintaining a significantly higher survival rate of user retention for passive data across time ($P=.015$; Figure 4) than iOS users. By contrast, the patterns of user retention for active data showed no significant difference between Android and iOS ($P=.700$; Figure 5).

**Figure 4.** Survival curves of GPS-defined work hours between the operating systems.

![Android vs iOS](image1)

**Figure 5.** Survival curves of self-reports between the operating systems.

![Android vs iOS](image2)

The results of the Cox model are shown in Table 1 and Multimedia Appendix 2. User retention for the collection of passive data via Android devices was higher than that for iOS. Resident physicians had higher user retention for the collection of active data than those with other occupations ($P=.041$), whereas no significant differences were observed between these two groups in passive data collection.
Principal Findings
Our results suggest that quantifying user retention of an app using survival analysis is feasible. The survival curves of user retention for passive and active data collection provide a reference for user retention of an app that was not actively promoted. This user retention obtained via survival analysis could be a useful indicator to monitor the effects of advertising campaigns or promotional activities for any app. Our data help to study the critical period of user retention. The survival rate of 46.7% for the collection of passive data was until the first week, and this suggests that more than half of the app users quit using the app or technical problems interrupted the passive data collection upon app installation. Helping first-time users to navigate this app and delivering frequently asked questions through a push notification during this critical period could be valuable, and this survival rate implies potential technical problems in the collection of passive data via this app. Previous studies have also demonstrated similar results — that user retention significantly decreases during the first week [29]. Among those who downloaded the “PTSD Coach” app (n=153,834), designed for American veterans to reduce post-traumatic stress disorder symptoms, 61.1% returned to use the app after the first day of installation. Over half of users (52.1%) continued to use the app or used it at least one time beyond the first week of download. A commonly observed pattern is the user downloading an app, quickly scanning it, and determining personal relevance. For users who may only open the app a single time, it is the only opportunity to capture their interest. Therefore, mobile health app developers have also suggested that health care professionals “need to very carefully manage the initial phases of somebody using this kind of technology and make sure they’re well monitored” [30].

“Staff Hours” provides the first model to examine user retention for passive and active data collection simultaneously. Although a higher user retention for passive data collection over active data collection seems intuitive, we first quantified the survival rate of user retention and examined the factors associated with this survival rate. In addition, we established a user-centered evaluation of the mobile app’s user retention based on an app-centered longevity evaluation [19]. The present analysis may be a useful metric of usability evaluation for a mobile health app, even a software medical device. Apart from the efficacy and safety evaluation in the traditional registration of new drugs or medical devices, the American Psychiatric Association proposed an app evaluation framework that emphasizes usability or engagement [31]. The engagement evaluation includes how many patients became stuck when using an app or found them difficult to use. This user-centered evaluation encourages app developers to involve patients or potential target users in the development of their health apps.

Our findings show that user retention for the collection of passive data via Android devices was higher than that with iOS. Platform-related differences in user retention resulted from the differences in the GPS data collection between Android and iOS. Specifically, “Staff Hours” will stop collecting data during a background refresh in iOS but not in Android. The fact that passive data collection consumed more electricity in iOS could explain the lower user retention in iOS for passive data. By contrast, no significant platform-related differences in user retention in the collection of active data were observed. Because active data collection differs from passive data collection, which was generated continuously from day-to-day human-machine interaction, user retention is not associated with operating systems. In summary, platform-related differences in user retention in the collection of passive data, but not of active data, imply that electricity consumption may be of a particular concern to smartphone users, given the challenges of developing apps for 2 distinct platforms.

Our results provide novel information regarding resident physicians’ user retention in the collection of active data. This higher user retention suggests that resident physicians represent the right target audience for this app. “Staff Hours” was designed not only to automatically record work hours but also to survey staff’s mental health during moments of long work hours. Resident physicians had extremely long work hours and mental health issues at the time. As a result, they were more motivated to continuously interact with this app. The PHQ-9 for depressive symptoms, phantom vibration, and ringing syndrome in this mental health survey is specifically designed for staff with excessive work hours such as resident physicians. A systematic review and meta-analysis showed a high prevalence rate of 28.8% of depression or depressive symptoms among resident physicians [32]. Our previous study also showed that more than 85% of medical interns with 86.7 work hours per week experienced phantom vibration and ringing syndrome, and these syndromes significantly reduced 2 weeks after their internship [27]. Such mental health surveys on smartphones are important because smartphone use may reduce bias in the form of the Hawthorne effect. This effect has been reported in a previous study to demonstrate that PHQ-9 depressive symptom scores recorded from the app were more sensitive in detecting suicidal behavior than the traditionally administered PHQ-9 [33]. Mental health and work hours are both important for resident physicians, but excessive work hours did not represent poor mental health. Our recent study showed that medical interns with an additional 10 work hours per week (i.e., average additional 2 work hours per day) had a relatively small increase in depressive symptoms, with a PHQ-9 score of 0.13 [34].
Limitations
Several methodologic limitations should be noted when interpreting our findings. First, the rapid decrease in user retention in the collection of active data may be attributed to our definition of user retention, which stopped when no data were uploaded for more than 28 consecutive days. Furthermore, passive data and active data are collected from different sources (ie, GPS and self-report, respectively). Therefore, the difference in the user retention time is somehow affected by the characteristics of these resources. For example, sampling rates of active and passive data are unequal, and passive data are generated every 10 minutes, but active data, according to a mental health survey, are generated every month. Second, this definition of retention did not include users’ return to using the app after quitting for more than 28 consecutive days. Third, our sample size was not large enough to identify more factors associated with user retention and lacked significant power. In addition, all of the individuals only had one smartphone, so it was not feasible to compare the difference in retention time between iOS and Android operation systems for the same individuals. Finally, the user retention might also be different in an app that is more attractive than “Staff Hours.” In addition, the longer retention with our app on Android devices, compared with iOS devices, can be explained by the difference in electronic consumption, so the results might not be generalizable to other apps.

Conclusions
In conclusion, we demonstrated that passive data collected via Android devices had the best user retention with our app that records GPS-based work hours. As a pilot study in this field, our results provide new insights into quantifying the usability of a mobile app using survival analysis. We also determined that the first week upon installation is the critical period for the app’s longevity. Analysis of user retention with additional apps is required to validate our methods.

Acknowledgments
We thank Ms. Ting-Wei Chiang and Ms. Hsiao-Han Lin for their excellent technical assistance. This study was supported by grants from the National Health Research Institutes of Taiwan (09A1-PHPP20-014) and Ministry of Science and Technology of Taiwan (MOST 107-2314-B-400-038-MY3 and MOST 108-2636-B-009-001). The funder of the study had no role in study design, data collection, data analysis, data interpretation, or writing of the report. The corresponding author had full access to all the data and had final responsibility for the decision to submit for publication.

Authors’ Contributions
YL, SL, and SC conceptualized the study. SC, PL, AT, YP, and CH performed the data curation and data analysis. All authors interpreted the data analysis and critically revised the manuscript. All authors had the opportunity to review the final manuscript and provided their permission to publish the manuscript. All authors agree to take responsibility for the work. YL is guarantor. The corresponding author attests that all listed authors meet authorship criteria and that no others meeting the criteria have been omitted.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Survival curves of GPS-defined work hours (passive data) vs self-reported work hours (active data) for each operating system.

[DOCX File, 25 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16309_app1.docx ]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Cox proportional hazards model adjusted by age and gender.

[DOCX File, 13 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16309_app2.docx ]

References


Abbreviations

PHQ-9: Patient Health Questionnaire
Sleep Tracking of a Commercially Available Smart Ring and Smartwatch Against Medical-Grade Actigraphy in Everyday Settings: Instrument Validation Study

Milad Asgari Mehrabadi1, BSc, MSc; Iman Azimi2, PhD; Fatemeh Sarhaddi2, BSc, MSc; Anna Axelin3,4, PhD; Hannakaisa Niela-Vilén3, PhD; Saana Myllyntausta5,6,7, PhD; Sari Stenholm5,7, PhD; Nikil Dutt1,8, PhD; Pasi Liljeberg2, PhD; Amir M Rahmani1,8,9, PhD, MBA

1Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, United States
2Department of Computing, University of Turku, Turku, Finland
3Department of Nursing Science, University of Turku, Turku, Finland
4Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Turku University Hospital, Turku, Finland
5Department of Public Health, University of Turku and Turku University Hospital, Turku, Finland
6School of Educational Sciences and Psychology, University of Eastern Finland, Joensuu, Kuopio, Finland
7Centre for Population Health Research, University of Turku and Turku University Hospital, Turku, Finland
8Department of Computer Science, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, United States
9School of Nursing, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, United States

Corresponding Author: Milad Asgari Mehrabadi, BSc, MSc
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California Irvine
Berk Hall, 1st Floor
Irvine, CA
United States
Phone: 1 949 506 8187
Email: masgarim@uci.edu

Abstract

Background: Assessment of sleep quality is essential to address poor sleep quality and understand changes. Owing to the advances in the Internet of Things and wearable technologies, sleep monitoring under free-living conditions has become feasible and practicable. Smart rings and smartwatches can be employed to perform mid- or long-term home-based sleep monitoring. However, the validity of such wearables should be investigated in terms of sleep parameters. Sleep validation studies are mostly limited to short-term laboratory tests; there is a need for a study to assess the sleep attributes of wearables in everyday settings, where users engage in their daily routines.

Objective: This study aims to evaluate the sleep parameters of the Oura ring along with the Samsung Gear Sport watch in comparison with a medically approved actigraphy device in a midterm everyday setting, where users engage in their daily routines.

Methods: We conducted home-based sleep monitoring in which the sleep parameters of 45 healthy individuals (23 women and 22 men) were tracked for 7 days. Total sleep time (TST), sleep efficiency (SE), and wake after sleep onset (WASO) of the ring and watch were assessed using paired t tests, Bland-Altman plots, and Pearson correlation. The parameters were also investigated considering the gender of the participants as a dependent variable.

Results: We found significant correlations between the ring’s and actigraphy’s TST (r=0.86; P<.001), WASO (r=0.41; P<.001), and SE (r=0.47; P<.001). Comparing the watch with actigraphy showed a significant correlation in TST (r=0.59; P<.001). The mean differences in TST, WASO, and SE of the ring and actigraphy were within satisfactory ranges, although there were significant differences between the parameters (P<.001); TST and SE mean differences were also within satisfactory ranges for the watch, and the WASO was slightly higher than the range (31.27, SD 35.15). However, the mean differences of the parameters between the watch and actigraphy were considerably higher than those of the ring. The watch also showed a significant difference in TST (P<.001) between female and male groups.
Conclusions: In a sample population of healthy adults, the sleep parameters of both the Oura ring and Samsung watch have acceptable mean differences and indicate significant correlations with actigraphy, but the ring outperforms the watch in terms of the nonstaging sleep parameters.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(10):e20465) doi:10.2196/20465

KEYWORDS
sleep; smart ring; smartwatch; actigraphy; wearable technology

Introduction

Background
Sleep is a multifaceted and dynamic phenomenon that indicates individuals’ overall health and well-being and is affected by a variety of factors such as behavioral habits, stress, and disorders [1,2]. Sleep disturbances are common across different population groups (eg, older people and pregnant women) and negatively impact body functions, including the cardiovascular and immune system and hormonal release [3,4]. Such sleep problems need to be investigated thoroughly to reduce the associated health risks and complications. Monitoring sleep quality is a vital step in this regard when the individuals’ sleep parameters are tracked [5].

Sleep quality assessment methods have been conventionally performed in clinical settings by monitoring users’ biological signals and body movements. Polysomnography (PSG), the gold standard method used for sleep analysis, is enabled by the continuous monitoring of different cardiorespiratory and neurophysiological indicators [6]. Owing to PSG’s complex and multichannel data collection, this method is limited to short-term hospital or laboratory-based monitoring. Actigraphy is another well-established method enabled by a 3D accelerometer that captures the movements of a limb to monitor sleep [7]. This method has been shown to be accurate enough compared with PSG in a healthy subject population [8-11], although the results might be inaccurate when the subjects are individuals with sleep disorders [7,11,12]. In addition, other studies conducted with large populations have shown an agreement between actigraphy and PSG in total sleep time (TST), wake after sleep onset (WASO), and sleep efficiency (SE) parameters [11,13]. On the other hand, some studies have considered the validity of actigraphy’s sleep onset latency (SOL) compared with PSG [11,14] and showed that actigraphy consistently underestimated SOL in comparison with PSG. This method is more convenient than PSG because it allows users to wear the actigraphy device in everyday settings (ie, days to weeks), although conventional medical-grade actigraphy devices are still infeasible for long-term studies (ie, months to years) because of their size, design, and battery life issues.

Advancements in consumer wearable technology provide opportunities to extend sleep monitoring to mid- or long-term home-based health care applications using low-power, miniaturized, and fashionable wearables [15-17]. Wearable electronics and the Internet of Things–based systems are growing dramatically and are expected to revolutionize health care delivery and outcomes [18,19]. In particular, smart rings will most likely become popular in sleep studies. Longer battery life, elegant design, and sophisticated embedded sensors in such rings have enabled them to be used not only in clinical trials (instead of medical-grade actigraphy) but also in different population-based studies [20,21]. Such devices offer continuous data collection of body movements and vital signs in everyday settings. The data can be utilized to continuously monitor sleep disturbances of individuals for an extended period [22].

Sleep monitoring using consumer wearables such as wrist-worn activity trackers, smartwatches, and smart rings necessitate valid sleep data collection and data analysis to provide accurate sleep parameters. Various studies have investigated wrist bands in terms of sleep monitoring accuracy across different population groups. For example, the validation of sleep data of 7 different commercial activity trackers was assessed by conducting data collection for 2 days on healthy adults [23]. In other studies, the sleep estimation of Fitbit devices [24-26], Jawbone [27-29], and physical activity monitors [30] has been investigated against actigraphy, PSG, or both in overnight tests on healthy adolescents and individuals with obstructive sleep apnea. These studies focused on the sleep quality assessment of wearables by tracking a set of nonstaging sleep parameters, including TST, SOL, WASO, and SE [31-34]. Regarding smart ring validation, there is one study that has validated the Oura smart ring against PSG in an overnight laboratory setup [35]; however, there is no previous research in the literature validating a smart ring against actigraphy in the mid- or long-term. Furthermore, these earlier validation studies are limited to laboratory settings and/or overnight (ie, single night) data collection. The effect of home-based health monitoring, where the users might be involved in different conditions and environments, is ignored in these validation studies. Therefore, the results obtained could be inaccurate for long-term and remote monitoring.

Objectives
In this paper, we aim to assess the validity of sleep data acquired by a smart ring, Oura, in comparison with a medically approved actigraphy device. We utilize the Oura ring as a compact and relatively small device with a user-friendly design. In addition, we assessed the Samsung Gear Sport smartwatch against actigraphy to compare the accuracy of Oura ring in the detection of different sleep attributes. In general, because watches and rings are worn in different parts of the subject’s hand, they respond differently to signal logging disturbances, such as motion artifacts. The devices were tested in a 7-day monitoring study, approved by the ethical committee, where the sleep data of 45 healthy individuals were monitored. Participants were asked to use the devices 24 hours for 7 days and carry out their daily routines as usual. We compared TST, SOL, WASO, and SE obtained from the Oura ring, Samsung watch, and ActiGraph. The parameters obtained by the 2 consumer-grade wearables (ie, the ring and the watch) were evaluated with the sleep
parameters extracted from actigraphy using paired $t$ tests, Bland-Altman [36] plots, and Pearson correlation. The parameters were investigated considering the gender of the participants as a dependent variable. Finally, we conclude the paper with a discussion of our obtained results and the validity of sleep data of the wearables in everyday settings.

**Methods**

**Participants and Recruitment**

Recruitment was performed in southern Finland from July to August 2019. In earlier validation studies of commercial devices, the sample sizes varied between 20 and 40. Therefore, we aimed at a target sample of 40 people. The recruitment started with convenience sampling by personally contacting a few students and staff members of the University of Turku. Afterward, snowball sampling was used until the target sample size was reached; 6 additional participants were enrolled because of expected missing data. We aimed for variation among participants by age, weight, physical activity, education, and lifestyle as related to sleep and stress levels.

A sample of healthy individuals between 18 and 55 years of age was enrolled. Potential participants were excluded if they had (1) a diagnosed cardiovascular disease, (2) restrictions regarding physical activity, (3) symptoms of an illness at the time of recruitment (ie, flu symptoms including sore throat, runny nose, cough, and fever), or (4) any restrictions on using the devices at work. In a face-to-face meeting with the interested individuals, researchers described the purpose of the study and the wearable devices. They were asked to wear the Gear Sport smartwatch, Oura ring, and ActiGraph wristband for 1 week in their normal daily life. Each participant provided written informed consent. Altogether, 46 participants, including 23 women and 23 men, participated in the study. A participant (male) was excluded from the analysis because he did not wear the actigraphy device. Therefore, the final sample size was 45 (23 women, 22 men). Table 1 shows the participants’ background information. The table includes 42 participants, as the background information of the 3 participants is missing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (years), mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>31.5 (6.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>33 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI, mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>24.4 (5.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>25.5 (2.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expected sleep (daily hours), mean (SD)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>7.35 (1.00)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>7.17 (1.05)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Physical activity, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almost daily</td>
<td>12 (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once a week</td>
<td>9 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;Once a week</td>
<td>21 (47)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working status, n (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working</td>
<td>32 (71)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>8 (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1 (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ethics**

The study was conducted according to the ethical principles based on the Declaration of Helsinki and the Finnish Medical Research Act (#488/1999). The study protocol received a favorable statement from the ethics committee (University of Turku, Ethics committee for Human Sciences, Statement #44/2019). The participants were informed about the study, both orally and in writing, before obtaining their consent. Participation was voluntary, and all participants had the right to withdraw from the study at any time and without giving any reason. To compensate for the time used for the study, each participant received a €20 (US $23) gift card to the grocery store at the end of the monitoring period when returning the devices.

**Data Collection**

Our data collection for 1 week included 4 approaches for monitoring participants’ sleep. We utilized 3 devices (ie, 2 wearable and 1 actigraphy device) to continuously capture sleep
data and a self-report form by which subjective measures were collected. Samsung Gear and ActiGraph were worn in the wrist, and the Oura ring was worn in one of the fingers of the nondominant hand; thus, all 3 devices were on the same hand. The participants completed a short background questionnaire at the meetings. They were also asked to report their sleep times, such as bedtime, waking up time, and naps, during the 7-day study period via a structured self-report (ie, daily log) form. They were also asked to report other events during the study, such as device removal from the wrist or if specific events occurred (eg, visiting a hospital because of a disease). The self-report data were used to interpret the actigraphy data and mitigate possible errors; such a correction was necessary for this study because the actigraphy was selected as the baseline sleep monitoring method. In addition to the verbal instructions, participants were given a written guideline for using the devices.

The Oura ring [37] was the first wearable device investigated in this study. The Oura ring is a commercial sleep tracker device that uses acceleration and gyroscope data, photoplethysmogram (PPG) signal, and body temperature to estimate sleep parameters, heart rate variability, respiratory rate, and intensity of physical activity. The ring is lightweight (4-6 g) and easy to use. It also has an acceptable battery life, that is, the battery lasts up to 1 week in regular use. The ring is connected to the Android or iOS Oura mobile app via Bluetooth. The data are automatically sent to the mobile app and transferred to the cloud server. The data can be accessed from the mobile app or the cloud server. In this study, we extracted the sleep data of participants from the Oura cloud.

In addition to the Oura ring, we used the Samsung Gear Sport watch [38], which is an open-source smartwatch that enables remote health monitoring. The watch includes a PPG sensor and an inertial measurement unit through which PPG signal, acceleration, and gyroscope data can be collected continuously. The data are processed to extract various variables, including heart rate, sleep duration, and step counts. The Gear Sport watch runs open-source Tizen operating system, enabling customized data collection. In this study, we programmed the watch to collect sleep parameters, PPG data, and hand movement data during the monitoring. The PPG and hand movement data were utilized to validate the sleep events (detailed in the Data Analysis section). Moreover, we also developed an app for the watch to send the collected data to our server via Wi-Fi.

For actigraphy, we used the wGT3X-BT device by ActiGraph. The wGT3X is a noncommercial triaxial accelerometer that measures the wrist’s acceleration in 3 orthogonal axes at 80 Hz. This device is waterproof, and its battery life is approximately 3 weeks. The device does not provide any feedback to the participants about their activity or sleep. The acceleration data collected by the device were utilized to obtain the estimates of sleep parameters.

**Data Analysis**

Data analysis included the sleep parameter extraction from the collected data and the statistical analysis leveraged to evaluate the ring and watch.

**Actigraphy**

Raw data from the actigraphy device were downloaded to a computer and converted into 60-second epochs using the ActiLife software (version 6.13) [39] provided by the manufacturer (ActiGraph). We used the Cole-Kripke algorithm [40] to define each epoch as sleep or wake. This algorithm was selected because it has been validated in the adult population using wrist-worn accelerometers. The ActiGraph algorithm that is available in the ActiLife software was then used to detect the sleep periods and estimate sleep attributes. Using the Troiano wear time validation algorithm [41], the auto sleep period detection algorithm detects nonwear bouts, ignores nonwear periods greater than a day, and nonwear periods that have almost all zeros (5 or more epochs of nonzeros). The nonwear periods that remain are defined as sleep time. Sleep data were systematically checked, cleaned, and sleep periods that did not represent true sleep times were deleted. These deletions included sleep periods with nonwear time during evenings or mornings that the algorithm had incorrectly scored as sleep, daytime sleep periods, and sleep periods outside the actual measurement week.

**Wearables**

We used the application programming interface provided by the Oura ring and the Samsung watch to extract different semistructured data for our analyses. The Oura ring provides JavaScript Object Notation files, including the sleep parameters per night. The 3 main types of sleep parameters provided by the ring are (1) parameters related to different levels of sleep and nonstaging sleep, including the start and end of sleep, the number of awakenings, total awakening time, and sleep onset, (2) scores to measure the quality of sleep in different stages, and (3) average heart rate for every 5 min during sleep. In this study, we only investigated the nonstaging sleep parameters because of the limitation of the baseline actigraphy method.

In contrast, the Gear Sport watch provides a data record when the user's status changes; for example, the status changes from wake to sleep. We used these records to extract sleep events per night and validated the sleep events using the heart rate and hand movement data collected by the watch. Validation was performed to prevent the misdetection of sleep events owing to not wearing the device. For example, the watch was not used (no movement) for 1 hour, but a sleep event was detected by mistake. In this regard, we recorded a window of 30-second PPG signal when a sleep event started and ended. The sleep event was considered valid if valid heart rate values were detected from the PPG signals. In addition, we considered the hand movement magnitude for validation if the PPG signal was invalid because of practical issues. Finally, we cross-checked the sleep events with the step count data (reported by the watch) and corrected or discarded the sleep events if there was no match between the data.

It should be noted that the watch could not detect a few sleep events because of technical and practical issues during the monitoring. For example, the sleep event was missed because the watch’s turn-off button was pressed accidentally during the night. This issue mostly occurred during the monitoring, as the watch and actigraphy were worn on the same hand close to each other. As the watch could not record the sleep events, we
removed 21 nights of data out of 181 (21/181, 11.6%) of the watch for the sake of an unbiased comparison between the actigraphy and watch.

Using the actual valid sleep events, we calculated WASO, TST (in minutes), and SE (%) per night. As the watch does not provide SOL explicitly, we calculate such a feature based on the difference between the start of the actual sleep and the last time the subject had steps. A summary of the processing pipeline is illustrated in Figure 1.

Figure 1. Watch data processing pipeline.

Statistical Analysis
We report the mean, SD, and 95% CI of the sleep parameters collected by the Oura ring, Samsung watch, and ActiGraph. The difference between the ring (or the watch) and the ActiGraph was also computed using two-tailed paired \( t \) tests to test the null hypothesis. In our context, the null hypothesis is that the true mean difference between the two measurements is 0 [42]. Due to the interest in observing the paired differences between values reported by ring (or the watch) and ActiGraph (baseline), the paired \( t \) test was utilized. In addition, we used the Bland-Altman plot to illustrate and estimate the agreement between the devices. These methods provided mean differences (bias) and SD of the differences between the ring (or the watch) and the actigraphy, lower and upper agreement limits, and 95% CI of the mean differences. The sign of mean differences indicates underestimation or overestimation of the ring (or the watch) compared with the actigraphy; a negative bias shows an overestimation, whereas a positive bias indicates an underestimation.

The satisfactory difference between the ring (or the watch) and the actigraphy data was selected as \( \leq 30 \) min for TST and WASO and \( <5\%\) for SE, similar to other studies in the literature [27,35,43]. We investigated the ratio of the samples within these satisfactory ranges. Moreover, we also investigated gender as a dependent variable in the validity of sleep parameters using \( t \) tests, considering the mean differences between the ring (or the watch) and the actigraphy.

Finally, to analyze the linear relationship between actigraphy and the ring (or the watch) corresponding sleep measurements, we performed Pearson correlation tests on pairwise sleep attributes of the actigraphy and the ring (or the watch).

Results

Study Population
A total of 45 subjects (23 women and 22 men) participated in this study. The subjects were 33.1 years old, on average, with an SD of 6.4 years. In total, we recorded 284 valid available days by actigraphy; however, after matching the corresponding available days of the ring (or the watch), we had fewer valid days for the analysis.

As discussed in the Methods section, in this study, we exploited 4 different sleep attributes. Although the results regarding SOL are not conclusive (because SOL of the actigraphy is unreliable [14]), for the sake of comparison, we report such results in addition to the other sleep parameters in this section.

Comparisons Between Ring and Equivalent Actigraphy Sleep Measures
To validate the Oura ring against actigraphy, we matched the available dates of the ring with the corresponding dates of actigraphy. In total, for all the participants, sleep data of 266 days (ie, 5.91, SD 1.32 days per subject) were included in the analysis.

The mean, SD, and 95% CI of the extracted sleep parameters are presented in Table 2. The table also shows the paired \( t \) test values of these parameters with their corresponding \( P \) values. Bland-Altman plots were used to show the agreements between the 2 measures. Figure 2 depicts the agreement between the ring and actigraphy for the TST, WASO, and SE. The bias and lower and upper agreement limits for these parameters are also summarized in Table 3.
Table 2. Mean, SD, 95% CI, and paired t test results for the actigraphy and the Oura ring sleep parameters in a sample of 45 healthy adults.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>t value (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total sleep time (min)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−6.26 (265)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>419.04 (78.31)</td>
<td>409.59–428.5</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oura ring</td>
<td>434.31 (72.14)</td>
<td>425.6–443.02</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sleep efficiency (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3.69 (265)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>90.47 (5.1)</td>
<td>89.86–91.09</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oura ring</td>
<td>89.13 (6.28)</td>
<td>88.38–89.89</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wake after sleep onset (min)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>10.03 (265)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>43.57 (27.28)</td>
<td>40.28–46.86</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oura Ring</td>
<td>26.17 (24.98)</td>
<td>23.15–29.18</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*N/A: not applicable.

Figure 2. Bland-Altman plots for total sleep time, sleep efficiency, and wake after sleep onset gathered by the Oura ring and the actigraphy device. Subjects’ actigraphy minus Oura ring discrepancies on sleep parameters (y-axis) are plotted compared with actigraphy (x-axis). Biases, upper, and lower agreement limits are marked. In addition, the satisfactory ranges are plotted as the dashed lines. SE: sleep efficiency; TST: total sleep time; WASO: wake after sleep onset.

Table 3. Bias and agreement limits based on Bland-Altman plots for the actigraphy and the Oura ring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean difference (SD)</th>
<th>Lower and upper agreement limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total sleep time (min)</td>
<td>−15.27 (39.68)</td>
<td>−93.04, 62.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%)</td>
<td>1.34 (5.91)</td>
<td>−10.24, 12.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wake after sleep onset (min)</td>
<td>17.41 (28.24)</td>
<td>−37.94, 72.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As shown in Table 2, the ring significantly overestimated the actigraphy ($t_{265}=-6.26; P<.001$) in the estimation of TST. On the basis of Figure 2, this overestimation in TST is, on average, 15.27 (SD 39.68) min (95% CI −20.07 to −10.47). Of 266 total samples, 14 fell outside the agreement range (lower limit −93.04 min, upper limit 62.50 min). The mean difference of TST between the actigraphy and ring fell within the satisfactory range, and 65.0% (173/266) of the data samples followed the satisfactory range condition.

On the other hand, in terms of WASO, the Oura ring significantly underestimated ($t_{265}=10.03; P<.001$) the actigraphy by, on average, 17.41 min (95% CI 13.99 to 20.82). Out of 266 samples, 17 fell outside the agreement limits (lower limit −37.94 min, upper limit 72.75 min). In terms of the satisfactory range, the mean difference fell within the range and covered 69.9% (186/266) of the total samples.

In addition, the Oura ring underestimated SE compared with the actigraphy by 1.34% on average (95% CI 0.63 to 2.06). This underestimation was significant, as shown in Table 2 ($t_{265}=3.69; P<.001$). The mean difference in SE between the Oura ring and the actigraphy fell within the satisfactory range (<5%), along with 65.8% (175/266) of samples (including 44 out of 45 subjects). Moreover, 18 samples fell outside the agreement limits (lower limit −10.24%, upper limit 12.93%).

### Comparisons Between Watch and Equivalent Actigraphy Sleep Measures

Similar to the ring validation, we considered the available dates for the actigraphy with corresponding data collected by the Samsung watch. As mentioned in the Wearables section, we removed the technically invalid watch data that occurred because of practical issues during the monitoring. Therefore, there were fewer sleep data from the watch than the other devices. After the matching procedure and invalid data removal, the number of subjects for the watch validation was 35 (19 men and 16 women), with 134 data samples (3.82, SD 1.50 days per subject). Table 4 summarizes the mean, SD, and 95% CI of the Samsung watch and the actigraphy with the corresponding available dates for different sleep parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>$t$ value (df)</th>
<th>$P$ value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total sleep time (min)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t$ test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−3.54 (133)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>409.29 (81.43)</td>
<td>395.38-423.21</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung watch</td>
<td>431.81 (82.21)</td>
<td>417.76-445.85</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sleep efficiency (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t$ test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−6.49 (133)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>90.40 (5.05)</td>
<td>89.54-91.26</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung watch</td>
<td>94.84 (7.03)</td>
<td>93.64-96.04</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wake after sleep onset (min)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t$ test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>10.26 (133)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>42.23 (23.43)</td>
<td>38.23-46.24</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung watch</td>
<td>10.96 (30.46)</td>
<td>5.76-16.17</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aN/A: not applicable.*

In addition, we performed paired $t$ tests for the sleep parameters of the 2 devices. The results are shown in Table 4. As shown in this table, the $t$ test values for all considered sleep parameters were statistically significant ($P<.001$). The positive and negative sign of the $t$ value denotes the underestimation and overestimation of actigraphy by the watch, respectively.
Figure 3. Bland-Altman plots for total sleep time, sleep efficiency, and wake after sleep onset gathered by the Samsung watch and the actigraphy device. Subjects’ actigraphy minus Samsung watch discrepancies on sleep parameters (y-axis) are plotted compared with actigraphy (x-axis). Biases, upper, and lower agreement limits are marked. In addition, the satisfactory ranges are plotted as the dashed lines. SE: sleep efficiency; TST: total sleep time; WASO: wake after sleep onset.

As shown in Figure 3, the watch overestimated the actigraphy in TST, on average, by 22.51 min (95% CI −35.08 to −9.95). Among the 134 samples, 9 were beyond the agreement limits (lower limit −166.07 min, upper limit 121.04 min). The mean difference of the actigraphy’s and the watch’s TST was within the satisfactory range; however, less than 50% (52/134, 38.8%) of the samples were within this satisfactory range.

In addition to TST, the Samsung watch overestimated SE by 4.44% (95% CI −5.79 to −3.09) compared with the actigraphy; 8 samples fell outside the agreement limits (lower limit −19.89%, upper limit 11.01%), with 42.5% (57/134) of the samples within the satisfactory range.

On the other hand, the watch underestimated WASO by 31.27 min on average (95% CI 25.24 to 37.3). Only 9 samples were outside of the agreement limits (lower limit −37.62 min, upper limit 100.15 min), and 45.5% (61/134) of the samples were within the satisfactory range.

Table 5. Bias and agreement limits based on Bland-Altman plots for the actigraphy and the Samsung watch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean difference (SD)</th>
<th>Lower and upper agreement limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total sleep time (min)</td>
<td>−22.51 (73.24)</td>
<td>−166.07, 121.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%)</td>
<td>−4.44 (7.88)</td>
<td>−19.89, 11.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wake after sleep onset (min)</td>
<td>31.27 (35.15)</td>
<td>−37.62, 100.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As in Figure 3, the watch overestimated the actigraphy in TST, on average, by 22.51 min (95% CI −35.08 to −9.95). Among the 134 samples, 9 were beyond the agreement limits (lower limit −166.07 min, upper limit 121.04 min). The mean difference of the actigraphy’s and the watch’s TST was within the satisfactory range; however, less than 50% (52/134, 38.8%) of the samples were within this satisfactory range.

In addition to TST, the Samsung watch overestimated SE by 4.44% (95% CI −5.79 to −3.09) compared with the actigraphy; 8 samples fell outside the agreement limits (lower limit −19.89%, upper limit 11.01%), with 42.5% (57/134) of the samples within the satisfactory range.

On the other hand, the watch underestimated WASO by 31.27 min on average (95% CI 25.24 to 37.3). Only 9 samples were outside of the agreement limits (lower limit −37.62 min, upper limit 100.15 min), and 45.5% (61/134) of the samples were within the satisfactory range.

Gender-Dependent Changes in the Mean Differences Between the Actigraphy and the Ring (or the Watch)

We also considered the gender of the participants to determine if the mean difference in sleep parameters differed between female and male groups. Table 6 shows the mean and SD of each sleep attribute of the actigraphy and the ring and the difference between these devices for male and female groups, separately.

The average of the mean difference between the TST of the actigraphy and the Oura ring did not differ between the male and female groups ($t_{530}=0.99; P=.32$). However, the mean differences of the other sleep parameters (ie, SE and WASO) were significant between female and male participants ($P<.001$ and $P=.004$).
Table 6. Mean, SD, and average mean differences (the actigraphy minus the Oura ring) for 23 women (141 samples) and 22 men (125 samples).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>Differences</th>
<th>t value (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>Oura ring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total sleep time (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A(^a)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>0.99 (530)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>429.67 (70.25)</td>
<td>442.66 (64.67)</td>
<td>−12.98 (37.94)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>407.05 (85.21)</td>
<td>424.89 (78.94)</td>
<td>−17.84 (41.39)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−4.33 (530)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>90.64 (4.93)</td>
<td>90.73 (5.16)</td>
<td>−0.09 (5.86)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>90.29 (5.31)</td>
<td>87.33 (6.9)</td>
<td>2.96 (5.55)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wake after sleep onset (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2.86 (530)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>44.9 (30.08)</td>
<td>22.87 (20.7)</td>
<td>22.03 (29.19)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>42.07 (23.75)</td>
<td>29.88 (28.69)</td>
<td>12.19 (26.16)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)N/A: not applicable.

Similarly, we compared the mean differences of the sleep parameters between the actigraphy and the watch for the male and female groups. Table 7 summarizes such differences for each sleep parameter. As shown in Table 7, there was a significant difference between the mean differences of the male and female groups for TST (\( P < .001 \)), SE (\( P = .01 \)), and WASO (\( P = .01 \)).

Table 7. Mean, SD, and average mean differences (the actigraphy minus the Samsung watch) for 16 women (65 samples) and 19 men (69 samples).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>Differences</th>
<th>t value (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>Samsung watch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total sleep time (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A(^a)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3.48 (266)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>427.08 (73.76)</td>
<td>427.67 (74.76)</td>
<td>−0.59 (65.67)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>392.54 (85.22)</td>
<td>435.7 (89.04)</td>
<td>−43.16 (74.01)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2.39 (266)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>90.82 (4.88)</td>
<td>93.6 (7.92)</td>
<td>−2.78 (8.04)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>90.0 (5.2)</td>
<td>96.01 (5.9)</td>
<td>−6.0 (7.4)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wake after sleep onset (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t ) test</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−2.40 (266)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>42.49 (24.33)</td>
<td>18.64 (39.75)</td>
<td>23.85 (42.54)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>41.99 (22.73)</td>
<td>3.73 (14.76)</td>
<td>38.26 (24.36)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)N/A: not applicable.

Correlations

We also investigated the possible linear relationship between the actigraphy and the ring (or the watch) data, using the Pearson correlation test. The correlation value (\( r \)) ranges from −1 to 1, where ±1 implies an exact linear relationship. The correlation values and their \( P \) values are shown in Table 8.
As shown in Table 8, comparing TST of actigraphy with TST of the ring and TST of the watch, we found a significantly high correlation between the actigraphy and the ring ($r=0.86; P<.001$). In contrast, the correlation between the actigraphy and the watch was $r=0.59 (P<.001)$.

With regard to SE, there was a correlation between actigraphy and the ring ($r=0.47; P<.001$). In addition, the correlation between the actigraphy and the watch was acceptable ($r=0.17; P=0.04$), but not as high as that of the ring.

For the WASO validation, there was a significant correlation between the actigraphy and the ring ($r=0.41; P<.001$). However, our analysis showed a nonsignificant correlation between WASO of the actigraphy and WASO of the watch ($r=0.16; P=0.06$).

**SOL Comparison Across Devices**

As previously mentioned, SOL results were not conclusive since SOL of actigraphy is unreliable. We report SOL separately in the following: mean, SD, 95% CI, and paired t test results of the SOL for comparison between the actigraphy and the Oura ring (or Samsung watch) are presented in Tables 9 and 10. Bland-Altman plots showing the SOL agreements between the actigraphy and the ring (or the watch) are illustrated in Figures 4 and 5. Details of these plots are summarized in Tables 11 and 12.

### Table 9. Mean, SD, 95% CI, and paired t test results for the actigraphy versus Oura ring estimates of sleep onset latency.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>t value (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sleep onset latency (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t test</td>
<td>N/A&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−13.01 (265)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>0.91 (1.37)</td>
<td>0.75-1.08</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oura ring</td>
<td>12.84 (14.92)</td>
<td>11.04-14.65</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>N/A: not applicable.

### Table 10. Mean, SD, 95% CI, and paired t test results for the actigraphy versus Samsung watch estimates of sleep onset latency.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean (SD)</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>t value (df)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sleep onset latency (min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t test</td>
<td>N/A&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>−10.08 (133)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actigraphy</td>
<td>0.99 (1.38)</td>
<td>0.75-1.22</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung watch</td>
<td>13.79 (14.86)</td>
<td>11.25-16.33</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>N/A: not applicable.
**Figure 4.** Bland-Altman plot for sleep onset latency estimated by the Oura ring. SOL: sleep onset latency.

![Bland-Altman plot for sleep onset latency estimated by the Oura ring](image)

**Figure 5.** Bland-Altman plot for sleep onset latency estimated by the Samsung watch. SOL: sleep onset latency.

![Bland-Altman plot for sleep onset latency estimated by the Samsung watch](image)

**Table 11.** Bias and agreement limits based on Bland-Altman plot of the sleep onset latency for the actigraphy and the Oura ring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean difference (SD)</th>
<th>Lower and upper agreement limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sleep onset latency (min)</td>
<td>−11.93 (14.92)</td>
<td>−41.18, 17.32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 12.** Bias and agreement limits based on Bland-Altman plot of sleep onset latency for the actigraphy and Samsung watch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Mean difference (SD)</th>
<th>Lower and upper agreement limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sleep onset latency (min)</td>
<td>−12.81 (14.65)</td>
<td>−41.52, 15.91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Oura ring overestimated the SOL, on average, by 11.93 min (95% CI: −13.74 to −10.13) compared with the actigraphy. Out of 266 samples, 14 fell outside the agreement limits (lower limit −41.18 min, upper limit 17.32 min). Table 9 shows that the overestimation of the SOL by the ring was significant (t_{265} = −13.01; P<.001). Similarly, the watch overestimated the SOL, on average, by 12.81 min (95% CI: −15.32 to −10.29). Most of the samples (all except 2) were within the agreement limits (lower limit −41.52 min, upper limit 15.91 min).

**Discussion**

**Principal Findings**

To the best of our knowledge, this is the first sleep validation study of the Oura ring and the Samsung watch performed under free-living conditions in comparison with an actigraphy method. The free-living condition allows participants to engage in their daily routines as usual during the monitoring. If commercial devices are used in trials under such free-living conditions, subjective evaluations and self-reports are insufficient to measure the validity of these devices [44-46]. It is important to test these devices against research devices to investigate their error margins and to standardize their software versions, minimizing controllable measurement differences. In contrast to related work, this study investigated wearsables in a 1-week home-based monitoring, providing a higher confidence level on the validity of sleep parameters reported by these wearsables. We discuss the results obtained and compare them with the related sleep validation studies, most of which are limited to the laboratory settings and compared with PSG.

Our findings showed that the mean differences of TST, WASO, and SE between the actigraphy device and the Oura ring were within the satisfactory range (i.e., ≤30 min for TST and WASO and <5% for SE). Within the 266 valid total nights of sleep, only 14 TST, 17 WASO, and 18 SE fell outside the agreement limits. Our results also indicated significant correlations between the TST, WASO, and SE of the ring and the actigraphy. These findings are in accordance with a previous validation study of the Oura ring carried out in a single laboratory overnight study [35].

On the other hand, we found significant differences between the means of TST, WASO, and SE of the ring and the actigraphy. In our study, the Oura ring overestimated the TST (15.27 min) and underestimated the WASO (17.41 min) and SE (1.34%). Although the differences were within the satisfactory range, our results showed more overestimation and underestimation of the Oura ring than the lab-based sleep validation study [35]. This might be explained by the difference between the studies’ samples and setups. Our study included more sleep data (i.e., 225 more nights) and was performed in the house. Therefore, our results should be more accurate and have higher confidence levels in real-world applications. Unfortunately, these inaccuracies in sleep measurements in commercial devices might decrease their feasibility for clinical trials [47].

In accordance, the results showed biases in the sleep parameters provided by the Oura ring. However, the mean differences were within the satisfactory range, and only a few samples were outside the agreement limits. Therefore, the Oura ring can be acceptable for monitoring nonstaging sleep parameters under free-living conditions.

Moreover, our results indicated that the mean differences of the TST, WASO, and SE between the Samsung watch and the actigraphy were higher than the Oura ring’s mean difference. The TST and SE mean differences of the watch were higher but still within the satisfactory range. However, the WASO mean difference (ie, 31.27 min) was negligibly higher than the range. Within the 134 valid total nights of sleep detection by the watch, 9 TST, 9 WASO, and 8 SE fell outside the agreement limit. Similarly, the correlation of the watch and actigraphy was lower than the ring, as the Pearson r values of the three parameters were closer to 0. Consequently, the sleep parameters of the watch had acceptable mean differences and indicated significant correlations with the actigraphy, but the Oura ring outperforms the Samsung watch in terms of the nonstaging sleep parameters.

**Comparison With Prior Work**

In previous studies, wrist activity trackers such as Fitbit Charge HR and Jawbone UP were compared with the PSG in lab tests on healthy adults [24,27,30]. The devices showed good agreement with the PSG in terms of TST, WASO, and SE. This is in accordance with our results for both the Oura ring and the Samsung watch. However, the overestimations or underestimations in our findings were higher than those in previous studies. The biases are particularly significant for the Samsung watch. For example, de Zambotti et al [24] indicated that the Fitbit Charge HR overestimates TST by 8 min and SE by 1.8% and underestimates WASO by 5.6 min. These low biases might be because of their limited setups and data collection, that is, an overnight laboratory sleep test on 32 healthy individuals.

There are a few studies performed under free-living conditions to evaluate activity trackers such as the Misfit Shine, Jawbone UP, and different models of Fitbit on healthy adults [23,48]. Our results regarding the Oura ring highlighted the high correlations obtained by these studies. For instance, Liang et al [48] indicated that there were high Pearson correlations between Fitbit Charge 2 and their baseline (a single-channel electroencephalogram-based device) in terms of TST (r=0.94), WASO (r=0.25), and SE (r=0.50). Ferguson et al [23] considered the TST correlations between four activity tracker devices and a research-grade accelerometer or multi-sensor device (BodyMedia SenseWear). The authors showed that the correlations were higher than 0.82 for the devices. On the other hand, our smartwatch results showed moderate correlations for TST, WASO, and SE.

Furthermore, we considered gender as a dependent variable to evaluate whether there was a mean difference in sleep parameter changes between male and female groups. Considering the Oura ring, our results showed a nonsignificant difference between female and male groups in TST, which is similar to the findings of de Zambotti et al [27]. Moreover, Carter et al [49] evaluated the objective estimation of sleep parameters compared with subjective assessments. In comparison with this study, we obtained similar results in terms of objective TST. However,
the watch in our study showed a significant difference in TST. Besides, both the ring and the watch indicated significant differences between female and male groups in WASO and SE, which disagrees with de Zambotti et al [27] but confirms the findings of Carter et al [49].

Limitations
We considered using an actigraphy device as the baseline method, which is one of the limitations of this study. Our analysis was limited to TST, WASO, and SE parameters. Although we collected the SOL of the Oura ring and the Samsung watch, we could not evaluate the values, as the SOL measure of the actigraphy is unreliable [14]. The actigraphy methods are insufficient for evaluation of sleep stages (eg, deep sleep). Therefore, future work should investigate the sleep stages provided by the ring and watch, considering a feasible PSG or electroencephalogram-based method designed for home-based monitoring.

Another limitation of this study is that only healthy participants were included in the analysis. However, other studies have shown that the accuracy of the wearables might differ for different population groups [29,34]. This issue may limit the generalizability of the findings. This study’s future directions are to perform a home-based sleep validation study to assess the accuracy of wearables for population groups of different ages (eg, adolescents and older people) and sleep disorders (eg, obstructive sleep apnea). Besides, bed-based and ballistocardiograph-based sensors [50] can be used to mitigate user errors during data collection.

Conclusions
Sleep monitoring in free-living conditions becomes feasible and practicable using commercial devices such as smart rings and smartwatches. Notwithstanding the advances and feasibility of these wearables, their validity in terms of sleep parameters was not thoroughly investigated, especially for mid- to long-term studies in everyday settings. This study assessed the Oura ring and the Samsung Gear Sport watch by examining their TST, WASO, and SE under free-living conditions. The wearable devices were tested in home-based monitoring, where the sleep parameters of 45 healthy participants were tracked for 7 days. The assessment was performed in comparison with an actigraphy device, leveraging the paired t tests, Bland-Altman plots, and Pearson correlations. Sleep parameters were investigated considering the gender of the participants as a dependent variable. Our results showed that despite the statistically significant differences in the sleep parameters (ie, TST, WASO, and SE) of both the Oura ring and the Samsung watch compared with the actigraphy device, the mean differences were within the satisfactory ranges. The sleep parameters also indicated significant correlations with actigraphy. Besides, we showed that there was no significant difference in the validation of TST between male and female groups in the Oura ring; however, both the Oura ring and the Samsung watch indicated significant differences between the female and male groups in the estimation of WASO and SE.

Similarly, in a population sample of healthy adults, both the Oura ring and the Samsung watch had acceptable mean differences and indicated significant correlations with the actigraphy device. However, the biases of the ring were considerably lower than the biases of the watch. Further validation is required to assess the validity of the sleep stages provided by the ring and the watch under free-living conditions. Moreover, future work should include the assessment of the devices for other population groups, such as individuals with sleep disorders.

Acknowledgments
The authors would like to thank Elisa Lankinen, Mohsen Saei Dehghan, Bushra Zafar, and Henrika Merenlehto for contributing to the analysis of the ActiGraph data. This work was supported in part by the Academy of Finland through the Preterm Birth Prevention in Everyday Settings Project under the grants 313448 and 313449, in part by the Academy of Finland through the SLIM Project under the grants 316810 and 316811, and in part by the US National Science Foundation through the UNITE Project under the grant SCC CNS-1831918 and the WiFiUS grant CNS-1702950. All the data and diary templates used for supporting the results of this study may be obtained from the corresponding author upon request and signing of a data use agreement.

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

References


27. de Zambotti M, Baker FC, Colrain IM. Validation of sleep-tracking technology compared with polysomnography in adolescents. Sleep 2015 Sep 1;38(9):1461-1468 [FREE Full text] [doi: 10.5665/sleep.4990] [Medline: 26158896]


37. Oura Ring. URL: https://ouraring.com/ [accessed 2020-03-06]


Abbreviations

PPG: photoplethysmogram
PSG: polysomnography
SE: sleep efficiency
SOL: sleep onset latency
TST: total sleep time
WASO: wake after sleep onset
Embodiment of Wearable Technology: Qualitative Longitudinal Study

Elizabeth C Nelson, MSc; Anneke M Sools, PhD; Miriam M R Vollenbroek-Hutten, PhD; Tibert Verhagen, PhD; Matthijs L Noordzij, PhD

1Faculty of Electrical Engineering, Mathematics and Computer Science, University of Twente, Enschede, Netherlands
2Department of Psychology, Health and Technology, University of Twente, Enschede, Netherlands
3Ziekenhuis Groep Twente, Almelo, Netherlands
4Center for Market Insights, Amsterdam University of Applied Sciences, Amsterdam, Netherlands

Corresponding Author:
Elizabeth C Nelson, MSc
Faculty of Electrical Engineering, Mathematics and Computer Science
University of Twente
Drienerlolaan 5
7522 NB
Enschede
Netherlands
Phone: 31 642683161
Email: elizabeth@learnadaptbuild.com

Abstract

Background: Current technology innovations, such as wearables, have caused surprising reactions and feelings of deep connection to devices. Some researchers are calling mobile and wearable technologies cognitive prostheses, which are intrinsically connected to individuals as if they are part of the body, similar to a physical prosthesis. Additionally, while several studies have been performed on the phenomenology of receiving and wearing a physical prosthesis, it is unknown whether similar subjective experiences arise with technology.

Objective: In one of the first qualitative studies to track wearables in a longitudinal investigation, we explore whether a wearable can be embodied similar to a physical prosthesis. We hoped to gain insights and compare the phases of embodiment (ie, initial adjustment to the prosthesis) and the psychological responses (ie, accept the prosthesis as part of their body) between wearables and limb prostheses. This approach allowed us to find out whether this pattern was part of a cyclical (ie, period of different usage intensity) or asymptotic (ie, abandonment of the technology) pattern.

Methods: We adapted a limb prosthesis methodological framework to be applied to wearables and conducted semistructured interviews over a span of several months to assess if, how, and to what extent individuals come to embody wearables similar to prosthetic devices. Twelve individuals wore fitness trackers for 9 months, during which time interviews were conducted in the following three phases: after 3 months, after 6 months, and at the end of the study after 9 months. A deductive thematic analysis based on Murray’s work was combined with an inductive approach in which new themes were discovered.

Results: Overall, the individuals experienced technology embodiment similar to limb embodiment in terms of adjustment, wearability, awareness, and body extension. Furthermore, we discovered two additional themes of engagement/reengagement and comparison to another device or person. Interestingly, many participants experienced a rarely reported phenomenon in longitudinal studies where the feedback from the device was counterintuitive to their own beliefs. This created a blurring of self-perception and a dilemma of “whom” to believe, the machine or one’s self.

Conclusions: There are many similarities between the embodiment of a limb prosthesis and a wearable. The large overlap between limb and wearable embodiment would suggest that insights from physical prostheses can be applied to wearables and vice versa. This is especially interesting as we are seeing the traditionally “dumb” body prosthesis becoming smarter and thus a natural merging of technology and body. Future longitudinal studies could focus on the dilemma people might experience of whether to believe the information of the device over their own thoughts and feelings. These studies might take into account constructs, such as technology reliance, autonomy, and levels of self-awareness.
wearability; implantable wearable; body extension; smart prosthesis; implantable devices; technology dependence; cognitive prosthesis; phenomenology; embodied self-discrepancy; technology addiction; longitudinal qualitative design

Introduction

Individuals are increasingly wearing devices on their bodies, which monitor their behavior and provide coaching through associated apps. On one hand, the interaction with these types of devices might result in a sustained experience, where technology extends the body [1-3], cognition, and even self, which was recently conceptualized as wearable technology embodiment [4]. This is in line with other work in which wearables were referred to as cognitive prostheses [5,6]. With this label, the positive enabling effects of the wearable on cognition (eg, improved self-regulation for going to bed on time with sleep tracking) is put in the same category as those that can be expected in the motoric domain from a physical prosthesis. On the other hand, some researchers have suggested that the effects and even the active use of wearables are short lived (ie, not more than a few weeks) and inconsequential [7]. This might also be in line with a popular belief that wearables, such as an activity tracker that counts and displays steps, are devices that might have an initial appeal, but will quickly be discarded after the novelty effect wears off [7-11]. Importantly, it is unknown how people experience wearables over longer periods of time given the dearth of longitudinal qualitative research on this topic [8,12,13]. What is known from a qualitative and longitudinal perspective is how people engage with, adapt to, and embody physical prostheses [14-16]. Given the initial viewpoint presented above, the expectation for wearables is that there may be noteworthy overlap between user experiences with and perspectives on prosthesis and wearable embodiment. However, if wearables in practice are quickly discarded, the alignment with physical prosthesis embodiment (on which people rely heavily to regain physical capabilities) will be problematic or even impossible. The aim of this research was to study to what extent the experiences that previously have been associated with adaptation over several months to a physical prosthesis [14] are applicable and representative for the embodiment of a wearable.

Murray [14] investigated user perspectives on the embodiment of a physical prosthesis, which provided important insights into the phases of embodiment (ie, initial adjustment to the prosthesis) and the psychological responses to the prosthesis (ie, accepting the prosthesis as part of their body). The process phases and psychological responses represent a comprehensive foundation to understand and categorize embodiment of not only a prosthesis but also any item embodied by the user. Murray’s six themes include (1) adjustment to a prosthesis; (2) balance of the body; (3) awareness of the prosthesis; (4) the prosthesis as a tool or corporeal structure; (5) the knowing body; and (6) the phantom becomes the prosthesis, extending the body. The first theme (adjustment to a prosthesis) describes the initial period of mental and physical adjustment after receiving a new prosthetic device. In order to embody a prosthesis, an individual must create a working relationship with it, integrating it into the daily routine. The maintenance of the prosthesis during this time is described as considerable, but the tasks are eventually absorbed into a schedule or rhythm requiring little thought. Past research on technology use describes a similar process during the initial period with a new technology device. Research has found that interaction with a new technology first evokes a cognitive response to the device, followed by a behavioral response [17,18], which can either lead to the adoption or abandonment of the technology [19]. It is unknown to what extent initial technology adoption and experience is similar to physical prosthesis embodiment during the first 3 months of active use.

The second theme from Murray (the balance of the body) evaluates the adjustment to the imbalance created by the amputation or prosthetic device. Balance is key in creating a good fit between an individual and a prosthesis, making it easier to wear. Individuals wearing a well-balanced prosthetic device describe an ongoing process of “subconscious compensation” to naturally reposition the body to improve balance [14]. Creating a good fit with a prosthetic limb relates closely to the concept of wearability, which involves the degree of physical, mental, and/or social comfort in wearing a device [20]. Highly wearable technologies are comfortable and easy to wear (no distraction or attention demand) [20] and have been shown to have higher success rates for continued use [21]. Patients receiving a new wearable to replace an older version described feeling like “a living medical instrument” [22] while wearing the device. What is interesting to discover is to what extent the wearability of the wearable device impacts the embodiment of the device.

The third theme from Murray (awareness of the prosthesis) explains the changing nature of use over time (ie, disturbances or ease of use). A prosthesis that is embodied is integrated into the body, operating automatically without disruption or attention. Feedback from the technology, or contextual awareness [20], also has to feel automatic. Therefore, push notifications or other content can either be welcomed or be considered a disruption. The quality of the information and the extent to which people are engaged can ultimately impact their behavior [23,24]. Unpredictable or unusual feedback can engage people and compel their attention [20]. This presents a possible contrast between the unwelcomed interruption or awareness of a physical prosthesis and the welcome feedback interruption of a wearable.

Murray’s fourth, fifth, and sixth themes analyze the deeper emotional relationship with the technology. Murray’s fourth theme (the prosthesis as a tool or corporeal structure) examines whether individuals felt either a sense of completeness with the device or the prosthesis remained a helpful but external tool [14,25-28]. Research in mobile phones focuses on the adoption of technology beyond a technical tool, with features such as gamification [29,30]. Gamified elements have been successful
in short-term analysis [31-33] but have been critiqued by some for their questionable ability to aid in long-term goal attainment and behavior change [29]. Murray’s fifth theme (the knowing body) involves the body’s feedback to the mind. This can include the body’s muscle memory where the feedback of an embodied prosthesis can be considered the same as the rest of the body. Murray’s sixth theme (the phantom becomes the prosthesis, extending the body) explains where the prosthetic limb is considered as part of the body, possibly replacing the experience of a phantom limb (when the missing limb is felt). Interestingly, prosthesis research has shown that a phantom limb and a prosthesis can intertwine in an individual’s mind, merging into one perceived entity [14]. All three themes examine the integral connection of the brain to the prosthesis. Research has suggested that technology may interlace with our minds to take over some tasks, such as navigation [34], and take on new ones, such as quantifying sleep and activity [4,26]. Clark [35] argued that cell phones were not simply technological tools but upgrades of the mind. Could the digital feedback intertwine with individuals’ perceptions of their sleep or activity creating a combined feedback experience similar to the intertwining of a prosthesis and phantom limb? Additionally, what are the implications when it does?

While certain similarities have been established between wearable and physical prosthesis experiences, there are no longitudinal studies of wearables that can be compared with the prosthesis experience. Adapting the themes of Murray [14] to wearables can shed light on how a wearable may be embodied similar to a physical prosthesis in terms of both the phases of embodiment (ie, initial adjustment) and psychological responses (ie, accepting it as part of their body). This study extends current research to show usage patterns of a wearable over the long-term.

Methods

Participants

Over a 9-month period, a sample of 43 employees out of 400 from a large consultancy company in Amsterdam, The Netherlands, wore wearables, specifically the Jawbone UP Move, which consists of a wristband and mobile app, as well as a web platform with login (Figure 1) [36]. The wristband lit up and vibrated when a goal was met but did not have an interface or connection to any function or information beyond activity and sleep (ie, email, navigation, and phone calls). The mobile app included activity for the current day (including calories burned, idle time, distance traveled, and floors climbed) and time slept the previous night (including minutes asleep, minutes awake, and deep sleep and light sleep quality). The participants were part of a larger work wellness program and longitudinal research study. The wellness study was put together to experiment with improving health in the office and included aspects such as yoga classes, increased distribution of plants, and nutritious food. No incentives were provided, and there was no supervision of the group. People were not reminded about using the devices and could leave the study at any time.

Figure 1. Jawbone UP Move accelerometer and mobile phone app.

Of the 43 participants, 12 (mean age 35 years, SD 6.5 years, range 25-50 years; five female and seven male participants) volunteered to be part of this qualitative study. The wristbands were worn continuously by the participants and measured their sleep, activity, and inactivity. The mobile app was accessible on their smartphones and also over the internet with their personal login. Daily summaries were provided on the mobile app (Figure 1). Gamification elements in the app included duels (daily activity competitions) and daily goals of sleep and activity. Duels could be sent to other individuals in the workplace group to compete for the highest step count that day. The wristband vibrated and lit up when the daily activity goal was reached. Reminders were sent few (two to three) times per day regarding activity progress via the app. Data were transferred automatically from the wristband via Bluetooth to the mobile app and thus worked offline. Two of the male participants had worn a fitness tracker prior to the study. A signed consent form was collected at the beginning of the study, and verbal consent was obtained at the start of each interview.

Interviews

Participants were invited to the study via email. The series of semistructured interviews followed Murray’s [14] method of interviewing three times over the course of 9 months. While the main questions remained the same over the three interviews, some probing was done to dive deeper into participants initial responses to questions. The interviews were conducted around 3 months, 6 months, and 9 months after the participants started wearing the wristbands. The final interview was conducted 6 to 8 weeks after the work wellness program concluded. A pretest
was conducted with four individuals from the study for comprehensiveness and clarity of the wording of the questions [37,38]. Minor changes were made to the wording of the questions based on feedback from the pretest for better comprehension or to stimulate a more thorough answer.

At the start of each interview, participants provided consent for the interview to be recorded. The interviewer explained to the participants that their responses would remain anonymous and would be used only for scientific publication. The participants were interviewed face to face with the exception of one phone call. Interviews were recorded and then transcribed into documents and coded according to participant (code name) and interview number (ie, interview 1, 2, or 3) [37]. Participants were Dutch natives and spoke English fluently. All interviews were conducted in English face to face with one member of the research team. No prior relationship between the interviewee and interviewer existed before the interviews began. Interviews were conducted in a quiet section of the office, and the duration ranged from 8 to 35 minutes depending on the participant’s response length. Most participants responded openly and did not require much probing.

**Question Adaptation**

The prosthesis-based themes and questions from Murray’s [14] research were adopted for use in this wearable technology study (Table 1 and Multimedia Appendix 1). Some themes were combined. The “adjustment to the prosthesis” and the “tool or corporal structure” themes were combined into one theme. The gamified tool was too intertwined with the initial process of adjusting to the prosthesis. The “knowing body” and the “phantom becomes the prosthesis” themes were also combined. While the differences between the knowing body and the phantom becomes the prosthesis themes are clear when applied to a physical prosthesis (ie, the mind and the body), the overlaps when applied to a wearable make it difficult to separate the two because both themes are in relation to the mind. An additional question was added to see how individuals compared using the wearable to their smartphone.

**Procedure and Analysis**

In order to analyze the participant interviews, participants were given a pseudonym. Responses were then given the pseudonym as well as the interview sequence (in this case, interview 1, 2, or 3). ATLAS.ti (Scientific Software Development GmbH) and Microsoft Excel (Microsoft Corp) were used to analyze the responses for themes and longitudinal trends. Both inductive and deductive reasoning were used. Responses were coded into one or more of the adapted themes of Murray [14]. To stay open to additional themes, a constant comparison method [39,40], a form of thematic analysis [41], was utilized throughout the series of interviews to understand how participants experienced the wearable. This particular form of qualitative analysis was selected because its approach is useful in shedding light on how individuals experience the technology over the long term [14,38]. This dual process of constant comparison allowed us to code responses based on predefined categories, as well as discover themes or categories from the data itself.

**Table 1.** Original themes of Murray and adapted themes with descriptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original theme by Murray [14]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Adapted theme</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment to the prosthesis</td>
<td>Becoming familiar with a prosthetic device for the first time, and physical and psychological adjustment. Experiencing the prosthetic device as either a tool or part of the body.</td>
<td>Adjustment to the wearable</td>
<td>Adjustment to the gamified tool/wearable during the initial period (months 1-3) with the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool or corporal structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The balance of the body</td>
<td>Body weight distribution and balance.</td>
<td>Wearability</td>
<td>Level of comfort or ease of wear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awareness of the prosthetic device</td>
<td>The attention and awareness that was given to prosthesis use,</td>
<td>Awareness of the wearable</td>
<td>Level of awareness of the wearable and whether the aspects demanding awareness are welcome or disruptive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The knowing body</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The phantom becomes the prosthesis, extending the body</td>
<td>The body’s feedback to the mind (including the prosthetic body part). A prosthetic limb being experienced as part of the body.</td>
<td>The embodied wearable extending the mind</td>
<td>Experiencing the information as part of cognition and feeling and/or believing the information is as valid or more valid than subjective experience. Experiencing the device as part of the body.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Results**

**Themes**

During analysis, two additional themes were discovered and included. A high number of responses were recognized relating to engagement/reengagement and comparison to another person or device. No additional questions were added to the semistructured interviews. While past studies have compared new prostheses to old prostheses, it was not a theme of Murray [14]. We believed these discovered themes do shed light on the nuances of wearable technology embodiment not yet discovered. The interrater reliability was calculated for all the themes using Cohen κ (Multimedia Appendix 2), with a 10% sample of the responses. Two researchers (ECN and MLN) reached a Pr(a) of 0.84 for all themes (Multimedia Appendix 2) after three rounds of revisions and thus a strong level of consistency [42]. It was established that the data collection did reach saturation.

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e16973

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e16973 | p.596

(page number not for citation purposes)
**Theme 1: Adjustment to the Wearable**

During the initial 2-month period with the wearable, the participants described near constant interaction with the technology, checking it multiple times per day and sometimes only a few minutes apart to see how many steps had been achieved. Participants reported that the first months were “very motivating” and could be attributed to being drawn into the gamified elements of the technology. Most of the participants were experiencing a wearable for the first time (10 out of 12). Many individuals reported that they started walking to other parts of the office to have “face-to-face check-ins instead of sending a text or email.” The technology also awarded digital badges to participants who challenged other participants to a “duel” and logged the most steps that day. However, these challenges or duels were reported to greatly decrease over time. All participants reported changes in their behavior and in making decisions to try to get more steps and/or to sleep longer or more deeply because of such aspects as the daily goal. One participant responded as follows:

> I think in the beginning it’s more of a high that you really want to achieve 10,000 steps. [Eva; first interview]

While most of the responses were positive, there were some negative reactions to the recommended daily goals. The app suggested 10,000 steps and 8 hours of sleep. The suggested activity goal was explained as an “exciting challenge” in the beginning but proved to be “quite difficult” during weekdays, causing frustration and sometimes demotivation. Forgetting the wearable was also reported as frustrating especially during active days that could have increased the weekly average. In the first interview, Nate stated that he took 3000 steps on a normal weekday at the office. He expressed frustration with having to do more than three times that number to reach his daily goal. He made the following statement:

> That’s really crazy then it’s difficult to get your 10k steps which I did as my target but it’s really difficult to get there and I don’t think you can get there with a normal job. [Nate; second interview]

This initial adjustment time was also when the participants stated they “set up a routine” with the device, including pressing the button after waking in the morning and before sleep at night, learning the number of steps in typical activities, such as walking to work and usual errands, and checking step count throughout the day. Murray described this period as a time of acceptance or rejection when the individual and the prosthetic device must synchronize to achieve a working partnership. The participants reported a range of feelings to the new device such as feeling “familiarity,” “curiosity,” and “adjustment.” These feelings show a similar pattern to prosthesis embodiment and suggest that the devices are embodied or are in the process of embodiment.

**Theme 2: Engagement/Reengagement**

While the first period of adjustment was also the period of most frequent use for all participants (n=12), overall, we saw a process of engaging, disengaging, and reengaging over the long term. Over the 9 months, most participants experienced at least two distinct periods of heavy use and two periods of infrequent use. One participant commented as follows:

> I was very curious. How does it work and how much do I walk and now it became just a part of the day. [Eliz; first interview]

Other participants described “missing the technology” when not wearing it, and a sense of “starting over” when the technology was not used for a period of time. Matthew described a period of infrequent use and had experienced sleep deprivation and reduced activity. This period was during a time of intense workload and long hours. He described the challenge of reintegrating the device into his daily routine again, where increased use helped him to regulate his routine once again. His comment was as follows:

> Using the device again it feels like some kind of start over. [Matthew; second interview]

One male participant in the first interview reported being especially interested in the sleep patterns and the quality of sleep, putting much focus on it. It was something that he had “not focused on” before getting the device. By the third interview, he believed he had learned to measure his sleep independent of the device. Interestingly, when participants were asked if they preferred the technology quantifying their activity and sleep or desired to gain the skill of knowing their quantified health data, most (n=9) preferred to continue using the technology. The reengagement by all participants and desire to continue using the technology as opposed to gaining the skill suggests a certain level of embodiment of the device.

**Theme 3: Wearability**

The wearable in this study was quite small compared with others on the market, so neither women nor men complained about its bulkiness. In general, participants in this study described the device as “comfortable.” The participants received the device in the autumn and initially talked about adjusting to sleeping with it, but most (n=10) said they “did not notice” the wearable or that it “did not bother them.” One participant chose not to sleep with the wearable on finding it uncomfortable after a few nights. When the spring and summer months came, some participants (n=2) reported that the device became “itchy” during high heat. A participant who also struggled initially with discomfort at night reported added discomfort during the summer in high heat. Interestingly, many participants described the experience similar to wearing a watch and stated that the device was “hardly noticeable.” Yet, most participants did not wear a watch and had not used a watch for many years. No participant stopped wearing the wearable completely owing to comfort issues. One participant made the following statement:

> It felt like I was wearing a watch. In winter, it was ok but in summer I thought it was sometimes a bit annoying. [Mary; third interview]

The level of perceived attractiveness seemed to add to the ease of wear. Most participants (n=10) found the device attractive, and many (n=9) also enjoyed being asked what the device was. This positive attention and perceived attractiveness made the device quite wearable. Interestingly, by the end of the study, many participants stated a desire for their next wearable to have
“more functionality” and a different look (n=9), and to be more like a smartwatch than an activity tracker. One participant made the following statement:

I don’t really feel it. It doesn’t bother me at all. My only thing is that it’s ugly. [Mathew; first interview]

Wearability thus seemed to focus heavily on seasonality, the size and feeling of a watch, discomfort during sleep or high heat, and the level of perceived attractiveness.

Theme 4: Awareness of the Wearable

After the initial 2 months, many participants interacted much less with the device. The daily results and content from the mobile app (Figure 1) were explained as “repetitive” and “did not change or surprise” the participants anymore. John initially reported being “addicted to the device” and did not experience the first low interaction period until much later than the other participants. However, by the third interview, he described a feeling of “boredom with the content” of the mobile app. The majority of the participants did not have a high level of awareness of the device stating it was “just there.” John made the following statements:

You were constantly looking how many steps I’ve taken in the last 10 minutes and now it’s become like I said hardly think of that it’s there… you’re being reminded because people keep asking what’s that on your wrist. But not because I feel it, sense it. It’s just there. [John; first interview]

There are also some notification or suggestions for what you can do you just can’t help reading them so when they pop up you see them and obviously see there is a pattern or there are certain standard suggestions once you've seen them. [John; second interview]

All participants reported checking sleep and activity once in the morning for sleep and at the end of the day for activity after the initial period of high use. The wearables required a button to be pushed before bed and when awake in the morning as an extra framework to accurately measure sleep time. The wearable did not demand attention similar to a well-fit prosthesis, but the feedback was considered boring (ie, low contextual awareness).

Theme 5: The Embodied Wearable, Extending the Mind

Many participants expressed “intense” reactions to or relationships with their device during the 9-month study and described “missing the device” when it was forgotten. Some reported experiences of “addiction,” at minimum, reports referred to the technology as likely to be “habit forming.” Four participants reported experiences of “addiction,” at minimum, reports referred to the technology as likely to be “habit forming.” Four participants made the following statements:

There won’t be many moments that I forget about it or won’t wear it. I take it to the gym it’s really part of my body. [Anna; second interview]

I’m quite surprised that it’s become such an automatic, almost part of your body so to say. Like I said I don’t feel it, I don’t notice it, so it’s there. [John; first interview]

In the second interview, John described what he may do moving forward. He might either stop using the device or keep it for his physical training to “keep himself sharp.” By the third interview, the wearable was replaced with another focused on running training, which was a gift from his team. He enjoyed the additional information like heart rate. In Tom’s first interview, he described feeling powerless and wanting to know his biological data when he was without the device. He stated “It’s a crazy feeling when it’s off.” He restated this in the second interview and mentioned “because you get comfortable wearing it, so when you take it off you miss it.” In the third interview, he seemed to refer to himself and the technology working together.

Many participants referenced the calming effects confirming health behavior but could not answer why. One participant stated in all three interviews that it was comforting knowing what the activity had been. This was true for reaching milestones, such as 10,000 steps, and when the device confirmed feeling tired, such as after a bad night’s sleep. The adverse reaction existed when goals were not met and feelings of discomfort or frustrations arose. One participant commented as follows:

Your feeling is being confirmed. If you think it was a rough night then you look at the app “oh it was”. [Eliz; second interview]

All participants experienced “surprising” and “discomforting” feedback regarding their sleep and/or activity. Some participants (n=4) reported a shift later in the study and started questioning the technology as an “accurate/correct measurement” while continuing to use it. They seemed to be struggling to decide whether to believe themselves or the device. Interestingly, none of the four participants reached a final decision on “whom” to trust by the end of the study. The indecision and willingness to trust the wearable above one’s own feeling would suggest some embodiment had taken place.

Theme 6: Comparison to Another Device or Person

A new theme was discovered based on comparisons to other devices. This theme was further explored using responses from the adapted questions, such as how the wearable compared with the smartphone. Half of the participants (n=6) found the experience similar to receiving their first smartphone and checking their wearable “automatically” and with “little thought,” although this statement was not consistent for individuals over the three interviews (Multimedia Appendix 3). This was explained by the fact that the wearable, like the phone, was “constantly with them,” gave “updated data,” and was something they “checked often.” The experience was also compared to that of a singular mobile app on a phone but was felt to be less relevant than the full functionality of a smartphone and was therefore less frequently used. This was believed to be a reaction to the evolution of technology and the initial experience of exploration with a new device. One participant made the following statement:

It’s not like my phone. It’s a pull it’s not addictive and disappointment is maybe not the correct word. It's more like you want to wear it because you have it and

https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e16973

JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020 | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e16973 | p.598
(page number not for citation purposes)
it doesn't take you a lot of effort to have it record all the steps. [Tom; third interview]

One group of participants (n=8) had a reliance on the technology for activity and sleep evaluation, which they explained as similar to a smartphone. While most participants found they could not know their sleep and activity without the device, they reported at least some level of learning to gauge activity and sleep. The wearable took the place of a guide, even being referred to as a “mother” because of the reminders to be healthier. One participant made the following statement:

Every morning you get the alert about the notification of your sleep. It’s good to see and I track how much is my sleep and is it long enough sound sleep. I want to try more sound sleep than light sleep because I sleep all night but more lite than sound sleep. But it’s funny, I call the notification to go to sleep ‘mother’. [Matthew; second interview]

Furthermore, most of our participants stated that they depended on their phone for navigation (n=11) and phone numbers (n=12) [43]. In the first interview, one participant stated that there was “no way of realistically guessing progress.” By the third interview, the participant stated that it may be possible to guess progress after using the device for so many months, but still felt the device was more accurate and motivating.

Discussion

Principal Findings

This study is one of the first to track the use of wearables in a longitudinal qualitative study, providing a nuanced and varied insight into how this technology is used, embodied, and integrated into people’s daily life. In this study, we found that although previous short-term research seemed to suggest wearables are quickly abandoned [7,8,10,11], there were alternating periods of engagement, disengagement, and reengagement over a 9-month timeframe. The fluctuating engagement is consistent with Oliver’s [44] belief that the usage process of a device includes a sequence of acceptance, experience, verification, and continued use. On further reflection, it is understandable that engagement and reengagement did not come up in research on prosthetic limbs. Limb prostheses are associated with an experience of acceptance of the prosthetic device but rarely periods of reengagement, because this would mean giving up the regained functions. Furthermore, a limb would not likely be compared to another person.

It is also important to note that unlike the report by Murray [14], our participants were not obliged to wear the wearable, yet none of the participants chose to leave the study. Many participants expressed desires for higher functioning devices as their next wearable, suggesting a continued interest in the device/process. The most frequent use was experienced by all participants at the beginning of the study. This was during the period where many described getting the device into their daily routine and enjoying the gamified elements of the device, including competition with friends or colleagues. This high level of motivation is experienced often with technology adoption [17], especially technology including gamification [21], and is explained by theoretical paradigms, such as the innovation diffusion theory, which describes how beliefs, such as relative advantage, influence how individuals decide to adopt a technology [45,46].

We also discovered differences and similarities between a wearable and a limb prosthesis. With both, successful adjustment to the device during the first period and wearable ability are key to adoption and embodiment. High wearable ability makes the device should be comfortable and should integrate into the body to fit within the individual’s overall functioning without constraining any motion [47]. The wearable we chose was relatively small, and if it had been larger or heavier, or had hindered movement, the embodiment could have been less successful [48]. Itchiness in warmer seasons did seem to provide some discomfort. Wearability is especially important for wearables that are an optional addition to the body, while a limb prosthesis is considered a needed replacement. The participants’ positive reactions to public approval are supported by the Theory of Planned Behavior [49]. Initial reactions to the devices also suggest some form of empowerment or perceived behavioral control [21]. Subjective norms can pressure individuals for approval, changing their behavior or perceptions. Wearing a device that received positive attention could reinforce the choice to wear the device [48] and perceive the device as more wearable due to the emotional benefits. Wearables also differed from Murray’s [14] prosthesis research in terms of awareness. The wearable did not create bothersome awareness similar to a well-fit prosthesis but was not considered engaging in the long term (ie, low contextual awareness).

The feedback from the wearable created an interesting dilemma. Adding a quantified measurement of sleep and activity to the perceptions of sleep and activity created parallel feedback that could be either confirming (ie, confirm a good or bad night’s sleep) or invalidating (ie, present information radically different than experiential perceptions). Parallel feedback can create a fracture in the sense of self and can lead to either distrusting the device, one’s self, or both [50]. When the individual trusts the information coming from the device, this can manifest in self-regulating responses. However, when the information does not match the individual’s beliefs, this can cause a reaction of self-discrepancy, where the individual holds simultaneous yet incompatible self-beliefs possibly causing distress [51]. A merging experience has been described in technology embodiment research [2,3] and cyborg intentionality where the person and technology both come with separate intentions (mediated intentionality/composite intentionality) combined into an experience [1]. For instance, the wearable did not intend to be a “mother figure,” yet the combination of individuals’ experiences with the wearable’s intention created that “human dynamic.” We did not find that participants experienced the discrepancy as particularly distressing, but awareness of the discrepancy seemed to increase over time. Interestingly, individuals more boldly expressed the inconsistency as time went on, but these individuals continued to struggle with whether to abandon the device. There were clear individual differences in the extent to which people experienced discrepancies and the willingness to put more trust in the...
technologically mediated information than in subjective experience. The experience of seeing the device as a “mother figure” may show both negative and positive reactions to self-regulation. Further longitudinal investigation of this phenomenon has been called for to see how real-time monitoring of human functions and constant presentation of the data influence self-perception [50]. The self-discrepancy theory has not yet been extended to embodiment literature. We believe this research provides the first evidence that the self-discrepancy theory is applicable to embodiment phenomena.

In addition to the adapted themes of Murray [14], we discovered that wearables do have similarities to other devices such as mobile phones. We see increasing dependence on technologies, such as mobile phones and navigation technologies, that extend or replace our cognitive efforts and competencies (ie, remembered phone numbers and navigation) [6,34,35]. Research in mobile addiction or “smartphone dependence” has addressed its effect on mental health issues with regard to compulsive usage [52]. Our comparison of wearables to initial smartphone experiences suggests that wearables could have similar reactions to the technology, especially as the technology innovates. Research has found that individuals can create an emotional attachment to their mobile phones [53], and literature within mobile technology interaction has proven that individuals can believe their phones are extensions of themselves [4,8,54,55].

Limitations and Future Research
This study has few limitations. First, the study included a relatively small and homogenous group (n=12) that was repeatedly measured over a period of 9 months, making further generalization a question for future research. The participant group was representative of a consumer group (young to middle-aged highly educated professionals) interested in wearables. For many of the participants, this was their first time using wearables, which provides great insights into the experiences of first-time users. However, we recommend performing a further study on participants having ongoing experience with wearables and mobile devices. The wearables were small and unobtrusive, and while this helped us to see the experience of a highly wearable device, we acknowledge that not all wearables are unobtrusive. Additionally, while all participants could abandon the study at any point, they were part of a wellness program at work, which may have encouraged them to continue. Our discovered theme of comparison to another device or person could indicate levels of technology dependence similar to mobile phones. We recommend further research on technology dependence and addiction to various types of technologies. Furthermore, this study did not examine or provide explicit information to participants about the validity and reliability of the consumer wearables. This is an important research topic in and of itself [56], and for this study, the participants were referred to the disclaimer of the company indicating the device was not a medical grade device and was only intended for lifestyle monitoring and suggestions. We also acknowledge the critique on phenomenological studies more generally [57] that language mediates experience, and hence, a direct window on the experience itself was not our aim. Finally, this study compared a typical “dumb” physical prosthesis to a “smart” wearable, which are two areas already merging into a shared space. This research provides important insights into the experience of future “smart” prostheses and technologies already embodied by our bodies and minds [4].

Conflicts of Interest
None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1
Interview questions.
[DOCX File ,15 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16973_app1.docx ]

Multimedia Appendix 2
Cohen kappa.
[DOCX File ,17 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16973_app2.docx ]

Multimedia Appendix 3
Comparisons.
[DOCX File ,23 KB - mhealth_v8i11e16973_app3.docx ]

References


52. Koufaris M. Applying the technology acceptance model and flow theory to online consumer behavior. Information Systems Research 2002(1):205-223 [FREE Full text]


https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e16973

Nelson et al. JMIR Mhealth and Uhealth | vol. 8 | iss. 11 | e16973 | p.602 (page number not for citation purposes)
Wearable Health Devices in Health Care: Narrative Systematic Review

Lin Lu*, MD; Jiayao Zhang*, MD; Yi Xie*, MD; Fei Gao, MD; Song Xu, MD; Xinghuo Wu, MD; Zhewei Ye, Prof Dr, MD
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Union Hospital, Tongji Medical College, Huazhong University of Science and Technology, Wuhan, China
* these authors contributed equally

Corresponding Author:
Zhewei Ye, Prof Dr, MD
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery
Union Hospital, Tongji Medical College
Huazhong University of Science and Technology
1277 Jiefang Dadao
Wuhan, 430022
China
Phone: 86 17771413685
Email: yezhewei@hust.edu.cn

Abstract

Background: With the rise of mobile medicine, the development of new technologies such as smart sensing, and the popularization of personalized health concepts, the field of smart wearable devices has developed rapidly in recent years. Among them, medical wearable devices have become one of the most promising fields. These intelligent devices not only assist people in pursuing a healthier lifestyle but also provide a constant stream of health care data for disease diagnosis and treatment by actively recording physiological parameters and tracking metabolic status. Therefore, wearable medical devices have the potential to become a mainstay of the future mobile medical market.

Objective: Although previous reviews have discussed consumer trends in wearable electronics and the application of wearable technology in recreational and sporting activities, data on broad clinical usefulness are lacking. We aimed to review the current application of wearable devices in health care while highlighting shortcomings for further research. In addition to daily health and safety monitoring, the focus of our work was mainly on the use of wearable devices in clinical practice.

Methods: We conducted a narrative review of the use of wearable devices in health care settings by searching papers in PubMed, EMBASE, Scopus, and the Cochrane Library published since October 2015. Potentially relevant papers were then compared to determine their relevance and reviewed independently for inclusion.

Results: A total of 82 relevant papers drawn from 960 papers on the subject of wearable devices in health care settings were qualitatively analyzed, and the information was synthesized. Our review shows that the wearable medical devices developed so far have been designed for use on all parts of the human body, including the head, limbs, and torso. These devices can be classified into 4 application areas: (1) health and safety monitoring, (2) chronic disease management, (3) disease diagnosis and treatment, and (4) rehabilitation. However, the wearable medical device industry currently faces several important limitations that prevent further use of wearable technology in medical practice, such as difficulties in achieving user-friendly solutions, security and privacy concerns, the lack of industry standards, and various technical bottlenecks.

Conclusions: We predict that with the development of science and technology and the popularization of personalized health concepts, wearable devices will play a greater role in the field of health care and become better integrated into people’s daily lives. However, more research is needed to explore further applications of wearable devices in the medical field. We hope that this review can provide a useful reference for the development of wearable medical devices.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e18907) doi:10.2196/18907

KEYWORDS
wearable; medical field; public health; health monitoring; chronic disease management; rehabilitation.
Introduction

Background
In the 1960s, the concept of wearable technology was first proposed by Edward O Thorp [1], a mathematics professor at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in the United States. Since then, wearable technology has received considerable attention from researchers all around the world. In recent years, with the development of the internet, intelligent hardware, and big data, wearable technology has developed rapidly in various fields such as health care [2], education and culture [3], social networking [4], and the military [5]. Some of these technologies are becoming part of people’s daily life in the form of accessories such as smart watches, smart bracelets, armbands, and glasses [6]. In the field of health care, wearable devices in the form of portable medical or health electronic devices that can be directly worn on the body can be used to perceive, record, analyze, regulate, and intervene to maintain health and can even be used to treat diseases with the support of various technologies for identification, sensing, connection, cloud services, and storage [7]. By intelligently integrating mechanical functions with microelectronics and computing power, wearable devices can be used to achieve immediate detection of patient signs and laboratory indicators and provide exercise guidance, drug administration reminders, and so on, with the aim of achieving multiparameter, real-time, online, accurate and intelligent detection and analysis of human physiological and pathological information that can be used to carry out self-diagnosis and self-monitoring [8].

As a standard health care intervention, there are 5 main features of wearable devices [9]: (1) wireless mobility; (2) interactivity and intelligence; (3) sustainability and durability; (4) simple operation and miniaturization; and (5) wearability and portability. From the perspective of modern medicine, the application of wearable devices in the field of medicine follows the 4P medical model characterized by preventive, predictive, personalized, and participatory medicine [10]. On one hand, wearable technologies will play a significant role in advancing precision medicine by enabling measurement of clinically relevant parameters showing the health status of individuals [11]. On the other hand, Loncar-Turukalo et al [12] also indicated that wearable medical devices play an important role as an enabling technology and as a key driver that facilitated the emergence of connected health care. The operation and implementation of these devices depend on the application of various wearable technologies, including sensor technology, medical chip technology, wireless communication technology, power management technology, display technology, and information feedback technology [13]. Real-time medical data from these devices are transmitted to the internet for further analyses or feedback from a health care provider.

Objectives
The development of wearable sensors in the health care market has been relatively slow, despite wearable devices having emerged as a major part of lifestyle and fitness markets. However, the advancement of wearable sensor technology provides enormous opportunities for deployment in health care, especially in connected health care and precision medicine, in which wearable devices can achieve high-quality, real-time measurement of personal health. Although previous reviews have discussed consumer trends in wearable electronics and the application of wearable technology in recreational and sporting activities, data on broad clinical usefulness are lacking. This study reviews the current application of wearable devices in health care. In addition to daily health and safety monitoring, the focus of our work is mainly on the use of wearable devices in clinical practice. We also emphasize their current shortcomings and suggest directions for further research.

Methods

Design
A systematic review design with narrative methods was used to analyze the existing evidence. Specifically, a review methodology [14] was carried out to clarify the types of wearable devices and the current status of their use in health care settings.

Search Strategy
We conducted a comprehensive literature search on January 2, 2020. The following electronic databases were searched with the assistance of an information specialist at the medical library: PubMed, EMBASE, Scopus, and the Cochrane Library. The review was limited to texts published in English between 2015 and 2019 for which abstracts were available. These publication years were chosen due to a dramatic improvement in information technology during that period. The review was also limited to studies of wearable devices in the health care domain. The initial search terms were the following: wearable devices AND health care, wearable technology AND health care, sensor AND wearable AND health care, and wearable AND track AND health care. After reviewing the literature identified through these search terms, we added the search terms monitoring, diseases management, diagnosis OR treatment, and rehabilitation to capture relevant studies found in the references of the papers retrieved from the initial search.

Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria
A total of 960 search results were screened for relevance using titles and abstracts, and 82 papers were fully reviewed and are discussed in this study.

Inclusion research criteria were (1) trials including randomized clinical trials and quasi-experimental studies that have proven the effectiveness of wearable devices; (2) studies focusing on clinical applicability; (3) studies published in peer-reviewed journals in English; (4) studies describing completed research; and (5) studies described in full-text papers. There was no restriction on the location of the studies; therefore, international studies written in English were eligible. Exclusion criteria were papers describing the process of the wearable device design, theoretical papers, books or book chapters, letters, statistical reviews, perspectives, dissertations, editorials, and study protocols.
Study Selection
The research screening process consisted of 4 steps. First, 3 authors (LL, ZJY, and XY) independently screened all titles and abstracts of relevance for this systematic review. Second, the abstracts of all relevant papers were screened for eligibility by the 3 authors. Third, the full texts of eligible publications were obtained and screened (LL) according to the inclusion and exclusion criteria. Differences in opinion were resolved by discussing until a consensus was reached. Finally, to avoid incomplete searching, the references of recent related reviews and the primary studies were manually screened for eligible studies.

Results
After reviewing the title and abstract, the search identified 960 potentially relevant documents. Among them, 82 papers met the inclusion criteria after full-text review (Figure 1).

Classification of Wearable Devices
Wearable devices developed so far have been designed for use on all parts of the human body and are classified into 3 categories: head, limb, and torso wearable devices [15].

Head wearable devices mainly include glasses, helmets, headbands, hearing aids, earrings, earphones, and patches [12]. Among them, Google Glass is a representative type of smart glasses, which has functions such as taking photos, video calls, and GPS positioning, while the application of virtual reality (VR), augmented reality, and mixed reality technology make it suitable for use in areas such as telemedicine, medical education, and intraoperative navigation [16].

Limb wearable devices mainly include wearable devices worn on the arms, legs, and feet [17,18]. Most of the devices worn on the upper limbs are smart watches, bracelets, and other accessories that can be used to monitor physiological parameters such as body temperature, heart rate, ultraviolet exposure levels, and daily activities [19]. Most of the devices worn on the lower limbs appear in the form of shoes and socks that monitor movement-related parameters and are mainly used in the field of rehabilitation [20].

Torso wearable devices mainly include suits, belts, and underwear [21,22]. In recent years, the rapid development of material technology and sensing technology has facilitated the manufacture of electronic products embedded in fabrics or other fabrics that can be used in various biomedical applications. In

Figure 1. The flow diagram illustrating the screening process of papers.
2009, a system of clothing providing access to the internet was developed by the Media Technology Laboratory of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and marked the arrival of a new era of electronic textiles [23].

**Application of Wearable Devices in the Medical Field**

In the medical field, wearable devices can connect doctors, patients, clouds, and other parties to understand changes in conditions, to alleviate pain, treat diseases, and facilitate the collection of a large sample of case data, which is helpful for the development of national epidemiology strategies and preventive medicine [24]. These devices are used mainly in health and safety monitoring [25], chronic disease management [26], disease diagnosis and treatment [27], and rehabilitation [28].

**Health and Safety Monitoring**

The health and safety monitoring function of wearable devices is mainly used for older adults, children, pregnant women, and patient groups. The wearer’s gait, walking speed, posture, respiratory rate, blood oxygen, heart rate, blood pressure, energy expenditure, position, and other related parameters are monitored in real time to inform nursing requirements [29]. For older adults, a high-quality independent life requires solutions to complex nursing needs related to mobility, intelligence, and independent living, which can be provided by the characteristics of wearable technology [30]. Godfrey et al [31] used wearable devices for gait and fall quantification in older adults, monitoring the viability of older adults’ daily activities in an unattended home environment and recognizing the main types of movement (walking, standing, sitting, lying) to help older adults to live independently. Jung et al [32] developed a wearable fall detection system to detect falls by rapidly uploading data for the position of older adult individuals to the medical center and ensuring timely help and treatment. For children, in addition to detecting routine vital signs for health management, wearable technology is a useful tool for tracking children’s daily activities [33]. With the rise of wearable devices, children’s smart watches, bracelets, and backpacks with tracking and positioning functions have emerged in the market. These devices are based on GPS positioning technology to monitor the child’s location and amount of exercise in real time [34]. Furthermore, wearable technology can also be used to monitor mood. Sequeira et al [35] have demonstrated the feasibility of wearable tools in the prediction of depressive symptoms in children and adolescents. Health monitoring of pregnant women can be divided into 2 aspects [36]. On one hand, these applications can be used to monitor the physiological status, emotional state, sleep, and other data before and after conception, while on the other hand, devices can be used to provide immediate feedback on specific problems that occur in the process of child-rearing. Head-med’s Compass Pregnancy Monitor [37] is the first medical-grade fetal health home monitoring product that is easy to operate and monitors maternal heart rate, fetal heart rate, and uterine activity through a disposable abdominal patch. For patient groups, wearable devices can be used to monitor symptom changes during treatment, which can be used for disease monitoring and efficacy evaluations and can contribute to individualization of the treatment plan [29]. For example, wearable sensors can be used to monitor the symptoms of patients with Parkinson disease during drug treatment to help doctors adjust drug doses and evaluate the efficacy of new drugs [38]. van Andel et al [39] used photoplethysmography in heart rate monitoring of patients with epilepsy and showed excellent seizure detection performance. Ryvlin et al [40] developed a wearable device that reliably detects generalized tonic-clonic seizures with high sensitivity and specificity to help physicians optimize antiepileptic treatment and reduce the risk of sudden unexpected death in epilepsy.

**Chronic Disease Management**

**Overview**

Chronic disease management involves changing passive disease treatment into active health monitoring [41]. Wearable products facilitate data collection and monitoring throughout the user’s entire day, as well as providing dynamic, intelligent, and comprehensive analysis of various indicators to enable medical treatment of chronically ill patients. This technology also facilitates remote monitoring of diseases, adjustment of remote treatment plans, lifestyle management, and other functions through cloud services, which is of great significance in disease control [42].

**Cardiovascular Disease**

Cardiovascular diseases can be easily overlooked, with sudden and potentially lethal consequences that require emergency treatment [43]. They are often accompanied by changes in myocardial electrophysiology at an early stage [44]. Therefore, improving daily monitoring is important for discovering and controlling heart disease. There are 2 kinds of traditional cardiovascular disease monitoring: invasive and noninvasive. For routine monitoring, noninvasive electrocardiograms (ECG) and Doppler echocardiography are the main means of examining cardiac function [45]. The 24-hour ambulatory ECG (Holter monitor), which is a relatively mature wearable medical device currently used in the clinic, allows dynamic monitoring, which conventional ECG does not. However, due to suboptimal wearing comfort and the fact that the conductive gel used with electrodes can lead to chest skin allergies and ulcers, its application in home-based daily monitoring is limited. Ultrasonic heart examination can only be used in a hospital setting [46]. To allow people to manage their own health, researchers at home and abroad have conducted many studies on wearable health monitoring systems, especially for ECG long-term data collection. Tsukada et al [47] developed a sports vest made from nanofibers coated with an electroconductive polymer to place the ECG electrodes in close contact with the human body. The signal allows display of the ECG signal in real time, and the monitoring data are collected through an app, which increases comfort without risking allergies. The data are uploaded to the cloud and analyzed by a professional physician to realize remote monitoring of heart diseases. In December 2018, Apple developed the Apple Watch Series 4, which combined the functions of ECG and a watch for the first time. In addition, the dial was designed to display a bipolar ECG to monitor occult atrial fibrillation. This device shows similar accuracy in monitoring arrhythmia, atrioventricular block, and...
QRS duration extension to standard 12-lead ECG recordings [48]. Kaspar et al [49] found that the use of a wearable cardioverter-defibrillator protected patients from sudden cardiac arrest when they were treated in nonhospital settings until reimplantation of an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

### Pulmonary Diseases

Acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and bronchial asthma can lead to impaired lung function, decreased quality of life, and increased mortality [50]. Active monitoring of the early signs of a patient’s condition and early treatment can prevent these outcomes. The telehealth program aims to facilitate early identification and timely self-management of acute exacerbations of COPD and bronchial asthma [51]. For such patients, early detection of progression can help to control the disease [52]. The emergence of inexpensive wearable devices has enabled people to monitor heart rate, pulse, oxygen saturation, and physical activity continuously, as well as audio to detect cough, breath sounds, and other characteristics [53]. These signals can be used in predictive analyses to detect early deterioration of lung function. A prospective cohort study [54] conducted at the University of Toronto evaluated a wearable system that reliably captured nearly continuous patient respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, heart rate, and other data for screening of early COPD deterioration. The results of this study demonstrated the feasibility of using a smart watch for centralized monitoring of patients with COPD. A wearable device developed by Colantonio et al [55] uses a wireless sensor network system to monitor the patient’s respiratory rate, respiratory sound, blood oxygen saturation, and ECG to evaluate the therapeutic effect of treatments for COPD. Li et al [56] used acoustic respirators to monitor nighttime wheezing in asthmatic children and found that 57% of patients with well-controlled asthma had a significant number of nighttime wheezing episodes and poor association with routine measurements of lung function. This has helped to develop individualized treatment for children with asthma. However, Rubio et al [51] reported disappointing results for the use of wearable devices to monitor acute exacerbations of COPD, in part because the parameters monitored (symptoms, pulse oximetry, and lung volume) were not reliable indicators for predicting exacerbation of the disease. It should be pointed out that with advances in sensing technology, wearable systems can also link individual environmental exposure with physiology and subsequent adverse health reactions, providing clues for the pathogenesis of certain lung diseases [57].

### Diabetes

Diabetes represents a group of metabolic diseases characterized by hyperglycemia caused by defects in insulin secretion or impaired biological effects [58]. Long-term poor glycemic control can lead to damage, dysfunction, and failure of various organ tissues, especially the eyes, kidneys, nerves, heart, and blood vessels [59]. For patients with diabetes, improving the ability of self-monitoring and self-management of blood glucose levels has contributed to the reduction of diabetes-related morbidity and mortality. There are currently 3 types of medical management products on the market for patients with diabetes: blood glucose level monitoring equipment, injectable insulin, and implantable insulin pumps [60]. Among them, blood glucose level monitoring products have an important position in blood glucose level control, which is the basic reference for the adjustment of other treatment methods and can also prevent the occurrence of risk events [61]. Traditional blood glucose level monitoring is performed by directly drawing a venous blood sample or taking a finger-prick blood sample, which is analyzed by a biochemical analyzer. These methods are invasive and inconvenient, especially for patients with diabetes who need to monitor blood glucose level several times a day. Due to the volatility and transience of blood glucose level testing, traditional single-point testing methods do not truly reflect the changes in glucose levels in the body [62]. With the development of mobile and sensor technologies, wearable dynamic blood glucose level monitoring products have emerged. The GlucoWatch [61], a noninvasive, painless blood glucose level monitoring product approved by the US Food and Drug Administration in March 2001, has proven its applicability and feasibility in the field of diabetes monitoring products. At present, wearable medical devices widely use indirect measurement methods (minimally invasive or noninvasive) to measure parameters such as blood glucose concentration. The main methods are spectrometry, blood substitution (urine, tears, and tissue fluid), counter-ion electroosmosis, and microwave technology [63,64]. Compared with other methods, the optical method is rapid, is noninvasive, is nonpolluting, is simple to operate, and has become the main method for noninvasive blood glucose level detection. The principle of the measurement is based on concentration-dependent changes in the absorption and reflection characteristics of glucose [65]. However, the accuracy of the measurement is limited by the overlap of other blood components absorption spectra with the absorption spectrum of glucose [64]. In addition, Medtronic’s Minimed 670G uses a portable design to integrate blood glucose level monitoring and an insulin pump. The patient can affix the device to the waist and set the daily detection and injection times. Pillalamari et al [66] developed a handheld insulin pump using biomedical microelectromechanical systems technology to intelligently control the rate and volume of insulin injections, maintaining blood glucose level within a relatively stable range.

### Hypertension

Hypertension is a chronic disease characterized by a sustained increase in arterial blood pressure. It is the most important risk factor for cardiovascular and cerebrovascular diseases, which seriously endanger human health [67]. Therefore, the accuracy and reliability of blood pressure measurement during the diagnosis and treatment of hypertension is especially important [68]. Blood pressure can be measured directly and indirectly [69]. Direct measurement involves percutaneous puncture and catheterization of the aorta. This is an invasive method and is only applicable in critical and difficult cases. Indirect measurement, also known as cuff compression, involves the use of a sphygmomanometer. This is the most commonly used measurement method, but continuous data cannot be obtained [70]. Noninvasive continuous blood pressure measurement is the trend for the development of wearable blood pressure monitors. At present, wearable devices determine blood pressure by measuring different physiological signals and can be divided
into 4 types according to the principle [71]: (1) flattening tension of the radial artery; (2) volume changes in pulsing blood; (3) speed of pulse wave; and (4) the vibration measurement method. Moreover, wearable blood pressure monitor can be roughly divided into 2 types according to structure: cuff type and sleeveless type. Due to its strong anti-interference and reliability, the cuff type has become the mainstream form of wearable blood pressure measuring devices and are widely used in the market [72]. This type of wearable device uploads the monitored data to generate a dynamic blood pressure map, which is convenient for patients and doctors. However, during daily continuous monitoring, repeated inflation and deflation of the cuff can cause physical discomfort to the patient, especially at night when the process can cause sleep disturbances [70]. Therefore, a wearable device that can measure dynamic blood pressure accurately and comfortably without a cuff would be attractive prospect. Zheng et al [73] used a wearable sleeveless device developed based on optical technology to monitor blood pressure changes by measuring the pulse arrival time (the pulse transit time from the heart to the peripheral blood vessels). In a mixed methods study, Islam et al [74] demonstrated that wearable blood pressure device measurements compared well against a gold-standard ambulatory device, indicating that this user-friendly method has the potential to enhance blood pressure management in long-term monitoring. However, this type of sleeveless equipment is still in the experimental development stage and has not yet entered the market.

**Diagnosis and Treatment of Diseases**

**Overview**

A comprehensive understanding of the changes in physiological and pathological indicators during the early stage of disease is critical for timely diagnoses and interventions. Wearable devices are of great significance in the diagnosis and treatment of various diseases by monitoring the changes in vital signs on a real-time basis [42].

**Neurological Disorders**

For example, early warning and intervention in the predementia phase of Alzheimer disease are of great significance in delaying the onset and reducing the incidence [75]. Mild cognitive dysfunction is a major feature of predementia in Alzheimer disease, and diagnostic methods at this stage are not yet fully developed [76]. Recent studies have shown that gait is a noninvasive biological indicator of cognitive function [75,77,78]. By wearing a wearable device, the user’s gait parameters can be collected for early detection of Alzheimer disease. In addition, wearable devices also show good application prospects in the early diagnosis of other neurological diseases. For instance, Mannini et al [79] developed a wearable device that analyzes gait classification to improve the accuracy of diagnosis of early neurological diseases.

**Respiratory Diseases**

For patients with obstructive sleep apnea hypopnea syndrome, the application of wearable nocturnal breathing monitoring equipment can improve the accuracy of early diagnosis and can be used at home [80]. Surrel et al [81] developed a wearable, accurate, and energy efficient system for monitoring obstructive sleep apnea on a long-term basis.

**Cardiac Conduction System Anomalies**

For patients who may be at risk of cardiac arrest, a wearable defibrillator can help monitor arrhythmias. Moreover, emergency defibrillation can be performed to restore normal rhythm when cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation is detected [82]. The annual meeting of the American Association for Cancer Research in 2017 also reported that a medical wearable device that delivers alternating currents extends the overall survival of patients with malignant gliomas [83].

**Urinary Diseases**

For end-stage renal disease, Gura et al [84] showed that treatment with a wearable artificial kidney was well tolerated and resulted in effective uremic solute clearance and maintenance of electrolyte and fluid homeostasis. However, wearable devices still have a long way to go in terms of therapeutic applications compared to their health monitoring functions. It should be pointed out that in recent years, with the rise of VR, augmented reality, and mixed reality technology and the breakthrough of remote technology, wearable equipment has also undergone significant developments for application in settings such as medical education, the formulation of preoperative surgery plans, intraoperative navigation, preoperative doctor-patient communication, and remote consultation [16]. In our previous studies [16,85-87], we successfully implemented mixed reality technology to facilitate preoperative communications between doctors and patients, intraoperative guidance, remote surgical consultation, and surgical navigation through HoloLens glasses.

**Rehabilitation**

**Overview**

In the field of rehabilitation, wearable devices are used mainly in sports rehabilitation [88], cognitive rehabilitation [89], and as rehabilitation aids for people with disabilities [90].

**Sports Rehabilitation**

Conditions such as stroke, brain trauma, spinal cord injury, and musculoskeletal injury often lead to the loss or decrease of a patient’s motor ability. The main goal of sports rehabilitation is to restore balance and coordination, to ensure normal joint mobility, and to have sufficient muscle strength and muscular endurance for daily life [91]. Traditional sports rehabilitation is mainly performed in specific medical institutions by professional rehabilitation practitioners who carry out training to expand the range of motion of joints, enhance muscle strength and endurance, and improve balance and coordination function. This mode of rehabilitation training has the advantages of safe reliable methods and real-time guidance from professionals [92]. At the same time, there are some shortcomings in the traditional rehabilitation model that cannot be ignored, such as limitations in the time and place of rehabilitation, as well as the boredom and tedium of the process, resulting in lack of adherence among patients, even those who are not older adults, all of which seriously affect the efficacy of sports rehabilitation [21]. The application of wearable devices, especially in...
combination with VR, augmented reality, and mixed reality technologies, not only offers the ability to comprehensively monitor and evaluate the rehabilitation activities of patients but also to make the activities more interesting and improve patient adherence [92].

Limb hemiplegia after brain injury is a difficult problem in sports rehabilitation [93]. According to The Chinese Stroke Prevention Report in 2018, stroke has become the leading cause of death in China and the leading cause of disability in Chinese adults [94]. In an aging society, the incidence of stroke is expected to increase in the coming years. Among the various defects caused by stroke, unilateral sensorimotor deficits are very prominent, and 80% of stroke patients have different degrees of gait abnormalities [95]. At present, lower limb rehabilitation for stroke patients is focused mainly on gait training [28]. The wearable device can be used to monitor the patient’s gait parameters and provide feedback to help the doctor assess the patient’s recovery in real time so that the treatment plan can be adjusted accordingly. Hsu et al [96] used a multiplaced wearable sensor to analyze and classify gait characteristics in patients with neurological disorders to guide the selection of rehabilitation exercise regimens. Furthermore, in cases of hemiplegia of a single limb caused by neurological disease, the recovery of arm function lags behind other functions, although the posture and gait may be significantly improved [97]. Maceira-Elvira et al [98] used a wearable stroke rehabilitation trainer to support patients performing a personalized upper limb neuromotor training program at home. The built-in wireless sensor records the patient’s exercise volume, analyzes the data and feeds the data back to the patient and therapist, thus bringing additional improvement to the recovery of the patient’s upper limb functions. Using an optimized wearable glove, a team from the University of Pisa used hand posture reconstruction technology to reconstruct hand movements, allowing real-time recording and feedback on a patient’s hand function recovery [99].

Moreover, in a broad sense, the rehabilitation treatment of spinal cord injury and musculoskeletal injury can be categorized as orthopedic rehabilitation. The use of orthopedic aids is particularly important in the treatment of modern orthopedic rehabilitation. For patients with spinal cord injury, early rehabilitation treatment leads to better the recovery of spinal nerve function mainly through improvements in nerve plasticity [100]. Traditional rehabilitation treatment, which is guided mainly by professional rehabilitators in hospitals, is a costly process requiring a long period of hospitalization. Furthermore, the qualification requirements of the rehabilitation professionals are often high, and one-on-one professional guidance is not always possible. Many researchers [101,102] have designed wearable artificial exoskeletons based on bionics, the principle of which is to transfer the human body load to the artificial exoskeleton and assist in maintaining the standing posture of patients with spinal cord injury. This approach is also designed to allow the patient to walk slowly with a fixed gait maintained by the dynamics and feedback systems of the artificial exoskeleton, thus avoiding joint dysfunction such as joint stiffness and muscle contracture [103]. On the other hand, 3 factors are key to the success of treatment of musculoskeletal system injury: reduction, fixation, and functional exercise [104]. The rehabilitation exercises in the later stage after the injury are the most important. Many orthopedic surgeons in clinical practice often consider only the aesthetics of the operation, neglecting the importance of postoperative limb function rehabilitation. Furthermore, many patients pay insufficient attention to postoperative rehabilitation exercise, with poor adherence, and fear of pain, all of which affect the recovery of the function of the affected limb and greatly reduce the effectiveness of the surgery. The use of wearable devices can encourage patients to perform rehabilitation exercises and allow adjustment of the intensity of rehabilitation training to improve training results based on feedback information [103]. The electronic-assisted instrument system developed by Zhu et al [105] promoted the recovery of knee flexion and extension function in patients after total knee arthroplasty. Lee et al [106] designed an exoskeleton suit that can assist multiple joint movements and measure the direction and angle of movement. Through intuitive recording of the data, which is displayed in a graphical form, the exoskeleton suit provides patients and physicians with information about the effectiveness and extent of the exercise, which is conducive to early rehabilitation and restoration of function.

**Cognitive Rehabilitation**

Cognitive dysfunction, which is one of the most common sequelae after brain injury, not only influences the quality of life of patients but also puts tremendous pressure on patients’ families and society [107]. Therefore, improvements in rehabilitation methods are of great significance for cognitive dysfunction. VR glasses have shown great potential in providing treatment options and assessment tools for patients with cognitive impairment [108-110]. VR technology has 3 characteristics, namely immersion, interactivity, and imagination [111]. By providing visual, auditory, and tactile sensory simulation, patients are provided with an immersive experience that aids cognitive rehabilitation in a controlled stimulation environment and facilitates monitoring of related parameters in real time. VR technology offers the potential to develop a personalized treatment plan for patients with different levels of cognitive impairment by providing virtual reproducible images, which are effective in the recovery of memory impairment. To date, many studies have demonstrated the value of VR-based wearable devices in the rehabilitation of cognitive impairment. According to the characteristics of immersion, Faria et al [112] designed VR glasses to perform memory recovery training in patients with cognitive dysfunction, reducing their fear of reality and improving their learning and behavioral abilities. Wählín et al [113] used VR training to improve left-sided awareness in chronic stroke patients also increased sporadic interhemispheric functional connectivity within the dorsal attention network.

**Rehabilitation Aids for People With Disabilities**

Accessories for people with disabilities is another major direction in the field of wearable devices for rehabilitation. Such accessories include intelligent glasses for the blind, smart hearing aids, and intelligent prosthetics. Using artificial intelligence technology, smart glasses for the blind [114] not only help individuals with visual impairments
interpret information about their surroundings (identified by a pinhole camera, eg, to analyze road condition information in real time) but also aid in making effective decisions. Moreover, smart glasses can help individuals with visual impairment to use a variety of smart home products in a family setting, thus allowing them to improve their quality of life [115].

The hearing aid is essentially an electroacoustic amplifier [116]. The acoustic signal is converted into an electrical signal by a microphone, and after amplification, the electrical signal is restored by the receiver to an acoustic signal and transmitted to the human ear. The emergence of intelligent technology has promoted the development of the hearing aid industry, allowing users to autonomously choose the clearest sound they want to hear in a complex and changing environment, freeing them from the disadvantages of hearing disorders.

For patients with limb defects, the prosthesis can not only fill the shape defect but also restore full or partial residual limb function [117]. Traditional prosthetics are cumbersome, and the invention of wearable smart prostheses is very encouraging for patients with physical disabilities. Intelligent prostheses incorporating robotics have become a hot topic in recent years [118].

Discussion

Existing Issues

Overview

The development of wearable medical equipment has increased the popularity and quality of health care. Moreover, these developments have, to a certain extent, alleviated the shortage of medical resources in low-income countries and promoted the development of medical care worldwide. However, the wearable medical device industry is still in development and currently faces several important limitations that prevent further use of wearable technology in medical practice.

Barriers to User-Friendly Solutions

For the health care system, the main challenge is to enable the use of these technologies by changing the model of care and by sharing information [119]. Data collection, transfer, preservation, and sharing require not only the development of technical solutions but also the development of legal infrastructure, which will enable different organizations to share data and responsibilities for patient [120]. On one hand, patient autonomy in using wearable health devices needs to be kept to help patients to become active participants in their own care [119]. On the other hand, the duty of clinicians and the responsibilities for misdiagnosis and missed diagnosis due to the use of unreliable or delayed data and false alarms during the use of wearable devices should also be legally regulated [121].

Security and Privacy Concerns

Through sensor technology, wearable health devices can collect all kinds of user information, such as health information, geographical location, and living habits [34]. The various formats, large scale, and numerous mobile links of these data may increase the risk of leakage and tampering [8,35,122,123]. Strategies to ensure the security of the data and improve the public trust are required.

Lack of Industry Standards and Regulations

In the absence of industry standards and regulations, all companies hope to rely on their core products to form their own standards and regulations, making it difficult to integrate resources. So, the establishment and enforcement of new regulatory standards are required [71,118].

Technological Barriers

There are many technical bottlenecks in the applications of wearable medical devices [64,124,125]: (1) Data accuracy [9,24,118,122]: On one hand, the sensor specificity of current wearable device is low, which may lead to over-detection of benign nonclinical related signals, resulting in misdiagnosis, unnecessary examinations, and patient anxiety. On the other hand, low sensor sensitivity may lead to omission of pathological clinically-relevant parameters, resulting in missed diagnosis and delay in treatment. (2) Single function: The compatibility of wearable devices is relatively poor, the functions are mainly concentrated on the level of health monitoring, with slow progress in clinical treatment, and few wearable medical devices have effectively integrated multiple functions [27,124]. (3) Poor battery life: Designing low-power consuming and high-energy storage wearable devices has always been an exciting but challenging issue [10,120], (4) Equipment safety: Safety and security are primary considerations for medical equipment, closely related to reliability at all system levels [12,13]. Because false alarms would reduce user alertness and prevent user adherence from the feedback provided, efficient mechanisms are needed to detect and diagnose deviations occurring in captured data [126]. (5) Other issues such as cost, low data collection and processing efficiency, unstable human-computer interaction interfaces, and incomplete construction of big data health clouds need to be further improved [9,13,122].

Limitations

There were some limitations in our review. Although some databases are included, our search terms may cause the omission of relevant papers. Due to the exploratory nature of this review, it included a wide range of research designs, and the review will ultimately be limited by the design of the included studies. Although the second and third reviewers used strategies to limit bias through consultation, they also acknowledge the possibility of subjectivity in analyzing the survey results. Additionally, this paper is not intended to be a systematic review, and it is possible to conduct a broader review and find papers suggesting other applications of wearable devices.

Conclusion and Future Directions

Despite many limitations in their application, wearable devices have achieved remarkable success and have brought huge benefits to the aging global population. The authors believe that the following aspects are crucial for future development of the wearable device industry:

1. Strengthening oversight of the wearable device industry, formulating specific security rules to protect the privacy
and security of personal data, and clarifying the relevant medical responsibilities and rights between doctors and patients.

2. Establishment and enforcement of industry standards by taking health care as the main body of information to establish a unified data classification, evaluation system, and industry standards for wearable device to realize the mutual recognition of medical data.

3. Technological advancement in wearable health devices to develop low-consumption and high-integration sensor technology; low-power high-performance battery technology; high processing efficiency medical chip technology; and human-computer interaction technology to improve information accuracy, information processing speed, extend battery life, and user experience.

4. Combining big data, cloud computing, and IoT—the internet of things—to build a healthy database to develop a complete medical ecosystem. Using this resource, we can fully develop, analyze, and employ medical and health big data to expand the use of wearable devices in other fields, such as telemedicine, preventive medicine, and epidemiology [12].

By combining smart wearable medical devices with pension services, a smart retirement community can be built to provide high-quality, high-efficiency medical care services. How medical services are sought has also begun to transform from passive medical treatment of disease to community medical models led by prevention, health care, and prediagnosis.

In summary, with the development of science and technology and the popularization of personalized health concepts, wearable devices will inevitably play a greater role in the field of health care and become better integrated into our daily lives. However, more research is needed to explore further applications of wearable devices in the medical field.

Acknowledgments

This work was supported by Foundation for the Science and Technology Commission of Hubei (grant no. 2018AAA067) and the National Natural Science Foundation of China (no. 81974355).

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References


**Abbreviations**

VR: virtual reality  
ECG: electrocardiogram  
COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

©Lin Lu, Jiayao Zhang, Yi Xie, Fei Gao, Song Xu, Xinghuo Wu, Zhewei Ye. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 09.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
The Use of Wearables in Clinical Trials During Cancer Treatment: Systematic Review

Ulrikke Lyng Beauchamp¹, BSc; Helle Pappot¹,², MD, DMSc; Cecilie Holländer-Mieritz¹, MD

¹Department of Oncology, Rigshospitalet, University of Copenhagen, Copenhagen, Denmark
²Faculty of Health, University of Copenhagen, Copenhagen, Denmark

Corresponding Author:
Cecilie Holländer-Mieritz, MD
Department of Oncology
Rigshospitalet
University of Copenhagen
Blegdamsvej 9
Copenhagen, 2100
Denmark
Phone: 45 35453545
Email: cecilie.hollaender-mieritz@regionh.dk

Abstract

Background: Interest in the use of wearables in medical care is increasing. Wearables can be used to monitor different variables, such as vital signs and physical activity. A crucial point for using wearables in oncology is if patients already under the burden of severe disease and oncological treatment can accept and adhere to the device. At present, there are no specific recommendations for the use of wearables in oncology, and little research has examined the purpose of using wearables in oncology.

Objective: The purpose of this review is to explore the use of wearables in clinical trials during cancer treatment, with a special focus on adherence.

Methods: PubMed and EMBASE databases were searched prior and up to October 3, 2019, with no limitation in the date of publication. The search strategy was aimed at studies using wearables for monitoring adult patients with cancer during active antineoplastic treatment. Studies were screened independently by 2 reviewers by title and abstract, selected for inclusion and exclusion, and the full-text was assessed for eligibility. Data on study design, type of wearable used, primary outcome, adherence, and device outcome were extracted. Results were presented descriptively.

Results: Our systematic search identified 1269 studies, of which 25 studies met our inclusion criteria. The types of cancer represented in the studies were breast (7/25), gastrointestinal (4/25), lung (4/25), and gynecologic (1/25); 9 studies had multiple types of cancer. Oncologic treatment was primarily chemotherapy (17/25). The study-type distribution was pilot/feasibility study (12/25), observational study (10/25), and randomized controlled trial (3/25). The median sample size was 40 patients (range 7-180). All studies used a wearable with an accelerometer. Adherence varied across studies, from 60%-100% for patients wearing the wearable/evaluable sensor data and 45%-94% for evaluable days, but was differently measured and reported. Of the 25 studies, the most frequent duration for planned monitoring with a wearable was 8-30 days (13/25). Topics for wearable outcomes were physical activity (19/25), circadian rhythm (8/25), sleep (6/25), and skin temperature (1/25). Patient-reported outcomes (PRO) were used in 17 studies; of the 17 PRO studies, only 9 studies reported correlations between the wearable outcome and the PRO.

Conclusions: We found that definitions of outcome measures and adherence varied across studies, and limited consensus among studies existed on which variables to monitor during treatment. Less heterogeneity, better consensus in terms of the use of wearables, and established standards for the definitions of wearable outcomes and adherence would improve comparisons of outcomes from studies using wearables. Adherence, and the definition of such, seems crucial to conclude on data from wearable studies in oncology. Additionally, research using advanced wearable devices and active use of the data are encouraged to further explore the potential of wearables in oncology during treatment. Particularly, randomized clinical studies are warranted to create consensus on when and how to implement in oncological practice.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22006) doi:10.2196/22006
KEYWORDS

cancer treatment; wearables; adherence; sensor technology

Introduction

Technology expansion over the past decade, along with the use of various sensors and electronic devices and the arrival of more advanced devices, has led to new possibilities [1-3]. The potential use of sensor technology in the health care setting is wide and covers aspects suitable for many purposes [4,5]. In this review, we focus on the use of wearables in clinical trials during cancer treatment.

A wearable is a device with a sensor that can collect health-related data remotely [6]. Depending on the device design, it can be worn in different ways, either on the wrist, upper arm, around the waist, fastened to the hip, or on another location of the body. Wearables can collect information on various biometric data points (eg, heart rate, respiratory rate, blood oxygen saturation, sleep pattern, or body temperature) [7]. This information can be used alone or in combination with other information [eg, patient-reported outcome (PRO) or other patient-generated health data] to evaluate or estimate a clinical outcome; hospitalization, adverse events, performance status, and physical activity can be used as a clinical outcome. The information can be used for home monitoring with feedback to the clinician or for self-management by the patient. The collection of data from the wearable can be either offline or in real time, depending on the type of feedback wanted for the user (eg, the patient or clinician).

In oncology, wearables may offer new vital information about patients, which can potentially lead to better management of cancer treatment [7]. This is important both in the aspect of precision care and economy, with cancer being the second leading cause of death globally [8]. Wearables make it possible to monitor patients at home in their own environment, compared to monitoring only at in-clinic visits [9]. Tracking data in the patient’s own environment might allow the patient to continue their normal routines while their health data is being transmitted to a database or directly to the clinician. The possibilities are appealing in oncology from a “work smarter” approach and, more importantly, for the general improvements in the quality of life they may offer to patients with cancer of [10,11]. At present, there is little clinical evidence showing how wearables might improve the cancer pathway for patients with cancer during treatment [12].

To understand the potential use of wearables, it is relevant to capture what the wearable’s objective outcome is, what effect or role it has on the clinical outcome, and what it can be used for in a medical setting [7]. Evaluating the patient’s adherence to the wearable and defining valid data helps to ensure that new technologies are introduced into clinical practice with a focus on the patient’s perspective. Limited consensus and guidelines exist for designing or reporting trials using wearables as part of the intervention—but this research area is getting increased attention [13,14]. One initiative is the Clinical Transformation Initiative (CTTI), which has issued recommendations regarding the appropriate use of mobile technology in clinical trials [13]. They have also initiated a database on feasibility studies in clinical trials [15]. The database is not limited to one specific disease group but only includes feasibility studies [15].

The purpose of this review is to explore the use of wearables in clinical trials during cancer treatment, with a focus on adherence and the setting.

Methods

Study Design and Search Strategy

Systematic searches were performed in PubMed and EMBASE. Both databases were searched prior and up to October 3, 2019, with no limitation in the date of publication. Searches consisted of cancer/neoplasm keywords and terms for wearable devices.

In PubMed, the search consisted of the medical-subject-heading (MeSH) terms “neoplasms,” “medical oncology,” “surgical oncology,” and “wearable electronic devices,” along with a combination of free-text words for the topics “oncology,” “cancer,” “wearable device,” “accelerometer,” and “actigraph.” In EMBASE, the search included categorized terms for neoplasms and electronic monitoring devices such as “neoplasms,” “patient monitoring,” and “electronic device.” Additional search terms “ambulatory monitoring” and “telemedicine” were added. The search was limited to articles published in English. The search strategy is shown in Multimedia Appendix 1. The review was registered at PROSPERO (International prospective register of systematic reviews) ID number CRD42020154386 before data extraction was initiated [16].

Criteria for Inclusion of Studies

Studies found with the selected search strategy were screened by title and abstract, which was performed independently by 2 reviewers who were blinded to each other’s decisions. Cases of disagreement about whether to include or exclude a study were decided through a consensus decision. The included studies had their full text assessed for eligibility; disagreements were resolved by consensus, which was achieved in all cases.

For a study to be included, it had to be written in English and be either a randomized controlled trial (RCT), observational study, or pilot study/ feasibility study. Patients had to be 18 years of age or older and diagnosed with a solid malignant tumor. It was mandatory that studies took place during active cancer treatment; treatment could be either radiation or antineoplastic treatment, such as chemotherapy or targeted therapy. Studies investigating all types of wearables were considered eligible if they had an objective measure. Studies had to include a description of adherence to the wearable to be eligible for inclusion.

Exclusion criteria were studies registered as protocol descriptions, study protocols, abstracts from conferences, editorials, letters, or case reports. Also excluded were studies in which patients were cancer survivors or had hematologic malignancies and were treated with endocrine therapy only or...
surgery only. If the wearable devices were worn only pretreatment, the study used hearing aids as the wearable device, or wearables were used as treatment or for diagnostics, then these studies were also excluded.

Figure 1. PRISMA flow diagram of the screening and selection of studies.

Data Extraction
The following study characteristics data were extracted: study title, author, year of publication, country, study design, number of patients included, and main objectives. Study population information that was extracted included age group, cancer type, treatment type, and intent of treatment. Study data regarding the adherence to the wearable were the type of wearable used (hardware, software), placement, device outcome, planned wear time, valid wear time, and adherence to the wearable. For the purposes of this review, the device outcome was defined as the objective measures used in the study (eg, step count); planned wear time was defined as the time period that patients were supposed to use the device; and valid wear time was defined as...
the minimum wear time for data inclusion, extracted if available (eg, ≥10 hours/day). Adherence could either be the percentage of patients wearing the wearable for the period, the percentages of patients with evaluable sensor data, or the percentages of total evaluable days. Study outcomes were extracted and thematically grouped into wearable outcome, PRO, and clinical outcome. Wearable outcome was defined as circadian rhythm, physical activity (PA), skin temperature, and sleep. PRO topics were quality of life, PA, mental health, symptom registration, and others. Clinical outcomes included adverse events, performance status (PS), and hospitalization.

When reading through the full text of included studies, synonyms for “wearable” were registered and extracted from each study.

Outcomes and Analysis
The review was conducted to give a descriptive presentation of the use of wearables in clinical trials. The primary outcome was adherence to the wearable. The secondary outcomes were the study outcomes: the wearable outcome, the PRO, and the clinical outcome. The wearable outcome was subtracted from the device outcome by the authors, and thematically grouped as a wearable outcome. We also investigated whether the studies reported a relationship between the wearable outcome and the PRO. All data were presented descriptively.

Ethical Considerations
This review did not require national or institutional approval.

Results
The search strategies were performed in PubMed and EMBASE on October 3, 2019. A total of 1281 studies were identified through the searches. There were 12 duplicated records, which were excluded, leaving 1269 studies eligible for screening. Titles and abstracts were examined, which resulted in the exclusion of 1180 studies that did not meet our inclusion criteria. The remaining 89 studies were evaluated for eligibility. Through full-text access, 64 other irrelevant studies were excluded, leaving a total of 25 studies to be reviewed for the purpose of this review. This process of study screening and selection is illustrated in a PRISMA flow chart (Figure 1).

Study characteristics are presented in Table 1, which shows a wide heterogeneity with respect to primary cancer sites (range, 1-8 sites), treatment-type specifics (eg, whole-brain radiotherapy, to all treatments allowed), sample sizes (n=7-180), and age groups (22-94 years). In terms of cancer diagnosis, 13 of the 25 studies included patients with breast cancer, 7 having breast cancer exclusively. Gastrointestinal (GI) cancer was featured in 12 of the 25 studies, 4 of which studied patients with GI exclusively. Lung cancer was present among 10 of the 25 studies, 4 featuring this diagnosis exclusively. For 19 of the 25 studies, the patients were treated with curative intent. For most (17/25) of the included studies, treatment was chemotherapy. Of the 25 studies included, a total of 12 were pilot/feasibility studies, 10 were observational studies, and 3 were randomized controlled trials (Table 1).

In 5 of the 25 studies, the planned wear time was ≤7 days, 13 were between 8-30 days, 5 were between 31-90 days, and in 2 studies, the planned wear time was over 90 days (Table 2).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study (year)</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Primary cancer site</th>
<th>Treatment type</th>
<th>Sample size, n</th>
<th>Age group (range or mean [SD])</th>
<th>Study type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edbrooke et al (2019) [22]</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>63 (12.3)</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowe et al (2014) [26]</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Radiotherapy (whole brain)</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>63.5 (10.4)</td>
<td>Observational study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyrop et al (2018) [28]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>24-64</td>
<td>Observational study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohri et al (2019) [29]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Chemo-radiotherapy</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>38-90</td>
<td>Observational study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ortiz-Tudela et al (2014) [31]</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>35-90</td>
<td>Observational study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roche et al (2014) [33]</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>51-89</td>
<td>Pilot / feasibility study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roscoe et al (2002) [34]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Chemotherapy +/- radiotherapy</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>34-79</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solk et al (2019) [37]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>31-71</td>
<td>Observational study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van der Meij et al (2012) [38]</td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Chemo-radiotherapy</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>39-80</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wright et al (2018) [40]</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Gynaecological</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>60 (11)</td>
<td>Pilot / feasibility study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2. Description of wearables and adherence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planned wear time interval and study (year)</th>
<th>Hardware / software</th>
<th>Device outcome</th>
<th>Planned wear time / valid wear time</th>
<th>Adherence description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤7 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chevalier et al (2003) [19]</td>
<td>Actigraph, Ambulatory Monitoring Inc / Action 3.8</td>
<td>Rest activity cycle (movements/period)</td>
<td>3 days / 3 days</td>
<td>100% (10/10) of the patients wore the device for the full period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dean et al (2013) [20]</td>
<td>Motionlogger actigraph / Action 3</td>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%) &amp; Sleep (hours) &amp; Wake after sleep onset (minutes)</td>
<td>7 days / not reported</td>
<td>86% (30/35) of the patients wore the device for the full period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowe et al (2014) [26]</td>
<td>activPAL³ / not reported</td>
<td>Position time (hours/day) &amp; Energy expenditure (metabolic equivalent of task [MET] h/day) &amp; Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>7 days / not reported</td>
<td>77% (24/31) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data between 3 and 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roscoe et al (2002) [34]</td>
<td>Mini-Motionlogger Actigraph / Action 3</td>
<td>Circadian consistency (I&lt;O³b) &amp; Daytime activity level (minutes) &amp; Sleep (%)</td>
<td>72 hours at 2 timepoints / not reported</td>
<td>89% (91/102) provided evaluable sensor data at second cycle of chemotherapy &amp; 44% (45/102) provided evaluable sensor data at fourth cycle of chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vassbakk-Brovold et al 2016) [39]</td>
<td>SenseWear Armband Pro3 or SenseWear Armband Mini³ / SenseWear version 6.1 for Pro3 and version 7.0 for Mini</td>
<td>Physical activity (minutes/week) recorded in 1-minute epochs</td>
<td>5 days / ≥19.2 hrs, for ≥1 day</td>
<td>79% (66/84) of the patients wore the device for the full period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤8-30 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edbrooke et al (2019) [22]</td>
<td>SenseWear accelerometer³ / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day) &amp; Number of 10+ minutes step bouts/day &amp; Duration of 10+ minutes bouts (minutes) &amp; Cadence of 10+ minutes bouts (steps/min)</td>
<td>7 days at 3 timepoints / 8hrs/day, for ≥24 days</td>
<td>87% (80/92) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data at baseline &amp; 71% (65/92) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data at 9 weeks &amp; 60% (55/92) of the patients provided evaluable data at 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innominato et al (2016) [24]</td>
<td>Micro Motionlogger / Action 4</td>
<td>Circadian rest-activity (I&lt;O³b)</td>
<td>30 days / not reported</td>
<td>Evaluable sensor data were available in 75 % of the total days (653/874)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li et al (2019) [25]</td>
<td>GENEActiv Original / not reported</td>
<td>Sleep efficiency (%) &amp; Sleep duration (minutes) &amp; Nighttime total wake time (minutes)</td>
<td>7 days at 3 timepoints / ≥5 days per time-point</td>
<td>97% (175/180) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data at T2 &amp; 76% (136/180) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data at T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low et al (2017) [11]</td>
<td>Fitbit Charge HR / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day) &amp; Floors climbed (n) &amp; Sleep (minutes) &amp; Awakenings (n) &amp; Time in bed (minutes)</td>
<td>4 weeks / not reported</td>
<td>Evaluable sensor data were available in 75 % of the total days (295/392 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouri et al (2018) [27]</td>
<td>Kenz Lifecorder - GS³ / Lifelyzer - 05 coach</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day) &amp; Physical activity (minutes/day) (physical activity was rated ≥1.8 METs)</td>
<td>7 days at 3 timepoints / ≥5 hrs/day</td>
<td>93% (28/30) of the patients wore the device for the full period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohri et al (2019) [29]</td>
<td>Garmin Vivofit³ / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>Up to 3 weeks / not reported</td>
<td>Evaluable sensor data were available in 94 % of the total days (741/791)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planned wear time interval and study (year)</td>
<td>Hardware / software</td>
<td>Device outcome</td>
<td>Planned wear time / valid wear time</td>
<td>Adherence description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31-90 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broderick et al (2019) [17]</td>
<td>Microsoft Band 2 / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>60 days / ≥6 hrs/day</td>
<td>Evaluable sensor data were available 86 % of the days (only day 1-14 included)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champ et al (2018) [18]</td>
<td>Misfit Shine / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>10 weeks / not reported</td>
<td>90% (9/10) of the patients wore the device for the full period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gupta A et al (2018) [23]</td>
<td>Fitbit Flex / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>12 weeks / ≥1 steps/day recorded</td>
<td>96% (23/24) wore the device for &gt;50% of the period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyrop et al (2018) [28]</td>
<td>Fitbit Zip / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>6-12 weeks / ≥3 weeks</td>
<td>79% (100/127) of the patients provided evaluable sensor data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohri et al (2017) [30]</td>
<td>Garmin / not reported</td>
<td>Step count (steps/day)</td>
<td>Up to 80 days / 80% of the days</td>
<td>Evaluable sensor data were available 94 % of the days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;91 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adherence data, presenting how many patients were able to use or collect data from the wearable device, or how many evaluable days the wearable was worn, were collected. Adherence varied across studies, from 60%-100% and 45%-94%, respectively, but was differently measured and reported. Valid wear time was defined in 16 of the 25 studies. Different hardware and software were used. The most frequent placement of the wearable was the wrist.

In Table 3, study outcomes were grouped as wearable outcome, PRO, and clinical outcome, and their respective subtopics can be seen for each included study, showing that 1 study could have more than 1 topic assigned. Of the 25 studies included, 19 had the purpose of monitoring PA (wearable outcome) as an outcome. The second most frequent topic among wearable outcomes was circadian rhythm, monitored in 8 studies. With respect to PRO, 9 studies examined quality of life, 7 studied mental health, 7 studied physical activity, and 8 looked at symptoms. Clinical outcomes were few, 4 comprising performance status, 2 looking at adverse events, and 2 studying hospitalization (Table 3).
Table 3. Study outcomes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cancer type and study (year)</th>
<th>Wearable outcomes</th>
<th>Patient-reported outcomes</th>
<th>Clinical outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circ. rhythm</td>
<td>Phys. activity</td>
<td>Skin temp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roscoe et al (2002) [34]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champ et al (2017) [18]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li et al (2019) [25]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyrop et al (2018) [28]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dreher et al (2019) [21]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solk et al (2019) [37]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roche et al (2014) [33]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parker et al (2019) [32]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynecological</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wright et al (2018) [40]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van der Meij et al (2012) [38]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dean et al (2013) [20]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edbrooke et al (2019) [22]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohri et al (2019) [18]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarna et al (2001) [35]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ortiz-Tudela et al (2014) [31]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowe et al (2014) [26]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innominato et al (2016) [24]</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Of the 17 PRO studies, only 9 studies reported correlations between the wearable outcome and the PRO (Table 4). It was primarily physical activity, which was compared with the PROs (7/9).

Synonyms for “wearable” were also collected for each study (data not shown) while reading through the full text, which reflected both the terms used to address the technology in general and the terms describing the actual device used in the study. The most commonly used term was “accelerometer,” which was used in 12 studies; next was “actigraph,” which was mentioned in 8 studies. The term “tracker” was used in 6 studies as a part of several terms, including “activity tracker,” “wearable activity tracker,” and “fitness tracker.” The latter term was used similarly to “monitor,” which was mentioned in 9 studies.

Table 4. Studies that reported relationships between wearable outcomes and patient-reported outcomes (PRO; n=9).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wearable outcome</th>
<th>PRO</th>
<th>Circadian rhythm</th>
<th>Physical activity</th>
<th>Skin temperature</th>
<th>Sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mental health</td>
<td></td>
<td>[34]</td>
<td>[28], [22], [23]</td>
<td></td>
<td>[23]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical activity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality of life</td>
<td></td>
<td>[28], [22], [26], [39], [17]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms</td>
<td></td>
<td>[28], [11], [22], [26]</td>
<td></td>
<td>[11]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>[34] (fatigue)</td>
<td>[28] (fatigue), [23] (fatigue), [17] (fatigue, sleep)</td>
<td></td>
<td>[40] (sleep), [23] (fatigue)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4a: No relationship reported.

**Discussion**

**Summary of Findings**

The use of wearable sensor devices has become a popular self-awareness gadget for many people today, especially when it comes to measuring physical activity [41]. In this review, we demonstrate the heterogeneous use of wearables during cancer treatment reported in research studies. In a search of the literature, 1269 studies were identified, of which 25 were included in our review. These studies represented different cancer types, with most focusing on mixed cancer types or breast cancer solely. Treatment given in the studies was primarily chemotherapy. Study types were pilot/feasibility, observational, and randomized controlled studies with sample sizes varying from 7 to 180 patients. All studies included in the review used a wearable with an accelerometer, but monitoring duration varied (3-270 days); and even though most studies (19/25) had physical activity as the wearable outcome, the device outcome for physical activity varied. With respect to adherence to using the wearable, a considerable variation was seen. Of the 17 PRO studies, 9 studies made comparisons between wearable outcome and PRO. In general, we noticed a broad variation in study designs, definitions, and outcomes within this field. This was also reflected in the number of synonyms for “wearable” used as terms to address the technology in general and as terms to describe the actual device used in a study.
Our Focus

Other studies have reviewed the use and effects of eHealth tools, such as those for patient self-reporting of medication management and use, and have concluded that more high-quality research is needed before standard implementation of such tools can occur [42]. In oncology, there is a growing urge to include patients in the management of their own illness, making wearable devices a valuable tool in cancer therapy. However, technical and clinical feasibility are essential aspects to explore [15], as the device measurements depend on patients using them. In this review, we have additionally focused on a somewhat understudied issue—adherence. We report adherence in relation to wear time and report how many patients were able to use or collect data with the wearable device, or how many evaluable days the wearable was worn. Adherence appears to have a wide range, and no data are available on missing wear time, which leaves us questioning if patients only wear wearables when they feel fit or when it is convenient. Thus, before designing large intervention studies using wearables, one must consider defining minimum wear time or conditions with mandatory wear time, since changes in these parameters might influence results [13,14,43].

Strengths and Limitations

To our knowledge, this is the first review of the use of wearables in clinical trials during cancer treatment. This review was limited to studies that included adherence as an issue, but was not restricted to specific types of wearables. However, we and others believe that the choice of wearable outcome is highly important. Determination of which variables to measure is crucial to ensure the purpose of the wearable when incorporated into patients’ daily routines [1]. Outcomes must be of specific value regarding the individual patient’s course of disease. We agree with other researchers that it is unnecessary to monitor many different kinds of variables if the outcome is not going to have a significant impact on the patient’s treatment [41]. At present, most studies tend to choose PA as the wearable outcome, but this may be because knowledge from the field of fitness and fitness training has grown [44]. Other wearable outcomes might be more relevant in the cancer setting, but this remains to be studied. Further, the objective measure of PA across studies varies. Of 9 studies comparing the wearable outcome and PRO, only 2 were randomized controlled trials. Further investigations in this area is needed before conclusions can be drawn. We suggest that future research include measurements of relevant, well-defined outcomes and be based on guidelines within the field, where such exist [45,46].

Many different terms are being used to describe electronic devices for use in health care [47], which can make it difficult to get an overview of the field and to keep up with how far research has come. In general, the terms used to describe the technology differ, from being very specific (eg, “wearable activity tracker” or “physical activity monitor”) to being broad, and covering several types of devices (eg, “telehealth,” ”mobile health,” “wearable devices,” and “remote patient monitoring”) [7,48]. Consensus regarding the terms used could be helpful for both indexing studies and categorizing results by the specific types of devices used; such uniformity would improve research in the field and probably lead to more and improved knowledge.

The patient populations represented in this review mostly reflect breast and mixed cancer populations. Additionally, most studies are from the United States. It is questionable if results from such studies can be transferred to other diagnoses, countries, and cultural settings.

Implications for Future Research

As in this review, overall adherence to wear time or to wearable device interventions in general are difficult to compare. This is because almost every study has a different way of defining how many minutes or hours of wear time should count as a valid active day. By establishing standards for definitions of wear time, this could allow results across different patient populations to be compared more easily. This could also be solved by using a parameter other than step count as a measure of physical activity [41].

This review provides an overview of the frequently used wearables in oncology during therapy. Many of the wearables used have similar competencies, which might suggest the need to expand research into using more advanced wearables like smartwatches; according to Lu et al [2], very few clinical trials using smartwatches could be identified in 2016. Besides providing extended opportunities to measure variables, smartwatches also benefit from having a user-friendly display, which can make it feasible for patients to track their own activity status. Only 2 of the 25 reviewed studies used real-time feedback [24,40], and this feature might play an important role in motivating patients and possibly detecting worsening or severe symptoms earlier [11]. Technology allows plenty of different wearables to be applied in the oncology setting. However, it remains unknown if wearables can improve essential outcomes like overall survival or lead to other improvements in cancer treatment. Only future, well-designed research studies based on guidelines for this field with clinically relevant outcomes can help us decide when and where to apply these important tools.

This review provides an inventory for the status of wearables in clinical trials and can be used in addition to the CTTI studies database when designing new clinical trials with wearables [15].

Conclusion

This review provides an overview of the use of wearable devices in oncology care for patients with solid tumors receiving antineoplastic treatment. We extracted data from studies monitoring patients with cancer and presented these results specifically regarding adherence, the device outcomes, and the types of wearables used.

We found that definitions of outcome measures and adherence varied across studies, and limited consensus among studies existed on which variables to monitor during treatment. Less heterogeneity and better consensus in terms of use and establishing standards for definitions of wearable outcomes and adherence would improve the comparisons of outcomes among studies using wearables. Adherence and consistent definitions are crucial for drawing conclusions from data from wearable studies in oncology. Additionally, research using advanced
wearable devices and active use of the data are encouraged to further explore the potential of wearables in oncology during treatment. Especially, randomized clinical studies are warranted to create consensus on when and how to implement in oncological practice.

Acknowledgments

CHM is supported by the Faculty of Health and Medical Sciences, University of Copenhagen, Denmark.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Search strategy.

[PDF File (Adobe PDF File), 62 KB - mhealth_v8i11e22006_app1.pdf ]

References


Abbreviations

CTTI: Clinical Transformation Initiative
GI: gastrointestinal
GYN: gynecological
PA: physical activity
PRO: patient-reported outcome
RCT: randomized controlled trial

Edited by G Eysenbach; submitted 02.07.20; peer-reviewed by W Wood; comments to author 10.07.20; revised version received 04.09.20; accepted 07.09.20; published 11.11.20.

Please cite as:
Beauchamp UL, Pappot H, Holländ-Mieritz C
The Use of Wearables in Clinical Trials During Cancer Treatment: Systematic Review
JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22006
URL: http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22006/
doi:10.2196/22006
PMID:33174852
Correction: Excessive Smartphone Use and Self-Esteem Among Adults With Internet Gaming Disorder: Quantitative Survey Study

Hyunmin Kim1,2, PhD; In Young Choi1, PhD; Dai-Jin Kim3, MD, PhD

1Department of Medical Informatics, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul St. Mary's Hospital, Seoul, Republic of Korea
2Division of Health Systems Management and Policy, School of Public Health, The University of Memphis, Memphis, TN, United States
3Department of Psychiatry, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul St. Mary’s Hospital, Seoul, Republic of Korea

Corresponding Author:
In Young Choi, PhD
Department of Medical Informatics
College of Medicine
The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul St. Mary's Hospital
222 Banpo-daero, Seocho-gu
Seoul
Republic of Korea
Phone: 82 2258 7870
Email: iychoi@catholic.ac.kr

Related Article:
Correction of: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/9/e18505/
doi:10.2196/24869

In “Excessive Smartphone Use and Self-Esteem Among Adults With Internet Gaming Disorder: Quantitative Survey Study” (JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(9):e18505), the authors noted one error in the Acknowledgments section.

In the originally published manuscript, the final sentence of the Acknowledgments section read “This work was supported by the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) (grant no. 2014M3C7A1062893).” The has been changed to: “This work was supported by the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) (grant nos. 2014M3C7A1062893 and NRF-2019R1A5A2027588).”

The correction will appear in the online version of the paper on the JMIR Publications website on November 3, 2020, together with the publication of this correction notice. Because this was made after submission to PubMed, PubMed Central, and other full-text repositories, the corrected article has also been resubmitted to those repositories.

©Hyunmin Kim, In Young Choi, Dai-Jin Kim. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 03.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e24869/
Abstract

Background: The novel coronavirus SARS-CoV-2 rapidly spread around the world, causing the disease COVID-19. To contain the virus, much hope is placed on participatory surveillance using mobile apps, such as automated digital contact tracing, but broad adoption is an important prerequisite for associated interventions to be effective. Data protection aspects are a critical factor for adoption, and privacy risks of solutions developed often need to be balanced against their functionalities. This is reflected by an intensive discussion in the public and the scientific community about privacy-preserving approaches.

Objective: Our aim is to inform the current discussions and to support the development of solutions providing an optimal balance between privacy protection and pandemic control. To this end, we present a systematic analysis of existing literature on citizen-centered surveillance solutions collecting individual-level spatial data. Our main hypothesis is that there are dependencies between the following dimensions: the use cases supported, the technology used to collect spatial data, the specific diseases focused on, and data protection measures implemented.

Methods: We searched PubMed and IEEE Xplore with a search string combining terms from the area of infectious disease management with terms describing spatial surveillance technologies to identify studies published between 2010 and 2020. After a two-step eligibility assessment process, 27 articles were selected for the final analysis. We collected data on the four dimensions described as well as metadata, which we then analyzed by calculating univariate and bivariate frequency distributions.

Results: We identified four different use cases, which focused on individual surveillance and public health (most common: digital contact tracing). We found that the solutions described were highly specialized, with 89% (24/27) of the articles covering one use case only. Moreover, we identified eight different technologies used for collecting spatial data (most common: GPS receivers) and five different diseases covered (most common: COVID-19). Finally, we also identified six different data protection measures (most common: pseudonymization). As hypothesized, we identified relationships between the dimensions. We found that for highly infectious diseases such as COVID-19 the most common use case was contact tracing, typically based on Bluetooth technology. For managing vector-borne diseases, use cases require absolute positions, which are typically measured using GPS. Absolute spatial locations are also important for further use cases relevant to the management of other infectious diseases.

Conclusions: We see a large potential for future solutions supporting multiple use cases by combining different technologies (eg, Bluetooth and GPS). For this to be successful, however, adequate privacy-protection measures must be implemented. Technologies currently used in this context can probably not offer enough protection. We, therefore, recommend that future solutions should consider the use of modern privacy-enhancing techniques (eg, from the area of secure multiparty computing and differential privacy).

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e22594) doi:10.2196/22594
KEYWORDS
pandemic; epidemic; infectious disease management; mobile apps; automated digital contact tracing; mobility tracking; outbreak detection; location-based risk assessment; public health; informatics; app; infectious disease; COVID-19; review

Introduction

Background
In December 2019, a novel coronavirus (SARS-CoV-2) appeared and rapidly spread around the world. COVID-19, the disease associated with the virus, can cause severe respiratory illness, is highly transmissible among humans [1], and is often difficult to detect due to asymptomatic courses [2]. The outbreak was declared a Public Health Emergency of International Concern and has implications for global health and economic development alike.

To contain the pandemic, nonpharmaceutical interventions have been implemented on a broad scale as a rapid response. They aim at slowing down or interrupting the infection process by breaking the chain of infections [3]. Examples include individual measures such as social distancing, the wearing of masks, and self-isolation [4] as well as public measures including travel restrictions [5], closure of public institutions and businesses [6], quarantines, and curfews [7]. Many of these measures, however, come with drastic socioeconomic consequences [8]. For example, it has been estimated that the reduction in economic activity resulting from the lockdown will have an impact on the Euro area that is three to four times larger than the impact of the global financial crisis of 2007 and 2008 [9]. Further, it is expected that the pandemic and subsequent lockdowns will lead to mental health problems [10] and excess mortality indirectly related to COVID-19 [11]. Hence, there is considerable pressure to move toward policies that will allow a return of economic and social life to the former state while effectively containing the spread of SARS-CoV-2. This can probably best be achieved by replacing large-scale interventions with local or even individual interventions based on testing, tracing, and targeted quarantine [12,13]. This, however, requires effective means of disease surveillance.

For example, contact tracing is traditionally the manual process of identifying past contacts of a person with an infectious disease [14]. However, manual contact tracing is time and labor intensive, which is a challenge considering the scale of the COVID-19 pandemic. Thus, many believe that citizen-centered participatory digital tools are required [15]. Most notably, automated digital contact tracing via mobile apps (henceforth simply called contact tracing) is discussed in public media and scientific literature alike [16-20], and according infrastructures have been implemented in several countries. At the time of writing, the COVID Tracing Tracker Project lists more than 40 different apps [21].

An important aspect of automated contact tracing is its reliance on citizen-centered mobile apps collecting individual-level spatial data. The broad adoption of such apps is considered a major prerequisite for associated interventions to be effective [22], and it has been argued that data security and privacy aspects are a critical factor for adoption [22,23]. This is reflected by an intense discussion in the public and the scientific community about privacy-preserving solutions to the contact tracing problem [24,25] and the multitude of established solutions and projects [26-30]. However, often there is a trade-off between privacy risks associated with and the functionalities provided by solutions developed. The German contact tracing app, for example, focuses solely on contacts and builds upon an infrastructure with few central services [31]. As a result, it only supports contact tracing and does not offer any additional functionalities for disease surveillance.

There are, however, several additional use cases that can be implemented with location-based mobile health apps that could help with managing the current and future pandemics. A few unsystematic overviews of technologies currently implemented to manage the COVID-19 pandemic have been published [23,32,33]. For example, Boules and Geraghty [16] have listed several projects: HealthMap, a system that aggregates and maps informal information sources such as online social networks to create risk maps; WorldPop and EpiRis, which use location-based services and other sources of data to model human mobility to predict the spread of COVID-19; and the close contact detector, a solution that uses data on the movement of people to identify individuals with close contact to people who are infected. Other authors suggested the use of digital thermometers, smart watches, or other mobile health devices to remotely monitor vital signs and potential symptoms of at-risk individuals [32,33]. In addition, there are reviews focusing on solutions for health care professionals [34,35]. What is lacking, however, is a structured analysis of important aspects relevant to the technical properties and functionalities of current and future citizen-centered solutions.

Objectives
The objectives of this work are to inform the current discussions and to support the development of participatory disease surveillance technologies, providing an optimal balance between privacy protection and pandemic control. In our opinion, these objectives are best met by a systematic analysis of existing literature. Our main hypothesis is that there are dependencies between the specific diseases focused on, use cases supported, technology used, and data protection measures implemented. Furthermore, we hypothesize that these dependencies influence the possible design space of solutions. In particular, we focus on the following dimensions:

- **Use case dimension**: Many of the current discussions are focused on technical aspects and their consequences in terms of privacy risks. When considering use cases, the discussion seems to be focused only on contact tracing. Hence, we aim to obtain a broader view of the existing solutions’ functionalities to facilitate the evaluation of novel concepts and to guide the development of future solutions.

- **Technology dimension**: Many recent developments are based on Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), which is a relatively new technology, and GPS receivers. However, the choice of technology can also impact the functionalities that can
be implemented. To potentially broaden the design space for future tools, our objective is to get a broad overview of the technologies that have been used in prior projects and to analyze potential relationships to the use cases that have been implemented.

- **Disease dimension:** There are specific properties of SARS-CoV-2 that have contributed to the characteristic nature of the current pandemic. To determine whether existing solutions can serve as a blueprint for future work, we aim to investigate use cases and technologies in relationship to disease properties such as the path of transmission, infectiousness, and disease-associated symptoms.

- **Data protection dimension:** Finally, privacy protection is seen as an essential factor in current discussions on apps related to COVID-19. To derive a complete picture of data protection measures that can be implemented in this context, we aim to compile an overview of measures implemented in prior projects.

**Methods**

We performed a scoping review, as this type of review is best suited to map research activities in a broad and heterogeneous field [36]. Where applicable, we followed the guidelines of the PRISMA-ScR (Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses extension for scoping reviews) [37]. No review protocol was registered for this study. From the objectives, we derived the following inclusion criteria for articles:

- **Infectious disease management:** Solutions described must be focused on managing epidemics or pandemics of a pathogen, which is communicable directly from human-to-human, such as COVID-19, or transmitted by a vector, such as Dengue.

- **Mobile health apps:** Solutions proposed must be centered around a mobile device or app, which is used for data collection. Articles may describe a concept or an actual implementation. For instance, articles describing methods for modeling population-level disease spread but not covering methods of data collection were not included.

- **Based on individual-level spatial data:** Solutions described must be enabled by collecting individual-level spatial data (individual persons or small groups such as families), either absolute (eg, location determined via GPS) or relative (eg, contacts determined using Bluetooth), either dynamically (eg, regular updates to track movements) or statically (eg, manual entry of living address).

- **Citizen-centered solution:** Data must be collected either automatically or manually by regular citizens using their own devices. In contrast, solutions focused on data collection by professionals within a health care or surveillance context (such as apps for professional contact tracers) were excluded.

An article needed to fulfill all these criteria to be included. Furthermore, all papers were required to be written in English, published between the years 2010 and 2020 (final search performed on June 19, 2020), and scientific peer-reviewed papers containing original work.

We searched both PubMed and IEEE Xplore, as the topic of this review is placed at the intersection of medicine and technology. First, we specified a set of keywords describing the general context. At least one of these keywords needed to be contained in the title of articles checked for eligibility: *epidemic, pandemic, contact tracing, proximity tracing, surveillance, or infectious*. Second, we specified a set of keywords covering the complete spectrum of relevant technology. At least one of these keywords needed to be contained in either the title or the abstract of the articles: *mobile, wearables, smartphone, app, cellular network, NFC (near-field communication), barcode, QR (Quick Response) code, GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, RFID (radio-frequency identification), or magnetometer*. Search results were exported as comma-separated values files, harmonized, and imported into a consolidated spreadsheet. In total, we found 1133 articles, of which 646 were identified via PubMed and 487 via IEEE Xplore.

Figure 1 shows an overview of the selection process. The articles were selected in two steps. In each step, articles were randomly assigned to two authors for assessment, and cases of disagreement were discussed among all authors for consent. In a first screening step, the title and abstract were evaluated regarding the eligibility criteria. Articles were kept if the title or abstract did not provide for a decision on exclusion or inclusion. In total, 99 articles were included after this screening step. Next, the full texts of the selected articles were compared against the eligibility criteria. After this analysis, 27 articles were regarded as finally relevant and were included into the data extraction and analysis process. In this process, we extracted the year and free text for the remaining variables and mutually created categories from the text extracted. The data is available in Multimedia Appendix 1.

Table 1 illustrates the data items collected from the final selection of articles to answer the research questions previously outlined.
The data collected corresponds with the dimensions investigated. First, we collected the year of publication to analyze developments over time. Second, in accordance with the first dimension, data was collected on the use case or cases supported by the apps. Third, in accordance with the second dimension, the sensor technology used to obtain spatial data was recorded. Fourth, in accordance with the third dimension, we collected data on the diseases that the solutions aimed to manage. Finally, in accordance with the fourth dimension, we recorded the data protection mechanisms used.

During data collection, the spreadsheet document was extended to work as a chartering form containing all data items. In accordance with our research questions, data was then analyzed by calculating frequency distributions of variables’ values and by analyzing the relationships between variables using heat maps, visualizing the combined frequencies of their values.

Results

Overview

Table 2 shows the final selection of articles together with the collected data.
### Table 2. Selected articles and data collected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Use case</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Sensor technology</th>
<th>Data protection measures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbas and Michael [38]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>Data minimization, pseudonymization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ackley et al [39]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>ILI a</td>
<td>GPS, IP b address geolocation</td>
<td>Geospatial aggregation, pseudonymization, temporal aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrat et al [40]</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrahi et al [42]</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Bluetooth, phone logs</td>
<td>Consent, temporal aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferretti et al [43]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>Code scanning, GPS</td>
<td>Consent, transparency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeong et al [44]</td>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Magnetometer</td>
<td>Geospatial aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al [45]</td>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>ILI</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al [46]</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Location-based risk assessment</td>
<td>Zika</td>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leal Neto et al [47]</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>GPS, manual entry</td>
<td>Data minimization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leal Neto et al [48]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
<td>Consent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lwin et al [49]</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Dengue</td>
<td>GPS, manual entry</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael and Abbas [50]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>Pseudonymization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller et al [51]</td>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Location-based risk assessment</td>
<td>ILI</td>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navin et al [52]</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Location-based risk assessment</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nguyen et al [53]</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Magnetometer</td>
<td>Geospatial aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olson et al [54]</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Gastroenteritis</td>
<td>Manual entry</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okumura [55]</td>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>GPS, GSM c</td>
<td>Data minimization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prieto et al [56]</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>ILI</td>
<td>Manual entry</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodriguez-Valero et al [57]</td>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Zika</td>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>Pseudonymization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugiuara et al [58]</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Manual entry</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tripathy et al [59]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vazquez-Prokopec et al [60]</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Mobility tracking</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wang et al [61]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhang et al [62]</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aILI: influenza-like illness.  
bIP: Internet Protocol.  
cGSM: Global System for Mobile Communications.

As can be seen, more than half of the articles have been published in the last 3 years, indicating a current interest in the topic. In the following sections, we will present further analyses to investigate the questions outlined in the “Objectives” section.

### Use Case Dimension

The first objective of this study was to take a broader look at functionalities of mobile health apps using spatial data for infectious disease management.

Within the selected set of articles, we identified four use cases, which we assigned to two distinct categories. The first category is user-centered services (ie, solutions focusing on individual health). The first such use case is automated contact tracing, where data on contacts between individuals and on infections is used to determine exposure risk and to notify individuals if necessary. The second such use case is location-based risk assessment, where the locations of individuals are used to warn them when entering areas with high disease activity. The latter
type of solutions might also be used to estimate individual exposure risk.

The second category is disease surveillance (ie, solutions focusing on population health), which involves collecting and analyzing data to monitor the occurrence of diseases within the population with the aim to support public health interventions. The first use cases in this category were outbreak detection, which can include syndromic surveillance (eg, based on symptoms reported or data about confirmed cases to determine areas with disease activity). The second such use case is mobility tracking, where patterns about the movement of larger groups of individuals are determined to support various analyses, such as the modeling of disease dynamics.

We emphasize that, although these use cases can be implemented independently of one another, there are obvious relationships. For example, data collected via an outbreak detection app could also be used to provide location-based risk assessment services. Moreover, both individual-level as well as population-level use cases ultimately aim to protect the entire population and its individuals. Table 3 illustrates how often the use cases have been described.

Table 3. Overview of use cases covered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use case</th>
<th>Articles, n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contact tracing</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbreak detection</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location-based risk assessment</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobility tracking</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Within the 27 papers, automated contact tracing has been addressed 13 (48.1%) times. Outbreak detection was covered by 12 (44.4%) of the papers. Location-based risk assessment was described in 3 (11.1%) papers, and mobility tracking in 2 (7.4%) papers.

As mentioned before, different use cases can also be combined with each other. However, the articles identified are quite specialized: 24 (89%) focused on a single use case. The remaining 3 (11%) all combined location-based risk assessment with an additional use case.

Current discussions on participatory mobile health solutions in the context of COVID-19 largely focus on automated contact tracing only. To gain insights into potential directions for future developments, we also analyzed which use cases have been described for which disease (see “Disease Dimension” section for more details). Figure 2 shows the common distribution of use cases described and diseases focused on.

Figure 2. Relationships between diseases and use cases described. ILI: Influenza-like illness.
As can be seen, in accordance with current discussions, papers that address COVID-19 focused nearly exclusively on automated contact tracing. For other diseases, however, several further use cases have been described. Moreover, a wide range of generic concepts has been proposed independently of a concrete disease. These focused mainly on automated contact tracing and outbreak detection. We also analyzed in which year solutions for certain use cases have been described in the articles analyzed. An interesting finding is that 69% (9/13) of the papers focusing on automated contact tracing were published in the years 2019 and 2020, while 71% (10/14) of all papers focusing on other use cases were published in 2018 or earlier.

**Technology Dimension**

In this dimension, we aimed to obtain an overview of technologies that have been proposed to implement the solutions identified. Moreover, we wanted to gather insights into the degree to which technical implementation options and supported functionalities are related to one another.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensor technology</th>
<th>Articles, n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual entry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code scanning</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetometer</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone logs</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP-address geolocation</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSM</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* IP: Internet Protocol.

*b* GSM: Global System for Mobile Communications.

Out of 27 articles, GPS, as the most frequent technology, has been described 10 (30.3%) times, followed by Bluetooth, which was mentioned 7 (21.1%) times, and manual entry, which was described in 6 (18.2%) papers. Magnetometers and code scanning were each mentioned in 2 (6.1%) papers. GSM, IP-based geolocation, and phone logs were each suggested in 1 (3.0%) paper. It is noteworthy that 3 articles did not explicitly specify the technology suggested for collecting spatial data (see [45,48,52]). Moreover, it can be noted, that none of the papers described solutions using wireless local area network access points. We also analyzed the ability of the solutions described to track an absolute position (longitude and latitude) or a relative position (proximity to other devices): 60% (n=18) are able to measure absolute positions, while 40% (n=12) can only determine relative positions.

When looking at the time at which papers have been published that use the two most common technologies, GPS and Bluetooth, spikes in the frequency of mentions of Bluetooth can be seen in the years 2013-2014 (the time when the technology first became available on a large scale on commodity devices) and 2020 (the time of the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic). Articles about solutions using GPS have been published continuously over time.

To study how technology might influence the use cases implemented, we analyzed the relationships between both aspects. The result is shown in Figure 3.

In total, we identified eight distinct technologies that have been proposed for collecting spatial data: (1) GPS receivers collect absolute coordinates using a satellite system, (2) Bluetooth can be used to estimate the physical proximity between two devices and hence collect relative spatial data (ie, contacts between people), (3) manual entry refers to the manual recording of spatial information such as a living address, (4) magnetometers can be used to measure the small magnetic interferences produced in proximity to a second magnetometer, (5) code scanning refers to the scanning of a code such as a QR code to record a contact or a certain location, (6) Global System for Mobile Communications (GSM) can be used to estimate the absolute geospatial position, (7) Internet Protocol (IP)-based geolocation refers to the estimation of the absolute location by checking the range a user’s IP address is assigned to, and (8) phone logs refer to the relative position between people by analyzing phone calling lists and text messages. The frequency with which individual technologies were used is displayed in Table 4.
Figure 3. Relationship between use cases and technology used to capture spatial data (three solutions with unspecified technology excluded). GSM: Global System for Mobile Communications; IP: Internet Protocol.

It can be seen that Bluetooth is a common technology that has only been used to implement contact tracing (7 papers). Manual data entry is also common but has only been used for outbreak detection (6 papers). GPS, however, is a frequent and versatile technology that has been proposed or implemented for all four use cases identified (12 papers in total). The two remaining technologies that have been suggested more than once are code scanning and magnetometers. Both have only been used to support contact tracing solutions.

Disease Dimension

An important objective of our analysis was to study potential relationships between disease properties and use cases as well as technologies used. We identified five specific diseases addressed: (1) COVID-19 and (2) influenza-like illness (ILI) are mainly transmitted by droplet infection and cause symptoms like coughing and fever; (3) Dengue and (4) Zika are transmitted mainly by mosquitos and cause symptoms like rash, vomiting, and fever; and (5) gastroenteritis is mainly transmitted by smear infection and causes symptoms like diarrhea, vomiting, and fever. As a first step, we analyzed the frequency with which certain diseases have been addressed by publications. The results are shown in Table 5.

Table 5. Overview of diseases targeted by the solutions analyzed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Articles, n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generic</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COVID-19</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILI(^a)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zika</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dengue</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastroenteritis</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\)ILI: influenza-like illness.

Out of 27 articles, 11 (40.7%) of the papers described generic solutions not designed for a specific disease. Of the remaining papers, 8 (29.6%) mentioned COVID-19, 4 (14.8%) mentioned ILI, 2 (7.4%) mentioned Zika, 1 (3.7%) mentioned Dengue, and 1 (3.7%) mentioned gastroenteritis.

We then analyzed whether there was a specific relationship between disease properties and the use cases suggested. For this purpose, we again refer to Figure 3. It can be seen that, obviously, automated contact tracing has only been suggested for highly infectious human-to-human transmissible diseases.
For other diseases that are transmitted by vectors, outbreak detection, mobility tracking, and location-based risk assessment are more common. To study whether a similar relationship can also be found regarding the sensor technology, we compiled the data presented in Figure 4.

**Figure 4.** Relationship between diseases and sensor technology (three solutions with unspecified technology excluded). ILI: Influenza-like illness; GSM: Global System for Mobile Communications; IP: Internet Protocol.

Figure 4 shows that Bluetooth, which is a solution for exclusively tracking relative spatial data (ie, contacts), has only been suggested for generic disease tracking or for managing COVID-19. In contrast, technologies for tracking absolute positions (primarily GPS) have more frequently been proposed for other diseases. It is also worth mentioning that 2 papers suggested the use of code scanning for COVID-19, which is a versatile technology that can be used to track both absolute and relative spatial data.

### Data Protection Dimension

Data protection is a central aspect in many discussions on automated contact tracing and related use cases. To gain insights into measures that have been proposed, we first analyzed the protection measures mentioned in the selected articles.

We identified six different data protection measures: (1) pseudonymization, which refers to the replacement of identifying information with random meaningless identifiers; (2) geospatial and (3) temporal aggregation, which refers to techniques for reducing the uniqueness of data; (4) data minimization, which is a privacy-by-design measure implying that as little information as necessary is stored and processed; (5) consent, which means that users are explicitly asked to permit data processing, typically within a study setting; and (6) transparency, which refers to the general principle of communicating which data is stored and how it is processed.

Table 2 shows that 52% (n=14) of the papers did list privacy protection measures, while 48% (n=13) of papers did not mention data protection aspects. When taking a look at the time in which the individual papers were published, it can be seen that there is a trend toward more consideration of data protection aspects in recent years. In total, data protection measures were only mentioned in one of the papers published before 2017.

We then analyzed how often the individual measures were suggested or implemented. The results are shown in Table 6.
Table 6. Data protection measures mentioned in the articles selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data protection measure</th>
<th>Articles, n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pseudonymization</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data minimization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geospatial aggregation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal aggregation</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transparency</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 shows that pseudonymization, out of 27 articles, has been addressed 7 (33.3%) times, followed by consent and data minimization, which were each mentioned 4 (19.0%) times. Moreover, geospatial aggregation was described 3 (14.2%) times, temporal aggregation 2 (9.5%) times, and transparency 1 (4.7%) time. These measures can be categorized into organizational and technical measures. The organizational measures transparency and consent have been mentioned 5 (23.8%) times, and the remaining technical measures have been mentioned 16 (76.2%) times.

Regarding the relationships between use cases and data protection measures, it must be noted that all 4 use cases identified were potentially privacy-invading. However, data protection measures have not been mentioned in any of the papers covering location-based risk assessment or mobility tracking.

Finally, we also studied the relationship between technologies and protection measures proposed. The results are shown in Figure 5.

Figure 5. Sensor technologies utilized and protection methods mentioned (three solutions with unspecified technology excluded) GSM: Global System for Mobile Communications; IP: Internet Protocol.

It can be seen that many different protection measures have been mentioned in papers focusing on the popular GPS sensor technology. Several measures have also been suggested for protecting Bluetooth-based solutions including pseudonymization, which is particularly important in this context and implemented by exchanging random, pseudonymous identifiers. Most other mentions of protection measures are used in papers focusing on various types of sensors for absolute spatial data other than GPS.

Discussion

Use Case Dimension

To broaden the discussion on technical solutions to combat COVID-19 and to propose extension to their functionalities, we first focused on identifying specific use cases. Although most recent publications focus on automated contact tracing, we have identified three additional use cases. Use cases can be grouped
into two categories: user-centered services and disease surveillance. All these functionalities have already been discussed and used in the context of COVID-19 [15,16] but in an isolated manner. Future work could, therefore, focus on developing concepts and solutions that support different use cases in a combined manner. Our data also indicates, however, that this might be challenging: 89% (24/27) of all papers analyzed focus exclusively on one use case. Among the notable exceptions is a solution combining outbreak detection with contact tracing for COVID-19 [63].

There might be additional aspects to consider. First, different use cases might be particularly important for different infectious diseases, and the pandemic scale of COVID-19 might be an important factor. We investigated this further in the disease dimension. Second, there might also be technical challenges associated with supporting different use cases and protecting privacy in this process. We investigated this in the technology and data protection dimensions.

Technology Dimension

We found eight different technologies in the selected literature from which GPS and Bluetooth were most frequently suggested. This is consistent with current discussions on contact tracing apps, which seem to be dominated by BLE. Most technologies were only proposed within the context of a specific use case due to their differences in supporting the measurement of spatial data. For example, Bluetooth has only been proposed for contact tracing, as this technology is only suited for detecting the proximity between individual devices. Moreover, manual data entry has only been suggested for outbreak detection, as it is only suited for tracking static locations such as living addresses. Our results also show that GPS is a highly versatile technology, which has been proposed as a basis for all use cases considered in at least 1 paper. This makes sense, as GPS can be used to collect dynamically absolute locations, which can also be used to determine (to some degree) relative and static spatial data. However, a major challenge arising from this is privacy, which we cover in the data protection dimension.

Our results also suggest that it might be worthwhile to combine different technologies to implement multiple use cases. For example, Bluetooth could be used to implement automated contact tracing, combined with GPS receivers to support location-based risk assessment and mobility tracking. Moreover, this could be combined with manual entry of symptoms or integrated with wearables to collect further data on disease spread. An important prerequisite might be, however, that adequate privacy-enhancing technologies are implemented.

Disease Dimension

Our results showed that COVID-19 is already the most frequently covered disease in papers on automated contact tracing or related use cases for managing infectious diseases. Obviously, this is due to the scale and global consequences of the COVID-19 pandemic. Moreover, our data shows that most solutions for managing COVID-19 have suggested Bluetooth as the main technology for collecting spatial data. Apart from privacy considerations, this is also well justified by disease properties: COVID-19 is highly infectious, droplet infection is an important route, and there can be a long period of infectiousness before symptom onset. Thus, a technology is needed that can detect close proximity between people at scale with relatively high accuracy [64]. With diseases like Zika and Dengue that are vector-borne, technologies are needed that can capture absolute spatial data (e.g., to identify clusters of infections). Code scanning is a technology that can measure absolute and relative spatial data and may, therefore, also be suited for managing diseases like COVID-19. However, code scanning is cumbersome to use, as it is nonautomated and may, therefore, not be well received by the public. It was noticeable that we did not find any articles on several common infectious diseases such as malaria or HIV. The reason is, as we demonstrated, that disease properties do have an influence on the adequacy of solutions to manage them, and solutions focused on these diseases fall out of the scope of this study. One example are apps to estimate the size of local mosquito populations, which are important for managing malaria but typically use special equipment such as mosquito traps [65].

Data Protection Dimension

Our results show that various types of organizational and technical safeguards have been suggested for protecting privacy when implementing citizen-centered disease surveillance apps. Moreover, more emphasis has been put on this aspect in recent years. Due to the scale of the current pandemic, the topic has become even more important.

There are two use cases that we identified (i.e., location-based risk assessment and mobility tracking) for which no protection measures have been proposed in the literature investigated. This is surprising, as both can be considered potentially privacy-invasive. Future work will be needed to integrate such use cases into current participatory surveillance apps in a privacy-conscious manner.

Regarding relationships between privacy protection measures and technologies used, we found that more measures have been suggested for technologies that are widely employed and whose sensors provide absolute positions. Our data shows that pseudonymization is an important measure for Bluetooth-based solutions and, thus, especially for the contact tracing use case.

Finally, we would like to add that several techniques have only been mentioned in papers describing concepts and might have been suggested with a rather naïve view on the topic. Most importantly, it is well-known that geospatial as well as temporal aggregation are challenging to implement in a manner offering a high degree of protection [66]. Moreover, even if such an implementation can be developed, it might have significant impacts on the precision of location data [67]. At the same time, solutions focusing on relative spatial data combined with pseudonymization and implemented without continuous data exchange with central services such as the German Corona-Warn-App [31] are considered the current “gold standard” in privacy-preserving automated contact tracing. Future solutions combining relative with absolute spatial data to support further use cases might be built using alternative approaches such as secure multiparty computing protocols [68] and differential privacy [69]. Finally, it is worth mentioning that data protection is not only a technical but also a social
challenge, as it is highly connected with public reception and trust.

Conclusion

In this paper, we have analyzed the literature and discovered several relationships between disease properties, use cases, and technologies. To our knowledge, many of these general dependencies have not been described previously. We, therefore, believe that our results can help with enhancing current solutions for contact tracing and related use cases, and with developing novel, more comprehensive concepts. In addition, the described dependencies could support bottom-up development processes leading to solutions that are more likely to stand the test in real-world implementations. Moreover, we have studied data protection measures that have been suggested and discussed their suitability for different technical environments and use cases. We believe that it will be necessary to employ innovative privacy-enhancing technologies to build comprehensive solutions offering additional functionalities such as population surveillance or individual alerting while maintaining the privacy of citizens.

In the future, when more data on the implementation of solutions in the context of the COVID-19 pandemic will become available, we plan to investigate relationships between their properties along the axes considered in this study and outcomes achieved within specific patient populations.

Authors’ Contributions

FP und FW initiated and conceptualized the work. All authors collected and analyzed the data. FP and FW drafted the manuscript. MJ and TM revised the manuscript. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

Multimedia Appendix 1

Selection process and collected data.

[XML File, 194 KB - mhealth_v8i11e22594_app1.xlsx ]

References


Abbreviations

BLE: Bluetooth Low Energy
GSM: Global System for Mobile Communications
ILI: influenza-like illness
IP: Internet Protocol
NFC: near-field communication
PRISMA-ScR: Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses extension for scoping reviews
QR: Quick Response
RFID: radio-frequency identification

©Felix Nikolaus Wirth, Marco Johns, Thierry Meurers, Fabian Prasser. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 10.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic

http://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/11/e22594/
information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.
COVID-19 Contact Tracing Apps: A Technologic Tower of Babel and the Gap for International Pandemic Control

Li Du¹, MBBS, LLB, PhD; Vera Lúcia Raposo¹,², BA, LLB, LLM, PhD; Meng Wang¹, LLB, LLM

¹Faculty of Law, University of Macau, Macau, SAR, China
²Faculty of Law, University of Coimbra, Coimbra, Portugal

Corresponding Author:
Li Du, MBBS, LLB, PhD
Faculty of Law
University of Macau
Avenida da Universidade, Taipa
Macau, SAR, 999078
China
Phone: 853 88224733
Email: stephendu@um.edu.mo

Related Articles:
Comment in: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2021/5/e26218
Comment in: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2021/5/e26630
This is a corrected version. See correction statement: https://mhealth.jmir.org/2020/12/e26239

Abstract

As the world struggles with the new COVID-19 pandemic, contact tracing apps of various types have been adopted in many jurisdictions for combating the spread of the SARS-CoV-2 virus. However, even if they are successful in containing the virus within national borders, these apps are becoming ineffective as international travel is gradually resumed. The problem rests in the plurality of apps and their inability to operate in a synchronized manner, as well as the absence of an international entity with the power to coordinate and analyze the information collected by the disparate apps. The risk of creating a useless Tower of Babel of COVID-19 contact tracing apps is very real, endangering global health. This paper analyzes legal barriers for realizing the interoperability of contact tracing apps and emphasizes the need for developing coordinated solutions to promote safe international travel and global pandemic control.

(JMIR Mhealth Uhealth 2020;8(11):e23194)  doi:10.2196/23194

KEYWORDS
COVID-19; contact tracing apps; privacy; public health; global health

Background

As the novel SARS-CoV-2 virus spreads worldwide—enabled by an unknown number of asymptomatic carriers—individuals continue to be at risk for potentially fatal infections. An effective method to contain the spread of the virus is tracing the movement of confirmed and suspected COVID-19 cases, as well as their close contacts [1]. To this end, many countries have used contact tracing mobile apps for controlling the COVID-19 epidemic. These apps are based on various techniques that can provide users with infection risk-level information specific to their communities and notify users who have been exposed to COVID-19, thus facilitating the public, social organizations, and the government to better prevent and control the epidemic [2].

With countries gradually reopening their borders for business and tourism, the effectiveness of using such apps for containing the spread of the pandemic has greatly weakened. The region-based development of contact tracing apps, along with the distinguished data protection laws used in different countries and regions, has resulted in the disconnection between contact tracing apps. These isolated contact tracing apps, which work
as a technologic Tower of Babel, have lost their abilities to trace and monitor the spread of the pandemic in cross-border travel, triggering challenges for global pandemic control while international travel is resumed.

This viewpoint aims to raise global awareness on the urgent need for establishing a data sharing and transferring mechanism at the international level. It advocates that a consistent international effort should be devoted to developing an international data sharing platform for global pandemic control and removing the legal barriers that hinder the interoperability of contact tracing app technology. All these efforts are aimed to contribute a better response to potential future waves of COVID-19 and future global pandemic crises.

**Region-Based Contact Tracing App Development**

COVID-19 contact tracing apps are designed and developed at the regional level, employing various technologies [3]. Asian countries, such as China, South Korea, and Singapore, are among the first group worldwide to develop and use tracking measures for fighting against the COVID-19 epidemic. In China for instance, the national government affairs service began developing the Epidemic Prevention and Health Information Code (EPHIC) after the pandemic surge in early February 2020 [4]. After a smart phone scans the EPHIC QR code, users submit their basic health status, residential addresses, and information about whether they have interacted with any confirmed or suspected individuals with COVID-19 within the past 14 days. With the spread of the COVID-19 pandemic, contact tracing apps have been widely used in many other countries.

Australia and New Zealand are also among the first countries that developed a national contact tracing app. For example, the COVIDSafe app launched by the Australian Department of Health helps state and territory health officials to identify any contact app users who have had close contact with patients with COVID-19 [5].

In Canada, contact tracing apps were first developed by provincial governments and used within their own territories. For example, the ABTraceTogether app in Alberta and the BC COVID-19 Support app in British Columbia both leverage epidemic tracking information provided by Canadian health departments to inform users about their epidemic exposure risks. The federal government also developed the COVID Alert app, which help users to better understand the risk levels of their own regions, as well as harness geographic location information to inform other users as to whether they have encountered anyone infected with SARS-CoV-2 [6].

Some states in the United States have developed contact tracing apps for local residents, such as the Care19 app in South Dakota and the Healthy Together app in Utah and Florida. Technology companies and research institutions have also taken up the challenge and have jointly developed software, such as the COVIDWatch app, NOVID app, and the Private Kit app. Through different technical means, such as self-reporting by users, Bluetooth, and GPS data, these apps can detect and record the contacts between app users, provide an indication of the risk of infection, and archive the data for the purpose of epidemic contact tracing [7]. In May 2020, Google and Apple jointly developed contact tracing technology and released application programming interfaces (APIs) that allow governments to work on developing their own contact tracing apps. Since then, more than one-fifth of the states in the United States have used the Google-Apple API code to develop their own contact tracing apps. To further promote the use of contact tracing technology, in September 2020, Google and Apple announced that they will incorporate their contact tracing tool into the latest operating system of their respective smartphones. This new system allows more public health authorities in the United States to embrace contact tracing functions, as no extra burdens are required to develop their own contact tracing apps [8].

In Europe, more than 20 countries have developed contact tracing apps for improving the management of COVID-19 [9]. Some countries, including France, Norway, and Hungary, have created their own model for contact tracing apps, while other countries, such as Germany, Netherland, and Switzerland, have used the Google-Apple API code to develop their contact tracing apps [10]. In June 2020, the UK government announced that it abandoned a centralized contact tracing app and adopted the new Google-Apple framework for future COVID-19 contact tracing software development to help achieve more effective pandemic control [11]. Initially, contact tracing apps were not welcomed by the European population or legal community, mostly due to privacy concerns and the requirements of the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR). However, the second pandemic wave in Europe moderated the critics and highlighted the potential of contact tracing to control the progression of the virus.

**The Formation of the Technologic Tower of Babel**

**Different Forms of Contact Tracing**

Region-based contact tracing apps are developed by using diverse techniques (Table 1) and are used to collect different types of data. For instance, South Korea, New Zealand, Israel, and Taiwan have apps that transmit the users’ location. This technology model can allow the data subject to be identified by third parties, as demonstrated by an experience in South Korea, during which the disclosure of an infected individual’s location made it possible to identify the person in question [12]. Some governments force the installation of contact apps to monitor the flow of confirmed cases and travelers, while other jurisdictions, such as those in Singapore, Austria, and France, allow users to voluntarily choose to install the apps; users can also decide whether or not to have their data collected (ie, automatically collected via the app or by means of a voluntary act, such as reporting personal health information or by registering their location) [13]. Importantly, domestic and regional laws have different rules on data protection and privacy issues, which hamper transnational data sharing and exchange.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technologies used for contact tracing apps</th>
<th>App examples, app name (country/region of origin)</th>
<th>Potential legal challenges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location tracking by GPS</td>
<td>• Self-quarantine safety protection (South Korea) • Epidemic Prevention and Health Information Code (China) • National Government Service Platform (China) • HaMagen (Israel) • NZ COVID Tracer (New Zealand) • COVID Safe Paths (United States) • Healthy Together (Utah, United States) • Care19 (North Dakota, United States)</td>
<td>• Personal privacy issues, including the disclosure of personal privacy location information, personal health information, etc [14]. • It is not clear who will bear the responsibility if the users’ location is not accurate, the disease condition is reported incorrectly due to location information error, and there is a false report. • If the state or the authorities adopt the technology on a large scale, but the technology fails due to satellite signals or technical failures, how can it be remedied? Some software shares data with the authorities, which could make it possible for the government to access personal location information. The issue is especially sensitive when it comes to the location of people of different races. • Location can reveal a lot of personal information (eg, sexual orientation, religion, political affiliation) that is not directly related to pandemic control. • With regard to apps that keep collected data in a central remote server, if the server is attacked, there will be a massive privacy breach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact tracing by GPS</td>
<td>• Epidemic Prevention and Health Information Code (China) • National Government Service Platform (China) • HaMagen (Israel) • NZ COVID Tracer (New Zealand) • COVID Safe Paths (United States) • Healthy Together (Utah, United States) • Care19 (North Dakota, United States)</td>
<td>• All legal challenges for using GPS to track users’ location. • Using GPS for contact tracing requires analyses of the location information of multiple users by means of big data. This involves methods for properly storing and using the personal information of users and other legal issues related to personal data privacy protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact tracing by Bluetooth</td>
<td>• TraceTogether (Singapore) • COVIDSafe (Australia) • Stopp Corona (Austria) • ABTraceTogether (Alberta, Canada) • COVID Alert (Canada) • ProteGO (Poland) • Corona-Warn-App (Germany) • SwissCovid (Switzerland) • HaMagen (Israel) • COVID Safe Paths (United States) • Healthy Together (Utah, United States) • Care19 (North Dakota, United States) • CovidWatch (United States) • NOVID (United States)</td>
<td>• Although most of the software using Bluetooth technology has claimed that they will not obtain user information and will only warn people about the risk of disease through distance perception, data security is a big concern, as hackers may attack the Bluetooth firmware to obtain the user’s personal information and location data information [14]. • Bluetooth technology faces many technical incompatibilities between devices, which will lead to incomplete information collection and, to some extent, the inability to effectively control the spread of the disease. • Although privacy concerns remain, when Bluetooth relies on Bluetooth Low Energy technology, all information is stored in the user’s device (ie, a decentralized system), thus raising less privacy issues.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Potential legal challenges

Technologies used for contact tracing apps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technologies used for contact tracing apps</th>
<th>App examples, app name (country/region of origin)</th>
<th>Potential legal challenges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Self-reporting by users</td>
<td>• Epidemic Prevention and Health Information Code (China)</td>
<td>• Self-reporting software usually requires users to upload their own personal data. The software analyzes the location information and personal health data of multiple users by means of big data. This involves methods for properly storing and using the personal information of users and other legal issues related to personal data privacy protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• National Government Service Platform (China)</td>
<td>• Under the absence of legal oversight, the self-reporting of health conditions by users can lead to the excessive collection of personal information by software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Self-quarantine safety protection (South Korea)</td>
<td>• Centralized data storage may lead to the improper access of information and excessive dissemination of users’ personal information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HealthLyked COVID-19 Tracker (United States)</td>
<td>• Some self-reporting software shares data with the authorities, which can make it possible for the government to access personal information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Relief Central COVID-19 (United States)</td>
<td>• There are no careful legal regulations to govern software and technology that collect data centrally for public health purposes in the context of pandemics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PatientSphere for COVID-19 (United States)</td>
<td>• Who will be responsible for any false information? Will users that provide false information be held accountable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Obvio-19 (United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• How We Feel (United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• COVID Safe Paths (United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• CovidWatcher (New York City, United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Care19 (South Dakota, United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MyBellevue (Washington, United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Healthy Together (Utah, United States)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• COVID Alert (Canada)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• BC COVID-19 Support (British Columbia, Canada)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• King’s College London Covid-19 Symptom Reporting (United Kingdom)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• NZ COVID Tracer (New Zealand)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Different Jurisdictions Offer Different Ways to Protect Data

Existing domestic and regional data protection regulations are applicable for protecting users’ personal information, but their solutions are not always compatible (Table 2). For instance, within the European Union, apps are subject to the requirements of the GDPR [15], and eventually to those of Directive 2002/58/EC [16]. Data processing must comply with basilar general principles (Article 5/a-e of the GDPR) [17], as follows: (1) data must be collected in a fair way, and data processing must be open to public scrutiny, as per the principle of lawfulness, fairness, and transparency; (2) the collected data are to be used for a specific and clear purpose, and changes in purpose are not allowed, as per the principle of purpose limitation; (3) when possible, anonymized or pseudoanonymized data shall be used, and measures must be taken to prevent the reidentification of the data subject, as per the first dimension of the principle of data minimization; (4) unnecessary information is not to be collected, as per the second dimension of the principle of data minimization; (5) data must be accurate, and any mistake shall be easily amended, as per the principle of accuracy; and (6) data are to be stored for a limited period of time and destroyed after that, as per the principle of storage limitation.

Table 2. Examples of domestic and regional data laws applicable to data collection and data sharing of contact tracing apps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Countries or regions</th>
<th>Applicable data laws</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act Privacy Rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>California Consumer Protection Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The European Union</td>
<td>General Data Protection Regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Directive 2002/58/EC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Health Information Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Cyber Security Law of the People’s Republic of China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Personal Information Security Specifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Privacy Amendment (Public Health Contact Information) Act</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the United States, although government-issued contact tracing apps exceed the scope of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) and HIPAA Privacy Rule, many contact tracing app developers claim that their apps will follow the requirements mandated by the HIPAA when collecting, storing, and using users’ data [18]. Some California-based
companies further claim that their apps will also comply with the 2018 California Consumer Protection Act (CCPA) [19]. Even when only considering these 3 standards and disregarding all the remaining potentially applicable regulations, several different solutions can be found. Many of the rights guaranteed by the GDPR are unknown in US law, such as the right of data subjects to receive their personal data in a commonly used format and to transmit persona data to another data controller, the right to data portability, and the right to not to be subject to an adverse decision based solely on the application of artificial intelligence [20]. Moreover, the right to have one’s data erased upon request, which is a basic right under the GDPR, is absent from the HIPAA. However, for apps governed by the CCPA, this right will apply, since the right was established in Civil Code § 1798.105 [21].

In Canada, contact tracing apps developed by public health authorities are subject to the data protection of both the Health Information Protection Act (HIPPA) and the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act (FIPPA). For example, the ABTraceTogether contact tracing app developed in Alberta must adhere to the privacy obligations of the HIPPA and FIPPA [22]. Thus, the app only collects the user’s nonidentifying information to trace the contacts of confirmed patients with COVID-19 [23]. In addition, based on the Public Health Act [24] and HIA [25], provincial health departments can track contacts during the COVID-19 pandemic and are able to use the information for health system management and planning, policy development, and public health emergency analysis.

Unlike the GDPR, the FIPPA only applies to government institutions, and the protected personal information is narrower than the concept of personal data adopted by GDPR (eg, IP address and cookie data are not covered by the FIPPA) [26]. Moreover, provisions in the FIPPA [26] regarding data process and data subject rights are much less extensive than those speculated in the GDPR [27].

In China, the collection and processing of personal information garnered from COVID-19 tracking software is protected by laws and regulations that govern personal information protection and infectious disease prevention and control, such as the Cyber Security Law, the Personal Information Security Specifications, and the Regulations on Public Health Emergencies. Accordingly, when acquiring and using personal information, contact tracing apps shall obtain consent from the users in advance. The data processor shall also not intentionally disclose the personal information of confirmed or suspected patients with COVID-19 and their close contacts. Under the explicit authorization from users, disease prevention and control institutions and medical institutions can track high-risk populations based on legally obtained information. However, China’s data protection laws and regulations are mainly focused on public security concerns, while few provisions are about personal data protection [28]. Data subject rights granted by these relevant laws are much narrower than those granted by the provisions in the GDPR.

It is important to note that data protection laws are generally lacking in low-income countries, and many have not promulgated privacy laws. According to the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, 19% of low-income countries have no privacy legislation, and just 10% have developed a draft of their intended policies [29]. This privacy gap brings significant legal barriers to transnational data transfer and sharing.

Some Jurisdictions Allow for Transnational Data Transfer, While Others Do Not

Many domestic data protection regulations have already established conditions for transnational data transfer, and they are varied among jurisdictions. Consequently, the cross-border communication and transmission of epidemic contact tracing data will inevitably encounter legal challenges.

In China for example, data must undergo an internal security assessment that adheres to the regulations established by state network departments before data can be transferred outside the country. According to the Security Assessment Measures for Cross-Border Transfer of Personal Information (Draft for Comment) issued in 2019, network operators shall apply security assessments for the cross-border transfer of personal information to local cyberspace administrations at the provincial level before the personal information leaves China [30].

In the European Union, the GDPR imposes strict limitations on using a third party (ie, a country outside the European Economic Area or an international organization) to process data transfers (chapter V of the GDPR) [31], as this is likely to happen in international traveling. Transference can only take place if the law applicable by the third party “ensures an adequate level of protection”, as confirmed by an adequacy decision taken by the European Commission (Article 45 of the GDPR) [31], or “if the controller or processor has provided appropriate safeguards” regarding data safety, the protection of the subject’s rights, and the existence of adequate remedies (Article 46 of the GDPR) [31]. Apart from these 2 cases, only the specific and exceptional conditions laid down in Article 49 of the GDPR remain [31].

This specific set of scenarios for data transfer might hamper the operationality of non-European Union contact tracing apps. Contact tracing apps used in a country where data security protection does not meet the European Union’s standards cannot obtain the infection risk information of travelers entering European Union member states. Hence, the destination country is not able to determine whether a traveler has already been infected before entering the country or has become infected after entry.

In some countries, data collected by contact tracing apps are not allowed to be transferred outside of the country. For example, in Australia, the Privacy Amendment (Public Health Contact Information) Act 2020 prohibits a person from disclosing data collected by contact tracing apps to another person outside of Australia [32]. The Australian COVIDSafe app also contains statements in the Terms of Service section that describes how all data collected by the government through the app are kept in Australia and cannot be transferred out of the country [33].

At the international level however, no mechanism enables the sharing of data essentials for pandemic control. Region-based contact tracing apps work as a technologic Tower of Babel, as they operate independently from one another and are not mutually recognized. The isolation of each app leaves a
monitoring gap for international travel, which leads to real challenges for global pandemic control.

**Minimizing the International Health Risks Posed by This Technologic Tower of Babel**

Possible Options for Destroying This Technologic Tower of Babel

In April 2020, both the European Parliament [34] and the European Commission [35] called on member states to work together to fight the pandemic. In June 2020, the European Data Protection Board released a statement regarding the impact of data protection on the interoperability of contact tracing apps within the European Union [36]. Several months later, in October 2020, a European Union-wide system for contact tracing app interoperability was launched, and the first group of contact tracing apps (ie, Germany’s Corona-Warn-App, Ireland’s COVID tracker app, and Italy’s Immuni app) were linked to the system [37]. However, a broader consensus is required for the international community, since a common European approach will only solve the problem within the European Union.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has established ethical guidelines for directing member parties in the use of contact apps for the COVID-19 pandemic control [38]. Recently, the WHO Emergency Committee has also been actively working on the development of public health tools that can help member states deal with the pandemic-related risks involved with the gradual resumption of international travel [39]. These recommendations provide evidence-informed guidelines that member states can refer to when developing policies for pandemic control. To date, however, no international instrument has been established to address the conflicts of laws regarding data protection and privacy issues between member states. In this regard, we advocate that the global community should use the COVID-19 crisis as an opportunity for developing a mechanism that can facilitate the transnational sharing of data among countries during global public health emergencies. The biggest challenges will be reaching an agreement between countries and determining methods for enforcing such a mechanism.

Not long ago, the Global Outbreak and Response Network, which worked under the WHO, established a global data collection and sharing platform, Go.Data, which was used in South African countries for Ebola surveillance [40]. Ideally, a similar model that includes a large array of countries—potentially, all the affected ones—could be put in place for the COVID-19 pandemic. However, practical and legal impairments prevent this possibility. At most, we can aspire to create an open-access platform with aggregated data (ie, anonymized data) so that international travelers, institutions, and governments around the world can use the data to track the trends of infected persons and inquire about the risk of epidemic infection in a country or region.

Another bold proposal is a common contact tracing app that is accepted by all countries and made mandatory for international travelers, to help authorities track the flow of potentially infected international travelers. This international contact tracing app will fill the supervisory vacuum for international traveling, providing governments with real-time data to prevent the international spread of disease. Owing to the global citizenship obligation, international travelers should be required to install this tracing app [41]. This specific model for a contact tracing app would result from a common agreement. Governments should agree on a technological model for this app (Table 1).

In any case, only the data necessary to perform the specific task assigned to this app should be collected. Such data should not include the biometric information of users, and the data collected should only be used for monitoring epidemic risk. As Google and Apple have worked together to promote contact tracing technology that allows communication between smartphones using iOS and Android systems via Bluetooth, this technologic progress may provide an option for minimizing international health risks. Based on Bluetooth and users’ self-reports, this common contact tracing app would notify app users who have had close contact with a COVID-19–positive app user during international travel in the past 14 days.

**Reality Check**

Implementing any of these measures would not be easy in jurisdictions with rather stringent privacy laws. Each government has to accept a common data collection, processing, and transfer regime that is exclusively applicable to COVID-19 contact tracing apps as an exception to their respective national laws on privacy. This equates to a uniform privacy policy for all contact tracing app users (Figure 1).
Even with the leadership of the WHO and the menace of a global pandemic, the goal of fulfilling these measures is difficult to achieve. Governments will not easily give up the power to decide which contact tracing apps would be used in their territory and which laws should govern these apps (ie, their own laws). Even if they participate in such an international project, without global consensus on a legal framework for data collection, processing, and transfer, it is very unlikely that all countries can agree on a single model for contact tracing apps (Figure 1). Moreover, issues raised by international data transfer are another real challenge for achieving the interoperability of contact tracing apps. In particular, a recent decision made by the Court of Justice of the European Union (CJEU) indicates the legal challenges for transnational personal data transfer due to different data protection standards. In July 2020, the CJEU announced that the US-EU Privacy Shield, the personal data transfer arrangement between the United States and European Union, cannot provide sufficient data protection, and is therefore invalid [42]. This decision will dramatically impact personal data flows between the United States and European Union and will inevitably hamper the communication between contact tracing apps used in the 2 jurisdictions (Figure 1).

Conclusion

Contact tracing apps can be powerful mechanisms for handling the pandemic. However, their benefits will be lost if a patchwork system of noncommunicating apps becomes normal. If governments and app developers do not act cooperatively and strategically, the global community will be left to navigate dozens of apps operating under different protocols, data models, and legal rules, ultimately hampering the effort to control the COVID-19 pandemic.

Developing an international instrument that regulates data transfer between different countries’ contact tracing apps is a challenging goal. The negotiation for such an instrument demands strong leadership and consistent efforts from the entire international community. Due to the reopening of international travel, we face the increased risk of future waves of COVID-19. Therefore, collaborative actions should be taken to minimize the risk of COVID-19 spread in international travel and transport. The international community should start working together to establish a framework that enables data sharing and data transfer among different contact tracing apps, thereby breaking this technologic Tower of Babel.

In spite of the existing difficulties, the goal of implementing these solutions is still worth pursuing, as it is for the common good for all human beings. The isolation of contact tracing apps
will not contain the international spread of infectious diseases. Instead, their isolation will result in the creation of a useless technologic Tower of Babel. The international community should be prepared for the next global pandemic crisis.

At present, it is crucial for all of us global citizens to collaborate with the common goal of establishing mechanisms that fix the current fragmentation of contact tracing systems and enable effective global epidemic surveillance. Only time will tell if national governments will primarily protect their power and regulations—which they feel is their sovereign right—under the price of paralyzing international traveling and jeopardizing our common safety. As it happened in biblical accounts, this technologic Tower of Babel will throw us apart.

Authors' Contributions

LD and VLR designed the study. MW collected and analyzed the data. LD and VLR wrote the manuscript.

Conflicts of Interest

None declared.

References


Abbreviations

API: application programming interface
CCPA: California Consumer Protection Act
CJEU: Court of Justice of the European Union
EPHIC: Epidemic Prevention and Health Information Code
FIPPA: Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act
GDPR: General Data Protection Regulation
HIA: Health Information Act
HIPPA: Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act
WHO: World Health Organization

©Li Du, Vera Lúcia Raposo, Meng Wang. Originally published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth (http://mhealth.jmir.org), 27.11.2020. This is an open-access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work, first published in JMIR mHealth and uHealth, is properly cited. The complete bibliographic information, a link to the original publication on http://mhealth.jmir.org/, as well as this copyright and license information must be included.